English: Condensed Translation Notes, Unlocked Literal Bible for 1 Corinthians, 1 John, 1 Peter, 1 Thessalonians, 1 Timothy, 2 Corinthians, 2 John, 2 Peter, 2 Thessalonians, 2 Timothy, 3 John, Acts, Colossians, Ephesians, Galatians, Hebrews, James, John, Jude, Luke, Mark, Matthew, Philemon, Philippians, Revelation, Romans, Titus

Formatted for Translators

©2022 Wycliffe Associates

Released under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Bible Text: The English Unlocked Literal Bible (ULB)

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English Unlocked Literal Bible is based on the unfoldingWord® Literal Text, CC BY-SA 4.0. The original work of the unfoldingWord® Literal Text is available at [https://unfoldingword.bible/ult/](https://nam12.safelinks.protection.outlook.com/?url=https%3A%2F%2Funfoldingword.bible%2Fult%2F&data=02%7C01%7Cmarv_lucas%40wycliffeassociates.org%7Cab3b29dbe7fc44554aeb08d8080e8e70%7C7baa11086adb4be299cf00a4872ab1cf%7C0%7C0%7C637268205914531190&sdata=SW2KxVr%2BcxHGAgMpv602NzoYenorfHi9bOs2SNzVpR4%3D&reserved=0).

The ULB is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Notes: English ULB Translation Notes

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English ULB Translation Notes is based on the unfoldingWord translationNotes, under CC BY-SA 4.0. The original unfoldingWord work is available at <https://unfoldingword.bible/utn>.

The ULB Notes is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

To view a copy of the CC BY-SA 4.0 license visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/>

Below is a human-readable summary of (and not a substitute for) the license.

**You are free to:**

* **Share**— copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format.
* **Adapt**— remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

**Under the following conditions:**

* **Attribution**— You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <https://BibleInEveryLanguage.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
* **ShareAlike**— If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.
* **No additional restrictions**— You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

**Notices:**

You do not have to comply with the license for elements of the material in the public domain or where your use is permitted by an applicable exception or limitation.

No warranties are given. The license may not give you all of the permissions necessary for your intended use. For example, other rights such as publicity, privacy, or moral rights may limit how you use the material.

A picture containing text, clipart

Description automatically generated

TOC \o "1-2" \h \z \uRight-click to update field (doing so will insert table of contents).

Page left intentionally blank

## Matthew

Chapter 1

1The book of the genealogy of Jesus Christ, son of David, son of Abraham.

2Abraham was the father of Isaac, and Isaac the father of Jacob, and Jacob the father of Judah and his brothers.

3Judah was the father of Perez and Zerah by Tamar, Perez the father of Hezron, and Hezron the father of Ram.

4Ram was the father of Amminadab, Amminadab the father of Nahshon, and Nahshon the father of Salmon.

5Salmon was the father of Boaz by Rahab, Boaz the father of Obed by Ruth, Obed the father of Jesse.

6Jesse was the father of David the king.

David was the father of Solomon by the wife of Uriah.

7Solomon was the father of Rehoboam, Rehoboam the father of Abijah, Abijah the father of Asa.

8Asa was the father of Jehoshaphat, Jehoshaphat the father of Joram, and Joram an ancestor of Uzziah.

9Uzziah was the father of Jotham, Jotham the father of Ahaz, Ahaz the father of Hezekiah.

10Hezekiah was the father of Manasseh, Manasseh the father of Amon, and Amon the father of Josiah.

11Josiah was an ancestor of Jechoniah and his brothers at the time of the deportation to Babylon.

12After the deportation to Babylon, Jechoniah was the father of Shealtiel, Shealtiel was an ancestor of Zerubbabel.

13Zerubbabel was the father of Abiud, Abiud the father of Eliakim, and Eliakim the father of Azor.

14Azor was the father of Zadok, Zadok the father of Achim, and Achim the father of Eliud.

15Eliud was the father of Eleazar, Eleazar the father of Matthan, and Matthan the father of Jacob.

16Jacob was the father of Joseph the husband of Mary, by whom Jesus was born, who is called Christ.

17All the generations from Abraham to David were fourteen generations, from David to the deportation to Babylon fourteen generations, and from the deportation to Babylon to the Christ fourteen generations.

18The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit.19But Joseph, her husband, was a righteous man and did not want to publicly disgrace her, so he intended to divorce her quietly.20As he thought about these things, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream, saying, "Joseph son of David, do not fear to take Mary as your wife, because the one who is conceived in her is conceived by the Holy Spirit.21She will bear a son, and you will call his name Jesus, for he will save his people from their sins."22Now all this happened to fulfill what was spoken by the Lord through the prophet, saying,23"Behold, the virgin will become pregnant and will bear a son, and they will call his name Immanuel"—which being translated is "God with us."24Joseph got up from his sleep and did as the angel of the Lord commanded him, and he took her as his wife.25But he did not know her until she gave birth to a son. Then he called his name Jesus.

#### Matthew 1:1

##### The book of the genealogy of Jesus Christ

"This is the list of the ancestors of Jesus Christ"

##### Jesus Christ, son of David, son of Abraham

"Jesus Christ, a descendant of David, who was a descendant of Abraham"

##### son of David

Sometimes the phrase "son of David" is used as a title, but here it seems to be used only to identify Jesus's ancestry.

#### Matthew 1:2

##### Abraham was the father of Isaac

"Abraham became the father of Isaac" or "Abraham had a son Isaac" or "Abraham had a son named Isaac." There are different ways you could translate this. Whichever way you translate it here, it would be best to translate it the same way throughout the list of Jesus's ancestors.

##### Isaac the father ... Jacob the father

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation: "Isaac was the father ... Jacob was the father"

#### Matthew 1:3

##### Perez the father ... Hezron the father

"Perez was the father ... Hezron was the father"

#### Matthew 1:4

##### Amminadab the father ... Nahshon the father

"Amminadab was the father ... Nahshon was the father"

#### Matthew 1:5

##### Salmon was the father of Boaz by Rahab

"Salmon and Rahab were the parents of Boaz"

##### Boaz the father of Obed by Ruth

"Boaz and Ruth were the parents of Obed"

#### Matthew 1:6

##### David was the father of Solomon by the wife of Uriah

"David was the father of Solomon, and Solomon's mother was Uriah's wife" or "David and the wife of Uriah were the parents of Solomon"

##### the wife of Uriah

"the widow of Uriah." Solomon was born after Uriah died.

#### Matthew 1:7

##### Rehoboam the father of Abijah, Abijah the father of Asa

"Rehoboam was the father of Abijah, and Abijah was the father of Asa"

#### Matthew 1:8

##### Joram

This man was called both Joram and Jehoram in the Old Testament.

#### Matthew 1:10

##### Amon

Sometimes this is translated "Amos."

#### Matthew 1:11

##### Josiah was an ancestor of Jechoniah

"Josiah was a grandfather of Jechoniah"

##### at the time of the deportation to Babylon

"when they were forced to move to Babylon" or "when the Babylonians conquered them and made them go live in Babylon."

##### Babylon

Here this means the country of Babylon, not just the city of Babylon.

#### Matthew 1:16

##### Mary, by whom Jesus was born

"Mary, who gave birth to Jesus"

##### who is called Christ

"whom people call Christ"

#### Matthew 1:18

##### His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph

"his mother, Mary, was promised in marriage to Joseph" or "His mother, Mary, was going to marry Joseph"

##### His mother, Mary, was engaged

Jesus was not already born when Mary was engaged to Joseph. Alternate translation: "Mary, who would be the mother of Jesus, was engaged"

##### before they came together

"before they got married." This may refer to Mary and Joseph sleeping together. Alternate translation: "before they had slept together"

##### she was found to be pregnant

"they realized that she was pregnant"

##### pregnant by the Holy Spirit

The power of the Holy Spirit had enabled Mary to have a baby before she had slept with a man.

#### Matthew 1:19

##### Joseph, her husband

"Joseph, who was supposed to marry Mary"

##### to divorce her quietly

"to quietly cancel their plans to get married"

#### Matthew 1:20

##### appeared to him in a dream

"came to him while Joseph was dreaming"

##### son of David

Here "son" means "descendant."

##### the one who is conceived in her is conceived by the Holy Spirit

"the Holy Spirit caused Mary to become pregnant with this child"

#### Matthew 1:21

##### you will call his name Jesus

"you must name him Jesus" or "you must give him the name Jesus."

##### for he will save

You may add a footnote that says, "The name 'Jesus' means 'the Lord saves.'"

#### Matthew 1:22

##### all this happened

The angel is no longer speaking. Matthew is now explaining the importance of what the angel said.

##### what was spoken by the Lord through the prophet

"what the Lord told the prophet to write long ago"

##### the prophet

"the prophet Isaiah"

#### Matthew 1:23

##### Behold ... Immanuel

Here Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah.

##### Behold, the virgin will become pregnant

"Look, the virgin will become pregnant" or "Pay attention. The virgin will conceive"

##### Immanuel"—which being translated is "God with us."

"Immanuel." This name means 'God with us.'"

#### Matthew 1:24

##### he took her as his wife

"he married Mary"

#### Matthew 1:25

##### he did not know her

"he did not have sexual relations with her"

##### to a son

"to a male baby" or "to her son." Make sure it is clear that Joseph is not portrayed as the actual father.

Chapter 2

1After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,2"Where is he who was born King of the Jews? We saw his star in the east and have come to worship him."3When Herod the king heard this, he was troubled, and all Jerusalem with him.4Herod brought together all the chief priests and scribes of the people, and he asked them, "Where is the Christ to be born?"5They said to him, "In Bethlehem of Judea, for this is what was written by the prophet:6'But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,are not the least among the rulers of Judah,for from you will come one who rules,who will shepherd my people Israel.'"

7Then Herod secretly called the learned men to ask them exactly what time the star had appeared.8He sent them to Bethlehem, saying, "Go and search carefully for the young child. When you have found him, bring me a report so that I also may come and worship him."9After they had heard the king, they went on their way, and the star that they had seen in the east went before them until it came and stood still over where the young child was.10When they saw the star, they rejoiced with very great joy.11They went into the house and saw the young child with Mary his mother. They fell down and worshiped him. They opened their treasures and offered him gifts of gold, frankincense, and myrrh.12God warned them in a dream not to return to Herod, so they departed to their own country by another way.

13After they had departed, an angel of the Lord appeared to Joseph in a dream and said, "Get up, take the young child and his mother, and flee to Egypt. Remain there until I tell you, for Herod will seek the young child to destroy him."14That night Joseph rose and took the young child and his mother and departed into Egypt.15He remained there until the death of Herod. This fulfilled what had been spoken by the Lord through the prophet, saying, "Out of Egypt I have called my Son."

16Then Herod, when he saw that he had been mocked by the learned men, was very angry. He sent and killed all the male children that were in Bethlehem and in all that region who were two years old and under, according to the time that he had determined exactly from the learned men.17Then was fulfilled what had been spoken through Jeremiah the prophet, saying, 18"A voice was heard in Ramah,weeping and great mourning,Rachel weeping for her children,and she refused to be comforted, because they were no more."

19When Herod died, behold, an angel of the Lord appeared in a dream to Joseph in Egypt and said,20"Get up and take the child and his mother and go to the land of Israel, for those who sought the child's life are dead."21Joseph rose, took the child and his mother, and came into the land of Israel.22But when he heard that Archelaus was reigning over Judea in the place of his father Herod, he was afraid to go there. After God warned him in a dream, he left for the region of Galilee23and went and lived in a city called Nazareth. This fulfilled what had been spoken through the prophets, that he would be called a Nazarene.

#### Matthew 2:1

##### Bethlehem of Judea

"the town of Bethlehem in the province of Judea"

##### in the days of Herod the king

"when Herod the Great was king there"

##### learned men from the east

"knowledgable men from the east"

#### Matthew 2:2

##### Where is he who was born King of the Jews?

The men knew from studying the stars that the one who would become king had been born. They were trying to learn where he was. Alternate translation: "A baby who will become the king of the Jews has been born. Where is he?"

##### his star

"the star that tells about him" or "the star that is associated with his birth"

##### in the east

Possible meanings are 1) "as it came up in the east" or 2) "while we were in the east"

##### worship

Possible meanings are 1) they intended to worship the baby as divine, or 2) they wanted to honor him as a human king. If your language has a word that includes both meanings, you should consider using it here.

#### Matthew 2:3

##### he was troubled

"he was worried."

##### all Jerusalem

"many of the people in Jerusalem were also troubled"

#### Matthew 2:5

##### In Bethlehem of Judea

"In the town of Bethlehem in the province of Judea"

##### this is what was written by the prophet

"this is what the prophet wrote"

#### Matthew 2:6

##### General Information:

The chief priests and scribes of the people quote the prophet Micah to show that the Christ would be born in Bethlehem.

##### you, Bethlehem, ... are not the least among the rulers of Judah

"you, people of Bethlehem, ... your town is among the most important towns in Judah"

##### who will shepherd my people Israel

"who will lead my people Israel as a shepherd leads his sheep"

#### Matthew 2:7

##### men to ask them exactly what time the star had appeared.

"called the men, and he asked them, 'When exactly did this star appear?'"

#### Matthew 2:8

##### bring me a report

"report back to me" or "let me know"

#### Matthew 2:9

##### went before them

"guided them" or "led them"

##### stood still over

"stopped over"

##### where the young child was

"the place where the young child was staying"

#### Matthew 2:11

##### They fell down and worshiped him

"They knelt down and put their faces close to the ground." They did this to honor Jesus.

##### their treasures

Here "treasures" refers to the boxes or bags they used to carry their treasures. "the containers that held their treasures"

#### Matthew 2:12

##### in a dream not to return to Herod, so

"in a dream saying, 'Do not go back to King Herod.' So"

#### Matthew 2:13

##### appeared to Joseph in a dream

"came to Joseph while he was dreaming"

##### until I tell you

"until I tell you it is safe to come back"

#### Matthew 2:15

##### General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Hosea to show that the Christ would spend time in Egypt.

##### He remained

"They remained"

##### until the death of Herod

"what the Lord had said through the prophet; he said" or "what the Lord had told the prophet to say; he said"

##### Out of Egypt I have called my Son

"I have called my Son out of Egypt"

#### Matthew 2:16

##### he had been mocked by the learned men

"the learned men had tricked him"

##### He sent and killed all the male children

"He sent soldiers to kill all the baby boys"

##### according to the time that he had determined exactly from the learned men

based on what he discovered from the learned men about exactly when the star had appeared

#### Matthew 2:17

##### Then was fulfilled

"This fulfilled" or "Herod's actions fulfilled"

##### what had been spoken through Jeremiah the prophet

"what the Lord spoke long ago through the prophet Jeremiah"

#### Matthew 2:18

##### A voice was heard

"People heard a voice" or "There was a loud sound"

##### Rachel weeping for her children

Rachel lived many years before this time. This prophecy shows Rachel, who has died, weeping for her descendants.

##### she refused to be comforted

"no one could comfort her" or "she did not let anyone comfort her"

##### because they were no more

"because they were dead"

#### Matthew 2:19

##### behold

This word marks the beginning of another event in the larger story.

#### Matthew 2:20

##### those who sought the child's life

"those who were looking for the child in order to kill him"

#### Matthew 2:22

##### But when he heard

"But when Joseph heard"

##### Archelaus

This is the name of Herod's son.

#### Matthew 2:23

##### what had been spoken through the prophets

"what the Lord spoke long ago through the prophets"

##### he would be called a Nazarene

"people would say that the Christ is a Nazarene"

Chapter 3

1In those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying,2"Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is near."3For this is he who was spoken of by Isaiah the prophet, saying,  
  
"The voice of one calling out in the wilderness,'Make ready the way of the Lord,make his paths straight.'"

4Now John wore clothing of camel's hair and a leather belt around his waist. His food was locusts and wild honey.5Then Jerusalem, all Judea, and all the region around the Jordan River went out to him.6They were baptized by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins.7But when he saw many of the Pharisees and Sadducees coming to him for baptism, he said to them, "You offspring of vipers, who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming?8Bear fruit worthy of repentance.9Do not think of saying among yourselves, 'We have Abraham for our father.' For I say to you that God is able to raise up children for Abraham even out of these stones.10Already the ax has been placed against the root of the trees. So every tree that does not produce good fruit is chopped down and thrown into the fire.11I baptize you with water for repentance. But he who comes after me is mightier than I, and I am not worthy even to carry his sandals. He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire.12His winnowing fork is in his hand to thoroughly clear off his threshing floor and to gather his wheat into the storehouse. But he will burn up the chaff with fire that can never be put out."

13Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John.14But John kept trying to stop him, saying, "I need to be baptized by you, and do you come to me?"15Jesus responded and said to him, "Permit it now, for it is right for us to fulfill all righteousness." Then John permitted him.16After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and behold, the heavens were opened to him. He saw the Spirit of God coming down like a dove and resting upon him.17Behold, a voice came out of the heavens saying, "This is my beloved Son. I am very pleased with him."

#### Matthew 3:1

##### In those days

"In those times" or "Some years later"

#### Matthew 3:2

##### the kingdom of heaven is near

"our God in heaven will soon show himself to be king"

#### Matthew 3:3

##### For this is he who was spoken of by Isaiah the prophet, saying

"For John is the one Isaiah the prophet spoke about when he said"

##### The voice of one calling out in the wilderness

"The voice of one calling out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone calling out in the wilderness"

##### Make ready the way of the Lord, make his paths straight

"Make the road ready for the Lord, prepare for him to come."

#### Matthew 3:4

##### wore clothing of camel's hair and a leather belt around his waist

This clothing symbolizes that John is a prophet like the prophets from long ago, especially the prophet Elijah.

#### Matthew 3:5

##### Then Jerusalem, all Judea, and all the region

"Then very may people from Jerusalem, Judea, and that region"

#### Matthew 3:6

##### They

This refers to the people coming from Jerusalem, Judea, and the region around the Jordan River.

##### They were baptized by him ... River, confessing their sins

"John baptized them ... River after they confessed their sins"

#### Matthew 3:7

##### You offspring of vipers, who

"You evil poisonous snakes! Who" or "You are evil like poisonous snakes! Who"

##### who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming?

John rebukes the Pharisees and Sadducees. Alternate translation: "you cannot flee from God's coming punishment like this." or "do not think that you can flee from God's wrath just because I baptize you."

##### flee from the wrath that is coming

"run away from the punishment that is coming" or "escape because God is about to punish you"

#### Matthew 3:8

##### Bear fruit worthy of repentance

“Let your actions show that you have truly repented”

#### Matthew 3:9

##### We have Abraham for our father

"Abraham is our ancestor" or "We are descendants of Abraham." The Jewish leaders thought that God would not punish them since they were descendants of Abraham.

##### God is able to raise up children for Abraham even out of these stones

"God can make even these stones become children of Abraham"

#### Matthew 3:10

##### Already the ax has been placed against the root of the trees. So every tree that does not produce good fruit is chopped down and thrown into the fire

"God has his axe and he is ready to cut down and burn any tree that does not produce good fruit" or "As a person gets his axe ready to cut down and burn a tree that does not produce good fruit, God is ready to punish you for your sin"

#### Matthew 3:11

##### for repentance

"to show that you have repented"

##### he who comes after me

John was speaking about the Christ, although he probably did not know who that was.

##### is mightier than I

"is more important than I am"

##### He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire

This means John's baptism only symbolically cleanses people of their sins. The baptism by Holy Spirit and fire will truly cleanse people of their sins. If possible, use the word "baptize" in your translation to keep the comparison to John's baptism.

#### Matthew 3:12

##### His winnowing fork is in his hand

"He is like a man whose winnowing fork is in his hand"

##### winnowing fork

This is a tool for tossing wheat up into the air to separate the wheat grain from the chaff. The heavier grain falls back down and the unwanted chaff is blown away by the wind.

##### his threshing floor

"his floor" or "the ground where he separates the grain from the chaff"

##### fire that can never be put out

"fire that no one can put out" or "fire that will never burn out"

#### Matthew 3:13

##### to be baptized by John

"so John could baptize him"

#### Matthew 3:14

##### I need to be baptized by you, and do you come to me?

"I need you to baptize me, yet you want me to baptize you."

#### Matthew 3:15

##### John permitted him

"John allowed Jesus to be baptized" or "John agreed to baptize Jesus"

#### Matthew 3:16

##### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### the heavens were opened to him

"Jesus saw the sky open" or "God opened the heavens to Jesus"

##### coming down like a dove

Possible meanings are 1) the Spirit was in the form of a dove or 2) the Spirit came down gently, the way a dove would.

#### Matthew 3:17

##### a voice came out of the heavens saying

"A speaker said from heaven" or "God said from heaven"

##### Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

Chapter 4

1Then Jesus was led up by the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted by the devil.2When he had fasted forty days and forty nights, he was hungry.3The tempter came and said to him, "If you are the Son of God, command these stones to become bread."

4But Jesus answered and said to him, "It is written, 'Man does not live on bread alone, but by every word that comes out of the mouth of God.'"

5Then the devil took him into the holy city and set him on the highest point of the temple building,6and said to him, "If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written,  
  
'He will command his angels to take care of you,' and'They will carry you in their hands,so that you will not hit your foot against a stone.'"

7Jesus said to him, "Again it is written, 'You must not test the Lord your God.'"

8Again, the devil took him up to a very high hill and showed him all the kingdoms of the world along with all their glory.9He said to him, "All these things I will give you, if you fall down and worship me."

10Then Jesus said to him, "Go away from here, Satan! For it is written, 'You will worship the Lord your God, and you will serve only him.'"

11Then the devil left him, and behold, angels came and served him.

12Now when Jesus heard that John had been handed over, he withdrew into Galilee.13He left Nazareth and went and lived in Capernaum, which is by the Sea of Galilee in the territories of Zebulun and Naphtali.14This happened to fulfill what was said by Isaiah the prophet:15"The land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali,toward the sea, beyond the Jordan,Galilee of the Gentiles!16The people who sat in darknesshave seen a great light,and to those who sat in the region and shadow of death,upon them has a light arisen."

17From that time Jesus began to preach and say, "Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is near."18As he was walking by the Sea of Galilee, he saw two brothers, Simon who is called Peter, and Andrew his brother, casting a net into the sea, for they were fishermen.19Jesus said to them, "Come, follow me, and I will make you fishers of men."20Immediately they left the nets and followed him.21As Jesus was going on from there he saw two other brothers, James son of Zebedee and John his brother. They were in the boat with Zebedee their father mending their nets. He called them,22and they immediately left the boat and their father and followed him.

23Jesus went about in all of Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, preaching the gospel of the kingdom and healing every kind of disease and sickness among the people.24The news about him went out into all of Syria, and the people brought to him all those who suffered from various diseases and pains, those who were possessed by demons, the epileptics, and the paralytics. Jesus healed them.25Large crowds followed him from Galilee, the Decapolis, Jerusalem, and Judea, and from beyond the Jordan.

#### Matthew 4:1

##### Jesus was led up by the Spirit

"the Spirit led Jesus"

##### to be tempted by the devil

"so the devil could tempt Jesus"

#### Matthew 4:2

##### he had fasted ... he was hungry

These refer to Jesus.

##### forty days and forty nights

"40 days"

#### Matthew 4:3

##### The tempter

These words refer to the same being as "the devil" (as in verse 1).

##### If you are the Son of God, command

"You are the Son of God, so you can command" Alternate translation: "Prove that you are the Son of God by commanding"

##### the Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### command these stones to become bread.

"say to these stones, 'Become bread.'"

##### bread

"food"

#### Matthew 4:4

##### It is written

"The scriptures say" or "God said in the scriptures"

##### Man does not live on bread alone

This implies that there is something more important to life than food.

##### but by every word that comes out of the mouth of God

"but by every word that God speaks" or "but by listening to everything that God says"

#### Matthew 4:6

##### the Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### throw yourself down

"let yourself fall to the ground" or "jump down"

##### 'He will command his angels to take care of you,' and

"'God will say to his angels, "Take care of him,"' and" or "'God will command his angels to take care of you,' and"

##### They will carry you

"The angels will hold you"

#### Matthew 4:7

##### You must not test

"One should not test" or "No person should test"

#### Matthew 4:8

##### Again, the devil

"Next, the devil"

#### Matthew 4:9

##### He said to him

"The devil said to Jesus"

##### All these things I will give you

"I will give you all these things."

##### fall down

"put your face near the ground." This was a common action to show that a person was worshiping.

#### Matthew 4:10

##### For it is written

"For Moses also wrote in the scriptures"

#### Matthew 4:11

##### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the important new information that follows.

#### Matthew 4:12

##### John had been handed over

"the king had handed John over to the prison" or "the king had arrested John"

#### Matthew 4:13

##### in the territories of Zebulun and Naphtali

"Zebulun" and "Naphtali" are the names of the tribes that lived in these territories many years earlier before foreigners took control of the land of Israel.

#### Matthew 4:14

##### what was said

"what God said"

#### Matthew 4:15

##### General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus's ministry in Galilee was a fulfillment of prophecy.

##### toward the sea

This is the Sea of Galilee.

#### Matthew 4:16

##### The people who sat in darkness have seen a great light

Here "darkness"means not knowing the truth about God. And "light" is God's true message

##### The people who sat

"In the territory of Zebulun and Naphtali ... where many Gentiles live, the people who sat"

##### to those who sat in the region and shadow of death, upon them has a light arisen

Here "those who sat in the region and shadow of death" represents those who did not know God. These people were in danger of dying and being separated from God forever.

#### Matthew 4:17

##### the kingdom of heaven is near

"our God in heaven will soon show himself to be king"

#### Matthew 4:18

##### casting a net into the sea

"throwing a net into the water to catch fish"

#### Matthew 4:19

##### Come, follow me

"Be my disciples"

##### I will make you fishers of men

"I will teach you to gather men to me like you used to gather fish"

#### Matthew 4:21

##### He called them

"Jesus called John and James." This phrase also means that Jesus invited them to follow him, live with him, and become his disciples.

#### Matthew 4:22

##### they immediately left

"at that moment they left"

##### left the boat ... and followed him

It should be clear that they immediately put their nets down and left that place with Jesus. If your language requires you to tell whether they were leaving for the rest of the day or for a long time or for the rest of their lives, you should probably translate as they were leaving for the rest of their lives.

#### Matthew 4:23

##### teaching in their synagogues

"teaching in the synagogues of the Galileans" or "teaching in the synagogues of those people"

##### preaching the gospel of the kingdom

"preaching the good news that God will show himself as king"

##### every kind of disease and sickness

The words "disease" and "sickness" are closely related but should be translated as two different words if possible. "Disease" is what causes a person to be sick. "Sickness" is the physical weakness or affliction that results from having a disease.

#### Matthew 4:24

##### those who were possessed by demons

"those whom demons controlled"

##### the epileptics

The word "epileptic" refers to people who have epilepsy and so sometimes become unconscious and move uncontrollably.

#### Matthew 4:25

##### the Decapolis

This name means "the Ten Towns." This is the name of a region to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee.

Chapter 5

1When Jesus saw the crowds, he went up on the mountain. When he had sat down, his disciples came to him.2He opened his mouth and taught them, saying,  
  
3"Blessed are the poor in spirit,for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.4Blessed are those who mourn,for they will be comforted.5Blessed are the meek,for they will inherit the earth.6Blessed are those who hunger and thirst for righteousness,for they will be filled.7Blessed are the merciful,for they will obtain mercy.8Blessed are the pure in heart,for they will see God.9Blessed are the peacemakers,for they will be called sons of God.10Blessed are those who have been persecuted for righteousness' sake,for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

11"Blessed are you when people insult you and persecute you and say all kinds of evil things against you falsely for my sake.12Rejoice and be glad, for great is your reward in heaven. For in this way people persecuted the prophets who lived before you.

13"You are the salt of the earth. But if the salt has lost its taste, how can it be made salty again? It is never again good for anything except to be thrown out and trampled under people's feet.14You are the light of the world. A city set on a hill cannot be hidden.15Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but rather on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house.16Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and glorify your Father who is in heaven.

17"Do not think that I have come to destroy the law or the prophets. I have come not to destroy them, but to fulfill them.18For truly I say to you that until heaven and earth pass away, not the smallest letter or the smallest part of a letter will in any way pass away from the law, until all things have been accomplished.19Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.20For I say to you that unless your righteousness exceeds the righteousness of the scribes and Pharisees, you will in no way enter the kingdom of heaven.

21"You have heard that it was said to them in ancient times, 'Do not murder,' and 'Whoever murders will be subject to judgment.'22But I say to you that everyone who is angry with his brother will be subject to judgment; and whoever says to his brother, 'You worthless person!' will be subject to the council; and whoever says, 'You fool!' will be subject to the fire of hell.23Therefore if you are offering your gift at the altar and there remember that your brother has anything against you,24leave your gift there in front of the altar, and go on your way. First be reconciled with your brother, and then come and offer your gift.25Agree with your adversary quickly while you are with him on the way to court, or your adversary may hand you over to the judge, and the judge may hand you over to the officer, and you may be thrown into prison.26Truly I say to you, you will never come out from there until you have paid the last penny you owe.

27"You have heard that it was said, 'Do not commit adultery.'28But I say to you that everyone who looks on a woman to lust after her has already committed adultery with her in his heart.29If your right eye causes you to stumble, pluck it out and throw it away from you. For it is better for you that one of your members should perish than that your whole body should be thrown into hell.30If your right hand causes you to stumble, cut it off and throw it away from you. For it is better for you that one of your members should perish than that your whole body should go into hell.31It was also said, 'Whoever sends his wife away, let him give her a certificate of divorce.'32But I say to you that everyone who divorces his wife, except on account of sexual immorality, makes her an adulteress. Whoever marries her after she has been divorced commits adultery.

33"Again, you have heard that it was said to those in ancient times, 'Do not swear a false oath, but carry out your oaths to the Lord.'34But I say to you, swear not at all, neither by heaven, for it is the throne of God;35nor by the earth, for it is the footstool for his feet; nor by Jerusalem, for it is the city of the great King.36Neither swear by your head, for you cannot make one hair white or black.37But let your speech be 'Yes, yes,' or 'No, no.' Anything that is more than this is from the evil one.

38"You have heard that it was said, 'An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth.'39But I say to you, do not resist one who is evil. Instead, whoever strikes you on your right cheek, turn to him the other also.40If anyone wishes to bring a lawsuit against you and takes away your tunic, let that person also have your cloak.41Whoever compels you to go one mile, go with him two.42Give to anyone who asks you, and do not turn away from anyone who wishes to borrow from you.

43"You have heard that it was said, 'You must love your neighbor and hate your enemy.'44But I say to you, love your enemies and pray for those who persecute you, [1](#footnote-target-1)45so that you may be sons of your Father who is in heaven. For he makes his sun to rise on the evil and the good, and sends rain on the just and the unjust.46For if you love those who love you, what reward do you get? Do not even the tax collectors do the same thing?47If you greet only your brothers, what do you do more than others? Do not even the Gentiles do the same thing?48Therefore you must be perfect, as your heavenly Father is perfect.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have Bless those who curse you, do good to those who hate you .

#### Matthew 5:1

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story in which Jesus begins to teach his disciples. This part continues through the end of chapter 7 and is frequently called the Sermon on the Mount.

#### Matthew 5:2

##### He opened his mouth

"Jesus began to speak"

#### Matthew 5:3

##### the poor in spirit

"those who know they need God"

##### for theirs is the kingdom of heaven

"for God in heaven will be their king"

#### Matthew 5:4

##### those who mourn

Possible reasons they are sad are 1) the sinfulness of the world or 2) their own sins or 3) the death of someone. Do not specify the reason for mourning unless your language requires it.

##### they will be comforted

"God will comfort them"

#### Matthew 5:5

##### the meek

"the gentle" or "those who do not rely on their own power"

##### they will inherit the earth

"God will give them the entire earth"

#### Matthew 5:6

##### those who hunger and thirst for righteousness

"those who desire to live right as much as they desire food and drink"

##### they will be filled

"God will fill them" or "God will satisfy them"

#### Matthew 5:8

##### the pure in heart

"those who only want to serve God"

##### they will see God

"God will allow them to live with him"

#### Matthew 5:9

##### the peacemakers

These are the people who help others to have peace with one another.

##### for they will be called sons of God

"for God will call them his children" or "they will be children of God"

##### sons of God

It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human son or child.

#### Matthew 5:10

##### those who have been persecuted

"those people whom others treat unfairly"

##### for righteousness' sake

"because they do what God wants them to do" or "because they do what God wants them to do"

##### theirs is the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation.

#### Matthew 5:11

##### for my sake

"because you follow me" or because you believe in me"

#### Matthew 5:13

##### You are the salt of the earth

"You are like salt for the people of the world" or 2) just as salt preserves food, disciples of Jesus keep people from becoming totally corrupt."

##### if the salt has lost its taste

Possible meanings are 1) "if the salt has lost its power to do things that salt does" or 2) "if the salt has lost its flavor."

##### how can it be made salty again?

"it cannot become useful again."

##### except to be thrown out and trampled under people's feet

"except for people to throw it out into the road and walk on it"

#### Matthew 5:14

##### You are the light of the world

"You are like a light for the people of the world"

##### A city set on a hill cannot be hidden

"no one can hide the lights that shine from a city on a hill" or "Everyone sees the lights of a city on a hill"

#### Matthew 5:15

##### put it under a basket

"place the lamp under a basket." This is saying it is foolish to create light only to hide it so people do not see the light of the lamp.

#### Matthew 5:16

##### Let your light shine before people

"Let your lives be like a light that shines before people"

##### your Father who is in heaven

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 5:17

##### the prophets

"what the prophets wrote"

##### I have come ... to fulfill them

"I have come ... to do the things that are in the law and the writings of the prophets

#### Matthew 5:18

##### truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### until heaven and earth pass away

"as long as the universe lasts"

##### until all things have been accomplished

"until all things have happened" or "until God causes all things to happen"

##### all things

"everything in the law" or "all that is written in the law"

#### Matthew 5:19

##### whoever breaks

"whoever disobeys" or "whoever ignores"

##### the least one of these commandments and teaches

"any of these commandments, even the least important one, and teaches"

##### whoever ... teaches others to do so will be called

"if anyone ... teaches others to do so, God will call that person"

##### least in the kingdom of heaven

"the least important in the heavenly kingdom" or "the least important under the rule of our God in heaven"

##### keeps them and teaches them

"obeys all these commandments and teaches others to do the same"

#### Matthew 5:21

##### it was said to them in ancient times

"God said to those who lived long ago" or "Moses said to your ancestors long ago"

##### will be subject to judgment

Possible meanings are 1) "will have to go to the judge" or 2) "will be in danger of punishment."

#### Matthew 5:22

##### But I say to you

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is important. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis.

##### brother

This probably refers to a fellow believer.

##### worthless person ... fool

Both of these insults represent a person who does not think correctly. "Worthless person" is close to "brainless," where "fool" adds the idea of disobedience to God.

##### council

This was likely a local council, not the main religious council in Jerusalem.

#### Matthew 5:23

##### offering your gift

"giving your gift" or "bringing your gift to God"

##### at the altar

"at God's altar"

##### and there remember

"and while you are standing at the altar you remember"

##### your brother has anything against you

"another person is angry with you because of something you did"

#### Matthew 5:24

##### First be reconciled with your brother

"First make peace with the person"

#### Matthew 5:25

##### your adversary

This is a person who takes someone to court to accuse him of doing something wrong.

##### may hand you over to the judge

"will let the judge deal with you"

##### the officer

a person who has authority to carry out the decisions of a judge

##### you may be thrown into prison

"the officer might put you in prison"

#### Matthew 5:26

##### from there

"from the prison"

#### Matthew 5:27

##### that it was said

"that God said" or "that Moses said." See how you translated a similar phrase in Matthew 5:21.

#### Matthew 5:28

##### But I say to you

See how you translated this in Matthew 5:22.

##### everyone who looks on a woman to lust after her has already committed adultery with her in his heart

This teaches that a man who lusts after a woman is as guilty of adultery as a man who actually commits the act of adultery.

##### to lust after her

“and lusts after her” or “and desires to sleep with her”

##### in his heart

“in his mind” or “in his thoughts”

#### Matthew 5:29

##### If your right eye causes you to stumble

“if looking at something with your right eye tempts you to sin” or “if you are tempted to sin with your right eye”

##### your right eye

The Jews thought of the right hand as more important than the left hand, so the phrase “right eye” represents the more important eye. You may need to translate “right” as “better” or “stronger.”

##### pluck it out

“pluck out your eye” or “destroy it”

##### one of your members should perish

“one part of your body should perish” or “you should lose one part of your body”

##### than that your whole body should be thrown into hell

“than for God to throw your whole body into hell”

#### Matthew 5:30

##### If your right hand causes you to stumble

"If what you can do with your right hand causes you to sin" or "if you are tempted to sin with your right hand"

##### right hand

This means the important hand, as opposed to the left hand. You may need to translate "right" as "better" or "stronger."

##### cut it off

"cut off your hand"

#### Matthew 5:31

##### sends his wife away

"divorces his wife."

##### let him give

"he must give"

#### Matthew 5:32

##### makes her an adulteress

It is the man who divorces the woman improperly who "causes her to commit adultery." In many cultures it would be normal for her to remarry, but if the divorce is improper, such a remarriage is adultery.

##### marries her after she has been divorced

"marries her after her husband has divorced her" or "marries the divorced woman"

#### Matthew 5:33

##### Again, you have heard

"Also, you have heard" or "Here is another example. You have heard"

##### Do not swear a false oath, but carry out your oaths to the Lord.

"Do not swear that you will do something and then not do it. Instead do whatever you have sworn to the Lord that you will do"

#### Matthew 5:34

##### General Information:

In Matthew 5:34-37, some people were teaching that if a person swears by God that he will do something, then he must do it, but if he swears by something else, then it is less offensive if he does not do what he swore to do. Jesus says that swearing by heaven or earth or Jerusalem is just as serious as swearing by God because those things all belong to God.

##### swear not at all

"do not swear at all" or "do not swear by anything"

##### neither by heaven

"Do not swear by heaven"

##### it is the throne of God

"it is from here that God rules"

#### Matthew 5:35

##### nor by the earth ... nor by Jerusalem

"do not swear by the earth ... and do not swear by Jerusalem." Jesus continues to name things that people should not swear by.

##### it is the footstool for his feet

"it is like a footstool where a king rests his feet"

##### for it is the city of the great King

"for it is the city that belongs to God, the great King"

#### Matthew 5:36

##### Neither swear by your head

"And do not swear by your head." See how you translated "swear" in Matthew 5:34.

#### Matthew 5:37

##### let your speech be 'Yes, yes,' or 'No, no.'

"if you mean 'yes,' say 'yes,' and if you mean 'no,' say 'no.'"

#### Matthew 5:38

##### that it was said

See how you translated this in Matthew 5:27

##### eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth

The law of Moses allowed a person to harm a person in the same way he had harmed him, but he could not harm him more than that..

#### Matthew 5:39

##### one who is evil

"an evil person" or "someone who harms you"

##### strikes

hits with the back of an open hand

##### turn to him the other also

"let him hit your other cheek also"

#### Matthew 5:40

##### tunic ... cloak

The "tunic" was worn close to the body, like a heavy shirt or a sweater. The "cloak," the more valuable of the two, was worn over the "tunic" for warmth and also used as a blanket for warmth at night.

##### let that person also have your cloak

"give that person your cloak, too"

#### Matthew 5:41

##### Whoever compels you to go one mile

"If someone forces you to walk one mile with him"

##### one mile

This is one thousand paces, the distance a Roman soldier could legally force someone to carry something for him. If "mile" is confusing, it can be translated as "one kilometer."

##### go with him two

"go with him twice as far" or "go with him two miles"

#### Matthew 5:42

##### do not turn away from

"do not refuse to lend to."

#### Matthew 5:43

##### General Information:

God taught in the law that people must love their neighbors. Some people said that God taught that people should hate their enemies.

##### your neighbor

"your countrymen" or "those who belong to your people group"

#### Matthew 5:44

##### I say to you ... your enemies ... pray ... persecute you

All instances of "you" and "your," as well as the command to pray, are plural.

#### Matthew 5:45

##### you may be sons of your Father

It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to human sons or children.

#### Matthew 5:46

##### what reward do you get?

"you will get no reward."

##### Do not even the tax collectors do the same thing?

"Even the tax collectors do the same thing."

#### Matthew 5:47

##### what do you do more than others?

"you do nothing more than others."

##### greet

This is a general term for showing a desire for the well-being of the hearer.

##### Do not even the Gentiles do the same thing?

"Even the Gentiles do the same thing."

#### Matthew 5:48

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

Chapter 6

1"Watch out that you do not do your acts of righteousness before people to be seen by them, or else you will have no reward from your Father who is in heaven.2So when you give alms, do not sound a trumpet before yourself as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, so that they may be glorified by people. Truly I say to you, they have received their reward in full.3But when you give alms, do not let your left hand know what your right hand is doing4so that your alms may be given in secret. Then your Father who sees in secret will reward you.

5"When you pray, do not be like the hypocrites, for they love to stand and pray in the synagogues and on the street corners so that they may be seen by people. Truly I say to you, they have received their reward.6But you, when you pray, enter your inner chamber. Shut the door and pray to your Father, who is in secret. Then your Father who sees in secret will reward you.7When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the pagans do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.8Therefore, do not be like them, for your Father knows what things you need before you ask him.

9Therefore pray like this:  
  
'Our Father in heaven,may your name be honored as holy.10May your kingdom come.May your will be doneon earth as it is in heaven.11Give us today our daily bread.12Forgive us our debts,as we also have forgiven our debtors.13Do not bring us into temptation,but deliver us from the evil one.' [1](#footnote-target-1)14For if you forgive people their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you.15But if you do not forgive their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

16"When you fast, do not have a sad face as the hypocrites do, for they disfigure their faces so that they may appear to people to be fasting. Truly I say to you, they have received their reward in full.17But you, when you fast, anoint your head and wash your face18so that you may not appear to people to be fasting, but only to your Father who is in secret; and your Father who sees in secret will reward you.

19"Do not store up for yourselves treasures on the earth, where moth and rust destroy, and where thieves break in and steal.20Instead, store up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust destroys, and where thieves do not break in and steal.21For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.22The eye is the lamp of the body. Therefore, if your eye is good, your whole body is filled with light.23But if your eye is bad, your whole body is full of darkness. Therefore, if the light that is in you is actually darkness, how great is that darkness!24No one can serve two masters, for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will be devoted to one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and wealth.25Therefore I say to you, do not worry about your life, what you will eat or what you will drink; or about your body, what you will wear. For is not life more than food, and the body more than clothes?26Look at the birds in the sky. They do not sow or reap or gather into barns, but your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you not more valuable than they are?27Which one of you by being anxious can add one cubit to his lifespan?28Why are you anxious about clothing? Think about the lilies in the fields, how they grow. They do not labor, and they do not spin cloth.29Yet I say to you, even Solomon in all his glory was not clothed like one of these.30If God so clothes the grass in the fields, which exists today and tomorrow is thrown into the oven, how much more will he clothe you, you of little faith?31Therefore do not be anxious and say, 'What will we eat?' or 'What will we drink?' or 'What clothes will we wear?'32For the Gentiles search for these things, and your heavenly Father knows that you need them.33But seek first his kingdom and his righteousness, and all these things will be given to you.34Therefore, do not be anxious for tomorrow, for tomorrow will be anxious for itself. Each day has enough evil of its own.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have For yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever. Amen .

#### Matthew 6:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples in his Sermon on the Mount, which began in Matthew 5:3.

##### Watch out

"Be careful" or "Beware"

##### before people to be seen by them

"in front of people just so that they can see you and think well of you"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 6:2

##### So when you give alms

"So when you give to poor people"

##### do not sound a trumpet before yourself

"do not draw attention to yourself like someone who plays a loud trumpet in a crowd"

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

#### Matthew 6:3

##### do not let your left hand know what your right hand is doing

“do it so secretly that even your left hand does not know that your right hand is giving alms”

#### Matthew 6:4

##### your alms may be given in secret

"you can give to the poor without other people knowing"

#### Matthew 6:5

##### so that they may be seen by people

"so that people will see them and give them honor"

#### Matthew 6:6

##### enter your inner chamber. Shut the door

“go into room alone. Close the door” or “go where you can be alone”

##### Father, who is in secret

“Father, who is with you in private” or 2) no one can see God. Alternate translation: “Father, who is invisible”

#your Father who sees in secret

“your Father will see what you do in private and”

#### Matthew 6:7

##### do not make useless repetitions

"do not keeping repeating meaningless words"

##### they will be heard

"their false gods will hear them"

#### Matthew 6:9

##### Our Father in heaven

This is the beginning of the prayer and how Jesus teaches the people to address God.

##### may your name be honored as holy

Here "your name" refers to God himself. Alternate translation: "may people honor you as holy" or "may people honor you because you are holy"

#### Matthew 6:10

##### May your kingdom come

"May you rule over everyone and everything completely"

##### May your will be done on earth as it is in heaven

"May everything on earth happen in accordance with your will, just as everything in heaven does"

#### Matthew 6:11

##### daily bread

Here "bread" refers to food in general.

#### Matthew 6:12

##### debts

A debt is what one person owes another.

##### our debtors

A debtor is a person who owes a debt to another person.

#### Matthew 6:13

##### Do not bring us into temptation

"Do not let anything tempt us" or "Do not let anything make us want to sin"

#### Matthew 6:14

##### their trespasses

"when they trespass against you" or "when they do you wrong"

#### Matthew 6:15

##### their trespasses ... your trespasses

"them when they trespass against you ... you when you trespass against God" or "them when they do things that harm you ... you when you do things that make your Father angry"

#### Matthew 6:16

##### they disfigure their faces

"they make their faces look dirty" or "they put ashes on their faces"

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

#### Matthew 6:17

##### anoint your head

Jesus means that people should look the same whether they are fasting or not.

#### Matthew 6:18

##### who sees in secret

"who sees what you do in private."

#### Matthew 6:19

##### treasures

"riches" or "valuable things"

##### where moth and rust destroy

"where moths and rust ruin things"

##### moth

a small, flying insect that destroys cloth

#### Matthew 6:20

##### store up for yourselves treasures in heaven

This means to do good things on earth so God will reward you in heaven.

#### Matthew 6:21

##### there will your heart be also

Here "heart" means a person's thoughts and desires.

#### Matthew 6:22

##### The eye is the lamp of the body

"A person's eyes are like a lamp for his body"

##### if your eye is good

"if your eye is noble" or "if your eyes see clearly."

##### your whole body is filled with light

Possible meanings are 1) "you are full of righteousness" or 2) "you understand what is truly good"

#### Matthew 6:23

##### if your eye is bad, your whole body is full of darkness

Possible meanings are 1) "if your eye does not see clearly, it fills your body with darkness" or 2) "if your eye is bad, it shows that your body is full of darkness."

##### your whole body is full of darkness

Possible meanings are "you are full of evil" or 2) "you will understand nothing about what is right."

##### how great is that darkness!

"then that darkness is extremely dark"

#### Matthew 6:24

##### You cannot serve God and wealth

"You cannot love God and money at the same time"

#### Matthew 6:25

##### I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### is not life more than food, and the body more than clothes?

"life is more than what you eat, and your body is more than what you wear." or "there are things in life that are more important than food, and there are things concerning the body that are more important than clothes."

#### Matthew 6:26

##### gather into barns

"store food in barns"

##### Are you not more valuable than they are?

"Obviously you are more valuable than birds."

#### Matthew 6:27

##### Which one of you by being anxious can add one cubit to his lifespan?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "None of you can add a cubit to your lifespan by worrying." or "Worrying will not help any of you make your life even one hour longer."

##### one cubit

A cubit, a measure of a little less than half a meter, is used here to refer to a short period of time. Alternate translation: "one hour" or "one minute"

#### Matthew 6:28

##### Why are you anxious about clothing?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "There is no reason to be worried about clothing."

##### lilies

A lily is a kind of wild flower.

##### they do not spin cloth

"they do not spin thread for cloth" or "they do not make cloth"

#### Matthew 6:29

##### even Solomon ... was not clothed like one of these

Jesus speaks about the lilies as if they were people who wore clothes. The lilies were plants having beautiful and colorful flowers.

##### was not clothed like one of these

"did not wear clothes that are as beautiful as these lilies"

#### Matthew 6:30

##### so clothes the grass in the fields

"makes such beautiful flowers to be like clothing for the grass in the field"

##### is thrown into the oven

"someone throws it into a fire" or "someone burns it"

##### how much more will he clothe you ... faith?

"he will certainly clothe you ... faith."

##### you of little faith

"you who have such little faith." Jesus addresses the people this way because their anxiety about food and clothing shows they have little faith in God.

#### Matthew 6:31

##### What clothes will we wear

"What possessions will we have"

#### Matthew 6:32

##### For the Gentiles search for these things

"For the Gentiles are concerned about what they will eat, drink, and wear"

##### your heavenly Father knows that you need them

Jesus is implying that God will make sure their basic needs are met.

#### Matthew 6:33

##### seek first his kingdom and his righteousness

"concern yourselves first with serving God, who is your king, and doing what is right"

##### all these things will be given to you

"God will provide all these things for you"

#### Matthew 6:34

##### tomorrow will be anxious for itself

"tomorrow there will be other things to be anxious about"

##### Each day has enough evil of its own

"Each day has enough trouble of its own"

Chapter 7

1"Do not judge, and you will not be judged.2For with the judgment you judge, you will be judged, and with the measure that you measure, it will be measured out to you.3Why do you look at the tiny piece of straw that is in your brother's eye, but you do not take notice of the log that is in your own eye?4How can you say to your brother, 'Let me take out the piece of straw that is in your eye,' while the log is in your own eye?5You hypocrite! First take the log out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to take out the piece of straw that is in your brother's eye.6Do not give what is holy to the dogs, and do not throw your pearls in front of the pigs. Otherwise they may trample them underfoot, and then turn and tear you to pieces.

7"Ask, and it will be given to you. Seek, and you will find. Knock, and it will be opened to you.8For everyone who asks, receives; everyone who seeks, finds; and to the person who knocks, it will be opened.9Or which one of you, if his son asks for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?10Or if he asks for a fish, will give him a snake?11Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give good things to those who ask him?12Therefore, whatever things you want people to do to you, you should also do to them, for this is the law and the prophets.

13"Enter through the narrow gate. For wide is the gate and broad is the way that leads to destruction, and there are many people who go through it.14But the gate is narrow and the way is difficult that leads to life, and there are few who find it.

15"Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing but are truly ravenous wolves.16By their fruits you will know them. Do people gather grapes from a thornbush or figs from thistles?17In the same way, every good tree produces good fruit, but the bad tree produces bad fruit.18A good tree cannot produce bad fruit, nor can a bad tree produce good fruit.19Every tree that does not produce good fruit is chopped down and thrown into the fire.20So then, you will recognize them by their fruits.21Not everyone who says to me, 'Lord, Lord,' will enter into the kingdom of heaven, but only those who do the will of my Father who is in heaven.22Many people will say to me in that day, 'Lord, Lord, did we not prophesy in your name, in your name drive out demons, and in your name do many miracles?'23Then will I openly declare to them, 'I never knew you! Get away from me, you who practice lawlessness!'

24"Therefore, everyone who hears my words and obeys them will be like a wise man who built his house upon a rock.25The rain came down, the floods came, and the winds blew and beat upon that house, but it did not fall down, for it was founded on the rock.26But everyone who hears my words and does not obey them will be like a foolish man who built his house upon the sand.27The rain came down, the floods came, and the winds blew and struck that house, and it fell, and its destruction was complete."

28It came about that when Jesus finished speaking these words, the crowds were astonished by his teaching,29for he taught them as one who had authority, and not as their scribes.

#### Matthew 7:1

##### Do not judge

"Do not condemn others"

##### you will not be judged

"God will not judge you" or "God will not condemn you"

#### Matthew 7:2

##### with the judgment you judge, you will be judged

"God will judge you in the same way you judge others"

##### measure

Possible meanings are 1) this is the amount of punishment given or 2) this is the standard used for judgment.

##### it will be measured out to you

"God will measure it out to you"

#### Matthew 7:3

##### Why do you look ... brother's eye, but you do not take notice of the log that is in your own eye?

"You look ... brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye." or "Do not look ... brother's eye and ignore the log that is in your own eye."

##### the tiny piece of straw that is in your brother's eye

This refers to the less important faults of a fellow believer.

##### tiny piece of straw

"speck" or "splinter" or "bit of dust." Use a word for the smallest thing that commonly falls into a person's eyes.

##### brother

All occurrences of "brother" in 7:3-5 refer to a fellow believer, not to a literal brother or a neighbor.

##### the log that is in your own eye

This is refers to a person's serious faults. Jesus is saying that a person should pay attention to his own serious faults before he deals with another person's less important faults.

##### log

the largest part of a tree that someone has cut down

#### Matthew 7:4

##### How can you say ... your own eye?

"You should not say ... your own eye."

#### Matthew 7:6

##### dogs ... pigs

Jews considered these animals dirty, and God told the Jews not to eat them. Jesus used these words to refer to wicked people who do not value holy things. It would be best to translate these words literally.

##### pearls

These are similar to round, valuable stones or beads. Jesus used this word to refer to the knowledge of God or precious things in general.

##### they may trample

"the pigs may trample"

##### then turn and tear

"the dogs will then turn and tear"

#### Matthew 7:7

##### Ask ... Seek ... Knock

These are word pictures of praying to God. The verb form shows that we are to keep praying until he answers.

##### Ask

"Ask for what you need" or "Ask God for what you need"

##### it will be given to you

"you will receive it" or "he will give it to you"

##### Seek

"Look for what you need"

##### Knock

"Call at the door"

##### it will be opened to you

"the door will be opened for you" or "God will open it for you"

#### Matthew 7:9

##### Or which one of you ... a stone?

"There is not one person among you ... a stone."

##### a loaf of bread

"some food"

##### stone

This word should be translated literally.

#### Matthew 7:10

##### Or if he asks for a fish, will give him a snake?

"And there is not one person among you, if his son asks for a fish, will give him a snake."

##### fish ... snake

These words should be translated literally.

#### Matthew 7:11

##### how much more will your Father in heaven give ... him?

"then your Father in heaven will most certainly give ... him."

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 7:12

##### for this is the law and the prophets

"for this is what Moses and the prophets teach in the scriptures"

#### Matthew 7:13

##### Enter through the narrow gate ... many people who go through it

This is an image of people traveling on a road and going through a gate into a kingdom. One kingdom is easy to enter; the other is hard to enter.

##### Wide is the gate and broad is the way that leads to destruction

"The gate is wide and the road is broad that leads to destruction" or "The wide gate and the broad road lead to destruction"

##### to destruction

"to the place where people are destroyed"

#### Matthew 7:14

##### the gate is narrow and the way is difficult that leads to life

"the narrow gate and the difficult path lead to life"

##### to life

"to the place where people live"

#### Matthew 7:15

##### Beware of

"Be on guard against"

##### who come to you in sheep's clothing but are truly ravenous wolves

"who look like sheep but are really ravenous wolves" or "who appear to be harmless like sheep, but are really like ravenous wolves"

##### ravenous wolves

wolves that are extremely hungry and that consume or destroy everything they touch

#### Matthew 7:16

##### By their fruits you will know them

"Just as you know a tree by its fruit, you will know false prophets by how they act" or "You will know them by the results of their teaching”

##### Do people gather ... thistles?

"People do not gather ... thistles."

#### Matthew 7:17

##### every good tree produces good fruit

Jesus refers to good prophets who produce good works or words.

##### the bad tree produces bad fruit

Jesus refers to bad prophets who produce evil works.

#### Matthew 7:19

##### is chopped down and thrown into the fire

"people chop down and throw into the fire" or "people chop down and burn"

#### Matthew 7:20

##### you will recognize them by their fruits

"You will know what they are really like by their fruits"

#### Matthew 7:21

##### Not everyone who says to me, 'Lord, Lord,' will enter

"Some who say to me, 'Lord, Lord,' will not enter"

##### will enter into the kingdom of heaven

"will live with God in heaven when he shows himself to be king"

##### only those who do the will of my Father who is in heaven

"only those who do what my Father in heaven wants will enter"

#### Matthew 7:22

##### in that day

"on judgment day"

##### did we not prophesy ... drive out demons ... do many miracles?

"we prophesied ... we drove out demons ... we did many miracles."

##### in your name

Possible meanings are 1) "by your authority" or "by your power" or 2) "because we were doing what you wanted us to do" or 3) "because we asked you for the power to do it"

#### Matthew 7:23

##### I never knew you

"You are not my follower" or "I have nothing to do with you"

#### Matthew 7:24

##### Therefore

"For that reason"

##### my words

"What I Say"

##### rock

This is the bedrock below the topsoil and clay, not a large stone or boulder above the ground.

#### Matthew 7:25

##### it was founded on the rock

"its foundation was on the rock" or he built it on the firm rock"

#### Matthew 7:26

##### like a foolish man who built his house upon the sand

Jesus compares those who do not obey his words to foolish house-builders. Only a fool would build a house on a sandy place where rain, floods, and wind can sweep the sand away.

#### Matthew 7:27

##### fell

collapsed

##### its destruction was complete

:It was completely destroyed"

#### Matthew 7:28

##### It came about that when

"When" or "After"

##### were astonished by his teaching

"were amazed by the way he taught"

#### Matthew 7:29

##### as one who had authority

"with authority"

Chapter 8

1When Jesus had come down from the hill, large crowds followed him.2Behold, a leper came to him and bowed before him, saying, "Lord, if you are willing, you can make me clean."

3Jesus reached out his hand and touched him, saying, "I am willing. Be clean." Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy.4Jesus said to him, "See that you say nothing to any man. Go on your way, show yourself to the priest, and offer the gift that Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."

5When he was coming into Capernaum, a centurion came to him, begging him6and saying, "Lord, my servant lies at home paralyzed and in terrible agony."

7Then Jesus said to him, "I will come and heal him."

8The centurion answered and said, "Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. Only say the word and my servant will be healed.9For I also am a man under authority, and I have soldiers under me. I say to this one, 'Go,' and he goes, and to another one, 'Come,' and he comes, and to my servant, 'Do this,' and he does it."

10When Jesus heard this, he was amazed and said to those who were following him, "Truly I say to you, I have not found anyone with such faith in Israel.11I tell you, many will come from the east and the west, and they will recline at the table with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, in the kingdom of heaven.12But the sons of the kingdom will be cast out into the outer darkness, where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth."13Jesus said to the centurion, "Go! As you have believed, so may it be done for you." And the servant was healed at that very hour.

14When Jesus had come into Peter's house, he saw Peter's mother-in-law lying sick with a fever.15Jesus touched her hand, and the fever left her. Then she got up and started serving him.16When evening had come, the people brought to Jesus many who were possessed by demons. He drove out the spirits with a word and healed all who were sick.17This was to fulfill what was spoken through Isaiah the prophet, saying,  
  
"He took our illnesses and bore our diseases."

18Now when Jesus saw the crowd around him, he gave instructions to leave for the other side of the Sea of Galilee.19Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go."

20Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."

21Another of the disciples said to him, "Lord, allow me first to go and bury my father."

22But Jesus said to him, "Follow me, and leave the dead to bury their own dead."

23When Jesus had entered a boat, his disciples followed him into it.24Behold, there arose a great storm on the sea, so that the boat was covered with the waves. But Jesus was asleep.25The disciples came to him and woke him up, saying, "Save us, Lord; we are perishing!"

26Jesus said to them, "Why are you afraid, you of little faith?" Then he got up and rebuked the winds and the sea. Then there was a great calm.

27The men marveled and said, "What sort of man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey him?"

28When Jesus had come to the other side and to the country of the Gadarenes, two men who were possessed by demons met him. They were coming out of the tombs and were very violent, so that no traveler could pass that way.29Behold, they cried out and said, "What do we have to do with you, Son of God? Have you come here to torment us before the set time?"

30Now a herd of many pigs was there feeding, not too far away from them.31The demons kept pleading with Jesus and saying, "If you cast us out, send us away into that herd of pigs."

32Jesus said to them, "Go!" The demons came out and went into the pigs; and behold, the whole herd rushed down the steep hill into the sea and they died in the water.33Those who had been tending the pigs ran away and they went into the city and reported everything, especially what had happened to the men who had been possessed by demons.34Behold, all the city came out to meet Jesus. When they saw him, they begged him to leave their region.

#### Matthew 8:2

##### Behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### a leper

"a man who had leprosy" or "a man who had a skin disease"

##### bowed before him

This is a sign of humble respect before Jesus.

##### if you are willing

"if you want to"

##### you can make me clean

"you can heal me" or "please heal me"

#### Matthew 8:3

##### he was cleansed of his leprosy

"At that moment the leprosy left him" or "the leprosy ended" or "he became well"

#### Matthew 8:4

##### say nothing to any man

"do not say anything to anyone" or "do not tell anyone I healed you"

##### show yourself to the priest

Jewish law required that the person show his healed skin to the priest, who would then allow him or her to return to the community, to be with other people.

##### offer the gift that Moses commanded, for a testimony to them

The law of Moses required that someone healed of leprosy give a thanksgiving offering to the priest. When the priest accepted the gift, people would know that the man had been healed.

##### to them

This can possibly refer to 1) the priests or 2) all the people or 3) the critics of Jesus. If possible, use a pronoun that could refer to any of these groups.

#### Matthew 8:5

##### When he was coming into Capernaum

"When Jesus was coming into Capernaum"

#### Matthew 8:6

##### paralyzed

unable to move because of disease or stroke

#### Matthew 8:7

##### I will come and heal him

"I will come to your house and make your servant well"

#### Matthew 8:8

##### under my roof

"into my house"

##### say the word

"give the command"

##### will be healed

"will become well"

#### Matthew 8:9

##### I also am a man under authority, and I have soldiers under me

"I also have to obey my leaders, and I have soldiers who have to obey me"

#### Matthew 8:10

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### I have not found anyone with such faith in Israel

Jesus's hearers would have thought that the Jews in Israel, who claim to be children of God, would have greater faith than anyone. Jesus is saying they are wrong and that the centurion's faith was greater.

#### Matthew 8:11

##### you

Here "you" is plural and refers to "those who were following him" in Matthew 8:10.

##### from the east and the west

"from everywhere" or "from far away in every direction"

##### recline at the table

"sit at the feast"

##### in the kingdom of heaven

"when our God in heaven shows that he is king"

#### Matthew 8:12

##### sons of the kingdom will be cast out

"God will throw the sons of the kingdom out"

##### the sons of the kingdom

"the citizens of the kingdom"or "those who should have allowed God to rule over them"

##### the outer darkness

"the distant dark place"

##### weeping and grinding of teeth

"weeping and showing their extreme suffering"

#### Matthew 8:13

##### so may it be done for you

"so may it happen to you" or "so I will do it for you"

##### the servant was healed

"the servant became well"

##### at that very hour

"at the exact time Jesus said he would heal the servant"

#### Matthew 8:14

##### Peter's mother-in-law

"the mother of Peter's wife"

#### Matthew 8:15

##### the fever left her

"the fever ended"

#### Matthew 8:16

##### many who were possessed by demons

"many people whom demons possessed" or "many people whom demons controlled"

##### He drove out the spirits with a word

"By speaking, he made the spirits go away" or "He commanded the spirits to leave and they left"

#### Matthew 8:17

##### This was to fulfill

"Jesus did this to fulfill"

##### what was spoken through Isaiah the prophet

"what Isaiah the prophet had spoken"

##### He took our illnesses and bore our diseases

"Truly he took our illnesses"

#### Matthew 8:18

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the main story. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

##### he gave instructions

"he told his disciples"

#### Matthew 8:19

##### Then

This means after Jesus "gave instructions" but before he could get into the boat.

#### Matthew 8:20

##### Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests

This means even wild animals have somewhere to rest.

##### Foxes

Foxes are animals like dogs. make holes in the ground to live in.

##### the Son of Man

"I, the Son of man" or "the man from heaven" or "the One who became a human"

##### nowhere to lay his head

"no place of his own to sleep"

#### Matthew 8:21

##### allow me first to go and bury my father

It is unclear whether the man's father has died and he will bury him immediately, or if the man wants to wait until his father dies so he can bury him before he follows Jesus.

#### Matthew 8:22

##### leave the dead to bury their own dead

"let spiritually dead people bury their own people who have died." The main point is that a disciple must not let anything delay him from following Jesus.

#### Matthew 8:24

##### Behold

"Suddenly" or "Without warning"

##### there arose a great storm on the sea

"a powerful storm arose on the sea"

##### so that the boat was covered with the waves

"so that the waves covered the boat"

#### Matthew 8:25

##### woke him up, saying, "Save us

Possible meanings are 1) they first woke Jesus and then they said, "Save us" or 2) as they were waking Jesus up, they were saying "Save us."

##### we are perishing

"we are going to die" or "we are about to die"

#### Matthew 8:26

##### Why are you afraid ... faith?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not be afraid ... faith!" or "There is nothing for you to be afraid of ... faith!"

##### you of little faith

"you who have such little faith." Jesus addresses his disciples this way because their anxiety about the storm shows they have little faith in him to control it. See how you translated this in (Matthew 6:30).

#### Matthew 8:27

##### What sort of man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey him?

"This man is unlike any other person! Even the wind and the waves obey him!"

#### Matthew 8:28

##### to the other side

"to the other side of the Sea of Galilee"

##### the Gadarenes

This name refers to the people who lived in the town of Gadara.

##### They ... were very violent, so that no traveler could pass that way

The demons that were controlling these two men were so dangerous that no one could go through that area.

#### Matthew 8:29

##### Behold

This word introduces something surprising. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### What do we have to do with you, Son of God?

"You have nothing to do with us, Son of God!" or "You have no right to bother us, Son of God!"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus, which describes his relationship to God.

##### Have you come here to torment us before the set time?

"You have no right to punishment us before the time for that!"

#### Matthew 8:30

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew tells background information about a herd of pigs that had been there before Jesus arrived.

#### Matthew 8:31

##### If you cast us out

"Because you are going to cast us out"

#### Matthew 8:32

##### The demons came out and went into the pigs

"The demons left the men and entered the pigs"

##### behold

This alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### rushed down the steep hill

"ran quickly down the steep slope"

##### they died in the water

"they fell into the water and drowned"

#### Matthew 8:33

##### tending the pigs

"taking care of the pigs"

#### Matthew 8:34

##### Behold

This word introduces another surprising event.

##### all the city

The word "city" here refers to the people of the city. The word "all" is probably an exaggeration to emphasize that very many people came out. Not necessarily every person came out.

##### Their Region

"their area"

Chapter 9

1Jesus entered a boat, crossed over, and came into his own city.2Behold, they brought to him a paralyzed man lying on a mat. Seeing their faith, Jesus said to the paralyzed man, "Son, be encouraged. Your sins have been forgiven."

3Behold, some of the scribes said among themselves, "This man is blaspheming."4Jesus knew their thoughts and said, "Why are you thinking evil in your hearts?5For which is easier, to say, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?6But that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins, ... " he said to the paralytic, "Get up, pick up your mat, and go to your house."7Then the man got up and went away to his house.8When the crowds saw this, they were afraid and glorified God, who had given such authority to people.9As Jesus passed by from there, he saw a man named Matthew sitting at the tax collector's tent. He said to him, "Follow me." He got up and followed him.

10As Jesus sat down to eat in the house, behold, many tax collectors and sinners came and dined with Jesus and his disciples.11When the Pharisees saw it, they said to his disciples, "Why does your teacher eat with tax collectors and sinners?"

12When Jesus heard this, he said, "People who are strong in body do not need a physician; only those who are sick do.13You should go and learn what this means: 'I desire mercy and not sacrifice.' For I came not to call the righteous to repent, but sinners."

14Then the disciples of John came to him and said, "Why do we and the Pharisees often fast, but your disciples do not fast?"

15Jesus said to them, "Can the sons of the wedding hall mourn while the bridegroom is still with them? But the days will come when the bridegroom will be taken away from them, and then they will fast.16No man puts a piece of new cloth on an old garment, for the patch will tear away from the garment, and a worse tear will be made.17Neither do people put new wine into old wineskins. If they do, the skins will burst, the wine will be spilled, and the wineskins will be destroyed. Instead, they put new wine into fresh wineskins, and both will be preserved."

18While Jesus was saying these things to them, behold, an official came and bowed down to him. He said, "My daughter has just now died, but come and lay your hand on her, and she will live."19Then Jesus got up and followed him, and so did his disciples.

20Behold, a woman who suffered from a discharge of blood for twelve years came up behind Jesus and touched the edge of his garment.21For she had said to herself, "If only I touch his clothes, I will be made well."

22But Jesus turned and saw her, and said, "Daughter, take courage; your faith has made you well." And the woman was healed from that hour.23When Jesus came into the official's house, he saw the flute players and the crowd making a commotion.24He said, "Go away, for the girl is not dead, but she is asleep." But they laughed at him in mockery.25When the crowd had been put outside, he entered the room and took her by the hand, and the girl got up.26The news about this spread into all that region.

27As Jesus passed by from there, two blind men followed him. They kept shouting and saying, "Have mercy on us, Son of David!"

28When Jesus had come into the house, the blind men came to him. Jesus said to them, "Do you believe that I can do this?"

They said to him, "Yes, Lord."

29Then Jesus touched their eyes and said, "Let it be done to you according to your faith,"30and their eyes were opened. Then Jesus strictly commanded them and said, "See that no one knows about this."31But the two men went out and spread the news about this throughout that region.

32As those two men were going away, behold, a mute man possessed by a demon was brought to Jesus.33When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!"

34But the Pharisees were saying, "By the ruler of the demons, he drives out demons."

35Jesus went about all the cities and the villages. He continued teaching in their synagogues, preaching the gospel of the kingdom and healing all kinds of disease and all kinds of sickness.36When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged. They were like sheep without a shepherd.37He said to his disciples, "The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few.38Therefore urgently pray to the Lord of the harvest, so that he may send out laborers into his harvest."

#### Matthew 9:1

##### into his own city

"to the town where he lived." This refers to Capernaum.

#### Matthew 9:2

##### they brought

"some men from the city brought"

##### Son

The man was not Jesus's real son. Jesus was speaking to him politely. If this is confusing, it can also be translated "My friend" or "Young man" or even omitted.

##### Your sins have been forgiven

"I have forgiven your sins"

#### Matthew 9:3

##### said among themselves

Possible meanings are 1) each one was thinking to himself, or 2) they were speaking among themselves.

##### blaspheming

The scribes thought that Jesus was insulting God because he claimed do something that only God can do.

#### Matthew 9:4

##### knew their thoughts

Jesus knew what they were thinking

##### Why are you thinking evil in your hearts?

'You are thinking evil in your hearts." or "You should not think evil thoughts."

##### evil

This is moral evil or wickedness, not simply error in fact.

#### Matthew 9:5

##### For which is easier, to say, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?

"For it is easier to say 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up and walk.'"

##### Your sins are forgiven

"I have forgiven your sins"

#### Matthew 9:6

##### go to your house

Jesus is not forbidding the man to go elsewhere. He is giving the man the opportunity to go home.

#### Matthew 9:8

##### they were afraid

Possible meanings are 1) they were afraid, or 2) they were in awe. "Awe" is a feeling of wonder a person has when they see or experience something great or powerful.

##### who had given

"because he had given"

##### such authority

This refers to the authority to declare sins forgiven.

#### Matthew 9:9

##### passed by

"was leaving" or "was going"

##### Matthew ... him ... He

Church tradition says that this Matthew is the author of this Gospel, but the text gives no reason to change the pronouns from "him" and "He" to "me" and "I."

##### He said to him

"Jesus said to Matthew"

##### He got up and followed him

"Matthew got up and followed Jesus." This means Matthew became Jesus's disciple.

#### Matthew 9:10

##### the house

This is probably Matthew's house, but it could also be Jesus's house. Specify only if needed to avoid confusion.

##### behold

Here this word introduces a surprising event. Your language may have a way of doing this

##### sinners

people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

#### Matthew 9:11

##### When the Pharisees saw it

"When the Pharisees saw that Jesus was eating with the tax collectors and sinful people"

##### Why does your teacher eat with tax collectors and sinners?

"Your teacher should not eat with tax collectors and sinner." The Pharisees were criticizing what Jesus was doing.

#### Matthew 9:12

##### When Jesus heard this

"When Jesus heard what the Pharisees said about him"

##### People who are strong in body do not need a physician, only those who are sick do

"People who are healthy do not need a doctor; only people who are sick need a doctor." Jesus means that just as sick people need a doctor, sinners need him.

#### Matthew 9:13

##### You should go and learn what this means

Jesus is about to quote the scriptures. Alternate translation: "You should learn what God meant when he said this"

##### For I came

Here "I" refers to Jesus.

##### the righteous

"those who think they are righteous"

##### but sinners

"but I came to call sinners to repent"

#### Matthew 9:14

##### do not fast

“do not stop eating at certain times” or “continue to eat regularly”

#### Matthew 9:15

##### Can the sons of the wedding hall mourn while the bridegroom is still with them?

"The sons of the wedding hall never mourn while the bridegroom is still with them."

##### sons of the wedding hall

"bridegroom's attendants"

##### the days will come when

"the time will come when" or "someday"

##### the bridegroom will be taken away from them

"the bridegroom will not be able to be with them any longer" or "someone will take the bridegroom away from them"

#### Matthew 9:16

##### No man puts a piece of new cloth on an old garment

"No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment" or "People do not sew a piece of new cloth as a patch old clothing"

##### the patch will tear away from the garment

If someone were to wash the garment, the patch of new cloth would shrink, but the old garment would not shrink. This would tear the patch off the garment and leave a bigger hole.

#### Matthew 9:17

##### Neither do people put

"Neither does anyone pur" or "People never put"

##### new wine

"unfermented wine" or "grape juice" or "unfermented fruit juice"

##### old wineskins

This refers to wineskins that have stretched and dried out because they were already used for fermenting wine.

##### wineskins

"wine bags" or "skin bags." These were bags made out of animal skins.

##### the wine will be spilled, and the wineskins will be destroyed

"and this will ruin the wineskins and spill the wine"

##### the skins will burst

When the new wine ferments and expands, old wineskins tear open because they can no longer stretch out.

##### fresh wineskins

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags." This refers to wineskins that no one has used.

##### both will be preserved

"this will keep safe both the wineskins and the wine"

#### Matthew 9:18

##### behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### bowed down to him

This is a way someone would show respect in Jewish culture.

#### Matthew 9:19

##### his disciples

"Jesus's disciples"

#### Matthew 9:20

##### Behold

The word "Behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### who suffered from a discharge of blood

"who had been bleeding" or "who frequently had a flow of blood." She was probably bleeding from her womb even when it was not the normal time for it. Some cultures may have a polite way of referring to this condition.

##### his garment

"his robe" or "what he was wearing"

#### Matthew 9:21

##### For she had said to herself, "If only I touch his clothes, I will be made well."

She said this to herself before she touched Jesus's garment. This tells why she touched Jesus's garment.

#### Matthew 9:22

##### Daughter

The woman was not Jesus's real daughter. Jesus was speaking to her politely. If this is confusing, it can also be translated "Young woman" or even omitted.

##### your faith has made you well

"because you believed in me, I will heal you" or “because you believed, you will become well”

##### the woman was healed from that hour

“the woman became well at that moment”

#### Matthew 9:23

##### Connecting Statement:

This returns to the account of Jesus bringing the daughter of the Jewish official back to life.

##### the flute players and the crowd making a commotion

This was a common way to mourn for someone who has died.

##### and the crowd making a commotion

"and the crowd making a lot of noise" or "and the noisy crowd"

#### Matthew 9:24

##### Go away

Jesus said this to the crowd.

##### the girl is not dead, but she is asleep

It was common in Jesus's day to refer to a dead person as one who "sleeps." But here the dead girl will get up, as though she had only been sleeping.

#### Matthew 9:25

##### When the crowd had been put outside

"After Jesus had sent the crowd outside" or "After the family had sent the people outside"

#### Matthew 9:26

##### The news about this spread into all that region

"The people of that whole region heard about it" or "The people who saw that the girl was alive started telling everyone in the whole area about it"

#### Matthew 9:27

##### passed by

"was leaving" or "was going"

##### followed him

This means they were walking behind Jesus, not necessarily that they had become his disciples.

##### Son of David

Jesus was not David’s literal son. Here “Son of David” is a title for the Messiah. Alternate Translation: “Descendant of David”

#### Matthew 9:28

##### When Jesus had come into the house

This could be either Jesus's own house or the house in Matthew 9:10.

##### Yes, Lord

"Yes, Lord, we believe you can heal us"

#### Matthew 9:29

##### Let it be done to you according to your faith

"I will do as you have believed" or "Because you believe, it will happen”

#### Matthew 9:30

##### their eyes were opened

"God healed their eyes" or "the two blind men were able to see"

##### See that no one knows about this

"Be sure no one finds out about this" or "Do not tell anyone that I healed you"

#### Matthew 9:31

##### spread the news

“told many people throughout that region what had happened to them”

#### Matthew 9:32

##### a mute man ... was brought to Jesus

"someone brought a mute man ... to Jesus"

##### a mute man

a man who was not able to talk

##### possessed by a demon

"whom a demon had possessed" or "whom a demon was controlling"

#### Matthew 9:33

##### When the demon had been driven out

"After Jesus had forced the demon out" or "After Jesus made the demon to leave"

##### the mute man spoke

"the man who had been mute spoke"

##### This has never been seen

“No one has ever seen anything like this before”

#### Matthew 9:34

##### he drives

The pronoun "he" refers to Jesus.

#### Matthew 9:35

##### cities ... villages

"large villages ... small villages" or "large towns ... small towns"

##### the gospel of the kingdom

“the good news that God will show himself as king”

##### all kinds of disease and all kinds of sickness

"every disease and every sickness." The words "disease" and "sickness" are closely related but should be translated as two different words if possible. "Disease" is what causes a person to be sick. "Sickness" is the physical weakness or affliction that results from having a disease.

#### Matthew 9:36

##### They were like sheep without a shepherd

"The people did not have a leader"

#### Matthew 9:37

##### The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few

Jesus said this to teach that there are a lot of people who are ready to believe God but only a few people to teach them about God.

##### The harvest is plentiful

"There is plenty of ripe food for someone to collect"

##### laborers

"workers"

#### Matthew 9:38

##### pray to the Lord of the harvest

"pray to God, because he is in charge of the harvest"

Chapter 10

1Jesus called his twelve disciples together and gave them authority over unclean spirits, to drive them out, and to heal all kinds of disease and all kinds of sickness.2Now the names of the twelve apostles were these. The first, Simon (whom he also called Peter), and Andrew his brother; James son of Zebedee, and John his brother;3Philip, and Bartholomew; Thomas, and Matthew the tax collector; James son of Alphaeus, and Thaddaeus;4Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot, who would betray him.

5These twelve Jesus sent out. He instructed them and said, "Do not go to any place where Gentiles live, and do not enter any town of the Samaritans.6Go instead to the lost sheep of the house of Israel;7and as you go, preach and say, 'The kingdom of heaven is near.'8Heal the sick, raise the dead, cleanse the lepers, and cast out demons. Freely you have received, freely give.9Do not carry any gold, silver, or copper in your belts.10Do not take a traveling bag for your journey, or an extra tunic, or sandals, or a staff, for a laborer deserves his food.11Whatever city or village you enter, find who is worthy in it, and stay there until you leave.12As you enter into the house, greet it.13If the house is worthy, let your peace come upon it. But if it is not worthy, let your peace return to you.14As for those who do not receive you or listen to your words, when you depart from that house or city, shake off the dust from your feet.15Truly I say to you, it will be more bearable for the land of Sodom and Gomorrah in the day of judgment than for that city.

16"See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and innocent as doves.17Watch out for people! They will deliver you up to councils, and they will whip you in their synagogues.18Then you will be brought before governors and kings for my sake, as a testimony to them and to the Gentiles.19When they deliver you up, do not be anxious about how or what you will speak, for what to say will be given to you at that time.20For it is not you who will speak, but the Spirit of your Father who will speak in you.21Brother will deliver up brother to death, and a father his child. Children will rise up against their parents and cause them to be put to death.22You will be hated by everyone because of my name. But whoever endures to the end, that person will be saved.23When they persecute you in this city, flee to the next, for truly I say to you, you will not have gone through the cities of Israel before the Son of Man has come.

24"A disciple is not greater than his teacher, nor a servant above his master.25It is enough for the disciple that he should be like his teacher, and the servant like his master. If they have called the master of the house Beelzebul, how much worse will be the names they call the members of his household!26Therefore do not fear them, for there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed, and nothing hidden that will not be known.27What I tell you in the darkness, say in the daylight, and what you hear softly in your ear, proclaim upon the housetops.28Do not be afraid of those who kill the body but are unable to kill the soul. Instead, fear him who is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.29Are not two sparrows sold for a small coin? Yet not one of them falls to the ground without your Father's knowledge.30But even the hairs of your head are all numbered.31Do not fear. You are more valuable than many sparrows.32Therefore everyone who confesses me before men, I will also confess before my Father who is in heaven.33But he who denies me before men, I will also deny before my Father who is in heaven.

34"Do not think that I came to bring peace upon the earth. I did not come to bring peace, but a sword.35For I came to set   
  
a man against his father, and a daughter against her mother, and a daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law.  
  
36A man's enemies will be those of his own household.37He who loves father or mother more than me is not worthy of me; he who loves son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me.38He who does not pick up his cross and follow after me is not worthy of me.39He who finds his life will lose it. But he who loses his life for my sake will find it.

40"He who welcomes you welcomes me, and he who welcomes me also welcomes him who sent me.41He who welcomes a prophet in the name of a prophet will receive a prophet's reward, and he who welcomes a righteous man in the name of a righteous man will receive a righteous man's reward.42Whoever gives to one of these little ones even a cup of cold water to drink in the name of a disciple, truly I say to you, he will in no way lose his reward."

#### Matthew 10:1

##### gave them authority ... sickness

Be sure that the text clearly communicates that this authority was 1) to drive out unclean spirits and 2) to heal disease and sickness.

##### to drive them out

"to make the unclean spirits leave"

#### Matthew 10:2

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew tells the names of the twelve apostles.

##### twelve apostles

This is the same group as the “twelve disciples” in Matthew 10:1.

##### first

This is first in order, not in rank. Peter was probably the first to become one of Jesus’ disciples.

#### Matthew 10:3

##### Matthew the tax collector

"Matthew, who was a tax collector"

#### Matthew 10:4

##### the Zealot

"the patriot" or "the nationalist" or 2) "the Zealot" is a description that shows that he was zealous for God to be honored.

##### who would betray him

"who would betray Jesus"

#### Matthew 10:5

##### General Information:

Although verse 5 begins by saying that he sent out the twelve, Jesus gave these instructions before he sent them out.

##### These twelve Jesus sent out

"Jesus sent out these twelve men" or "It was these twelve men whom Jesus sent out"

##### sent out

Jesus sent them out for a particular purpose.

##### He instructed them

"He told them what they needed to do" or "He commanded them"

#### Matthew 10:6

##### lost sheep of the house of Israel

“the people of Israel. They are like lost sheep”

##### house of Israel

"people of Israel" or "descendants of Israel"

#### Matthew 10:7

##### The kingdom of heaven is near

“Our God in heaven will soon show himself to be king”

#### Matthew 10:8

##### raise the dead

"cause the dead to live again"

##### Freely you have received, freely give

"Freely you have received these things, freely give them to others" or "You received these things without paying, so give them to others without making them pay"

#### Matthew 10:9

##### gold, silver, or copper

These are metals out of which coins were made. Alternate translation: "money"

##### belts

"purses" or "pouches"

#### Matthew 10:10

##### traveling bag

This could either be any bag used to carry things on a journey, or a bag used by someone to collect food or money.

##### an extra tunic

Use the same word you used for "tunic" in Matthew 5:40.

##### his food

"what he needs"

#### Matthew 10:11

##### Whatever city or village you enter

"Whenever you enter a city or village" or "When you go into any city or village"

##### worthy

A "worthy" person is a person who is willing to welcome the disciples.

##### stay there until you leave

"live in that person's house until you leave the town or village"

#### Matthew 10:12

##### As you enter into the house, greet it

“As you enter the house, greet the people who live in it”

#### Matthew 10:13

##### If the house is worthy

"If the people in that house receive you well" or "If the people who live in that house treat you well"

##### let your peace come upon it

"let them receive your peace" or "let them receive the peace that you greeted them with"

##### if it is not worthy

"if they do not receive you well" or "if they do not treat you well"

##### let your peace return to you

"take back your greeting of peace"

#### Matthew 10:14

##### As for those who do not receive you or listen

"If no people in that house or city will receive you or listen"

##### listen to your words

"listen to your message" or "listen to what you have to say"

##### shake off the dust from your feet

"shake the dust off your feet as you leave." This is a sign that God has rejected the people of that house or city.

#### Matthew 10:15

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### it will be more bearable

"the suffering will be less"

##### the land of Sodom and Gomorrah

"the people who lived in the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah"

##### that city

"the people of the city that does not receive you"

#### Matthew 10:16

##### See, I send

"Look, I send" or "Listen, I send" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you. I send"

##### I send you out

Jesus is sending them out for a particular purpose.

##### as sheep in the midst of wolves

"as sheep among people who are like dangerous wolves" or "as sheep among people who act the way dangerous animals act"

##### be as wise as serpents and innocent as doves

"act with understanding and caution, as well as with innocence and virtue"

#### Matthew 10:17

##### will deliver you up to

"will put you under the control of"

##### councils

local religious leaders or elders who together keep peace in the community

##### whip you

"beat you with a whip"

#### Matthew 10:18

##### you will be brought

"they will bring you" or "they will drag you"

##### for my sake

"because you belong to me" or "because you follow me"

#### Matthew 10:19

##### When they deliver you up

"When people take you to the councils."

##### do not be anxious

"do not worry"

##### how or what you will speak

"how you are to speak or what you are to say." The two ideas may be combined: "what you are to say"

##### for what to say will be given to you

“for you will be told what to say” or “for the Holy Spirit will tell you what to say”

#### Matthew 10:20

##### the Spirit of your Father

If necessary, this can be translated as "the Spirit of God your heavenly Father" or a footnote can be added to make it clear that this refers to God the Holy Spirit and not to the spirit of an earthly father.

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### in you

"through you"

#### Matthew 10:21

##### Brother will deliver up brother to death

“One brother will deliver up his brother to death” or “Brothers will hand their brothers over to authorities, who will execute them.” Jesus speaks of something that will happen many times.

##### a father his child

"fathers will deliver up their children to death"

##### rise up against

"rebel against" or "turn against"

##### cause them to be put to death

"have them put to death" or "have the authorities execute them"

#### Matthew 10:22

##### You will be hated by everyone

"Everyone will hate you" or "All people will hate you"

##### because of my name

"because of me" or "because you trust in me"

##### whoever endures

"whoever stays faithful"

##### to the end

It is not clear whether the "end" means when a person dies, when the persecution ends, or the end of the age when God shows himself to be king. The main point is that they endure as long as necessary.

##### that person will be saved

"God will save that person"

#### Matthew 10:23

##### in this city

"in one city"

##### flee to the next

"flee to the next city"

##### before the Son of Man has

"before I, the Son of Man, have"

#### Matthew 10:24

##### A disciple is not greater than his teacher, nor a servant above his master

Jesus is using a proverb to teach his disciples a general truth. Jesus is emphasizing that the disciples should not expect people to treat them any better than the people treat Jesus.

##### A disciple is not greater than his teacher

"A disciple is always less important than his teacher" or "A teacher is always more important than his disciple"

##### nor a servant above his master

"and a servant is always less important than his master" or "and a master is always more important than his servant"

#### Matthew 10:25

##### It is enough for the disciple that he should be like his teacher

"The disciple should be satisfied to become like his teacher"

##### the servant like his master

"the servant should be satisfied to become only as important as his master"

##### If they have called the master ... how much worse ... they call ... the members of his household

Again Jesus is emphasizing that since people have mistreated him, his disciples should expect people to treat them the same or worse.

##### how much worse will be the names they call the members of his household

"the names that they call the members of his household will certainly be much worse" or "they will certainly call the members of his household much worse names"

##### If they have called

"Since people have called"

##### Beelzebul

This name here refers to Satan. It can either be 1) transcribed as “Beelzebul” or 2) translated as “Satan.”

#### Matthew 10:26

##### do not fear them

“do not be afraid of those people” or “do not be afraid of people who might treat you badly”

##### there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed, and nothing hidden that will not be known

“everything that is concealed will be revealed, and everything that is hidden will be made known.”

#### Matthew 10:27

##### What I tell you in the darkness, say in the daylight

"What I tell you at night, say in the daytime"

##### what you hear softly in your ear

"what I whisper to you" or "what I say to you privately"

##### proclaim upon the housetops

"speak loudly in a public place"

#### Matthew 10:28

##### Do not be afraid of those who kill the body but are unable to kill the soul

"Do not be afraid of people. They can kill the body, but they cannot kill the soul"

##### kill the body

This means to cause physical death. If these words are awkward, they can be translated as "kill you" or "kill people."

##### fear him who is able to destroy

"fear God, because he is able to destroy"

##### body

the part of a person that can be touched, as opposed to the soul or spirit

##### soul

the part of a person that cannot be touched and that lives on after the physical body dies

##### fear him who is able

"fear God because he is able"

#### Matthew 10:29

##### Are not two sparrows sold for a small coin?

This question can be translated as a statement. "Two sparrows are sold for only a small coin." or "Sparrows have so little value that you can buy two of them for only one small coin."

##### sparrows

These are very small birds. Alternate translation: "small birds"

##### a small coin

This is often translated as the least valuable coin in your country. Alternate translation: "a penny" or "very little money"

##### not one of them falls to the ground without your Father's knowledge

"your Father knows when every one of them falls to the ground"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 10:30

##### even the hairs of your head are all numbered

“God knows even how many hairs are on your head”

##### numbered

"counted"

#### Matthew 10:31

##### You are more valuable than many sparrows

"God values you more than many sparrows"

#### Matthew 10:32

##### everyone who confesses me ... I will also confess before my Father

"whoever confesses me ... I will also confess before my Father" or "if anyone confesses me ... I will also confess him before my Father"

##### confesses me before men

"tells others that he is my disciple" or "acknowledges before other people that he is loyal to me"

##### I will also confess before my Father who is in heaven

"I will also acknowledge before my Father who is in heaven that that person belongs to me"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 10:33

##### he who denies me ... I will also deny before my Father

"whoever denies me ... I will also deny before my Father" or "if anyone denies me ... I will also deny him before my Father"

##### denies me before men

"denies to other people that he is loyal to me" or "refuses to acknowledge to others that he is my disciple"

##### I will also deny before my Father who is in heaven

"I will deny before my Father who is in heaven that this person belongs to me"

#### Matthew 10:34

##### upon the earth

"to the people of the earth" or "to people"

##### a sword

This refers to division, fighting, and killing among people.

#### Matthew 10:35

##### to set ... against

"to cause ... to fight against"

##### a man against his father

"a son against his father"

#### Matthew 10:36

##### A man's enemies

"A person's enemies"

##### those of his own household

"members of his own family"

#### Matthew 10:37

##### He who loves ... is not worthy

"Those who love ... are not worthy" or "If you love ... you are not worthy"

##### loves

"cares for" or "is devoted to" or "is fond of"

##### is not worthy of me

“does not deserve to belong to me” or “is not worthy to be my disciple”

#### Matthew 10:38

##### pick up his cross and follow after me

“obey me even to the point of suffering and dying”

#### Matthew 10:39

##### He who finds his life will lose it. But he who loses ... will find it

"Those who find their lives will lose them. But those who lose their lives ... will find them" or "If you find your life you will lose it. But if you lose your life ... you will find it"

##### finds his life

"tries to keep his life will lose it" or "tries to save his life will not have true life"

##### who loses his life for my sake

"who denies himself for my sake"

##### will find it

"will find true life"

#### Matthew 10:40

##### He who welcomes you

"Whoever welcomes you" or "Anyone who welcomes you"

##### He who welcomes you welcomes me

"When someone welcomes you, it is like he is welcoming me" or "If someone welcomes you, it is as if he were welcoming me"

##### him who sent me

God the Father who sent me"

#### Matthew 10:41

##### in the name of a prophet

“because that person is a prophet” or “because he knows that person is a prophet”

##### a prophet's reward

These phrases refer to the rewards that God gives to prophets and righteous men, not to rewards that prophets or righteous men give to other people.

##### in the name of a righteous man

“because that righteous man is a righteous man” or “because he knows that person is righteous.”

##### a righteous man's reward

This refers to the reward God gives to a righteous person.

#### Matthew 10:42

##### one of these little ones

"one of these lowly ones" or "the least important of these." This refers to Jesus's disciples.

##### in the name of a disciple

"because that person is a disciple" or "because he knows that that person is a disciple."

##### he will ... his reward

Here "he" and "his" refer to the one who is giving.

##### he will in no way lose his reward

"he will certainly receive his reward"

Chapter 11

1It came about that when Jesus had finished instructing his twelve disciples, he departed from there to teach and preach in their cities.2Now when John heard in the prison about the deeds of the Christ, he sent a message by his disciples3and said to him, "Are you the one who is coming, or should we look for another?"

4Jesus answered and said to them, "Go and report to John what you see and hear.5The blind are receiving sight, the lame are walking, lepers are being cleansed, the deaf are hearing again, the dead are being raised back to life, and the gospel is being preached to the poor.6Blessed is anyone who does not stumble because of me."

7As these men went on their way, Jesus began to say to the crowds about John, "What did you go out in the desert to see—a reed being shaken by the wind?8But what did you go out to see—a man dressed in soft clothing? Really, those who wear soft clothing live in kings' houses.9But what did you go out to see—a prophet? Yes, I say to you, and much more than a prophet.10This is he of whom it was written,  
  
'See, I am sending my messenger before your face, who will prepare your way before you.'11Truly I say to you that among those born of women, there has not arisen anyone greater than John the Baptist. Yet the least important person in the kingdom of heaven is greater than he is.12From the days of John the Baptist until now, the kingdom of heaven suffers violence, and men of violence take it by force.13For all the prophets and the law have been prophesying until John;14and if you are willing to accept it, he is Elijah who was to come.15He who has ears to hear, let him hear.16To what should I compare this generation? It is like children sitting in the marketplaces calling out to the others,17saying:   
  
'We played a flute for you, and you did not dance. We mourned, and you did not weep.'  
  
18For John came not eating bread or drinking wine, and they say, 'He has a demon.'19The Son of Man came eating and drinking and they say, 'Look, he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!' But wisdom is justified by her deeds."

20Then Jesus began to denounce the cities in which most of his miracles were done, because they had not repented.21"Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the miracles had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.22But I tell you it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you.23You, Capernaum, do you think you will be exalted to heaven? No, you will be brought down to Hades. For if in Sodom there had been done the miracles that were done in you, it would still have remained until today.24But I say to you that it will be easier for the land of Sodom in the day of judgment than for you."

25At that time Jesus said, "I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because you concealed these things from the wise and understanding, and revealed them to little children.26Yes, Father, for this was pleasing in your sight.27All things have been entrusted to me from my Father; and no one knows the Son except the Father, and no one knows the Father except the Son and anyone to whom the Son chooses to reveal him.28Come to me, all you who labor and are heavy burdened, and I will give you rest.29Take my yoke on you and learn from me, for I am meek and lowly in heart, and you will find rest for your souls.30For my yoke is easy and my burden is light."

#### Matthew 11:1

##### It came about that when

"Then when" or "After"

##### had finished instructing

"had finished teaching" or "had finished commanding."

##### in their cities

“in the cities of the Jews”

#### Matthew 11:2

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

##### when John heard in the prison about

"Now John had been put in prison. When he heard about" or "When John, who was in prison, heard about"

##### he sent a message by his disciples

John the Baptist sent his own disciples with a message to Jesus.

#### Matthew 11:3

##### said to him

"said to Jesus"

##### Are you the one who is coming

"Are you the one whom we are expecting to come." This is another way to refer to the Messiah or Christ.

##### should we look for another

"should we be expecting someone else"

#### Matthew 11:4

##### report to John

"tell John"

#### Matthew 11:5

##### lepers are being cleansed

“people who have leprosy are becoming well”

##### the dead are being raised back to life

“people who have died live again”

##### the gospel is being preached to the poor

“poor people are hearing the gospel”

##### the poor

"poor people"

#### Matthew 11:7

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus talks to the crowds about John the Baptist. He uses questions to cause the people to think about what kind of person John the Baptist is. These questions can be translated as sentences.

##### What did you go out in the desert to see—a reed ... wind?

"Surely you did not go out to the desert to see a reed ... wind!"

##### a reed being shaken by the wind

"a man who easily changes his mind and is like a reed being shaken by the wind"

##### being shaken by the wind

"swaying in the wind" or "blowing in the wind"

#### Matthew 11:8

##### But what did you go out to see—a man ... clothing?

“And surely you did not go out to the desert to see a man ... clothing!”

##### dressed in soft clothing

"wearing expensive clothing." Rich people wore this kind of clothing.

#### Matthew 11:9

##### But what did you go out to see—a prophet?

"Surely you went out to the desert to see a prophet!"

##### and much more than a prophet

"and he is much more than a prophet"

##### much more than

much more important than

#### Matthew 11:10

##### This is he of whom it was written

"He is the one about whom a prophet wrote long ago" or "This is what a prophet wrote long ago about John the Baptist"

##### I am sending my messenger

The pronouns "I" and "my" refer to God. The prophet was quoting what God said.

##### before your face

"in front of you" or "to go ahead of you"

##### prepare your way before you

This means the messenger will prepare the people to receive the Messiah's message.

#### Matthew 11:11

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### among those born of women, there has not arisen anyone greater than John the Baptist

"no one born of women has been a greater prophet than John the Baptist"

##### among those born of women

"out of all people who have ever lived"

##### the least important person in the kingdom of heaven

"the least important person under the rule of our God in heaven"

##### is greater than he is

"is more important than John is"

#### Matthew 11:12

##### From the days of John the Baptist

"From the time John began preaching his message"

##### the kingdom of heaven suffers violence

This could mean 1) "enemies violently attack the kingdom of heaven" or 2) "the kingdom of heaven has been coming forcefully."

##### and men of violence take it by force

This could mean 1) "and violent people forcefully take it" or 2) "and forceful people grab onto it."

#### Matthew 11:13

##### all the prophets and the law have been prophesying until John

“these are the things that the prophets and Moses have prophesied through the scriptures until the time of John the Baptist”

#### Matthew 11:14

##### he is Elijah who was to come

“John is the one a prophet spoke about when he said that Elijah would come”

#### Matthew 11:15

##### He who has ears to hear, let him hear

“The one who is willing to listen, let him listen” or “Let the one who is willing to listen to me understand and obey what I say”

##### He who has ... let him hear

“You who have ears ... listen”

#### Matthew 11:16

##### To what should I compare this generation?

This is what this generation is like.”

##### this generation

"the people living now" or "these people" or "you people of this generation"

##### marketplaces

large, open-air areas where people buy and sell items

#### Matthew 11:17

##### We played a flute for you, and you did not dance

"We played the flute for you, but you did not dance to the happy music"

##### We mourned, and you did not weep

"We mourned, but you did not cry with us"

#### Matthew 11:18

##### not eating bread or drinking wine

This could mean 1) that John did not eat expensive food or 2) that John fasted often. John also did not drink wine.

##### they say, 'He has a demon.'

"they say that he has a demon."

##### they say

“people say”

#### Matthew 11:19

##### The Son of Man came

"I, the Son of Man, came"

##### came eating and drinking

This is the opposite of John's behavior. This means Jesus celebrated and enjoyed good food and drink like other people did.

##### they say, 'Look, he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard ... sinners!'

“he eats too much and drinks too much wine”

##### he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard

"he is a greedy eater and a drunk" or "he continually eats too much food and drinks too much alcohol"

##### But wisdom is justified by her deeds

Jesus said this because the people who rejected both him and John were not being wise. Jesus and John the Baptist are the wise ones, and the results of their deeds prove it.

##### wisdom is justified by her deeds

“a person’s wisdom is proved by what he does” or “the results of a wise person’s deeds prove that he is wise”

#### Matthew 11:20

##### denounce the cities

"began to rebuke the people of the cities" or "accuse the people of the cities of doing wrong"

##### in which most of his miracles were done

"in which he did most of his miracles"

##### miracles

"mighty works" or "works of power"

#### Matthew 11:21

##### Woe to you

"How terrible it will be for you"

##### Chorazin ... Bethsaida ... Tyre ... Sidon

These are the names of cities.

##### Chorazin ... Bethsaida

"people of Chorazin ... people of Bethsaida"

##### If the miracles ... in sackcloth and ashes

Jesus is describing a situation that could have happened in the past, but it did not.

##### If the miracles had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you

"If someone had done the miracles among the people of Tyre and Sidon that I have done among you"

#### Matthew 11:22

##### it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you

“God will show more mercy to the people of Tyre and Sidon in the day of judgment than to you” or “God will punish you more severely at the day of judgment than the people of Tyre and Sidon”

#### Matthew 11:23

##### Capernaum ... Sodom

The names of these cities refer to the people living in Capernaum and in Sodom.

##### do you think you will be exalted to heaven?

"you will not be raised up to heaven!" or "God will not bring you up to heaven like you think he will!"

##### you will be brought down to Hades

"you will go down to Hades" or "God will send you down to Hades"

##### For if in Sodom ... it would still have remained until today

Jesus is describing a situation that could have happened in the past, but it did not.

##### if in Sodom there had been done the miracles that were done in you

#### Matthew 11:24

##### it will be easier for the land of Sodom in the day of judgment than for you

“God will show more mercy to the people of Sodom in the day of judgment than to you” or “God will punish you more severely in the day of judgment than the people of Sodom”

#### Matthew 11:25

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### Lord of heaven and earth

"Lord who rules over heaven and earth" or "Lord of everyone everywhere"

##### you concealed these things from ... and revealed them to

"you hid these truths from ... and revealed them to" or "you have not made these things known to ... and you made them known to"

##### the wise and understanding

"people who think they are wise and understanding"

##### to little children

"to people who are like little children." Jesus is emphasizing that many of those who believe him either are not well educated or do not think of themselves as wise.

#### Matthew 11:26

##### for this was pleasing in your sight

“for it pleased you to do this” or “for you considered it good to do this”

#### Matthew 11:27

##### All things have been entrusted to me from my Father

"My Father has entrusted all things to me" or "My Father has given everything over to me." This could mean that 1) God the Father has revealed everything about himself and his kingdom to Jesus or 2) God has given all authority to Jesus.

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### no one knows the Son except the Father

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son. The word "knows" here means more than just being acquainted with someone. It means knowing someone intimately because of having a special relationship with him.

##### the Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### no one knows the Father except the Son and ... him

"only the Son and ... him know the Father"

#### Matthew 11:28

##### all you

All occurrences of "you" are plural.

##### who labor and are heavy burdened

“who are tired and carry a heavy burden” or “who are tired from trying to keep all the laws and feel like they are carrying a heavy burden”

##### I will give you rest

"I will allow you to rest from your labor and burden"

#### Matthew 11:29

##### Take my yoke on you

"wear the yoke that I put on you" or

##### I am meek and lowly in heart

"I am gentle and humble"

##### you will find rest for your souls

"you will find rest for yourselves" or "you will be able to rest"

#### Matthew 11:30

##### Take my yoke on you

"wear the yoke that I put on you" or

##### I am meek and lowly in heart

"I am gentle and humble"

##### you will find rest for your souls

"you will find rest for yourselves" or "you will be able to rest"

Chapter 12

1At that time Jesus went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. His disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them.2But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to Jesus, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath."

3But Jesus said to them, "Have you never read what David did when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?4He went into the house of God and ate the bread of the presence, which was unlawful for him to eat and unlawful for those who were with him, but lawful only for the priests.5Have you not read in the law that on the Sabbath the priests in the temple profane the Sabbath but are guiltless?6But I say to you that one greater than the temple is here.7If you had known what this meant, 'I desire mercy and not sacrifice,' you would not have condemned the guiltless.8For the Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath."

9Then Jesus left from there and went into their synagogue.10Behold, there was a man who had a withered hand. The Pharisees asked Jesus, saying, "Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath?" so that they might accuse him of sinning.

11Jesus said to them, "What man would there be among you, who, if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a pit on the Sabbath, would not take hold of it and raise it out?12How much more valuable, then, is a man than a sheep! Therefore it is lawful to do good on the Sabbath."13Then Jesus said to the man, "Stretch out your hand." He stretched it out, and it was restored to health, just like the other hand.14But the Pharisees went out and plotted against him. They were seeking how they might destroy him.

15Jesus, knowing this, withdrew from there. Many people followed him, and he healed them all.16He commanded them not to make him known to others,17that it might be fulfilled, what had been said through Isaiah the prophet, saying,  
  
18"See, my servant whom I have chosen;my beloved one, in whom my soul is well pleased.I will put my Spirit upon him,and he will proclaim justice to the Gentiles.19He will not strive nor cry aloud;neither will anyone hear his voice in the streets.20He will not break any bruised reed;he will not quench any smoking flax,until he leads justice to victory,21and in his name the Gentiles will have hope."

22Then someone blind and mute, possessed by a demon, was brought to Jesus. He healed him, with the result that the mute man spoke and saw.23All the crowds were amazed and said, "Can this man be the Son of David?"

24But when the Pharisees heard of this miracle, they said, "This man does not cast out demons except by Beelzebul, the prince of the demons."

25But Jesus knew their thoughts and said to them, "Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate, and every city or house divided against itself will not stand.26If Satan drives out Satan, he is divided against himself. How then will his kingdom stand?27And if I drive out demons by Beelzebul, by whom do your sons drive them out? For this reason they will be your judges.28But if I drive out demons by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God has come upon you.29How can anyone enter the house of the strong man and take away his belongings without tying up the strong man first? Then he will steal his belongings from his house.30The one who is not with me is against me, and the one who does not gather with me scatters.31Therefore I say to you, every sin and blasphemy will be forgiven men, but the blasphemy against the Spirit will not be forgiven.32Whoever speaks any word against the Son of Man, that will be forgiven him. But whoever speaks against the Holy Spirit, that will not be forgiven him, neither in this world, nor in that which is to come.33Make a tree good and its fruit good, or make the tree bad and its fruit bad, for a tree is recognized by its fruit.34You offspring of vipers, since you are evil, how can you say good things? For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks.35The good man from the good treasure of his heart produces what is good, and the evil man from the evil treasure of his heart produces what is evil.36I say to you that in the day of judgment people will give an account for every idle word they will have said.37For by your words you will be justified, and by your words you will be condemned."

38Then certain scribes and Pharisees answered Jesus and said, "Teacher, we wish to see a sign from you."

39But Jesus answered and said to them, "An evil and adulterous generation seeks for a sign. But no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah the prophet.40For as Jonah was three days and three nights in the stomach of the big fish, so will the Son of Man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.41The men of Nineveh will stand up at the judgment with this generation of people and will condemn it. For they repented at the preaching of Jonah, and see, someone greater than Jonah is here.42The Queen of the South will rise up at the judgment with the men of this generation and condemn them. She came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon, and see, someone greater than Solomon is here.43When an unclean spirit has gone away from a man, it passes through waterless places and looks for rest, but does not find it.44Then it says, 'I will return to my house from which I came.' Having returned, it finds the house empty—it had been swept clean and put in order.45Then it goes and takes along with it seven other spirits more evil than itself, and they all come in to live there. Then the final condition of that man becomes worse than the first. It will be just like that with this evil generation."

46While Jesus was still speaking to the crowds, behold, his mother and his brothers stood outside, seeking to speak to him.47Someone said to him, "Look, your mother and your brothers stand outside, seeking to speak to you."

48But Jesus answered and said to him who told him, "Who is my mother and who are my brothers?"49Then he stretched out his hand toward his disciples and said, "See, here are my mother and my brothers!50For whoever does the will of my Father who is in heaven, that person is my brother, and sister, and mother."

#### Matthew 12:1

##### grainfields

This is a place to plant grain. If there is no word for grains, then you can use “fields of the plant they made bread from.”

##### heads of grain

The heads of grain are the topmost part of the wheat plant. It holds the mature grain or seeds of the plant.

#### Matthew 12:2

##### do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath

Picking grain in others' fields and eating it was not considered stealing. The question was whether one could do this otherwise lawful activity on the Sabbath.

##### the Pharisees

"Look, your disciples." The Pharisees use this word to draw attention to what the disciples are doing.

#### Matthew 12:3

##### to them

"to the Pharisees"

##### Have you never read ... with him?

“Surely you have read about ... with him.”

#### Matthew 12:4

##### the house of God

"the tabernacle" or "the place for worshiping God"

##### bread of the presence

"bread that the priest placed before God" or "sacred bread"

##### those who were with him

"the men who were with David"

##### but lawful only for the priests

"but, according to the law, only the priests could eat it"

#### Matthew 12:5

##### Have you not read in the law that ... but are guiltless?

“Surely you have read in the law of Moses that ... but are guiltless.” or “You should know that the law teaches that ... but are guiltless.”

##### profane the Sabbath

"do on the Sabbath what the law forbids them to do on that day"

##### are guiltless

"God will not punish them" or "God does not consider them guilty"

#### Matthew 12:6

##### I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### one greater than the temple

"someone who is more important than the temple." Jesus was referring to himself as the one greater.

#### Matthew 12:7

##### If you had known what this meant, 'I desire mercy and not sacrifice,' you would not have condemned the guiltless

“If you had understood what God meant when he said ‘I desire mercy and not sacrifice, you would not have condemned the guiltless” or “You would not have condemned people who are not guilty if you had understood the meaning of “I desire mercy and not sacrifice”

##### I desire mercy and not sacrifice

In the law of Moses, God did command the Israelites to offer sacrifices. This means God considers mercy more important than the sacrifices.

##### the guiltless

"those who are not guilty"

#### Matthew 12:8

##### the Son of Man is

"I, the Son of Man, am"

##### is Lord of the Sabbath

"rules over the Sabbath" or "makes the laws about what people can do on the Sabbath"

#### Matthew 12:9

##### Then Jesus left from there

"Jesus left the grainfields" or "Then Jesus left"

##### their synagogue

"the synagogue that they attended"

#### Matthew 12:10

##### Behold

The word "Behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### a man who had a withered hand

"a man who had a paralyzed hand" or "a man with a crippled hand"

##### The Pharisees asked Jesus, saying, "Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath?" so that they might accuse him of sinning.

"The Pharisees wanted to accuse Jesus of sinning, so they asked him, 'Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath?'"

##### Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath

"According to the law of Moses, may a person heal another person on the Sabbath"

#### Matthew 12:11

##### What man would there be among you, who, if he had just one sheep ... would not take hold of it and raise it out?

“Every one of you, if you only had one sheep ... would grab the sheep and pull it out of the pit.”

#### Matthew 12:12

##### How much more valuable, then, is a man than a sheep!

"Obviously, a man is much more valuable than a sheep!" or "Just think about how much more important a man is than a sheep"

##### it is lawful to do good on the Sabbath

"those who do good on the Sabbath are obeying the law"

#### Matthew 12:13

##### Then Jesus said to the man, "Stretch out your hand."

“Then Jesus told the man to stretch out his hand.”“Then Jesus told the man to stretch out his hand.”

##### Stretch out your hand

"Hold out your hand" or "Extend your hand"

##### He stretched

"The man stretched"

##### it was restored to health

"it was healthy again" or "it became well again"

#### Matthew 12:14

##### plotted against him

"planned to harm Jesus"

##### were seeking how they might destroy him

"were discussing how they might kill Jesus"

#### Matthew 12:15

##### Jesus, knowing this, withdrew from there

“Jesus knew what the Pharisees were planning, so he left that place”

#### Matthew 12:16

##### not to make him known to others

"not to tell anyone else about him"

#### Matthew 12:17

##### that it might be fulfilled, what had been said through Isaiah the prophet, saying,

“This was to fulfill what had been said through Isaiah the prophet:” or “This was so that what God had said through the prophet Isaiah might happen:”

#### Matthew 12:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus’s ministry fulfilled scripture. Isaiah wrote what God said, so all the occurrences of “I” and “my” refer to God.

##### my beloved one, in whom my soul is well pleased

“he is my beloved one, and I am very pleased with him”

##### he will proclaim justice to the Gentiles

“he will announce to the nations that God will do for them what is right”

#### Matthew 12:19

##### neither will anyone hear his voice in the streets

“nor shout in public places” or “and people will not hear him speaking loudly in the streets”

#### Matthew 12:20

##### He will not break any bruised reed; he will not quench any smoking flax

"He will be kind to people who are like a bruised reed, and he will be gentle to those who are like a smoking flax"

##### bruised reed

"damaged plant"

##### he will not quench any smoking flax

"he will not put out any smoking wick" or "he will not stop any smoking lamp wick from burning." A smoking flax is a lamp wick after the flame has gone out and when it is only smoking.

##### until he leads justice to victory

"until he makes justice have victory" or "until he makes everything right"

#### Matthew 12:21

##### in his name the Gentiles will have hope

“the Gentiles will trust in his name” or “the Gentiles will confidently wait for him to fulfill his promises”

##### in his name

"in him"

#### Matthew 12:22

##### Then someone blind and mute, possessed by a demon, was brought to Jesus

“Then people brought to Jesus a man who was blind and mute because a demon was controlling him”

#### Matthew 12:23

##### All the crowds were amazed

"All the people who had seen Jesus heal the man were greatly surprised"

##### the Son of David

This is a title for the Christ or Messiah. See how you translated “Son of David” in Matthew 9:27

#### Matthew 12:24

##### This man does not cast out demons except by Beelzebul ... demons

“This man is able to force demons to leave only because he is a servant of Beelzebul ... demons”

##### This man

The Pharisees avoid calling Jesus by name to show they reject him.

##### the prince of the demons

"the chief of the demons"

#### Matthew 12:25

##### Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate, and every city or house divided against itself will not stand

These two statements emphasize that it would not make sense for Beelzebul to use his power to fight other demons.

##### Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate

"A kingdom will not last if its people fight among themselves"

#### Matthew 12:26

##### If Satan drives out Satan

“If Satan forces his own demons to leave”

##### How then will his kingdom stand?

"His kingdom would not be able to stand!" or "His kingdom would not last!"

#### Matthew 12:27

##### And if I drive out demons by Beelzebul

"And if you say that I drive out demons by Beelzebul"

##### Beelzebul

This name refers to the same person as "Satan" (verse 26).

##### by whom do your sons drive them out?

"then your followers also drive out demons by Beelzebul." or "then you would have to say that your followers drive out demons by the power of Beelzebul."

##### For this reason they will be your judges

"Because your followers cast out demons by the power of God, they prove that you are wrong about me."

#### Matthew 12:28

##### But if I

"But because I"

##### then the kingdom of God has come upon you

"this means God is establishing his rule among you"

##### come upon you

Here "you" is plural and refers to the people of Israel.

#### Matthew 12:29

##### How can anyone enter ... without tying up the strong man first?

“No one can enter ... without tying up the strong man first.” or “If a person wants to enter ... he must first tie up the strong man.”

##### Then he will steal

"The he can steal" or "Then he will be able to steal"

#### Matthew 12:30

##### who is not with me

"who does not support me" or "who does not work with me"

##### is against me

"opposes me" or "works against me"

##### the one who does not gather with me scatters

“whoever does not gather my sheep with me scatters them” or “whoever does not work with me works against what I am doing”

#### Matthew 12:31

##### every sin and blasphemy will be forgiven men

"God will forgive every sin that people commit and every evil thing they say" or "God will forgive every person who sins or says evil things"

##### blasphemy against the Spirit will not be forgiven

"God will not forgive the person who speaks evil things about the Holy Spirit"

#### Matthew 12:32

##### Whoever speaks any word against the Son of Man

"If a person says anything bad about the Son of Man"

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

##### that will be forgiven him

"God will forgive a person for that"

##### that will not be forgiven him

"God will not forgive that person"

##### neither in this world, nor in that which is to come

"in this life or in the next life" or "now or ever"

#### Matthew 12:33

##### Make a tree good and its fruit good, or make the tree bad and its fruit bad

Possible meanings are 1) "If you make a tree good, its fruit will be good, and if you make the tree bad, its fruit will be bad" or 2) "If a tree is good, it will have good fruit, and if a tree is bad, it will have bad fruit." This was a proverb. People were to apply its truth to how they can know whether a person is good or bad.

##### good ... bad

"healthy ... diseased"

##### a tree is recognized by its fruit

"people recognize a tree by its fruit" or "people know whether a tree is good or bad by looking at its fruit"

#### Matthew 12:34

##### You offspring of vipers

Here "offspring" means "having the characteristic of." Vipers are poisonous snakes that are dangerous and represent evil. See how you translated a similar phrase in Matthew 3:7.

##### how can you say good things?

“you cannot say good things.” or “you can only say evil things.”

##### out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks

“what a person says with his mouth reveals what is in his mind”

#### Matthew 12:35

##### The good man from the good treasure of his heart produces what is good, and the evil man from the evil treasure of his heart produces what is evil

“A good man will speak good things because good things are in his heart, and an evil man will speak evil things because evil things are in this heart”

#### Matthew 12:36

##### people will give an account for very idle word they will have said

"people will have to tell God why they said every useless thing they have said"

#### Matthew 12:37

##### by your words you will be justified, and by your words you will be condemned

"your words will justify you, and your words will condemn you" or "because of what you say, God will either justify you or condemn you"

#### Matthew 12:38

##### we want to see a sign from you

"we want you to show us a sign" or "we want to see you do a miraculous sign"

#### Matthew 12:39

##### An evil and adulterous generation seeks for a sign ... given to it

“You are an evil and adulterous generation who demands signs from me ... given to you”

##### adulterous generation

“unfaithful generation” or “godless generation”

##### no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah

"The only sign that will be given to it is the sign of Jonah"

##### the sign of Jonah

"what happened to Jonah" or "the miracle that God did for Jonah"

#### Matthew 12:40

##### three days and three nights

"three days and nights"

##### the Son of Man

"I, the Son of Man"

##### in the heart of the earth

"in the earth" or "in a grave"

#### Matthew 12:41

##### The men of Nineveh

"The citizens of Nineveh"

##### at the judgment

"on judgment day" or "when God judges people"

##### this generation of people

This refers to the Jews who were alive when Jesus was preaching.

##### and will condemn it

"and will accuse this generation of people"

##### and see

"and look." This emphasizes what Jesus says next.

##### someone greater than Jonah is here

"someone more important than Jonah is here"

#### Matthew 12:42

##### Queen of the South

This refers to the Queen of Sheba. Sheba was a land south of Israel.

##### will rise up at the judgment

"will stand up at the judgment"

##### this generation

This refers to the Jews living during the time Jesus was preaching.

##### She came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon

“For she came from very far away to listen to Solomon’s wise teaching.” This statement explains why the Queen of the South will condemn the people of Jesus’s generation.

##### someone greater

Jesus is speaking about himself.

#### Matthew 12:43

##### waterless places

"dry places" or "places where no people live"

##### does not find it

Here "it" refers to rest.

#### Matthew 12:44

##### to my house from which I came

The house is the person in whom the unclean spirit was living earlier

##### it finds the house empty

“it finds the house unoccupied” or “it sees that no one is living in the house”

##### it had been swept clean and put in order.

"someone had swept the house clean and has put everything in the house where it belongs"

#### Matthew 12:45

##### It will be just like that with this evil generation

This means that if the people of Jesus's generation do not believe him and become his disciples, they will be in a worse situation than they were before he came.

#### Matthew 12:46

##### behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new people in the story.

##### his mother

This is Mary, Jesus's human mother.

##### his brothers

These are probably other children born to Mary, but it is is possible that the word "brothers" here refers to Jesus's cousins.

##### seeking to speak

"wanting to speak to Jesus"

#### Matthew 12:47

##### Someone said to him, "Look, your mother and your brothers stand outside, seeking to speak to you."

“Someone told Jesus that his mother and brothers were outside and wanted to speak to him.”

#### Matthew 12:48

##### who told him

"who told him that his mother and brothers wanted to speak to him"

##### Who is my mother and who are my brothers?

“I will tell you who are really my mother and brothers.”

#### Matthew 12:49

##### See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

#### Matthew 12:50

##### whoever does the will of God

"anyone who does what God wants"

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

Chapter 13

1On that day Jesus went out of the house and sat beside the sea.2A very large crowd gathered around him, so he got into a boat and sat in it while the whole crowd stood on the beach.3Then Jesus said many things to them in parables. He said, "Behold, a farmer went out to sow seed.4As he sowed, some seeds fell beside the road, and the birds came and devoured them.5Other seeds fell on rocky ground, where they did not have much soil. Immediately they sprang up because the soil had no depth.6But when the sun had risen, they were scorched because they had no root, and they withered away.7Other seeds fell among the thorn plants. The thorn plants grew up and choked them.8Other seeds fell on good soil and produced a crop, some one hundred times as much, some sixty, and some thirty.9He who has ears, let him hear."

10The disciples came and said to Jesus, "Why do you talk to the crowd in parables?"

11Jesus answered and said to them, "You have been given the privilege of understanding mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given.12For whoever has will be given more, and he will have an abundance. But whoever does not have, even what he has will be taken away from him.13This is why I talk to them in parables:   
  
Though they are seeing, they do not see; and though they are hearing, they do not hear, or understand.

14To them the prophecy of Isaiah is fulfilled, that which says,  
  
'Listening, you will hear, but you will never understand;seeing, you will see, but you will never know.15For the heart of this people has become dull,and with their ears they hardly hear,and they have shut their eyes.Otherwise they might see with their eyes,and hear with their ears,and understand with their heart and turn again,and I would heal them.'16But blessed are your eyes, for they see; and your ears, for they hear.17Truly I say to you that many prophets and righteous men desired to see the things that you see and did not see them. They desired to hear the things that you hear and did not hear them.18Listen then to the parable of the farmer who sowed his seed.19When anyone hears the word of the kingdom but does not understand it, the evil one comes and snatches away what has been sown in his heart. This is the seed that was sown beside the road.20What was sown on rocky ground is the person who hears the word and immediately receives it with joy,21yet he has no root in himself and he endures for a while. When tribulation or persecution arises because of the word, he quickly falls away.22What was sown among the thorn plants, this is the person who hears the word, but the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of riches choke the word, and he becomes unfruitful.23The seed that was sown on the good soil, this is the person who hears the word and understands it. He bears fruit and produces a crop, yielding in one case a hundred, in another sixty, and in another thirty times as much as was planted."

24Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a man who sowed good seed in his field.25But while people slept, his enemy came and also sowed weeds among the wheat and then went away.26When the blades sprouted and then produced their crop, then the weeds appeared also.27The servants of the landowner came and said to him, 'Sir, did you not sow good seed in your field? How does it now have weeds?'

28"He said to them, 'An enemy has done this.'

"The servants said to him, 'So do you want us to go and pull them out?'

29"The landowner said, 'No. Because while you are pulling out the weeds, you might uproot the wheat with them.30Let both grow together until the harvest. At the time of the harvest I will say to the reapers, "First pull out the weeds and tie them in bundles to burn them, but gather the wheat into my barn."'"

31Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field.32This seed is indeed the smallest of all seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the sky come and nest in its branches."33Jesus then told them another parable. "The kingdom of heaven is like yeast that a woman took and mixed with three measures of flour until all the dough had risen."

34All these things Jesus said to the crowds in parables; and he said nothing to them without a parable.35This was in order that what had been said through the prophet might be fulfilled, when he said,"I will open my mouth in parables.I will say things that were hidden from the foundation of the world."

36Then Jesus left the crowds and went into the house. His disciples came to him and said, "Explain to us the parable of the weeds of the field."

37Jesus answered and said, "He who sows the good seed is the Son of Man.38The field is the world; and the good seed, these are the sons of the kingdom. The weeds are the sons of the evil one,39and the enemy who sowed them is the devil. The harvest is the end of the age, and the reapers are angels.40Therefore, as the weeds are gathered up and consumed by fire, so will it be at the end of the age.41The Son of Man will send out his angels, and they will gather out of his kingdom all stumbling blocks and those who commit lawlessness.42They will throw them into the furnace of fire, where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth.43Then will the righteous people shine like the sun in the kingdom of their Father. He who has ears, let him hear.

44"The kingdom of heaven is like a treasure hidden in a field. A man found it and hid it. In his joy he goes, sells everything he possesses, and buys that field.45Again, the kingdom of heaven is like a man who is a merchant looking for valuable pearls.46When he found one very valuable pearl, he went and sold everything that he possessed and bought it.

47"Again, the kingdom of heaven is like a net that was cast into the sea, and that gathered all kinds of fish.48When it was filled, the fishermen drew it up on the beach. Then they sat down and gathered the good ones into containers, but the bad ones they threw away.49It will be this way at the end of the age. The angels will come and separate the wicked from among the righteous.50They will throw them into the furnace of fire, where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth.

51"Have you understood all these things?"

The disciples said to him, "Yes."

52Then Jesus said to them, "Therefore every scribe who has become a disciple to the kingdom of heaven is like a man who is the owner of a house, who draws out old and new things from his treasure."53Then it came about that when Jesus had finished these parables, he departed from that place.

54Then Jesus entered his own region and taught the people in their synagogue. The result was that they were astonished and said, "Where does this man get his wisdom and these miraculous powers from?55Is not this man the carpenter's son? Is not his mother called Mary? Are not his brothers James, Joseph, Simon, and Judas?56Are not all his sisters with us? Where did he get all these things?"57They were offended by him.

But Jesus said to them, "A prophet is not without honor except in his own country and in his own family."58He did not do many miracles there because of their unbelief.

#### Matthew 13:1

##### sat beside the sea

In that culture, teachers sat down to teach.

#### Matthew 13:2

##### a boat

This was probably an open, wooden fishing boat with a sail.

#### Matthew 13:3

##### Jesus said many things to them in parables

"Jesus told them many things in parables"

##### Behold

"Look" or "Listen." or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

##### a farmer went out to sow seed

"a farmer went out to scatter seeds in a field"

#### Matthew 13:4

##### As he sowed

"As the farmer scattered the seed"

##### beside the road

This refers to a "path" next to the field. The ground there would have been hard from people walking on it.

#### Matthew 13:5

##### Immediately they sprang up

"The seeds quickly sprouted and grew"

#### Matthew 13:6

##### they were scorched

"the sun scorched the plants, and they became too hot"

##### they withered away

"the plants became dry and died"

#### Matthew 13:7

##### fell among the thorn plants

"fell where plants with thorns grew"

##### choked them

"choked the new sprouts." Use your word for the way weeds prevent other plants from growing well.

#### Matthew 13:8

##### produced a crop

"grew more seeds" or "gave fruit"

##### some one hundred times as much, some sixty, and some thirty

"some seeds produced 100 times as much crop, some seeds produced 60 times as much crop, and some seeds produced 30 times as much crop"

#### Matthew 13:9

##### He who has ears, let him hear

"Let the one who is willing to listen, listen" or "The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey"

#### Matthew 13:11

##### You have been given the privilege of understanding mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given

"God has given you the privilege of understanding mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but God has not given it to these people" or "God has made you able to understand mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but he has not enabled these people to understand"

##### mysteries of the kingdom of heaven

"the secrets about our God in heaven and his rule"

#### Matthew 13:12

##### has will be given more

"has understanding, God will give him more understanding"

##### whoever does not have

"whoever does not have understanding" or "whoever does not receive what I teach"

##### even what he has will be taken away from him

"God will take away even what he has"

#### Matthew 13:13

##### to them ... they

All occurrences of "them" and "they" refer to the people in the crowd.

##### Though they are seeing, they do not see; and though they are hearing, they do not hear, or understand.

Jesus teaches the disciples that the crowd refuses to understand God's truth.

##### Though they are seeing, they do not see

Though they are able to see, they do not really see”

##### though they are hearing they do not hear

“Though they are able to hear, they do not listen well”

#### Matthew 13:14

##### Listening, you will hear, but you will never understand

"You will hear what God says through the prophets, but you will not understand its true meaning"

##### seeing, you will see, but you will never know

"you will see what God does through the prophets, but you will not understand it"

#### Matthew 13:15

##### For the heart of this people ... I would heal them

This describes the people's spiritual condition. It means the people are stubborn and refuse to receive and understand God's truth. If they would, then they would repent and God would forgive them and welcome them back as his people.

##### the heart of this people has become dull

"these people's minds are slow to learn" or "these people can no longer learn"

##### with their ears they hardly hear

"they refuse to use their ears to listen"

##### they have shut their eyes

"they refuse to use their eyes to see"

##### understand with their heart

"understand with their minds"

##### turn again

"turn back to me" or "repent"

##### I would heal them

"have me receive them again"

#### Matthew 13:16

##### But blessed are your eyes, for they see; and your ears, for they hear

Jesus is emphasizing that they have pleased God because they have believed what Jesus has said and done.

##### But blessed are your eyes, for they see

"You are blessed because your eyes are able to see"

##### your ears, for they hear

"and blessed are your ears, for they hear" "you are blessed because your ears are able to hear"

#### Matthew 13:17

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### you

All occurrences of this word are plural and refer to the disciples.

##### the things that you see

"the things you have seen me do"

##### the things that you hear

"the things you have heard me say"

#### Matthew 13:19

##### the word of the kingdom

"the message about God's rule as king"

##### the evil one comes and snatches away what has been sown in his heart

"The evil one causes him to forget the message that he has heard just as a bird snatches away seed from the ground"

##### the evil one

This refers to Satan.

##### snatches away

Try to use a word that means to grab something away from someone who is the rightful owner.

##### what has been sown in his heart

"the message that God sowed in his heart" or "the message that he heard"

##### in his heart

Here "heart" refers to the mind of the hearer.

##### This is the seed that was sown beside the road

"This is the meaning of the seed that was sown beside the road" or "The road where seed was sown represents this person"

#### Matthew 13:20

##### What was sown on rocky ground

"The seed that fell on rocky ground"

##### What was sown on rocky ground is

"The rocky ground where seed was sown represents" or "The rocky ground where seed fell represents"

##### the person who hears the word

In the parable, the seed represents the word.

##### the word

"the message" or "God's teaching"

##### receives it with joy

"joyfully believes it"

#### Matthew 13:21

##### yet he has no root in himself and he endures for a while

but like a plant that does not grow deep roots, he only endures for a little while"

##### he quickly falls away

"immediately he falls away" or "he quickly stops believing the message"

#### Matthew 13:22

##### What was sown

"The seed that was sown" or "The seed that fell"

##### What was sown among the thorn plants

"The ground with the thorn plants where seed was sown"

##### the word

"the message" or "God's teaching"

##### the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of riches choke the word

"as weeds prevent good plants from growing, the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of riches keep this person from listening to God's word"

##### cares of the world

"the things in this world that people worry about"

##### the deceitfulness of riches

"the love of money"

##### he becomes unfruitful

"he becomes unproductive" or "he does not do what God wants"

#### Matthew 13:23

##### The seed that was sown on the good soil

"The good soil where seeds were sown"

##### He bears fruit and produces a crop

"Like a healthy plant that bears a crop of fruit, he is productive"

##### a crop, yielding in one case a hundred, in another sixty, and in another thirty times as much as was planted

"a crop, producing100 times as much as the farmer planted,60 times as much as the farmer planted, or 30 times as much as the farmer planted"

#### Matthew 13:24

##### Jesus presented another parable

"Jesus told them another parable"

##### The kingdom of heaven is like a man

The translation should not equate the kingdom of heaven to a man, but rather the kingdom of heaven is like the situation described in the parable.

##### The kingdom of heaven is like

"When our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like"

#### Matthew 13:25

##### weeds

"bad seed" or "weed seeds"

#### Matthew 13:26

##### When the blades sprouted

"When the wheat seeds sprouted" or "When the plants came up"

#### Matthew 13:27

##### the landowner

This is the same person who sowed good seed in his field.

##### did you not sow good seed in your field?

"you sowed good seed in your field!"

##### did you not sow

"did we not sow"

#### Matthew 13:28

##### So do you want us

The word "us" refers to the servants.

#### Matthew 13:30

##### I will say to the reapers, "First pull out the weeds and tie them in bundles to burn them, but gather the wheat into my barn."

"I will tell the reapers to first gather up the weeds and tie them in bundles to burn them, and then gather the wheat into my barn."

##### barn

a farm building that can be used for storing grain

#### Matthew 13:31

##### The kingdom of heaven is like

"When our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like"

##### mustard seed

a very small seed that grows into a large plant

#### Matthew 13:32

##### This seed is indeed the smallest of all seeds

Mustard seeds were the smallest seeds known to the original hearers.

#### Matthew 13:33

##### The kingdom of heaven is like yeast

The spread of the kingdom is like the spreading of the yeast.

##### The kingdom of heaven is like

"When our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like"

##### three measures of flour

If your culture does not have something to measure large amounts, you could simple say “a large amount of flour.”

##### until all the dough had risen

Women would mix flour, water, and yeast together to make dough, and the yeast would make the dough rise.

#### Matthew 13:34

##### All these things

his refers to what Jesus taught beginning in Matthew 13:1

##### he said nothing to them without a parable

"everything he taught them he said in parables"

#### Matthew 13:35

##### what had been said through the prophet might be fulfilled, when he said

"what God told one of the prophets to write long ago might come true"

##### when he said

"when the prophet said"

##### I will open my mouth

"I will speak"

##### things that were hidden

"things that God has kept hidden"

##### from the foundation of the world

"since the beginning of the world" or "since God created the world"

#### Matthew 13:37

##### He who sows the good seed

"The one who sows the good seed" or "The sower of the good seed"

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is referring to himself.

#### Matthew 13:38

##### the sons of the kingdom

“the people who belong to the kingdom” or “the people who submit to God’s rule”

##### of the kingdom

"of God"

##### the sons of the evil one

"the people who belong to the evil one"

#### Matthew 13:40

##### Therefore, as the weeds are gathered up and consumed by fire

"Therefore, as people gather up weeds and burn them in the fire"

#### Matthew 13:41

##### The Son of Man will send out his angels

"I, the Son of Man, will send out my angels"

##### all stumbling blocks

everything that causes people to sin

##### those who commit lawlessness

"those who are lawless" or "evil people"

#### Matthew 13:42

##### furnace of fire

"fiery furnace"

##### weeping and grinding of teeth

"weeping and showing that they are suffering very much"

#### Matthew 13:43

##### shine like the sun

"be as easy to see as the sun."

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father

##### He who has ears, let him hear

"Let the one who is willing to listen, listen" or "The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey"

#### Matthew 13:44

##### The kingdom of heaven is like

"When our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like"

##### like a treasure hidden in a field

"a treasure that someone had hidden in a field"

##### treasure

a very valuable and precious thing or collection of things

##### hid it

"covered it up"

##### and buys that field

He buys the field to take possession of the hidden treasure.

#### Matthew 13:45

##### like a man who is a merchant looking for valuable pearls

The implied information is that the man was looking for valuable pearls that he could buy.

##### a merchant

a trader or wholesale dealer who often obtains merchandise from distant places

##### valuable pearls

"fine pearls" or "beautiful pearls"

#### Matthew 13:47

##### the kingdom of heaven is like a net

Jesus was teaching that the kingdom draws all kinds of people like a net catches all kinds of fish.

##### the kingdom of heaven is like

"When our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like"

##### like a net that was cast into the sea

"like a net that some fishermen cast into the sea"

#### Matthew 13:48

##### drew it up on the beach

"pulled the net up onto the beach" or "pulled the net ashore"

##### the good ones

"the good fish."

##### the bad ones

"the bad fish."

##### threw away

"did not keep"

#### Matthew 13:49

##### will come

"will come out" or "will go out" or "will come from heaven"

##### the wicked from among the righteous

"the wicked people from the righteous people"

#### Matthew 13:50

##### They will throw them

"The angels will throw the wicked people"

##### furnace of fire

"fiery furnace"

##### weeping and grinding of teeth

"weeping and expressing their extreme suffering"

#### Matthew 13:51

##### Have you understood all these things?" The disciples said to him, "Yes."

"Jesus asked them if they had understood all this, and they said that they did understand."

#### Matthew 13:52

##### has become a disciple to the kingdom of heaven

"has learned the truth about our God in heaven, who is king" or "has submitted himself to God's rule"

##### is like a man who is the owner of a house, who draws out old and new things from his treasure

Jesus compares scribes, who know very well the scriptures that Moses and the prophets wrote, and who also now accept Jesus’s teachings, to a house owner who uses both old and new treasures.

##### treasure

A treasure is a very valuable and precious thing or a collection of things. Here it may refer to the place where these things are stored, the "treasury" or "storeroom."

#### Matthew 13:53

##### Then it came about that when

"Then when" or "After"

#### Matthew 13:54

##### his own region

"his hometown." This refers to the town of Nazareth, where Jesus grew up.

##### Where does this man get his wisdom and these miraculous powers from?

"How can an ordinary man like this be so wise and do such great miracles?" or "It is strange that he is able to speak with such wisdom and do these miracles!"

#### Matthew 13:55

##### Is not this man the carpenter's son? Is not his mother called Mary? Are not his brothers James, Joseph, Simon, and Judas?

"He is just the son of a carpenter. We know his mother Mary, and his brothers James, Joseph, Simon, and Judas."

##### the carpenter's son

“the builder’s son.” A carpenter is someone who makes things with wood or stone.

#### Matthew 13:56

##### Are not all his sisters with us?

"And all his sisters are with us, too."

##### Where did he get all these things?

“He must have gotten these things from somewhere!” or “We do not know where he got his wisdom and power!”

##### all these things

This refers to Jesus's wisdom and ability to do miracles.

#### Matthew 13:57

##### They were offended by him

"The people of Jesus's hometown took offense at him" or "The people rejected Jesus"

##### A prophet is not without honor

"A prophet receives honor everywhere" or "People everywhere honor a prophet" )

##### his own country

"his own region" or "his own hometown"

##### in his own family

"in his own home"

#### Matthew 13:58

##### He did not do many miracles there

"Jesus did not do many miracles in his own hometown"

Chapter 14

1About that time, Herod the tetrarch heard the news about Jesus.2He said to his servants, "This is John the Baptist; he has risen from the dead. Therefore these powers are at work in him."

3For Herod had arrested John, bound him, and put him in prison because of Herodias, his brother Philip's wife.4For John had said to him, "It is not lawful for you to have her as your wife."5Herod would have killed him, but he feared the people, because they regarded him as a prophet.

6But when Herod's birthday came, the daughter of Herodias danced in the midst and pleased Herod.7In response, he promised with an oath to give her whatever she should ask.8After being instructed by her mother, she said, "Give me here, on a platter, the head of John the Baptist."9The king was grieved by her request, but because of his oath and because of all those at dinner with him, he ordered that it should be done.10He sent and beheaded John in the prison.11Then his head was brought on a platter and given to the girl, and she took it to her mother.12Then his disciples came, took up the corpse, and buried it. After this, they went and told Jesus.

13Now when Jesus heard this, he withdrew from there in a boat to a deserted place. When the crowds heard of it, they followed him on foot from the cities.14Then Jesus came before them and saw the large crowd. He had compassion on them and healed their sick.15When the evening had come, the disciples came to him and said, "This is a deserted place, and the hour has already passed. Dismiss the crowds, so that they can go into the villages and buy food for themselves."

16But Jesus said to them, "They have no need to go away. You give them something to eat."

17They said to him, "We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish."

18Jesus said, "Bring them to me."19Then Jesus ordered the crowd to sit down on the grass. He took the five loaves and the two fish. Looking up to heaven, he blessed and broke the loaves and gave them to the disciples, and the disciples gave them to the crowd.20They all ate and were filled. Then they took up what remained of the broken pieces of food—twelve baskets full.21Those who ate were about five thousand men, besides women and children.

22Immediately he made the disciples get into the boat and go before him to the other side, while he sent away the crowds.23After he had sent away the crowds, he went up on the mountain by himself to pray. When evening came, he was there alone.24But the boat was now a long way from land, being tossed about by the waves, for the wind was blowing against them.25In the fourth watch of the night Jesus approached them, walking on the sea.26When the disciples saw him walking on the sea, they were troubled and said, "It is a ghost," and they cried out in fear.

27But Jesus spoke to them right away and said, "Be brave! It is I! Do not be afraid."

28Peter answered him and said, "Lord, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water."

29Jesus said, "Come."

So Peter got out from the boat and walked on the water to go to Jesus.30But when Peter saw the strong wind, he became afraid. As he began to sink, he cried out and said, "Lord, save me!"

31Jesus immediately stretched out his hand, took hold of Peter, and said to him, "You of little faith, why did you doubt?"

32Then when Jesus and Peter went into the boat, the wind ceased blowing.33Then the disciples in the boat worshiped Jesus and said, "Truly you are the Son of God."

34When they had crossed over, they came to land at Gennesaret.35When the men in that place recognized Jesus, they sent messages everywhere into the surrounding area, and they brought to him everyone who was sick.36They begged him that they might just touch the edge of his garment, and as many as touched it were healed.

#### Matthew 14:1

##### About that time

"In those days" or "While Jesus was ministering in Galilee"

##### heard the news about Jesus

"heard reports about Jesus" or "heard about the fame of Jesus"

#### Matthew 14:2

##### He said

"Herod said"

##### has risen from the dead

The words "the dead" speak of all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from the dead speaks of coming alive again.

##### Therefore these powers are at work in him

Some Jews at that time believed if a person came back from the dead he would have powers to do mighty things.

#### Matthew 14:3

##### Herod had arrested John, bound him, and put him in prison

"Herod ordered his soldiers to arrest and bind John the Baptist and put him in prison"

##### Philip's wife

Philip was Herod's brother. Herod had taken Philip's wife to be his own wife.

#### Matthew 14:4

##### For John had said to him, "It is not lawful for you to have her as your wife."

"For John had said to Herod that it was not lawful for Herod to have Herodias as his wife."

##### It is not lawful

Philip was still alive when Herod married Herodias.

#### Matthew 14:5

##### would have killed him

"wanted to kill John"

##### he feared

"Herod feared"

##### they regarded him

"they regarded John"

#### Matthew 14:6

##### in the midst

"in the midst of the guests attending the birthday celebration"

#### Matthew 14:8

##### After being instructed by her mother

"After her mother instructed her"

##### she said

"the daughter of Herodias said to Herod"

##### platter

a very large plate

#### Matthew 14:9

##### The king was grieved by her request

"The king was grieved because she had asked him to kill John"

##### he ordered that it should be done

"he ordered his men to do what she said"

#### Matthew 14:11

##### his head was brought on a platter and given to the girl

"someone brought his head on a platter and gave it to the girl"

#### Matthew 14:12

##### his disciples

John's disciples"

##### the corpse

"the dead body"

##### they went and told Jesus

"the disciples of John went and told Jesus what had happened to John the Baptist"

#### Matthew 14:13

##### heard this

"heard what happened to John" or "heard the news about John"

##### When the crowds heard of it

"When the crowds heard where Jesus had gone" or "When the crowds heard that he had left"

##### on foot

This means that the people in the crowd were walking.

#### Matthew 14:15

##### the disciples came to him

"Jesus's disciples came to him"

##### the hour has already passed

"the day is already over."

#### Matthew 14:16

##### But Jesus said to them

“But Jesus said to his disciples”

#### Matthew 14:17

##### five loaves of bread

Loaves of bread are lumps of dough that have been shaped and baked.

#### Matthew 14:19

##### He took

"He held in his hands." He did not steal them.

##### broke the loaves

"tore the loaves"

#### Matthew 14:20

##### and were filled

"until they were full" or "until they were no longer hungry"

##### they took up

"the disciples gathered up" or "some people gathered up"

#### Matthew 14:24

##### being tossed about by the waves

"and the disciples could not control the boat because of the large waves"

#### Matthew 14:25

##### In the fourth watch of the night

"Just before dawn"

##### walking on the sea

"walking on top of the water"

#### Matthew 14:26

##### ghost

a spirit that has left the body of a person who has died

#### Matthew 14:30

##### when Peter saw the strong wind

"when Peter saw that the wind was tossing the waves back and forth" or "when he realized how strong the wind was"

#### Matthew 14:31

##### You of little faith, why

"You have so little faith! Why"

##### why did you doubt?

"you should not have doubted that I could keep you from sinking."

#### Matthew 14:33

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Matthew 14:34

##### When they had crossed over

"When Jesus and his disciples had crossed over the lake"

##### Gennesaret

This is a small town on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Matthew 14:36

##### his garment

"his robe" or "what he was wearing"

##### were healed

"became well"

Chapter 15

1Then some Pharisees and scribes came to Jesus from Jerusalem. They said,2"Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat bread."

3He answered and said to them, "Then why do you violate the commandment of God for the sake of your traditions?4For God said, 'Honor your father and your mother,' and 'He who speaks evil of his father or mother will surely die.'5But you say, 'Whoever says to his father or mother, "Whatever help you would have received from me is now a gift given to God,"6that person does not need to honor his father.' In this way you have made void the word of God [1](#footnote-target-1) for the sake of your traditions.7You hypocrites! Well did Isaiah prophesy about you when he said,  
  
8'This people honors me with their lips,but their heart is far from me.9They worship me in vainbecause they teach as their doctrines the commandments of people.'"

10Then he called the crowd to himself and said to them, "Listen and understand—11Nothing that enters into the mouth defiles a person. Instead, what comes out of the mouth, this is what defiles a person."

12Then the disciples came and said to Jesus, "Do you know that the Pharisees were offended when they heard this statement?"

13Jesus answered and said, "Every plant that my heavenly Father has not planted will be rooted up.14Let them alone; they are blind guides. If a blind person guides another blind person, both will fall into a pit."

15Peter responded and said to Jesus, "Explain this parable to us."

16Jesus said, "Are you also still without understanding?17Do you not understand that whatever goes into the mouth passes into the stomach and then goes out into the latrine?18But the things that come out of the mouth come from the heart. They are the things that defile a person.19For from the heart proceed evil thoughts, murder, adultery, sexual immorality, theft, false witness, and slander.20These are the things that defile a person. But to eat with unwashed hands does not defile a person."

21Then Jesus went away from there and withdrew toward the regions of the cities of Tyre and Sidon.22Behold, a Canaanite woman came out from that region. She shouted out and said, "Have mercy on me, Lord, Son of David! My daughter is severely demon-possessed."

23But Jesus answered her not a word. His disciples came and begged him, saying, "Send her away, for she is shouting after us."

24But Jesus answered and said, "I was not sent to anyone except to the lost sheep of the house of Israel."

25But she came and bowed down before him, saying, "Lord, help me."

26He answered and said, "It is not proper to take the children's bread and throw it to the dogs."

27She said, "Yes, Lord, but even the dogs eat some of the crumbs that fall from their masters' tables."

28Then Jesus answered and said to her, "Woman, great is your faith; let it be done for you just as you wish." Her daughter was healed from that hour.

29Jesus left that place and went near to the Sea of Galilee. Then he went up a hill and sat there.30Large crowds came to him. They brought with them lame, blind, mute, and crippled people, and many others who were sick. They presented them at Jesus' feet, and he healed them.31So the crowd marveled when they saw the mute persons speak, the crippled made well, the lame walking, and the blind seeing. They glorified the God of Israel.

32Jesus called his disciples to him and said, "I have compassion on the crowd because they have stayed with me for three days already and have nothing to eat. I do not want to send them away without eating, or they may faint on the way."

33The disciples said to him, "Where can we get enough loaves of bread in such a deserted place to satisfy so large a crowd?"

34Jesus said to them, "How many loaves do you have?"

They said, "Seven, and a few small fish."35Then Jesus commanded the crowd to sit down on the ground.36He took the seven loaves and the fish, and after giving thanks, he broke the loaves and gave them to the disciples. The disciples gave them to the crowd.37The people all ate and were satisfied. Then they gathered up seven baskets full of the broken pieces that were left over.38Those who ate were four thousand men, besides women and children.39Then Jesus sent the crowds away and got into the boat and went into the region of Magadan.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies have the word of God ; some other ancient copies have the commandment. It is difficult to choose the better reading.

#### Matthew 15:2

##### Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders?

"Your disciples do not respect the rules that our ancestors have given us."

##### traditions of the elders

This is not the same as the law of Moses. This refers to later teachings and interpretations of the law given by religious leaders after Moses.

##### they do not wash their hands

"they do not wash their hands properly"

##### when they eat bread

"before they eat"

#### Matthew 15:3

##### Then why do you violate the commandment of God for the sake of your traditions?

"And I see that you refuse to obey God's commands just so that you can follow what your ancestors taught you!"

#### Matthew 15:4

##### He who speaks evil of his father or mother will surely die

"The people should execute anyone who speaks evil of his father or mother"

#### Matthew 15:5

##### But you say

Here "you" refers to the Pharisees and scribes.

#### Matthew 15:6

##### that person does not need to honor his father

The religious leaders taught that a person does not need to show respect to his parents by taking care of them.

##### you have made void the word of God

"you have treated the word of God as if it were invalid" or "you have ignored God's commands"

##### for the sake of your traditions

"because you want to follow your traditions"

#### Matthew 15:7

##### Well did Isaiah prophesy about you

"Isaiah told the truth in this prophecy about you"

##### when he said

"when he said what God told him"

#### Matthew 15:8

##### This people honors me with their lips

"These people say all the right things to me"

##### but their heart is far from me

"but they do not really love me"

#### Matthew 15:9

##### They worship me in vain

"Their worship means nothing to me" or "They only pretend to worship me"

##### the commandments of people

"the rules that people make up"

#### Matthew 15:11

##### enters into the mouth ... comes out of the mouth

“Things that go into the mouth do not defile a person”

#### Matthew 15:12

##### the Pharisees were offended when they heard this statement

“this statement made the Pharisees angry” or “the Pharisees became angry when you said that”

#### Matthew 15:13

##### Every plant that my heavenly Father has not planted will be rooted up

Jesus is teaching that the Pharisees do not actually belong to God, so God will remove them.

##### my heavenly Father

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### will be rooted up

"my Father will uproot" or "he will take out of the ground" or "he will remove"

#### Matthew 15:14

##### Let them alone

The word "them" refers to the Pharisees.

##### blind guides ... both will fall into a pit

“they are like blind guides.” The Pharisees do not understand God’s commands or how to please him.

#### Matthew 15:16

##### Are you also still without understanding?

"I am disappointed that you, my disciples, still do not understand what I teach!"

#### Matthew 15:17

##### Do you not understand ... into the latrine?

"Surely you understand ... into the latrine."

##### passes into the stomach

"goes into the stomach"

##### latrine

This a polite term for the place where people bury body waste.

#### Matthew 15:18

##### things that come out of the mouth

"words that a person says"

##### from the heart

"from inside the person" or "from a person's mind"

#### Matthew 15:19

##### murder

the act of killing innocent people

#### Matthew 15:20

##### to eat with unwashed hands

"eating without first washing one's hands"

#### Matthew 15:21

##### Jesus went away

"Jesus and his disciples went away"

#### Matthew 15:22

##### a Canaanite woman came out from that region

“a woman who was from that region and who belonged to the group of people called Canaanites came.”

##### Have mercy on me

"Have mercy and heal my daughter"

##### Son of David

"Son of David" is also a title for the Messiah, and the woman may have been calling Jesus by this title.

##### My daughter is severely demon-possessed

"A demon is controlling my daughter terribly" or "A demon is tormenting my daughter severely"

#### Matthew 15:23

##### answered her not a word

"said nothing to her"

#### Matthew 15:24

##### I was not sent to anyone except to the lost sheep ... Israel

"I was sent only to the lost sheep ... Israel"

##### to the lost sheep of the house of Israel

“the people of Israel. They are like lost sheep.” See how you translated this in Matthew 10:6.

#### Matthew 15:25

##### she came

"the Canaanite woman came"

##### bowed down before him

This shows that the woman humbled herself before Jesus.

#### Matthew 15:26

##### It is not proper to take the children's bread and throw it to the little dogs

The basic meaning is that it is not right to take what is supposed to belong to Jews and give it to non-Jews.

##### the children's bread

"the children's food"

##### the little dogs

The Jews considered dogs to be unclean animals. Here they are used as an image for non-Jews.

#### Matthew 15:27

##### even the little dogs eat some of the crumbs that fall from their masters' tables

The woman means non-Jews should be able to have a small amount of the good things Jews are throwing away.

##### little dogs

Use words here for dogs of any size that people keep as pets.

#### Matthew 15:28

##### let it be done

"I will do"

##### Her daughter was healed

"Jesus healed her daughter" or "Her daughter became well"

##### from that hour

"at exactly the same time" or "immediately"

#### Matthew 15:30

##### lame, blind, mute, and crippled people

"those who could not walk, those who could not see, those who could not talk, and those whose arms or legs did not function"

##### They presented them at Jesus' feet

"The crowds placed the sick people on the ground in front of Jesus"

#### Matthew 15:31

##### the crippled made well

"the crippled persons ... the lame persons ... the blind persons become well"

#### Matthew 15:33

##### Where can we get enough loaves of bread in such a deserted place to satisfy so large a crowd?

"There is nowhere nearby that we can get enough bread for such a large crowd."

#### Matthew 15:34

##### Seven, and a few small fish

"We have seven loaves of bread, and we also have a few small fish"

#### Matthew 15:36

##### he broke the loaves

"he tore the loaves"

#### Matthew 15:37

##### they gathered

"the disciples gathered" or "some people gathered"

#### Matthew 15:39

##### Magadan

This region is sometimes called "Magdala."

Chapter 16

1The Pharisees and Sadducees came and tested him by asking him to show them a sign from the sky.2But he answered and said to them, "When it is evening, you say, 'It will be fair weather, for the sky is red.'3When it is morning, you say, 'It will be foul weather, for the sky is red and overcast.' You know how to interpret the appearance of the sky, but you cannot interpret the signs of the times.4An evil and adulterous generation seeks for a sign, but no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah." Then Jesus left them and went away.

5When the disciples reached the other side, they had forgotten to take bread.6Jesus said to them, "Watch out and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees."

7The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread."

8Jesus was aware of this and said, "You of little faith, why do you reason among yourselves and say that it is because you have taken no bread?9Do you not understand? Do you not remember the five loaves for the five thousand, and how many baskets you gathered up?10Or the seven loaves for the four thousand, and how many baskets you took up?11How is it that you do not understand that I was not speaking to you about bread? Watch out and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees."12Then they understood that he was not telling them to beware of yeast in bread, but to beware of the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees.

13Now when Jesus came to the regions near Caesarea Philippi, he asked his disciples, saying, "Who do people say that the Son of Man is?"

14They said, "Some say John the Baptist; some, Elijah; and others, Jeremiah, or one of the prophets."

15He said to them, "But who do you say that I am?"

16Answering, Simon Peter said, "You are the Christ, the Son of the living God."

17Jesus answered and said to him, "Blessed are you, Simon son of Jonah, for flesh and blood have not revealed this to you, but my Father who is in heaven.18I also say to you that you are Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church. The gates of Hades will not prevail against it.19I will give to you the keys of the kingdom of heaven. Whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven."20Then Jesus commanded the disciples not to tell anyone that he was the Christ.

21From that time Jesus started to tell his disciples that he must go to Jerusalem, suffer many things at the hands of the elders and chief priests and scribes, be killed, and be raised back to life on the third day.

22Then Peter took him aside and rebuked him, saying, "May this be far from you, Lord! May this never happen to you!"

23But Jesus turned and said to Peter, "Get behind me, Satan! You are a stumbling block to me, for you do not think about the things of God, but about the things of people."24Then Jesus said to his disciples, "If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.25For whoever wants to save his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake will find it.26For what does it profit a person if he gains the whole world but forfeits his life? What can a person give in exchange for his life?27For the Son of Man will come in the glory of his Father with his angels. Then he will reward every person according to his deeds.28Truly I say to you, there are some of you standing here who will not taste death until they see the Son of Man coming in his kingdom."

#### Matthew 16:1

##### tested him

"challenged him" or "wanted to trap him"

#### Matthew 16:2

##### When it is evening

"If the sky is red in the evening" or "If the sky is red when the sun is setting"

##### fair weather

This means clear, calm, and pleasant weather.

##### for the sky is red

As the sun is setting, Jews knew that if the color of the sky changes to red, it is a sign the next day will be clear and calm.

#### Matthew 16:3

##### When it is morning

"If the sky is red in the morning" or "If the sky is red when the sun is rising"

##### foul weather

"cloudy, stormy weather"

##### You know how to interpret the appearance of the sky

"You know how to look at the sky and understand what kind of weather you will have"

##### but you cannot interpret the signs of the times

"but you do not know how to look at what is happening right now and understand what it means"

#### Matthew 16:4

##### An evil and adulterous generation seeks for a sign ... given to it

"You are an evil and adulterous generation who demands signs from me ... given to you"

##### An evil and adulterous generation

"An unfaithful generation" or "A godless generation"

##### no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah

"The only sign that will be given to it is the sign of Jonah"

##### the sign of Jonah

"what happened to Jonah" or "the miracle that God did for Jonah."

#### Matthew 16:6

##### the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees

Translate as "yeast" here and do not explain its meaning in your translation. This meaning will be made clear in 16:12.

#### Matthew 16:8

##### why do you reason ... taken no bread?

"I am disappointed that you think it was because you forgot to bring bread that I talked about the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees."

#### Matthew 16:9

##### Do you not understand? Do you not remember ... you gathered up?

"Surely you understand and remember ... you gathered up!" or "You should understand. You should remember ... you gathered up."

#### Matthew 16:10

##### Or the seven loaves ... you took up?

"Surely you also remember the seven loaves ... you took up!"

#### Matthew 16:11

##### How is it that you do not understand that I was not speaking to you about bread?

"You should have understood that I was not really speaking about bread."

##### the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees

Here “yeast” represents evil ideas and wrong teaching. Translate as “yeast” and do not explain the meaning in your translation.

#### Matthew 16:13

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is referring to himself.

#### Matthew 16:16

##### the Son of the living God

This is an important title for Jesus that shows his relationship to God.

##### the living God

Here "living" contrasts the God of Israel to all the false gods and idols that people worshiped. Only the God of Israel is alive and has power to act.

#### Matthew 16:17

##### flesh and blood have not revealed

"a human did not reveal"

##### but my Father who is in heaven

"but it was my Father in heaven who revealed this to you"

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 16:18

##### you are Peter

The name Peter means "rock."

##### upon this rock I will build my church

Possible meanings are 1) “this rock” represents Peter, or 2) “this rock” represents the truth that Peter had just said in Matthew 16:16

##### The gates of Hades will not prevail against it

Possible meanings are 1) “the powers of death will not overcome my church” or 2) “my church will break down the power of death the way an army breaks into a city.”

#### Matthew 16:19

##### I will give to you

Here the word “you” refers to Peter.

##### the keys of the kingdom of heaven

Keys are objects that are used to lock or unlock doors. Here they represent authority.

##### the kingdom of heaven

This refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use "heaven" in your translation.

##### Whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven

“God in heaven will approve whenever you forbid or allow something on earth”

#### Matthew 16:21

##### suffer many things at the hands of the elders ... scribes

"suffer many things because of the elders ... scribes"

##### scribes, be killed, and be raised back to life on the third day

"scribes. People will then kill him, and on the third day God will make him become alive again"

#### Matthew 16:22

##### Peter took him aside

"Peter spoke to Jesus when no one else could hear them"

##### May this be far from you

"No" or "Never" or "May God forbid this"

#### Matthew 16:23

##### Get behind me, Satan! You are a stumbling block to me

"Get behind me, because you are acting like Satan! You are a stumbling block to me" or "Get behind me, Satan! I call you Satan because you are a stumbling block to me"

##### Get behind me

"Get away from me"

##### you do not think about the things of God, but about the things of people

"you do not think about what God thinks is important; instead, you only thing about the things that people think are important"

#### Matthew 16:24

##### to follow me

"to be my disciple" or "to be one of my disciples"

##### must deny himself

"must not give in to his own desires" or "must forsake his own desires"

##### take up his cross, and follow me

"and obey me even to the point of suffering and dying" or "and he must obey me even to the point of suffering and dying"

##### and follow me

"and obey me"

#### Matthew 16:25

##### whoever loses his life for my sake

This does not mean the person must necessarily die. It means he will consider obeying Jesus as being more important than his own life. Alternate translation: “whoever gives up his life for my sake”

##### for my sake

"because he trusts me" or "on my account" or "because of me"

##### will find it

"will find true life"

#### Matthew 16:26

##### For what does it profit a person ... his life?

"It does not profit a person ... his life."

##### if he gains the whole world

"if he gains everything he desires"

##### but forfeits his life

"but he loses his life"

##### What can a person give in exchange for his life?

"There is nothing that a person can give to regain his life."

#### Matthew 16:27

##### the Son of Man ... his Father ... Then he

"I, the Son of man ... my Father ... Then I"

##### will come in the glory of his Father

"will come, having the same glory as my Father"

##### with his angels

"and the angels will be with him" or "and the angels will be with me"

##### his Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and the Son of Man, Jesus.

##### according to his deeds

"according to what that person has done"

#### Matthew 16:28

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### will not taste death

"will not experience death" or" will not die"

##### until they see the Son of Man coming in his kingdom

"until they see the Son of Man coming as King" or "until they see the evidence that the Son of Man is King"

Chapter 17

1Six days later Jesus took with him Peter, James, and John his brother, and brought them up a high mountain by themselves.2He was transfigured before them. His face shone like the sun, and his garments became as brilliant as the light.3Behold, there appeared to them Moses and Elijah talking with him.4Peter answered and said to Jesus, "Lord, it is good for us to be here. If you desire, I will make here three shelters—one for you, and one for Moses, and one for Elijah."

5While he was still speaking, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them, and behold, there was a voice out of the cloud, saying, "This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. Listen to him."

6When the disciples heard it, they fell facedown and were very afraid.7Then Jesus came and touched them and said, "Get up and do not be afraid."8Then they looked up but saw no one except Jesus only.

9As they were coming down the mountain, Jesus commanded them, saying, "Report this vision to no one until the Son of Man has risen from the dead."

10His disciples asked him, saying, "Why then do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?"

11Jesus answered and said, "Elijah will indeed come and restore all things.12But I tell you, Elijah has already come, but they did not recognize him. Instead, they did whatever they wanted to him. In the same way, the Son of Man will also suffer at their hands."13Then the disciples understood that he was speaking to them about John the Baptist.

14When they had come to the crowd, a man came to him, knelt before him, and said,15"Lord, have mercy on my son, for he is epileptic and suffers severely. For he often falls into the fire or the water.16I brought him to your disciples, but they could not cure him."

17Jesus answered and said, "Unbelieving and perverse generation, how long will I have to stay with you? How long must I bear with you? Bring him here to me."18Jesus rebuked the demon, and it came out of him, and the boy was healed from that hour.

19Then the disciples came to Jesus privately and said, "Why could we not cast it out?"

20Jesus said to them, "Because of your small faith. For I truly say to you, if you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard seed, you can say to this mountain, 'Move from here to there,' and it will move, and nothing will be impossible for you."21[1](#footnote-target-1)

22While they stayed in Galilee, Jesus said to his disciples, "The Son of Man will be given over into the hands of people,23and they will kill him, and the third day he will be raised up." The disciples were deeply grieved.

24When they had come to Capernaum, the men who collected the two-drachma tax came to Peter and said, "Does not your teacher pay the two-drachma tax?"

25He said, "Yes."

When Peter came into the house, Jesus spoke to him first and said, "What do you think, Simon? From whom do the kings of the earth collect tolls or taxes? From their sons or from others?"

26"From others," Peter answered.

"Then the sons are free," Jesus said.27"But so that we do not cause the tax collectors to stumble, go to the sea, throw in a hook, and draw in the fish that comes up first. When you have opened its mouth, you will find a shekel. Take it and give it to the tax collectors for me and you."

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have v. 21, But this kind of demon does not go out except with prayer and fasting .

#### Matthew 17:2

##### He was transfigured before them

When they looked at him, his appearance was different from what it had been.

##### his garments

"what he was wearing"

#### Matthew 17:5

##### overshadowed them

"came over them"

##### there was a voice out of the cloud

"God spoke to them from out of the cloud"

#### Matthew 17:6

##### the disciples heard it

"the disciples heard God speak"

#### Matthew 17:8

##### they ... saw no one except Jesus only

"they ... saw only Jesus"

#### Matthew 17:9

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

#### Matthew 17:10

##### Why then do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?

The disciples are referring to the belief that Elijah will come back to life and return to the people of Israel before the Messiah comes.

#### Matthew 17:11

##### restore all things

"put things in order" or "get the people ready to receive the Messiah"

#### Matthew 17:12

##### they ... their

All occurrences of these words may mean either 1) the Jewish leaders or 2) all the Jewish people.

##### the Son of Man will also suffer at their hands

"they will make the Son of Man suffer"

##### the Son of Man will

"I, the Son of Man, will"

#### Matthew 17:15

##### have mercy on my son

"have mercy on my son and heal him"

##### is epileptic

"has seizures"

#### Matthew 17:17

##### Unbelieving and perverse generation, how

"This generation does not believe in God and loves to do evil rather than good. How"

##### how long will I have to stay with you? How long must I bear with you?

"I am tired of being with you! I am tired of your unbelief and corruption!"

#### Matthew 17:18

##### the boy was healed

"the boy became well"

##### from that hour

"immediately" or "at that moment"

#### Matthew 17:19

##### Why could we not cast it out?

"Why could we not make the demon come out of the boy?"

#### Matthew 17:20

##### For I truly say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### if you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard seed

A mustard seed is very small, but it grows into a large plant. Jesus means it only takes a small amount of faith to do a great miracle.

##### nothing will be impossible for you

"you will be able to do anything"

#### Matthew 17:22

##### The Son of Man will be given over into the hands of people

“Someone will give the Son of man over into the hands of people” or “Someone will take the Son of Man and put him under people’s power”

##### The Son of Man

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person.

##### into the hands of people

"to the control of the people" or "to the people"

#### Matthew 17:23

##### him ... he

Jesus is referring to himself

##### he will be raised up

"God will raise him up" or "God will cause him to become alive again"

##### deeply grieved

very sad and upset, as when a friend or family member dies.

#### Matthew 17:24

##### When they

"When Jesus and his disciples"

##### the two-drachma tax

"the temple tax"

#### Matthew 17:25

##### What do you think, Simon? From whom do the kings of the earth collect tolls or taxes? From their sons or from others?

""Listen, Simon. When kings collect taxes, they collect it from people who are not members of their own family. Do you agree that this is true?"

##### their sons

"their own family" or "the people of their own country"

#### Matthew 17:26

##### "From others," Peter answered

"'Yes, that is true,' Peter said" or "Peter said that he agreed with Jesus"

##### the sons

"their own family" or "the people of their own country"

#### Matthew 17:27

##### But so that we do not cause the tax collectors to stumble, go

“But so that we do not cause the tax collectors to think that we do something that is very bad”

##### throw in a hook

Fishermen tied hooks to the end of a line, then threw it in the water to catch fish.

##### its mouth

"the fish's mouth"

##### a shekel

a silver coin worth four days' wages

##### for me and you

Here "you" is singular and refers to Peter. Each man had to pay a half shekel tax. So one shekel would be enough for Jesus and Peter to pay their taxes.

Chapter 18

1At that time the disciples came to Jesus and said, "Who is greatest in the kingdom of heaven?"

2Jesus called to himself a little child, set him among them,3and said, "Truly I say to you, unless you turn and become like little children, you will in no way enter the kingdom of heaven.4Therefore, whoever humbles himself like this little child is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven.5Whoever welcomes a little child like this in my name receives me.6But whoever causes one of these little ones who believes in me to stumble, it would be better for him that a large millstone should be hung about his neck, and that he should be sunk into the depths of the sea.

7"Woe to the world because of stumbling blocks! For it is necessary that those stumbling blocks come, but woe to the person through whom those stumbling blocks come!8If your hand or your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off and throw it away from you. It is better for you to enter into life maimed or lame than to be thrown into the eternal fire having two hands or two feet.9If your eye causes you to stumble, pluck it out and throw it away from you. It is better for you to enter into life with one eye than to be thrown into the fiery hell having both eyes.10See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven.11[1](#footnote-target-1)12What do you think? If anyone has a hundred sheep, and one of them goes astray, does he not leave the ninety-nine on the hillside and go off seeking the one that went astray?13If he finds it, truly I say to you, he rejoices over it more than over the ninety-nine that did not go astray.14In the same way, it is not the will of your Father in heaven that one of these little ones should perish.

15"If your brother sins against you, go and rebuke him, between you and him alone. If he listens to you, you will have gained your brother.16But if he does not listen to you, take one or two others along with you so that by the mouth of two or three witnesses every word might be confirmed.17And if he refuses to listen to them, tell the matter to the church. If he also refuses to listen to the church, let him be to you as a pagan and a tax collector.18I tell you truly, whatever things you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven.19Again I tell you truly, if two of you agree on earth about anything they ask, it will be done for them by my Father who is in heaven.20For where two or three are gathered together in my name, there I am in their midst."

21Then Peter came and said to Jesus, "Lord, how often will my brother sin against me and I forgive him? Until seven times?"

22Jesus said to him, "I do not tell you seven times, but until seventy times seven.23Therefore the kingdom of heaven is similar to a certain king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.24As he began the settling, one servant was brought to him who owed him ten thousand talents.25But since he did not have the means to repay, his master commanded him to be sold, together with his wife and children and everything that he had, and payment to be made.26So the servant fell down, bowed down before him, and said, 'Master, have patience with me, and I will pay you everything.'27So the master of that servant, since he was moved with compassion, released him and forgave him the debt.28But that servant went out and found one of his fellow servants, who owed him one hundred denarii. He took hold of him, began to choke him, and said, 'Pay me what you owe.'

29"But his fellow servant fell down and pleaded with him, saying, 'Have patience with me, and I will repay you.'30But the first servant refused. Instead, he went and threw him into prison until he should pay him what he owed.31When his fellow servants saw what had happened, they were deeply grieved. They came and told their master everything that had happened.

32"Then that servant's master called him and said to him, 'You wicked servant, I forgave you all that debt because you pleaded with me.33Should you not have had mercy on your fellow servant, even as I had mercy on you?'34His master was angry and handed him over to the torturers until he would pay all that was owed.35So also my heavenly Father will do to you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient Greek copies do not have the sentence that some translations include, For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost .

#### Matthew 18:1

##### Who is greatest

"Who is the most important" or "Who among us will be the most important"

##### in the kingdom of heaven

"in God's kingdom" or "when our God in heaven establishes his rule on earth"

#### Matthew 18:3

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### unless you turn ... children, you will in no way enter the kingdom of heaven

"you will enter the kingdom of heaven only if you turn ... children"

##### enter the kingdom of heaven

"enter God's kingdom" or "belong to our God in heaven when he establishes his rule on earth"

#### Matthew 18:4

##### is the greatest

"is the most important" or "will be the most important"

##### in the kingdom of heaven

"in God's kingdom" or "when our God in heaven establishes his rule on earth"

#### Matthew 18:5

##### in my name

"because of me" or "because he is my disciple"

##### Whoever ... in my name receives me

"When someone ... in my name, it is like he is welcoming me" or "When someone ... in my name, it is as if he were welcoming me"

#### Matthew 18:6

##### millstone

"a heavy stone"

#### Matthew 18:7

##### to the world

"to the people of the world"

##### stumbling blocks ... those stumbling blocks come ... the person through whom those stumbling blocks come

"things that cause people to sin ... things come that cause people to sin ... any person who causes others to sin"

#### Matthew 18:8

##### If your hand or your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off and throw it away from you

Jesus exaggerates here to emphasize that people must do anything necessary to remove from their lives what causes them to sin.

##### causes you to stumble

“causes you to sin”

##### than to be thrown into the eternal fire having two hands or two feet

"than to have both hands and feet when God throws you into the eternal fire"

#### Matthew 18:9

##### into life

"into eternal life"

##### than to be thrown into the fiery hell having both eyes

"than to have both eyes when God throws you into the fiery hell"

##### the fiery hell

"hell, which is full of fire" or "the fire of hell"

#### Matthew 18:10

##### See that

"Be careful that" or "Be sure that"

##### you do not despise any of these little ones

"you show respect to these little ones"

##### that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven

Jesus means that the most important angels speak to God about these little ones.

##### always look on the face of my Father

"are always close to my Father" or "are always in the presence of my Father"

##### my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

#### Matthew 18:12

##### What do you think?

"Think about how people act." or "Think about this."

##### does he not leave ... astray?

"he will always leave ... astray."

#### Matthew 18:13

##### truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

#### Matthew 18:14

##### it is not the will of your Father in heaven that one of these little ones should perish

"your Father in heaven does not want any of these little ones to die" or "your Father in heaven does not want even one of these little ones to die"

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

#### Matthew 18:15

##### your brother

"your fellow believer"

##### you will have gained your brother

"you will have made your relationship with your brother good again"

#### Matthew 18:16

##### so that by the mouth of two or three witnesses every word might be confirmed

"so that two or three witnesses may say that what you say about your brother is true"

#### Matthew 18:17

##### if he refuses to listen to them

"if your fellow believer refuses to listen to the witnesses who came with you"

##### to the church

"to the whole community of believers"

##### let him be to you as a pagan and a tax collector

"treat him as you would treat a pagan or tax collector."

#### Matthew 18:18

##### I tell you truly

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.])

##### whatever things you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven

"God in heaven will bind whatever you bind on earth and loose whatever you loose" or "God in heaven will approve whatever you forbid or allow on earth"

#### Matthew 18:19

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 18:20

##### two or three

"two or more" or "at least two."

##### in my name

"because of me" or "because they are my disciples"

#### Matthew 18:22

##### seventy times seven

Possible meanings are 1) "70 times 7" or 2) "77 times." If using a number would be confusing, you can translate it as "more times than you can count" or "you must always forgive him."

#### Matthew 18:23

##### to settle accounts with his servants

"his servants to pay him what they owed him" or "to have his servants tell him what they had done with the goods he had entrusted to them"

#### Matthew 18:24

##### As he began the settling

“As he began to settle the accounts”

##### one servant was brought

"someone brought one of the king's servants"

##### ten thousand talents

“10,000 very valuable coins” or “10,000 bags of gold” or “a huge amount of money”

#### Matthew 18:25

##### his master commanded him to be sold ... and payment to be made

"the king commanded his servants to sell the man ... and to pay the debt with the money from the sale"

#### Matthew 18:27

##### he was moved with compassion

"he felt compassion for the servant"

##### released him

"let him go"

#### Matthew 18:28

##### one hundred denarii

"one hundred days' wages"

#### Matthew 18:29

##### and pleaded with him

"and begged him"

#### Matthew 18:30

##### he went and threw him into prison

"the first servant went and threw his fellow servant into prison"

#### Matthew 18:31

##### told their master

"told the king"

##### deeply grieved

very sad and upset, as when a friend or family member dies.

#### Matthew 18:32

##### you pleaded with me

"you begged me"

#### Matthew 18:33

##### Should you not have ... you?

"You should have ... you!"

#### Matthew 18:34

##### His master

"The king"

##### handed him over to the torturers

“he ordered his servants to give him over to those who would torture him”

##### that was owed

“all that he owed”

#### Matthew 18:35

##### my heavenly Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

##### from your heart

"sincerely" or "completely"

Chapter 19

1It came about that when Jesus had finished these words, he departed from Galilee and came to the region of Judea that is beyond the Jordan River.2Great crowds followed him, and he healed them there.

3Pharisees came to him, testing him, saying to him, "Is it lawful for a man to divorce his wife for any cause?"

4Jesus answered and said, "Have you not read that he who made them from the beginning made them male and female?5He who made them also said, 'For this reason a man will leave his father and mother and join to his wife, and the two will become one flesh.'6So they are no longer two, but one flesh. Therefore what God has joined together, let no one tear apart."

7They said to him, "Why then did Moses command us to give a certificate of divorce and then to send her away?"

8He said to them, "For your hardness of heart, Moses allowed you to divorce your wives, but from the beginning it was not that way.9I say to you, whoever divorces his wife, except for sexual immorality, and marries another, commits adultery." [1](#footnote-target-1)

10The disciples said to Jesus, "If that is the case of a man with his wife, it is not good to marry."

11But Jesus said to them, "Not everyone can accept this saying, but only those to whom it is given.12For there are eunuchs who were born that way from their mother's womb, and there are eunuchs who were made eunuchs by men, and there are eunuchs who made themselves eunuchs for the sake of the kingdom of heaven. He who is able to accept this teaching, let him accept it."

13Then some little children were brought to him so that he would lay his hands on them and pray, but the disciples rebuked them.14But Jesus said, "Permit the little children, and do not forbid them to come to me, for the kingdom of heaven belongs to such ones."15He placed his hands on the children, and then he went away from there.

16Behold, a man came to Jesus and said, "Teacher, what good thing must I do that I may have eternal life?"

17Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? Only one is good, but if you want to enter into life, keep the commandments."

18The man said to him, "Which commandments?"

Jesus said, "Do not murder, do not commit adultery, do not steal, do not bear false witness,19honor your father and your mother, and love your neighbor as yourself."

20The young man said to him, "All these things I have obeyed. What do I still need?"

21Jesus said to him, "If you wish to be perfect, go, sell your possessions, and give to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven; and come, follow me."22But when the young man heard what Jesus said, he went away sorrowful, for he had many possessions.

23Jesus said to his disciples, "Truly I say to you, it is hard for a rich man to enter the kingdom of heaven.24Again I say to you, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God."

25When the disciples heard it, they were very astonished and said, "Who then can be saved?"

26Jesus looked at them and said, "With people this is impossible, but with God all things are possible."

27Then Peter answered and said to him, "See, we have left everything and followed you. What then will we have?"

28Jesus said to them, "Truly I say to you, in the new age when the Son of Man sits on his glorious throne, you who have followed me will also sit upon twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel.29Every one who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or land for my name's sake will receive one hundred times as much and will inherit eternal life.30But many who are first will be last, and the last will be first.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have and the man who marries a woman who is divorced commits adultery .

#### Matthew 19:1

##### It came about that when he had finished these words

"When" or "After" he "had finished teaching these things"

##### departed from

"walked away from" or "left"

#### Matthew 19:3

##### came to him

"came to Jesus"

##### testing him, saying to him

"and challenged him by asking him" or "and wanted to trap him by asking him"

#### Matthew 19:4

##### Have you not read that he who made them from the beginning made them male and female?

"Surely you have read that in the beginning when God created people he made them male and female."

#### Matthew 19:5

##### He who made them also said, 'For this reason ... flesh.'

"And surely you know that God also said that for this reason ... flesh."

##### For this reason

This is a part of the quotation from Genesis story about Adam and Eve. In that context the reason a man will leave his father and mother is because God created a woman to be the man's companion.

##### join to his wife

"stay close to his wife" or "live with his wife"

##### the two will become one flesh

"they will become like one person"

#### Matthew 19:6

##### So they are no longer two, but one flesh

"So a husband and wife are no longer like two persons, but they are like one person"

#### Matthew 19:7

##### They said to him

"The Pharisees said to Jesus"

##### command us

"command us Jews"

##### certificate of divorce

This is a document that legally ends the marriage.

#### Matthew 19:8

##### For your hardness of heart

"Because of your stubbornness" or "Because you are stubborn"

##### your hardness ... allowed you ... your wives

Jesus is speaking to the Pharisees, but Moses gave this command many years earlier to their ancestors. Moses's command applied to all Jewish men in general.

##### from the beginning

Here "beginning" refers to when God first created man and woman.

#### Matthew 19:9

##### marries another

"marries another woman"

#### Matthew 19:11

##### to whom it is given

"to whom God gives it" or "whom God enables to follow it"

#### Matthew 19:12

##### there are eunuchs who were made eunuchs by men

"there are men whom other men have made eunuchs"

##### eunuchs who made themselves eunuchs

Possible meanings are 1) "men who have made themselves eunuchs by removing their private parts" or 2) "men who choose to remain unmarried and sexually pure."

##### for the sake of the kingdom of heaven

"so they can better serve our God in heaven"

#### Matthew 19:13

##### some little children were brought to him

"some people brought little children to Jesus"

#### Matthew 19:14

##### for the kingdom of heaven belongs to such ones

"for when our God in heaven establishes his rule on earth, he will be king over such as these" or "for God will allow such as these into his kingdom"

##### belongs to such ones

“belongs to those who are like children.” This means those who are humble like children will enter God’s kingdom.

#### Matthew 19:16

##### Behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

#### Matthew 19:17

##### Why do you ask me about what is good?

"You ask me about what is good" or "Think about why you ask me about what is good."

##### Only one is good

"God alone is completely good"

##### to enter into life

"to receive eternal life"

#### Matthew 19:19

##### love your neighbor as yourself

"love every other person as much as you love yourself"

#### Matthew 19:21

##### If you wish

"If you want"

##### to the poor

"to those who are poor"

##### you will have treasure in heaven

"God will reward you in heaven"

#### Matthew 19:23

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### to enter the kingdom of heaven

"to accept our God in heaven as their king" or "to enter God's kingdom"

#### Matthew 19:24

##### it is easier ... kingdom of God

Jesus uses an exaggeration to illustrate how very difficult it is for rich people to enter the kingdom of God.

##### the eye of a needle

the hole near one end of a needle, through which thread is passed

#### Matthew 19:25

##### they were very astonished

"the disciples were amazed." because they believed having riches was proof that God approved of someone.

##### Who then can be saved?

"Then there is no one whom God will save!" or "Then there is no one who will receive eternal life!"

#### Matthew 19:27

##### we have left everything

"we have left all our wealth" or "we have given up all our possessions"

##### What then will we have?

"What good thing will God give us?"

#### Matthew 19:28

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### in the new age

"at the time when God makes all things new"

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

##### sits on his glorious throne

"sits as king on his glorious throne" or "rules gloriously as king"

##### sit upon twelve thrones

"sit as kings on 12 thrones"

##### the twelve tribes of Israel

"the people of the 12 tribes of Israel"

#### Matthew 19:29

##### for my name's sake

"because of me" or "because he believes in me"

##### receive one hundred times as much

"receive from God 100 times as many good things as they gave up"

##### will inherit eternal life

"God will cause them to live forever."

#### Matthew 19:30

##### But many who are first will be last, and the last will be first

"But many who seem to be important now will be the least important, and many who seem to be unimportant now will be very important"

Chapter 20

1"For the kingdom of heaven is like a landowner who went out early in the morning to hire laborers for his vineyard.2After he had agreed with the laborers for one denarius a day, he sent them into his vineyard.3He went out again about the third hour and saw other laborers standing idle in the marketplace.4To them he said, 'You also, go into the vineyard, and I will give you what is right.' So they went to work.5Again he went out about the sixth hour and again the ninth hour, and did the same.6Once more about the eleventh hour he went out and found others standing idle. He said to them, 'Why do you stand here idle all the day long?'

7"They said to him, 'Because no one has hired us.'

"He said to them, 'You also go into the vineyard.'8When evening came, the owner of the vineyard said to his manager, 'Call the laborers and pay them their wages, beginning from the last to the first.'

9"When the laborers who had been hired at the eleventh hour came, each of them received a denarius.10When the first laborers came, they thought that they would receive more, but they also received one denarius each.11When they received their wages, they complained about the landowner.12They said, 'These last laborers have spent only one hour in work, but you have made them equal to us, we who have borne the burden of the day and the scorching heat.'

13"But the owner answered and said to one of them, 'Friend, I do you no wrong. Did you not agree with me for one denarius?14Take what belongs to you and go your way. I choose to give to these last hired laborers just the same as to you.15Is it not lawful for me to do as I want with what belongs to me? Or are you envious because I am good?'16So the last will be first, and the first last." [1](#footnote-target-1)

17As Jesus was going up to Jerusalem, he took the twelve disciples aside, and on the way he said to them,18"See, we are going up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be given over to the chief priests and scribes. They will condemn him to death19and will deliver him to the Gentiles for them to mock, to flog, and to crucify him. But on the third day he will be raised up."

20Then the mother of the sons of Zebedee came to Jesus with her sons. She bowed down before him and asked for something from him.

21Jesus said to her, "What do you wish?"

She said to him, "Command that these my two sons may sit, one at your right hand and one at your left hand, in your kingdom."

22But Jesus answered and said, "You do not know what you are asking. Are you able to drink the cup that I am about to drink?"

They said to him, "We are able."

23He said to them, "My cup you will indeed drink. But to sit at my right hand and at my left hand is not mine to give, but it is for those for whom it has been prepared by my Father."24When the other ten disciples heard this, they were very angry with the two brothers.25But Jesus called them to himself and said, "You know that the rulers of the Gentiles dominate them, and their important men exercise authority over them.26But it must not be this way among you. Instead, whoever wishes to become great among you must be your servant,27and whoever wishes to be first among you must be your servant,28just as the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many."

29As they went out from Jericho, a great crowd followed him.30There were two blind men sitting by the road. When they heard that Jesus was passing by, they shouted, "Lord, Son of David, have mercy on us."31The crowd rebuked them, telling them to be quiet, but they cried out even more loudly, "Lord, Son of David, have mercy on us."

32Then Jesus stood still and called to them and said, "What do you wish me to do for you?"

33They said to him, "Lord, that our eyes may be opened."34Then Jesus, being moved with compassion, touched their eyes. Immediately they received their sight and followed him.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have Many are called, but few are chosen .

#### Matthew 20:1

##### For the kingdom of heaven is like

This is the beginning of a parable.

#### Matthew 20:2

##### After he had agreed

"After the landowner had agreed"

##### one denarius

"one day's wages"

#### Matthew 20:3

##### He went out again

"The landowner went out again"

##### the third hour

The third hour is around nine in the morning.

##### standing idle in the marketplace

"standing in the marketplace not doing anything" or "standing in the marketplace with no work to do"

##### marketplace

a large, open-air area where people buy and sell food and other items

#### Matthew 20:5

##### Again he went out

"Again the landowner went out"

##### the sixth hour and again the ninth hour

The sixth hour is around noon. The ninth hour is around three in the afternoon.

##### did the same

This means the landowner went to the marketplace and hired workers.

#### Matthew 20:6

##### the eleventh hour

This is about five in the afternoon.

##### standing idle

"not doing anything" or "not having any work"

#### Matthew 20:8

##### beginning from the last to the first

"beginning with the workers who started working last, then the workers who started working earlier, and finally the workers who started working first" or "first paying the workers I hired last, then paying the workers I hired earlier in the day, and finally paying the workers I hired first"

#### Matthew 20:9

##### who had been hired

"whom the landowner hired"

#### Matthew 20:10

##### one denarius

"one day's wages"

#### Matthew 20:11

##### When they received

"When the workers who had worked the longest received"

#### Matthew 20:12

##### you have made them equal to us

"you have paid them the same amount of money as you paid us"

##### we who have borne the burden of the day and the scorching heat

"we who have worked the entire day, even during the hottest part"

#### Matthew 20:13

##### one of them

"one of the workers who had worked the longest"

##### Friend

Use a word that one man would use to address another man whom he is politely rebuking.

##### Did you not agree with me for one denarius?

"We already agreed that I would give you one denarius."

##### one denarius

"one day's wages"

#### Matthew 20:15

##### Is it not lawful for me to do as I want with what belongs to me?

"It is lawful for me do what I want with my own possessions."

##### Is it not lawful for me

"Do I not have the right" or "Is it not proper."

##### Or are you envious because I am good?

"You should not be envious because I am generous."

#### Matthew 20:16

##### So the last will be first, and the first last

"So those who seem to be unimportant now will be the most important, and those who seem to be the most important now will be the least important"

#### Matthew 20:17

##### going up to Jerusalem

Jerusalem was on top of a hill, so people had to travel up to get there.

#### Matthew 20:18

##### See, we are going

Jesus uses the word "See" to tell the disciples the must pay attention to what he is about to tell them.

##### the Son of Man will be given over

"someone will give the Son of Man over"

##### Son of Man ... him

Jesus is referring to himself.

##### They will condemn

The chief priests and scribes will condemn Jesus.

#### Matthew 20:19

##### and will deliver him to the Gentiles for them to mock

The chief priests and scribes will deliver Jesus to the Gentiles, and the Gentiles will mock him.

##### to flog

"to whip him" or "to beat him with whips"

##### him ... him ... he

Jesus is referring to himself

##### he will be raised up

"God will raise him up" or "God will make him alive again"

#### Matthew 20:20

##### the sons of Zebedee

This refers to James and John.

#### Matthew 20:21

##### at your right hand ... at your left hand

These refer to having positions of power, authority, and honor.

##### in your kingdom

"when you are king"

#### Matthew 20:22

##### You do not know

Here "you" is plural and refers to the mother and the sons.

##### Are you able

Here "you" is plural, but Jesus is only talking to the two sons.

##### drink the cup that I am about to drink

"suffer what I am about to suffer"

##### They said

"The sons of Zebedee said" or "James and John said"

#### Matthew 20:23

##### My cup you will indeed drink

"You will indeed suffer as I will suffer"

##### right hand ... left hand

These refer to having positions of power, authority, and honor.

##### but it is for those for whom it has been prepared by my Father

"for my Father has prepared those places, and he will give them to whom he chooses"

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 20:24

##### they were very angry with the two brothers

"the other disciples were very angry with the two brothers because each of them also wanted to sit in a place of honor next to Jesus"

#### Matthew 20:25

##### called them

"called the twelve disciples"

##### the rulers of the Gentiles dominate them

"the Gentile kings forcefully rule over their people"

##### their important men

"the important men among the Gentiles"

##### exercise authority over them

"have control over the people"

#### Matthew 20:27

##### to be first

"to be important"

#### Matthew 20:28

##### the Son of Man ... his life

Jesus is speaking about himself.

##### did not come to be served

"did not come so that other people would serve him" or "did not come so that other people would serve me"

##### but to serve

"but to serve other people"

##### to give his life as a ransom for many

"to give his life as a substitute for many" or "to give his life as a substitute to set many free"

##### to give his life

"to die"

##### for many

"for many people"

#### Matthew 20:30

##### When they heard

"When the two blind men heard"

##### Son of David

"Son of David" is also a title for the Messiah, and the men were probably calling Jesus by this title.

#### Matthew 20:32

##### called to them

"called to the blind men"

##### do you wish

"do you want"

#### Matthew 20:33

##### that our eyes may be opened

"we want you to open our eyes" or "we want to be able to see"

#### Matthew 20:34

##### being moved with compassion

"having compassion" or "feeling compassion for them"

Chapter 21

1As Jesus and his disciples approached Jerusalem and came to Bethphage, to the Mount of Olives, then Jesus sent two disciples,2saying to them, "Go into the next village, and you will immediately find a donkey tied up there, and a colt with her. Untie them and bring them to me.3If anyone says anything to you about that, you will say, 'The Lord has need of them,' and that person will immediately send them with you."

4Now all this happened to fulfill what was spoken through the prophet, saying,  
  
5"Tell the daughter of Zion,'See, your King is coming to you,Humble and riding on a donkey—on a colt, the foal of a donkey.'"

6Then the disciples went and did just as Jesus had instructed them.7They brought the donkey and the colt and put their cloaks on them, and Jesus sat upon the cloaks.8Most of the crowd spread their cloaks on the road, and others cut branches off the trees and spread them in the road.9Then the crowds that went before Jesus and those that followed him were shouting,  
  
"Hosanna to the son of David!Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord!Hosanna in the highest!"

10When Jesus had come into Jerusalem, all the city was stirred and said, "Who is this?"

11The crowds answered, "This is Jesus the prophet from Nazareth in Galilee."

12Then Jesus entered the temple. He cast out all those who bought and sold in the temple, and turned over the tables of the money changers and the seats of those who sold doves.13He said to them, "It is written, 'My house will be called a house of prayer,' but you make it a den of robbers."

14Then the blind and the lame came to him in the temple, and he healed them.15But when the chief priests and the scribes saw the marvelous things that he did, and when they heard the children shouting in the temple and saying, "Hosanna to the Son of David," they became very angry.

16They said to him, "Do you hear what they are saying?"

Jesus said to them, "Yes! But have you never read,   
  
'Out of the mouths of little children and nursing infants you have prepared praise'?"

17Then Jesus left them and went out of the city to Bethany and spent the night there.

18Now in the morning as he returned to the city, he was hungry.19Seeing a fig tree along the roadside, he went to it and found nothing on it except leaves. He said to it, "May there be no fruit from you ever again," and immediately the fig tree withered.

20When the disciples saw it, they marveled and said, "How did the fig tree immediately wither away?"

21Jesus answered and said to them, "Truly I say to you, if you have faith and do not doubt, you will not only do what was done to this fig tree, but you will even say to this mountain, 'Be taken up and thrown into the sea,' and it will be done.22Whatever you ask for in prayer, believing, you will receive."

23When Jesus had come into the temple, the chief priests and the elders of the people came to him as he was teaching and said, "By what authority do you do these things, and who gave you this authority?"

24Jesus answered and said to them, "I also will ask you one question. If you tell me, I will tell you by what authority I do these things.25The baptism of John—from where did it come? From heaven or from men?"

They discussed among themselves, saying, "If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say to us, 'Why then did you not believe him?'26But if we say, 'From men,' we fear the crowd, because they all view John as a prophet."27Then they answered Jesus and said, "We do not know."

He also said to them, "Neither will I tell you by what authority I do these things.28But what do you think? A man had two sons. He went to the first and said, 'Son, go labor today in the vineyard.'

29"The son answered and said, 'I will not,' but afterward he changed his mind and went.

30"Then the man went to the second son and said the same thing. He answered and said, 'I will go, sir,' but he did not go.31Which of the two sons did his father's will?"

They said, "The first one."

Jesus said to them, "Truly I say to you, the tax collectors and the prostitutes will enter the kingdom of God before you do.32For John came to you in the way of righteousness, but you did not believe him. But the tax collectors and the prostitutes believed him. But you, even when you saw this, you did not repent afterward and believe him.

33"Listen to another parable. There was a man, a landowner. He planted a vineyard, set a hedge about it, dug a winepress in it, built a watchtower, and rented it out to vine growers. Then he went into another country.34When the time of the fruit harvest approached, he sent some servants to the vine growers to collect his fruit.35But the vine growers took his servants, beat one, killed another, and stoned still another.36Again, the owner sent other servants, more than the first, but the vine growers treated them in the same way.37After that, the owner sent his own son to them, saying, 'They will respect my son.'

38"But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him and take over the inheritance.'39So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard, and killed him.40Now when the owner of the vineyard comes, what will he do to those vine growers?"

41They said to him, "He will violently destroy those wicked people, and he will then rent out the vineyard to other vine growers, men who will give him his share of crops at the harvest time."

42Jesus said to them, "Did you never read in the scriptures,  
  
'The stone which the builders rejectedhas been made the cornerstone.This was from the Lord,and it is marvelous in our eyes'?43Therefore I say to you, the kingdom of God will be taken away from you and will be given to a nation that produces its fruits.44Whoever falls on this stone will be broken to pieces. But anyone on whom it falls will be crushed."45When the chief priests and the Pharisees heard his parables, they understood he was speaking about them.46Seeking to arrest him, they were afraid of the crowd, because the people regarded him as a prophet.

#### Matthew 21:1

##### Bethphage

This is a village near Jerusalem.

#### Matthew 21:2

##### a donkey tied up

"a donkey that someone has tied up to a post or a tree"

##### colt

young male donkey

#### Matthew 21:4

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew explains that Jesus's actions fulfilled scripture.

##### all this happened to fulfill what was spoken through the prophet

"this happened so that Jesus would fulfill what God spoke through the prophet Zechariah"

#### Matthew 21:5

##### the daughter of Zion

"the people of Zion" or "the people who live in Zion"

##### Zion

This is another name for Jerusalem.

#### Matthew 21:7

##### cloaks

These were outer clothing or long coats.

#### Matthew 21:8

##### crowd spread their cloaks on the road, and others cut branches off the trees and spread them in the road

These are ways to show honor to Jesus as he was entering Jerusalem.

#### Matthew 21:9

##### the son of David

"Son of David" is also a title for the Messiah, and the crowd was probably calling Jesus by this title.

##### in the name of the Lord

"in the power of the Lord" or "as the representative of the Lord"

##### Hosanna in the highest

"Praise God, who is in the highest heaven" or "Praise be to God"

#### Matthew 21:10

##### all the city was stirred

"many people from all over the city were excited"

#### Matthew 21:12

##### Jesus entered the temple

Jesus did not enter the actual temple. He entered the courtyard around the temple.

##### who bought and sold

Merchants were selling animals and other items that travelers bought to offer the proper sacrifices at the temple.

#### Matthew 21:13

##### He said to them

"Jesus said to those who were changing money and buying and selling things"

##### It is written

"The prophets wrote long ago" or "God said long ago"

##### My house

Here "My" refers to God and "house" refers to the temple.

##### a house of prayer

"a place where people pray"

##### a den of robbers

"like a place where robbers hide"

#### Matthew 21:14

##### lame

those who have an injured foot or leg that makes walking difficult

#### Matthew 21:15

##### Hosanna

This word means “save us” but can also mean “praise God!” See how you translated this in Matthew 21:9.

##### the Son of David

"Son of David" is also a title for the Messiah, and the children were probably calling Jesus by this title. See how you translated this in Matthew 21:9.

##### they became very angry

"they became very angry because people were praising him"

#### Matthew 21:16

##### Do you hear what they are saying?

"You should not allow them to say these things about you!"

##### But have you never read ... praise'?

"Yes, I hear them, but you should remember what you read in the scriptures ... praise.'"

##### Out of the mouths of little children and nursing infants you have prepared praise

“You prepared little children and nursing infants to give praise to God”

#### Matthew 21:18

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew explains that Jesus is hungry and that is why he stops at the fig tree.

#### Matthew 21:19

##### he ... found nothing on it except leaves

"he ... found only leaves on it"

##### withered

died and dried up

#### Matthew 21:20

##### How did the fig tree immediately wither away?

"We are astonished that the fig tree has dried up so quickly!"

#### Matthew 21:21

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### if you have faith and do not doubt

"if you truly believe"

##### you will even say to this mountain, 'Be taken up and thrown into the sea,'

"you will even be able to tell this mountain to get up and throw itself into the sea,"

##### it will be done

"it will happen"

#### Matthew 21:23

##### had come into the temple

It is implied that Jesus did not enter the actual temple. He entered the courtyard around the temple.

##### these things

This refers to Jesus teaching and healing in the temple. It probably also refers to Jesus driving out the buyers and sellers the previous day.

#### Matthew 21:25

##### from where did it come?

"where did he get the authority to do that?"

##### If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say to us, 'Why then did you not believe him?'

"If we say that we believe John received his authority from heaven, then Jesus will ask us why we did not believe John."

##### From heaven

"from God in heaven"

##### Why then did you not believe him?

"Then you should have believed John the Baptist"

#### Matthew 21:26

##### But if we say, 'From men,'

"But if we say that we believe John received his authority from men,"

##### we fear the crowd

"we fear what the crowd would think or even do to us"

##### they all view John as a prophet

"they believe John is a prophet"

#### Matthew 21:28

##### But what do you think?

"Tell me what you think about what I am about to tell you."

#### Matthew 21:31

##### They said

"The chief priests and elders said"

##### Jesus said to them

"Jesus said to the chief priests and elders"

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### the tax collectors and the prostitutes will enter the kingdom of God before you do

"when God establishes his rule on earth, he will agree to bless the tax collectors and prostitutes by ruling over them before he agrees to do that for you"

##### before you do

Possible meanings are 1) God will accept the tax collectors and prostitutes sooner than he will accept the Jewish religious leaders, or 2) God will accept the tax collectors and prostitutes instead of the Jewish religious leaders.

#### Matthew 21:32

##### John came to you

"John came to the people of Israel"

##### in the way of righteousness

"and told you the way God wants you to live"

#### Matthew 21:33

##### a hedge

"a wall" or "a fence"

##### dug a winepress in it

"dug a hole in the vineyard in which to press the grapes"

##### rented it out to vine growers

The owner still owned the vineyard, but he allowed the vine growers to take care of it. When the grapes became ripe, they were to give some of them to the owner and keep the rest.

#### Matthew 21:34

##### to collect his fruit

The landowner expected the vine growers pay him for allowing them to use the vineyard by giving him some of the fruit they had grown.

#### Matthew 21:35

##### his servants

"the landowner's servants"

#### Matthew 21:40

##### Now

The word "now" does not mean "at this moment," but it is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

#### Matthew 21:41

##### They said to him

"The people said to Jesus."

##### He will violently destroy those wicked people

"He will bring those wicked people to a miserable end" or "He will make those evil people die in misery"

#### Matthew 21:42

##### Did you never read ... eyes'?

"Think about what you have read ... eyes.'"

##### The stone which the builders rejected has been made the cornerstone

Jesus is quoting from the Psalms. This is a metaphor that means the religious leaders, like builders, will reject Jesus, but God will make him the most important in his kingdom, like the cornerstone in a building.

##### has been made the cornerstone

"has become the cornerstone"

##### This was from the Lord

"The Lord has caused this great change"

##### it is marvelous in our eyes

"it is wonderful to see"

#### Matthew 21:43

##### I say to you

Here "you" is plural. Jesus was speaking to the religious leaders who had rejected him.

##### the kingdom of God will be taken away from you and will be given to a nation that produces its fruits

"God will take his kingdom away from you and will give it to a nation that produces the kingdom's fruits" or "God will reject you, and he will be king over people from other nations that produce the kingdom's fruits"

##### that produces its fruits

"that produces good results"

#### Matthew 21:44

##### Whoever falls on this stone will be broken to pieces

"This stone will break into pieces anyone who falls on it"

##### But anyone on whom it falls will be crushed

This means the Christ will have the final judgment and will destroy everyone who rebels against him.

Chapter 22

1Jesus spoke to them again in parables, saying,2"The kingdom of heaven is like a certain king who prepared a marriage feast for his son.3He sent out his servants to call those who had been invited to come to the marriage feast, but they would not come.4Again the king sent other servants, saying, 'Tell them who are invited, "See, I have prepared my dinner. My oxen and fattened cattle have been killed, and all things are ready. Come to the marriage feast."'5But they paid no attention and went away, one to his farm, another to his business.6The others seized the king's servants, treated them shamefully, and killed them.7The king was angry, and he sent his soldiers and they destroyed those murderers and burned their city.8Then he said to his servants, 'The wedding is ready, but those who were invited were not worthy.9Therefore go to the highway crossings and invite as many people to the marriage feast as you can find.'10The servants went out to the highways and gathered together all the people they found, both bad and good. So the wedding hall was filled with guests.11But when the king came in to look at the guests, he saw a man there who was not wearing wedding clothes.12The king said to him, 'Friend, how did you come in here without wedding clothes?' But the man was speechless.13Then the king said to the servants, 'Bind this man hand and foot, and throw him out into the outer darkness, where there will be weeping and the grinding of teeth.'14For many people are called, but few are chosen."

15Then the Pharisees went and planned how they might entrap Jesus in his own talk.16Then they sent to him their disciples, together with the Herodians. They said to Jesus, "Teacher, we know that you are truthful, and that you teach God's way in truth. You care for no one's opinion, and you do not show partiality between people.17So tell us, what do you think? Is it lawful to pay taxes to Caesar or not?"

18But Jesus understood their wickedness and said, "Why are you testing me, you hypocrites?19Show me the coin for the tax." Then they brought a denarius to him.20Jesus said to them, "Whose image and name are these?"

21They said to him, "Caesar's."

Then Jesus said to them, "Then give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's."22When they heard it, they marveled. Then they left him and went away.

23On that day some Sadducees, who say there is no resurrection, came to him. They asked him,24saying, "Teacher, Moses said, 'If a man dies, having no children, his brother must marry his wife and raise children for his brother.'25There were seven brothers. The first married and then died. Having left no children, he left his wife to his brother.26Then the second brother did the same thing, then the third, all the way to the seventh brother.27After them all, the woman died.28Now in the resurrection, whose wife will she be of the seven brothers? For they all had married her."

29But Jesus answered and said to them, "You are mistaken because you do not know the scriptures or the power of God.30For in the resurrection they neither marry nor are given in marriage. Instead, they are like angels in heaven.31But concerning the resurrection of the dead, have you not read what was spoken to you by God, saying,32'I am the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob'? God is not the God of the dead, but of the living."33When the crowds heard this, they were astonished at his teaching.

34But when the Pharisees heard that Jesus had silenced the Sadducees, they gathered themselves together.35One of them, an expert in the law, asked him a question, testing him—36"Teacher, which is the greatest commandment in the law?"

37Jesus said to him, "'Love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your mind.'38This is the great and first commandment.39And a second commandment is like it—'Love your neighbor as yourself.'40On these two commandments depend the whole law and the prophets."

41Now while the Pharisees were still gathered together, Jesus asked them a question.42He said, "What do you think about the Christ? Whose son is he?"

They said to him, "The son of David."

43Jesus said to them, "How then does David in the Spirit call him Lord, saying,  
  
44'The Lord said to my Lord,"Sit at my right hand,until I make your enemies your footstool"'?45If David then calls the Christ 'Lord,' how is he David's son?"46No one was able to answer him a word, and no man dared ask him any more questions from that day on.

#### Matthew 22:1

##### to them

"to the people"

#### Matthew 22:3

##### those who had been invited

"the people the king had invited"

#### Matthew 22:4

##### servants, saying, 'Tell them who are invited, "See ... feast."'

"servants, ordering them to tell those whom he invited, 'See ... feast.'"

##### See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

##### My oxen and fattened cattle have been killed

"My servants have killed and cooked my oxen and my fattened cattle"

#### Matthew 22:8

##### those who were invited

"those whom I invited"

#### Matthew 22:9

##### the highway crossings

"where the main roads of the city cross." The king is sending the servants to the place where they are most likely to find people.

#### Matthew 22:10

##### both bad and good

"both the good people and the bad people"

##### So the wedding hall was filled with guests

"So the guests filled the wedding hall"

#### Matthew 22:12

##### how did you come in here without wedding clothes?

"you are not wearing proper clothes for a wedding. You should not be here."

#### Matthew 22:13

##### Bind this man hand and foot

"Tie him up so that he cannot move his hands or feet"

##### the outer darkness

"the dark place away from God"

##### weeping and the grinding of teeth

"weeping and expressing their extreme suffering"

#### Matthew 22:14

##### For many people are called, but few are chosen

"For God invites many people, but he only chooses a few"

#### Matthew 22:15

##### how they might entrap Jesus in his own talk

"how they could cause Jesus to say something wrong so they could arrest him"

#### Matthew 22:16

##### Herodians

These were officials and followers of the Jewish king Herod. He was friends with Roman authorities.

##### you do not show partiality between people

"you do not show special honor to anyone" or "you do not consider anyone more important than anyone else"

#### Matthew 22:17

##### to pay taxes to Caesar

"to pay the taxes that Caesar requires"

#### Matthew 22:18

##### Why are you testing me, you hypocrites?

"Do not test me, you hypocrites!" or "I know that you hypocrites are only trying to test me!"

#### Matthew 22:19

##### denarius

This was a Roman coin worth one day's wages.

#### Matthew 22:20

##### to them

Here "them" refers to the Herodians and the disciples of the Pharisees.

##### Whose image and name are these?

"Tell me whose image and name you see on this coin."

#### Matthew 22:21

##### Caesar's

"The coin has Caesar's image and name on it"

##### things that are Caesar's

"things that belong to Caesar"

##### things that are God's

"things that belong to God"

#### Matthew 22:24

##### Teacher, Moses said, 'If a man dies ... brother.'

"Teacher, Moses said that if a man dies ...brother."

##### his brother ... his wife ... his brother

Here "his" refers to the dead man.

#### Matthew 22:26

##### the second ... the third ... the seventh

"the next oldest ... the next oldest ... the youngest" or "his oldest younger brother ... that brother's oldest younger brother ... the youngest"

#### Matthew 22:27

##### After them all

"After every brother had died"

#### Matthew 22:28

##### Now

Here the Sadducees shift from the story about the seven brothers to their actual question.

##### in the resurrection

"when dead people come back to life"

#### Matthew 22:29

##### You are mistaken

"You are mistaken about the resurrection"

##### the power of God

"what God is able to do"

#### Matthew 22:30

##### in the resurrection

"when dead people rise back to life"

##### they neither marry

"people will not marry"

##### nor are given in marriage

"nor will people give their children in marriage"

#### Matthew 22:31

##### have you not read

"you have read"

##### what was spoken to you by God

"what God spoke to you"

#### Matthew 22:32

##### 'I am the God of ... Jacob'

"that he is the God of ... Jacob"

##### of the dead, but of the living

"of dead people, but he is the God of living people"

#### Matthew 22:37

##### with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your mind

These three phrases are used together to mean “completely” or “earnestly.” Here “heart” and “soul” refer to a person’s inner being.

#### Matthew 22:38

##### the great and first commandment

Here "great" and "first" mean the same thing. They emphasize that this is the most important commandment.

#### Matthew 22:39

##### your neighbor

Here "neighbor" means more than just those who live nearby. Jesus means a person must love all people.

#### Matthew 22:40

##### On these two commandments depend the whole law and the prophets

"Everything that Moses and the prophets wrote in the scriptures is based on these two commandments"

#### Matthew 22:42

##### son ... son of David

In both of these "son" means "descendant."

#### Matthew 22:43

##### How then does David in the Spirit call him Lord

"Then, tell me why David in the Spirit calls him Lord"

##### David in the Spirit

"David, whom the Holy Spirit is inspiring." This means the Holy Spirit is influencing what David says.

##### call him

Here "him" refers to the Christ, who is also the descendant of David.

#### Matthew 22:44

##### The Lord said

Here "Lord" refers to God the Father.

##### to my Lord

Here "Lord" refers to the Christ. Also, "my" refers to David. This means the Christ is superior to David.

##### Sit at my right hand

"Sit in the place of honor beside me"

##### until I make your enemies your footstool

"until I conquer your enemies" or "until I make your enemies bow down before you"

#### Matthew 22:45

##### If David then calls the Christ

David referred to Jesus as "Lord" because Jesus was not only a descendant of David, but he was also superior to him.

#### Matthew 22:46

##### to answer him a word

"to answer him anything" or "to answer him"

Chapter 23

1Then Jesus spoke to the crowds and to his disciples.2He said, "The scribes and the Pharisees sit in Moses' seat.3Therefore whatever they command you to do, do these things and observe them. But do not imitate their deeds, for they say things but then do not do them.4Yes, they bind heavy burdens that are difficult to carry, and then they put them on people's shoulders. But they themselves will not move a finger to carry them.5They do all their deeds to be seen by people. For they make their phylacteries wide, and they enlarge the edges of their garments.6They love the places of honor at feasts and the chief seats in the synagogues,7and special greetings in the marketplaces, and to be called 'Rabbi' by people.8But you must not be called 'Rabbi,' for you have only one teacher, and all of you are brothers.9And call no man on earth your father, for you have only one Father, and he is in heaven.10Neither must you be called 'teacher,' for you have only one teacher, the Christ.11But he who is greatest among you will be your servant.12Whoever exalts himself will be humbled, and whoever humbles himself will be exalted.

13"But woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! You shut the kingdom of heaven against people. For you do not enter it yourselves, and neither do you allow those about to enter to do so.14[1](#footnote-target-1)15Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you go over sea and land to make one convert, and when he has become one, you make him twice as much a son of hell as you.

16"Woe to you, you blind guides, you who say, 'Whoever swears by the temple, it is nothing. But whoever swears by the gold of the temple, he is bound to his oath.'17You blind fools! Which is greater, the gold or the temple that makes the gold holy?18And, 'Whoever swears by the altar, it is nothing. But whoever swears by the gift that is on it, he is bound to his oath.'19You blind people! Which is greater, the gift or the altar that makes the gift holy?20Therefore, he who swears by the altar swears by it and by everything on it.21The one who swears by the temple swears by it and by the one who lives in it.22And the one who swears by heaven swears by the throne of God and by him who sits on it.

23"Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you tithe mint and dill and cumin, but you have left undone the weightier matters of the law—justice and mercy and faithfulness. But these you ought to have done and not to have left the other undone.24You blind guides, you who strain out a gnat but swallow a camel!

25"Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you clean the outside of the cup and of the plate, but inside they are full of robbery and self-indulgence.26You blind Pharisee! Clean first the inside of the cup and of the plate, so that the outside may become clean also.

27"Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you are like whitewashed tombs, which on the outside look beautiful, but on the inside are full of dead men's bones and everything unclean.28In the same way, you also outwardly appear righteous to men, but on the inside you are full of hypocrisy and lawlessness.

29"Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you build the tombs of the prophets and decorate the tombs of the righteous.30You say, 'If we had lived in the days of our fathers, we would not have been partners with them in shedding the blood of the prophets.'31Therefore you testify against yourselves that you are sons of those who murdered the prophets.32You also fill up the measure of your fathers.33You serpents, you offspring of vipers, how will you escape the judgment of hell?34Therefore, see, I am sending you prophets and wise men and scribes. Some of them you will kill and crucify, and some you will whip in your synagogues and chase from city to city.35The result is that upon you will come all the righteous blood that has been shed on the earth, from the blood of righteous Abel, to the blood of Zechariah son of Berekiah, whom you murdered between the sanctuary and the altar.36Truly I say to you, all these things will come upon this generation.

37"Jerusalem, Jerusalem, you who kill the prophets and stone those who are sent to you! How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chicks under her wings, but you were not willing!38See, your house is left to you desolate.39For I say to you, you will not see me from now on until you say, 'Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.'"

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have verse 14 (some copies add the verse after verse 12). Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you devour widows' houses, while you make a show of long prayers. You will therefore receive greater condemnation .

#### Matthew 23:2

##### sit in Moses' seat

"have authority as Moses had" or "have authority to say what the law of Moses means"

#### Matthew 23:3

##### whatever ... do these things and observe them

"all the things ... do them and observe them"

#### Matthew 23:4

##### they bind heavy burdens that are difficult to carry, and then they put them on people's shoulders. But they themselves will not move a finger to carry them

"they make you obey many rules that are difficult to follow. But they do nothing at all to help you follow the rules"

#### Matthew 23:5

##### They do all their deeds to be seen by people

"They do all their deeds so that people can see what they do"

##### For they make their phylacteries wide, and they enlarge the edges of their garments

Both of these are things the Pharisees do to appear as if they honor God more than other people.

##### phylacteries

small leather boxes containing paper with scripture written on it

##### they enlarge the edges of their garments

The Pharisees made the tassels on the bottom of their robes especially long to show their devotion to God.

#### Matthew 23:6

##### places of honor ... chief seats

Both of these are the places where the most important people sit.

#### Matthew 23:7

##### to be called 'Rabbi' by people.

"for people to call them 'Rabbi.'"

#### Matthew 23:8

##### But you must not be called

"But you must not let anyone call you"

##### you

All occurrences of "you" are plural and refer to all of Jesus's followers.

##### all of you are brothers

Here "brothers" means "fellow believers."

#### Matthew 23:9

##### call no man on earth your father

"do not call any man on earth your father" or "do not say that any man on earth is your father"

##### you have only one Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 23:10

##### Neither must you be called

"Also, do not let anyone call you"

##### you have only one teacher, the Christ

"I, the Christ, am your only teacher"

#### Matthew 23:11

##### he who is greatest among you

"the person who is most important among you"

##### among you

Here "you" is plural and refers to Jesus's followers.

#### Matthew 23:12

##### will be humbled

"God will humble"

##### will be exalted

"God will make important" or "God will honor"

#### Matthew 23:13

##### But woe to you

"How terrible it will be for you!" See how you translated this in Matthew 11:21.

##### You shut the kingdom of heaven against people ... you do not enter it ... neither do you allow those about to enter to do so

"You make it impossible for people to enter the kingdom of heaven ... you do not enter it ... neither do you allow those about to enter to do so" or "You prevent people from accepting God, who lives in heaven, as king ... you do not accept him as king ... and you make it impossible for those about to accept him as king to do so"

#### Matthew 23:15

##### you go over sea and land

"you travel great distances"

##### to make one convert

"to make one person accept your religion"

##### son of hell

"person who belongs in hell" or "person who should go to hell"

#### Matthew 23:16

##### by the temple, it is nothing

"by the temple does not have to keep his oath"

##### is bound to his oath

"must do what he promised to do"

#### Matthew 23:17

##### blind fools

The Jewish leaders were spiritually blind. Although they thought of themselves as teachers, they were unable to understand God's truth.

##### Which is greater, the gold or the temple that makes the gold holy?

"The temple that has dedicated the gold to God is more important than the gold!"

##### the temple that makes the gold holy

"the temple that makes the gold belong to God alone"

#### Matthew 23:18

##### it is nothing

"he does not have to do what he has sworn to do" or "he does not have to keep his oath"

##### the gift

This is an animal or grain that a person would bring to God by putting it on God's altar.

##### is bound to his oath

"must do what he promised to do"

#### Matthew 23:19

##### Which is greater, the gift or the altar that makes the gift holy?

"The altar that makes the gift holy is greater than the gift!"

##### the altar that makes the gift holy

"the altar that makes the gift special to God"

#### Matthew 23:21

##### the one who lives in it

The one who lives in the temple is God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 23:22

##### him who sits on it

The one who sits on the throne is God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 23:23

##### Woe to you ... hypocrites!

"How terrible it will be for you ... hypocrites!"

##### mint and dill and cumin

These are various leaves and seeds people used to make food taste good.

##### But these you ought to have done

"You ought to have obeyed these more important laws"

##### and not to have left the other undone

"and to make sure the other is done" or "and to make sure to do the other"

#### Matthew 23:24

##### you who strain out a gnat but swallow a camel

"you are as foolish as a person who strains out a small flying insect that falls into his drink but swallows a camel"

##### strain out a gnat

This means to pour a liquid through a cloth to remove a gnat from a drink.

#### Matthew 23:25

##### Woe to you ... hypocrites!

"How terrible it will be for you ... hypocrites!"

##### For you clean the outside of the cup and of the plate, but inside they are full of robbery and self-indulgence

The scribes and Pharisees appear pure on the outside to others, but on the inside they are wicked.

##### they are full of robbery and self-indulgence

"they take what belongs to others, and they do almost everything to benefit themselves"

#### Matthew 23:26

##### You blind Pharisee

The Pharisees were spiritually blind. Although they thought of themselves as teachers, they were unable to understand God's truth.

##### Clean first the inside of the cup and of the plate, so that the outside may become clean also

If they would become pure in their inner being, then the result is that they would be pure on the outside as well.

#### Matthew 23:27

##### you are like whitewashed tombs ... unclean

The scribes and Pharisees may appear to be pure on the outside, but they are wicked on the inside.

##### whitewashed tombs

"tombs that someone has painted white." The Jews would paint tombs white so that people would easily see them and avoid touching them. Touching a tomb would make a person ceremonially unclean.

#### Matthew 23:29

##### of the righteous

"of the righteous people"

#### Matthew 23:30

##### in the days of our fathers

"during the time of our forefathers"

##### we would not have been partners with them

"we would not have joined with them"

##### shedding the blood of

"killing" or "murdering"

#### Matthew 23:31

##### sons of those who murdered the prophets

"just like those who murdered the prophets."

#### Matthew 23:32

##### You also fill up the measure of your fathers

"You also finish the sins your ancestors began"

#### Matthew 23:33

##### You serpents, you offspring of vipers

"You who are as evil and dangerous as poisonous snakes"

##### offspring of vipers

Here "offspring" means "having the characteristic of."

##### how will you escape the judgment of hell?

"there is no way for you to escape the judgment of hell!"

#### Matthew 23:34

##### I am sending you prophets and wise men and scribes

"I will send prophets, wise men, and scribes to you"

##### chase from city to city

"chase from city to city and persecute them" or "persecute them in city after city"

#### Matthew 23:35

##### upon you will come all the righteous blood that has been shed on the earth

"God will punish you for the murders of all the righteous people

##### Abel ... Zechariah

Abel was the first righteous victim of murder, and Zechariah, who was murdered by Jews in the temple, was probably thought to be the last. These two men represent all the righteous people who have been murdered.

##### Zechariah

This Zechariah is unknown. He was not the father of John the Baptist.

##### whom you murdered

Jesus does not mean the people to whom he is speaking actually murdered Zechariah. He means their ancestors did.

#### Matthew 23:36

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

#### Matthew 23:37

##### Jerusalem, Jerusalem

Jesus speaks to the people of Jerusalem as though they were the city itself.

##### those who are sent to you

"those whom God sends to you"

##### your children

"your people" or "your inhabitants"

##### just as a hen gathers her chicks under her wings

This emphasizes Jesus's love for the people and how he wanted to take care of them.

##### hen

a female chicken. You can translate with any bird that protects her children under her wing.

#### Matthew 23:38

##### your house is left to you desolate

"God will leave your house, and it will be empty"

##### your house

Possible meanings are 1) "the city of Jerusalem" or 2) "the temple."

#### Matthew 23:39

##### I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord

"He who comes in the power of the Lord is blessed" or "He who comes as the representative of the Lord will be blessed"

Chapter 24

1Jesus went out from the temple and was going on his way. His disciples came to him to point out to him the buildings of the temple.2But he answered and said to them, "Do you not see all these things? Truly I say to you, not one stone will be left on another that will not be torn down."

3As he sat on the Mount of Olives, the disciples came to him privately and said, "Tell us, when will these things happen? What will be the sign of your coming and of the end of the age?"

4Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray.5For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray.6You will hear of wars and rumors of wars. See that you are not troubled, for these things must happen; but the end is not yet.7For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. There will be famines and earthquakes in various places.8But all these things are only the beginning of birth pains.9Then they will deliver you up to tribulation and kill you. You will be hated by all the nations for my name's sake.10Then many will stumble, and betray one another and hate one another.11Many false prophets will rise up and lead many astray.12Because lawlessness will increase, the love of many will grow cold.13But the one who endures to the end will be saved.14This good news of the kingdom will be preached in the whole world as a testimony to all the nations. Then the end will come.

15"Therefore, when you see the abomination of desolation, which was spoken of by Daniel the prophet, standing in the holy place" (let the reader understand),16"let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains,17let him who is on the housetop not go down to take anything out of his house,18and let him who is in the field not return to take his cloak.19But woe to those who are pregnant and to those who are nursing infants in those days!20Pray that your flight will not occur in the winter or on a Sabbath.21For there will be great tribulation, such as has not been from the beginning of the world until now, no, nor ever will be again.22Unless those days had been shortened, no flesh would be saved. But for the sake of the elect those days will be shortened.23Then if anyone says to you, 'Look, here is the Christ!' or 'There is the Christ!' do not believe it.24For false Christs and false prophets will arise and show great signs and wonders, so as to lead astray, if possible, even the elect.25See, I have told you ahead of time.26Therefore, if they say to you, 'Look, he is in the wilderness,' do not go out to the wilderness. Or, 'See, he is in the inner rooms,' do not believe it.27For as the lightning shines out from the east and flashes all the way to the west, so will be the coming of the Son of Man.28Wherever a dead animal is, there the vultures will gather.

29"But immediately after the tribulation of those days   
  
the sun will be darkened, the moon will not give its light, the stars will fall from the sky, and the powers of the heavens will be shaken.30Then the sign of the Son of Man will appear in the sky, and all the tribes of the earth will mourn. They will see the Son of Man coming on the clouds of the sky with power and great glory.31He will send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they will gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of the sky to the other.

32"Learn a lesson from the fig tree. As soon as the branch becomes tender and puts out its leaves, you know that summer is near.33So also, when you see all these things, you should know that he is near, at the very gates.34Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all of these things will have happened.35Heaven and the earth will pass away, but my words will never pass away.36But concerning that day and hour no one knows, not even the angels of heaven, nor the Son, but only the Father.37As the days of Noah were, so will be the coming of the Son of Man.38For as in those days before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage until the day that Noah entered the ark,39and they knew nothing until the flood came and took them all away—so will be the coming of the Son of Man.40Then two men will be in a field—one will be taken, and one will be left.41Two women will be grinding with a mill—one will be taken, and one will be left.42Therefore be on your guard, for you do not know on what day your Lord will come.43But know this, that if the master of the house had known in what time of night the thief was coming, he would have been on guard and would not have allowed his house to be broken into.44Therefore you must also be ready, for the Son of Man will come at an hour that you do not expect.

45"So who is the faithful and wise servant whom his master has set over his household in order to give them their food at the right time?46Blessed is that servant whom his master will find doing that when he comes.47Truly I say to you that the master will set him over all his possessions.48But if an evil servant says in his heart, 'My master has been delayed,'49and begins to beat his fellow servants, and eats and drinks with drunkards,50then the master of that servant will come on a day that the servant does not expect and at an hour that he does not know.51His master will cut him in pieces and assign him a place with the hypocrites, where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth.

#### Matthew 24:2

##### Do you not see all these things?

"Let me tell you something about all these buildings."

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### not one stone will be left on another that will not be torn down

"when the enemy soldiers come, they will tear down every stone in these buildings"

#### Matthew 24:3

##### What will be the sign of your coming and of the end of the age

"What will be the sign that you are about to come and that the world is about to end"

#### Matthew 24:4

##### Be careful that no one leads you astray

"Be careful that no one deceives you"

#### Matthew 24:5

##### many will come in my name

"many will claim to have my authority as Christ"

##### will lead many astray

"will deceive many people"

#### Matthew 24:6

##### See that you are not troubled

"Do not let these things trouble you"

#### Matthew 24:7

##### For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom

Jesus is emphasizing that people everywhere will fight each other.

#### Matthew 24:8

##### the beginning of birth pains

Wars, famines, and earthquakes are just the beginning of the events that will lead to the end of the age.

#### Matthew 24:9

##### they will deliver you up to tribulation and kill you

"people will give you over to the authorities, who will make you suffer and will kill you."

##### You will be hated by all the nations

"People from every nation will hate you"

##### for my name's sake

"because you believe in me"

#### Matthew 24:11

##### will rise up

"will come"

##### and lead many astray

"and deceive many people"

#### Matthew 24:12

##### lawlessness will increase

"disobeying the law will increase" or "people will disobey God's law more and more"

##### the love of many will grow cold

Possible meanings are 1) "many people will no longer love other people" or 2) "many people will no longer love God."

#### Matthew 24:13

##### the one who endures to the end will be saved

"God will save the person who endures to the end"

##### the one who endures

"the person who stays faithful"

##### the end

"the end of the world" or "the end of the age"

#### Matthew 24:14

##### This good news of the kingdom will be preached

"People will tell the good news that God will rule"

##### all the nations

"all people in all places"

#### Matthew 24:15

##### the abomination of desolation, which was spoken of by Daniel the prophet

"the shameful one who defiles the things of God, about whom Daniel the prophet wrote"

##### let the reader understand

This is not Jesus speaking. Matthew added this to alert the reader that Jesus was using words that they would need to think about and interpret.

#### Matthew 24:19

##### in those days

"at that time"

#### Matthew 24:20

##### that your flight will not occur

"that you will not have to flee" or "that you will not have to run away"

##### the winter

"the cold season"

#### Matthew 24:22

##### Unless those days had been shortened, no flesh would be saved

"If God had not shortened the time of suffering, everyone would have died" or "Because God shortened those days, some people lived"

##### no flesh

"nobody" or "no one."

##### those days will be shortened

"God will shorten the time of suffering"

#### Matthew 24:23

##### do not believe it

"do not believe the false thing they have said to you"

#### Matthew 24:24

##### so as to lead astray, if possible, even the elect

"so as to deceive, if possible, even the elect" or "so as to deceive people. If possible, they would even deceive the elect"

#### Matthew 24:26

##### if they say to you, 'Look, he is in the wilderness,' do

"if someone tells you that the Christ is in the wilderness, do"

##### Or, 'See, he is in the inner rooms,'

"Or, if someone tells you that the Christ is in the inner room,"

##### in the inner rooms

"in a secret room" or "in secret places"

#### Matthew 24:27

##### as the lightning shines ... so will be the coming

This means that the Son of Man will come very quickly and will be easy to see.

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

#### Matthew 24:28

##### Wherever a dead animal is, there the vultures will gather

Possible meanings are 1) when the Son of Man comes, everyone will see him and know that he has come, or 2) wherever spiritually dead people are, false prophets will be there to tell them lies.

##### vultures

birds that eat the bodies of dead or dying creatures

#### Matthew 24:29

##### immediately after the tribulation of those days the sun

"as soon as the that time of suffering of those days has finished, the sun"

##### the sun will be darkened

"God will make the sun dark"

##### the powers of the heavens will be shaken

"God will shake things in the sky and above the sky"

#### Matthew 24:30

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

##### all the tribes

"all the people of the tribes" or "all the people"

#### Matthew 24:31

##### He will send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet

"He will have a trumpet sounded and send his angels" or "He will have an angel blow a trumpet, and he will send his angels"

##### they will gather

"his angels will gather"

##### his elect

These are the people whom the Son of Man has chosen.

##### from the four winds, from one end of the sky to the other

"from all over the world"

#### Matthew 24:33

##### he is near, at the very gates

"I am near and will soon appear"

#### Matthew 24:34

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### this generation will not pass away

"the people of this generation will not all die"

##### this generation

Possible interpretations are 1) "all people alive today," referring to the people alive when Jesus was speaking, or 2) "all people alive when these things I have just told you about happen." Try to translate so that both interpretations are possible.

##### until all of these things will have happened

"until God causes all these things to happen"

#### Matthew 24:35

##### Heaven and the earth will pass away

"Even heaven and the earth will pass away"

##### my words will never pass away

"what I say will always be true"

#### Matthew 24:36

##### that day and hour

Here "day" and "hour" refer to the exact time that the Son of Man will return.

##### nor the Son

"not even the Son"

##### Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 24:37

##### As the days of Noah were, so will be the coming of the Son of Man

"At the time when the Son of Man comes, it will be like the time of Noah."

##### so will be the coming of the Son of Man

"so will it be when I, the Son of Man, come"

#### Matthew 24:39

##### away—so will be the coming of the Son of Man

"away. This is how it will be when the Son of Man comes"

#### Matthew 24:40

##### Then

This is when the Son of Man comes.

##### one will be taken, and one will be left

Possible meanings are 1) the Son of Man will take one away to heaven and will leave the other on earth for punishment or 2) the angels will take one away for punishment and leave the other for blessing.

#### Matthew 24:42

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true"

##### be on your guard

"pay attention"

#### Matthew 24:43

##### that if the master of the house ... broken into

Jesus uses a parable of a master and servants to illustrate that his disciples should be prepared for his return.

##### the thief

Jesus is saying he will come when people are not expecting him, not that he will come to steal.

##### he would have been on guard

"he would have guarded his house"

##### would not have allowed his house to be broken into

"would not have allowed anyone to get into his house to steal things"

#### Matthew 24:44

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

#### Matthew 24:45

##### So who is the faithful and wise servant whom his master ... time?

"So who is the faithful and wise servant? He is the one whom his master ... time." or "Be like the faithful and wise servant, whom his master ... time."

#### Matthew 24:47

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

#### Matthew 24:48

##### says in his heart

"thinks in his mind"

##### My master has been delayed

"My master is slow to return" or "My master will not return for a long time"

#### Matthew 24:50

##### on a day that the servant does not expect and at an hour that he does not know

This emphasize that the master will come when the servant is not expecting him.

#### Matthew 24:51

##### cut him in pieces

This means to make the person suffer terribly.

##### assign him a place with the hypocrites

"put him with the hypocrites" or "send him to the place where hypocrites are sent"

##### there will be weeping and grinding of teeth

"people will weep and grind their teeth because of their suffering"

Chapter 25

1"Then the kingdom of heaven will be like ten virgins who took their lamps and went to meet the bridegroom.2Five of them were foolish and five were wise.3For when the foolish virgins took their lamps, they did not take any oil with them.4But the wise virgins took containers of oil along with their lamps.5Now while the bridegroom was delayed, they all got sleepy and slept.6But at midnight there was a cry, 'Look, the bridegroom! Go out and meet him.'

7Then all those virgins rose up and trimmed their lamps.8The foolish said to the wise, 'Give us some of your oil because our lamps are going out.'

9"But the wise answered and said, 'Since there will not be enough for us and you, go instead to those who sell and buy some for yourselves.'10While they went away to buy, the bridegroom came, and those who were ready went with him to the marriage feast, and the door was shut.

11"Afterward the other virgins also came and said, 'Master, master, open for us.'

12"But he answered and said, 'Truly I say to you, I do not know you.'13Watch therefore, for you do not know the day or the hour.

14"For it is like when a man was about to go into another country. He called his own servants and entrusted his possessions to them.15To one of them he gave five talents, to another he gave two, and to yet another he gave one talent. Each one received an amount according to his own ability, and that man went on his journey.16The one who received the five talents went at once and worked with them and gained another five talents.17In the same way, the one who had received two talents gained another two.18But the servant who had received one talent went away, dug a hole in the ground, and hid his master's money.19Now after a long time the master of those servants came back and settled accounts with them.20The servant who had received the five talents came and brought another five talents. He said, 'Master, you entrusted me with five talents. See, I have gained five talents more.'

21"His master said to him, 'Well done, good and faithful servant! You have been faithful over a few things. I will put you in charge over many things. Enter into the joy of your master.'

22"The servant who had received two talents came and said, 'Master, you gave me two talents. See, I have gained two more talents.'

23"His master said to him, 'Well done, good and faithful servant! You have been faithful over a few things. I will put you in charge over many things. Enter into the joy of your master.'

24"Then the servant who had received one talent came and said, 'Master, I know that you are a hard man. You reap where you did not sow, and you harvest where you did not scatter.25I was afraid, so I went away and hid your talent in the ground. See, you have here what belongs to you.'

26"But his master answered and said to him, 'You wicked and lazy servant, you knew that I reap where I have not sowed and harvest where I have not scattered.27Therefore you should have given my money to the bankers, and at my coming I would have received back my own with interest.28Therefore take away the talent from him and give it to the servant who has ten talents.29For to everyone who possesses more will be given, and he will have an abundance. But from anyone who does not possess anything, even what he does have will be taken away.30Throw the worthless servant out into the outer darkness, where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth.'

31"When the Son of Man comes in his glory and all the angels with him, then he will sit on his glorious throne.32Before him will be gathered all the nations, and he will separate the people one from another, as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats.33He will place the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on his left.34Then the King will say to those on his right hand, 'Come, you who have been blessed by my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world.35For I was hungry and you gave me food; I was thirsty and you gave me a drink; I was a stranger and you took me in;36I was naked and you clothed me; I was sick and you cared for me; I was in prison and you came to me.'

37"Then the righteous will answer and say, 'Lord, when did we see you hungry and feed you? Or thirsty and give you a drink?38When did we see you a stranger and take you in? Or naked and clothe you?39When did we see you sick or in prison and come to you?'

40"Then the King will answer and say to them, 'Truly I say to you, what you did for one of the least of these brothers of mine, you did it for me.'41Then he will say to those on his left hand, 'Depart from me, you cursed, into the eternal fire that has been prepared for the devil and his angels,42because I was hungry, but you did not give me food; I was thirsty, but you did not give me a drink;43I was a stranger, but you did not take me in; naked, but you did not clothe me; sick and in prison, but you did not care for me.'

44"Then they will also answer and say, 'Lord, when did we see you hungry, or thirsty, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not serve you?'

45"Then he will answer them and say, 'Truly I say to you, what you did not do for one of the least of these, you did not do for me.'46These will go away into eternal punishment, but the righteous into eternal life."

#### Matthew 25:1

##### the kingdom of heaven will be like

"when our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like"

##### lamps

These could have been 1) lamps or 2) torches made by putting cloth around the end of a stick and wetting the cloth with oil.

#### Matthew 25:2

##### Five of them

"Five of the virgins"

#### Matthew 25:3

##### did not take any oil with them

"had with them only the oil in their lamps"

#### Matthew 25:5

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

##### while the bridegroom was delayed

"while the bridegroom was taking a long time to arrive"

##### they all got sleepy

"all ten virgins got sleepy"

#### Matthew 25:6

##### there was a cry

"someone shouted"

#### Matthew 25:7

##### trimmed their lamps

"adjusted their lamps so they would burn brightly"

#### Matthew 25:8

##### The foolish said to the wise

"The foolish virgins said to the wise virgins"

##### our lamps are going out

"the fire in our lamps is about to burn out"

#### Matthew 25:10

##### they went away

"the five foolish virgins went away"

##### to buy

"to buy more oil"

##### those who were ready

These are the virgins who had extra oil.

##### the door was shut

"the servants shut the door"

#### Matthew 25:11

##### open for us

"open the door for us so we can come inside"

#### Matthew 25:12

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what the master says next.

##### I do not know you

"I do not know who you are."

#### Matthew 25:13

##### you do not know the day or the hour

"you do not know the exact time when the Son of Man will return"

#### Matthew 25:14

##### it is like

The word "it" here refers to the kingdom of heaven

##### entrusted his possessions to them

"put them in charge of his hat he owned"

#### Matthew 25:15

##### five talents

"five bags of gold" or "five bags of gold, each worth 20 years' wages"

##### to another he gave two ... gave one talent

"to another he gave two talents of gold ... gave one talent of gold" or "to another he gave two bags of gold ... gave one bag of gold"

##### according to his own ability

"according to each servant's skill in managing wealth"

#### Matthew 25:16

##### worked with them

"invested the talents" or "used them in business" or "traded with them"

#### Matthew 25:17

##### gained another two

"earned another two talents"

#### Matthew 25:20

##### I have gained five talents more

"I have earned five more talents"

#### Matthew 25:21

##### Well done

"You have done right." Your culture might have an expression that a master (or someone in authority) would use to show that he approves of what his servant (or someone under him) has done.

##### Enter into the joy of your master

"Come and be happy with me"

#### Matthew 25:22

##### I have gained two more talents

"I have earned two more talents"

#### Matthew 25:23

##### Well done

"You have done well" or "You have done right."

##### Enter into the joy of your master

"Come and be happy with me"

#### Matthew 25:24

##### a hard man

Possible meanings are 1) a man who demands much from other people or 2) a man who does not treat others well.

##### You reap where you did not sow, and you harvest where you did not scatter

The words "reap where you did not sow" and "harvest where you did not scatter" mean the same thing. They refer to a farmer who gathers crops that other people have planted.

##### scatter

"scatter seed." This refers to sowing seed by gently throwing handfuls of it onto the soil.

#### Matthew 25:26

##### You wicked and lazy servant, you knew

"You are a wicked servant who does not want to work. You knew"

#### Matthew 25:27

##### received back my own

"received back my own money"

##### interest

payment from the banker for the temporary use of the master's money

#### Matthew 25:28

##### take away the talent

The master is speaking to other servants.

#### Matthew 25:29

##### who possesses

"who uses well what he has"

##### from anyone who does not possess anything

"from anyone does not use well what he has"

##### will be taken away

"God will take away" or "I will take away"

#### Matthew 25:30

##### the outer darkness

"the dark place away from God"

##### weeping and grinding of teeth

"weeping and expressing their extreme suffering"

#### Matthew 25:31

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

#### Matthew 25:32

##### Before him will be gathered all the nations

"He will gather all the nations before him"

##### Before him

"In front of him"

##### all the nations

"all people from every country"

#### Matthew 25:33

##### He will place the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on his left

The Son of Man will separate all people. He will put the righteous people at his right side, and he will put the sinners at his left side.

#### Matthew 25:34

##### the King ... his right hand

"I, the King, ... my right hand"

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### inherit the kingdom prepared for you

"receive the blessings of God's rule that he has planned to give you"

##### from the foundation of the world

"since he first created the world"

#### Matthew 25:37

##### the righteous

"the righteous people"

##### Or thirsty

"Or when did we see you thirsty"

#### Matthew 25:38

##### Or naked

"Or when did we see you naked"

#### Matthew 25:40

##### the King

Jesus is speaking about himself.

##### say to them

"say to those at his right hand"

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This emphasizes what the King says next.

##### one of the least

"one of the least important"

##### these brothers of mine

"my brothers and sisters here" or "these who are like my brothers and sisters"

##### you did it for me

"I consider that you did it for me"

#### Matthew 25:41

##### Then he will

Jesus is speaking about himself.

##### the eternal fire that has been prepared

"the eternal fire that God has prepared"

##### his angels

the devil's helpers

#### Matthew 25:43

##### naked, but you did not clothe me

"I was naked, but you did not give me clothes"

##### sick and in prison

"I was sick and in prison"

#### Matthew 25:45

##### for one of the least of these

"for any of the least important ones of my people"

##### you did not do for me

"I consider that you did not do it for me" or "I was really the one whom you did not help"

#### Matthew 25:46

##### These will go away into eternal punishment

"The King will send these to a place where they will receive punishment that never ends"

##### but the righteous into eternal life

"but the King will send the righteous to the place where they will live forever with God"

##### the righteous

"the righteous people"

Chapter 26

1It came about that when Jesus had finished all these words, he said to his disciples,2"You know that after two days the Passover is coming, and the Son of Man will be given over to be crucified."

3Then the chief priests and the elders of the people were gathered together in the palace of the high priest, who was named Caiaphas.4They plotted together to arrest Jesus stealthily and kill him.5For they were saying, "Not during the festival, so that a riot does not arise among the people."

6Now while Jesus was in Bethany in the house of Simon the leper,7as he was reclining at table, a woman came to him having an alabaster jar of very expensive ointment, and she poured it upon his head.8But when his disciples saw it, they became angry and said, "What is the reason for this waste?9This could have been sold for a large amount and given to the poor."

10But Jesus, knowing this, said to them, "Why are you causing trouble for this woman? For she has done a beautiful thing for me.11You always have the poor with you, but you will not always have me.12For when she poured this ointment on my body, she did it for my burial.13Truly I say to you, wherever this good news is preached in the whole world, what this woman has done will also be spoken of in memory of her."

14Then one of the twelve, who was named Judas Iscariot, went to the chief priests15and said, "What are you willing to give me to turn him over to you?" They weighed out thirty pieces of silver for him.16From that moment he sought an opportunity to turn him over to them.

17Now on the first day of unleavened bread the disciples came to Jesus and said, "Where do you want us to prepare for you to eat the Passover meal?"

18He said, "Go into the city to a certain man and say to him, 'The Teacher says, "My time is at hand. I will keep the Passover at your house with my disciples."'"19The disciples did as Jesus directed them, and they prepared the Passover meal.

20When evening came, he sat down to eat with the twelve disciples.21As they were eating, he said, "Truly I say to you that one of you will betray me."

22They were very sorrowful, and each one began to ask him, "Surely not I, Lord?"

23He answered, "The one who dips his hand with me in the dish is the one who will betray me.24The Son of Man will go, just as it is written about him. But woe to that man by whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It would be better for that man if he had not been born."

25Judas, who would betray him said, "Is it I, Rabbi?"

He said to him, "You have said it yourself."

26As they were eating, Jesus took bread, blessed it, and broke it. He gave it to the disciples and said, "Take, eat. This is my body."27He took a cup and gave thanks, and gave it to them and said, "Drink it, all of you.28For this is my blood of the covenant that is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins.29But I say to you, I will not drink again of this fruit of the vine, until that day when I drink it new with you in my Father's kingdom."

30When they had sung a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives.31Then Jesus said to them, "All of you will fall away tonight because of me, for it is written,  
  
'I will strike the shepherdand the sheep of the flock will be scattered.'32But after I am raised up, I will go ahead of you into Galilee."

33But Peter said to him, "Even if all fall away because of you, I will never fall away."

34Jesus said to him, "Truly I say to you, this very night, before the rooster crows, you will deny me three times."

35Peter said to him, "Even if I must die with you, I will not deny you." All the other disciples said the same thing.

36Then Jesus went with them to a place called Gethsemane and said to his disciples, "Sit here while I go over there and pray."37He took Peter and the two sons of Zebedee with him and began to become sorrowful and troubled.38Then he said to them, "My soul is deeply sorrowful, even to death. Remain here and watch with me."39He went a little farther, fell on his face, and prayed. He said, "My Father, if it is possible, let this cup pass from me. Yet, not as I will, but as you will."40He came to the disciples and found them sleeping, and he said to Peter, "What, could you not watch with me for one hour?41Watch and pray that you do not enter into temptation. The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak."42He went away a second time and prayed. He said, "My Father, if this cannot pass away unless I drink it, your will be done."43He came again and found them sleeping, for their eyes were heavy.44So leaving them again, he went away and prayed a third time, saying the same words.45Then Jesus came to the disciples and said to them, "Are you still sleeping and taking your rest? Look, the hour is at hand, and the Son of Man is being betrayed into the hands of sinners.46Arise, let us go. Look, the one who is betraying me is near."

47While he was still speaking, Judas, one of the twelve, came. A large crowd came with him from the chief priests and elders of the people. They came with swords and clubs.48Now the man who was going to betray Jesus had given them a signal, saying, "The one I kiss is the man. Seize him."49Immediately he came up to Jesus and said, "Greetings, Rabbi!" and he kissed him.

50Jesus said to him, "Friend, do what you have come to do." Then they came, laid hands on Jesus, and seized him.51Behold, one of those who was with Jesus stretched out his hand, drew his sword, and struck the servant of the high priest, and cut off his ear.52Then Jesus said to him, "Put your sword back in its place, for all those who take up the sword will perish by the sword.53Do you think that I could not call upon my Father, and he would send me more than twelve legions of angels?54But how then would the scriptures be fulfilled, that this must happen?"55At that time Jesus said to the crowd, "Have you come out with swords and clubs to seize me like a robber? Every day I sat teaching in the temple, and you did not arrest me.56But all this has happened so that the writings of the prophets might be fulfilled." Then all the disciples abandoned him and fled.

57Those who had seized Jesus led him away to Caiaphas the high priest, where the scribes and the elders had gathered together.58But Peter followed him from a distance to the courtyard of the high priest. He went inside and sat down with the officers to see the outcome.59Now the chief priests and the whole council were looking for false testimony against Jesus so that they might put him to death.60They did not find any, even though many false witnesses came forward. But later two came forward61and said, "This man said, 'I am able to destroy the temple of God and rebuild it in three days.'"

62The high priest stood up and said to him, "Do you have no answer? What is it that they are testifying against you?"63But Jesus was silent. The high priest said to him, "I command you by the living God, tell us whether you are the Christ, the Son of God."

64Jesus replied to him, "You have said it yourself. But I tell you, from now on you will see the Son of Man sitting at the right hand of Power, and coming on the clouds of heaven."

65Then the high priest tore his clothes and said, "He has spoken blasphemy! Why do we still need witnesses? Look, now you have heard the blasphemy.66What do you think?"

They answered and said, "He is deserving of death."67Then they spit in his face and beat him with their fists, while some slapped him68and said, "Prophesy to us, you Christ. Who is it that struck you?"

69Now Peter was sitting outside in the courtyard, and a servant girl came to him and said, "You were also with Jesus of Galilee."

70But he denied it in front of them all, saying, "I do not know what you are talking about."

71When he went out to the gateway, another servant girl saw him and said to those there, "This man was also with Jesus of Nazareth."

72He again denied it with an oath, "I do not know the man!"

73After a little while those who were standing by came and said to Peter, "Surely you are also one of them, for the way you speak gives you away."

74Then he began to curse and swear, "I do not know the man," and immediately a rooster crowed.

75Peter remembered the words that Jesus had said, "Before the rooster crows you will deny me three times." Then he went outside and wept bitterly.

#### Matthew 26:1

##### It came about that when

"After" or "Then, after." This phrase shifts the story from Jesus's teachings to what happened next.

#### Matthew 26:2

##### the Son of Man will be given over to be crucified

"some men will give the Son of Man to other people who will crucify him"

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

#### Matthew 26:3

##### were gathered together

"came together" or "met together"

#### Matthew 26:5

##### Not during the festival

"We should not kill Jesus during the festival"

##### the festival

This is the yearly Passover festival.

#### Matthew 26:7

##### he was reclining

"Jesus was lying on his side." You can use your language's word for the position people usually are in when they eat.

##### alabaster jar

This is a costly container made of soft stone.

##### ointment

oil that has a pleasing smell

#### Matthew 26:8

##### What is the reason for this waste?

"This woman has done a bad thing by wasting this ointment!"

#### Matthew 26:9

##### This could have been sold for a large amount and given to the poor

"She could have sold this for a large amount of money and given the money to poor people"

#### Matthew 26:10

##### Why are you causing trouble for this woman?

"You should not be causing trouble for this woman!"

##### Why are you

All occurrences of "you" are plural and refer to the disciples.

#### Matthew 26:13

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### wherever this good news is preached

"wherever people preach this good news"

##### what this woman has done will also be spoken of in memory of her

"they will remember what this woman has done and will tell others about her" or "people will remember what this woman has done and will tell others about her"

#### Matthew 26:15

##### thirty pieces of silver

Since these words are the same as those in an Old Testament prophecy, keep this form instead of changing it to modern money.

#### Matthew 26:17

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

#### Matthew 26:18

##### He said, "Go into the city to a certain man and say to him, 'The Teacher says, "My time is at hand. I will keep the Passover at your house with my disciples."'"

"He told his disciples to go into the city to a certain man and tell him that the Teacher says to him, 'My time is at hand. I will keep the Passover at your house with my disciples.'" or "He told his disciples to go into the city to a certain man and say to him that the Teacher's time is at hand and he will keep the Passover with his disciples at that man's house."

##### My time

Possible meanings are 1) "The time that I told you about" or 2) "The time God has set for me."

##### is at hand

Possible meanings are 1) "is near" or 2) "has come."

##### keep the Passover

"eat the Passover meal" or "celebrate the Passover by eating the special meal"

#### Matthew 26:21

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

#### Matthew 26:22

##### Surely not I, Lord?

"Lord, I would never betray you!" or 2) this was a sincere question since Jesus's statement probably troubled and confused them.

#### Matthew 26:24

##### The Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

##### will go

"will go to his death" or "will die"

##### just as it is written about him

"just as the prophets wrote about him in the scriptures"

##### that man by whom the Son of Man is betrayed

"the man who betrays the Son of Man"

#### Matthew 26:25

##### Is it I, Rabbi?

"Rabbi, surely I am not the one who will betray you."

##### You have said it yourself

"You are saying it" or "You are admitting it"

#### Matthew 26:27

##### a cup

Here "cup" refers to the cup and the wine in it.

##### gave it to them

"gave it to the disciples"

##### Drink it

"Drink the wine from this cup"

#### Matthew 26:28

##### For this is my blood

"For this wine is my blood"

##### blood of the covenant

"blood that shows that the covenant is in effect" or "blood that makes the covenant possible"

##### is poured out

"will soon flow out of my body" or "will flow out of my wounds when I die"

#### Matthew 26:29

##### I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### fruit of the vine

"wine"

##### in my Father's kingdom

"when my Father establishes his rule on earth"

##### my Father's

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 26:30

##### hymn

a song of praise to God

#### Matthew 26:31

##### fall away

"leave me"

##### for it is written

"for the prophet Zechariah wrote long ago in the scriptures"

##### I will strike

Here "I" refers to God. It is implied that God will cause or allow people to harm and kill Jesus.

##### the shepherd ... sheep of the flock

This refers to Jesus and the disciples.

##### the sheep of the flock will be scattered

"they will scatter all the sheep of the flock" or "the sheep of the flock will run off in all directions"

#### Matthew 26:32

##### after I am raised up

"after God raises me up" or "after God brings me back to life"

#### Matthew 26:34

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### rooster

a male chicken, a bird that calls out loudly around the time the sun comes up

##### crows

This is the common English word for what a rooster does to make his loud call.

##### you will deny me three times

"you will say three times that you are not my follower"

#### Matthew 26:38

##### My soul is deeply sorrowful

"I am very sad"

##### even to death

"and I feel as if I could even die"

#### Matthew 26:39

##### fell on his face

He purposely lay face down on the ground to pray.

##### My Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### let this cup pass from me

Jesus speaks of the work that he must do, including dying on the cross, as if it were a bitter liquid that God has commanded him to drink from a cup. The word "cup" is an important word in the New Testament, so try to use an equivalent for that in your translation.

##### this cup

Jesus is asking the Father if it is possible for him not to have to experience the death and suffering that Jesus knows will soon happen.

##### Yet, not as I will, but as you will

"But do not do what I want; instead, do what you want"

#### Matthew 26:40

##### What, could you not watch with me for one hour?

"I am disappointed that you could not stay awake with me for one hour!"

#### Matthew 26:41

##### you do not enter into temptation

"no one tempts you to sin"

##### The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak

Jesus means that the disciples may have the desire to do what God wants, but as humans they are weak and often fail.

#### Matthew 26:42

##### My Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### if this cannot pass away unless I drink it

"if the only way this can pass away is if I drink it." Jesus speaks of the work that he must do as if it were a bitter liquid that God has commanded him to drink.

##### if this

Here "this" refers to the cup and the contents within it, a metaphor for suffering.

##### your will be done

"may what you want happen" or "do what you want to do"

#### Matthew 26:43

##### their eyes were heavy

"they were very sleepy"

#### Matthew 26:45

##### Are you still sleeping and taking your rest?

"I am disappointed that you are still sleeping and resting!"

##### the hour is at hand

"the time has come"

##### the Son of Man is being betrayed

"someone is betraying the Son of Man"

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

##### betrayed into the hands of sinners

"betrayed into the power of sinners" or "betrayed so that sinners will have power over him"

##### Look

"Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

#### Matthew 26:47

##### clubs

large pieces of hard wood for hitting people

#### Matthew 26:48

##### saying, "The one I kiss is the man. Seize him."

"saying that the one he kissed was the one they should seize."

#### Matthew 26:49

##### he came up to Jesus

"Judas came up to Jesus"

##### kissed him

"met him with a kiss." Good friends would kiss each other on the cheek, but a disciple would probably kiss his master on the hand to show respect. No one knows for sure how Judas kissed Jesus.

#### Matthew 26:50

##### laid hands on Jesus, and seized him

"grabbed Jesus, and arrested him"

#### Matthew 26:51

##### Behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

#### Matthew 26:52

##### who take up the sword

"who pick up a sword to kill others" or "who want to kill other people"

##### sword will perish by the sword

"sword will die by means of the sword" or "sword—it is with the sword that someone will kill them"

#### Matthew 26:53

##### Do you think that I could not call ... angels?

"Surely you know that I could call ... angels."

##### Do you think

Here "you" is singular and refers to the person with the sword.

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### more than twelve legions of angels

"more than 12 really large groups of angels"

#### Matthew 26:54

##### But how then would the scriptures be fulfilled, that this must happen?

"But if I did that, I would not be able to fulfill what God said in the scriptures must happen"

#### Matthew 26:55

##### Have you come out with swords and clubs to seize me like a robber?

"You know that I am not a robber, so it is wrong for you to come out to me bringing swords and clubs"

##### in the temple

It is implied that Jesus was not in the actual temple. He was in the courtyard around the temple.

#### Matthew 26:56

##### the writings of the prophets might be fulfilled

"I would fulfill all that the prophets wrote in the scriptures"

##### abandoned him

"left him." If your language has a word that means they left him when they should have stayed with him, use it here.

#### Matthew 26:58

##### Peter followed him

"Peter followed Jesus"

##### courtyard of the high priest

an open area near the high priest's house

##### the officers

These were probably the servants of the "scribes and elders"

#### Matthew 26:59

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

##### so that they

Here "they" refers to the chief priests and the members of the council.

##### might put him to death

"might have a reason to execute him"

#### Matthew 26:60

##### two came forward

"two men came forward" or "two witnesses came forward"

#### Matthew 26:61

##### This man said, 'I am able to destroy ... days.'

"This man said that he is able to destroy ... days."

##### This man said

"This man Jesus said"

#### Matthew 26:62

##### What is it that they are testifying against you?

"What is your response to what the witnesses are testifying against you?"

#### Matthew 26:63

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### the living God

Here "living" contrasts the God of Israel to all the false gods and idols that people worshiped. Only the God of Israel is alive and has power to act. See how you translated this in Matthew 16:16.

#### Matthew 26:64

##### You have said it yourself

"You are saying it" or "You are admitting it"

##### But I tell you, from now on you

Here "you" is plural. Jesus is speaking to the high priest and to the other persons there.

##### from now on you will see the Son of Man

Possible meanings are 1) the phrase "from now on" means they will see the Son of Man in his power at some time in the future or 2) the phrase "from now on" means that from the time of Jesus's trial and onward, Jesus is showing himself to be the Messiah who is powerful and victorious.

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

##### sitting at the right hand of Power

"sitting in the place of honor beside the all-powerful God"

##### coming on the clouds of heaven

"riding to earth on the clouds of heaven"

#### Matthew 26:65

##### the high priest tore his clothes

Tearing clothing was a sign of anger and sadness.

##### He has spoken blasphemy

The reason the high priest called Jesus's statement blasphemy is probably that he understood Jesus's words in Matthew 26:64 as a claim to be equal with God.

##### Why do we still need witnesses?

"We do not need to hear from any more witnesses!"

##### now you have heard

Here "you" is plural and refers to the members of the council.

#### Matthew 26:67

##### Then they

Possible meanings are 1) "Then some of the men" or 2) "Then the soldiers."

##### spit in his face

This was done as an insult.

#### Matthew 26:68

##### Prophesy to us

Here "Prophesy to us" means to tell by means of God's power. It does not mean to tell what will happen in the future.

##### you Christ

Those hitting Jesus do not really think he is the Christ. They call him this to mock him.

#### Matthew 26:70

##### I do not know what you are talking about

Peter was able to understand what the servant girl was saying. He used these words to deny that he had been with Jesus.

#### Matthew 26:71

##### gateway

opening in the wall around a courtyard

##### said to those there

"said to the people who were sitting there"

#### Matthew 26:72

##### He again denied it with an oath

"He denied it again by swearing"

#### Matthew 26:73

##### one of them, for the way you speak gives you away

"one of them. We can tell you are from Galilee because you speak like a Galilean"

#### Matthew 26:74

##### to curse

"to call down a curse on himself"

#### Matthew 26:75

##### Peter remembered the words that Jesus had said, "Before the rooster crows you will deny me three times."

"Peter remembered that Jesus told him that before the rooster crowed, he would deny Jesus three times."

Chapter 27

1Now when morning came, all the chief priests and elders of the people plotted against Jesus to put him to death.2They bound him, led him away, and delivered him to Pilate the governor.

3Then when Judas, who had betrayed him, saw that Jesus had been condemned, he repented and returned the thirty pieces of silver to the chief priests and elders,4and said, "I have sinned by betraying innocent blood."

But they said, "What is that to us? See to that yourself."5Then he threw down the pieces of silver in the temple, and departed, and went out and hanged himself.6The chief priests took the pieces of silver and said, "It is not lawful to put this into the treasury because it is the price of blood."7They discussed the matter together, and they bought with the money the potter's field in which to bury strangers.8For this reason that field has been called, "The Field of Blood" to this day.9Then that which had been spoken by Jeremiah the prophet was fulfilled, saying, "They took the thirty pieces of silver, the price set on him by the sons of Israel,10and they gave it for the potter's field, as the Lord had directed me."

11Now Jesus stood before the governor, and the governor asked him, "Are you the King of the Jews?"

Jesus answered him, "You say so."

12But when he was accused by the chief priests and elders, he answered nothing.13Then Pilate said to him, "Do you not hear how many things they accuse you of?"14But he did not answer even one word, so that the governor was greatly amazed.15Now at the festival it was the custom of the governor to set free one prisoner chosen by the crowd.16At that time they had a notorious prisoner named Jesus Barabbas. [1](#footnote-target-1)17So when they were gathered together, Pilate said to them, "Who do you want me to set free for you? Barabbas, or Jesus who is called Christ?"18He knew that they had handed Jesus over to him because of envy.

19While he was sitting on the judgment seat, his wife sent word to him and said, "Have nothing to do with that innocent man. For I have suffered much today because of a dream I had about him."

20Now the chief priests and the elders persuaded the crowd that they should ask for Barabbas and destroy Jesus.21The governor asked them, "Which of the two do you want me to set free for you?"

They said, "Barabbas."

22Pilate said to them, "What should I do with Jesus who is called Christ?"

They all answered, "Crucify him."

23Then he said, "Why, what evil has he done?"

But they cried out even louder, "Crucify him."

24So when Pilate saw that he was gaining nothing, but instead a riot was starting, he took water, washed his hands in front of the crowd, and said, "I am innocent of the blood of this man. You see to it."

25All the people said, "May his blood be on us and our children."26Then he set Barabbas free for them, but he scourged Jesus and handed him over to be crucified.

27Then the soldiers of the governor took Jesus into the government headquarters and they gathered the whole company of soldiers.28They stripped him and put a scarlet robe on him.29They made a crown of thorns and put it on his head, and placed a staff in his right hand. They knelt down before him and mocked him, saying, "Hail, King of the Jews!"30They spat on him, and they took the staff and struck him on the head again and again.31When they had mocked him, they took the robe off him and put his own garments on him, and led him away to crucify him.

32As they came out, they found a man from Cyrene named Simon, whom they forced to go with them so that he might carry his cross.33They came to a place called Golgotha, which means "The Place of a Skull."34They gave him wine to drink mixed with gall. But when he tasted it, he would not drink.35When they had crucified him, they divided up his garments by casting lots,36and they sat and kept guard over him.37Above his head they put the charge against him, which read, "This is Jesus, the king of the Jews."38Two robbers were crucified with him, one on the right of him and one on the left.39Those who passed by insulted him, shaking their heads40and saying, "You who were going to destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days, save yourself! If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross!"

41In the same way the chief priests were mocking him, along with the scribes and elders, and said,42"He saved others, but he cannot save himself. He is the King of Israel. Let him come down off the cross, and then we will believe in him.43He trusts in God, let God rescue him now, if God consents to release him. For he even said, 'I am the Son of God.'"44In the same way the robbers who were crucified with him also insulted him.

45Now from the sixth hour darkness came over the whole land until the ninth hour.46About the ninth hour, Jesus cried with a loud voice and said, "Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani?" which means, "My God, my God, why have you abandoned me?"

47When some of those who were standing there heard it, they said, "He is calling for Elijah."

48Immediately one of them ran and took a sponge, filled it with sour wine, put it on a reed staff, and gave it to him to drink.49The rest of them said, "Leave him alone. Let us see whether Elijah comes to save him."50Then Jesus cried out again with a loud voice and gave up his spirit.

51Behold, the curtain of the temple was split in two from the top to the bottom, and the earth shook, and the rocks split apart.52The tombs were opened, and the bodies of the holy people who had fallen asleep were raised.53They came out of the tombs after his resurrection, entered the holy city, and appeared to many.54Now when the centurion and those who were watching Jesus saw the earthquake and the things that had happened, they became very afraid and said, "Truly this was the Son of God."55Many women who had followed Jesus from Galilee to attend to his needs were there watching from a distance.56Among them were Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James and Joseph, and the mother of the sons of Zebedee.

57When it was evening, there came a rich man from Arimathea, named Joseph, who was also a disciple of Jesus.58He approached Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus. Then Pilate ordered it to be given to him.59Joseph took the body, wrapped it in a clean linen cloth,60and laid it in his own new tomb that he had cut into the rock. Then he rolled a large stone against the door of the tomb and went away.61Mary Magdalene and the other Mary were there, sitting opposite the tomb.

62The next day, which was the day after the Preparation, the chief priests and the Pharisees were gathered together with Pilate.63They said, "Sir, we remember that when that deceiver was alive, he said, 'After three days will I rise again.'64Therefore command that the tomb be made secure until the third day, otherwise his disciples may come and steal him and say to the people, 'He has risen from the dead,' and the last deception will be worse than the first."

65Pilate said to them, "Take a guard. Go and make it as secure as you know how."66So they went and made the tomb secure, sealing the stone and placing the guard.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Many ancient copies do not have Jesus .

#### Matthew 27:1

##### plotted against Jesus to put him to death

The Jewish leaders were planning how they could convince the Roman leaders to kill Jesus.

#### Matthew 27:3

##### Then when Judas

If your language has a way of showing that a new story is starting, you may want to use that here.

##### that Jesus had been condemned

"that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus"

##### the thirty pieces of silver

This was the money that the chief priests had given Judas to betray Jesus.

#### Matthew 27:4

##### innocent blood

"a person who does not deserve to die"

##### What is that to us?

"That is not our problem!" or "That is your problem!"

#### Matthew 27:5

##### threw down the pieces of silver in the temple

Possible meanings are 1) he threw the pieces of silver while in the temple courtyard, or 2) he was standing in the temple courtyard, and he threw the pieces of silver into the temple.

#### Matthew 27:6

##### It is not lawful to put this

"Our laws do not allow us to put this"

##### put this

"put this silver"

##### the treasury

This is the place they kept the money they used to provide for things needed for the temple and the priests.

##### price of blood

"money paid for a man to die"

#### Matthew 27:7

##### potter's field

This was a field that was bought to bury strangers who died in Jerusalem.

#### Matthew 27:8

##### to this day

This means to the time that Matthew is writing this book.

#### Matthew 27:9

##### Then that which had been spoken by Jeremiah the prophet was fulfilled

"This fulfilled what the prophet Jeremiah spoke"

##### the price set on him by the sons of Israel

"the price the sons of Israel set on him"

##### the sons of Israel

"some of the descendants of Israel" or "the leaders of Israel"

#### Matthew 27:10

##### directed me

Here "me" refers to Jeremiah.

#### Matthew 27:11

##### Now

The word "Now" is used here to mark a return to the main events of the story.

##### the governor

"Pilate"

##### You say so

"Yes, as you said, I am" or "Yes. It is as you said" or 2) by saying this, Jesus was saying that Pilate, not Jesus, was the one calling him the King of the Jews.

#### Matthew 27:12

##### But when he was accused by the chief priests and elders

"But when the chief priests and elders accused him"

#### Matthew 27:13

##### Do you not hear how many things they accuse you of?

"I am surprised that you do not answer these people who accuse you of doing so many bad things!"

#### Matthew 27:14

##### did not answer even one word, so that the governor was greatly amazed

Jesus was completely silent.

#### Matthew 27:15

##### the festival

This is the Passover celebration.

##### prisoner chosen by the crowd

"prisoner whom the crowd would choose"

#### Matthew 27:16

##### they had a notorious prisoner

"there was a prisoner who was well known for doing something bad"

#### Matthew 27:17

##### they were gathered

"the crowd gathered"

##### Jesus who is called Christ

"whom some people call the Christ"

#### Matthew 27:18

##### they had handed Jesus over to him

"the Jewish leaders had brought Jesus to him." They had done this so that Pilate would judge Jesus.

#### Matthew 27:19

##### While he was sitting on the judgment seat

"While Pilate was sitting in the place where a judge would sit while making a decision."

##### sent word

"sent a message"

##### I have suffered much today

"I have been very upset today"

#### Matthew 27:20

##### Now ... destroy Jesus

Here "Now" is used to mark a pause in the story. Matthew tells background information about why the crowd chose Barabbas.

##### they should ask for Barabbas and destroy Jesus

"they should ask Pilate to release Jesus and tell him to have his soldiers kill Jesus"

#### Matthew 27:21

##### asked them

"asked the crowd"

#### Matthew 27:22

##### who is called Christ

"whom some people call the Christ"

#### Matthew 27:23

##### has he done

"has Jesus done"

##### they cried out

"the crowd cried out"

#### Matthew 27:24

##### he was gaining nothing

"he was doing no good" or "he was unable to convince the people"

##### washed his hands in front of the crowd

Pilate does this as a sign that he is not responsible for Jesus's death.

##### the blood

"the death"

##### You see to it

"This is your responsibility."

#### Matthew 27:25

##### May his blood be on us and our children

"Yes! We and our descendants will be responsible for executing him"

#### Matthew 27:26

##### Then he set Barabbas free for them

Possible meanings are 1) Pilate set Barabbas free because the crowd had asked him to or 2) Pilate released Barabbas and put him under the control of the crowd.

##### he scourged Jesus and handed him over to be crucified

"he ordered his soldiers to beat Jesus with a whip and to crucify him"

#### Matthew 27:28

##### stripped him

"pulled off his clothes"

##### scarlet

bright red

#### Matthew 27:29

##### a crown of thorns

"a crown from thorny branches" or "a crown from branches with thorns on them"

##### a staff in his right hand

They gave Jesus a stick to hold to represent a scepter that a king holds. They did this to mock Jesus.

##### Hail, King of the Jews

They were saying this to mock Jesus. They were calling Jesus "King of the Jews," but they did not really believe he was a king. And yet what they were saying was true.

##### Hail

"We honor you" or "May you live a long time"

#### Matthew 27:30

##### They spat on him

The past tense of the verb "spit" can be either "spit" or "spat."

#### Matthew 27:32

##### As they came out

"As they came out of Jerusalem"

##### they found a man

"the soldiers saw a man"

##### whom they forced to go with them so that he might carry his cross

"whom the soldiers forced to go with them so that he could carry Jesus's cross"

#### Matthew 27:33

##### place called Golgotha

"place that people called Golgotha"

#### Matthew 27:34

##### gall

Gall is the bitter yellow liquid that bodies use in digestion. The people were mocking Jesus by mixing it with the wine and so making the wine undrinkable.

#### Matthew 27:35

##### his garments

These were the clothes Jesus had been wearing.

#### Matthew 27:37

##### the charge against him

"a written explanation of why he was being crucified"

#### Matthew 27:38

##### Two robbers were crucified with him

"The soldiers crucified two robbers with Jesus"

#### Matthew 27:39

##### shaking their heads

They did this to make fun of Jesus.

#### Matthew 27:40

##### If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross

"If you are the Son of God, prove it by coming down from the cross"

##### the Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Matthew 27:42

##### He saved others, but he cannot save himself

Possible meanings are 1) the Jewish leaders do not believe that Jesus saved others or that he can save himself, or 2) they believe he did save others but are laughing at him because now he cannot save himself.

##### He is the King of Israel

"He says that he is the King of Israel"

#### Matthew 27:43

##### For he even said, 'I am the Son of God.'

"For Jesus even said that he is the Son of God."

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Matthew 27:44

##### the robbers who were crucified with him

"the robbers that the soldiers crucified with Jesus"

#### Matthew 27:45

##### from the sixth hour ... until the ninth hour

"from about noon ... for three hours" or "from about twelve o'clock midday ... until about three o'clock in the afternoon"

##### darkness came over the whole land

"it became dark over the whole land"

#### Matthew 27:46

##### Jesus cried

"Jesus called out" or "Jesus shouted"

##### Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani

These words are what Jesus cried out in his own language. Translators usually leave these words as they are.

#### Matthew 27:48

##### one of them

Possible meanings are 1) one of the soldiers or 2) one of those who stood by and watched.

##### sponge

This is a sea animal that is harvested and used to take up and hold liquids. These liquids can later be pushed out.

#### Matthew 27:50

##### gave up his spirit

"he died, giving his spirit over to God" or "he breathed his last breath"

#### Matthew 27:51

##### Behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### the curtain of the temple was split in two

"the curtain of the temple tore in two" or "God caused the curtain of the temple to tear in two"

#### Matthew 27:52

##### The tombs were opened, and the bodies of the holy people who had fallen asleep were raised

"God opened the tombs and made many godly people who had died become alive again"

#### Matthew 27:53

##### They came out ... appeared to many

After the earthquake when Jesus died and the tombs were opened 1) the holy people came back to life, and then, after Jesus came back to life, the holy people entered Jerusalem, where many people saw them, or 2) Jesus came back to life, and then the holy ones came back to life and entered the city, where many people saw them.

#### Matthew 27:54

##### those who were watching Jesus

"the other soldiers with him who were guarding Jesus"

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Matthew 27:57

##### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus's burial.

##### Arimathea

This is the name of a city in Israel.

#### Matthew 27:58

##### Then Pilate ordered it to be given to him

"Then Pilate ordered the soldiers to give the body of Jesus to Joseph"

#### Matthew 27:59

##### linen

a fine, costly cloth

#### Matthew 27:60

##### that he had cut into the rock

It is implied that Joseph had workers who cut the tomb into the rock.

#### Matthew 27:61

##### opposite the tomb

"across from the tomb"

#### Matthew 27:62

##### the Preparation

This is the day that people got everything ready for the Sabbath.

##### were gathered together with Pilate

"they met with Pilate"

#### Matthew 27:63

##### he said, 'After three days will I rise again.'

"when Jesus, the deceiver, was alive he said that after three days he will rise again." or "he said that after three day he would rise again."

#### Matthew 27:64

##### command that the tomb be made secure

"command your soldiers to guard the tomb"

##### his disciples may come and steal him ... say to the people, 'He has risen from the dead,' and

"his disciples may ... tell the people that he has risen from the dead, and"

##### from the dead

From among all those who have died. The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

##### and the last deception will be worse than the first

"and if they deceive people by saying that, it will be worse than the way he deceived people before when he said that he was the Christ"

#### Matthew 27:65

##### a guard

This consisted of four to sixteen Roman soldiers.

#### Matthew 27:66

##### sealing the stone

Possible meanings are 1) they put a cord around the stone and attached it with seals to the rock wall on either side of the entrance to the tomb or 2) they put seals between the stone and the wall.

##### placing the guard

"telling the soldiers to stand where they could keep people from tampering with the tomb"

Chapter 28

1Now after the Sabbath, as it began to dawn toward the first day of the week, Mary Magdalene and the other Mary came to see the tomb.2Behold, there was a great earthquake, for an angel of the Lord descended from heaven, came and rolled away the stone, and sat on it.3His appearance was like lightning, and his clothing as white as snow.4The guards shook with fear and became like dead men.5The angel addressed the women and said to them, "Do not be afraid, for I know that you seek Jesus, who has been crucified.6He is not here, but is risen, just as he said. Come see the place where the Lord was lying.7Go quickly and tell his disciples, 'He has risen from the dead. See, he is going ahead of you to Galilee. There you will see him.' See, I have told you."

8The women quickly left the tomb with fear and great joy, and ran to tell his disciples.9Behold, Jesus met them and said, "Greetings!" The women came, took hold of his feet and worshiped him.10Then Jesus said to them, "Do not be afraid. Go tell my brothers to leave for Galilee. There they will see me."

11Now while the women were going, behold, some of the guards went into the city and told the chief priests all the things that had happened.12When the priests had met with the elders and discussed the matter with them, they gave a large amount of money to the soldiers13and told them, "Say to others, 'The disciples of Jesus came by night and stole his body while we were sleeping.'14If this report reaches the governor, we will persuade him and take any worries away from you."15So the soldiers took the money and did as they had been instructed. This report spread widely among the Jews and continues even today.

16But the eleven disciples went to Galilee, to the mountain to which Jesus had directed them.17When they saw him, they worshiped him, but some doubted.18Jesus came to them and spoke to them and said, "All authority has been given to me in heaven and on earth.19Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations. Baptize them into the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.20Teach them to obey all the things that I have commanded you. See, I am with you always, even to the end of the age."

#### Matthew 28:1

##### Now after the Sabbath, as it began to dawn toward the first day of the week

"After the Sabbath, as the sun began to come up Sunday morning"

##### the other Mary

"the other woman named Mary." This is Mary the mother of James and Joseph

#### Matthew 28:2

##### Behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### there was a great earthquake, for an angel of the Lord descended ... and rolled away the stone

Possible meanings are 1) the earthquake happened because the angel came down and rolled away the stone or 2) all these events happened at the same time.

##### earthquake

a sudden and violent shaking of the ground

#### Matthew 28:3

##### His appearance was like lightning

"The angel's appearance was bright like lightning"

##### his clothing as white as snow

"his clothing was very white, like snow"

#### Matthew 28:4

##### became like dead men

"fell to the ground and lay there like dead men"

#### Matthew 28:5

##### the women

"Mary Magdalene and the other woman named Mary"

##### who has been crucified

"whom the people and the soldiers crucified" or "whom they crucified"

#### Matthew 28:6

##### was lying

This means that Jesus's body was lying on the flat surface inside the tomb, not that Jesus was saying things that were not true.

#### Matthew 28:7

##### He has risen from the dead

"He has come back to life"

##### from the dead

From among all those who have died. The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

##### going ahead of you ... you will see him

Here "you" is plural. It refers to the women and the disciples.

##### I have told you

Here "you" is plural and refers to the women.

#### Matthew 28:8

##### The women

"Mary Magdalene and the other woman named Mary"

#### Matthew 28:9

##### Greetings

This is an ordinary greeting, much like "Hello" in English.

##### took hold of his feet

"got down on their knees and held onto his feet"

#### Matthew 28:10

##### my brothers

This refers to Jesus's disciples.

#### Matthew 28:12

##### discussed the matter with them

"decided on a plan among themselves." The priests and elders decided to give the money to the soldiers.

#### Matthew 28:13

##### Say to others, 'The disciples of Jesus came ... while we were sleeping.'

"Tell others that Jesus' disciples came ... while you were sleeping."

#### Matthew 28:14

##### If this report reaches the governor

"If the governor hears that you were asleep when Jesus's disciples took his body"

##### the governor

"Pilate"

##### we will persuade him and take any worries away from you

"do not worry. We will talk to him so that he does not punish you."

#### Matthew 28:15

##### did as they had been instructed

"did what the priests had told them to do"

##### This report spread widely among the Jews and continues even today

"Many Jews heard this report and continue to tell others about it even today"

#### Matthew 28:17

##### they worshiped him, but some doubted

Possible meanings are 1) they all worshiped Jesus even though some of them doubted, or 2) some of them worshiped Jesus, but others did not worship him because they doubted that he had become alive again.

#### Matthew 28:18

##### All authority has been given to me

"My Father has given me all authority over everyone and everything in heaven and on earth"

#### Matthew 28:19

##### of all the nations

"of the people in every nation"

##### into the name

"by the authority"

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### Matthew 28:20

##### See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

##### even to the end of the age

"until the end of this age" or "until the end of the world"

## Mark

Chapter 1

1This is the beginning of the gospel of Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

2As it is written in Isaiah the prophet,"Look, I am sending my messenger before your face,the one who will prepare your way.3The voice of one crying out in the wilderness,'Make ready the way of the Lord;make his paths straight.'"

4John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins.5The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. They were baptized by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins.6John wore a coat of camel's hair and a leather belt around his waist, and he ate locusts and wild honey.

7He was preaching, saying, "One will come after me who is more powerful than I; the strap of his sandals I am not worthy to stoop down and untie.8I baptized you with water, but he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit."

9It happened in those days that Jesus came from Nazareth in Galilee, and he was baptized by John in the Jordan River.10As Jesus came up out of the water, he saw the heavens split open and the Spirit coming down on him like a dove.11A voice came out of the heavens: "You are my beloved Son. I am very pleased with you."

12Then the Spirit compelled him to go out into the wilderness.13He was in the wilderness forty days being tempted by Satan. He was with the wild animals, and the angels served him.

14Now after John was arrested, Jesus came into Galilee proclaiming the gospel of God.15He said, "The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe the gospel."

16When he was walking beside the Sea of Galilee, he saw Simon and Andrew the brother of Simon casting a net in the sea, for they were fishermen.17Jesus said to them, "Come, follow me, and I will make you fishers of men."18Then immediately they left the nets and followed him.19As Jesus was walking on a little farther, he saw James son of Zebedee and John his brother; they were in the boat mending the nets.20He called them, and they left their father Zebedee in the boat with the hired servants, and they followed him.

21Then they came into Capernaum, and on the Sabbath, Jesus went into the synagogue and taught.22They were astonished at his teaching, for he was teaching them as someone who has authority and not as the scribes.23Just then a man in their synagogue who had an unclean spirit cried out,24saying, "What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth? Have you come to destroy us? I know who you are. You are the Holy One of God!"

25Jesus rebuked the demon and said, "Be quiet and come out of him!"26The unclean spirit threw him into convulsions and went out from him while crying out with a loud voice.27All the people were amazed, so they asked each other, "What is this? A new teaching with authority! He even commands the unclean spirits and they obey him!"28The news about him went out everywhere into the whole region of Galilee.

29After coming out of the synagogue, they came into the house of Simon and Andrew, along with James and John.30Now Simon's mother-in-law was lying sick with a fever, and they told Jesus about her.31So he came, took her by the hand, and raised her up; the fever left her, and she started serving them.

32That evening after the sun had set, they brought to him all who were sick or possessed by demons.33The whole city gathered together at the door.34He healed many who were sick with various diseases and cast out many demons, but he did not allow the demons to speak because they knew him.

35He got up very early, while it was still dark; he left and went out into a solitary place and there he prayed.36Simon and those who were with him searched for him.37They found him and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you."

38He said, "Let us go elsewhere, out into the surrounding towns, so that I may preach there also. That is why I came out here."39He went throughout all of Galilee, preaching in their synagogues and casting out demons.

40A leper came to him. He was begging him; he knelt down and said to him, "If you are willing, you can make me clean."

41Moved with compassion, Jesus reached out his hand and touched him, saying to him, "I am willing. Be clean."42Immediately the leprosy left him, and he was made clean.43Jesus strictly warned him and sent him away.44He said to him, "Be sure to say nothing to anyone, but go, show yourself to the priest, and offer for your cleansing what Moses commanded, as a testimony to them."45But he went out and began to declare it freely and spread the word, so much so that Jesus could no longer enter a town openly but he stayed out in remote places. Yet people were still coming to him from everywhere.

#### Mark 1:1

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Mark 1:2

##### before your face

This means "ahead of you."

##### your face ... your way

Here the word "your" refers to the Lord and is singular.

##### the one

This refers to the messenger.

##### will prepare your way

"will prepare the people for your arrival"

#### Mark 1:3

##### The voice of one crying out in the wilderness

"The voice of one crying out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone crying out in the wilderness"

##### Make ready the way of the Lord

"Prepare yourselves for the Lord to come" or "Be ready for the Lord when he comes"

#### Mark 1:4

##### John came

"So John came" or "In fulfillment of that prophecy, John came"

#### Mark 1:5

##### The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem

"Many people from Judea and Jerusalem"

##### They were baptized by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins

"When they repented of their sins, John baptized them in the Jordan River"

#### Mark 1:6

##### he ate locusts and wild honey

Locusts and wild honey were foods that John could find in the wilderness. Wild honey is honey that wild bees make.

#### Mark 1:7

##### He was preaching

"John was preaching"

##### the strap of his sandals I am not worthy to stoop down and untie

"I am not even worthy to do the lowly task of removing his shoes"

##### the strap of his sandals

People often wore sandals that were made of leather and were tied to their feet with leather straps.

##### stoop down

"bend down"

#### Mark 1:8

##### but he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit

To baptize with the Holy Spirit means that God would send the Holy Spirit to purify people. The Holy Spirit would then live in them and empower them to stop sinning and to obey God. If possible, use the same word for "baptize" here as you used for John's baptism.

#### Mark 1:9

##### It happened in those days

This marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

##### he was baptized by John

"John baptized him"

#### Mark 1:10

##### the Spirit coming down on him like a dove

Possible meanings are 1) the Spirit descended upon Jesus as a bird descends from the sky toward the ground or 2) the Spirit literally looked like a dove as he descended upon Jesus.

#### Mark 1:11

##### A voice came out of the heavens

"God spoke from the heavens"

##### beloved Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son. The Father calls Jesus his "beloved Son" because of his eternal love for him.

#### Mark 1:12

##### compelled him to go out

"forced Jesus to go out"

#### Mark 1:13

##### He was with

"He was among"

#### Mark 1:14

##### after John was arrested

"after King Herod had John arrested" or "after soldiers arrested John"

##### proclaiming the gospel

"telling many people about the good news"

#### Mark 1:15

##### The time is fulfilled

"It is now time"

##### the kingdom of God is near

"God is beginning to rule over all" or 2) God would soon rule over all.

#### Mark 1:16

##### casting a net in the sea

"throwing a net into the water to catch fish"

#### Mark 1:17

##### I will make you fishers of men

"I will teach you to gather men to me like you gather fish"

##### men

human beings, persons, people, not specifically males

#### Mark 1:19

##### mending the nets

"repairing the nets"

#### Mark 1:20

##### called them

"called them to come with him"

##### hired servants

"servants who worked for them"

##### they followed him

James and John went with Jesus.

#### Mark 1:21

##### came into Capernaum

"arrived at Capernaum"

#### Mark 1:22

##### for he was teaching them as someone who has authority and not as the scribes

"for he was teaching them as someone who has authority teaches and not as the scribes teach"

#### Mark 1:24

##### What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth?

"Jesus of Nazareth, leave us alone! There is no reason for you to interfere with us."

##### we ... us

These pronouns refer to the demon inside the man and all other demons, but do not include the listener.

##### Have you come to destroy us?

"Do not destroy us!"

#### Mark 1:26

##### threw him down

Here the word "him" refers to the demon-possessed man.

#### Mark 1:27

##### so they asked each other, "What is this? ... they obey him!"

"so they said to each other, 'This is amazing! ... they obey him!'"

##### A new teaching with authority!

"He gives a new teaching, and he speaks with authority!" or "He teaches something new, and he has authority!"

##### He even commands the unclean spirits and they obey him!

This was evidence of Jesus' authority.

#### Mark 1:30

##### Now Simon's mother-in-law was lying sick with a fever

Mark introduces Simon's mother-in-law to the story and gives information about her health.

#### Mark 1:31

##### raised her up

"caused her to stand" or "made her able to get out of bed"

##### the fever left her

"Jesus healed her of the fever"

##### she started serving them

"she provided them with food and drinks"

#### Mark 1:32

##### all who were sick or possessed by demons were brought to him.

"many who were sick or possessed by demons were brought to Jesus"

#### Mark 1:33

##### The whole city gathered together at the door

"Many people from that city gathered outside the door"

#### Mark 1:34

##### He healed

"Jesus healed"

#### Mark 1:35

##### He got up and went to a solitary place

"Jesus got up and went to a place where he could be alone"

#### Mark 1:36

##### Simon and those who were with him

Here "him" refers to Simon. Those with him include Andrew, James, John, and possibly other people.

#### Mark 1:37

##### Everyone is looking for you

"Many people are looking for you"

#### Mark 1:38

##### Let us go elsewhere

"We need to go to some other place."

#### Mark 1:39

##### He went throughout all of Galilee

"He went to many places in Galilee"

#### Mark 1:40

##### If you are willing, you can make me clean

"If you want to make me clean, then you can make me clean"

##### you can make me clean

"you can heal me"

#### Mark 1:41

##### Moved with compassion, Jesus

"Having compassion for him, Jesus" or "Jesus felt compassion for the man"

##### I am willing

"I am willing to make you clean"

#### Mark 1:44

##### show yourself to the priest

Jesus told the man to show himself to the priest so that the priest could look at his skin to see if his leprosy was really gone. The law of Moses required people to present themselves to the priest if they had been unclean but were no longer unclean.

##### a testimony to them

Possible meanings are 1) "a testimony to the priests" or 2) "a testimony to the people."

#### Mark 1:45

##### But he went out

The word "he" refers to the man Jesus healed.

##### began to declare it freely

"began to tell people in many places about what Jesus had done"

##### that Jesus could no longer enter a town openly

"so much that Jesus could no longer enter a town publicly" or "that Jesus could no longer enter the towns in a way that many people would see him"

##### remote places

"lonely places" or "places where no one lived"

##### from everywhere

"from all over the region"

Chapter 2

1When Jesus came back to Capernaum after a few days, it was heard that he was at home.2So many gathered there that there was no more space, not even at the door, and he spoke the word to them.3Then some men came to him who were bringing a paralyzed man; four people were carrying him.4When they could not get near him because of the crowd, they removed the roof that was above Jesus, and after they made an opening, they lowered the mat the paralyzed man was lying on.5Seeing their faith, Jesus said to the paralyzed man, "Son, your sins are forgiven."

6Now some of the scribes were sitting there, and they reasoned in their hearts,7"How can this man speak this way? He blasphemes! Who can forgive sins but God alone?"

8Immediately Jesus knew in his spirit what they were thinking within themselves. He said to them, "Why are you thinking this in your hearts?9Which is easier, to say to the paralyzed man, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up, take up your mat and walk'?10But in order that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins," he said to the paralytic,11"I say to you, get up, take up your mat, and go to your house."

12He got up and immediately took up the mat, and went out of the house in front of everyone, so that they were all amazed and they gave glory to God, and they said, "We never saw anything like this."

13He went out again by the lake, and all the crowd came to him, and he taught them.14As he passed by, he saw Levi son of Alphaeus sitting at the tax collector's tent and he said to him, "Follow me." He got up and followed him.

15Jesus was having a meal in Levi's house and many tax collectors and sinners were dining with him and his disciples, for there were many and they followed him.16When the scribes, who were Pharisees, saw that Jesus was eating with sinners and tax collectors, they said to his disciples, "Why does he eat with tax collectors and sinners?"

17When Jesus heard this, he said to them, "People who are strong in body do not need a physician; only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people, but sinners."

18Now John's disciples and the Pharisees were fasting. Some people came and said to him, "Why do John's disciples and the disciples of the Pharisees fast, but your disciples do not fast?"

19Jesus said to them, "Can the wedding attendants fast while the bridegroom is still with them? As long as they have the bridegroom with them, they cannot fast.20But the days will come when the bridegroom will be taken away from them, and in those days, they will fast.21No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment. Otherwise the patch tears away from it, the new from the old, and there is a worse tear.22No one puts new wine into old wineskins. Otherwise the wine will burst the skins and both the wine and the wineskins are lost. Instead, new wine is put into fresh wineskins."

23On the Sabbath day Jesus went through some grainfields, and his disciples began picking heads of grain as they made their way.24The Pharisees said to him, "Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful on the Sabbath day?"

25He said to them, "Have you never read what David did when he was in need and hungry—he and the men who were with him—26how he went into the house of God when Abiathar was high priest, and ate the bread of the presence, which is unlawful for anyone to eat except the priests, and he even gave some to those who were with him?"27Jesus said, "The Sabbath was made for mankind, not mankind for the Sabbath.28Therefore, the Son of Man is Lord, even of the Sabbath."

#### Mark 2:1

##### it was heard that he was at home

"the people there heard that he was staying at his home"

#### Mark 2:2

##### So many gathered there

"So many people gathered there" or "So many people came to the house"

#### Mark 2:3

##### were bringing a paralyzed man

"were bringing a man who was unable to walk or use his arms"

#### Mark 2:4

##### could not get near him

"could not get close to where Jesus was"

##### they removed the roof that was above Jesus, and after they made an opening, they lowered the mat the paralyzed man was lying on

"they removed the tiles from the part of the roof above where Jesus was. And when they had dug through the clay roof, they lowered the mat the paralzyed man was lying on" or "they made a hole in the roof above Jesus, and then they lowered the paralyzed man on the mat"

#### Mark 2:5

##### Seeing their faith

Possible meanings are 1) that only the men who carried the paralyzed man had faith or 2) that the paralyzed man and the men who brought him to Jesus all had faith.

##### Son

"My son"

##### your sins are forgiven

"your sins are gone" or "you do not have to pay for your sins" or "your sins do not count against you"

#### Mark 2:6

##### reasoned in their hearts

"were thinking to themselves"

#### Mark 2:7

##### How can this man speak this way?

"This man should not speak this way!"

##### Who can forgive sins but God alone?

"Only God can forgive sins!"

#### Mark 2:8

##### in his spirit

"in his inner being" or "in himself"

##### they were thinking within themselves

Each of the scribes was thinking to himself; they were not talking to each other.

##### Why are you thinking this in your hearts?

"What you are thinking is wrong." or "Do not think that I am blaspheming."

##### this in your hearts

"this inside yourselves" or "these things"

#### Mark 2:9

##### Which is easier, to say to the paralyzed man, ... take up your mat and walk'?

"I just said to the paralyzed man, 'Your sins are forgiven.' You may think that it is harder to say 'Get up, take up your mat and walk,' because the proof of whether or not I can heal him will be shown by whether or not he gets up and walks." or "You may think that it is easier to say to the paralyzed man 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up, take up your mat and walk.'"

#### Mark 2:10

##### that the Son of Man has authority

"that I am the Son of Man and I have authority"

#### Mark 2:12

##### in front of everyone

"while all the people there were watching"

#### Mark 2:13

##### the lake

This is the Sea of Galilee, which is also known as the Lake of Gennesaret.

#### Mark 2:14

##### the tax collector's tent

We do not know what kind of a structure this was or what it was made of. It may have been a tent or booth. It probably included a table and some kind of protection from sun and rain.

#### Mark 2:15

##### sinners

In this verse, the word "sinners" refers to people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

##### for there were many and they followed him

Possible meanings are 1) "for there were many tax collectors and sinful people who followed Jesus" or 2) "for Jesus had many disciples and they followed him."

#### Mark 2:16

##### Why does he eat with tax collectors and sinners?

"He should not eat with tax collectors and sinners!"

#### Mark 2:17

##### he said to them

"he said to the scribes"

##### People who are strong in body do not need a physician; only people who are sick need one

Jesus used this proverb about sick people and doctors to teach them that only people who know that they are sinful realize that they need Jesus.

##### strong in body

"healthy"

##### I did not come to call righteous people, but I came to call sinners

"I came for people who understand they are sinful, not for people who believe they are righteous"

#### Mark 2:18

##### the Pharisees were fasting ... the disciples of the Pharisees

These two phrases refer to the same group of people, but the second is more specific. Both refer to the followers of the Pharisee sect, but they do not focus on the leaders of the Pharisees.

##### Some people

The possible meanings are 1) these men were not among John's disciples or the disciples of the Pharisees or 2) these men were among John's disciples.

##### came and said to him

"came and said to Jesus"

#### Mark 2:19

##### Can the wedding attendants fast while the bridegroom is still with them?

"Wedding attendants do not fast while the bridegroom is with them. Rather they celebrate and feast."

#### Mark 2:20

##### the bridegroom will be taken away and then they will fast

"the bridegroom will go away and then the the wedding attendants will fast"

#### Mark 2:21

##### No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment

Sewing a piece of new cloth on an old garment will make the hole on an old garment worse if the piece of new cloth has not yet shrunk. Both the new cloth and old garment will be ruined.

#### Mark 2:22

##### new wine

"grape juice." This refers to wine that has not fermented yet. If grapes are unknown in your area, use the general term for fruit juice.

##### old wineskins

This refers to wineskins that have been used many times.

##### wineskins

These were bags made out of animal skins. They could also be called "wine bags" or "skin bags."

##### the wine will burst the skins

New wine expands as it ferments. If it is put in new wineskins, the wineskins will stretch. But old wineskins are brittle and cannot stretch. If new wine is poured into old wineskins, the wineskins will tear open and be ruined.

##### fresh wineskins

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags." This refers to wineskins that have never been used.

#### Mark 2:23

##### began picking heads of grain

The disciples were picking heads of grain to eat the kernels, or seeds, in them while they were walking. They were not harvesting the grain to take it home. Plucking grain in others' fields and eating it was not considered stealing. The question was whether it was lawful to do this on the Sabbath.

##### heads of grain

The "heads" are the topmost part of the wheat plant, which is a kind of tall grass. The heads hold the mature grain or seeds of the plant.

##### as they made their way

"as they walked along"

#### Mark 2:24

##### Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful on the Sabbath day?

"Look! They are breaking the Jewish law concerning the Sabbath."

#### Mark 2:25

##### He said to them

"Jesus said to the Pharisees"

##### Have you never read in the scriptures what David did

"You have read what David did" or "Remember what you read about what David did"

#### Mark 2:26

##### how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him?

"how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him."

##### the bread of the presence

This refers to the twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God.

#### Mark 2:27

##### The Sabbath was made for mankind

"God made the Sabbath for mankind"

##### mankind

"man" or "people" or "the needs of people." This word refers to both men and women.

##### not mankind for the Sabbath

"mankind was not made for the Sabbath" or "God did not make mankind for the Sabbath"

Chapter 3

1Again Jesus walked into the synagogue, and there was a man with a withered hand.2Some people watched him closely to see if he would heal him on the Sabbath so that they could accuse him.3Jesus said to the man with the withered hand, "Get up and stand here in the middle of everyone."4Then he said to the people, "Is it lawful to do good on the Sabbath day or to do harm; to save a life or to kill?" But they were silent.5He looked around at them with anger, and he was grieved by their hardness of heart, and he said to the man, "Stretch out your hand." He stretched it out, and his hand was restored.6The Pharisees went out and immediately began to plot with the Herodians as to how they might put him to death.

7Then Jesus, with his disciples, went to the sea, and a great crowd of people followed from Galilee and from Judea8and from Jerusalem and from Idumea and beyond the Jordan and around Tyre and Sidon. When they heard about the things he was doing, a great crowd came to him.9He told his disciples to have a small boat ready for him because of the crowd, so that they would not press against him.10For he healed many, so that everyone who had afflictions eagerly approached him in order to touch him.11Whenever the unclean spirits saw him, they fell down before him and cried out, and they said, "You are the Son of God."12He strictly ordered them not to make him known.

13He went up on the mountain, and he called for those he wanted, and they came to him.14He appointed the twelve (whom he named apostles) so that they might be with him and he might send them to proclaim the message,15and to have authority to cast out demons.16He appointed the twelve: Simon, to whom he gave the name Peter;17James son of Zebedee, and John the brother of James, to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, "Sons of Thunder";18and Andrew, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot,19and Judas Iscariot, who would betray him.

20Then he went home, and the crowd came together again, so that they could not even eat bread.21When his family heard about it, they went out to seize him, for they said, "He is out of his mind."

22The scribes who came down from Jerusalem said, "He is possessed by Beelzebul" and "By the ruler of the demons he drives out demons."

23Jesus called them to himself and said to them in parables, "How can Satan cast out Satan?24If a kingdom is divided against itself, that kingdom cannot stand.25If a house is divided against itself, that house will not be able to stand.26If Satan has risen up against himself and is divided, he is not able to stand, but has come to an end.27But no one can enter into the house of a strong man and steal his belongings without tying up the strong man first, and then he will plunder his house.28Truly I say to you, all sins of the sons of men will be forgiven, even all the blasphemies which they utter,29but whoever blasphemes against the Holy Spirit will never have forgiveness, but is guilty of an eternal sin."

30Jesus said this because they were saying, "He has an unclean spirit."

31Then his mother and his brothers came and stood outside. They sent for him, summoning him.32A crowd was sitting around him and they said to him, "Your mother and your brothers and your sisters are outside, and they are looking for you."

33He answered them, "Who are my mother and my brothers?"34He looked around at those who were sitting in a circle around him and said, "See, here are my mother and my brothers!35For whoever does the will of God, that person is my brother, and sister, and mother."

#### Mark 3:1

##### a man with a withered hand

"a man with a crippled hand"

#### Mark 3:2

##### Some people

"Some of the Pharisees."

##### so that they could accuse him

"so that they could accuse him of wrongdoing" or "so that they could accuse him of breaking the law"

#### Mark 3:3

##### in the middle of everyone

"in the middle of this crowd"

#### Mark 3:4

##### Is it lawful to do good on the Sabbath ... or to kill?

Jesus said this to challenge them. He wanted them to acknowledge that it is lawful to heal people on the Sabbath.

##### to save a life or to kill

"is it lawful to save a life or to kill"

##### to save a life

"to save someone's life" or "to save someone from dying"

##### But they were silent

"But they refused to answer him"

#### Mark 3:5

##### was grieved

"was deeply saddened"

##### by their hardness of heart

"because they were unwilling to have compassion on the man"

##### Stretch out your hand

"Reach out with your hand"

##### his hand was restored

"Jesus restored his hand" or "Jesus made his hand the way it was before"

#### Mark 3:6

##### began to plot

"began to make a plan"

##### the Herodians

This is the name of an informal political party that supported Herod Antipas.

##### how they might put him to death

"how they might kill Jesus"

#### Mark 3:7

##### the sea

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 3:8

##### Idumea

This is the region, previously known as Edom, which covered the southern half of the province of Judea.

##### the things he was doing

"the great miracles that Jesus was performing"

#### Mark 3:9

##### He told his disciples to have a small boat ... not press against him

As the large crowd was pushing forward toward Jesus, he was in danger of being crushed by them. They would not crush him intentionally. It was just that there were so many people.

#### Mark 3:10

##### For he healed many, so that everyone ... to touch him

"For, because Jesus had healed many people, everyone ... to touch him"

##### everyone who had afflictions eagerly approached him in order to touch him

"all the sick people pushed forward eagerly trying to touch him so that they might be healed"

#### Mark 3:11

##### saw him

"saw Jesus"

##### they fell down ... cried out, and they said

"they caused the people they were possessing to fall down before him and to cry out to him"

##### they fell down before him

The unclean spirits did not fall down before Jesus because they loved him or wanted to worship him. They fell down before him because they were afraid of him.

##### You are the Son of God

Jesus has power over unclean spirits because he is the "Son of God."

#### Mark 3:12

##### He strictly ordered them

"Jesus strictly ordered the unclean spirits"

#### Mark 3:16

##### Simon, to whom he gave the name Peter

The author begins to list the names of the twelve apostles. Simon is the first man listed.

#### Mark 3:17

##### to whom he gave

The phrase "to whom" refers to both James son of Zebedee and his brother John.

##### the name Boanerges, that is, Sons of Thunder

"the name Boanerges, which means men who are like thunder" or "the name Boanerges, which means Thunder Men"

#### Mark 3:18

##### Thaddaeus

This is the name of a man.

#### Mark 3:19

##### who would betray him

"who would betray Jesus" The word "who" refers to Judas Iscariot.

#### Mark 3:20

##### Then he went home

"Then Jesus went to the house where he was staying."

##### they could not even eat bread

"Jesus and his disciples could not eat at all" or "they could not eat anything because of the crowd"

#### Mark 3:21

##### they went out to seize him

Members of his family went to the house so that they could take hold of him and force him to go home with them.

##### for they said

Possible meanings for the word "they" are 1) his relatives or 2) some people in the crowd.

##### out of his mind

"crazy" or "insane"

#### Mark 3:22

##### By the ruler of the demons he drives out demons

"By the power of Beelzebul, who is the ruler of the demons, Jesus drives out demons"

#### Mark 3:23

##### Jesus called them to himself

"Jesus called the people to come to him"

##### How can Satan cast out Satan?

"Satan cannot cast out himself!" or "Satan does not go against his own evil spirits!"

#### Mark 3:24

##### If a kingdom is divided against itself it cannot stand

"If the people who live in a kingdom are divided against each other, the kingdom cannot endure or will end"

#### Mark 3:25

##### house

"family" or "household"

#### Mark 3:26

##### If Satan has risen up against himself and is divided

"If Satan and his evil spirits were fighting one another" or "If Satan and his evil spirits have risen up against each other and are divided"

##### is not able to stand

"cannot endure" or "cannot stay strong"

#### Mark 3:27

##### plunder

to steal a person's valuables and possessions

#### Mark 3:28

##### Truly I say to you

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important.

##### the sons of men

"people"

##### utter

speak

#### Mark 3:29

##### will never have forgiveness

"will never be forgiven"

##### is guilty of an eternal sin

"is guilty of a sin that will be punished eternally"

#### Mark 3:30

##### they were saying

"the people were saying"

##### has an unclean spirit

"is possessed by an unclean spirit"

#### Mark 3:31

##### They sent for Jesus, summoning him

"They sent someone inside to tell Jesus that they were outside and to have him come out to them"

#### Mark 3:32

##### are looking for you

"are asking for you"

#### Mark 3:33

##### Who are my mother and my brothers?

"I will tell you who are really my mother and brothers."

#### Mark 3:34

##### here are my mother and my brothers

Jesus's disciples belong to Jesus's spiritual family. This is more important than belonging to his physical family.

#### Mark 3:35

##### whoever does ... that person is

"those who do ... they are"

##### that person is my brother, and sister, and mother

"that person is like a brother, sister, or mother to me"

Chapter 4

1Again he began to teach beside the sea, and a large crowd gathered around him. He stepped into a boat that was on the sea, and he sat down in it. The whole crowd was on the shore beside the sea.2He taught them many things in parables, and in his teaching, this is what he said to them.3"Listen! A farmer went out to sow his seed.4As he sowed, some seed fell beside the road, and the birds came and devoured it.5Other seed fell on the rocky ground, where it did not have much soil. Immediately it sprang up, because it did not have deep soil.6But when the sun rose, the plants were scorched, and because they had no root, they dried up.7Other seed fell among the thorn plants. The thorn plants grew up and choked it, and it did not produce a crop.8Other seed fell into good soil, and it produced a crop growing up and increasing and yielding thirty, sixty, and even a hundred times."9Then he said, "Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear!"

10When Jesus was alone, those around him with the twelve asked him about the parables.11He said to them, "To you is given the mystery of the kingdom of God. But to those outside everything is in parables,12so that when they look,yes they look,but do not see,and so that when they hear,yes they hear,but do not understand,or else they would turnand God would forgive them."

13He said to them, "Do you not understand this parable? How then will you understand all the parables?14The sower sows the word.15These are the ones beside the road, where the word is sown. When they hear, Satan immediately comes and takes away the word that is sown in them.16And these are the seed sown on the rocky ground; who, when they hear the word immediately receive it with joy.17But they do not have root in themselves, but they endure for a while. Afterward when tribulation or persecution arises on account of the word, they immediately fall away.18Still others are the ones sown among the thorns. They are those who hear the word,19but the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke the word, and it is unproductive.20Those that were sown on the good soil are the ones who hear the word, accept it and bear fruit, thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much."

21Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand.22For nothing is hidden that will not be known, and nothing is secret that will not come out into the open.23If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear!"24He said to them, "Pay attention to what you hear, for the measure you use will be measured to you, and more will be added to you.25Because whoever has, to him will be given more, and whoever does not have, even what he has will be taken."

26He also said, "The kingdom of God is like a man who sows his seed on the ground.27He sleeps at night and gets up by day, and the seed sprouts and grows, though he does not know how.28The earth bears grain by itself: First the blade, then the ear, then the mature grain in the ear.29When the crop is ripe, he immediately sends in the sickle because the harvest has come."

30Again he said, "To what can we compare the kingdom of God, or what parable can we use to explain it?31It is like a mustard seed, which, when it is sown, is the smallest of all the seeds on earth.32Yet, when it is sown, it grows and becomes greater than all the garden plants, and it forms large branches, so that the birds of heaven can make their nests in its shade."

33With many parables like this he spoke the word to them, as much as they were able to understand,34and he did not speak to them without a parable. But when he was alone, he explained everything to his own disciples.

35On that day, when evening had come, he said to them, "Let us go over to the other side."36So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There were other boats going along with him.37Just then a violent windstorm arose, and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was almost full of water.38But Jesus himself was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. They woke him up, saying, "Teacher, do you not care that we are about to die?"

39He got up, rebuked the wind, and said to the sea, "Peace! Be still!" Then the wind ceased, and there was a great calm.40Then he said to them, "Why are you afraid? Do you still not have faith?"

41They were filled with great fear and said to one another, "Who then is this, because even the wind and the sea obey him?"

#### Mark 4:1

##### the sea

This is the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 4:3

##### A farmer went out to sow his seed

This means that he tossed seeds onto the ground so they could grow.

#### Mark 4:5

##### Other seed fell on the rocky ground, where it did not have much soil

"Other seed fell on shallow soil with underlying rock"

##### it sprang up, because it did not have deep soil

"The seed sprouted quickly because the soil was shallow"

#### Mark 4:6

##### the plants were scorched

"the sun scorched the young plants"

##### because they had no root, they dried up

"because the young plants had no roots, they dried up"

#### Mark 4:7

##### Other seed ... choked it ... it did not produce

"Other seed fell among thorns, which grew up and choked the plants, so that they produced no grain"

#### Mark 4:8

##### yielding thirty, sixty, and even a hundred times

"Some plants produced thirty times as much as the grain the man had planted, some produced sixty times as much grain, and some produced a hundred times as much grain"

#### Mark 4:9

##### Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear

"Whoever is willing to listen, listen" or "Whoever is willing to understand, let him understand and obey"

#### Mark 4:10

##### When Jesus was alone

This does not mean that Jesus was completely alone; rather, it means that the crowds were gone and Jesus was only with the twelve and some of his other close followers.

#### Mark 4:11

##### To you is given

"God has given you" or "I have given you"

##### to those outside

"to those outside our group" or "to those who are not among us." This refers to all the other people who were not among the twelve or Jesus's other close followers.

##### everything is in parables

"I have spoken everything in parables"

#### Mark 4:12

##### when they look ... when they hear

"when they look at what I am doing ... when they hear what I am saying"

##### they look, but do not see

"they look, but they do not understand" Or 2) here the word translated "look" refers to seeing what one is looking at and the word translated "see" refers to understanding what they are seeing.

##### they would turn and God would forgive them

"they would repent and God would forgive them"

#### Mark 4:13

##### He said to them

"Then Jesus said to his disciples"

##### Do you not understand this parable? How then will you understand all the parables?

"If you cannot understand this parable, think about how hard it will be for you to understand all the other parables."

#### Mark 4:14

##### The sower

"The farmer who sows his seed"

##### sows the word

"teaches people God's word" or "teaches God's message"

#### Mark 4:15

##### These are the ones beside the road

"These people are the seeds that fall beside the road" or "These people are like seeds that fall beside a road"

##### When they hear

"When they hear the word"

#### Mark 4:16

##### these are the seed sown on the rocky ground

"These people are the seeds that fall on the rocky ground" or "These people are like seeds that fall on the rocky ground"

#### Mark 4:17

##### they do not have root in themselves

"they are like young plants that have no roots"

##### endure

"continue in their belief"

##### tribulation or persecution arises on account of the word

"tribulation or persecution comes because they believe God's message"

##### they immediately fall away

In this parable, "fall away" means "stop believing God's message"

#### Mark 4:19

##### the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke the word

"the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke God's message in their lives like thorns that choke young plants"

##### the cares of the world

"the worries in this life" or "the concerns about this present life"

##### the deceitfulness of wealth

"the lie that wealth will make them happy" or "the lie that having many possessions will make them happy"

##### it is unproductive

The word being unproductive means that it does not have an effect on the person's life.

#### Mark 4:20

##### and bear fruit, thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much

"and produce good results, like plants that bear thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much fruit as what was sown"

#### Mark 4:21

##### Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket or under the bed?

"You certainly do not bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under a bed!"

#### Mark 4:22

##### For nothing is hidden that will not be known ... come out into the open

"For everything that is hidden will be made known, and everything that is secret will come out into to open"

#### Mark 4:23

##### If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear

"If anyone is willing to listen, listen" or "If anyone is willing to understand, let him understand and obey"

#### Mark 4:24

##### for the measure you use

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is talking about a literal measure and giving generously to others or 2) Jesus speaks of "understanding" as if it were "measuring."

##### will be measured to you, and more will be added to you.

"God will measure that amount for you, and he will add it to you"

#### Mark 4:25

##### to him will be given more ... even what he has will be taken

"to him God will give more ... from him God will take away" or "God will give more to him ... God will take away from him"

#### Mark 4:26

##### like a man who sows his seed

"like a farmer who plants his seed" or "like a farmer who scatters his seed"

#### Mark 4:27

##### He sleeps at night and gets up by day

"He sleeps each night and gets up each day" or "He sleeps each night and gets up the next day"

##### gets up by day

"is up during the day" or "is active during the day"

##### though he does not know how

"though the man does not know how the seed sprouts and grows"

#### Mark 4:28

##### the blade

the stalk or sprout

##### the ear

the head on the stalk or the part of the plant that holds the fruit

#### Mark 4:29

##### he immediately sends in the sickle

"he immediately goes into the field with a sickle to harvest the grain" or "he immediately sends people with sickles into the field to harvest the grain"

##### sickle

a curved blade or a sharp hook used to cut grain

##### because the harvest has come

"because it is time for harvesting the grain" or "because the grain is ready to be gathered"

#### Mark 4:30

##### To what can we compare the kingdom of God, or what parable can we use to explain it?

"With this parable I can explain what the kingdom of God is like."

#### Mark 4:31

##### when it is sown

"when someone sows it" or "when someone plants it"

#### Mark 4:33

##### he spoke the word to them

"he taught them the message of God"

##### as much as they were able to understand

"and if they were able to understand some, he kept telling them more"

#### Mark 4:34

##### when he was alone

This means that he was away from the crowds, but his disciples were still with him.

##### he explained everything

"he explained all his parables"

#### Mark 4:35

##### the other side

"the other side of the Sea of Galilee" or "the other side of the sea"

#### Mark 4:37

##### a violent windstorm arose

"a violent windstorm began"

##### the boat was almost full of water

"the boat was in danger of being filled with water"

#### Mark 4:38

##### the stern

The stern is the back part of the boat.

##### do you not care that we are about to die?

"you need to pay attention to what is happening; we are all about to die!"

##### we are about to die

The word "we" includes the disciples and Jesus.

#### Mark 4:39

##### Peace! Be still!

These two phrases are similar and used to emphasize what Jesus wanted the wind and the sea to do.

##### a great calm

"a great stillness over the sea" or "a great calm over the sea"

#### Mark 4:40

##### Why are you afraid? Do you still not have faith?

"You should not be afraid. You need to have more faith."

#### Mark 4:41

##### Who then is this, because even the wind and the sea obey him?

"This man is not like ordinary men; even the wind and the sea obey him!"

Chapter 5

1They came to the other side of the sea, to the region of the Gerasenes.2When Jesus was getting out of the boat, a man with an unclean spirit came up to him out of the tombs. 3The man lived in the tombs. No one could restrain him anymore, not even with a chain.4He had been bound many times with shackles and with chains. He tore the chains apart and his shackles were shattered. No one had the strength to subdue him.5Every night and day in the tombs and in the mountains, he cried out and cut himself with sharp stones.6When he saw Jesus from a distance, he ran to him and bowed down before him.7He cried out with a loud voice, "What do I have to do with you, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I beg you by God himself, do not torment me."8For he had been saying to him, "Come out of the man, you unclean spirit."

9He asked him, "What is your name?"

He answered him, "My name is Legion, for we are many."10He begged him again and again not to send them out of the region.11Now a great herd of pigs was there feeding on the hill,12and they begged him, saying, "Send us into the pigs; let us enter into them."13So he allowed them; the unclean spirits came out and entered into the pigs, and the herd rushed down the steep hill into the sea, and about two thousand pigs drowned in the sea.14Then those who were feeding the pigs ran away and reported what had happened in the city and in the countryside, and so people went out to see what had happened.15Then they came to Jesus and they saw the demon-possessed man, the one who had been possessed by Legion, sitting there, clothed and in his right mind; and they were afraid.16Those who had seen what happened to the demon-possessed man told them about it in detail, and they also told them about the pigs.17Then they started to beg him to leave their region.

18When he was getting into the boat, the demon-possessed man begged him that he might be with him.19But Jesus did not permit him, but said to him, "Go to your house and to your people and tell them what the Lord has done for you, and how he has shown you mercy."20So he went away and began to proclaim in the Decapolis the great things that Jesus had done for him, and everyone was amazed.

21Now when Jesus had crossed over again to the other side in the boat, a great crowd gathered around him, as he was beside the sea.22Then one of the leaders of the synagogue named Jairus came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.23He begged again and again, saying, "My little daughter is near death. I beg you, come and lay your hands on her that she may be made well and live."24So he went with him, and a great crowd followed him and pressed close around him.

25Now a woman was there who had a flow of blood for twelve years.26She had suffered much from many doctors and had spent everything that she had, but instead of getting better she grew worse.27When she had heard the reports about Jesus, she came up behind him in the crowd and touched his cloak.28For she said, "If I touch just his clothes, I will be healed."29When she touched him, the bleeding stopped, and she felt in her body that she was healed from her affliction.

30Jesus immediately realized in himself that power had gone out from him. He turned around in the crowd and said, "Who touched my clothes?"

31His disciples said to him, "You see this crowd pressed around you, and you say, 'Who touched me?'"

32But Jesus looked around to see who had done it.33The woman, knowing what had happened to her, feared and trembled. She came and fell down before him and told him the whole truth.34He said to her, "Daughter, your faith has made you well. Go in peace and be healed from your affliction."

35While he was speaking, some people came from the synagogue leader's house, saying, "Your daughter is dead. Why trouble the teacher any longer?"

36But when Jesus overheard the message that was spoken, he said to the leader of the synagogue, "Do not be afraid. Just believe."37He did not permit anyone to accompany him except Peter, James, and John, the brother of James.38They came to the house of the leader of the synagogue and he saw there people making a lot of noise; they were weeping and wailing loudly.39When he entered the house, he said to them, "Why are you upset and why do you weep? The child is not dead but sleeps."40They began to mock him. But he put them all outside and took the father of the child and the mother and those who were with him, and he went in where the child was.41He took the hand of the child and said to her, "Talitha, koum!" which is translated, "Little girl, I say to you, get up."42Immediately the child got up and walked (for she was twelve years of age). They were immediately astonished with overwhelming amazement.43He strictly ordered them that no one should know about this. Then he told them to give her something to eat.

#### Mark 5:1

##### They came

The word "They" refers to Jesus and his disciples.

##### the sea

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

##### Gerasenes

This name refers to the people who live in Gerasa.

#### Mark 5:2

##### with an unclean spirit

"controlled by an unclean spirit" or "that an unclean spirit possessed"

#### Mark 5:4

##### He had been bound many times

"People had bound him many times"

##### his shackles were shattered

"he shattered his shackles"

##### shackles

pieces of metal that people wrap around the arms and legs of prisoners and attach with chains to objects that do not move so the prisoners cannot move

##### No one had the strength to subdue him

"He was so strong that no one was strong enough to control him"

#### Mark 5:5

##### cut himself with sharp stones

Often when a person is possessed by a demon, the demon will cause the person to do self-destructive things, such as cutting himself.

#### Mark 5:6

##### When he saw Jesus from a distance

When the man first saw Jesus, Jesus would have been getting out of the boat.

##### bowed down

This means that he knelt down before Jesus out of reverence and respect, not out of worship.

#### Mark 5:7

##### He cried out

"The unclean spirit cried out"

##### What do I have to do with you, Jesus, Son of the Most High God?

The unclean spirit cried out "Leave me alone, Jesus, Son of the Most High God! There is no reason for you to interfere with me."

##### Jesus ... do not torment me

Jesus has the power to torment unclean spirits.

##### Son of the Most High God

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### I beg you by God himself

"I beg you before God" or "I swear by God himself and beg you"

#### Mark 5:9

##### He asked him

"And Jesus asked the unclean spirit"

##### He answered him, "My name is Legion, for we are many."

"And the spirit said to him, 'Call us an army, for many of us are inside the man.'"

#### Mark 5:10

##### He begged him not to send them

"The unclean spirit begged Jesus not to send him and the other unclean spirits"

#### Mark 5:12

##### they begged him

"the unclean spirits begged Jesus"

#### Mark 5:13

##### he allowed them

"Jesus allowed the unclean spirits to do what they asked permission to do"

##### into the sea, and about two thousand pigs drowned in the sea

You can make the words after the comma a separate sentence: "into the sea. There were about two thousand pigs, and they drowned in the sea"

#### Mark 5:14

##### reported what had happened in the city and in the countryside

"told people in the city and in the countryside what had happened"

#### Mark 5:15

##### Legion

This was the name of the many demons that had been in the man.

##### in his right mind

"of a normal mind" or "thinking clearly"

##### they were afraid

The word "they" refers to the group of people who went out to see what had happened.

#### Mark 5:19

##### But Jesus did not permit him

"But he did not allow the man to come with them"

#### Mark 5:20

##### Decapolis

This is the name of a region that means Ten Cities. It is located to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee.

##### everyone was amazed

"all the people who heard what the man said were amazed"

#### Mark 5:21

##### the other side

This refers to the other side of the Sea of Galilee

##### beside the sea

"on the seashore" or "on the shore"

#### Mark 5:22

##### Jairus

This is the name of a man.

#### Mark 5:23

##### lay your hands

"Laying on hands" refers to a prophet or teacher placing his hand on someone and imparting either healing or a blessing. In this case, Jarius is asking Jesus to heal his daughter.

##### that she may be made well and live

"and heal her and make her live"

#### Mark 5:24

##### So he went with him

"So Jesus and the disciples went with Jairus"

##### pressed close around him

This means they crowded around Jesus and pressed themselves together to be closer to Jesus.

#### Mark 5:25

##### a woman was there who had a flow of blood for twelve years

The woman did not have an open wound; rather, her monthly flow of blood would not stop. Your language may have a polite way to refer to this condition.

#### Mark 5:26

##### she grew worse

"her sickness got worse" or "her bleeding increased"

#### Mark 5:27

##### the reports about Jesus

"that Jesus healed people"

##### cloak

outer garment or coat

#### Mark 5:28

##### I will be healed

"it will heal me" or "his power will heal me"

#### Mark 5:29

##### she was healed from her affliction

"the sickness left her" or "she was no longer sick"

#### Mark 5:30

##### that power had gone out from him

"that his healing power had healed someone"

#### Mark 5:33

##### told him the whole truth

"told him the whole truth about how she had touched him"

#### Mark 5:34

##### Daughter

Jesus called the woman "Daughter." This was a kind way for a teacher to speak to a woman. Jesus showed that he cared about her.

##### your faith

"your faith in me"

#### Mark 5:35

##### While he was speaking

"While Jesus was speaking"

##### the synagogue leader

This refers to Jairus

##### Why trouble the teacher any longer?

"It is useless to bother the teacher any longer" or "There is no need to bother the teacher any longer."

##### the teacher

This refers to Jesus.

#### Mark 5:36

##### the message that was spoken

"the message that they told Jairus"

##### Just believe

"Just believe I can make you daughter live"

#### Mark 5:37

##### He did not permit anyone to accompany him except Peter ... James

"Jesus only permitted Peter ... James to accompany him"

#### Mark 5:38

##### he saw

Jesus saw

#### Mark 5:39

##### he said to them why are you upset and why do you weep?

"Jesus said to the people this is not a time to be upset and crying."

##### The child is not dead but sleeps

Jesus uses the common word for sleep, and so should the translation.

#### Mark 5:40

##### They began to mock him

The people who hear Jesus speak are laughing at him because they truly do know the difference between a dead person and a sleeping person and they think he does not.

##### put them all outside

"sent all the other people outside the house"

##### those who were with him went in where the child was

"Peter, James, and John went into the room where the child was lying"

#### Mark 5:41

##### Talitha, koum

This is an Aramaic sentence that Jesus spoke to the little girl in her language. Write these words as they sound, using your alphabet.

#### Mark 5:43

##### He strictly ordered them that no one should know about this. Then

"He ordered them strictly, 'No one should know about this!' Then" or "He ordered them strictly, 'Do not tell anyone about what I have done!' Then"

##### Then he told them to give her something to eat.

"And he told them, 'Give her something to eat.'"

Chapter 6

1He went out from there and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him.2When the Sabbath came, he taught in the synagogue. Many people heard him and they were amazed. They said, "Where did he get these teachings?" "What is this wisdom that has been given to him?" "What are these miracles that he does with his hands?"3"Is this not the carpenter, the son of Mary and the brother of James and Joses and Judas and Simon? Are his sisters not here with us?" They were offended by Jesus. [1](#footnote-target-1)

4Then Jesus said to them, "A prophet is not without honor, except in his hometown and among his own relatives and in his own household."5He could not do any mighty work, except to lay his hands on a few sick people and heal them.6He was amazed at their unbelief. Then he went around the villages teaching.

7Then he called the twelve and began to send them out two by two, and he gave them authority over the unclean spirits,8and instructed them to take nothing for their journey, except a staff—no bread, no bag, and no money in their belts—9but to wear sandals, and not to wear two tunics.10He said to them, "Whenever you enter a house, remain until you go away from there.11If any town will not receive you or listen to you, when you leave that place, shake the dust off your feet as a testimony to them."12They went out and proclaimed that people should repent.13They cast out many demons, and anointed many sick people with oil and healed them.

14King Herod heard this, for Jesus' name had become well known. Some were saying, "John the Baptist has been raised from the dead, and that is why these miraculous powers are at work in him."15Some others said, "He is Elijah." Still others said, "He is a prophet, like one of the prophets in ancient times."

16But when Herod heard this, he said, "John, whom I beheaded, has been raised."

17For Herod sent to have John arrested and he had him bound in prison on account of Herodias (his brother Philip's wife), because he had married her.18For John told Herod, "It is not lawful for you to have your brother's wife."19But Herodias held on to anger against him and wanted to kill him, but she could not,20for Herod feared John; he knew that he was a righteous and holy man, and he kept him safe. Listening to him made him greatly perplexed, yet he heard him gladly.

21Then an opportunity came when Herod had his birthday and he made a dinner for his officials and for the commanders and leaders of Galilee.22The daughter of Herodias herself came in and danced for them, and she pleased Herod and his dinner guests. The king said to the girl, "Ask me for anything you want and I will give it to you."23He swore to her saying, "Whatever you ask of me, I will give you, up to half of my kingdom."

24She went out and said to her mother, "What should I ask him for?"

She said, "The head of John the Baptist."

25She immediately hurried back to the king, and she asked, saying, "I want you to give me, right now, the head of John the Baptist on a wooden platter."26Though this deeply grieved the king, he could not refuse her request because of the oath he had made and because of his dinner guests.27So the king sent a soldier from his guard and commanded him to bring him John's head. The guard went and beheaded him in the prison.28He brought his head on a platter and gave it to the girl, and the girl gave it to her mother.29When his disciples heard of this, they came and took his body and placed it in a tomb.

30The apostles came together with Jesus and told him all that they had done and taught.31Then he said to them, "Come away by yourselves into a deserted place and rest a while." For many were coming and going, and they did not even have time to eat.32So they went away in the boat to a deserted place by themselves.33But they saw them leaving and many recognized them, and they ran there together on foot from all the towns, and they arrived there before them.34When they came ashore, he saw a great crowd and he had compassion on them because they were like sheep without a shepherd. So he began to teach them many things.

35When the hour was late, his disciples came to him and said, "This is a deserted place, and the hour is already late.36Send them away so that they may go into the nearby countryside and villages to buy something to eat for themselves."

37But he answered and said to them, "You give them something to eat."

They said to him, "Can we go and buy two hundred denarii worth of bread and give it to them to eat?"

38He said to them, "How many loaves do you have? Go and see."

When they found out, they said, "Five loaves and two fish."39He commanded all the people to sit down in groups upon the green grass.40They sat down in groups of hundreds and fifties.41He took the five loaves and the two fish, and looking up to heaven he blessed and broke the loaves and gave them to the disciples to set before the people. He also divided the two fish among them all.42They all ate until they were satisfied.43They took up broken pieces of bread, twelve baskets full, and also pieces of the fish.44There were five thousand men who ate the loaves.

45Immediately he made his disciples get into the boat and go ahead of him to the other side, to Bethsaida, while he sent the crowd away.46After taking leave of them, he went up the mountain to pray.47Evening came, and the boat was now in the middle of the sea, and he was alone on land.48He saw that they were straining against the oars, for the wind was against them. About the fourth watch of the night, he came to them, walking on the sea, and he wanted to pass by them.49But when they saw him walking on the sea, they thought he was a ghost and cried out,50because they saw him and were troubled. Immediately he spoke to them and said to them, "Be courageous! It is I! Do not be afraid!"51He got into the boat with them, and the wind ceased blowing. They were completely amazed.52For they had not understood what the loaves meant. Instead, their hearts were hardened.

53When they had crossed over, they came to land at Gennesaret and anchored the boat.54When they came out of the boat, the people recognized him immediately,55and they ran throughout the whole region and began to bring the sick on their mats to wherever they heard he was.56Wherever he entered into villages, or cities, or into the country, they would put the sick in the marketplaces. They begged him to let them touch the edge of his garment, and as many as touched him were healed.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The man called Joses here is called Joseph in Matthew 27:56. The name Joseph represents how the name was spelled in Hebrew, and the name Joses represents how his name was spelled in Greek.

#### Mark 6:1

##### his hometown

This refers to the town of Nazareth, where Jesus grew up and where his family lived. This does not mean that he owned land there.

#### Mark 6:2

##### that he does with his hands

"that he himself works"

#### Mark 6:3

##### Is this not the carpenter, the son of Mary and the brother of James and Joses and Judas and Simon? Are his sisters not here with us?

"He is just an ordinary carpenter! We know him and his family. We know Mary his mother. We know his younger brothers James, Joses, Judas and Simon. And his younger sisters also live here with us."

#### Mark 6:4

##### A prophet is not without honor, except

"A prophet is always honored, except" or "People always honor prophets, except those"

#### Mark 6:5

##### to lay his hands on a few sick people

Prophets and teachers would put their hands on people in order to heal them or bless them. In this case, Jesus was healing people.

#### Mark 6:7

##### he called the twelve

Here the word "called" means that he summoned the twelve to come to him.

#### Mark 6:8

##### to take nothing for their journey, except a staff

"to take only a staff for their journey"

##### no bread

"no food"

#### Mark 6:10

##### remain until you go away from there

"eat and sleep in that house until you leave that area"

#### Mark 6:11

##### as a testimony to them

"as a testimony that they did not welcome you" or "to show them that they did wrong when they did not welcome you"

#### Mark 6:12

##### They went out

"They went out to various towns"

##### repent

"stop sinning"

#### Mark 6:14

##### King Herod heard this

The word "this" refers to everything that Jesus and his disciples had been doing in various towns, including casting out demons and healing people.

##### Some were saying, "John the Baptist has been raised from the dead

"Some people were saying, 'He is John the Baptist, who God has raised from the dead" or "John the Baptist who God has made alive again"

#### Mark 6:15

##### Some others said, "He is Elijah."

"Some others said, 'He is Elijah, whom God promised to send back again.'"

#### Mark 6:16

##### whom I beheaded

"whom I commanded my soldier to behead"

##### has been raised

"has risen" or "has become alive again"

#### Mark 6:17

##### Herod sent to have John arrested and he had him bound in prison

"Herod sent his soldiers to arrest John and to bind him in prison"

##### on account of Herodias

"because of Herodias"

##### his brother Philip's wife

"the wife of his brother Philip." Herod's brother Philip is not the same Philip who was an evangelist in the book of Acts or the Philip who was one of Jesus's twelve disciples.

##### because he had married her

"because Herod had married her"

#### Mark 6:19

##### Herodias held on to anger against him and wanted to kill him

"Herodias continued to be angry at John and she wanted someone to kill him"

##### but she could not

"but she could not kill him" or "but she could not have him killed"

#### Mark 6:20

##### for Herod feared John; he knew that he was a righteous

"for Herod feared John because he knew that John was a righteous"

#### Mark 6:21

##### an opportunity came

"a convenient day" or "there was an opportune time."

##### he made a dinner for his officials ... of Galilee

"he had a banquet for his officials ... of Galilee" or "he invited his officials ... of Galilee to eat and celebrate with him"

#### Mark 6:22

##### Herodias herself

It was Herodias's own daughter who danced at the dinner.

#### Mark 6:23

##### Whatever you ask ... my kingdom

"I will give you whatever you ask me to give to you, even half of what I own and rule, if you ask for that"

#### Mark 6:25

##### on a wooden platter

"on a board" or "on a large wooden dish"

#### Mark 6:26

##### because of the oath he had made

"because of what he had sworn to the girl" or "because he had sworn to give the girl whatever she asked for"

##### and because of his dinner guests

"and because his dinner guests had heard his oath"

#### Mark 6:29

##### When his disciples

"When John's disciples"

#### Mark 6:31

##### a deserted place

a place where there are no people

##### many were coming and going

This means that people were continually coming to the apostles and then going away from them.

##### they did not even

The word "they" refers to the apostles.

#### Mark 6:33

##### on foot

The people are going on foot by land, which contrasts with how the disciples went by boat.

#### Mark 6:34

##### they were like sheep without a shepherd

Jesus compares the people to sheep who are confused when they do not have their shepherd to lead them.

#### Mark 6:35

##### When the hour was late

"When it was getting late" or "Late in the afternoon"

#### Mark 6:37

##### But he answered and said to them

"But Jesus answered and said to his disciples"

##### Can we go and buy two hundred denarii worth of bread and give it to them to eat?

"We could not buy enough bread to feed this crowd, even if we had two hundred denarii!"

##### two hundred denarii

"200 denarii." The singular form of the word "denarii" is "denarius." A denarius was a Roman silver coin worth one day's wages.

#### Mark 6:38

##### loaves

lumps of bread dough that have been shaped and baked

#### Mark 6:39

##### green grass

Describe the grass with the color word used in your language for healthy grass, which may or may not be the color green.

#### Mark 6:40

##### in groups of hundreds and fifties

"with about fifty people in some groups and about a hundred people in other groups"

#### Mark 6:41

##### looking up to heaven

This means that he looked up toward the sky, which is associated with the place where God lives.

##### He also divided the two fish among them all

"he divided the two fish so that everyone could have some"

#### Mark 6:43

##### They took up

Possible meaning are 1) "The disciples took up" or 2) "The people took up."

#### Mark 6:44

##### There were five thousand men who ate the loaves

"So many people ate the loaves of bread; the number of just the men was five thousand"

#### Mark 6:45

##### to the other side

"to the other side of the Sea of Galilee"

##### Bethsaida

This is a town on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 6:46

##### After taking leave of them

"After saying goodbye to them" or "After they had left." Use the common words your language uses for a time when friends leave each other and expect to see each other after a few hours or days.

#### Mark 6:48

##### fourth watch

This is the time between 3 a.m. and sunrise.

#### Mark 6:49

##### a ghost

the spirit of a dead person or some other kind of spirit

#### Mark 6:51

##### They were completely amazed

"They were completely amazed at what he had done"

#### Mark 6:52

##### their hearts were hardened

"they were too stubborn to understand"

#### Mark 6:53

##### Gennesaret

This is the name of the region to the northwest of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 6:55

##### they ran throughout the whole region

"they ran throughout the whole district in order to tell others that Jesus was there"

#### Mark 6:56

##### Wherever he entered

"Wherever Jesus entered"

##### the sick

"the sick people"

##### They begged him

Possible meanings are 1) "The sick begged him" or 2) "The people begged him."

##### the edge of his garment

"the hem of his robe" or "the edge of his clothes"

Chapter 7

1The Pharisees and some of the scribes who had come from Jerusalem gathered around him.2They saw that some of his disciples ate bread with hands that were unclean, that is, unwashed.3(For the Pharisees and all the Jews do not eat unless they wash their hands carefully, because they hold to the tradition of the elders.4When the Pharisees come from the marketplace, they do not eat unless they bathe themselves, and they hold to many other things they have received, such as the washing of cups, pots, copper vessels, and the couches upon which they eat.)5The Pharisees and the scribes asked Jesus, "Why do your disciples not walk according to the tradition of the elders, but eat their bread with unclean hands?"

6But he said to them, "Isaiah prophesied well about you hypocrites. As it is written,'This people honors me with their lips,but their heart is far from me.7In vain they worship me,teaching the commands of men as their doctrines.'8You abandon the commandment of God and hold on to the tradition of men."9He also said to them, "How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!10For Moses said, 'Honor your father and your mother,' and, 'He who speaks evil of his father or mother will surely be put to death.'11But you say, 'If a man says to his father or mother, "Whatever help you would have received from me is Corban"' (that is to say, 'a Gift'),12then you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother.13You are making the word of God void by your tradition which you have handed down. And many similar things you do."14He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand.15There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him."16[1](#footnote-target-1)17Now when Jesus left the crowd and entered the house, his disciples asked him about the parable.18Jesus said, "Are you also still without understanding? Do you not know that whatever enters into a person from outside cannot defile him,19because it cannot go into his heart, but it goes into his stomach and then passes out into the latrine?" With this statement Jesus declared all foods clean.20He said, "It is that which comes out of the person that defiles him.21For from within a person, out of the heart, proceed evil thoughts, sexual immorality, theft, murder,22adultery, coveting, wickedness, deceit, sensuality, envy, slander, pride, folly.23All these evils come from within, and they are what defile a person."

24He got up from there and went away to the region of Tyre and Sidon. There he went into a house, and he wanted no one to know where he was, yet he could not be hidden.25But immediately [2](#footnote-target-2) a woman whose little daughter had an unclean spirit heard about him and came and fell down at his feet.26Now the woman was a Greek, a Syrophoenician by descent. She begged him to cast out the demon from her daughter.27He said to her, "Let the children first be fed. For it is not proper to take the children's bread and throw it to the dogs."

28But she answered and said to him, "Yes, Lord, even the dogs under the table eat the children's crumbs."

29He said to her, "Because of what you have said, you are free to go. The demon has gone out of your daughter."30She went back to her house and found the child lying on the bed, and the demon was gone.

31Then he went out again from the region of Tyre, and went through Sidon to the Sea of Galilee up into the region of the Decapolis.32They brought to him someone who was deaf and had difficulty speaking, and they begged him to lay his hand on him.33Then taking him aside away from the crowd privately, he put his fingers into his ears, and then he spit and touched his tongue.34Then he looked up to heaven, sighed, and said to him, "Ephphatha," that is to say, "Open!"35At once his ears were opened, the bond of his tongue was released, and he began to speak plainly.

36Jesus ordered them to tell no one. But the more he ordered them, the more abundantly they proclaimed it.37They were extremely astonished, saying, "He has done all things well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak."

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have verse 16. If any man has ears to hear, let him hear . [2](#footnote-caller-2)Some ancient copies do not have the words, But immediately .

#### Mark 7:2

##### that is, unwashed

"that is, with hands that they had not washed" or "that is, they had not washed their hands"

#### Mark 7:3

##### unless they wash their hands carefully

"unless they make their hands ceremonially clean"

##### elders

Jewish elders were leaders in their communities and were also judges for the people.

#### Mark 7:4

##### they hold to many other things they have received

"they follow many other traditions" or "they do many other things that they were taught to do"

##### copper vessels

"copper kettles" or "metal containers"

##### the couches upon which they eat

"benches" or "beds." At that time, the Jews would recline when eating.

#### Mark 7:5

##### Why do your disciples not walk according to the tradition of the elders, but eat their bread with unclean hands?

"Your disciples should not disobey the traditions of our elders by eating their bread with unclean hands."

##### bread

"food"

#### Mark 7:6

##### with their lips

"by what they say"

##### but their heart is far from me

"but they do not really love me"

#### Mark 7:8

##### You abandon the commandment of God

"You refuse to obey the commandment of God"

##### hold on to

"strictly obey"

#### Mark 7:9

##### How well you reject the commandment ... keep your tradition

"You think you have done well in how you have rejected the commandment of God so you may keep your own traditions, but what you have done is not good at all"

#### Mark 7:10

##### He who speaks evil of his father or mother will surely be put to death

"The authorities must execute a person who curses his father or mother"

#### Mark 7:11

##### is Corban

"is a gift to God" or "belongs to God"

##### Whatever help you would have received from me is Corban

"I will not help you, because whatever help you would have received from me is Corban"

#### Mark 7:12

##### then you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother

"then you no longer permit him to give anything to his father or his mother" or "then you permit him to give nothing to his father or his mother"

#### Mark 7:13

##### the word of God

"God's command"

##### void

canceled or done away with

##### many similar things you do

"you are doing many other things similar to this"

#### Mark 7:14

##### He called

"Jesus called"

##### understand

"try to understand what I am about to tell you"

#### Mark 7:15

##### nothing from outside of a person

"nothing from outside a person that he can eat"

##### It is what comes out of the person

"It is what comes out of a person that he says or does"

#### Mark 7:18

##### Are you also still without understanding?

"After all I have said and done, I would expect you to understand."

#### Mark 7:19

##### because ... latrine?

"You should already understand that whatever enters into a person from outside cannot defile him, because it cannot go into his heart, but it goes into his stomach and then passes out into the latrine."

##### it cannot go into his heart

"it cannot go into his inner being" or "it cannot go into his mind"

##### all foods clean

"all foods clean, meaning that people can eat any food without God considering the eater defiled"

#### Mark 7:20

##### It is that which comes out of the person that defiles him

"What defiles a person is what comes out of him"

#### Mark 7:21

##### out of the heart, proceed evil thoughts

"out of the inner being, come evil thoughts" or "out of the mind, come evil thoughts"

#### Mark 7:22

##### sensuality

not controlling one's lustful desires

##### slander

or blasphemy

#### Mark 7:23

##### come from within

"come from within a person's heart" or "come from within a person's thoughts"

#### Mark 7:25

##### had an unclean spirit

"was possessed by an unclean spirit"

##### fell down

"knelt." This is an act of honor and submission.

#### Mark 7:26

##### Syrophoenician

This is the name of the woman's nationality. She was born in the Phoenician region in Syria.

#### Mark 7:27

##### Let the children first be fed. For it is not proper ... throw it to the dogs

"Let the children of Israel first be fed. For it is not right to take the children's bread and throw it to the Gentiles, who are like dogs"

##### Let the children first be fed

"We must first feed the children of Israel"

##### proper

morally right

##### dogs

This refers to small dogs kept as pets.

#### Mark 7:29

##### you are free to go

"you may go now" or "you may go home in peace"

##### The demon has gone out of your daughter

"I have caused the evil spirit to leave your daughter"

#### Mark 7:31

##### went out again from the region of Tyre

"left the region of Tyre"

##### up into the region

"through the region"

##### Decapolis

This is the name of a region that means Ten Cities. It is located to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 7:32

##### They brought

"And people brought"

##### who was deaf

"who was not able to hear"

##### they begged him to lay his hand on him

"they begged Jesus to put his hand on the man to heal him"

#### Mark 7:33

##### Then taking him ... privately, he

"Then Jesus took the man ... privately, and he"

##### he put his fingers into his ears

Jesus is putting his own fingers in the man's ears.

##### then he spit and touched his tongue

"then he spit on his fingers and touched the man's tongue with them"

#### Mark 7:34

##### looked up to heaven

This means that he looked up toward the sky, which is associated with the place where God lives.

##### sighed

This means that Jesus groaned or that he let out a long deep breath that could be heard.

##### said to him

"said to the man"

##### Ephphatha

This is an Aramaic word. It should be copied into your language using your alphabet.

#### Mark 7:35

##### his ears were opened

"his ears were opened and he was able to hear" or "he was able to hear"

##### the bond of his tongue was released

"Jesus released the bond of his tongue" or "Jesus set his tongue free" or "Jesus enabled the man to speak"

#### Mark 7:36

##### But the more he ordered them, the more abundantly they proclaimed it

"But though he continually ordered them not to tell anyone, they continually proclaimed it"

##### the more abundantly

"the more widely" or "the more"

#### Mark 7:37

##### the deaf hear and the mute speak

"the deaf people hear and the mute people speak" or "people who cannot hear, hear, and people who cannot speak, speak"

Chapter 8

1In those days, there was again a great crowd, and they had nothing to eat. Jesus called his disciples and said to them,2"I have compassion on the crowd because they continue to be with me already for three days and have nothing to eat.3If I send them away to their home without eating, they may faint on the way. Some of them have come a long way."

4His disciples answered him, "Where can we get enough loaves of bread in such a deserted place to satisfy these people?"

5He asked them, "How many loaves do you have?"

They said, "Seven."6He commanded the crowd to sit down on the ground. He took the seven loaves, gave thanks, and broke them. He gave them to his disciples to set before them, and they set them before the crowd.7They also had a few small fish, and after he gave thanks for them, he commanded the disciples to serve these as well.8They ate and were satisfied, and they picked up the remaining broken pieces, seven large baskets.9There were about four thousand people. Then he sent them away.10Immediately he got into the boat with his disciples, and they went into the region of Dalmanutha.

11Then the Pharisees came out and began to argue with him. They sought from him a sign from heaven, to test him.12He sighed deeply in his spirit and said, "Why does this generation seek for a sign? Truly I say to you, no sign will be given to this generation."13Then he left them, got into a boat again, and went away to the other side.

14Now the disciples had forgotten to take bread with them. They had no more than one loaf of bread in the boat.15He instructed them, saying, "Keep watch and be on guard against the yeast of the Pharisees and the yeast of Herod."

16The disciples were arguing with one another about having no bread.

17When he understood this, he asked them, "Why are you arguing about having no bread? Do you still not see or understand? Do you have hardened hearts?18You have eyes; do you not see? You have ears; do you not hear? Do you not remember?19When I broke the five loaves among the five thousand, how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you take up?"

They said to him, "Twelve."

20"When I broke the seven loaves among the four thousand, how many basketfuls of broken pieces of bread did you take up?"

They said to him, "Seven."

21He said, "Do you not yet understand?"

22They came to Bethsaida. The people there brought to him a blind man and begged Jesus to touch him.23Jesus took hold of the blind man by the hand and led him out of the village. When he had spit on his eyes and laid his hands on him, he asked him, "Do you see anything?"

24He looked up, and said, "I see men who look like walking trees."

25Then he again laid his hands upon his eyes, and the man opened his eyes, his sight was restored, and he saw all things clearly.26Jesus sent him away to his home and said, "Do not enter the village."

27Jesus went out with his disciples into the villages of Caesarea Philippi. On the way he asked his disciples, "Who do the people say that I am?"

28They answered him and said, "John the Baptist. Others say, 'Elijah,' and others, 'One of the prophets.'"

29He asked them, "But who do you say that I am?"

Peter said to him, "You are the Christ."30Jesus warned them not to tell anyone about him.

31He began to teach them that the Son of Man must suffer many things, and would be rejected by the elders and the chief priests and the scribes, and would be killed, and after three days rise up.32He spoke that message openly. Then Peter took him aside and began to rebuke him.33But Jesus turned and looked at his disciples and then he rebuked Peter and said, "Get behind me, Satan! You are not setting your mind on the things of God, but on the things of people."34Then he called the crowd and his disciples together, and he said to them, "If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.35For whoever wants to save his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake and for the gospel will save it.36What does it profit a person to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life?37What can a person give in exchange for his life?38Whoever is ashamed of me and my words in this adulterous and sinful generation, the Son of Man will be ashamed of him when he comes in the glory of his Father with the holy angels."

#### Mark 8:2

##### they continue to be with me already for three days and have nothing to eat

"this is this third day these people have been with me, and they have nothing to eat"

#### Mark 8:3

##### they may faint

Possible meanings are "they may lose consciousness temporarily" or "they may become weak."

#### Mark 8:4

##### Where can we get enough loaves of bread in such a deserted place to satisfy these people?

"This place is so deserted that there is no place here for us to get enough loaves of bread to satisfy these people!"

##### loaves of bread

Loaves of bread are lumps of dough that have been shaped and baked.

#### Mark 8:6

##### He commanded the crowd to sit down on the ground.

"Jesus commanded the crowd, 'Sit down on the ground.'"

#### Mark 8:7

##### he gave thanks for them

"Jesus gave thanks for the fish"

#### Mark 8:8

##### They ate

"The people ate"

##### they picked up

"the disciples picked up"

##### the remaining broken pieces, seven large baskets

"the remaining broken pieces of bread and fish, which filled seven large baskets"

#### Mark 8:9

##### Then he sent them away

"After they ate, Jesus sent them away"

#### Mark 8:10

##### they went into the region of Dalmanutha

"they sailed around the Sea of Galilee to the region of Dalmanutha" which is the name of a place on the northwestern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 8:11

##### a sign from heaven

"a sign from God" or 2) the word "heaven" refers to the sky. Alternate translation: "a sign from the sky"

##### to test him

"to prove that God had sent him"

#### Mark 8:12

##### in his spirit

"in himself"

##### Why does this generation seek for a sign?

"This generation should not seek a sign."

##### this generation

"you and the people of this generation"

##### no sign will be given

"I will not give a sign"

#### Mark 8:13

##### he left them, got into a boat again

"he left them, got into a boat again with his disciples"

##### to the other side

"to the other side of the Sea of Galilee"

#### Mark 8:14

##### no more than one loaf

"only one loaf"

#### Mark 8:15

##### Keep watch and be on guard

"Keep watch"

##### the yeast of the Pharisees and the yeast of Herod

Jesus is comparing the Pharisees' and Herod's teachings to yeast, but you should not explain this when you translate it because the disciples themselves did not understand it.

#### Mark 8:16

##### no bread

"very little bread"

#### Mark 8:17

##### Why are you arguing about having no bread?

"You should not be thinking that I am talking about actual bread."

##### Do you still not see or understand?

"Do you not yet understand?" or "You should perceive and understand by now the things I say and do."

##### Do you have hardened hearts?

"You are so slow to understand what I mean!" or "You are unwilling to understand what I mean!"

#### Mark 8:18

##### You have eyes; do you not see? You have ears; do you not hear? Do you not remember?

"You have eyes, but you do not understand what you see. You have ears, but you do not understand what you hear. You should remember."

#### Mark 8:19

##### how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you take up

"how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you collect after everyone finished eating"

#### Mark 8:20

##### how many basketfuls of broken pieces of bread did you take up

"how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you collect after everyone finished eating"

#### Mark 8:21

##### Do you not yet understand?

"You should understand by now the things I say and do."

#### Mark 8:22

##### Bethsaida

This is a town on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

##### to touch him

"to touch him in order to heal him"

#### Mark 8:23

##### When he had spit on his eyes ... he asked him

"When Jesus had spit on the man's eyes ... Jesus asked the man"

#### Mark 8:24

##### He looked up

"The man looked up"

##### I see men who look like walking trees

"Yes, I see people! They are walking around, but I cannot see them clearly. They look like trees"

#### Mark 8:25

##### Then he again

"Then Jesus again"

##### and the man opened his eyes, his sight was restored

"restoring the man's sight, and then the man opened his eyes"

#### Mark 8:28

##### They answered him and said

"They answered him, saying,"

##### John the Baptist

"Some people say that you are John the Baptist"

##### Others say ... others

"Other people say you are ... other people say you are"

#### Mark 8:29

##### He asked them

"Jesus asked his disciples"

#### Mark 8:30

##### Jesus warned them not to tell anyone about him.

"Jesus warned them not to tell anyone that he is the Christ." or "Jesus warned them, 'Do not tell anyone that I am the Christ.'"

#### Mark 8:31

##### Son of Man

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### would be rejected by the elders and the chief priests and the scribes, and would be killed, and after three days rise up

"that the elders and the chief priests and the scribes would reject him, and that men would kill him, and that after three days he would rise up"

#### Mark 8:32

##### He spoke that message openly

Possible meanings are 1) "He said this so that people could hear him" or 2) "He said this in a way that was easy to understand."

##### began to rebuke him

"began to rebuke him for saying these things"

#### Mark 8:33

##### Get behind me, Satan

"Get Get away from me, because you are acting like Satan"

#### Mark 8:34

##### follow me

"be my disciple" or "be one of my disciples"

##### must deny himself

"must not give in to his own desires" or "must forsake his own desires"

##### take up his cross, and follow me

"must obey me even to the point of suffering and dying"

##### follow me

"obey me"

#### Mark 8:35

##### For whoever wants

"For anyone who wants"

##### life

This refers to both physical life and spiritual life.

##### for my sake and for the gospel

"because he follows me and tells others the gospel"

#### Mark 8:36

##### What does it profit a person to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life?

"Even if a person gains the whole world, it will not benefit him if he forfeits his life."

##### to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life

"if he gains the whole world and then forfeits his life"

##### to gain the whole world

"to gain everything he ever wanted"

##### forfeit

To forfeit something is to lose it or to have another person take it away.

#### Mark 8:37

##### What can a person give in exchange for his life?

"There is nothing a person can give in exchange for his life." or "No one can give anything in exchange for his life."

##### What can a person give

"What can a person give to God"

#### Mark 8:38

##### ashamed of me and my words

"ashamed of me and my message"

##### in this adulterous and sinful generation

"in this generation of people who have committed adultery against God and are very sinful" or "in this generation of people who are unfaithful to God and are very sinful"

##### the Son of Man will be ashamed

"I, the Son of Man, will be ashamed"

##### when he comes

"when he comes back"

##### in the glory of his Father

When Jesus returns he will have the same glory as his Father.

##### with the holy angels

"accompanied by the holy angels"

Chapter 9

1He said to them, "Truly I say to you, there are some of you who are standing here who will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God come with power."

2Six days later, Jesus took Peter and James and John with him up a high mountain, alone by themselves. Then he was transfigured before them.3His garments became radiantly brilliant, extremely white, whiter than any bleacher on earth could bleach them.4Then Elijah with Moses appeared to them, and they were talking with Jesus.5Peter answered and said to Jesus, "Rabbi, it is good for us to be here, and so let us make three shelters, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah."6(For he did not know what to say, for they were terrified.)

7A cloud came and overshadowed them. Then a voice came out of the cloud, "This is my beloved Son. Listen to him."8Suddenly, when they looked around, they no longer saw anyone with them, but only Jesus.

9As they were coming down the mountain, he commanded them to tell no one what they had seen until the Son of Man had risen from the dead.10So they kept the matter to themselves, but they discussed among themselves what "rising from the dead" could mean.11They asked him, "Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?"

12He said to them, "Elijah does come first to restore all things. Why then is it written that the Son of Man must suffer many things and be despised?13But I say to you that Elijah has come, and they did whatever they wanted to him, just as it is written about him."

14When they came to the disciples, they saw a great crowd around them, and scribes were arguing with them.15As soon as they saw Jesus, the whole crowd was amazed, and as they ran up to him, they greeted him.16He asked his disciples, "What are you arguing with them about?"

17Someone in the crowd answered him, "Teacher, I brought my son to you. He has a spirit that makes him unable to speak.18It seizes him and it throws him down, and he foams at the mouth, grinds his teeth, and becomes rigid. I asked your disciples to drive it out of him, but they could not."

19He answered them, "Unbelieving generation, how long will I have to stay with you? How long will I bear with you? Bring him to me."20They brought the boy to him. When the spirit saw Jesus, it immediately threw him into a convulsion. The boy fell on the ground and foamed at the mouth.21Jesus asked his father, "For how much time has he been like this?"

The father said, "Since childhood.22It has often thrown him into the fire or into the waters and tried to destroy him. If you are able to do anything, have pity on us and help us."

23Jesus said to him, "'If you are able'? All things are possible for the one who believes."

24Immediately the father of the child cried out and said, "I believe! Help my unbelief!"

25When Jesus saw the crowd running to them, he rebuked the unclean spirit and said, "You mute and deaf spirit, I command you, come out of him, and never enter into him again."

26It cried out and convulsed the boy greatly and then came out. The boy looked like one who was dead, so that many said, "He is dead."27But Jesus took him by the hand and lifted him up, and the boy stood up.

28When Jesus came into the house, his disciples asked him privately, "Why could we not cast it out?"

29He said to them, "This kind cannot be cast out except by prayer."

30They went out from there and passed through Galilee. He did not want anyone to know where they were,31for he was teaching his disciples. He said to them, "The Son of Man will be given over into the hands of men, and they will put him to death. When he has been put to death, after three days he will rise again."32But they did not understand this statement, and they were afraid to ask him.

33Then they came to Capernaum. After he entered the house he asked them, "What were you discussing on the way?"34But they were silent. For they had been arguing with one another on the way about who was the greatest.35Sitting down, he called the twelve together and he said to them, "If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all and servant of all."36He took a little child and placed him in their midst. He took him in his arms and said to them,37"Whoever receives such a child in my name receives me; whoever receives me does not receive me but the one who sent me."

38John said to him, "Teacher, we saw someone driving out demons in your name and we stopped him, because he does not follow us."

39But Jesus said, "Do not stop him, for there is no one who will do a mighty work in my name and can soon afterwards say anything bad about me.40Whoever is not against us is for us.41Whoever gives you a cup of water to drink in my name because you belong to Christ, truly I say to you, he will not lose his reward.42Whoever causes one of these little ones who believes in me to stumble, it would be better for him to have a large millstone tied around his neck and be thrown into the sea.43If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed than to have two hands and to go into hell, into the unquenchable fire.44[1](#footnote-target-1)45If your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life lame than to have your two feet and be thrown into hell.46[2](#footnote-target-2)47If your eye causes you to stumble, tear it out. It is better for you to enter into the kingdom of God with one eye than to have two eyes and to be thrown into hell,48where their worm does not die, and the fire is not put out.49For everyone will be salted with fire.50Salt is good, but if the salt has lost its saltiness, how can you make it salty again? Have salt among yourselves, and be at peace with one another."

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have this phrase, and verse 44 is not included in the ULB, where their worm does not die, and the fire is not put out. This phrase does appear in verse 48. [2](#footnote-caller-2)The best ancient copies do not have this phrase, and verse 46 is not included in the ULB, where their worm does not die, and the fire is not put out. This phrase does appear in verse 48.

#### Mark 9:1

##### He said to them

"Jesus said to his disciples"

##### the kingdom of God come with power

"God show himself with great power as king"

#### Mark 9:2

##### he was transfigured

"his appearance had changed" or "he appeared very different"

##### before them

"in front of them"

#### Mark 9:3

##### radiantly brilliant

"shining" or "glowing."

##### whiter than any bleacher on earth could bleach them

"whiter than any person on earth could whiten them"

#### Mark 9:4

##### Elijah with Moses appeared

"two prophets who had lived long ago, Elijah and Moses, appeared"

##### they were talking

The word "they" refers to Elijah and Moses.

#### Mark 9:5

##### Peter answered and said to Jesus

"Peter said to Jesus."

##### it is good for us to be here

It is not clear whether "us" refers only to Peter, James, and John, or if it refers to everyone there, including Jesus, Elijah, and Moses. If you can translate so that both options are possible, do so.

##### shelters

simple, temporary places in which to sit or sleep

#### Mark 9:6

##### they were terrified

"they were very frightened" or "they were very afraid"

#### Mark 9:7

##### came and overshadowed

"appeared and covered"

##### Then a voice came out of the cloud

"Then someone spoke from the cloud" or "Then God spoke from the cloud"

##### beloved Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

#### Mark 9:8

##### when they looked

Here "they" refers to Peter, James, and John.

#### Mark 9:9

##### he commanded them to tell no one ... until the Son of Man had risen

This implies that he was permitting them to tell people about what they had seen after he rose from being dead.

##### risen from the dead

"risen from death"

#### Mark 9:10

##### So they kept the matter to themselves

"So they did not tell anyone about what they had seen"

#### Mark 9:11

##### They asked him

The word "they" refers to Peter, James, and John.

##### Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?

"Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come before the Messiah comes?"

#### Mark 9:12

##### Elijah does come first to restore all things

By saying this, Jesus affirms that Elijah would come first.

##### Why then is it written ... be despised?

"But I also want you to consider what is written about the Son of Man. The scriptures say that he must suffer many things and people would hate him."

#### Mark 9:13

##### they did whatever they wanted to him

"our leaders treated him very badly, just as they wanted to do"

#### Mark 9:14

##### Connecting Statement:

When Peter, James, John, and Jesus came down from the mountain, they found the scribes arguing with the other disciples.

##### When they came to the disciples

Jesus, Peter, James, and John returned to the other disciples who had not gone with them up the mountain.

##### they saw a great crowd around them

"Jesus and those three disciples saw a great crowd around the other disciples"

##### scribes were arguing with them

The scribes were arguing with the disciples who had not gone with Jesus.

#### Mark 9:15

##### was amazed

"was amazed that Jesus had come"

#### Mark 9:17

##### He has a spirit

"He has an unclean spirit" or "He is possessed by an unclean spirit"

#### Mark 9:18

##### down, and he foams at the mouth, grinds his teeth, and becomes rigid

"down, and bubbles come out of his mouth, and he grinds his teeth and becomes stiff or rigid."

##### they could not

"they could not drive it out of him"

#### Mark 9:19

##### He answered them

"Jesus responded to the crowd"

##### Unbelieving generation

Jesus calls the crowd an unbelieving generation as he begins to respond to them.

##### how long will I have to stay with you? How long will I bear with you?

"Your unbelief tires me! I wonder how long I must bear with you."

##### bear with you

"endure you" or "put up with you"

##### Bring him to me

"Bring the boy to me"

#### Mark 9:20

##### convulsion

This is the violent shaking of a person's body that can occur when that person has no control over his body.

#### Mark 9:21

##### For how much time

"How long"

##### Since childhood

"He has been like this since he was a small child"

#### Mark 9:22

##### have pity

"have compassion"

#### Mark 9:23

##### 'If you are able'?

"You should not say to me, 'If you are able.'" or "You ask me if I am able. Of course I am able."

##### All things are possible for the one who believes

"God can do anything for people who believe in n God"

#### Mark 9:24

##### Help my unbelief

"Help me when I do not believe" or "Help me have more faith"

#### Mark 9:25

##### the crowd running to them

This means that more people were running toward where Jesus was and that the crowd there was growing larger.

##### You mute and deaf spirit

"You unclean spirit, you who are causing the boy to be unable to speak and unable to hear"

#### Mark 9:26

##### It cried out

"The unclean spirit cried out"

##### convulsed the boy greatly

"shook the boy violently"

##### came out

"came out of the boy"

##### The boy looked like one who was dead

"The boy appeared dead" or "The boy looked like a dead person"

#### Mark 9:27

##### took him by the hand and lifted him up

"grasped the boy by the hand and helped him get up"

#### Mark 9:28

##### cast it out

"cast the unclean spirit out of the boy"

#### Mark 9:29

##### This kind cannot be cast out except by prayer

"This kind of unclean spirit can be cast out only by prayer"

#### Mark 9:30

##### They went out from there

"Jesus and his disciples left that region"

#### Mark 9:31

##### for he was teaching his disciples

"for he was teaching his disciples privately"

##### The Son of Man will be given over

"Someone will give the Son of Man over"

##### into the hands of men

"into the control of men" or "so that men will be able to control him"

##### When he has been put to death, after three days he

"After they have put him to death and three days have passed, he"

#### Mark 9:32

##### they were afraid to ask him

"they were afraid to ask him what it meant"

#### Mark 9:33

##### they came to

"they arrived at."

##### were you discussing

"were you discussing with one another"

#### Mark 9:34

##### they were silent

"they were silent because they were ashamed"

##### who was the greatest

"who was the greatest among them"

#### Mark 9:35

##### If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all

"If anyone wants God to consider him to be the most important person of all, he must consider himself to be the least important of all people"

#### Mark 9:36

##### He took him in his arms

This means that he hugged the child or picked him up and placed him on his lap.

#### Mark 9:37

##### such a child

"a child like this"

##### in my name

"because he loves me" or "for my sake"

##### the one who sent me

"God, who has sent me"

#### Mark 9:38

##### John said to him

"John said to Jesus"

##### driving out demons

"driving demons out of people"

##### in your name

"by the authority of your name" or "by the power of your name"

##### he does not follow us

"he is not one of us" or "he does not walk with us"

#### Mark 9:40

##### is not against us

"is not opposing us"

##### is for us

"is trying to achieve the same goals that we are"

#### Mark 9:41

##### gives you a cup of water to drink in my name because you belong to Christ

Jesus speaks about giving someone a cup of water as an example of how one person may help another.

##### not lose

"definitely receive"

#### Mark 9:42

##### millstone

a millstone is a large, round stone used for grinding grain into flour

#### Mark 9:43

##### If your hand causes you to stumble

"If you want to do something sinful with one of your hands"

##### to enter into life maimed

"to be maimed and then to enter into life" or "to be maimed before entering into life"

##### to enter into life

"to enter into eternal life" or "to die and begin to live forever"

##### maimed

"without a hand" or "missing a hand"

##### into the unquenchable fire

"where the fire cannot be put out"

#### Mark 9:45

##### If your foot causes you to stumble

"If you want to do something sinful with one of your feet"

##### to enter into life lame

"to be lame and then to enter into life" or "to be lame before entering into life"

##### to enter into life

"to enter into eternal life" or "to die and begin to live forever"

##### lame

"without a foot" or "missing a foot"

##### be thrown into hell

"for God to throw you into hell"

#### Mark 9:47

##### If your eye causes you to stumble, tear it out

"If you want to do something sinful because of what you look at, tear your eye out"

##### to enter into the kingdom of God with one eye than to have two eyes

"to enter into the kingdom of God after having lived on earth with only one eye than to have lived on earth with two eyes"

##### to be thrown into hell

"for God to throw you into hell"

#### Mark 9:48

##### where their worm does not die

"where worms that eat people there do not die"

#### Mark 9:49

##### everyone will be salted with fire

"God will salt everyone with fire" or "Just as salt purifies a sacrifice, God will purify everyone by allowing them to suffer"

#### Mark 9:50

##### its saltiness

"its salty taste"

##### how can you make it salty again?

"you cannot make it salty again."

##### Have salt among yourselves

"Do good to each other, like salt adds flavor to food"

Chapter 10

1Jesus left that place and went to the region of Judea and to the area beyond the Jordan River, and the crowds came to him again. He was teaching them again, as he was accustomed to do.2Then Pharisees came to him to test him and asked, "Is it lawful for a husband to divorce his wife?"

3He answered, "What did Moses command you?"

4They said, "Moses allowed a man to write a certificate of divorce and then to send her away."

5"It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law," Jesus said to them.6"But from the beginning of creation, 'God made them male and female.'7'For this reasona man will leave his father and motherand be united to his wife,8and the two will become one flesh.' So they are no longer two, but one flesh.9Therefore what God has joined together, let no man tear apart."

10When they were in the house, the disciples asked him again about this.11He said to them, "Whoever divorces his wife and marries another woman commits adultery against her.12If she divorces her husband and marries another man, she commits adultery."

13Then they brought their little children to him so that he might touch them, but the disciples rebuked them.14But when Jesus noticed it, he was angry and said to them, "Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them, for the kingdom of God belongs to those who are like them.15Truly I say to you, whoever will not receive the kingdom of God as a little child will definitely not enter it."16Then he took the children into his arms and blessed them as he placed his hands on them.

17When he began his journey, a man ran up to him and knelt before him and asked, "Good Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"

18Jesus said, "Why do you call me good? No one is good except God alone.19You know the commandments: 'Do not murder, do not commit adultery, do not steal, do not testify falsely, do not defraud, honor your father and mother.'"

20The man said, "Teacher, all these things I have obeyed from the time I was a youth."

21Jesus looked at him and loved him. He said to him, "One thing you lack. You must sell all that you have and give it to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven. Then come, follow me."22But because of this statement he looked very sad and he went away sorrowful, because he had many possessions.

23Jesus looked around and said to his disciples, "How difficult it is for those who are rich to enter the kingdom of God!"24The disciples were astonished at his words. But Jesus said to them again, "Children, how hard it is to enter into the kingdom of God!25It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich person to enter the kingdom of God."

26They were greatly astonished and said to each other, "Then who can be saved?"

27Jesus looked at them and said, "With people it is impossible, but not with God. For all things are possible with God."

28Peter began to speak to him: "Look, we have left everything and have followed you."

29Jesus said, "Truly I say to you, there is no one who has left house or brothers or sisters or mother or father or children or lands for my sake and for the gospel30who will not receive a hundred times as much now in this age: houses and brothers and sisters and mothers and children and lands, with persecutions, and in the world to come, eternal life.31But many who are first will be last, and the last first."

32They were on the road going up to Jerusalem, and Jesus was going ahead of them. The disciples were amazed, and those who were following behind were afraid. Then Jesus took the twelve aside again and began to tell them what would soon happen to him.33"See, we are going up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be given over to the chief priests and the scribes. They will condemn him to death and give him over to the Gentiles.34They will mock him, spit on him, whip him, and put him to death. But after three days he will rise."

35James and John, the sons of Zebedee, came up to him and said, "Teacher, we want you to do for us whatever we ask you."

36He said to them, "What do you want me to do for you?"

37They said, "Allow us to sit with you in your glory, one at your right hand and the other at your left."

38But Jesus replied to them, "You do not know what you are asking. Are you able to drink the cup which I will drink or be baptized with the baptism with which I will be baptized?"

39They said to him, "We are able."

Jesus said to them, "The cup that I will drink, you will drink, and with the baptism with which I am baptized, you also will be baptized.40But who is to sit at my right hand or at my left hand is not mine to give, but it is for those for whom it has been prepared."41When the other ten disciples heard about this, they began to be very angry with James and John.42Jesus called them to himself and said, "You know those who are considered rulers of the Gentiles dominate them, and their high officials exercise authority over them.43But it is not this way among you. Whoever wishes to become great among you must be your servant,44and whoever wishes to be first among you must be the slave of all.45For the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many."

46They came to Jericho. As he left Jericho with his disciples and a great crowd, the son of Timaeus, Bartimaeus, a blind beggar, sat by the road.47When he heard that it was Jesus the Nazarene, he began to shout and to say, "Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me!"

48Many rebuked the blind man, telling him to be quiet. But he cried out all the more, "Son of David, have mercy on me!"

49Jesus stopped and commanded him to be called. They called the blind man, saying, "Be brave! Get up! He is calling for you."50He threw aside his coat, sprang up, and came to Jesus.

51Jesus answered him and said, "What do you want me to do for you?"

The blind man said, "Rabboni, I want to receive my sight."

52Then Jesus said to him, "Go. Your faith has healed you." Immediately he could see again, and he followed him on the road.

#### Mark 10:1

##### Jesus left that place

"Jesus and his disciples left Capernaum"

##### He was teaching them again

The word "them" refers to the crowds.

##### he was accustomed to do

"was his custom" or "he usually did"

#### Mark 10:3

##### What did Moses command you

"What did Moses command your ancestors about this"

#### Mark 10:4

##### a certificate of divorce

This was a paper saying that the woman was no longer his wife.

#### Mark 10:5

##### "It was because ... this law," Jesus said to them.

"Jesus said to them, 'It was because ... this law."

##### because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law

"because your ancestors had hard hearts like yours that he wrote this law"

##### your hard hearts

"your stubbornness"

#### Mark 10:7

##### For this reason

"Because of this"

##### be united to his wife

"join with his wife"

#### Mark 10:8

##### they are no longer two, but one flesh

"the two people are like one person" or "they are no longer two, but together they are one body"

#### Mark 10:9

##### Therefore what God has joined together, let no man tear apart

"Therefore since God has joined together husband and wife, let no one tear them apart"

#### Mark 10:10

##### When they were

"When Jesus and his disciples were"

##### When they were in the house

"When Jesus and his disciples were alone in the house"

##### asked him again about this

The word "this" refers to the conversation that Jesus had just had with the Pharisees about divorce.

#### Mark 10:11

##### Whoever

"Anyone who"

##### commits adultery against her

Here "her" refers to the first woman he was married to.

#### Mark 10:12

##### she commits adultery

"she commits adultery against him" or "she commits adultery against the first man"

#### Mark 10:13

##### he might touch them

"he might touch them with his hands and bless them" or "he might lay his hands on them and bless them"

##### rebuked them

"rebuked the people"

#### Mark 10:14

##### Jesus noticed it

The word "it" refers to the disciples rebuking the people who were bringing the children to Jesus.

##### was angry

Jesus was angry with the disciples.

##### Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them

"Be sure to allow the little children to come to me"

##### for the kingdom of God belongs to those who are like them

"the kingdom of God includes people who are like them" or "because only people like them are members of the kingdom of God"

#### Mark 10:15

##### as a little child

"in the same manner as a little child would"

##### will not receive the kingdom of God

"will not accept God as their king"

##### definitely not enter it

The word "it" refers to the kingdom of God.

#### Mark 10:16

##### he took the children into his arms

"he hugged the children"

#### Mark 10:17

##### to inherit eternal life

to receive eternal life

#### Mark 10:18

##### Why do you call me good?

"You do not understand what you are saying when you call me good."

##### No one is good except God alone

"The only one who is good is God"

#### Mark 10:19

##### do not testify falsely

"do not lie about someone in court"

#### Mark 10:21

##### One thing you lack

"One thing you need to do" or "There is one thing you have not yet done"

##### give it to the poor

"give the money to the poor people"

##### treasure

wealth, valuable things

#### Mark 10:22

##### had many possessions

"owned many things"

#### Mark 10:23

##### How difficult it is

"It is very difficult"

#### Mark 10:24

##### Jesus said to them again

"Jesus said to his disciples again"

##### Children, how

"My friends, how"

#### Mark 10:25

##### It is easier for a camel

"It would be easier for a camel"

##### the eye of a needle

"the hole of a needle"

#### Mark 10:26

##### They were

"The disciples were"

##### Then who can be saved?

"If that is so, then no one will be saved!"

#### Mark 10:27

##### With people it is impossible, but not with God

"It is impossible for people to save themselves, but God can save them"

#### Mark 10:28

##### Look, we have left everything and have followed you

"We have left everything behind and have followed you"

#### Mark 10:29

##### Truly I say to you, there is no one

"Truly I say to you, everyone"

##### or lands

"or plots of ground" or "or the land that he owns"

##### for my sake

"for my cause" or "for me"

##### for the gospel

"to proclaim the gospel"

#### Mark 10:30

##### this age

"the world as you know it" or "this present age"

##### with persecutions, and in the world to come, eternal life

"and even though people persecute them, in the future, they will receive eternal life"

#### Mark 10:31

##### are first will be last, and the last first

"are important will be unimportant, and those who are unimportant will be important"

##### the last first

"those who are last will be first"

#### Mark 10:33

##### the Son of Man will be given over to

"someone will hand the Son of Man to" or "they will hand the Son of Man over to"

##### They will condemn

The word "They" refers to the chief priests and the scribes.

##### give him over to the Gentiles

"betray him to the Gentiles" or "put him under the control of the Gentiles"

#### Mark 10:34

##### They will mock

"People will mock"

##### put him to death

"kill him"

##### he will rise

"he will rise from being dead"

#### Mark 10:35

##### we ... us

These words refer only to James and John.

#### Mark 10:37

##### in your glory

"when you rule in your kingdom"

#### Mark 10:38

##### You do not know

"You do not understand"

##### drink the cup which I will drink

"drink the cup of suffering that I will drink" or "drink from the cup of suffering that I will drink from"

##### be baptized with the baptism with which I will be baptized

"endure the baptism of suffering which I will suffer"

#### Mark 10:39

##### you will drink

"you will drink as well"

#### Mark 10:40

##### But who is to sit at my right hand or at my left hand is not mine to give

"But I am not the one who allows people to sit at my right hand or my left hand"

##### but it is for those for whom it has been prepared

The word "it" refers to the places to his right hand and to his left hand.

##### it has been prepared

"God has prepared it" or "God has prepared them"

#### Mark 10:41

##### heard about this

The word "this" refers to James and John asking to sit at Jesus's right and left hands.

#### Mark 10:42

##### Jesus called them

"Jesus called his disciples"

##### those who are considered rulers of the Gentiles

"those whom the Gentiles think of as their rulers"

##### dominate

have control or power over

##### exercise authority

"flaunt their authority." This means that they show or use their authority in an overbearing way.

#### Mark 10:43

##### But it is not this way among you

"But do not be like them"

##### become great

"be highly respected"

#### Mark 10:44

##### to be first

"to be the most important"

#### Mark 10:45

##### For the Son of Man did not come to be served but to serve

"For the Son of Man did not come to be served by people, but to serve people"

##### for many

"for many people"

#### Mark 10:46

##### the son of Timaeus, Bartimaeus, a blind beggar

"a blind beggar named Bartimaeus, the son of Timaeus." Bartimaeus is the name of a man. Timaeus is his father's name.

#### Mark 10:47

##### When he heard that it was Jesus

"When he heard people saying that it was Jesus"

##### Son of David

"You who are the Messiah descended from King David"

#### Mark 10:48

##### Many rebuked

"Many people rebuked"

##### all the more

"even more"

#### Mark 10:49

##### commanded him to be called.

"commanded others to call him." or "commanded them, 'Call him to come over here.'"

##### They called

The word "They" refers to the crowd.

##### Be brave

"Have courage" or "Do not be afraid"

##### He is calling for you

"Jesus is calling for you"

#### Mark 10:50

##### sprang up

"jumped up"

#### Mark 10:51

##### answered him

"answered the blind man"

##### to receive my sight

"to be able to see"

#### Mark 10:52

##### Your faith has healed you

"I am healing you because you have believed in me"

##### he followed him

"he followed Jesus"

Chapter 11

1Now as they came to Jerusalem, they were close to Bethphage and Bethany at the Mount of Olives, and Jesus sent out two of his disciples2and said to them, "Go into the village opposite us. As soon as you enter it, you will find a colt that has never been ridden. Untie it and bring it to me.3If anyone says to you, 'Why are you doing this?' you should say, 'The Lord has need of it and will immediately send it back here.'"

4They went away and found a colt tied at a door outside in the street, and they untied it.5Some people were standing there and said to them, "What are you doing, untying that colt?"6They spoke to them as Jesus told them, and the people let them go their way.7They brought the colt to Jesus and threw their cloaks on it, and he sat on it.8Many people spread their garments on the road, and others spread branches they had cut from the fields.9Those who went before him and those who followed shouted,"Hosanna! Blessed is the onewho comes in the name of the Lord.10Blessed is the coming kingdom of our father David!Hosanna in the highest!"

11Then Jesus entered into Jerusalem and went into the temple and looked around at everything. Now the time being late, he went out to Bethany with the twelve.12The next day while they were going out from Bethany, he was hungry.13Seeing from far away a fig tree that had leaves, he went to see if he could find any fruit on it, and when he came to it, he found nothing but leaves, for it was not the season for figs.14He said to it, "No one will ever eat fruit from you again." And his disciples heard it.

15They came to Jerusalem, and he entered the temple and began to cast out the sellers and the buyers in the temple. He turned over the tables of the money changers and the seats of those who sold pigeons.16He did not allow anyone to carry anything through the temple that could be sold.17He taught them and said, "Is it not written,'My house will be calleda house of prayer for all the nations'? But you have made it a den of robbers."

18The chief priests and the scribes heard what he had said, and they looked for a way to destroy him. For they feared him because the entire crowd was amazed at his teaching.19When evening came, they left the city.

20As they walked by in the morning, they saw the fig tree withered away to its roots.21Peter remembered and said, "Rabbi, look! The fig tree you cursed has withered away."

22Jesus answered them, "Have faith in God.23Truly I say to you that if anyone says to this mountain, 'Get up and cast yourself into the sea,' and if he does not doubt in his heart but believes that what he said will happen, that is what God will do.24Therefore I say to you: Everything you pray and ask for, believe that you have received it, and it will be yours.25When you stand and pray, you must forgive whatever you have against anyone, so that your Father who is in heaven will also forgive you your trespasses."26[1](#footnote-target-1)

27They came to Jerusalem again. As Jesus was walking in the temple, the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders came to him.28They said to him, "By what authority do you do these things, and who gave you the authority to do them?"

29Jesus said to them, "I will ask you one question. Tell me and I will tell you by what authority I do these things.30The baptism of John—was it from heaven or from men? Answer me."31They discussed between themselves and argued and said, "If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say, 'Why then did you not believe him?'32But if we say, 'From men,' ... ." They were afraid of the people, for everyone was convinced that John was a prophet.33Then they answered Jesus and said, "We do not know."

Then Jesus said to them, "Neither will I tell you by what authority I do these things."

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies of Mark do not have this sentence: But if you do not forgive, neither will your Father who is in heaven forgive your trespasses .

#### Mark 11:1

##### Bethphage

This is the name of a village.

#### Mark 11:2

##### opposite us

"ahead of us"

##### a colt

This refers to a young donkey that is large enough to carry a man.

#### Mark 11:3

##### Why are you doing this

"Why are you untying and taking the colt"

##### will immediately send it back here

"will immediately send it back when he no longer needs it"

#### Mark 11:6

##### let them go their way

"let them take the donkey with them"

#### Mark 11:7

##### They brought the colt to Jesus

The word "They" refers to the two disciples.

##### cloaks

"coats" or "robes"

#### Mark 11:8

##### Many people spread their garments on the road

"Many people spread their garments on the road to honor him"

#### Mark 11:9

##### Hosanna

"Praise God"

##### Blessed is the one

"Blessed are you, the one"

##### in the name of the Lord

"with the authority of the Lord"

##### Blessed is

"May God bless"

#### Mark 11:10

##### Blessed is the coming kingdom of our father David

"Blessed be the coming of your kingdom" or "May God bless you as you rule your coming kingdom"

##### of our father David

"of the greatest descendant of our father David" or "that David's greatest descendant will rule"

##### Hosanna in the highest

Possible meanings are 1) "Praise God who is in heaven" or 2) "Let those who are in heaven shout 'Hosanna'."

##### the highest

"the highest heaven" or "heaven"

#### Mark 11:11

##### the time being late

"because it was late in the day"

##### he went out to Bethany with the twelve

"he and his twelve disciples left Jerusalem and went to Bethany"

#### Mark 11:12

##### he was hungry

"Jesus was hungry"

#### Mark 11:13

##### he found nothing but leaves

"he found only leaves and no figs on the tree"

##### the season

"the time of year"

#### Mark 11:14

##### He said to it

"He said to the tree"

##### his disciples heard it

The word "it" refers to what Jesus said.

#### Mark 11:15

##### They came

"Jesus and his disciples came"

##### the sellers and the buyers

"the people who were buying and selling"

#### Mark 11:17

##### Is it not written, 'My house will be called ... the nations'?

"It is written in the scriptures that God said, 'I want my house to be called a house where people from all nations may pray.'"

##### But you have made it a den of robbers

"But you are like robbers who have made my house into a cave where robbers hide"

#### Mark 11:18

##### to destroy him

"to kill him"

#### Mark 11:20

##### walked by

"were walking along the road"

##### they saw the fig tree withered away to its roots

"they saw that the fig tree had withered away down to its roots and died"

#### Mark 11:21

##### Peter remembered

"Peter remembered what Jesus had said to the fig tree"

#### Mark 11:23

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth."

##### if he does not doubt in his heart but believes

"if he truly believes in his heart" or "if he does not doubt but believes"

##### God will do

"God will make happen"

#### Mark 11:24

##### Therefore I say to you

"So I tell you"

##### it will be yours

"God will give it to you"

#### Mark 11:25

##### When you stand and pray

"When you pray"

##### whatever you have against anyone

"whatever grudge you have against anyone."

#### Mark 11:27

##### They came to

"Jesus and his disciples came to"

#### Mark 11:28

##### They said to him

The word "They" refers to the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders.

##### By what authority do you do these things, and who gave you the authority to do them?

"Who gave you authority to do these things?" 2) They are two separate questions, the first asking about the nature of the authority and the second about who gave it to him.

##### you do these things

"things like those you did here yesterday"

#### Mark 11:30

##### The baptism of John

"The baptism that John performed"

##### was it from heaven or from men

"was it authorized by heaven or by men"

##### from heaven

"from God"

##### from men

"from people"

#### Mark 11:31

##### From heaven

"From God"

##### not believe him

The word "him" refers to John the Baptist.

#### Mark 11:32

##### But if we say, 'From men,'

"But if we say, 'The baptism of John was from men,'" or "But if we say, 'From men,' that would not be good." or "But we do not want to say that it was from men."

##### From men

"It came from a person"

##### They were afraid of the people

"They did not want to say that John's baptism was from men because they were afraid of the people"

#### Mark 11:33

##### We do not know

"We do not know where the baptism of John came from"

Chapter 12

1Then Jesus began to teach them in parables. He said, "A man planted a vineyard, put a hedge around it, and dug a pit for a winepress. He built a watchtower and then leased the vineyard to vine growers. Then he went away on a journey.2At the right time, he sent a servant to the vine growers to receive from them some of the fruit of the vineyard.3But they took him, beat him, and sent him away empty-handed.4Again he sent to them another servant, and they wounded him in the head and treated him shamefully.5He sent yet another, and this one they killed. They treated many others in the same way, beating some and killing others.6He had still one more person to send, a beloved son. He was the last one he sent to them. He said, 'They will respect my son.'

7"But the vine growers said to one another, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him, and the inheritance will be ours.'8They seized him, killed him, and threw him out of the vineyard.9Therefore, what will the owner of the vineyard do? He will come and destroy the vine growers and will give the vineyard to others.10Have you not read this scripture?'The stone which the builders rejectedhas been made the cornerstone.11This was from the Lord,and it is marvelous in our eyes.'"

12After this the Jewish leaders sought a way to arrest Jesus because they understood that he spoke the parable against them. But they were afraid of the crowd. So they left him and went away.

13Then they sent some of the Pharisees and the Herodians to him to trap him with words.14When they came, they said to him, "Teacher, what people think is not a concern to you because you do not show partiality to anyone. You truly teach the way of God. Is it lawful to pay taxes to Caesar or not? Should we pay or not?"

15But Jesus knew their hypocrisy and said to them, "Why do you test me? Bring me a denarius so I can look at it."16They brought one to Jesus. He said to them, "Whose likeness and inscription is this?"

They said, "Caesar's."

17Jesus said, "Give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's." They marveled at him.

18Then Sadducees, who say there is no resurrection, came to him. They asked him, saying,19"Teacher, Moses wrote for us, 'If a man's brother dies and leaves a wife behind him, but had no child, the man should take the brother's wife, and raise up children for his brother.'20There were seven brothers; the first took a wife and then died, having no children.21Then the second took her and died, leaving no child, and the third in the same way.22The seven left no children. Last of all, the woman also died.23In the resurrection, when they rise again, whose wife will she be? For all seven brothers had her as their wife."

24Jesus said, "Is this not the reason you are mistaken, because you do not know the scriptures nor the power of God?25For when they rise from the dead, they neither marry nor are given in marriage, but they are like angels in heaven.26But concerning the dead that are raised, have you not read in the book of Moses, in the account about the bush, how God spoke to him and said, 'I am the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob'?27He is not the God of the dead, but of the living. You are quite mistaken."

28One of the scribes came and heard their discussion; he saw that Jesus answered them well. He asked him, "What commandment is the most important of all?"

29Jesus answered, "The most important is, 'Hear, Israel, the Lord our God, the Lord is one.30You must love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your mind, and with all your strength.'31The second commandment is this, 'You must love your neighbor as yourself.' There is no other greater commandment than these."

32The scribe said, "Good, Teacher! You have truly said that God is one, and that there is no other besides him.33To love him with all the heart and with all the understanding and with all the strength, and to love one's neighbor as oneself is even more than all burnt offerings and sacrifices."

34When Jesus saw that he had given a wise answer, he said to him, "You are not far from the kingdom of God." After that, no one dared to ask Jesus any more questions.

35While Jesus was teaching in the temple courts, he said, "How is it that the scribes say the Christ is the son of David?36David himself, in the Holy Spirit, said,'The Lord said to my Lord,"Sit at my right handuntil I put your enemies under your feet."'37David himself calls him 'Lord,' so how can the Christ be David's son?" The large crowd gladly listened to him.

38In his teaching Jesus said, "Beware of the scribes, who like to walk in long robes and be greeted in the marketplaces,39and have the most important seats in the synagogues and the places of honor at feasts.40They also devour widows' houses, and they pray long prayers for people to see. These men will receive greater condemnation."

41Then Jesus sat down across from an offering box in the temple area; he was watching people as they dropped their money into the box. Many rich people put in large amounts of money.42Then a poor widow came and put in two mites, worth about a penny.43He called his disciples and said to them, "Truly I say to you, this poor widow has put in more than all of them who contributed to the offering box.44For all of them gave out of their abundance. But this widow, out of her poverty, put in all of the money which she had to live on."

#### Mark 12:1

##### Then Jesus began to teach them

The word "them" here refers to the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders to whom Jesus had been talking in the previous chapter.

##### put a hedge around it

He put a barrier around the vineyard. It could have been a row of shrubs, a fence, or a stone wall.

##### dug a pit for a winepress

"carved a pit into rock for the winepress" or "he made a vat to collect the juice from the winepress"

##### leased the vineyard to vine growers

The owner still owned the vineyard, but he allowed the vine growers to take care of it. When the grapes became ripe, they were to give some of them to the owner and keep the rest.

#### Mark 12:2

##### At the right time

"When the time came to harvest the grapes"

#### Mark 12:3

##### But they took him

"But the vine growers took the servant"

##### empty-handed

"without any grapes"

#### Mark 12:4

##### he sent to them

"the owner of the vineyard sent to the vine growers"

##### they wounded him in the head

"they beat that one on the head, and they hurt him"

#### Mark 12:5

##### yet another ... many others

"yet another servant ... many other servants"

##### They treated many others in the same way

"They also mistreated many other servants whom he sent"

#### Mark 12:6

##### a beloved son

"his beloved son"

#### Mark 12:7

##### the heir

"the owner's heir"

##### the inheritance

"this vineyard"

#### Mark 12:8

##### They seized him

"The vine growers seized the son"

#### Mark 12:9

##### Therefore, what will the owner of the vineyard do?

"So I will tell you what the owner of the vineyard will do."

##### destroy

kill

##### will give the vineyard to others

"he will give the vineyard to vine growers to care for it"

#### Mark 12:10

##### Have you not read this scripture?

"Surely you have read this scripture." or "You should remember this scripture."

##### has been made the cornerstone

"the Lord made into the cornerstone"

#### Mark 12:11

##### This was from the Lord

"The Lord has done this"

##### it is marvelous in our eyes

"we have seen it and think that it is marvelous" or "we think that it is wonderful"

#### Mark 12:12

##### sought a way

"wanted to find a way"

##### they were afraid of the crowd

"but they feared what the crowd would do if they arrested him"

##### against them

"to accuse them"

#### Mark 12:13

##### Then they sent

"Then the Jewish leaders sent"

##### the Herodians

This was the name of an informal political party that supported Herod Antipas.

##### to trap him

"to trick him"

#### Mark 12:14

##### what people think is not a concern to you

"you are not concerned about what people think of you" or "you do not try to win people's favor"

##### you do not show partiality to anyone

"you do not judge people by how they look" or "you judge people by what is in their hearts"

#### Mark 12:15

##### Jesus knew their hypocrisy

"Jesus knew that they did not really want to know what God wanted them to do"

##### Why do you test me?

"I know you are trying to make me say something wrong so you can accuse me."

##### denarius

This coin was worth a day's wages.

#### Mark 12:16

##### likeness and inscription

"picture and name"

##### They said, "Caesar's

"They said, 'They are Caesar's likeness and inscription"

#### Mark 12:17

##### Give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's

"Give to the Roman government the things that belong to the Roman government"

##### and to God

"and give to God"

##### They marveled at him

"They marveled at him and at what he had said"

#### Mark 12:18

##### who say there is no resurrection

"who say there is no resurrection from the dead"

#### Mark 12:19

##### wrote for us

"wrote for us Jews."

##### the man should take the brother's wife

"the man should marry his brother's wife"

##### raise up children for his brother

"have a son who will be considered to be the dead brother's son"

#### Mark 12:20

##### There were seven brothers

"Suppose there were seven brothers"

##### the first

the first brother

##### the first took a wife

"the first brother married a woman."

#### Mark 12:21

##### the second took her

"the second married her."

##### the third in the same way

"the third brother married her as his other bothers had done, and he also died leaving no children"

#### Mark 12:22

##### The seven

"The seven brothers"

##### The seven left no children

"Eventually all seven brothers married that woman one by one, but none of them had any children with her, and one by one they died"

#### Mark 12:23

##### In the resurrection, when they rise again, whose wife will she be?

"Now tell us whose wife she will be in the resurrection, when they all rise again."

#### Mark 12:24

##### you do not know the scriptures

This means that they do not understand what is written in the Old Testament scriptures.

##### the power of God

"how powerful God is"

#### Mark 12:25

##### For when they rise

Here the word "they" refers to the brothers and the woman from the example.

##### rise

Waking and getting up from sleep is a metaphor for becoming alive after having been dead.

##### nor are given in marriage

"and no one gives them in marriage"

##### heaven

This refers to the place where God lives.

#### Mark 12:26

##### the book of Moses

"the book that Moses wrote"

##### the account about the bush

"the passage about the burning bush" or "the words about the fiery bush"

##### the bush

This refers to a shrub, a woody plant that is smaller than a tree.

##### how God spoke to him

"about when God spoke to Moses"

##### I am the God of Abraham ... Isaac ... Jacob

This means that Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob worship God. These men have died physically, but they are still alive spiritually and still worship God.

#### Mark 12:27

##### not the God of the dead, but of the living

"not the God of dead people, but the God of living people who are alive physically and spiritually"

##### You are quite mistaken

"When you say that dead people do not rise again, you are completely mistaken"

#### Mark 12:28

##### He asked him

"The scribe asked Jesus"

#### Mark 12:29

##### The most important is

"The most important commandment is"

#### Mark 12:31

##### love your neighbor as yourself

"love your neighbor as much as you love yourself"

##### than these

Here the word "these" refers to the two commandments that Jesus had just told the people.

#### Mark 12:32

##### Good, Teacher

"Good answer, Teacher" or "Well said, Teacher"

##### God is one

"there is only one God"

##### that there is no other

"that there is no other God"

#### Mark 12:33

##### with all the heart ... all the understanding ... all the strength

These three phrases are used together to mean "completely" or "earnestly."

##### to love one's neighbor as oneself

"to love your neighbor as much as you love yourself"

##### is even more than

"is even more important than" or "is even more pleasing to God than"

#### Mark 12:34

##### You are not far from the kingdom of God

"You are close to submitting to God as king"

##### no one dared

"everyone was afraid"

#### Mark 12:35

##### While Jesus was teaching in the temple courts, he said

"Later, while Jesus was teaching in the temple area, he said to the people"

##### How is it that the scribes say the Christ is the son of David?

"Consider why the scribes say the Christ is the son of David."

##### the son of David

"a descendant of David"

#### Mark 12:36

##### David himself

"It was David who"

##### in the Holy Spirit

"inspired by the Holy Spirit"

##### said, 'The Lord said to my Lord

"said about the Christ, 'The Lord God said to my Lord"

##### Sit at my right hand

"Sit in the place of honor beside me"

##### until I put your enemies under your feet

"until I completely defeat your enemies"

#### Mark 12:37

##### calls him 'Lord,'

Here the word "him" refers to the Christ.

##### so how can the Christ be David's son?

"so consider how the Christ can be a descendant of David"

#### Mark 12:38

##### be greeted in the marketplaces

"to have people greet them respectfully in the marketplaces"

#### Mark 12:39

##### the most important seats ... the places of honor

"to sit in the most important seats ... to have people seat them in the places of honor"

#### Mark 12:40

##### They also devour widows' houses

"They also cheat widows in order to steal their houses from them"

##### widows' houses

"everything from helpless people"

##### These men will receive greater condemnation

"God will certainly punish them with greater condemnation" or "God will certainly punish them severely"

##### will receive greater condemnation

"will receive greater condemnation than other people"

#### Mark 12:41

##### an offering box

This box, which everyone could use, held temple offerings.

#### Mark 12:42

##### two mites

"two small copper coins." These were the least valuable coins available.

##### worth about a penny

Translate "penny" with the name of the smallest coin in your language if you have one that is worth very little.

#### Mark 12:43

##### He called

"Jesus called"

##### all of them who contributed to

"all the other people who put money into"

#### Mark 12:44

##### abundance

much wealth, many valuable things

##### her poverty

"lack" or "the little she had"

##### to live on

"to survive on"

Chapter 13

1As Jesus was walking away from the temple, one of his disciples said to him, "Teacher, look at the wonderful stones and wonderful buildings!"

2Jesus said to him, "Do you see these great buildings? Not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down."

3As he sat on the Mount of Olives opposite the temple, Peter, James, John, and Andrew asked him privately,4"Tell us, when will these things happen? What will be the sign when all these things are about to happen?"

5Jesus began to say to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray.6Many will come in my name and say, 'I am he,' and they will lead many astray.7When you hear of wars and rumors of wars, do not be frightened; these things must happen, but the end is not yet.8For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. There will be earthquakes in many places, and famines. These are the beginnings of birth pains.

9"Be on your guard. They will give you over to councils, and you will be beaten in synagogues. You will stand before both governors and kings for my sake, as a testimony to them.10But the gospel must first be proclaimed to all the nations.11When they arrest you and hand you over, do not worry about what you should say. For in that hour, what you should say will be given to you; it will not be you who speak, but the Holy Spirit.12Brother will deliver up brother to death, and a father his child. Children will rise up against their parents and cause them to be put to death.13You will be hated by everyone because of my name. But whoever endures to the end, that person will be saved.

14"When you see the abomination of desolation standing where it should not be standing" (let the reader understand), "let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains,15let him who is on the housetop not go down into the house or take anything out of it,16and let him who is in the field not return to take his cloak.17But woe to those who are pregnant and to those who are nursing infants in those days!18Pray that it might not occur in the winter.19For those will be days of great tribulation, such as has not been from the beginning of creation, which God created, until now, no, nor ever will be again.20Unless the Lord had shortened the days, no flesh would be saved. But for the sake of the elect, those whom he chose, he cut short the days.21Then if anyone says to you, 'Look, here is the Christ!' or 'Look, there he is!' do not believe it.22For false Christs and false prophets will appear and will give signs and wonders so as to deceive, if possible, even the elect.23Be on guard! I have told you all these things ahead of time.

24"But after the tribulation of those days,'the sun will be darkened,the moon will not give its light,25the stars will fall from the sky,and the powers that are in the heavenswill be shaken.'26Then they will see the Son of Man coming in the clouds with great power and glory.27Then he will send his angels and he will gather together his elect from the four winds, from the ends of the earth to the ends of the sky.

28"Learn a lesson from the fig tree. As soon as the branch becomes tender and puts out its leaves, you know that summer is near.29So also, when you see these things happening, recognize that he is near, close to the gates.30Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all of these things occur.31Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will never pass away.32But concerning that day or that hour, no one knows, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but the Father.

33"Be alert! Watch, because you do not know what time it is. [1](#footnote-target-1)34It is like a man who goes on a journey—he leaves his house and puts his servants in charge of the house, each one with his work, and he commands the doorkeeper to stay alert.35Therefore stay alert because you do not know when the master of the house will come home; it could be in the evening, at midnight, when the rooster crows, or in the morning.36If he comes suddenly, do not let him find you sleeping.37What I say to you I say to everyone: Watch!"

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient copies of the Greek text read: Be alert! Watch and pray .

#### Mark 13:1

##### the wonderful stones and wonderful buildings

"the wonderful buildings and the wonderful stones that they are made of"

#### Mark 13:2

##### Do you see these great buildings? Not one stone

"Look at these great buildings! Not one stone" or "You see these great buildings now, but not one stone"

##### Not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down

"Not one stone will remain on top of another, for enemy soldiers will come and destroy these buildings"

#### Mark 13:3

##### As he sat on the Mount of Olives opposite the temple, Peter

"After arriving at the Mount of Olives, which is opposite the temple, Jesus sat down. Then Peter"

##### privately

when they were alone

#### Mark 13:4

##### these things happen ... are about to happen

"these things happen to the buildings of the temple ... are about to happen to the temple buildings"

#### Mark 13:5

##### to them

"to his disciples"

##### leads you astray

"deceives you"

#### Mark 13:6

##### lead many astray

"deceive many people"

##### in my name

"claiming my authority" or 2) Alternate translation: "claiming that God sent them."

##### I am he

"I am the Christ"

#### Mark 13:7

##### hear of wars and rumors of wars

Possible meanings are 1) "hear the sounds of wars close by and news of wars far away" or 2) "hear of wars that have started and reports about wars that are about to start"

##### but the end is not yet

"but it is not yet the end of the world" or "but the end of the world will not happen until later" or "but the end of the world will be later"

#### Mark 13:8

##### kingdom against kingdom

"kingdom will rise against kingdom" or "the people of one kingdom will fight against the people of another kingdom"

##### These are the beginnings of birth pains

"These events will be like the first pains a woman suffers when she is about to bear a child"

#### Mark 13:9

##### Be on your guard

"Be ready for what people will do to you"

##### will give you over to councils

"take you and put you under the control of councils"

##### you will be beaten

"people will beat you"

##### You will stand before

"You will be put on trial before" or "You will be brought to trial and judged by"

##### for my sake

"because of me" or "on account of me"

##### as a testimony to them

"and testify to them about me" or "and you will tell them about me"

#### Mark 13:10

##### But the gospel must first be proclaimed to all the nations

"But the gospel must first be proclaimed to all the nations before the end will come"

#### Mark 13:11

##### hand you over

"give you over to the authorities"

##### but the Holy Spirit

"but the Holy Spirit, who will speak through you"

#### Mark 13:12

##### Brother will deliver up brother to death

"One brother will put another brother under the control of people who will kill him" or "Brothers will put their brothers under the control of people who will kill them."

##### Brother ... brother

This refers to both brothers and sisters.

##### a father his child

"fathers will deliver up their children to death" or "fathers will betray their children, handing them over to be killed"

##### Children will rise up against their parents

"Children will oppose their parents"

##### cause them to be put to death

"cause the authorities to sentence the parents to die" or "the authorities will kill the parents"

#### Mark 13:13

##### You will be hated by everyone

"Everyone will hate you"

##### because of my name

"because of me" or "because you believe in me"

##### whoever endures to the end, that person will be saved

"whoever stays faithful to God to the end, God will save that person" or "God will save whoever stays faithful to God to the end"

##### to the end

Possible meanings are 1) "to the end of his life" or 2) "to the end of that time of trouble"

#### Mark 13:14

##### the abomination of desolation

"the shameful thing that defiles the things of God"

##### standing where it should not be standing

"standing in the temple, where it should not be standing"

##### let the reader understand

"may everyone who reads this understand what it means"

#### Mark 13:16

##### not return

"not return to his house"

#### Mark 13:17

##### those who are nursing infants

women who give babies breast milk

#### Mark 13:18

##### the winter

"the cold season" or "the cold, rainy season."

#### Mark 13:19

##### such as has not been from the beginning

There has never been a tribulation as terrible as this one will be.

##### no, nor ever will be again

"and greater than there will ever be again" or "and after that tribulation, there will never again be a tribulation like it"

#### Mark 13:20

##### Unless the Lord had shortened the days

"If the Lord had not decided that he would shorten those days"

##### had shortened the days

"had reduced the days of suffering" or "had shortened the time of suffering"

##### no flesh would be saved

"no one would be saved" or "everyone would die"

##### for the sake of the elect

"in order to help the the elect, those whom he chose"

#### Mark 13:22

##### false Christs

"people who claim they are Christ"

##### so as to deceive, if possible, even the elect

"in order to deceive people, and even deceive the elect, if that is possible"

#### Mark 13:23

##### Be on guard

"Be watchful" or "Be alert"

##### I have told you all these things ahead of time

"I have told you all these things ahead of time to warn you"

#### Mark 13:24

##### the sun will be darkened

"the sun will become dark"

##### the moon will not give its light

"the moon will not shine" or "the moon will be dark"

#### Mark 13:25

##### the stars will fall from the sky

"the stars will fall from their places in the sky"

##### the powers that are in the heavens will be shaken

"the powers in the heavens will shake" or "God will shake the powers that are in the sky"

##### the powers that are in the heavens

These words could refer to 1) the sun, moon, and stars or 2) powerful spiritual beings

#### Mark 13:27

##### he will gather

"they will gather" or "his angels will gather"

##### the four winds

"the north, south, east, and west" or "all parts of the earth"

##### from the ends of the earth to the ends of the sky

"from every place on earth"

#### Mark 13:28

##### the branch becomes tender and puts out its leaves

"its branches become tender and their leaves begin to sprout"

##### tender

"green and soft"

##### summer

the warm part of the year or the growing season

#### Mark 13:29

##### these things

"these things I have just described"

##### he is near

"the Son of Man is near"

##### close to the gates

"and is almost here"

#### Mark 13:30

##### will not pass away

"will not die" or "will not end"

##### until all of these things

The phrase "these things" refers to the days of tribulation.

#### Mark 13:31

##### Heaven and earth

"The sky, the earth, and everything in them"

##### will pass away

"will cease to exist."

##### my words will never pass away

"my words will never lose their power"

#### Mark 13:32

##### that day or that hour

"that day or that hour that the Son of Man will return" or "the day or the hour that I will return"

##### no one knows, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but the Father

"no one knows—neither the angels in heaven nor the Son know—but the Father" or "neither the angels in heaven nor the Son know; no one knows but the Father"

##### the angels in heaven

Here "heaven" refers to the place where God lives.

##### but the Father

"but only the Father knows"

#### Mark 13:33

##### what time it is

"when all these events will happen"

#### Mark 13:34

##### each one with his work

"telling each one what work he should do"

#### Mark 13:35

##### it could be in the evening

"he could return in the evening"

##### rooster crows

The rooster is a bird that "crows" very early in the morning by making a loud call.

#### Mark 13:36

##### find you sleeping

"find you not ready for his return"

Chapter 14

1It was now two days before the Passover and the Festival of Unleavened Bread. The chief priests and the scribes were seeking ways to stealthily arrest Jesus and then kill him.2For they were saying, "Not during the festival, so that a riot does not arise among the people."

3While Jesus was in Bethany in the house of Simon the leper, as he was reclining at the table, a woman came to him having an alabaster jar of very expensive perfume, which was pure nard. She broke the jar and poured the nard on his head.4But there were some who were angry. They spoke among themselves and said, "What is the reason for the waste of this perfume?5This perfume could have been sold for more than three hundred denarii, and given to the poor." Then they scolded her.

6But Jesus said, "Leave her alone. Why are you troubling her? She has done a beautiful thing for me.7You always have the poor with you, and whenever you desire you can do good to them, but you will not always have me.8She has done what she could. She has anointed my body for burial.9Truly I say to you, wherever the gospel is preached in the whole world, what this woman has done will be spoken of, in memory of her."

10Then Judas Iscariot, one of the twelve, went away to the chief priests so that he might give him over to them.11When the chief priests heard it, they were glad and promised to give him money. He began looking for an opportunity to give him over to them.

12On the first day of unleavened bread, when they sacrificed the Passover lamb, his disciples said to him, "Where do you want us to go to prepare, so you may eat the Passover meal?"

13He sent two of his disciples and said to them, "Go into the city, and a man bearing a pitcher of water will meet you. Follow him.14Where he enters a house, follow him in and say to the owner of that house, 'The Teacher says, "Where is my guest room where I will eat the Passover with my disciples?"'15He will show you a large furnished upper room that is ready. Make the preparations for us there."16The disciples left and went to the city. They found everything as he had said to them, and they prepared the Passover meal.

17When it was evening, he came with the twelve.18As they were lying down at the table and eating, Jesus said, "Truly I say to you, one of you eating with me will betray me."

19They were all very sorrowful, and one by one they said to him, "Surely not I?"

20Jesus answered and said to them, "It is one of the twelve, the one now dipping bread with me in the bowl.21For the Son of Man will go as it is written about him. But woe to that man through whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It would have been better for him if he had not been born."

22As they were eating, Jesus took bread, blessed it, and broke it. He gave it to them and said, "Take this. This is my body."23He took a cup, gave thanks, and gave it to them, and they all drank from it.24He said to them, "This is my blood of the covenant, the blood that is poured out for many.25Truly I say to you, I will not drink again of this fruit of the vine until that day when I drink it new in the kingdom of God."

26When they had sung a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives.27Jesus said to them, "All of you will fall away, for it is written,'I will strike the shepherdand the sheep will be scattered.'28But after I am raised up, I will go ahead of you into Galilee."

29Peter said to him, "Even if all fall away, I will not."

30Jesus said to him, "Truly I say to you, today—yes, this very night—before the rooster crows twice you will deny me three times."

31But Peter said emphatically, "If I must die with you, I will not deny you." They all made the same promise.

32They came to the place called Gethsemane, and Jesus said to his disciples, "Sit here while I pray."33He took Peter, James, and John with him and began to be distressed and deeply troubled.34He said to them, "My soul is deeply grieved, even to the point of death. Remain here and watch."35Going a little farther, Jesus fell to the ground and prayed that if it were possible the hour might pass from him.36He said, "Abba, Father, all things are possible with you. Remove this cup from me. But not my will, but yours."37He came back and found them sleeping, and he said to Peter, "Simon, are you asleep? Could you not watch for one hour?38Watch and pray that you do not enter into temptation. The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak."39Again he went away and prayed, and he used the same words.40When he came back again, he found them sleeping, for their eyes were heavy. They did not know what to say to him.41He came the third time and said to them, "Are you still sleeping and taking your rest? Enough! The hour has come. Look! The Son of Man is being betrayed into the hands of sinners.42Get up; let us go. Look, the one who is betraying me is near."

43While he was still speaking, Judas, one of the twelve, arrived, and a large crowd was with him with swords and clubs, from the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders.44Now his betrayer had given them a sign, saying, "The one I kiss is the man. Seize him and lead him away under guard."45When Judas arrived, immediately he came up to Jesus and said, "Rabbi," and he kissed him.46Then they laid hands on him and seized him.47But one of them who stood by drew his sword and struck the servant of the high priest and cut off his ear.

48Jesus said to them, "Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs, to arrest me?49When I was daily with you and I was teaching in the temple, you did not arrest me. But this was done that the scriptures might be fulfilled."50All those with Jesus left him and ran away.

51A young man, wearing only a linen garment that was wrapped around him, was following Jesus. When the men seized him,52he left the linen garment and ran away naked.

53They led Jesus to the high priest. There were gathered with him all the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes.54Now Peter followed him from a distance, as far as the courtyard of the high priest. He sat among the officers, warming himself near the fire.55Now the chief priests and the entire Jewish council were seeking testimony against Jesus so they might put him to death. But they did not find any.56For many brought false testimony against him, but even their testimony did not agree.57Some stood up and brought false testimony against him; they said,58"We heard him say, 'I will destroy this temple made with hands, and in three days I will build another made without hands.'"59Yet even their testimony did not agree.

60The high priest stood up among them and asked Jesus, "Have you no answer? What is it these men testify against you?"61But he was silent and answered nothing. Again the high priest questioned him and said, "Are you the Christ, the Son of the Blessed One?"

62Jesus said, "I am;and you will see the Son of Manwhen he sits at the right hand of powerand comes with the clouds of heaven."

63The high priest tore his garments and said, "Do we still need witnesses?64You have heard the blasphemy. What is your decision?" They all condemned him as one who deserved death.

65Some began to spit on him and to cover his face and strike him with their fists and say to him, "Prophesy!" The officers took him and beat him.

66While Peter was below in the courtyard, one of the servant girls of the high priest came to him.67She saw Peter warming himself, and she looked closely at him and said, "You were also with the Nazarene, Jesus."

68But he denied it, saying, "I neither know nor understand what you are talking about." Then he went out into the gateway. And the rooster crowed. [1](#footnote-target-1)

69But the servant girl saw him and began to say again to those who stood there, "This man is one of them!"

70But he denied it again. After a little while, those who stood there were saying to Peter, "Surely you are one of them, for you also are a Galilean."

71But he began to put himself under curses and to swear, "I do not know this man you are talking about."

72The rooster immediately crowed a second time. Then Peter remembered the words that Jesus had said to him: "Before the rooster crows twice, you will deny me three times," and he broke down and wept.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient copies do not have, And the rooster crowed .

#### Mark 14:1

##### stealthily

without people noticing

#### Mark 14:2

##### For they were saying

The word "they" refers to the chief priests and the scribes.

##### Not during the festival

"We must not do it during the festival"

#### Mark 14:3

##### he was reclining at the table

In Jesus's culture, when people gathered to eat, they reclined on their sides, propping themselves up on pillows beside a low table.

##### alabaster jar

"beautiful white stone jar"

##### of very expensive perfume, which was pure nard

"that contained expensive, fragrant perfume called nard."

##### on his head

"on Jesus's head"

#### Mark 14:4

##### What is the reason for the waste of this perfume?

"It is terrible that she wasted that perfume!"

#### Mark 14:5

##### This perfume could have been sold

"We could have sold this perfume" or "She could have sold this perfume"

##### three hundred denarii

A denarius is a roman silver coin and it is worth one day's wage.

##### given to the poor

"the money given to poor people"

#### Mark 14:9

##### wherever the gospel is preached

"wherever my followers preach the gospel"

#### Mark 14:10

##### so that he might give him over to them

"in order to arrange with them that he would give Jesus over to them"

##### give him over

"bring him to them so they could capture him" or "put him in their power" or "betray him"

#### Mark 14:11

##### When the chief priests heard it

"When the chief priests heard what he was willing to do for them"

##### give him over to them

"put them in their power" or "betray him to them"

#### Mark 14:12

##### when they sacrificed the Passover lamb

"when it was customary to sacrifice the Passover lamb"

##### eat the Passover

"eat the Passover meal"

#### Mark 14:13

##### bearing a pitcher of water

"carrying a large jar full of water"

#### Mark 14:14

##### The Teacher says, "Where is my guest room ... with my disciples?"

"Our Teacher would like to know where the guest room is where he may eat the Passover with his disciples."

##### guest room

a room for visitors

#### Mark 14:15

##### Make the preparations for us there

"Prepare the meal for us there"

#### Mark 14:16

##### The disciples left

"The two disciples left"

##### as he had said

"as Jesus had said"

#### Mark 14:17

##### he came with the twelve

"he came with the twelve to the house"

#### Mark 14:19

##### one by one

This means that "one at a time" each disciple asked him.

##### Surely not I?

"Surely I am not the one who will betray you!"

#### Mark 14:20

##### dipping bread with me in the bowl

In Jesus's culture, people would often eat bread, dipping it in a shared bowl of sauce or of oil mixed with herbs.

#### Mark 14:21

##### For the Son of Man will go as it is written about him

"For the Son of Man will die in the way that is written in the scriptures"

##### through whom the Son of Man is betrayed

"who betrays the Son of Man"

#### Mark 14:22

##### broke it

"broke it into pieces"

##### Take this. This is my body

"Take this bread. It is my body." Though most understand this to mean that the bread is a symbol of Jesus's body and that it is not actual flesh, it is best to translate this statement literally.

#### Mark 14:23

##### He took a cup

"He took the cup of wine"

#### Mark 14:24

##### This is my blood of the covenant, the blood that is poured out for many

"This is my blood that confirms the covenant, the blood that is poured out so that many may receive the forgiveness of sins"

##### This is my blood

"This wine is my blood." Though most understand this to mean that the wine is a symbol of Jesus's blood and that it is not actual blood, it is best to translate this statement literally.

#### Mark 14:25

##### fruit of the vine

"wine." This is a descriptive way to refer to wine.

##### new

Possible meanings are 1) "again" or 2) "in a new way"

#### Mark 14:26

##### hymn

A hymn is a type of song. It was traditional for them to sing an Old Testament psalm.

#### Mark 14:27

##### will fall away

"will leave me"

##### I will strike

"kill." Here "I" refers to God.

#### Mark 14:28

##### I am raised up

"God raises me from the dead" or "God makes me alive again"

##### I will go ahead of you

"I will go before you"

#### Mark 14:29

##### all fall away

"everyone else falls away" or "everyone else leaves you"

#### Mark 14:30

##### rooster crows

The rooster is a male bird that calls out loudly very early in the morning. When he makes that sound he "crows."

##### twice

two times

##### you will deny me

"you will say that you do not know me"

#### Mark 14:31

##### said emphatically

"said insistently" or "said strongly"

##### If I must die

"Even if I must die"

#### Mark 14:33

##### distressed and deeply troubled

"overwhelmed with sorrow and extremely troubled"

#### Mark 14:34

##### My soul is

"I am"

##### even to the point of death

Jesus feels so much distress and sorrow that he feels like he is about to die, though he knows he will not die until after the sun rises.

#### Mark 14:35

##### if it were possible

"if God would allow it"

##### the hour might pass

"that he would not have to go through this time of suffering"

#### Mark 14:36

##### Abba

a term used by Jewish children to address their father. Since it is followed by "Father," it is best to transliterate this word.

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

##### Remove this cup from me

Jesus speaks of the suffering that he must endure as if it were a cup.

##### But not my will, but yours

"But do not do what I want, do what you want"

#### Mark 14:37

##### found them sleeping

The word "them" refers to Peter, James, and John.

##### Simon, are you asleep? Could you not watch for one hour?

"Simon, you are asleep when I told you to stay awake. You could not even stay awake for one hour."

#### Mark 14:38

##### that you do not enter into temptation

"that you are not tempted"

##### The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak

"You are willing in your spirit, but you are too weak to do what you want to do" or "You want to do what I say, but you are weak"

##### The spirit ... the flesh

These refer to two different aspects of Peter. "The spirit" is his inmost desires. "The flesh" is his human ability and strength.

#### Mark 14:40

##### for their eyes were heavy

"for they were so sleepy they were having a hard time keeping their eyes open"

#### Mark 14:41

##### He came the third time

"Then he went and prayed again. He returned the third time"

##### Are you still sleeping and taking your rest?

"You are still sleeping and resting!"

##### The hour has come

The time of Jesus's suffering and betrayal is about to begin.

##### The Son of Man is being betrayed

"I, the Son of Man, am being betrayed"

#### Mark 14:44

##### his betrayer

This refers to Judas.

##### The one I kiss is the man

"The man I kiss is the one you want"

#### Mark 14:45

##### he kissed him

"Judas kissed him"

#### Mark 14:46

##### laid hands on him and seized him

"grabbed Jesus and seized him" or "seized him"

#### Mark 14:48

##### Jesus said to them

"Jesus said to the crowd"

##### Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs, to arrest me?

"It is ridiculous that you come here to seize me with swords and clubs, as if I were a robber!"

#### Mark 14:50

##### All those with Jesus

This refers to the disciples.

#### Mark 14:51

##### linen

cloth made from the fibers of a flax plant

##### When the men seized him

"When the men seized that man"

#### Mark 14:52

##### he left the linen garment

Because the man was trying to run away, the others would have grabbed at his clothing, trying to stop him.

#### Mark 14:53

##### There were gathered with him all the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes

"All of the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes had gathered there together"

#### Mark 14:54

##### as far as the courtyard of the high priest

"and he went as far as the courtyard of the high priest"

##### He sat among the officers

"He sat in the courtyard among the officers"

##### the officers

These were probably the servants of the "the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes"

#### Mark 14:55

##### they might put him to death

"they might have Jesus executed" or "they might have someone execute Jesus"

##### But they did not find any

"But they did not find any testimony with which to convict him"

#### Mark 14:56

##### brought false testimony against him

"accused him by speaking false testimony against him"

##### their testimony did not agree

"they contradicted each other"

#### Mark 14:57

##### brought false testimony against him

"accused him by speaking false testimony against him"

#### Mark 14:58

##### We heard him say

"We heard Jesus say." The word "we" refers to the people who brought false testimony against Jesus and does not include the people to whom they are speaking.

##### made with hands ... made without hands

"made by men ... without man's help" or "built by men ... without man's help"

##### in three days

"within three days." This means that the temple would be built within a three-day period.

##### will build another

"will build another temple"

#### Mark 14:60

##### stood up among them

"stood up among the chief priests, scribes, and elders"

##### Have you no answer? What is it these men testify against you?

"Are you not going to reply? What do you say in response to the testimony these men are speaking against you?"

#### Mark 14:61

##### the Son of the Blessed One

"the Son of God"

#### Mark 14:62

##### I am

This likely has a double meaning: 1) to respond to the high priest's question and 2) to call himself "I Am," which is what God called himself in the Old Testament.

##### he sits at the right hand of power

"he sits in the place of honor beside the all-powerful God"

##### comes with the clouds of heaven

"when he comes down through the clouds in the sky"

#### Mark 14:63

##### tore his garments

"tore his garments in outrage"

##### Do we still need witnesses?

"We certainly do not need any more people who will testify against this man!"

#### Mark 14:64

##### You have heard the blasphemy

"You have heard the blasphemy he has spoken"

##### They all

all the people in the room

#### Mark 14:65

##### to cover his face

"to cover his face with a blindfold"

##### Prophesy

"Prophesy who hit you"

##### officers

men who guarded the governor's house

#### Mark 14:66

##### below in the courtyard

"outside in the courtyard"

##### one of the servant girls of the high priest

"one of the servant girls who worked for the high priest"

#### Mark 14:68

##### denied

This means to claim that something is not true. In this case, Peter was saying that what the servant girl said about him was not true.

##### neither know nor understand what you are talking about

"I really do not understand what you are talking about"

#### Mark 14:69

##### one of them

"one of Jesus's disciples" or "one of those who have been with that man they arrested"

#### Mark 14:71

##### to put himself under curses

"to say for God to curse him"

#### Mark 14:72

##### he broke down

"he was overwhelmed with grief" or "he lost control of his emotions"

Chapter 15

1Early in the morning, the chief priests, with the elders and scribes and the entire Jewish council, consulted together. Then they bound Jesus and led him away. They handed him over to Pilate.2Pilate asked him, "Are you the King of the Jews?"

He answered him, "You say so."3The chief priests were accusing him of many things.

4Pilate again asked him, "Do you give no answer? See how many things they are accusing you of!"5But Jesus no longer answered Pilate, and that amazed him.

6Now at the time of the festival, Pilate usually released to them one prisoner, a prisoner they requested.7There was a man called Barabbas in prison with the rebels who had committed murder during the rebellion.8The crowd came to Pilate and began to ask him to do for them as he had done in the past.9Pilate answered them and said, "Do you want me to release to you the King of the Jews?"10For he knew that it was because of envy that the chief priests had handed Jesus over to him.11But the chief priests stirred up the crowd to cry out that Barabbas should be released instead.12Pilate answered them again and said, "What then should I do with the King of the Jews?"

13They shouted again, "Crucify him!"

14Pilate said to them, "What evil has he done?"

But they shouted more and more, "Crucify him."15Pilate wanted to satisfy the crowd, so he released Barabbas to them. He scourged Jesus and then handed him over to be crucified.

16The soldiers led him inside the courtyard (which is the government headquarters), and they called together the whole company of soldiers.17They put a purple robe on Jesus, and they twisted together a crown of thorns and put it on him.18They began to salute him and say, "Hail, King of the Jews!"19They were striking his head with a reed staff and spitting on him. They went to their knees and they bowed down before him.20When they had mocked him, they took off of him the purple robe and put his own garments on him, and then led him out to crucify him.21A certain man, Simon of Cyrene, was coming in from the country (he was the father of Alexander and Rufus), and they forced him to carry his cross.

22The soldiers brought Jesus to the place called Golgotha (which is translated "Place of a Skull").23They offered him wine mixed with myrrh, but he did not drink it.24They crucified him and divided up his garments by casting lots to determine what piece each soldier would take.25It was the third hour when they crucified him.26On a sign they wrote the charge against him, "The king of the Jews."27With him they crucified two robbers, one on the right of him and one on his left.28[1](#footnote-target-1)29Those who passed by insulted him, shaking their heads and saying, "Aha! You who would destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days,30save yourself and come down from the cross!"

31In the same way the chief priests were mocking him with each other, along with the scribes, and said, "He saved others, but he cannot save himself.32Let the Christ, the King of Israel, come down now from the cross, that we may see and believe." Those who were crucified with him also insulted him.

33At the sixth hour, darkness came over the whole land until the ninth hour.34At the ninth hour Jesus cried out with a loud voice, "Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?" which is interpreted, "My God, my God, why have you abandoned me?"35Some of those standing by heard his words and said, "Look, he is calling for Elijah."

36Someone ran, put sour wine on a sponge, put it on a reed staff, and gave it to him to drink. The man said, "Let us see if Elijah comes to take him down."37Then Jesus cried out with a loud voice and died.

38The curtain of the temple was split in two from the top to the bottom.39When the centurion who stood and faced Jesus saw that he had died in this way, he said, "Truly this man was the Son of God."40There were also women who looked on from a distance. Among them were Mary Magdalene, Mary (the mother of James the younger and of Joses), [2](#footnote-target-2) and Salome.41When he was in Galilee, they followed him and served him. Many other women also came up with him to Jerusalem.

42When evening had come, because it was the Day of Preparation, that is, the day before the Sabbath,43Joseph of Arimathea came there. He was a respected member of the council who was waiting for the kingdom of God. He boldly went in to Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus.44Pilate was amazed that Jesus was already dead; he called the centurion and asked him if Jesus was dead.45When Pilate learned from the centurion that Jesus was dead, he gave the body to Joseph.46Joseph had bought a linen cloth. He took him down from the cross, wrapped him in the linen cloth, and laid him in a tomb that had been cut out of a rock. Then he rolled a stone against the entrance of the tomb.47Mary Magdalene and Mary the mother of Joses saw the place where Jesus was buried.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have Mark 15:28, The scripture was fulfilled that says, 'He was counted with the lawless ones.'[2](#footnote-caller-2)The man called Joses here is called Joseph in Mark 6:3. The name Joseph represents how the name was spelled in Hebrew, and the name Joses represents how his name was spelled in Greek.

#### Mark 15:1

##### they bound Jesus and led him away

"they commanded for Jesus to be bound and then he was led away" or "they commanded the guards to bind Jesus and then they led him away"

##### They handed him over to Pilate

They had Jesus led to Pilate and transferred control of Jesus over to him.

#### Mark 15:2

##### You say so

"Yes, as you said, I am" or "Yes. It is as you said"

#### Mark 15:3

##### were accusing him of many things

"were saying that Jesus had done many bad things"

#### Mark 15:4

##### Do you give no answer

"Do you have an answer"

#### Mark 15:5

##### that amazed him

It surprised Pilate that Jesus did not reply and defend himself.

#### Mark 15:8

##### to do for them as he had done in the past

"to release a prisoner to them as he had done in the past"

#### Mark 15:10

##### it was because of envy that the chief priests

"the chief priests were envious of Jesus. This is why they" or "the chief priests were envious of Jesus's popularity among the people. This is why they"

#### Mark 15:11

##### stirred up the crowd

"roused the crowd" or "urged the crowd"

##### released instead

"released instead of Jesus"

#### Mark 15:12

##### What then should I do with the King of the Jews

"If I release Barabbas, what then should I do with the King of the Jews"

#### Mark 15:14

##### Pilate said to them

"Pilate said to the crowd"

#### Mark 15:15

##### to satisfy the crowd

"make the crowd happy by doing what they wanted him to do"

##### He scourged Jesus

Pilate did not actually scourge Jesus but rather his soldiers did.

##### scourged

"flogged." To "scourge" is to beat with an especially painful whip.

##### then handed him over to be crucified

"told his soldiers to take him away and crucify him"

#### Mark 15:16

##### the courtyard (which is the government headquarters)

"the courtyard of the soldiers' barracks" or "the courtyard of the governor's residence"

##### the whole company of soldiers

"the whole unit of soldiers" "the whole cohort of soldiers"

#### Mark 15:17

##### They put a purple robe on Jesus

Purple was a color worn by royalty. The soldiers did not believe that Jesus was king. They clothed him this way to mock him because others said that he was the King of the Jews.

##### a crown of thorns

"a crown made of thorny branches"

#### Mark 15:18

##### began to salute him

The reader should understsnd that they were mocking Jesus by pretending to salute him.

##### Hail, King of the Jews

The greeting "Hail" with a raised hand was only used to greet the Roman emperor. The soldiers did not believe that Jesus was the king of the Jews. Rather they said this to mock him.

#### Mark 15:19

##### a reed

"a stick" or "a staff"

##### went to their knees

"kneeled" or "knelt" or "got on their knees"

#### Mark 15:21

##### Simon ... Alexander ... Rufus

These are names of men.

##### Cyrene

This is the name of a place.

##### from the country

"from outside the city"

##### he was the father of Alexander and Rufus

This is background information about the man whom the soldiers forced to carry Jesus's cross.

##### they forced him to carry his cross

According to Roman law, a solider could force a man he came upon along the road to carry a load. In this case, they forced Simon to carry Jesus's cross.

#### Mark 15:22

##### Place of a Skull

"Skull Place" or "Place of the Skull." This the name of a place. It does not mean that there are lots of skulls there.

##### Skull

A skull is the head bones, or a head without any flesh on it.

#### Mark 15:23

##### wine mixed with myrrh

"wine mixed with a medicine called myrrh" or "wine mixed with a pain-relieving medicine called myrrh"

#### Mark 15:25

##### the third hour

"nine o'clock in the morning"

#### Mark 15:26

##### On a sign

"They attached to the cross above Jesus's head a sign on which"

##### the charge against him

"the crime they were accusing him of doing"

#### Mark 15:27

##### one on the right of him and one on his left

"one on a cross on the right side of him and one on a cross on the left side of him"

#### Mark 15:29

##### shaking their heads

This action showed that the people disapproved of Jesus.

##### Aha!

This is a exclamation of mockery. Use the appropriate exclamation in your language.

##### You who would destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days

"You who said you would destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days"

#### Mark 15:31

##### were mocking him with each other

"were saying mocking things about Jesus among themselves"

#### Mark 15:32

##### Let the Christ, the King of Israel, come down

"He calls himself the Christ and the King of Israel. So let him come down" or "If he is really the Christ and the King of Israel, he should come down"

##### believe

"believe in him"

##### insulted

mocked, slandered

#### Mark 15:33

##### the sixth hour

This refers to noon or 12 p.m.

##### darkness came over the whole land

"the whole land became dark"

#### Mark 15:34

##### At the ninth hour

This refers to three o'clock in the afternoon. Alternate translation: "At three o'clock in the afternoon" or "In the middle of the afternoon"

##### Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani

These are Aramaic words that should be copied as is into your language with similar sounds.

##### is interpreted

"means"

#### Mark 15:35

##### Some of those standing by heard his words and said

"When some of those standing there heard his words, they misunderstood and said"

#### Mark 15:36

##### sour wine

"vinegar"

##### reed staff

"stick." This was a staff made from a reed.

##### gave it to him

"held it up to Jesus"

#### Mark 15:38

##### The curtain of the temple was split in two

"God split the curtain of the temple in two"

#### Mark 15:39

##### the centurion

This is the centurion who supervised the soldiers who crucified Jesus.

##### who stood and faced Jesus

"who stood in front of Jesus"

##### that he had died in this way

"how Jesus had died" or "the way Jesus had died"

#### Mark 15:40

##### looked on from a distance

"watched from far away"

##### (the mother of James ... and of Joses)

"who was the mother of James ... and of Joses." This can be written without the parentheses.

##### Salome

Salome is the name of a woman.

#### Mark 15:42

##### Connecting Statement:

Joseph of Arimathea asks Pilate for the body of Jesus, which he wraps in linen and puts in a tomb.

##### evening had come

"it had become evening" or "it was evening"

#### Mark 15:43

##### Joseph of Arimathea came there. He was a respected

"Joseph of Arimathea was a respected"

##### went in to Pilate

"went to Pilate" or "went in to where Pilate was"

##### asked for the body of Jesus

"asked for permission to get the body of Jesus in order to bury it"

#### Mark 15:44

##### Pilate was amazed that Jesus was already dead; he called the centurion

"Pilate was amazed when he heard that Jesus was already dead, so he called the centurion"

#### Mark 15:45

##### he gave the body to Joseph

"he permitted Joseph to take Jesus's body"

#### Mark 15:46

##### linen

Linen is cloth made from the fibers of a flax plant.

##### He took him down ... Then he rolled a stone

"He and others took him down ... Then they rolled a stone"

##### a tomb that had been cut out of a rock

"a tomb that someone had previously cut out of solid rock"

##### a stone against

"a huge flat stone in front of"

#### Mark 15:47

##### the place where Jesus was buried

"the place where Joseph and the others buried Jesus's body"

Chapter 16

1When the Sabbath day was over, Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James, and Salome bought spices that they might come and anoint Jesus' body.2Very early on the first day of the week, they went to the tomb when the sun had come up.3They were saying to one another, "Who will roll away the stone for us from the entrance to the tomb?"4When they looked up, they saw that the stone had been rolled away, for it was very large.5They entered the tomb and saw a young man dressed in a white robe, sitting on the right side, and they were alarmed.

6He said to them, "Do not be alarmed. You seek Jesus, the Nazarene, who was crucified. He is risen! He is not here. Look at the place where they had laid him.7But go, tell his disciples and Peter, 'He is going ahead of you to Galilee. There you will see him, just as he told you.'"

8They went out and ran from the tomb; they were trembling and amazed. They said nothing to anyone because they were so afraid.9[1](#footnote-target-1) [Early on the first day of the week, after he arose, he appeared first to Mary Magdalene, from whom he had cast out seven demons.10She went and told those who were with him, while they were mourning and weeping.11They heard that he was alive and that he had been seen by her, but they did not believe.

12After these things he appeared in a different form to two of them as they were walking out into the country.13They went back and told the rest, but they did not believe them.

14Jesus later appeared to the eleven as they were reclining at the table, and he rebuked them for their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they did not believe those who saw him after he rose from the dead.15He said to them, "Go into all the world, and preach the gospel to the entire creation.16He who believes and is baptized will be saved, and he who does not believe will be condemned.17These signs will go with those who believe: In my name they will cast out demons. They will speak in new languages.18They will pick up snakes with their hands, and if they drink anything deadly, it will not hurt them. They will lay hands on the sick, and they will get well."

19After the Lord Jesus had spoken to them, he was taken up into heaven and sat down at the right hand of God.20The disciples left and preached everywhere, while the Lord worked with them and confirmed the word by the signs that went with them.] [2](#footnote-target-2)

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have Mark 16:9-20. [2](#footnote-caller-2)See the note on Mark 16:9.

#### Mark 16:1

##### When the Sabbath day was over

That is, after the Sabbath, the seventh day of the week, had ended and the first day of the week had begun.

#### Mark 16:4

##### the stone had been rolled away

"someone had rolled away the stone"

#### Mark 16:6

##### He is risen!

"He arose!" or "God raised him from the dead!" or "He raised himself from the dead!"

#### Mark 16:9

##### on the first day of the week

"on Sunday"

#### Mark 16:11

##### They heard

"They heard Mary Magdalene say"

##### he had been seen by her

"Mary Magdalene had seen him" or "she had seen him"

#### Mark 16:12

##### he appeared in a different form to two of them

The "two of them" saw Jesus, but he looked different from how he had looked previously.

##### two of them

"two of his disciples"

#### Mark 16:13

##### they did not believe them

The rest of the disciples did not believe what the two who had been walking in the country said.

#### Mark 16:14

##### the eleven

These are the eleven apostles who remain after Judas has left them.

##### they were reclining at the table

"they were eating a meal"

##### reclining

In Jesus's culture, when people gathered to eat, they lay down on their sides, propping themselves up on pillows beside a low table.

##### hardness of heart

"refusal to believe"

#### Mark 16:15

##### Go into all the world

"Go everywhere there are people"

##### the entire creation

"absolutely everybody"

#### Mark 16:16

##### He who believes and is baptized will be saved

"God will save all people who believe and allow you to baptize them"

##### he who does not believe will be condemned

"God will condemn all people who do not believe"

#### Mark 16:17

##### These signs will go with those who believe

"People watching those who believe will see these things happen and know that I am with the believers"

##### In my name they

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is giving a general list: "In my name they will do things like these: They" or 2) Jesus is giving an exact list: "These are the things they will do in my name: They."

##### In my name

"By the authority of my name" or "By the power of my name"

#### Mark 16:19

##### he was taken up into heaven and sat

"God took him up into heaven, and he sat"

##### sat down at the right hand of God

"sat in the place of honor beside God"

#### Mark 16:20

##### confirmed the word

"showed that his message, which they were speaking, was true"

##### by the signs that went with them

"by enabling them wherever they went to do miracles that showed that they truly were his disciples"

## Luke

Chapter 1

1Many have taken on the work of putting together an account of the things that have been accomplished among us,2just as they were passed down to us by those who from the first were eyewitnesses and servants of the word.3So it seemed good to me also, because I have accurately investigated everything from the beginning, to write an orderly account for you, most excellent Theophilus,4so that you might know the certainty of the things you have been taught.

5In the days of Herod, king of Judea, there was a certain priest named Zechariah from the division of Abijah; his wife Elizabeth was also a descendant of Aaron.6They were both righteous before God, walking blamelessly in all the commandments and statutes of the Lord.7But they had no child because Elizabeth was barren, and they were both advanced in their days.

8Now it came about that Zechariah was in God's presence, carrying out the priestly duties in the order of his division.9According to the customary way of choosing which priest would serve, he had been chosen by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense.10The whole crowd of people was praying outside at the hour when the incense was burned.11Now an angel of the Lord appeared to him and stood at the right side of the incense altar.12When Zechariah saw him, he was troubled, and fear fell on him.13But the angel said to him, "Do not be afraid, Zechariah, because your prayer has been heard. Your wife Elizabeth will bear you a son. You will call his name John.14You will have joy and gladness, and many will rejoice at his birth.15For he will be great in the sight of the Lord. He must never drink wine or strong drink, and he will be filled with the Holy Spirit from his mother's womb.16Many of the descendants of Israel will be turned to the Lord their God.17He will go before the face of the Lord in the spirit and power of Elijah, to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children and the disobedient to the wisdom of the righteous—to make ready for the Lord a people prepared for him."

18Zechariah said to the angel, "How can I know this? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in her days."19The angel answered and said to him, "I am Gabriel, who stands in the presence of God. I was sent to speak to you, to bring you this good news.20Behold! You will be silent, unable to speak, until the day these things take place. This is because you did not believe my words, which will be fulfilled at the right time."21Now the people were waiting for Zechariah. They were surprised that he was spending so much time in the temple.22But when he came out, he could not speak to them. They realized that he had seen a vision while he was in the temple. He kept on making signs to them and remained silent.23It came about that when the days of his service were over, he went to his house.

24After these days, his wife Elizabeth conceived and for five months she kept herself hidden. She said,25"This is what the Lord has done for me when he looked at me with favor in order to take away my shame before people."

26In the sixth month, the angel Gabriel was sent from God to a city in Galilee named Nazareth,27to a virgin engaged to a man whose name was Joseph, who was a descendant of David, and the virgin's name was Mary.28He came to her and said, "Greetings, you who are highly favored! The Lord is with you."29But she was very confused by his words, and she wondered what kind of greeting this could be.30The angel said to her, "Do not be afraid, Mary, for you have found favor with God.31See, you will conceive in your womb and bear a son. You will call his name 'Jesus.'32He will be great and will be called the Son of the Most High. The Lord God will give him the throne of his ancestor David.33He will reign over the house of Jacob forever, and there will be no end to his kingdom."

34Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not known any man?"

35The angel answered and said to her, "The Holy Spirit will overshadow you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you. So the holy one to be born will be called the Son of God.36See, your relative Elizabeth has also conceived a son in her old age. This is the sixth month for her, she who was called barren.37For nothing will be impossible for God."

38Mary said, "See, I am the female servant of the Lord. Let it be for me according to your message." Then the angel left her.

39Then Mary arose in those days and quickly went into the hill country, to a city in Judea.40She went into the house of Zechariah and greeted Elizabeth.41Now it happened that when Elizabeth heard Mary's greeting, the baby in her womb jumped, and Elizabeth was filled with the Holy Spirit.42She cried out with a loud shout and said, "Blessed are you among women, and blessed is the fruit of your womb.43Why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?44For see, when the sound of your greeting came to my ears, the baby in my womb jumped for joy.45Blessed is she who believed that there would be a fulfillment of the things that were told her from the Lord."

46Mary said,"My soul praises the Lord,47and my spirit has rejoiced in God my Savior.48For he has lookedat the low condition of his female servant.For see, from now on all generations will call me blessed.49For the Mighty One has done great things for me,and his name is holy.50His mercy lasts from generation to generationfor those who fear him.51He has displayed strength with his arm;he has scattered those who were proudabout the thoughts of their hearts.52He has thrown down princes from their thronesand he has raised up those of low condition.53He has filled the hungry with good things,but the rich he has sent away empty-handed.54He has given help to Israel his servant,so as to remember to show mercy55(as he said to our fathers)to Abraham and his descendants forever."

56Mary stayed with Elizabeth about three months and then returned to her house.

57Now the time had come for Elizabeth to deliver her baby and she gave birth to a son.58Her neighbors and her relatives heard that the Lord had shown his great mercy to her, and they rejoiced with her.

59Now it happened on the eighth day that they came to circumcise the child. They would have called him "Zechariah," after the name of his father.60But his mother answered and said, "No. He will be called John."61They said to her, "There is no one among your relatives who is called by this name."62They made signs to his father as to how he wanted him to be named.63His father asked for a writing tablet and wrote, "His name is John." They all were astonished at this.64Immediately his mouth was opened and his tongue was freed. He spoke and praised God.65Fear came on all who lived around them. All these matters were spread throughout all the hill country of Judea.66All who heard them stored them in their hearts, saying, "What then will this child become?" For the hand of the Lord was with him.

67His father Zechariah was filled with the Holy Spirit and prophesied, saying,68"Praised be the Lord, the God of Israel,for he has come to helpand he has accomplished redemption for his people.69He has raised up a horn of salvation for usin the house of his servant David70(as he spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets from long ago),71salvation from our enemiesand from the hand of all who hate us.72He will do this to show mercy to our fathersand to remember his holy covenant,73the oath that he sworeto Abraham our father.74He swore to grant to us that we,having been delivered out of the hand of our enemies,would serve him without fear75in holiness and righteousnessbefore him all our days.76Yes, and you, child,will be called a prophet of the Most High,for you will go before the face of the Lordto prepare his paths,to prepare people for his coming,77to give knowledge of salvation to his peopleby the forgiveness of their sins.78This will happen becauseof the tender mercy of our God,because of which the sunrisefrom on high will come to help us,79to shine on those who sit in darknessand in the shadow of death.He will do this to guide our feetinto the path of peace."

80Now the child grew and became strong in spirit, and he was in the wilderness until the day of his public appearance to Israel.

#### Luke 1:1

##### of the things that have been accomplished among us

"about those events that have happened among us"

#### Luke 1:2

##### were eyewitnesses and servants of the word

"saw what had happened and served God by telling people his message"

#### Luke 1:3

##### I have accurately investigated

"I have carefully researched"

##### most excellent Theophilus

This phrase should use the style that your culture uses to address people of high status. Some people may prefer to put this greeting at the beginning of verse 1 and say, "To the most honorable Theophilus" or "Dear most noble Theophilus."

#### Luke 1:5

##### In the days of Herod, king of Judea

"When King Herod ruled over Judea"

##### from the division of Abijah

"from the group of priests who were descendants of Abijah." All of the priests were descendants of Aaron.

#### Luke 1:6

##### before God

"in God's sight" or "in God's judgment"

##### all the commandments and statutes of the Lord

"all that the Lord had commanded and required"

#### Luke 1:7

##### they were both advanced in their days

"they had both lived many days" or "they had both lived many years" or "they were both very old"

#### Luke 1:8

##### Now it came about that Zechariah

This phrase shows that Luke is starting to tell what happened to Zechariah. Alternate translation: "Now it happened that Zechariah" or "One day Zechariah"

##### Zechariah was in God's presence, carrying out the priestly duties

"Zechariah was in God's temple, doing the work of a priest"

##### in the order of his division

"when it was his group's turn" or "when the time came for his group to serve"

#### Luke 1:9

##### the customary way

"the traditional method" or "the usual way"

##### he had been chosen by lot

A lot was a marked stone that was thrown or rolled on the ground in order to decide something. God guided the lot to show them which priest he wanted them to choose.

#### Luke 1:11

##### Now

This word marks the beginning of the action in the story.

##### appeared to him

"suddenly came to him" or "was suddenly there with Zechariah"

#### Luke 1:12

##### When Zechariah saw him

"When Zechariah saw the angel"

##### and fear fell on him

and felt afraid

#### Luke 1:13

##### your prayer has been heard

"God has heard your prayer"

##### will bear you a son

"will have a son for you" or "will give birth to your son"

#### Luke 1:14

##### at his birth

"because of his birth"

#### Luke 1:15

##### he will be great in the sight of the Lord

"he will be a very important person for the Lord" or "God will consider him to be very important"

##### he will be filled with the Holy Spirit

"he will be full of the Holy Spirit" or "the Holy Spirit will empower him" or "the Holy Spirit will guide him"

##### from his mother's womb

"even while he is in his mother's womb" or "even before he is born"

#### Luke 1:16

##### Many of the descendants of Israel will be turned to the Lord their God

"He will turn many of the descendants of Israel to the Lord their God" or "He will cause many of the people of Israel to repent and worship the Lord their God"

#### Luke 1:17

##### He will go before the face of the Lord

"He will go before the Lord" or "He will go ahead of the Lord"

##### in the spirit and power of Elijah

"with the same spirit and power that Elijah had." The word "spirit" either refers to God's Holy Spirit or to Elijah's attitude or way of thinking. Make sure that the word you use does not mean ghost or evil spirit.

##### to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children

"to persuade fathers to care about their children again" or "to cause fathers to restore their relationships with their children"

##### and the disobedient to the wisdom of the righteous

"and to persuade disobedient people to accept the wisdom of righteous people"

##### to make ready for the Lord a people prepared for him

"to make the people ready for the Lord" or "to prepare the people for the Lord"

#### Luke 1:18

##### How can I know this?

"How can I know for sure that what you said will happen?" or "What can you do to prove to me that this will happen?"

#### Luke 1:19

##### I am Gabriel, who stands in the presence of God

“I am Gabriel. I stand in God’s presence.” This statement shows that Gabriel was important and had authority from God.

##### I was sent to speak to you

"God sent me to speak to you"

#### Luke 1:20

##### Behold

"Pay attention"

##### you did not believe my words

"you did not believe what I said"

#### Luke 1:21

##### Now

This marks a shift in the story from what happened inside the temple to what happened outside. Alternate translation: "While that was happening" or "Meanwhile"

#### Luke 1:23

##### It came about that when

This phrase moves the story ahead to when Zechariah's time of service at the temple ended. Alternate translation: "When"

##### he went to his house

Zechariah did not live in Jerusalem, where the temple was located. He traveled to his home town.

#### Luke 1:24

##### kept herself hidden

"did not leave her house"

#### Luke 1:25

##### This is what the Lord has done for me

This refers to the fact that the Lord allowed her to become pregnant.

##### he looked at me with favor

"he showed me favor" or "he regarded me kindly" or "he was kind to me"

##### my shame

"the shame I felt." She felt ashamed because she was not able to have children.

#### Luke 1:26

##### In the sixth month

"in the sixth month of Elizabeth's pregnancy"

##### the angel Gabriel was sent from God

"God told the angel Gabriel to go"

#### Luke 1:27

##### a virgin engaged to ... Joseph

Mary's parents had agreed that Mary would marry Joseph. Joseph and Mary had not had sexual relations, but Joseph would have thought and spoken of her as his wife.

#### Luke 1:28

##### He came to her

"The angel came to Mary"

##### Greetings

This was a common greeting. It means: "Rejoice" or "Be glad."

##### you who are highly favored!

"you who have received great grace!" or "you who have received special kindness!"

#### Luke 1:29

##### she was very confused by his words, and she wondered what kind of greeting this could be

Mary understood the meaning of the individual words, but she did not understand why the angel said this amazing greeting to her.

#### Luke 1:30

##### you have found favor with God

"God has decided to give you his grace" or "God is showing you his kindness"

#### Luke 1:31

##### you will conceive in your womb

"you will become pregnant"

#### Luke 1:32

##### and will be called

"and his title will be"

##### the Son of the Most High

This refers to the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### the Most High

“The Most High” is a title for God. It means that God is greater or more powerful than everyone else. Alternate translation: “the Greatest One”

##### give him the throne of his ancestor David

The throne represents the king's authority to rule. Alternate translation: "give him authority to rule as king as his ancestor David did"

#### Luke 1:33

##### the house of Jacob

"Jacob's descendants"

##### there will be no end to his kingdom

"his kingdom will never end"

#### Luke 1:34

##### How will this happen

Mary did not understand how it could happen, but she did not doubt that it would happen.

##### I have not known any man

Mary used this polite expression to say that she had not engaged in sexual activity. Alternate translation: "I am a virgin"

#### Luke 1:35

##### The Holy Spirit will overshadow you

"The Holy Spirit will cover you like a shadow." God's Spirit would supernaturally cause Mary to become pregnant even while she still remained a virgin. Make sure this does not imply any physical or sexual union—this was a miracle.

##### So the holy one to be born will be called the Son of God

"So the baby that will be born will be holy, and people will call him the Son of God" or "So the holy one who will be born will have the title Son of God"

#### Luke 1:36

##### your relative Elizabeth has also conceived a son in her old age

"your relative Elizabeth has also become pregnant with a son, even though she is very old" or "Your relative Elizabeth, even though she is old, has also become pregnant and will bear a son." Make sure it does not sound as though both Mary and Elizabeth were old.

##### the sixth month for her

"the sixth month of her pregnancy"

#### Luke 1:37

##### nothing will be impossible for God

"everything is possible for God" or "God can do anything"

#### Luke 1:38

##### I am the female servant of the Lord

"I am the Lord's servant." This shows her humility and obedience to the Lord. She was not boasting about being the Lord's servant.

##### Let it be for me according to your message

"Let this happen to me, according to your message" or "May what you have said happen to me"

#### Luke 1:39

##### Mary arose

"Mary got ready" or "Mary started out"

##### the hill country

"the hilly area" or "the mountainous part of Israel"

#### Luke 1:41

##### the baby in her womb jumped

"the baby in Elizabeth's womb moved suddenly"

#### Luke 1:42

##### cried out with a loud shout and said

The phrases "cried out" and "loud shout" mean the same thing and are used to show how excited Elizabeth was. You may want to combine them into one phrase. Alternate translation: "exclaimed loudly"

##### Blessed are you among women

"You are blessed more than any other woman"

##### the fruit of your womb

"the baby in your womb" or "the baby you will bear"

#### Luke 1:43

##### Why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

Elizabeth was surprised and very happy. Alternate translation: "How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!"

##### the mother of my Lord

It can be made clear that Elizabeth was calling Mary "the mother of my Lord" by adding the word "you." Alternate translation: "you, the mother of my Lord"

#### Luke 1:44

##### when the sound of your greeting came to my ears

"when I heard the sound of your greeting"

##### jumped for joy

"moved suddenly with joy" or "rolled over because he was so happy"

#### Luke 1:45

##### Blessed is she who believed ... that were told her from the Lord

Elizabeth is talking about Mary to Mary. Alternate translation: "Blessed are you who believed ... that were told you from the Lord"

##### Blessed is she who believed

"She is blessed because she believed" or "The Lord has blessed her because she believed"

##### there would be a fulfillment of the things that were told her from the Lord

"the things that were told her from the Lord would actually happen" or "the Lord's message to her would come true"

#### Luke 1:46

##### My soul praises

The word "soul" refers to the spiritual part of a person. Alternate translation: "My inner being praises" or "I praise"

#### Luke 1:47

##### my spirit has rejoiced

Both "soul" and "spirit" refer to the spiritual part of a person. Alternate translation: "my heart has rejoiced" or "I rejoice"

##### God my Savior

"God, the One who saves me" or "God, who saves me"

#### Luke 1:48

##### has looked at

"has looked at with concern" or "has cared about"

##### the low condition of his female servant

"the humble condition of his servant" or "his lowly servant" or "his unimportant servant"

##### from now on

"now and in the future"

##### all generations

"people in all generations"

#### Luke 1:49

##### the Mighty One has done great things

"God, the Powerful One, has done great things"

##### his name is holy

Here "name" refers to the entire person of God. Alternate translation: "he is holy"

#### Luke 1:50

##### from generation to generation

"through all generations" or "to people in every time period"

#### Luke 1:51

##### He has displayed strength with his arm

"He has shown that he is very powerful" or "He has shown his power by what he has done"

##### those who were proud about the thoughts of their hearts

"those who were proud in their thoughts" or "those who thought proudly in their hearts"

#### Luke 1:52

##### He has thrown down princes from their thrones

"He has taken away the authority of princes" or "He has made rulers stop ruling"

##### he has raised up those of low condition

"he has has made lowly people important" or "has given honor to humble people"

#### Luke 1:53

##### He has filled the hungry with good things

"He has given good food to hungry people" or "He has given poor people good things"

#### Luke 1:54

##### Israel his servant

If readers confuse this with the man named Israel, it could be translated as "his servant, the nation of Israel" or "Israel, his servants."

##### so as to remember to show mercy

Here "remember" represents doing what he promised. Alternate translation: "by remembering to show mercy" or "by continuing to show mercy"

#### Luke 1:55

##### as he said to our fathers

"just as he promised our ancestors he would do" or "because he promised our ancestors he would be merciful"

##### his descendants

"Abraham's descendants"

#### Luke 1:57

##### to deliver her baby

"to give birth to her baby"

#### Luke 1:58

##### had shown his great mercy to her

"had been very kind to her"

#### Luke 1:59

##### on the eighth day

"on the eighth day of the baby's life"

##### they came to circumcise the child

This was often a ceremony where one person circumcised the baby and friends were there to celebrate with the family. Alternate translation: "they came for the baby's circumcision ceremony"

##### after the name of his father

"his father's name" or "like his father"

#### Luke 1:61

##### who his called by this name

"who has that name"

#### Luke 1:62

##### They made signs to his father as to how he wanted him to be named

"They motioned to the baby's father to ask what name he wanted to give to the baby"

#### Luke 1:63

##### a writing tablet

"something on which to write"

##### astonished

greatly surprised or amazed

#### Luke 1:64

##### his mouth was opened and his tongue was freed

"God opened his mouth and freed his tongue" or "he was able to speak again"

#### Luke 1:65

##### Fear came on all who lived around them

"All who lived around them became afraid" or "All who lived around them were in awe of God"

##### All these matters were spread throughout all the hill country of Judea

"All these matters were spoken about throughout all the hill country of Judea" or "People talked about all these events throughout the hill country of Judea "

#### Luke 1:66

##### stored them in their hearts

"thought carefully about these matters" or "thought a lot about these events"

##### What then will this child become?

Possible meanings are "What kind of great person will this baby grow up to be?" or "What a great man this child will become!"

##### the hand of the Lord was with him

The phrase "the hand of the Lord" refers to the Lord's power. Alternate translation: "the Lord's power was with him" or "the Lord was working in him powerfully"

#### Luke 1:67

##### His father Zechariah was filled with the Holy Spirit

See how you translated "filled with the Holy Spirit" in 1:15 and 1:41.

##### prophesied, saying

"prophesied by saying" or "prophesied, and this is what he said"

#### Luke 1:68

##### the God of Israel

"the God who reigns over Israel" or "the God whom the people of Israel worship"

#### Luke 1:69

##### He has raised up a horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David

An animal's horn is a symbol of the animal's power to defend itself. The Bible often calls a powerful person a horn. Here, to raise up someone means to bring him into existence or to enable him to act. Alternate translation: "He has brought to us someone in the house of his servant David who has power to save us"

##### in the house of his servant David

David's "house" here represents his family, specifically, his descendants. Alternate translation: "in the family of his servant David" or "who is a descendant of his servant David"

#### Luke 1:70

##### as he spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets from long ago

God speaking by the prophets' mouths represents God causing his prophets to say what he wanted them to say. Alternate translation: "as he caused his holy prophets who lived long ago to say"

#### Luke 1:71

##### salvation from our enemies

"who will save us from our enemies" or "He will save us from our enemies"

##### from the hand of all who hate us

"from the power of all who hate us" or "from the control of all who hate us"

#### Luke 1:72

##### to show mercy to our fathers

"to be merciful to our ancestors"

##### to remember his holy covenant

"to fulfill his holy covenant" or "to do what he said in his holy covenant he would do"

#### Luke 1:74

##### He swore to grant to us that we ... would serve him without fear

"He swore to make it possible for us ... to serve him without being afraid of our enemies"

##### to grant to us that we, having been delivered out of the hand of our enemies, would serve him without fear

"to rescue us from the control of our enemies and to make it possible for us to serve him without fear"

#### Luke 1:75

##### in holiness and righteousness

Possible meanings are "doing what is holy and righteous" or "being holy and righteous."

##### before him

"in his presence" or "in his sight"

#### Luke 1:76

##### you, child, will be called a prophet

"as for you, child, people will know that you are a prophet." Zechariah was speaking to his son, John.

##### of the Most High

"who serves the Most High" or "who speaks for God Most High"

##### will go before the face of the Lord

See how you translated a similar phrase in 1:17.

#### Luke 1:77

##### to give knowledge of salvation to his people by the forgiveness of their sins

"to teach God's people about salvation through the forgiveness of their sins" or "to teach God's people how God saves people by forgiving their sins"

#### Luke 1:78

##### because of the tender mercy of our God

"because our God is compassionate and merciful"

##### the sunrise from on high

"the Savior, who is like the sunrise, will come from heaven"

#### Luke 1:79

##### to shine on those

"to give spiritual light to those"

##### those who sit in darkness and in the shadow of death

Darkness can represent sin, separation from God, and the lack of spiritual truth. The shadow of death represents the threat of death. Alternate translation: "those who are in spiritual darkness and are in danger of dying"

##### to guide our feet into the path of peace

"to guide us into the path of peace" or "to teach us how to live at peace with God"

#### Luke 1:80

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the main story. Luke quickly moves from the birth of John to the beginning of John's ministry as an adult.

##### became strong in spirit

"became spiritually mature" or "strengthened his relationship with God"

##### was in the wilderness

"lived in the wilderness." Luke does not say at what age John began to live in the wilderness.

##### until the day of his public appearance to Israel

"when he began to preach in public to Israel"

Chapter 2

1Now in those days, it came about that Caesar Augustus sent out a decree ordering that a census be taken of all the people living in the world.2This was the first census made while Quirinius was governor of Syria.3So everyone went to his own city to be registered for the census.4Joseph also went up from Galilee, from the city of Nazareth, to Judea, to the city of David, which is called Bethlehem, because he was of the house and family line of David.5He went there to register along with Mary, who was engaged to him and was pregnant.6Now it came about that while they were there, the time came for her to deliver her baby.7She gave birth to a son, her firstborn child, and she wrapped him in long strips of cloth and laid him in a manger, because there was no room for them in the inn.

8There were shepherds in that region who were staying in the fields, guarding their flock at night.9An angel of the Lord appeared to them, and the glory of the Lord shone around them, and they were filled with great fear.10Then the angel said to them, "Do not be afraid, because I bring you good news that will bring great joy to all the people.11Today a Savior was born for you in the city of David! He is Christ the Lord!12This is the sign that will be given to you: You will find a baby wrapped in strips of cloth and lying in a manger."13Suddenly there was together with the angel a great multitude from heaven, praising God and saying,

14"Glory to God in the highest,and may there be peace on earthamong people with whom he is pleased." [1](#footnote-target-1)

15It came about that when the angels had gone away from them into heaven, the shepherds said to each other, "Let us now go to Bethlehem and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us."16They hurried there and found Mary, Joseph, and the baby, who was lying in a manger.17After they had seen him, they made known what had been said to them about this child.18All who heard it were amazed at what was spoken to them by the shepherds.19But Mary kept thinking about all the things she had heard, treasuring them in her heart.20The shepherds returned, glorifying and praising God for everything that they had heard and seen, just as it had been spoken to them.

21When it was the end of the eighth day, when he was circumcised, he was named Jesus, the name he had been given by the angel before he was conceived in the womb.

22When the required number of days for their purification had passed, according to the law of Moses, they brought him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord.23As it is written in the law of the Lord, "Every male who opens the womb will be set apart to the Lord."24So they offered a sacrifice according to what was said in the law of the Lord, "a pair of doves or two young pigeons."25Behold, there was a man in Jerusalem whose name was Simeon, and this man was righteous and devout. He was waiting for the consolation of Israel, and the Holy Spirit was upon him.26It had been revealed to him by the Holy Spirit that he would not see death before he had seen the Lord's Christ.27Led by the Spirit, Simeon came into the temple. When the parents brought in the infant Jesus, to do for him according to the custom of the law,28he took him into his arms and praised God, and he said,

29"Now let your servant depart in peace, Lord, according to your word.30For my eyes have seen your salvation,31which you have prepared in the presence of all peoples:32A light for revelation to the Gentilesand glory to your people Israel."

33His father and mother [2](#footnote-target-2) were amazed at what was said about him.34Simeon blessed them and said to Mary his mother, "Behold, this child is appointed for the downfall and rising up of many people in Israel and for a sign that is rejected—35and a sword will pierce your own soul—so that the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed."

36A prophetess named Anna was there. She was the daughter of Phanuel from the tribe of Asher. She was advanced in her days. She had lived with her husband for seven years after her virginity,37and was a widow for eighty-four years. She never left the temple but was serving with fastings and prayers, night and day.38At that very hour she came near to them and began giving thanks to God, and she spoke about the child to everyone who had been waiting for the redemption of Jerusalem.

39When they had finished everything they were required to do according to the law of the Lord, they returned to Galilee, to their own town of Nazareth.40The child grew and became strong; he was full of wisdom, and the grace of God was upon him.

41His parents went every year to Jerusalem for the Festival of the Passover.42When he was twelve years old, they again went up at the customary time for the festival.43After they had stayed the full number of days for the feast, they began to return home. But the boy Jesus stayed behind in Jerusalem and his parents did not know it.44They assumed that he was with the group that was traveling with them, so they traveled a day's journey. Then they started to search carefully for him among their relatives and friends.45When they did not find him, they returned to Jerusalem and started to search carefully for him there.46It came about that after three days they found him in the temple, sitting in the middle of the teachers, listening to them and asking them questions.47All who heard him were amazed at his understanding and his answers.48When they saw him, they were astonished. His mother said to him, "Son, why have you treated us this way? Look, your father and I have been anxiously searching for you."49He said to them, "Why were you searching for me? Did you not know that I had to be about my Father's business?" [3](#footnote-target-3)50But they did not understand what he meant by those words.51Then he went back home with them to Nazareth and was obedient to them. His mother treasured all these things in her heart.

52But Jesus continued to grow in wisdom and stature, and increased in favor with God and people.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient Greek copies have different spellings that suggest two possible meanings of the last phrase of verse 14, the second being preferred. The suggestions are: good will toward people or among people with whom he (God) is pleased . [2](#footnote-caller-2)Some copies of the ancient Greek text have his father's name, Joseph . [3](#footnote-caller-3)Some scholars translate "about my Father's business" as in my Father's house.

#### Luke 2:1

##### Now ... it came about that

These words mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### Caesar Augustus

"King Augustus" or "Emperor Augustus." He was the first emperor of the Roman Empire.

##### sent out a decree ordering

"sent messengers with a decree ordering"

##### that a census be taken of all the people living in the world

"that they count all the people in the world and write down their names"

##### the world

Here the word "world" represents the part of the world that Caesar August ruled. Alternate translation: "the Empire" or "the Roman world"

#### Luke 2:2

##### Quirinius

This is the name of a man.

#### Luke 2:3

##### his own city

This refers to the cities where people's ancestors lived. Alternate translation: "the city in which his ancestors lived" or "the city of his ancestors"

##### to be registered for the census

"to have his name written in the register" or "to be included in the official count"

#### Luke 2:4

##### to the city of David, which is called Bethlehem

"to Bethlehem, the city of King David" or "to Bethlehem, the town where King David had lived"

##### because he was of the house and family line of David

"because Joseph was a descendant of David"

#### Luke 2:5

##### who was engaged to him

"his fiancée" or "who was promised to him." An engaged couple was considered legally married, but they would not have been physically intimate.

#### Luke 2:6

##### while they were there

"while Mary and Joseph were in Bethlehem"

##### the time came for her to deliver her baby

"it was time for her to give birth to her baby"

#### Luke 2:7

##### wrapped him in long strips of cloth

In some cultures mothers comfort their babies by wrapping them tightly in cloth or a blanket. Alternate translation: "wrapped cloths firmly around him" or "wrapped him tightly in a blanket"

##### laid him in a manger

A manger is a box or frame where people put hay or other food for animals to eat. Mary may have used dry hay as a cushion for the baby.

##### there was no room for them in the inn

"there was no space for them to stay in the guest room.

#### Luke 2:9

##### An angel of the Lord appeared to them

"An angel from the Lord came to them" or "An angel who served the Lord suddenly stood near the shepherds"

#### Luke 2:10

##### that will bring great joy to all the people

"that will make all the people very happy"

#### Luke 2:11

##### the city of David

This refers to Bethlehem.

#### Luke 2:12

##### This is the sign that will be given to you

"God will give you this sign"

##### the sign

This was either a sign that would help the shepherds recognize the baby, or it was a sign to prove that what the angel said was true.

#### Luke 2:13

##### a great multitude from heaven

"a large group of angels from heaven"

#### Luke 2:14

##### Glory to God in the highest

Possible meanings are 1) "Give honor to God in the highest place" or 2) "Give the highest honor to God."

##### may there be peace on earth among people with whom he is pleased

"may those people on earth with whom God is pleased have peace"

#### Luke 2:15

##### Let us now go

"We should go now"

#### Luke 2:17

##### they made known what had been said to them about this child

the shepherds told people what the angels had said to them about the baby

#### Luke 2:18

##### what was spoken to them by the shepherds

"what the shepherds told them"

#### Luke 2:19

##### treasuring them in her heart

Mary considered the things she heard about her son to be precious like a treasure. Alternate translation: "keeping them like treasure in her heart" or "carefully remembering them"

#### Luke 2:20

##### The shepherds returned

"The shepherds went back to the sheep"

##### glorifying and praising God

"talking about God's greatness and praising him"

#### Luke 2:21

##### When it was the end of the eighth day, when he was circumcised

"When the eight days ended and they circumcised the baby" or "Eight days after the baby was born, they circumcised him, and"

##### he was named Jesus, the name he had been given by the angel

"they named him Jesus, the name the angel had called him"

#### Luke 2:22

##### When the required number of days ... had passed

"When the number of days that God required ... had ended"

##### for their purification

"for them to become ceremonially clean"

##### they brought him up to the temple

"Mary and Joseph brought the baby up to the temple"

##### to present him to the Lord

"to bring him to the Lord"

#### Luke 2:23

##### As it is written in the law of the Lord

"They did this because Moses wrote in the law of the Lord" or "They did this because the law of the Lord says"

##### Every male who opens the womb

"The first male that a mother gives birth to" or "Every firstborn male"

#### Luke 2:25

##### Behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story.

##### was righteous and devout

"did what was right and feared God" or "obeyed God's laws and feared God"

##### the consolation of Israel

"the one who would comfort the people of Israel"

##### the Holy Spirit was upon him

"the Holy Spirit was with him." God was with Simeon in a special way and gave him wisdom and direction.

#### Luke 2:26

##### It had been revealed to him by the Holy Spirit

"The Holy Spirit had shown him" or "The Holy Spirit had told him"

##### he would not see death before he had seen the Lord's Christ

"Simeon would not die before he had seen the Lord's Christ" or "he would see the Lord's Messiah before he died"

#### Luke 2:27

##### Led by the Spirit

"As the Holy Spirit directed him"

##### into the temple

"into the temple courtyard." Only priests were allowed to enter the temple building.

#### Luke 2:28

##### he took him into his arms

"Simeon took the infant Jesus into his arms" or "Simeon held Jesus in his arms"

#### Luke 2:29

##### Now let your servant depart in peace

"I am your servant; let me die in peace" or "Let me, your servant, die in peace"

##### according to your word

"as you promised"

#### Luke 2:30

##### my eyes have seen

"I have personally seen" or "I, myself, have seen"

##### your salvation

"the savior whom you sent" or "the one whom you sent to save people"

#### Luke 2:31

##### which you

Depending on how you translate the previous phrase, this may need to be changed to "whom you."

#### Luke 2:32

##### A light for revelation to the Gentiles

"This child will be like a light that reveals God to the the Gentiles"

##### and glory to your people Israel

"and will bring glory to your people Israel" or "and he will be the reason that glory will come to your people Israel"

#### Luke 2:33

##### what was said about him

"the things that Simeon said about the child"

#### Luke 2:34

##### said to Mary his mother

"said to the child's mother, Mary." Make sure it does not sound like Mary is the mother of Simeon.

##### Behold

"Look" or "Listen." By saying this, Simeon tells Mary that what he is about to say next is extremely important.

##### this child is appointed for the downfall and rising up of many people in Israel

"this child will cause many people in Israel to fall or rise"

#### Luke 2:35

##### a sword will pierce your own soul

"your sadness will be painful as though a sword pierced your soul"

##### so that the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed

"so that he may reveal the thoughts of many people" or "so that he may reveal what many people secretly think"

#### Luke 2:36

##### Phanuel

This is a man's name.

##### She was advanced in her days

"she had lived many days" or "she had lived many years" or "she was very old." See how you translated similar words in Luke 2:7.

##### after her virginity

"after she married him"

#### Luke 2:37

##### a widow for eighty-four years

Possible meanings are 1) she was a widow and was now 84 years old, or 2) she became a widow and lived another 84 years.

##### She never left the temple

"She was always at the temple" or "She never stopped going to the temple"

##### with fastings and prayers

"by abstaining from food on many occasions and by offering prayers"

#### Luke 2:38

##### she came near to them

"she approached Mary and Joseph"

##### for the redemption of Jerusalem

"for God to redeem Jerusalem" or "for the one who would rescue Jerusalem" or "for the one who would set Jerusalem free"

#### Luke 2:39

##### When they had finished everything they were required to do according to the law of the Lord

"When Joseph and Mary had finished doing everything the law of the Lord required them to do"

##### their own town of Nazareth

"the town of Nazareth, where they lived"

#### Luke 2:40

##### he was full of wisdom

"he was becoming wiser" or "he was learning what was wise"

##### the grace of God was upon him

"God blessed him" or "God was with him in a special way"

#### Luke 2:42

##### they again went up

“they again went to Jerusalem.” Jerusalem was in a region of high hills.

##### at the customary time

"at the normal time" or "as they did every year"

#### Luke 2:43

##### After they had stayed the full number of days for the feast

"After celebrating the feast for the required number of days" or "When the days for the feast ended"

#### Luke 2:44

##### They assumed

"They thought"

##### they traveled a day's journey

"they traveled one day" or "they went as far as people walk in one day"

#### Luke 2:46

##### in the temple

"in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

##### in the middle of the teachers

"among the teachers" or "together with the teachers" or "surrounded by those who taught people about God"

#### Luke 2:47

##### at his understanding

"at how much he understood" or "that he understood so much"

##### and his answers

"and at how well he answered them" or "and that he answered their questions so well"

#### Luke 2:48

##### When they saw him

"When Mary and Joseph found Jesus"

##### why have you treated us this way?

They rebuked Jesus because he had not gone with them and this had caused the to worry about him. Alternate translation: "you should not have treated us like this!" or "you should not have done this to us!"

##### Look

"Listen" or "Pay attention"

#### Luke 2:49

##### Why were you searching for me?

Jesus uses two questions to mildly rebuke his parents. Alternate translation: "You did not need to look for me."

##### Did you not know ... business?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have known ... business."

##### I had to be about my Father's business

Possible meanings are "I had to do the work my Father gave me" or "I had to be in my Father's house."

#### Luke 2:51

##### he went back home with them

"Jesus went back home with Mary and Joseph"

##### was obedient to them

"obeyed them" or "was always obeying them"

##### treasured all these things in her heart

See how you translated a similar phrase in 2:19.

#### Luke 2:52

##### to grow in wisdom and stature

"to become wiser and stronger." This refers to mental and physical growth.

##### and increased in favor with God and people

“and God and people were more and more pleased with him”

Chapter 3

1In the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—while Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Iturea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene,2during the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.3He went into all the region around the Jordan, preaching a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins.4As it is written in the book of the words of Isaiah the prophet,"A voice of one crying out in the wilderness,'Make ready the way of the Lord,make his paths straight.5Every valley will be filled,and every mountain and hill will be made low,and the crooked roads will be made straight,and the uneven places will be built into roads,6and all flesh will see the salvation of God.'"

7So John said to the crowds who were coming out to be baptized by him, "You offspring of vipers! Who warned you to run away from the wrath that is coming?8Therefore, produce fruits that are worthy of repentance, and do not begin to say within yourselves, 'We have Abraham for our father,' for I tell you that God is able to raise up children for Abraham from these stones.9Even now the ax is set against the root of the trees. So every tree that does not produce good fruit is chopped down and thrown into the fire."

10Then the crowds kept asking him, saying, "What then are we to do?"

11He answered and said to them, "If someone has two tunics, he should share with a person who has none, and the one having food should do the same."

12Tax collectors also came to be baptized, and they said to him, "Teacher, what must we do?"

13He said to them, "Do not collect more money than you have been ordered to collect."

14Some soldiers also asked him, saying, "What about us? What must we do?"

He said to them, "Do not take money from anyone by force, and do not accuse anyone falsely. Be content with your wages."

15Now as the people were eagerly expecting the Christ to come, everyone was wondering in their hearts concerning John, whether he might be the Christ.16John answered by saying to them all, "As for me, I baptize you with water, but someone is coming who is more powerful than I, and I am not worthy even to untie the strap of his sandals. He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire.17His winnowing fork is in his hand to thoroughly clear off his threshing floor and to gather the wheat into his storehouse. But he will burn up the chaff with fire that can never be put out."

18With many other exhortations also, John was announcing the good news to the people.19When Herod the tetrarch had been reproved for marrying his brother's wife Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done,20he added this to them all, that he locked John up in prison.

21Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized, and while he was praying, the heavens opened,22and the Holy Spirit in bodily form came down on him like a dove, and a voice came from heaven: "You are my beloved Son. I am pleased with you."

23When Jesus began his ministry, he was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, the son of Heli,24the son of Matthat, the son of Levi, the son of Melchi, the son of Jannai, the son of Joseph.

25Joseph was the son of Mattathias, the son of Amos, the son of Nahum, the son of Esli, the son of Naggai,26the son of Maath, the son of Mattathias, the son of Semein, the son of Josech, the son of Joda.

27Joda was the son of Joanan, the son of Rhesa, the son of Zerubbabel, the son of Salathiel, the son of Neri,28the son of Melchi, the son of Addi, the son of Cosam, the son of Elmadam, the son of Er,

29the son of Joshua, the son of Eliezer, the son of Jorim, the son of Matthat, the son of Levi.30Levi was the son of Simeon, the son of Judah, the son of Joseph, the son of Jonam, the son of Eliakim,

31the son of Melea, the son of Menna, the son of Mattatha, the son of Nathan, the son of David,32the son of Jesse, the son of Obed, the son of Boaz, the son of Salmon, the son of Nahshon.

33Nahshon was the son of Amminadab, the son of Admin, the son of Arni, the son of Hezron, the son of Perez, the son of Judah,34the son of Jacob, the son of Isaac, the son of Abraham, the son of Terah, the son of Nahor,

35the son of Serug, the son of Reu, the son of Peleg, the son of Eber, the son of Shelah.36Shelah was the son of Cainan, the son of Arphaxad, the son of Shem, the son of Noah, the son of Lamech,

37the son of Methuselah, the son of Enoch, the son of Jared, the son of Mahalalel, the son of Cainan,38the son of Enos, the son of Seth, the son of Adam, the son of God.

#### Luke 3:1

##### Tiberius ... Pontius Pilate ... Herod ... Philip ... Lysanias

These are the names of men.

##### Judea ... Galilee ... Iturea ... Trachonitis ... Abilene

These are names of regions or territories.

##### tetrarch

"ruler"

#### Luke 3:2

##### during the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas

"while Annas and Caiaphas were high priests"

##### the word of God came to John

"God spoke his message to John"

#### Luke 3:3

##### preaching a baptism of repentance

"and he preached that people should be baptized to show that they were repenting"

##### for the forgiveness of sins

"so that their sins would be forgiven" or "so that God would forgive their sins"

#### Luke 3:4

##### As it is written in the book of the words of Isaiah the prophet,

"This happened as Isaiah the prophet had written in the book that contains his words:" or "John fulfilled the message that the prophet Isaiah had written in his book:"

##### A voice of one crying out in the wilderness

"The voice of one crying out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone crying out in the wilderness"

##### Make ready the way of the Lord

"Get the road ready for the Lord." Doing this represents preparing to hear the Lord's message when he comes. Alternate translation: "Prepare for the Lord to come" or "Be ready for the Lord when he comes"

#### Luke 3:5

##### Every valley will be filled ... every mountain and hill will be made low

When people prepare the road for an important person who is coming, they make the road level. This is part of the image started in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "They will fill in every valley ... they will level every mountain and hill" or "They will fill in every low place in the road ... they will remove every high place in the road"

#### Luke 3:6

##### will see the salvation of God

"will see how God saves people" or "will learn how God saves people from sin"

#### Luke 3:7

##### to be baptized by him

"for John to baptize them"

##### You offspring of vipers

Vipers are poisonous snakes that are dangerous and represent evil. Here "offspring of" means "being like." Alternate translation: "You evil poisonous snakes" or "You are evil, like poisonous snakes"

##### Who warned you ... coming?

John was rebuking the people because they wanted him to baptize them, but they did not want to stop sinning. Alternate translation: "You cannot flee from God's wrath like this!" or "You cannot escape from God's wrath just by being baptized!"

##### from the wrath that is coming

"from the punishment that God is sending" or "from God's wrath on which he is about to act"

#### Luke 3:8

##### produce fruits that are worthy of repentance

Just as a plant is expected to produce fruit that is appropriate for that kind of plant, a person who says that he has repented is expected to live righteously. Alternate translation: "produce the fruit of righteousness that shows that you have repented"

##### to say within yourselves

"saying to yourselves" or "thinking"

##### We have Abraham for our father

"Abraham is our ancestor" or "We are Abraham's descendants." If it is unclear why they would say this, you may add the implied information: "so God will not punish us."

##### to raise up children for Abraham

"to create children for Abraham"

#### Luke 3:9

##### the ax is set against the root of the trees

This is an image of the punishment that is about to begin. Alternate translation: "God is like a man who has placed his ax against the root of the trees"

##### every tree ... is chopped down and thrown into the fire

"he chops down every tree ... and throws it into the fire"

#### Luke 3:10

##### kept asking him, saying

"kept asking him and said" or "kept asking John"

#### Luke 3:11

##### answered and said to them

"answered them, saying" or "answered them" or "said"

##### should do the same

"should share it with a person who does not have food"

#### Luke 3:13

##### than you have been ordered to collect

"than the government has told you to take"

#### Luke 3:14

##### What about us? What must we do?

"What must we soldiers do?"

##### do not accuse anyone falsely

"do not say that an innocent person has done something illegal"

##### Be content with your wages

"Be satisfied with your pay"

#### Luke 3:15

##### everyone was wondering in their hearts concerning John, whether he might be the Christ

"they were all wondering in their hearts if John might be the Christ"

#### Luke 3:16

##### I baptize you with water

"I baptize you using water" or "I baptize you by means of water"

##### not worthy even to untie the strap of his sandals

"not important enough even to loosen the straps of his sandals." This was a duty of a slave. John was saying that the one who would come is so great that John was not even worthy enough to be his slave.

##### He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire

"He will baptize you using the Holy Spirit and fire" or "He will baptize you in the Holy Spirit and fire"

#### Luke 3:17

##### His winnowing fork is in his hand

John speaks of the Christ coming to judge people as being like a farmer who is ready to separate wheat seeds from chaff. Alternate translation: "He is like a farmer whose winnowing fork is in his hand"

##### winnowing fork

This is a tool for tossing wheat grains into the air to separate the wheat seed from the chaff. The heavier seed falls back down and the unwanted chaff is blown away by the wind.

##### threshing floor

The threshing floor was the place where people beat the wheat stalks so that the grains would fall off of them. Then they would winnow the grain.

##### to gather the wheat

"to gather the wheat seeds." This is the part of the wheat that is stored and used for food.

##### will burn up the chaff

The chaff is not useful for anything, so people burn it up.

#### Luke 3:18

##### With many other exhortations

"With many other strong urgings"

#### Luke 3:19

##### When Herod the tetrarch had been reproved

"When John reproved Herod the tetrarch"

##### for marrying his brother's wife Herodias

"because Herod married Herodias, his own brother's wife." This was evil because Herod's brother was still alive.

#### Luke 3:20

##### he locked John up in prison

Herod probably locked John up by ordering his soldiers to lock him up. Alternate translation: "Herod had his soldiers lock John up in prison" or "he told his soldiers to put John in prison"

#### Luke 3:21

##### General Information:

The events in verses 21 and 22 happened before John was arrested.

##### Now it came about

This phrase marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

##### when all the people were baptized

"while John baptized all the people." The phrase "all the people" refers to the people who were there with John.

##### Jesus also was baptized

"John baptized Jesus also"

##### the heavens opened

"the sky opened" or "the sky became open." This is more than a simple clearing of clouds. It might mean that a hole appeared in the sky.

#### Luke 3:22

##### the Holy Spirit in bodily form came down on him like a dove

"in physical form the Holy Spirit came down like a dove onto Jesus"

##### a voice came from heaven

"a voice from heaven said" or "God spoke to Jesus from heaven, saying"

##### my beloved Son

God was calling Jesus his own Son. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Luke 3:23

##### General Information:

Luke lists the ancestors of Jesus through the line of Joseph.

##### thirty years of age

"30 years old"

##### He was the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph

"It was thought that he was the son of Joseph" or "People assumed that he was the son of Joseph" or "People thought that Joseph was his father"

##### the son of Heli

"who was the Son of Heli" or "Joseph was the son of Heli" or "Joseph's father was Heli"

#### Luke 3:27

##### the son of Salathiel

The name Salathiel may be a different spelling of the name Shealtiel, which is in some versions.

#### Luke 3:38

##### Adam, the son of God

This list goes all the way back to the first man, Adam. God created Adam, and Luke indicates that God was Adam’s father.

Chapter 4

1Then Jesus, being full of the Holy Spirit, returned from the Jordan River and was led by the Spirit in the wilderness,2where for forty days he was tempted by the devil. He ate nothing during those days, and at the end of that time he was hungry.3The devil said to him, "If you are the Son of God, command this stone to become bread."

4Jesus answered him, "It is written, 'Man does not live on bread alone.'"

5Then the devil led Jesus up and showed him all the kingdoms of the world in an instant of time.6The devil said to him, "I will give to you all this authority and all their glory, for they have been given to me, and I can give it to anyone I want.7So then, if you will bow down and worship me, it will be yours."

8But Jesus answered and said to him, "It is written, 'You will worship the Lord your God, and you will serve only him.'"

9Then the devil led Jesus to Jerusalem and put him on the very highest point of the temple building, and said to him, "If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down from here.10For it is written,'He will give orders to his angels regarding you,to protect you,'11and, 'They will lift you up in their hands,so that you will not strike your foot against a stone.'"

12Answering him, Jesus said, "It is said, 'Do not put the Lord your God to the test.'"

13When the devil had finished tempting Jesus, he went away and left him until another time.

14Then Jesus returned to Galilee in the power of the Spirit, and news about him spread throughout the entire surrounding region.15Then he began to teach in their synagogues and he was praised by all.

16He came into Nazareth, where he had been raised, and, as was his custom, he entered the synagogue on the Sabbath day and he stood up to read aloud.17The scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed to him. He opened the scroll and found the place where it was written,18"The Spirit of the Lord is upon me,because he anointed meto announce good news to the poor.He has sent me to proclaim freedom to the captivesand recovery of sight to the blind,to set free those who are oppressed,19to proclaim the year of the Lord's favor."

20Then he rolled up the scroll, gave it back to the attendant, and sat down. The eyes of all in the synagogue were fixed on him.21He began to speak to them: "Today this scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing."

22Everyone there spoke well of him and they were amazed at the gracious words which were coming out of his mouth, and they asked, "Is this not the son of Joseph?"

23He said to them, "Surely you will say this proverb to me, 'Doctor, heal yourself. Whatever we heard that you did in Capernaum, do the same in your hometown.'"24But he said, "Truly I say to you, no prophet is received in his own hometown.25But in truth I tell you that there were many widows in Israel during the time of Elijah, when the sky was shut up for three years and six months and a great famine came upon all the land.26But Elijah was sent to none of them, but only to Zarephath in Sidon, to a widow living there.27There were many lepers in Israel during the time of Elisha the prophet, but none of them were cleansed except Naaman the Syrian."28All the people in the synagogue were filled with rage when they heard these things.29They got up, forced him out of the town, and led him to the cliff of the hill on which their town was built, so they might throw him off the cliff.30But he passed through the middle of them and he went to another place.

31Then he went down to Capernaum, a city in Galilee, and he began to teach them on the Sabbath.32They were astonished at his teaching, because he spoke with authority.33Now in the synagogue there was a man who had the spirit of an unclean demon, and he cried out with a loud voice,34"Ah! What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth? Have you come to destroy us? I know who you are—the Holy One of God!"

35Jesus rebuked the demon, saying, "Do not speak! Come out of him!" When the demon had thrown the man down in the middle of them, he came out of him, and did not harm him in any way.

36All the people were very amazed, and they kept talking about it with one another. They said, "What kind of words are these? He commands the unclean spirits with authority and power and they come out."37So news about him began to spread into every part of the surrounding region.

38Then Jesus left the synagogue and entered into the house of Simon. Now Simon's mother-in-law was suffering with a high fever, and they pleaded with him on her behalf.39So he stood over her and rebuked the fever, and it left her. Immediately she got up and started serving them.

40When the sun was setting, people brought to Jesus everyone who was sick with various kinds of diseases. He laid his hands on every one of them and healed them.41Demons also came out from many of them, crying out and saying, "You are the Son of God!" Jesus rebuked the demons and would not let them speak, because they knew that he was the Christ.

42When daybreak came, he went out into a solitary place. Crowds of people were looking for him and came to the place where he was. They tried to keep him from going away from them.43But he said to them, "I must also preach the gospel about the kingdom of God to many other cities, because this is the reason I was sent here."

44Then he continued to preach in the synagogues throughout Judea.

#### Luke 4:1

##### and was led by the Spirit

"and the Spirit led him"

#### Luke 4:2

##### he was tempted by the devil

"the devil tempted Jesus" or "the devil tried to persuade him to disobey God"

##### He ate nothing

"Jesus ate nothing"

#### Luke 4:3

##### If you are the Son of God

The devil challenges Jesus to prove that he is the Son of God.

#### Luke 4:4

##### Jesus answered him, "It is written ... alone.'"

Jesus's answer shows that he would not turn the stone into bread. Alternate translation: "Jesus replied, 'I will not do that because it is written ... alone."'"

##### It is written

"The scriptures say"

##### Man does not live on bread alone

The word "bread" refers to food in general. Food is not enough to keep people alive; people need God. Jesus quotes this scripture to tell why he would not turn the stone into bread. Alternate translation: "People cannot live by only eating bread" or "It is not just food that makes a person live"

#### Luke 4:5

##### Then the devil led Jesus up ... world

"Then the devil led Jesus up to a very high place ... world." We do not know where the devil led Jesus and how he showed him all the kingdoms of the world.

##### in an instant of time

"in a moment of time" or "instantly"

#### Luke 4:7

##### it will be yours

"it will belong to you"

#### Luke 4:8

##### Jesus answered and said to him

"Jesus replied" or "Jesus said"

##### It is written

Again Jesus quoted scripture to tell why he would not do what the devil told him to do.

#### Luke 4:9

##### the very highest point

This was the corner of the temple roof. If someone fell from there, they would be seriously injured or die.

##### throw yourself down

"jump down to the ground"

#### Luke 4:10

##### For it is written

The devil is about to quote from the Psalms. He implies that if Jesus is really the Son of God, he will not be hurt if he jumps. Alternate translation: "For the scriptures say" or "You will not be hurt, because it is written"

##### He will give orders

"He" refers to God.

#### Luke 4:12

##### It is said

Jesus tells the devil why he will not do what the devil told him to do. Alternate translation: or "The scripture says" or "No, because it is said"

##### Do not put the Lord your God to the test

"Do not test the Lord your God"

#### Luke 4:13

##### had finished tempting Jesus

"had finished trying to persuade Jesus to sin"

##### he went away ... until another time

"the devil went away ... until another occasion"

#### Luke 4:14

##### in the power of the Spirit

"and the Spirit was giving him power"

##### news about him spread

"people spread the news about Jesus" or "people told other people about Jesus"

##### throughout the entire surrounding region

This refers to the areas or places around Galilee.

#### Luke 4:15

##### he was praised by all

"everyone said great things about him" or "all the people spoke about him in a good way"

#### Luke 4:16

##### where he had been raised

"where his parents had raised him" or "where he grew up" or "where he lived when he was a child"

##### as was his custom

"as he normally did." It was his usual practice to go to the synagogue on the Sabbath day.

#### Luke 4:17

##### The scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed to him

"Someone gave him the scroll of the prophet Isaiah"

##### scroll of the prophet Isaiah

Isaiah had written his prophecy many years before, and someone else had copied it onto a scroll.

##### the place where it was written

"the place in the scroll with these words"

#### Luke 4:18

##### The Spirit of the Lord is upon me

"The Holy Spirit is with me in a special way"

##### he anointed me

In the Old Testament, someone would pour ceremonial oil on a person when God chose that person do a special task. Alternate translation: "he poured oil on me" or "he chose me"

##### the poor

"poor people"

##### to proclaim freedom to the captives

"to tell people who are being held captive that they can go free" or "to set free the prisoners of war"

##### recovery of sight to the blind

"to give sight to the blind" or "to make the blind able to see again"

##### to set free those who are oppressed

"to set free those whom others treat harshly"

#### Luke 4:19

##### to proclaim the year of the Lord's favor

"to tell everyone that the Lord is ready to bless his people" or "to announce that this is the year that the Lord will show his kindness"

#### Luke 4:20

##### rolled up the scroll

People closed scrolls by rolling them like tubes to protect the writing inside.

##### the attendant

This refers to a synagogue worker who brought out and put away with proper care and reverence the scrolls containing the scriptures.

##### sat down

It was customary for teachers to be seated while teaching.

##### were fixed on him

"were focused on him" or "were looking intently at him"

#### Luke 4:21

##### this scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing

"I am fulfilling what this scripture says right now while you are listening to me"

#### Luke 4:22

##### they were amazed at the gracious words which were coming out of his mouth

"They were surprised about the gracious things that he was saying."

##### Is this not the son of Joseph?

People thought that Joseph was Jesus's father. Joseph was not a religious leader, so they were surprised that his son would preach what he did. Alternate translation: "This is just Joseph's son!" or "His father is only Joseph!"

#### Luke 4:23

##### Doctor, heal yourself

If someone claims to be a doctor, some people might believe it only if he can heal himself. Jesus was saying that the people in Nazareth would not believe that he is a prophet. Instead they would challenge him to prove it by showing them some miracles.

#### Luke 4:24

##### Truly I say to you

"It is certainly true" or "I am telling you the truth." Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance, truth, and accuracy of the statement that follows.

##### no prophet is received in his own hometown

"people in a prophet's hometown do not accept him" or "people do not believe a prophet who comes from their own town."

#### Luke 4:25

##### during the time of Elijah

"when Elijah was prophesying in Israel"

##### when the sky was shut up

"when no rain fell down from the sky" or "when there was no rain at all"

##### a great famine came upon all the land

"there was a serious lack of food in all the land"

#### Luke 4:26

##### to Zarephath in Sidon, to a widow living there

The people of Sidon were Gentiles. Alternate translation: "to a Gentile widow living in the town of Zarephath in Sidon"

#### Luke 4:27

##### none of them were cleansed except Naaman the Syrian

"the only one of them who was cleansed was Naaman the Syrian" or "the only one of them whom God cleansed was Naaman from the country of Syria"

##### were cleansed

People who had leprosy were considered to be unclean. When they were healed from leprosy, they were clean. Alternate translation: "were healed"

##### Naaman the Syrian

"the Gentile Naaman from Syria." Namaan was a man.

#### Luke 4:28

##### All the people in the synagogue were filled with rage when they heard these things

The people were very angry when Jesus spoke about God helping Gentiles instead of Jews.

#### Luke 4:31

##### Then he went down to Capernaum, a city in Galilee

"Then Jesus went down to Capernaum, another city in Galilee." Capernaum and Nazareth are both in Galilee. Capernaum is lower in elevation than Nazareth.

#### Luke 4:32

##### astonished

greatly surprised, greatly amazed

#### Luke 4:33

##### who had the spirit of an unclean demon

"who was possessed by an unclean demon" or "who was controlled by an evil spirit"

##### he cried out with a loud voice

"he shouted loudly"

#### Luke 4:34

##### What do we have to do with you

The demon was challenging Jesus. Alternate translation: "What do we have in common with you" or "What right do you have to bother us"

##### What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth?

This challenge could be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "We have nothing to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth!" or "You have no right to bother us, Jesus of Nazareth!"

#### Luke 4:35

##### Jesus rebuked the demon, saying

"Jesus scolded the demon, saying" or "Jesus sternly said to the demon"

#### Luke 4:36

##### What kind of words are these?

The people were expressing how amazed they were that Jesus had the authority to command demons to leave a person. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "These words are amazing!" or "His words are amazing!"

##### He commands the unclean spirits with authority and power

"He has authority and power to command the unclean spirits"

#### Luke 4:38

##### was suffering with a high fever

"was very sick with a high fever"

##### pleaded with him on her behalf

"asked Jesus to help her" or "begged Jesus to help her"

#### Luke 4:39

##### So he stood over her

"So he went to her and leaned over her"

##### rebuked the fever, and it left her

"spoke sternly to the fever, and it left her" or "commanded the fever to leave her, and it did" or "commanded her skin to become cool, and did"

##### started serving them

"started to prepare food for them"

#### Luke 4:40

##### laid his hands on everyone of them

"placed his hands on everyone of them" or "touched each of them"

#### Luke 4:41

##### crying out and saying

"screaming" or "shouting." These were probably cries of fear or anger.

#### Luke 4:42

##### When daybreak came

"At sunrise" or "At dawn"

##### a solitary place

"a deserted place" or "a place where there were no people"

#### Luke 4:43

##### to many other cities

"to the people in many other cities"

##### this is the reason I was sent here

"this is what God sent me here to do"

#### Luke 4:44

##### throughout Judea

Since Jesus was in Galilee, the term "Judea" here probably refers to the entire region where the Jews lived at that time.

Chapter 5

1Now it happened while the people were crowding around Jesus and listening to the word of God, that he was standing by the lake of Gennesaret.2He saw two boats pulled up by the edge of the lake. The fishermen had gotten out of them and were washing their nets.3Jesus got into one of the boats, which was Simon's, and asked him to put it out in the water a short distance from the land. Then he sat down and taught the people out of the boat.4When he had finished speaking, he said to Simon, "Take the boat out into the deeper water and let down your nets for a catch."

5Simon answered and said, "Master, we have labored all night and caught nothing, but at your word, I will let down the nets."6When they had done this, they gathered a very large number of fish, and their nets were breaking.7So they motioned to their partners in the other boat that they should come and help them. They came and filled both the boats, so that they began to sink.8But Simon Peter, when he saw it, fell down at Jesus' knees, saying, "Depart from me, for I am a sinful man, Lord."9For he and all who were with him were amazed at the catch of fish which they had taken. 10And so also were James and John, sons of Zebedee, who were partners with Simon.

Jesus said to Simon, "Do not be afraid, because from now on you will catch men."11When they had brought their boats to land, they left everything and followed him.

12It came about that while he was in one of the cities, a man full of leprosy was there. When he saw Jesus, he fell on his face and begged him, saying, "Lord, if you are willing, you can make me clean."

13Then Jesus reached out his hand and touched him, saying, "I am willing. Be clean." Immediately the leprosy left him.

14He instructed him to tell no one but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."15But the report about him spread even farther, and large crowds of people came together to hear him teach and to be healed of their sicknesses.16But he often withdrew into the deserted places and prayed.

17It came about on one of those days that he was teaching, and there were Pharisees and teachers of the law sitting there who had come from every village of Galilee and Judea and from Jerusalem. The power of the Lord was with him to heal.18Now some men came carrying on a mat a man who was paralyzed, and they looked for a way to bring him inside in order to lay him down in front of Jesus.19They could not find a way to bring him in because of the crowd, so they went up to the housetop and let the man down through the tiles, on his mat, into the midst of the people, right in front of Jesus.20Seeing their faith, Jesus said, "Man, your sins are forgiven you."

21The scribes and the Pharisees began to question this, saying, "Who is this who speaks blasphemies? Who can forgive sins but God alone?"

22But Jesus, knowing what they were thinking, answered and said to them, "Why are you questioning this in your hearts?23Which is easier: to say, 'Your sins are forgiven you' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?24But that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins,"—he said to the paralyzed man—"I tell you, get up, pick up your mat and go to your house."25Immediately he got up in front of them and picked up the mat on which he was lying. Then he went away to his house, glorifying God.

26Everyone was amazed and they glorified God. They were filled with fear, saying, "We have seen extraordinary things today."

27After these things happened, Jesus went out from there and saw a tax collector named Levi sitting at the tax collector's tent. He said to him, "Follow me."28So Levi got up and followed him, leaving everything behind.

29Then Levi gave a big banquet in his house for Jesus. There were many tax collectors there and other people who were reclining at the table and eating with them.30But the Pharisees and their scribes were complaining to his disciples, saying, "Why do you eat and drink with tax collectors and sinners?"

31Jesus answered them, "People who are well do not need a physician; only those who are sick.32I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."

33They said to him, "The disciples of John often fast and pray, and the disciples of the Pharisees do the same. But your disciples eat and drink."

34Jesus said to them, "Can anyone make the wedding attendants of the bridegroom fast while the bridegroom is still with them?35But the days will come when the bridegroom will be taken away from them, then in those days they will fast."36Then Jesus also spoke a parable to them. "No one tears a piece of cloth from a new garment and uses it to mend an old garment. If he does that, he will tear the new garment, and the piece of cloth from the new garment will not fit with the cloth of the old garment.37No one puts new wine into old wineskins. If he does that, the new wine will burst the skins, and the wine will be spilled, and the wineskins will be destroyed.38But new wine must be put into fresh wineskins.39No one after drinking old wine wants the new, for he says, 'The old is better.'"

#### Luke 5:1

##### Now it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### listening to the word of God

"listening to Jesus teaching them the word of God"

#### Luke 5:2

##### washing their nets

They were cleaning their fishing nets in order to use them again to catch fish.

#### Luke 5:3

##### asked him to put it out in the water a short distance from the land

"asked Simon to move the boat a short distance from the land"

##### he sat down and taught the people out of the boat

"Jesus sat down and taught the people from the boat" or "he taught the people while he sat in the boat." The people were on the shore.

#### Luke 5:4

##### let down your nets for a catch

"put your nets down into the water to catch fish"

#### Luke 5:5

##### at your word

"because you have told me to do this"

#### Luke 5:7

##### motioned

They were too far from shore to call, so they made gestures, probably by waving their arms.

##### so that they began to sink

"and the boats began to sink down into the water"

#### Luke 5:8

##### fell down at Jesus' knees

Possible meanings are 1) "knelt down before Jesus" or 2) "bowed down at Jesus' feet" or 3) "lay down on the ground at Jesus' feet." Peter did not fall accidentally. He did this as a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

##### a sinful man

The word here for "man" means "adult male" and not the more general "human being."

#### Luke 5:9

##### at the catch of fish which they had taken

"at how many fish they had caught" or "at the large number of fish they had caught"

#### Luke 5:10

##### partners with Simon

"Simon's partners in the fishing business"

##### you will catch men

"you will fish for people" or "you will gather people for me" or "you will bring people to be my disciples." The men were fishermen. Jesus spoke of gathering people to follow him as if they would be fishing.

#### Luke 5:12

##### It came about

This phrase marks a new event in the story.

##### a man full of leprosy

"a man who was covered with leprosy." Leprosy was a skin disease.

##### he fell on his face

"he knelt and touched the ground with his face" or "he bowed down to the ground"

##### you can make me clean

The man was ceremonially unclean because of his skin disease. He wanted to be healed. Alternate translation: "please make me clean, because you are able" or "you can heal me so I will be clean"

#### Luke 5:13

##### Be clean

By giving the command, Jesus healed and cleansed them man. "Be healed"

##### the leprosy left him

"he no longer had leprosy"

#### Luke 5:14

##### He instructed him to tell no one but told him, "Go on your way

"Jesus said, 'Do not tell anyone, but go on your way"

##### offer a sacrifice for your cleansing

The law required a person to make a specific sacrifice after they were healed. This allowed the person to be ceremonially clean and able to again participate in religious rituals.

##### for a testimony

"as proof of your healing"

#### Luke 5:15

##### the report about him spread even farther

"the news about Jesus went out even farther" or "people kept telling the news about Jesus in other places"

#### Luke 5:16

##### the deserted places

"lonely places" or "places where there were no other people"

#### Luke 5:18

##### mat

sleeping pad or bed or stretcher

##### was paralyzed

"could not move himself"

#### Luke 5:19

##### they went up to the housetop

Houses had flat roofs, and some houses had a ladder or staircase outside to make it easy to go up there. Alternate translation: "they went up to the flat roof of the house"

#### Luke 5:20

##### Seeing their faith, Jesus said

"When Jesus saw that they believed that he could heal the man, he said to the man"

##### Man

This is a general word that people used when speaking to a man whose name they did not know. It was not rude, but it also did not show special respect. Some languages might use a word like "friend" or "sir."

##### your sins are forgiven you

"you are forgiven" or "I forgive your sins"

#### Luke 5:21

##### question this

"discuss this" or "reason about this"

##### Who is this who speaks blasphemies?

This shows how shocked and angry they were at what Jesus said. Alternate translation: "This man is blaspheming God!" or "He blasphemes God by saying that!"

##### Who can forgive sins but God alone?

This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one can forgive sins but God alone!" or "God is the only one who can forgive sins!"

#### Luke 5:22

##### Why are you questioning this in your hearts?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not argue about this in your hearts." or "You should not doubt that I have the authority to forgive sins."

##### in your hearts

Here, "hearts" refers to people's minds or inner beings.

#### Luke 5:23

##### Which is easier: to say, 'Your sins are forgiven you' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: "You may think that it is easier to say 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up and walk.'"

#### Luke 5:24

##### you may know

Jesus was speaking to the scribes and Pharisees.

##### the Son of Man has authority

Jesus was referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, have authority"

##### I tell you

Jesus was saying this to the paralyzed man.

#### Luke 5:25

##### he got up

"the man stood up"

#### Luke 5:26

##### They were filled with fear

"They were very afraid" or "They were filled with awe"

##### extraordinary things

"amazing things" or "strange things"

#### Luke 5:27

##### Follow me

To "follow" someone is to become that person's disciple. Alternate translation: "Be my disciple" or "Come, follow me as your teacher"

#### Luke 5:29

##### were reclining at the table

It was customary to lie on a couch while eating at a feast and to prop oneself up with the left arm on some pillows. Alternate translation: "were eating at the table"

#### Luke 5:30

##### to his disciples

"to Jesus's disciples"

##### Why do you eat ... sinners?

The Pharisees and scribes express their disapproval that Jesus's disciples are eating with sinners. Alternate translation: "You should not eat ... sinners!"

##### sinners

people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

#### Luke 5:31

##### People who are well ... sick

Jesus uses this proverb to begin to tell them that he calls sinners to repentance the way a physician calls sick people to be healed.

##### only those who are sick

"only those who are sick need a physician"

##### a physician

"a doctor"

#### Luke 5:32

##### I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance

"I did not come to call righteous people to repent. I came to call sinners to repent"

#### Luke 5:33

##### They said to him

"The religious leaders said to Jesus"

#### Luke 5:34

##### Can anyone make the wedding attendants of the bridegroom fast while the bridegroom is still with them?

Jesus uses this question to cause the people to think about something they already know. Fasting is a sign of sadness. People do not do this when the bridegroom is with them. Alternate translation: "No one tells the wedding attendants of the bridegroom to fast while he is still with them."

##### wedding attendants

"guests" or "friends." These are friends who celebrate with a man who is getting married.

#### Luke 5:35

##### the days will come when

"soon" or "some day"

##### the bridegroom will be taken away from them

"people will take the bridegroom away from them" or "the bridegroom will have to go away from them"

#### Luke 5:36

##### No one tears ... and uses it to mend... If he does that ... he will tear

"People never rip ... and use it to repair ... If they do that ... they will tear"

##### will not fit with

"will not match" or "will not be the same as"

#### Luke 5:37

##### new wine

"grape juice." This refers to wine that has not yet fermented.

##### wineskins

These were bags made out of animal skins. Alternate translation: "wine bags" or "bags made of skin"

##### the new wine will burst the skins

When the new wine would ferment and expand, it would break the old skins because they could no longer stretch out.

##### the wine will be spilled

"the wine will spill out of the bags"

#### Luke 5:38

##### fresh wineskins

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags"

#### Luke 5:39

##### wants the new

"wants the new wine"

##### The old is better

"The old wine is better"

Chapter 6

1Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grainfields, and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain.2But some of the Pharisees said, "Why are you doing something that is not lawful to do on the Sabbath day?"

3Answering them, Jesus said, "Have you not even read what David did when he was hungry, he and the men who were with him?4He went into the house of God and took the bread of the presence and ate some of it, and also gave some to the men who were with him to eat, even though it was only lawful for the priests to eat it."5Then he said to them, "The Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath."

6It happened on another Sabbath that he went into the synagogue and taught the people there. A man was there whose right hand was withered.7The scribes and the Pharisees were watching him closely to see whether he would heal someone on the Sabbath, so that they might find a reason to accuse him.8But he knew what they were thinking and he said to the man whose hand was withered, "Get up and stand here in the middle of everyone." So the man got up and stood there.9Jesus said to them, "I ask you, is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good or to do harm, to save a life or to destroy it?"10Then he looked around at them all and said to the man, "Stretch out your hand." He did so, and his hand was restored.11But they were filled with senseless rage, and they talked to each other about what they might do to Jesus.

12It happened in those days that he went out to the mountain to pray. He continued all night in prayer to God.13When it was day, he called his disciples to him, and he chose twelve of them, whom he also named apostles.14The names of the apostles were Simon (whom he also named Peter) and his brother Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew,15Matthew, Thomas, James son of Alphaeus, Simon who was called the Zealot,16Judas son of James, and Judas Iscariot, who became a traitor.17Then Jesus came down the mountain with them and stood on a level place with a large crowd of his disciples and a large number of the people from Judea and Jerusalem and the seacoast of Tyre and Sidon.18They had come to listen to him and to be healed of their diseases. People who were troubled with unclean spirits were also healed.19Everyone in the crowd kept trying to touch him because power to heal was coming out from him, and he healed them all.

20Then he looked at his disciples and said,"Blessed are you who are poor,for yours is the kingdom of God.21Blessed are you who hunger now, for you will be filled.Blessed are you who weep now,for you will laugh.22Blessed are you when people hate you,and when they exclude you and insult youand reject your name as evil,because of the Son of Man.

23Rejoice in that day and leap for joy, because you will surely have a great reward in heaven, for their ancestors treated the prophets in the same way.24But woe to you who are rich,for you have already received your comfort.25Woe to you who are full now,for you will be hungry later. Woe to you who laugh now,for you will mourn and weep later.26Woe to you when all men speak well of you,for that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets.

27"But I say to you who are listening, love your enemies and do good to those who hate you.28Bless those who curse you and pray for those who mistreat you.29To him who strikes you on the one cheek, offer him also the other. If someone takes away your coat, do not withhold your tunic either.30Give to everyone who asks you. If someone takes away something that belongs to you, do not ask him to give it back to you.31As you want people to do to you, you should do the same to them.32If you only love people who love you, what reward is there for you? For even sinners love those who love them.33If you do good only to people who do good to you, what reward is there for you? For even sinners do the same.34If you only lend to people from whom you hope to be repaid, what reward is there for you? Even sinners lend to sinners, to receive back the same amount.35But love your enemies and do good to them. Lend, expecting nothing in return, and your reward will be great, and you will be sons of the Most High, for he himself is kind toward unthankful and evil people.36Be merciful, just as your Father is merciful.37Do not judge, and you will not be judged. Do not condemn, and you will not be condemned. Forgive others, and you will be forgiven.38Give, and it will be given to you. A good amount—pressed down, shaken together and spilling over—will pour into your lap. For with the measure you use, it will be measured back to you."

39Then he also told them a parable. "Can a blind person guide another blind person? If he did, they would both fall into a pit, would they not?40A disciple is not greater than his teacher, but everyone when he is fully trained will be like his teacher.41Why do you look at the tiny piece of straw that is in your brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye?42How can you say to your brother, 'Brother, let me take out the piece of straw that is in your eye,' when you yourself do not even see the log that is in your own eye? You hypocrite! First take the log out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to take out the piece of straw that is in your brother's eye.43For there is no good tree that produces rotten fruit, nor is there a rotten tree that produces good fruit.44For each tree is known by the kind of fruit it produces. For people do not gather figs from a thornbush, nor do they gather grapes from a briar bush.45The good man from the good treasure of his heart produces what is good, and the evil man from the evil treasure of his heart produces what is evil. For out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks.

46"Why do you call me, 'Lord, Lord,' and yet you do not obey the things that I say?47Every person who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them, I will tell you what he is like.48He is like a man building a house, who dug down deep in the ground and built the house's foundation on solid rock. When a flood came, the torrent of water flowed against that house but could not shake it, because it had been well built.49But the person who hears my words and does not obey them, he is like a man who built a house on top of the ground without a foundation. When the torrent of water flowed against that house, it immediately collapsed, and the ruin of that house was complete."

#### Luke 6:1

##### Now it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### grainfields

These are large sections of land where people had scattered wheat seed to grow wheat.

##### heads of grain

These are the topmost parts of the grain plant, which is a kind of large grass. The heads hold the mature, edible seeds of the plant.

##### rubbing them between their hands

"rubbing the husks off with their hands." They were rubbing off the outer husks so they could eat the seeds.

#### Luke 6:2

##### Why are you doing something that is not lawful to do on the Sabbath day?

The Pharisees considered even rubbing a handful of grain to be unlawful work. Alternate translation: "Why are you working on the Sabbath when it is against the law?"

#### Luke 6:3

##### Have you not even read what David did ... him?

Jesus is rebuking the Pharisees for not learning from the scriptures. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should learn from what you have read about what David did ... him!" or "Certainly you have read what David did ... him!"

#### Luke 6:4

##### the bread of the presence

This is the sacred bread that priests placed before God in the tabernacle. It represented God's presence. Alternate translation: "the bread of God's presence" or "the sacred bread"

#### Luke 6:5

##### The Son of Man is

Jesus was referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am"

#### Luke 6:6

##### hand was withered

The man's hand was damaged in such a way that he could not stretch it. It may have been almost closed into a fist, making it look small and wrinkled.

#### Luke 6:7

##### were watching him closely

"were watching Jesus carefully"

##### so that they might find

"because they wanted to find"

#### Luke 6:9

##### to them

"to the scribes and Pharisees"

##### I ask you, is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good or to do harm, to save a life or to destroy it?

Jesus asks this question so that the Pharisees would have to admit that he is right to heal on the Sabbath.

##### to do good or to do harm

"to help someone or to harm someone"

#### Luke 6:10

##### Stretch out your hand

"Hold out your hand" or "Extend your hand"

##### was restored

was healed

#### Luke 6:12

##### in those days

"around that time" or "not long after" or "one day around then"

##### he went out

"Jesus went out"

#### Luke 6:13

##### When it was day

"When it was morning" or "The next day"

##### whom he also named apostles

"whom he also made apostles" or "and he appointed them to be apostles"

#### Luke 6:14

##### his brother Andrew

"Simon's brother Andrew"

#### Luke 6:15

##### the Zealot

Possible meanings are 1) this title shows he was part of the group of people who wanted to free the Jewish people from Roman rule. Alternate translation: "the patriot" or "the nationalist" or 2) this shows that he was zealous for God to be honored. Alternate translation: "the passionate one"

#### Luke 6:16

##### became a traitor

"later betrayed his friend" or "later turned Jesus over to enemies"

#### Luke 6:18

##### to be healed

"for Jesus to heal them"

##### People who were troubled with unclean spirits were also healed

"Jesus also healed people who were troubled with unclean spirits" or "Jesus also healed people whom unclean spirits were bothering"

#### Luke 6:19

##### power to heal was coming out from him

"he had power to heal people" or "he was using his power to heal people"

#### Luke 6:20

##### Blessed are you who are poor

"You who are poor receive God's favor" or "You who are poor benefit"

##### for yours is the kingdom of God

"the kingdom of God belongs to you" or "you are a citizen in God's kingdom" or "God is your king" or "God is your ruler"

#### Luke 6:21

##### you will laugh

"you will laugh with joy" or "you will be joyful"

#### Luke 6:22

##### because of the Son of Man

"because you associate with the Son of Man" or "because they reject me, the Son of Man"

#### Luke 6:23

##### in that day

"when they do those things" or "when that happens"

##### leap for joy

"jump with joy" or "be very happy"

#### Luke 6:24

##### woe to you

"how terrible it is for you" or "trouble will come to you." This indicates that God's anger is directed at them, or that something bad will happen to them.

##### your comfort

"what comforts you" or "what satisfies you" or "what makes you happy"

#### Luke 6:25

##### who are full now

"whose stomachs are full now"

#### Luke 6:26

##### when all men speak well of you

"when everyone says good things about you"

##### that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets

"their ancestors also spoke well of the false prophets"

#### Luke 6:27

##### love ... do good

Each of these commands is to be followed continually, not just a single time.

#### Luke 6:28

##### Bless ... pray

Each of these commands is to be followed continually, not just a single time.

#### Luke 6:29

##### To him who strikes you on the cheek

"If anyone hits you on one side of your face"

##### offer him also the other

"turn your face so that he can strike the other cheek too"

##### do not withhold

"do not prevent him from taking"

#### Luke 6:30

##### Give to everyone who asks you

"If anyone asks you for something, give it to him"

##### do not ask him to give

"do not require him to give" or "do not demand that he give"

#### Luke 6:31

##### As you want people to do to you, you should do the same to them

"You should do to people the same as what you want them to do to you" or "Treat people they way you want them to treat you"

#### Luke 6:32

##### what reward is there for you?

"what reward will you receive?" This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "you will not receive any reward for that."

#### Luke 6:34

##### people from whom you hope to be repaid

"people who you expect will repay you" or "people who you believe will repay you"

#### Luke 6:35

##### expecting nothing in return

"not expecting the person to return what you have given him" or "not expecting the person to give you anything"

##### your reward will be great

"you will receive a great reward" or "you will receive good payment" or "you will get good gifts because of it"

##### you will be sons of the Most High

It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to human sons or children.

#### Luke 6:36

##### your Father

This refers to God. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Luke 6:37

##### Do not judge ... Do not condemn

"Do not judge people ... Do not condemn people"

##### and you

"and as a result you"

##### you will not be judged

Jesus does not say who will not judge. Possible meanings are 1) "God will not judge you" or 2) "no one will judge you"

##### you will be forgiven

Jesus does not say who will forgive. Possible meanings are 1) "God will forgive you" or 2) "people will forgive you"

#### Luke 6:38

##### it will be given to you

Jesus does not say who will give. Alternate translation: "and you will receive"

##### A good amount

"A generous amount" or "A large amount"

##### pressed down, shaken together and spilling over

These phrases emphasize that a great amount will be given. It will be like when someone puts a lot of grain into a container and he presses it down and shakes it so that it will fit. But even then there is so much grain that it spills over the top of the container.

##### it will be measured back to you

Jesus does not say who will measure things back to person. Alternate translation "they will measure things back to you"

#### Luke 6:39

##### Can a blind person guide another blind person?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "We know that a blind person cannot guide another blind person."

##### If he did

"If a blind person guides another blind person"

#### Luke 6:40

##### everyone when he is fully trained

"every disciple who has been trained well" or "every student whose teacher has fully taught him"

#### Luke 6:41

##### Why do you look ... brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye?

Jesus challenges the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: "Do not look ... brothers eye while you ignore the log that is in your own eye."

##### tiny piece of straw

"speck" or "splinter" or "bit of dust." Use a word for the smallest thing that commonly falls into a person's eyes.

##### brother

Here "brother" refers to a fellow Jew or a fellow believer in Jesus.

##### log

"beam" or "plank"

#### Luke 6:42

##### How can you say ... your own eye?

This can be translated as a statement or a command. Alternate translation: "You should not say ... your own eye."

#### Luke 6:43

##### good tree

"healthy tree"

##### rotten fruit

"bad fruit" or "decaying fruit"

#### Luke 6:44

##### each tree is known

"people know the type of tree" or "people recognize a tree"

##### thornbush

a plant or shrub that has thorns

##### briar bush

a vine or shrub that has thorns

#### Luke 6:45

##### The good man

"A good person." The word "good" here means righteous or moral. The word "man" here refers to a person, male or female.

##### the good treasure of his heart

This represents a person's good thoughts and attitudes. Alternate translation: "the good things he keeps inside himself"

##### produces what is good

This represents the good person saying and doing good things. Alternate translation: "brings out what is good"

##### out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks

"whatever fills his heart will come out when he speaks" or "what he thinks in his heart affects what he says with his mouth"

#### Luke 6:46

##### "Why do you call me, 'Lord, Lord,' and yet you do not obey the things that I say?

This can be translated as a statement or a command." Alternate translation: "You call me Lord, Lord,' yet you do not obey the things that I say." or "Do not call me ' 'Lord, Lord,' and neglect to obey what I say."

#### Luke 6:47

##### Every person who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them, I will tell you what he is like

"I will tell you what every person is like who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them"

#### Luke 6:48

##### dug down deep in the ground and built the house's foundation on solid rock

Some cultures may not be familiar with this process of building a stable house. Alternate translation: "who worked hard and built a stable house"

##### the torrent of water flowed against that house

"the fast-moving water crashed against the house" or "the river beat on the house"

##### could not shake it

Possible meanings are 1) "could not cause the house to shake" or 2) "could not destroy the house."

##### because it had been well built

"because the man had built it well"

#### Luke 6:49

##### who built a house on top of the ground without a foundation

If people would not understand this, it can be expressed in a more general way. Alternate translation: "who did not build his house properly" or "who did not make his house strong"

##### the ruin of that house was complete

"that house was completely destroyed"

Chapter 7

1After Jesus had finished everything he was saying in the hearing of the people, he entered Capernaum.

2Now a centurion had a slave who was highly regarded by him, and he was sick and about to die.3When the centurion heard about Jesus, he sent to him elders of the Jews, asking him to come and heal his servant.4When they had come to Jesus, they asked him earnestly, saying, "He is worthy to have you do this for him,5because he loves our nation, and he is the one who built the synagogue for us."

6So Jesus continued on his way with them. But when he was not far from the house, the centurion sent friends to say to him, "Lord, do not trouble yourself, because I am not worthy for you to come under my roof.7For this reason I did not even consider myself worthy to come to you, but just say a word and my servant will be healed.8For I also am a man who is under authority, with soldiers under me. I say to this one, 'Go,' and he goes, and to another one, 'Come,' and he comes, and to my servant, 'Do this,' and he does it."

9When Jesus heard this, he was amazed at him, and turning to the crowd following him said, "I say to you, not even in Israel have I found such faith."10When those who had been sent returned to the house, they found the servant was healthy.

11Soon after that, Jesus went to a town called Nain, and his disciples and a great crowd went with him.12As he came near to the gate of the town, behold, a man who had died was being carried out, the only son of his mother (who was a widow), and a rather large crowd from the town was with her.13When the Lord saw her, he was deeply moved with compassion for her and said to her, "Do not cry."14Then he went up and touched the wooden frame on which they carried the body, and those carrying it stood still. He said, "Young man, I say to you, arise."15The dead man sat up and began to speak, and Jesus gave him to his mother.

16Then fear overcame all of them, and they kept praising God, saying, "A great prophet has been raised among us" and "God has looked upon his people."17This news about Jesus spread throughout the whole of Judea and all the neighboring regions.

18John's disciples told him about all these things. Then John called two of his disciples19and sent them to the Lord to say, "Are you the one who is to come, or should we look for another?"

20When they had come near to Jesus, the men said, "John the Baptist has sent us to you to say, 'Are you the one who is coming, or should we look for another?'"

21In that hour he healed many people from sicknesses and afflictions and from evil spirits, and to many blind people he gave sight.22Jesus answered and said to them, "After you have gone on your way, report to John what you have seen and heard. Blind people are receiving sight, lame people are walking, lepers are being cleansed, deaf people are hearing, people who have died are being raised back to life, and the poor are being told good news.23The person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions is blessed."

24After John's messengers had gone away, Jesus began to say to the crowds about John, "What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?25But what did you go out to see? A man dressed in soft clothes? Look, those who wear splendid clothing and who live in luxury are in kings' palaces.26But what did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I say to you, and more than a prophet.27This is he of whom it is written,'See, I am sending my messenger before your face,who will prepare your way before you.'28I say to you, among those born of women none is greater than John. Yet the one who is least in the kingdom of God is greater than he is."29(When all the people heard this, including the tax collectors, they declared that God is righteous, because they had been baptized with the baptism of John.30But the Pharisees and the experts in the law rejected God's purpose for themselves, because they had not been baptized by John.)31"To what, then, can I compare the people of this generation? What are they like?32They are like children playing in the marketplace, who sit and call to one another and say,'We played a flute for you,and you did not dance.We sang a funeral song,and you did not cry.'33For John the Baptist came eating no bread and drinking no wine, and you say, 'He has a demon.'34The Son of Man came eating and drinking, and you say, 'Look, he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!'35But wisdom is justified by all her children."

36Now one of the Pharisees invited Jesus to eat with him. So after Jesus entered into the Pharisee's house, he reclined at the table to eat.37Behold, there was a woman in the city who was a sinner. When she found out that he was reclining at the table in the Pharisee's house, she brought an alabaster jar of perfumed oil.38As she stood behind him near his feet, weeping, she began to wet his feet with her tears, and she wiped them with her hair and kissed them and anointed them with perfumed oil.39When the Pharisee who had invited Jesus saw this, he thought to himself, saying, "If this man were a prophet, then he would know who and what type of woman is touching him, that she is a sinner."

40Jesus responded and said to him, "Simon, I have something to say to you."

He said, "Say it, Teacher!"

41Jesus said, "A certain moneylender had two debtors. The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other fifty.42When they could not pay him, he forgave them both. Therefore, which of them will love him more?"

43Simon answered him and said, "I suppose the one whom he forgave the most."

Jesus said to him, "You have judged correctly."44Jesus turned to the woman and said to Simon, "You see this woman. I have entered into your house. You gave me no water for my feet, but she has wet my feet with her tears and wiped them with her hair.45You did not give me a kiss, but from the time I came in she did not stop kissing my feet.46You did not anoint my head with oil, but she has anointed my feet with perfumed oil.47For this reason I say to you, her sins, which were many, have been forgiven—for she loved much. But the one who is forgiven little, loves little."48Then he said to her, "Your sins are forgiven."

49Those reclining together began to say among themselves, "Who is this that even forgives sins?"

50Then Jesus said to the woman, "Your faith has saved you. Go in peace."

#### Luke 7:1

##### in the hearing of the people

"to the people who were listening to him" or "to the people who were there" or "for the people to hear"

#### Luke 7:2

##### who was highly regarded by him

"whom the centurion valued" or "whom he respected"

#### Luke 7:4

##### asked him earnestly

"pleaded with him" or "begged him"

##### He is worthy

"The centurion is worthy"

#### Luke 7:5

##### our nation

"our people." This refers to the Jewish people.

#### Luke 7:6

##### continued on his way

"went along"

##### do not trouble yourself

The centurion was speaking politely to Jesus. Alternate translation: "do not trouble yourself by coming to my house" or "I do not wish to bother you"

##### to come under my roof

"to come into my house"

#### Luke 7:7

##### just say a word

The servant understood that Jesus could heal the servant just by speaking. Alternate translation: "just give the order" or "just give the command"

#### Luke 7:8

##### I also am a man who is under authority

"I also have someone over me that I must obey"

##### under me

"under my authority"

#### Luke 7:9

##### I say to you

Jesus said this to emphasize the surprising thing that he was about to tell them.

##### not even in Israel have I found such faith.

Jesus expected Jewish people to have this kind of faith, but they did not. He did not expect Gentiles to have this kind of faith, yet this man did. Alternate translation: "I have not found any Israelite who trusts me as much as this Gentile does!"

#### Luke 7:10

##### those who had been sent

"the people whom the Roman officer had sent to Jesus"

#### Luke 7:12

##### a man who had died was being carried out

"people were carrying out of the city a man who had died"

##### carried out, the only son of his mother (who was a widow), and a rather large crowd

"carried out. He was his mother's only son, and she was a widow. A rather large crowd"

#### Luke 7:13

##### was deeply moved with compassion for her

"felt very sorry for her"

#### Luke 7:14

##### he went up

"he went forward" or "he approached the dead man"

##### the wooden frame on which they carried the body

This was a stretcher or bed that they used to move the body to the burial place.

##### arise

get up"

#### Luke 7:15

##### The dead man

It may be necessary to make it clear that the man was not still dead. Alternate translation: "The man who had been dead"

#### Luke 7:16

##### fear overcame all of them

"fear filled all of them" or "they all became very afraid"

##### A great prophet has been raised among us

"A great prophet has appeared among us" or "A great prophet has come up among us"

##### God has looked upon his people

"God has cared for his people"

#### Luke 7:17

##### This news about Jesus spread

"People spread this news about Jesus" or "People told others this report about Jesus"

#### Luke 7:18

##### told him

"told John"

#### Luke 7:20

##### the men said, "John the Baptist has sent us to you to say, 'Are you ... or should we look for another?'"

This sentence can be reworded so that it only has one direct quote. Alternate translation: "the men said that John the Baptist had sent them to him to ask, 'Are you the one who is coming, or should we look for another?'" or "the men said, 'John the Baptist has sent us to you to ask if you are the one who is coming, or if we should look for another.'"

#### Luke 7:21

##### In that hour

"At that time"

##### and from evil spirits

"and he healed people from evil spirits" or "and he set people free from evil spirits"

#### Luke 7:22

##### said to them

"said to John's messengers" or "said to the men that John sent"

##### the poor are being told the good news

"poor people are hearing the good news"

#### Luke 7:23

##### The person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions is blessed

"God blesses the person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions"

##### The person who does not ... is blessed

"Whoever does not ... is blessed" or "People who do not ... are blessed."

#### Luke 7:24

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to speak to the crowd about John the Baptist. He asks questions to lead them to think about what John is really like.

##### What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

"Did you go out to the desert to see a reed shaken by the wind? Of course not!" or "Surely you did not go out to the desert see a reed being shaken by the wind!"

##### A reed shaken by the wind

"Someone who is like a reed shaken by the wind"

#### Luke 7:25

##### But what did you go out to see? A man dressed in soft clothes?

"Did you go out to see a man dressed in soft clothes? Of course not!" or "You certainly did not go out to see a man dressed in soft clothes!"

##### dressed in soft clothes

This refers to expensive clothing. Normal clothing was rough. Alternate translation: "wearing luxurious clothing"

##### kings' palaces

A palace is a large, expensive house that a king lives in.

#### Luke 7:26

##### But what did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I say to you

"Did you go out to see a prophet? Yes, I say to you," or "But you actually went out to see a prophet"

##### and more than a prophet

"and not just an ordinary prophet" or "and he is more important than a prophet"

#### Luke 7:27

##### This is he of whom it is written

"John is the one the prophet wrote about long ago"

##### before your face

"in front of you" or "to go ahead of you"

##### your ... your ... you

The words "your" and "you" are singular because God was speaking to the Messiah in the quotation.

#### Luke 7:28

##### I say to you

Jesus is speaking to the crowd, so "you" refers to the crowd.

##### among those born of women

"among those to whom a woman has given birth." This refers to all people. Alternate translation: "of all the people who have ever lived"

##### none is greater than John

"John is the greatest"

##### the one who is least in the kingdom of God is greater than he is

"whoever is least important in the kingdom of God is greater than John"

#### Luke 7:29

##### because they had been baptized with the baptism of John

"because they had let John baptize them" or "because John had baptized them"

#### Luke 7:30

##### rejected God's purpose for themselves

"rejected what God wanted them to do" or "chose to disobey what God told them"

##### they had not been baptized by John

"they did not let John baptize them" or "they rejected John's baptism"

#### Luke 7:31

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the people about John the Baptist.

##### To what, then, can I compare the people of this generation? What are they like?

Jesus uses these questions to introduce a comparison. They can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is what I compare this generation to. This is what they are like."

##### the people of this generation

"the people who are alive now"

#### Luke 7:32

##### and you did not dance

"but you did not dance to the music"

##### and you did not cry

"but you did not cry with us"

#### Luke 7:33

##### eating no bread

If your language does not have a word for bread, you could translate it with a more general expression. Alternate translation: "not eating ordinary food"

##### you say, 'He has a demon.'

"you say that he has a demon"

#### Luke 7:34

##### The Son of Man came

"I, the Son of Man, came"

##### you say, 'Look, he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!'

"you accuse him of eating and drinking too much and of being a friend of tax collectors and sinners." or "you say that I am a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors sinners."

##### he is a gluttonous man

"he is a greedy eater" or "he continually eats too much food"

#### Luke 7:35

##### wisdom is justified by all her children

This appears to be a proverb that Jesus applied to this situation, probably to teach that wise people would understand that the people should not have rejected Jesus and John.

#### Luke 7:36

##### reclined at the table to eat

"sat down at the table to eat." It was the custom at a relaxed meal for men to eat while lying down comfortably around the table.

#### Luke 7:37

##### who was a sinner

"who lived a sinful lifestyle" or "who had a reputation for living a sinful life."

##### an alabaster jar of perfumed oil

"a jar made of soft stone with perfume in it"

#### Luke 7:38

##### anointed them with perfumed oil

"poured perfume on them"

#### Luke 7:39

##### he thought to himself, saying

"he said to himself"

##### If this man were a prophet, then he would know who and what type of woman is touching him, that she is a sinner

The Pharisee thought that Jesus was not a prophet because he allowed the sinful woman to touch him.

#### Luke 7:40

##### Simon

This was the name of the Pharisee who invited Jesus into his home. This was not Simon Peter.

#### Luke 7:41

##### A certain moneylender had two debtors

"Two men owed money to a certain moneylender"

##### five hundred denarii

"five hundred silver coins" or "five hundred days' wages"

##### and the other fifty

"and the other debtor owed fifty denarii"

#### Luke 7:42

##### he forgave them both

"he forgave their debts" or "he canceled their debts"

#### Luke 7:43

##### I suppose

Simon was cautious about his answer. Alternate translation: "Probably"

##### You have judged correctly

"You are right"

#### Luke 7:44

##### Jesus turned to the woman

Jesus directed Simon's attention to the woman by turning to her.

##### You gave me no water for my feet

"You did not give me water for my feet." It was a basic responsibility of a host to provide water and a towel for guests to wash and dry their feet after walking on dusty roads.

##### she has wet my feet with her tears and wiped them with her hair

The woman used her tears and hair in place of the missing water and towel.

#### Luke 7:45

##### You did not give me a kiss

"You did not greet me with a kiss." A good host in that culture would greet his guests with a kiss on the cheek. Simon did not do this.

##### did not stop kissing my feet

The woman kissed the feet of Jesus rather than his cheek as a sign of extreme repentance and humility.

#### Luke 7:46

##### You did not anoint my head with oil

"You did not put oil on my head" or "You did not welcome me by anointing my head with oil." The custom was for the host to welcome an honored guest by putting oil on his head.

##### she has anointed my feet

The woman greatly honored Jesus by doing this. She demonstrated humility by anointing his feet instead of his head.

#### Luke 7:47

##### her sins, which were many, have been forgiven

"God has forgiven her many sins"

##### for she loved much

Her love was the evidence that her sins were forgiven. Some languages require that the object of "love" be stated. Alternate translation: "for she greatly loves the one who forgave her"

##### the one who is forgiven little, loves little

"anyone who is forgiven for only a few things loves little"

#### Luke 7:48

##### Your sins are forgiven

"You are forgiven" or "I forgive your sins"

#### Luke 7:49

##### Those reclining together

"The people who were reclining together around the table" or "The people who were at the table"

##### Who is this that even forgives sins?

The religious leaders knew that only God could forgive sins, but they did not believe that Jesus was God. This question was probably an accusation. Alternate translation: "Who is this man who claims to forgive sins?” or “This man says that he forgives sins. Who does he think he is?”

#### Luke 7:50

##### Your faith has saved you

"Because of your faith, you are saved" or "Because you believe, God has saved you"

##### Go in peace

This is a way of saying good-bye while giving a blessing at the same time. Alternate translation: "May you have peace as you go"

Chapter 8

1It happened soon afterward that Jesus began traveling around to different cities and villages, preaching and proclaiming the good news about the kingdom of God. The twelve were with him,2as well as certain women who had been healed of evil spirits and diseases: Mary who was called Magdalene, from whom seven demons had been driven out;3Joanna, the wife of Chuza, Herod's manager; Susanna; and many others, who, out of their possessions, provided for their needs.

4While a large crowd of people was gathering, and people were coming to him from town after town, he told a parable:5"A farmer went out to sow his seed. As he sowed, some fell beside the road and it was trampled underfoot, and the birds of the sky devoured it.6Some fell on the rock, and as soon as it grew up, it withered away, because it had no moisture.7Some fell among thorns, and the thorns grew up together with the seed and choked it.8But some fell on good soil and produced a crop that was a hundred times greater." After Jesus had said these things, he called out, "Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear."

9His disciples asked him what this parable meant.10He said, "The knowledge of the secrets of the kingdom of God has been given to you, but for others I speak in parables, so that'seeing they may not see,and hearing they may not understand.'11Now this is the meaning of the parable: The seed is the word of God.12The ones along the road are those who have heard, but then the devil comes and takes away the word from their hearts so they may not believe and be saved.13The ones on the rock are those who, when they hear the word, receive it with joy. But they have no root; they believe for a while, and in a time of testing they fall away.14The seeds that fell among the thorns are people who hear the word, but as they go on their way, they are choked by the cares and riches and pleasures of this life, and their fruit does not mature.15But the seed that fell on the good soil, these are the ones who, hearing the word with an honest and good heart, hold it securely and bear fruit with patient endurance.

16"No one lights a lamp and covers it with a bowl or puts it under a bed. Rather, he puts it on a lampstand so that everyone who enters may see the light.17For nothing is hidden that will not be made known, nor is anything secret that will not be known and come into the light.18So listen carefully, for to the one who has, more will be given to him, but the one who does not have, even what he thinks he has will be taken away from him."

19Then his mother and brothers came to him, but they could not get near him because of the crowd.20He was told, "Your mother and your brothers are standing outside, wanting to see you."21But Jesus answered and said to them, "My mother and my brothers are those who hear the word of God and do it."

22Now one day he got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let us go over to the other side of the lake." They set sail.23But as they sailed he fell asleep. A terrible windstorm came down on the lake, and their boat was filling with water, and they were in danger.24Then Jesus' disciples came over to him and woke him up, saying, "Master! Master! We are about to die!"

He awoke and rebuked the wind and the raging of the water, and they ceased, and there was a calm.25Then he said to them, "Where is your faith?"

But they were afraid and amazed, and they asked one another, "Who then is this, that he commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him?"

26They sailed to the region of the Gerasenes, which is across the lake from Galilee.27When Jesus stepped on the land, he was met by a certain man from the city who had demons. For a long time he had worn no clothes, and he did not live in a house but among the tombs.28When he saw Jesus, he cried out and fell down before him and he said with a loud voice, "What have you to do with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I beg you, do not torment me."29For Jesus had commanded the unclean spirit to come out of the man. For many times it had seized him, and though he was bound with chains and shackles and kept under guard, he had broken his chains and he would be driven by the demon into the wilderness.

30Then Jesus asked him, "What is your name?"

He said, "Legion," for many demons had entered into him.31They kept begging him not to command them to go away into the abyss.32Now a large herd of pigs was there feeding on the hillside. The demons begged him to let them go into them, and he gave them permission.33So the demons came out of the man and went into the pigs, and the herd rushed down the steep slope into the lake and was drowned.34When those tending the pigs saw what had happened, they ran off and told about it in the city and countryside.35So the people went out to see what had happened, and they came to Jesus and found the man from whom the demons had gone out. He was sitting at the feet of Jesus, clothed and in his right mind; and they were afraid.36Then those who had seen it told them how the man who had been possessed by demons had been healed.37Then all the people of the region of the Gerasenes asked Jesus to depart from them, for they were overwhelmed with great fear. So he got into the boat and returned.

38The man from whom the demons had gone out begged him to let him go with him, but Jesus sent him away, saying,39"Return to your home and give a full account of what God has done for you." The man went on his way, proclaiming throughout the whole city what Jesus had done for him.

40Now when Jesus returned, the crowd welcomed him, for they were all expecting him.41Behold, a man named Jairus, who was one of the leaders of the synagogue, came and fell down at Jesus' feet, and he begged him to come to his house42because his only daughter, a girl of about twelve years of age, was dying. As Jesus was on his way, the crowds of people pressed together around him.

43Now a woman was there who had been bleeding for twelve years [1](#footnote-target-1) and could not be healed by anyone.44She came behind Jesus and touched the edge of his coat, and immediately her bleeding stopped.45Jesus said, "Who was it who touched me?"

When all denied it, Peter said, "Master, the crowds of people are all around you and they are pressing in against you."

46But Jesus said, "Someone did touch me, for I know that power has gone out from me."47When the woman saw that she could not escape notice, she came trembling and fell down before him. In the presence of all the people she declared why she had touched him and how she had been immediately healed.48Then he said to her, "Daughter, your faith has made you well. Go in peace."

49While he was still speaking, someone came from the synagogue leader's house, saying, "Your daughter is dead. Do not trouble the teacher any longer."

50But when Jesus heard this, he answered Jairus, "Do not be afraid; only believe, and she will be healed."51When he came to the house, he allowed no one to enter with him, except Peter and John and James, and the father of the child and her mother.52Now all were mourning and wailing for her, but he said, "Do not weep; she is not dead but asleep."53But they began to mock him, knowing that she was dead.54But he took her by the hand and called out, saying, "Child, get up!"55Her spirit returned, and she rose up immediately. He ordered them to get her something to eat.56Her parents were astonished, but he ordered them to tell no one what had happened.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Scholars are divided whether the phrase and had spent all her money on physicians should be included here.

#### Luke 8:1

##### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark a new part of the story.

##### The twelve

"His twelve disciples" or "His twelve apostles"

#### Luke 8:2

##### who had been healed of evil spirits and diseases

"whom Jesus had set free from evil spirits and healed of diseases"

##### Mary who was called Magdalene, from whom seven demons had been driven out

"Mary, whom people called Magdalene, and from whom Jesus had driven out seven demons"

#### Luke 8:3

##### Joanna ... Susanna

They were two of the "certain women" mentioned in verse 2.

##### Joanna, the wife of Chuza, Herod's manager

"Joanna, the wife of Herod's manager, Chuza." Joanna was Chuza's wife, and Chuza was Herod's manager.

##### provided for their needs

"provided what they needed" or "supported Jesus and his twelve disciples"

#### Luke 8:4

##### were coming to him

"were coming to Jesus"

#### Luke 8:5

##### A farmer went out to sow his seed

"A farmer went out to scatter some seed in a field" or "A farmer went out to scatter some seeds in a field"

##### some fell

"some of the seed fell" or "some of the seeds fell"

##### it was trampled underfoot

"people walked on it" or "people walked on them"

##### the birds of the sky devoured it

"the birds ate all of the seed" or "birds flew down and ate all of the seeds"

#### Luke 8:6

##### it withered away

"each plant became dry and shriveled up" or "the plants became dry and shriveled up"

##### it had no moisture

"it did not have enough water" or "they were too dry"

#### Luke 8:7

##### choked it

The thorn plants took all the nutrients, water, and sunlight, so the farmer's plants could not grow well.

#### Luke 8:8

##### produced a crop

"grew a harvest" or "grew more seeds"

##### a hundred times greater

"a hundred times greater than the seed that he sowed"

##### Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear

Jesus is saying that what he has just said is important, and people may need to take some effort to understand it. Alternate translation: "Let the one who has ears to hear listen" or "If anyone can hear, let him listen and understand" or "If you have ears to hear, then listen"

#### Luke 8:10

##### The knowledge ... of the kingdom of God has been given to you

"God has given to you the knowledge ... of the kingdom of God" or "You have received the knowledge ... of the kingdom of God"

##### the secrets of the kingdom of God

These are truths that have been hidden, but Jesus is now revealing them.

##### for others

"for other people." This refers to the people who rejected the teaching of Jesus and did not follow him.

##### seeing they may not see

"though they see, they will not perceive" or "though they see things, they will not understand them" or "though they see things happen, they will not understand what they mean"

##### hearing they may not understand

"though they hear, they will not understand" or "though they hear instruction, they will not understand the truth." This is a quote from the prophet Isaiah.

#### Luke 8:11

##### The seed is the word of God

"The seed is the message from God"

#### Luke 8:12

##### The ones along the road

"The seeds that fell along the path"

##### are those who have heard

"represent people who have heard" or "show what happens to people who have heard"

##### the devil comes and takes away the word from their hearts

"the devil comes and takes away the message of God from their thoughts"

#### Luke 8:14

##### The seeds that fell among the thorns are people

"The seeds that fell among the thorns represent people"

##### they are choked by the cares and riches and pleasures of this life

"the cares and riches and pleasures of this life choke them"

##### the cares

"the things that people worry about"

##### pleasures of this life

"things in this life that people enjoy"

##### and their fruit does not mature

"and they do not bear ripe fruit" or "and, like a plant that does not produce mature fruit, they do not produce good works"

#### Luke 8:15

##### the seed that fell on the good soil, these are the ones

"the seed that fell on the good soil represents the people"

##### bear fruit with patient endurance

"produce fruit by enduring patiently" or "produce fruit by continued effort"or "like healthy plants that produce good fruit, they produce good works by persevering"

#### Luke 8:16

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues with another parable.

#### Luke 8:17

##### nothing is hidden that will not be made known

"everything that is hidden will be made known"

##### nor is anything secret that will not be known and come into the light

"and everything that is secret will be made known and will come into the light"

#### Luke 8:18

##### to the one who has, more will be given to him

"whoever has understanding will be given more understanding" or "God will enable those who believe the truth to understand even more"

##### the one who does not have, even what he thinks he has will be taken away from him

"whoever does not have understanding will lose even the understanding he thinks he has" or "God will cause those who do not believe the truth not to understand even the little that they think they have understood"

#### Luke 8:20

##### He was told

"People told him" or "Someone told him"

#### Luke 8:21

##### My mother and my brothers are those who hear the word of God and do it

The people who were coming to listen to Jesus were as important to him as his own family was. Alternate translation: "Those who hear the word of God and obey it are like a mother and brothers to me"

#### Luke 8:22

##### They set sail

"They started sailing" or "They started their trip"

#### Luke 8:23

##### he fell asleep

"Jesus began to sleep"

##### their boat was filling with water

The strong winds caused high waves, and the water went into the boat.

#### Luke 8:24

##### the raging of the water

"the violent waves"

##### they ceased

"the wind and the waves stopped" or "they became still"

#### Luke 8:25

##### Where is your faith?

Jesus rebukes them mildly because they do not trust him to take care of them. This can be worded as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have faith!" or "You should trust me!"

##### Who then is this, that he commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him?

This question expresses shock and confusion over how Jesus is able to control the storm. Alternate translation: "What kind of man is this? He commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him!"

#### Luke 8:26

##### the region of the Gerasenes

The Gerasenes were people from the city called Gerasa.

#### Luke 8:27

##### a certain man from the city who had demons

"a certain man from the city, and this man had demons"

##### who had demons

"who was controlled by demons" or "whom demons controlled"

##### tombs

These are places where people put dead bodies. They may have been caves or small buildings that the man could use for shelter.

#### Luke 8:28

##### he cried out

"he screamed" or "he shrieked"

##### fell down before him

"he knelt before Jesus" or "lay down before Jesus." He did not fall accidentally.

##### he said with a loud voice

"he said loudly" or "he shouted out"

##### What have you to do with me

"Why are you bothering me"

##### Son of the Most High God

It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Luke 8:29

##### many times it had seized him

"many times it had taken control of the man" or "many times it had gone into him." This tells about what the demon had done many times before Jesus met the man.

##### though he was bound ... and kept under guard

"though the people had bound him ... and guarded him"

##### he would be driven by the demon into the wilderness

"the demon would make him go into the wilderness"

#### Luke 8:30

##### Legion

A legion is a large number of soldiers or people. Alternate translation: "Battalion" or "Brigade" or "Army"

#### Luke 8:31

##### They kept begging him

"The demons kept begging Jesus"

#### Luke 8:32

##### was there feeding on the hillside

"was nearby eating grass on the hill"

#### Luke 8:33

##### rushed

ran very fast

#### Luke 8:35

##### found the man from whom the demons had gone out

"saw the man whom the demons had left"

##### in his right mind

"sane" or "behaving normally"

#### Luke 8:36

##### those who had seen it

"those who had seen what had happened"

##### the man who had been possessed by demons had been healed

"Jesus had healed the man whom demons had possessed" or "Jesus had healed the man whom demons had controlled"

#### Luke 8:37

##### the region of the Gerasenes

"that area of the Gerasenes" or "the area where the Gerasene people lived." See how you translated this in 8:26

##### they were overwhelmed with great fear

"they were very afraid"

##### and returned

"and returned across the lake" or "to go back to the other side of the lake"

#### Luke 8:39

##### give a full account of what God has done for you

"tell them everything about what God has done for you"

#### Luke 8:41

##### fell down at Jesus' feet

Possible meanings are 1) "bowed down at Jesus' feet" or 2) "lay down on the ground at Jesus' feet." Jairus did not fall accidentally. He did this as a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

#### Luke 8:42

##### was dying

"was about to die"

##### As Jesus was on his way

"As Jesus went with him"

##### the crowds of people pressed together around him

"the people were crowding tightly around Jesus"

#### Luke 8:43

##### had been bleeding

"had a flow of blood." She was probably bleeding from her womb even when it was not the normal time for it. Some cultures may have a polite way of referring to this condition.

##### and could not be healed by anyone

"but no one could heal her"

#### Luke 8:44

##### touched the edge of his coat

"touched the fringe of his robe." Jewish men wore tassels on the edges of their robes. This is probably what she touched.

#### Luke 8:46

##### Someone did touch me

It may be helpful to distinguish this intentional touch from the accidental touches of the crowd. Alternate translation: "Someone deliberately touched me"

##### I know that power has gone out from me

Jesus did not lose power or become weak, but his power healed the woman. Alternate translation: "I know that healing power went out from me" or "I know that my power healed someone"

#### Luke 8:47

##### that she could not escape notice

"that she could not prevent people from noticing her" or "that she could not keep it a secret that she was the one who had touched Jesus"

##### she came trembling

"she came trembling with fear"

##### fell down before him

Possible meanings are 1) "bowed down in front of Jesus" or 2) "lay down on the ground at Jesus's feet." She did not fall accidentally. This was a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

#### Luke 8:48

##### Daughter

This was a kind way of speaking to a woman. Your language may have another way of showing this kindness.

##### your faith has made you well

"because of your faith, you have become well" or "because you believe, you are healed"

##### Go in peace

This is a way of saying "Goodbye" and giving a blessing at the same time. Alternate translation: "As you go, do not worry anymore" or "May God give you peace as you go"

#### Luke 8:49

##### the synagogue leader

This refers to Jairus (Luke 8:41).

#### Luke 8:50

##### she will be healed

"she will be well" or "she will live again"

#### Luke 8:51

##### When he came to the house

"When they came to the house." Jesus went there with Jairus. Some of Jesus's disciples also went with them.

##### he allowed no one to enter with him

"Jesus did not allow anyone to go inside with him"

#### Luke 8:53

##### began to mock him, knowing that she was dead

"laughed at him because they knew that the girl was dead"

#### Luke 8:54

##### he took her by the hand

"Jesus took hold of the girl's hand"

#### Luke 8:55

##### Her spirit returned

"Her spirit returned to her body" or Her life returned" or "She became alive again"

#### Luke 8:56

##### to tell no one

"not to tell anyone"

Chapter 9

1He called the twelve together and gave them power and authority to drive out all demons and to cure diseases.2He sent them out to preach the kingdom of God and to heal the sick.3He said to them, "Take nothing for your journey—no staff, no wallet, no bread, no money, and no extra tunic.4Whatever house you enter, stay there until you leave.5Wherever they do not receive you, when you leave that town, shake off the dust from your feet as a testimony against them."6Then they departed and went through the villages, proclaiming the gospel and healing everywhere.

7Now Herod the tetrarch heard about all that was happening, and he was perplexed, because it was said by some that John had risen from the dead,8and others said that Elijah had appeared, and still others that one of the prophets of long ago had risen.9Herod said, "I beheaded John. Who is this about whom I hear such things?" And so he tried to see him.

10When the apostles returned, they told him everything they had done. Then he took them with him, and they went away privately to a town called Bethsaida.11But when the crowds heard about this, they followed him. He welcomed them and spoke to them about the kingdom of God, and he cured those who needed healing.12Now the day was about to come to an end, and the twelve came to him and said, "Send the crowd away that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside to find lodging and food, because we are here in an isolated place."

13But he said to them, "You give them something to eat."

They said, "We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish—unless we go and buy food for all these people."

14(There were about five thousand men.) He said to his disciples, "Have them sit down in groups of about fifty each."15So they did this, and made the people sit down.16Taking the five loaves and the two fish, he looked up to heaven, he blessed them and broke them into pieces, and he gave them to the disciples to set before the crowd.17They all ate and were satisfied, and what was left over was picked up—twelve baskets of broken pieces.

18It came about while Jesus was praying by himself, the disciples were with him. He questioned them, saying, "Who do the crowds say that I am?"

19They answered, "John the Baptist. But others say Elijah, and others say that one of the prophets from long ago has risen."

20Then he said to them, "But who do you say that I am?"

Peter answered, "The Christ of God."

21But he warned and instructed them to tell this to no one,22saying, "The Son of Man must suffer many things and be rejected by the elders and chief priests and scribes, and he will be killed and on the third day be raised."23Then he said to them all, "If anyone wants to come after me, he must deny himself and take up his cross daily and follow me.24Whoever would save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for my sake will save it.25What profit is there for a person to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself?26Whoever is ashamed of me and my words, of him will the Son of Man be ashamed when he comes in his own glory and the glory of the Father and of the holy angels.27But truly I say to you, there are some standing here who will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God."

28Now about eight days after Jesus said these words, he took with him Peter and John and James and went up on the mountain to pray.29As he was praying, the form of his face was changed, and his clothes became brilliant white.30Behold, two men were talking with him, Moses and Elijah,31who appeared in glory, talking with him about his departure, which he was about to bring to completion in Jerusalem.32Now Peter and those who were with him were heavy with sleep, but when they became fully awake, they saw his glory and the two men who were standing with him.33As they were going away from Jesus, Peter said to him, "Master, it is good for us to be here. Let us make three shelters, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah." (He did not know what he was saying.)34As he was saying this, a cloud came and overshadowed them, and they were afraid as they entered into the cloud.35A voice came out of the cloud, saying, "This is my Son, the one who is chosen; listen to him."36When the voice had spoken, Jesus was found alone. They kept silent and told no one in those days anything of what they had seen.

37Now on the next day, when they came down from the mountain, a large crowd met him.38Behold, a man from the crowd cried out, saying, "Teacher, I beg you to look at my son, for he is my only child.39You see, a spirit takes control over him and he suddenly screams; it causes him to have convulsions so that he foams at the mouth. It hardly ever leaves him and it bruises him badly.40I begged your disciples to force it out, but they could not."

41Jesus answered and said, "You unbelieving and perverse generation, how long must I be with you and put up with you? Bring your son here."42While the boy was coming, the demon threw him to the ground and shook him with convulsions. But Jesus rebuked the unclean spirit and healed the boy, and gave him back to his father.43Then they were all amazed at the greatness of God. While they all were marveling at everything he was doing, he said to his disciples,44"Let these words go deeply into your ears: The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men."45But they did not understand this statement. It was hidden from them, so they could not know its meaning, and yet they were afraid to ask about this statement.

46Then an argument started among them about which of them would be the greatest.47But Jesus, knowing the reasoning in their hearts, took a little child and put him by his side48and said to them, "Whoever welcomes this child in my name welcomes me; and whoever welcomes me welcomes the one who sent me. For whoever is least among you all is the one who is great."

49John answered, "Master, we saw someone forcing out demons in your name and we prevented him, because he does not follow along with us."50"Do not stop him," Jesus said, "because whoever is not against you is for you."

51When the days drew near for him to be taken up, he set his face to go to Jerusalem.52He sent messengers on ahead of him, and they went and entered into a Samaritan village to prepare everything for him.53But the people there did not welcome him because he had set his face to go to Jerusalem.54When the disciples James and John saw this, they said, "Lord, do you want us to command fire to come down from heaven and destroy them?"55But he turned and rebuked them,56and they went on to another village.

57As they were going along the road, someone said to him, "I will follow you wherever you go."

58Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and birds in the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."59Then he said to another, "Follow me."

But he said, "Lord, first let me go and bury my father."

60But he said to him, "Leave the dead to bury their own dead. But as for you, go and proclaim far and wide the kingdom of God."

61Then someone else said, "I will follow you, Lord, but first let me say goodbye to those in my home."

62Jesus replied to him, "No one who puts his hand to the plow and looks back is fit for the kingdom of God."

#### Luke 9:1

##### He called

"Jesus called"

##### power and authority

Jesus gave them both the ability and the right to heal people.

##### to drive out all demons

"over all demons" or "to make all demons go away"

#### Luke 9:2

##### sent them out

"sent them to various places" or "told them to go"

##### to preach the kingdom of God

“to preach about the kingdom of God” or “to teach people about how God was going to show himself as king”

#### Luke 9:3

##### He said to them

"Jesus said to the twelve" or "Before they left, Jesus said to them"

##### Take nothing

"Do not take anything with you" or "Do not bring anything with you"

##### staff

a large stick that people use for balance when climbing or walking on uneven ground, as well as for defense against people who might attack them

##### wallet

a bag a traveler uses for carrying what he needs on a journey

##### bread

This is here used as a general reference to "food."

#### Luke 9:4

##### until you leave

"until you leave that town" or "until you leave that place"

#### Luke 9:5

##### Wherever they do not receive you, when you leave

"Here is what you should do in any town where the people do not receive you: When you leave"

##### shake off the dust from your feet as a testimony against them

Doing this would show that the preachers rejected the people of that town. They did not want even the dust of that town to remain on them.

#### Luke 9:6

##### they departed

"they left the place were Jesus was"

##### healing everywhere

"healing people wherever they went"

#### Luke 9:7

##### Now Herod

The word "Now" marks a pause in the main story. In verses 7-9, Luke tells about Herod.

##### Herod the tetrarch

This refers to Herod Antipas, who was the ruler of one-fourth of Israel.

##### he was perplexed

"he was confused" or "he could not understand"

##### it was said by some

"some people said"

#### Luke 9:8

##### still others that one of the prophets of long ago had risen

"still others said that one of the prophets of long ago had risen"

#### Luke 9:9

##### I beheaded John. Who is this

"It cannot be John because I had his head cut off. So who is this man"

##### And so he tried to see him

"And so he tried to see Jesus"

#### Luke 9:10

##### When the apostles returned

"When the apostles came back to where Jesus was"

##### they told him

"they told Jesus"

#### Luke 9:12

##### the day was about to come to an end

"the day was about to end" or "it was near the end of the day"

##### an isolated place

"a remote place" or "a place where no one lives"

#### Luke 9:13

##### five loaves of bread

A loaf of bread is a lump of dough that is shaped and baked.

##### two fish—unless we go and buy food for all these people

"two fish. In order to feed all these people, we would have to go and buy food"

#### Luke 9:14

##### Have them sit down

"Tell them to sit down"

#### Luke 9:16

##### Taking the five loaves

"Jesus took the five loaves of bread"

##### he blessed them

"he blessed the bread and fish"

##### to set before the crowd

"to pass out to to crowd" or "to give to the crowd"

#### Luke 9:17

##### and were satisfied

"and had enough" or "and were content"

#### Luke 9:18

##### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event.

##### praying by himself

"praying alone." The disciples were with Jesus, but he was praying privately.

#### Luke 9:19

##### John the Baptist

"They say you are John the Baptist"

##### that one of the prophets from long ago has risen

"that you are one of the prophets from long ago and have risen from the dead"

#### Luke 9:20

##### Then he said to them

"Then Jesus said to his disciples"

#### Luke 9:21

##### he warned and instructed them to tell this to no one

"he strongly warned them not to tell anyone"

#### Luke 9:22

##### The Son of Man must suffer ... and he will be killed

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man must suffer ... and I will be killed"

##### and be rejected by the elders and chief priests and scribes

"and the elders, chief priests, and scribes will reject him"

##### he will be killed

"they will kill him"

##### on the third day

"on the third day of his death" or "on the third day after his death"

##### be raised

"God will make him alive again" or "he will live again"

#### Luke 9:23

##### to come after me

"to be my disciple" or "to be one of my disciples"

##### must deny himself

"must not give in to his own desires" or "must forsake his own desires"

##### and take up his cross daily and follow me

"and carry his cross and follow me every day" or "and obey me every day even to the point of suffering and dying"

#### Luke 9:25

##### What profit is there for a person to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "It will not benefit someone at all to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself."

##### to gain the whole world

"to get everything in the world"

##### lose or forfeit himself

"ruin himself or give up his life"

#### Luke 9:26

##### my words

"what I say" or "what I teach"

##### of him will the Son of Man be ashamed

"the Son of Man will also be ashamed of him"

##### the Son of Man ... when he comes in his own glory

Jesus was speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man ... when I come in my own glory"

##### the Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Luke 9:27

##### But truly I say to you

Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance of what he will say next.

##### there are some standing here who will not taste death before they see

Jesus was speaking to the people he was talking about. Alternate translation: "some of you who are standing here will not experience death before you see"

##### will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God

"will see the kingdom of God before they die" or "will see the kingdom of God before you die"

#### Luke 9:30

##### Behold

The word "Behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. Alternate translation: "Suddenly"

#### Luke 9:31

##### who appeared in glory

"and they appeared in glorious splendor" or "and they were shining brightly"

##### his departure

"his leaving" or "how Jesus would leave this world"

#### Luke 9:32

##### were heavy with sleep

"were very sleepy"

##### they saw his glory

"they saw brilliant light coming from Jesus" or "they saw very bright light coming out of Jesus"

#### Luke 9:33

##### As they were going away

"As Moses and Elijah were going away"

##### shelters

simple, temporary places in which to sit or sleep

#### Luke 9:34

##### As he was saying this

"While Peter was saying these things"

##### they were afraid

They were not afraid of clouds. This was some kind of unusual fear came over them with this cloud. Alternate translation: "they were terrified"

##### they entered into the cloud

This can be expressed in terms of what the cloud did. Alternate translation: "the cloud surrounded them"

#### Luke 9:35

##### A voice came out of the cloud, saying

The voice belonged to God. Alternate translation: "God spoke to them from the cloud, saying"

##### my Son

Jesus is the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### the one who is chosen

"the one whom I have chosen" or "I have chosen him"

#### Luke 9:36

##### Jesus was found alone

"they saw that Jesus was alone." Moses and Elijah were not with Jesus.

#### Luke 9:38

##### Behold, a man from the crowd cried out

The word "behold" alerts us to the new person. Alternate translation: "Now there was a man in the crowd who cried out"

#### Luke 9:39

##### he foams at the mouth

"foam comes out of his mouth." When a person has a seizure, he can have trouble breathing or swallowing. This causes white foam to form around his mouth.

#### Luke 9:41

##### You unbelieving and perverse generation

"You unbelieving and corrupt people." Jesus says this to the crowd that has gathered.

##### how long must I be with you and put up with you?

Jesus expresses his sadness that the people do not believe. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have been with you so long, yet you do not believe. I wonder how long I must put up with you."

##### Bring your son here

Jesus is speaking to the father who addressed him.

#### Luke 9:43

##### everything he was doing

"everything Jesus was doing"

#### Luke 9:44

##### Let these words go deeply into your ears

"Listen carefully and remember"

##### The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men

Jesus is the Son of Man. Here "hands" refers to power or control. Alternate translation: "Someone will betray the Son of Man and put him under the control of men" or "Someone will betray me, the Son of Man, and put me into the hands of my enemies"

#### Luke 9:45

##### It was hidden from them

"It was a mystery to them"

#### Luke 9:46

##### among them

"among the disciples"

#### Luke 9:47

##### knowing the reasoning in their hearts

"knowing the reasoning in their minds" or "knowing what they were thinking"

#### Luke 9:48

##### in my name

"because of me"

##### the one who sent me

"God, who sent me"

#### Luke 9:49

##### John answered

"In reply, John said" or "John replied to Jesus"

##### forcing out demons in your name

"forcing out demons by using your name" or "using your name to make demons go away"

#### Luke 9:50

##### whoever is not against you is for you

"if someone is not working against you, he is working with you"

#### Luke 9:51

##### When the days drew near for him to be taken up

"When the time was coming for Jesus to go up to heaven"

##### he set his face

"he firmly decided" or "he made up his mind"

#### Luke 9:52

##### to prepare everything for him

"to make arrangements for his arrival"

#### Luke 9:53

##### did not welcome him

"did not want him to stay"

#### Luke 9:54

##### saw this

"saw that the Samaritans did not receive Jesus"

#### Luke 9:55

##### he turned and rebuked them

"Jesus turned and rebuked James and John"

#### Luke 9:57

##### someone

This was not one of the disciples.

#### Luke 9:58

##### Foxes

These are land animals similar to small dogs. They sleep in a den or a burrow in the ground.

##### birds in the sky

"birds that fly in the air"

##### the Son of Man has ... his head

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, have ... my head"

##### nowhere to lay his head

"nowhere to rest his head" or "nowhere to sleep"

#### Luke 9:59

##### first let me go and bury my father

“before I do that, let me go and bury my father.” It is not clear whether the man’s father has already died or if the man wants to stay until his father dies. The main point is that he wants to do something else first before he follows Jesus.

#### Luke 9:60

##### Leave the dead to bury their own dead

Here "the dead" refers to people who are spiritually dead and do not respond to God. Alternate translation: "let spiritually dead people bury their own people who have died." The main point is that a disciple must not let anything delay him from following Jesus.

#### Luke 9:62

##### No one ... looks back, is fit for the kingdom of God

"Anyone who ... looks back is not fit for the kingdom of God."

##### No one who puts his hand to the plow and looks back

"No one who starts to plow his field and looks back"

##### is fit for the kingdom of God

"is useful for the kingdom of God" or "is suitable for the kingdom of God"

Chapter 10

1Now after these things, the Lord appointed seventy [1](#footnote-target-1) others, and sent them out two by two ahead of him to every town and place where he himself was about to go.2He said to them, "The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few. Therefore ask the Lord of the harvest to send out laborers into his harvest.3Go on your way. See, I send you out as lambs in the midst of wolves.4Do not carry a money bag, or a traveler's bag, or sandals, and greet no one on the road.5Whatever house you enter, first say, 'May peace be on this house!'6If a son of peace is there, your peace will rest upon him, but if not, it will return to you.7Remain in that same house, eating and drinking what they provide, for the laborer is worthy of his wages. Do not move around from house to house.8Whatever town you enter, and they receive you, eat what is set before you9and heal the sick that are there. Say to them, 'The kingdom of God has come close to you.'10Whenever you enter a town and they do not receive you, go out into its streets and say,11'Even the dust from your town that clings to our feet we wipe off against you! But know this: The kingdom of God is near.'12I say to you that on that day it will be more tolerable for Sodom than for that town.13Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty works which were done in you had been done in Tyre and Sidon, they would have repented long ago, sitting in sackcloth and ashes.14But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the judgment than for you.15You, Capernaum, do you think you will be exalted to heaven? No, you will be brought down to Hades.16The one who listens to you listens to me, and the one who rejects you rejects me, and the one who rejects me rejects the one who sent me."

17The seventy returned with joy, saying, "Lord, even the demons submitted to us in your name."

18Jesus said to them, "I was watching Satan fall from heaven as lightning.19See, I have given you authority to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing will in any way hurt you.20Nevertheless do not rejoice only in this, that the spirits submit to you, but rejoice even more that your names are engraved in heaven."

21At that same hour he rejoiced greatly in the Holy Spirit and said, "I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because you concealed these things from the wise and understanding and revealed them to those who are untaught, like little children. Yes, Father, for so it was well pleasing in your sight.22"All things have been entrusted to me from my Father, and no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son and those to whom the Son chooses to reveal him."23Then he turned around to the disciples and said privately, "Blessed are those who see the things that you see.24I say to you, many prophets and kings desired to see the things you see, and they did not see them, and to hear the things that you hear, and they did not hear them."

25Behold, an expert in the law stood up so that he might test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"

26Jesus said to him, "What is written in the law? How do you read it?"

27He gave an answer and he said, "You will love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your strength, and with all your mind, and your neighbor as yourself."

28Jesus said to him, "You have answered correctly. Do this, and you will live."29But he, desiring to justify himself, said to Jesus, "Who is my neighbor?"

30Jesus answered him and said, "A certain man was going down from Jerusalem to Jericho. He fell among robbers, who stripped him of his belongings, and beat him, and left him half dead.31By chance a certain priest was going down that way, and when he saw him, he passed by on the other side.32In the same way, a Levite also, when he came to the place and saw him, passed by on the other side.33But a certain Samaritan, as he journeyed, came to where he was. When he saw him, he was moved with compassion.34He approached him and bound up his wounds, pouring oil and wine on them. He set him on his own animal, and brought him to an inn, and took care of him.35The next day he took out two denarii, and gave them to the host, and said, 'Take care of him, and whatever extra you spend, when I return, I will repay you.'36Which of these three do you think was a neighbor to him who fell among the robbers?"

37He said, "The one who showed mercy to him."

Jesus said to him, "Go and do the same."

38Now as they were traveling along, he entered into a certain village, and a certain woman named Martha welcomed him into her house.39She had a sister named Mary, who sat at the Lord's feet and heard his word.40But Martha was overly busy with preparing to serve a meal. She came up to Jesus and said, "Lord, do you not care that my sister left me to serve alone? Therefore tell her to help me."

41But the Lord answered and said to her, "Martha, Martha, you are anxious and troubled about many things,42but only one thing is necessary. Mary has chosen what is best, which will not be taken away from her."

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Many of the best ancient copies read seventy but some read seventy-two.

#### Luke 10:1

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new event in the story.

##### seventy

Some versions say "seventy-two." You may want to include a footnote that says that.

##### sent them out two by two

"sent them out in groups of two" or "sent them out with two people in each group"

#### Luke 10:2

##### The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few

"There is a big crop, but not enough workers to bring it in." Jesus means there are many people ready to enter God's kingdom, but there are not enough disciples to go and teach the people.

#### Luke 10:3

##### Go on your way

"Go to the cities" or "Go to the people"

##### I send you out as lambs in the midst of wolves

Wolves attack and kill young sheep. In the same way, some people will want to harm the disciples. Alternate translation: "I send you out, and some people will try to harm you like wolves that attack young sheep"

#### Luke 10:4

##### greet no one on the road

"do not greet anyone on the road." Jesus was telling them to go quickly to the towns and do this work. He was not telling them to be rude.

#### Luke 10:5

##### May peace be on this house

Here "house" refers to those who live in the house. Alternate translation: "May the people in this household receive peace"

#### Luke 10:6

##### a son of peace

"a peaceful person"

##### your peace will rest upon him

"he will have the peace you bless him with"

##### if not

"if there is no person of peace there" or "if the owner of the house is not a peaceful person"

##### it will return to you

"you will have that peace"

#### Luke 10:7

##### Remain in that same house

Jesus was saying that they should sleep at the same house every night they were there. Alternate translation: "Continue to sleep at that house"

##### for the laborer is worthy of his wages

The men Jesus was sending to the towns would be teaching and healing people, so the people in those towns should provide them with a place to stay and food.

##### Do not move around from house to house

"Do not sleep at a different house each night"

#### Luke 10:8

##### and they receive you

"if they welcome you"

##### eat what is set before you

"eat whatever food they give you"

#### Luke 10:9

##### the sick

"the sick people"

##### The kingdom of God has come close to you

Possible meanings are "God will soon rule everywhere as king" or "The proof that God is reigning is all around you."

#### Luke 10:10

##### and they do not receive you

"and the people reject you"

#### Luke 10:11

##### Even the dust from your town that clings to our feet we wipe off against you

This is a symbolic action to show that they reject the people of the city. Alternate translation: "Just as you rejected us, we reject you. We even reject the dust from your town that clings to our feet"

#### Luke 10:12

##### on that day

"on judgment day" or "on the day when God judges all people"

##### it will be more tolerable for Sodom than for that town

"it will be easier for the people of Sodom than it will be for the people of that town" or "God will judge the people of that town more severely than he will judge the people of Sodom"

#### Luke 10:13

##### Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida!

"How terrible it will be for you, Chorazin! How terrible it will be for you, Bethsaida!" or "Trouble will come to you, people of Chorazin and Bethsaida!" Chorazin and Bethsaida were towns.

##### If the mighty works which were done in you had been done in Tyre and Sidon

"If someone had performed the miracles for the people of Tyre and Sidon that I performed for you"

##### sitting in sackcloth and ashes

"wearing sackcloth and sitting in ashes." This was a way for people to show that they were very sorry for their sins.

#### Luke 10:14

##### at the judgment

"when God judges everyone"

#### Luke 10:15

##### You, Capernaum

"You people of Capernaum." Capernaum was a town.

##### do you think you will be exalted to heaven?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the people of Capernaum for their pride. Alternate translation: "Do not think that you will be lifted up to heaven!" or "Do not think that God will honor you in heaven!"

##### you will be brought down to Hades

"you will go down to Hades" or "God will send you to Hades"

#### Luke 10:16

##### General Information

In verse 16 the word "you" refers to the seventy people that Jesus was sending to the towns to heal people and preach.

##### The one who listens to you listens to me

"When someone listens to you, it is as if they were listening to me"

##### the one who rejects you rejects me

"when someone rejects you, it is as if they were rejecting me"

##### the one who rejects me rejects the one who sent me

"when someone rejects me, it is as if they were rejecting God, who sent me"

#### Luke 10:17

##### seventy

Some versions say “seventy-two.” You may want to include a footnote that says that.

##### in your name

Here "name" refers to Jesus's power and authority. Alternate translation: "because of your name" or "when we spoke with your power and authority"

#### Luke 10:18

##### I was watching Satan fall from heaven as lightning

Jesus recognized that God was defeating Satan when the 70 disciples were preaching.

#### Luke 10:19

##### authority to tread on serpents and scorpions

"authority to trample on snakes and crush scorpions." Scorpions are small animals with two claws and a poisonous stinger on their tail. Serpents and scorpions in this verse might represent evil spirits.

##### over all the power of the enemy

"I have given you authority to crush the power of the enemy" or "I have given you authority to defeat the enemy." The enemy is Satan.

#### Luke 10:20

##### your names are engraved in heaven

"God has written your names in heaven" or "your names are on the list of the citizens of heaven"

#### Luke 10:21

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### Lord of heaven and earth

"Lord over everyone and everything in heaven and earth"

##### the wise and understanding

"wise and understanding people" or "people who think they are wise and understanding"

##### those who are untaught, like little children

"little children" or "those who are like little children"

##### for so it was well pleasing in your sight

"for it pleased you to do this"

#### Luke 10:22

##### All things have been entrusted to me from my Father

"My Father has handed everything over to me"

##### Father ... the Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. When Jesus says, "the Son," he is referring to himself. It is best to translate these words with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### no one knows who the Son is except the Father

"the only one who knows who the Son is, is the Father"

##### no one knows who the Father is except the Son and those ... him

The only one who knows who the Father is, is the Son and those ... him"

##### those to whom the Son chooses to reveal him

"whoever the Son chooses to show the Father to"

#### Luke 10:23

##### Blessed are those who see the things that you see

"How good it is for those who see the things that you see me doing"

#### Luke 10:24

##### the things that you hear

"the things that you have heard me say"

#### Luke 10:25

##### Behold, an expert in the law

The word "Behold" alerts us to a new event and a new person in the story.

##### so that he might test him

"to challenge Jesus"

#### Luke 10:26

##### What is written in the law? How do you read it?

Jesus uses these questions to test the teacher's knowledge. Alternate translation: "Tell me what Moses wrote in the law and what you think it means."

##### How do you read it?

"What have you read in it?" or "What do you understand it to say?"

#### Luke 10:27

##### You will love ... your neighbor as yourself

"You must love ... your neighbor as yourself"

##### and your neighbor as yourself

"and you must love your neighbor as much as you love yourself"

#### Luke 10:29

##### But he, desiring to justify himself, said

"But the expert in the law wanted to find a way to justify himself, so he said" or "But wanting to appear righteous, the expert in the law said"

##### Who is my neighbor?

The man wanted to know whom he was required to love. Alternate translation: "Which people are my neighbors that I should love them?"

#### Luke 10:30

##### He fell among robbers, who

"He was surrounded by robbers, who" or "Some robbers attacked him. They"

##### stripped him of his belongings

"took everything he had" or "stole all his things"

##### half dead

"almost dead"

#### Luke 10:31

##### and when he saw him

"and when the priest saw the injured man" or "but when he saw him." A priest is a very religious person, so Jesus's listeners would expect the priest to help the man.

##### he passed by on the other side

The priest did not help the man. Alternate translation: "he did not help the man but walked past him on the other side of the road"

#### Luke 10:32

##### a Levite ... the other side

The Levites served God in the temple. Jesus’s listeners would have expected the Levite to help the man.

#### Luke 10:33

##### a certain Samaritan

The Jews hated the Samaritans and would have assumed that the Samaritan would not help the injured Jewish man.

##### When he saw him

"When the Samaritan saw the injured man"

##### he was moved with compassion

"he felt sorry for him"

#### Luke 10:34

##### bound up his wounds, pouring oil and wine on them

He would have put the oil and wine on the wounds first to help them heal. Alternate translation: "he put wine and oil on the wounds and wrapped them with cloth"

##### his own animal

"his own pack animal." This was an animal that he used to carry heavy loads. It may have been a donkey.

#### Luke 10:35

##### two denarii

"two silver coins"or "two day's wages." "Denarii" is the plural of "denarius."

##### the host

"the innkeeper" or "the person who took care of the inn"

##### whatever extra you spend, when I return, I will repay you

"when I return, I will repay you whatever extra amount you spend"

#### Luke 10:36

##### Which of these three do you think was a neighbor ... robbers?

"What do you think? Which of these three men was a neighbor ... robbers?"

##### was a neighbor

"showed himself to be a true neighbor"

##### to him who fell among the robbers

"to the man whom the robbers attacked"

#### Luke 10:37

##### He said

"The expert in the law said"

##### Go and do the same

"In the same way, go and show mercy to anyone else who needs help"

#### Luke 10:38

##### as they were traveling along

"as Jesus and his disciples were traveling along"

#### Luke 10:39

##### sat at the Lord's feet

This was the normal and respectful position for a learner at that time. Alternate translation: "sat on the floor near Jesus"

##### heard his word

"listened to him teach"

#### Luke 10:40

##### overly busy

"very busy" or "too busy"

##### do you not care ... alone?

Martha is complaining that the Lord is allowing Mary to sit listening to him when there is so much work to do. Alternate translation: "it seems like you do not care ... alone."

#### Luke 10:42

##### which will not be taken away from her

"and no one will take it away from her"

Chapter 11

1It happened one day that Jesus was praying in a certain place. When he had finished, one of his disciples said to him, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples."

2Jesus said to them, "When you pray say,'Father, may your name be honored as holy.May your kingdom come.3Give us our daily bread each day.4Forgive us our sins,as we forgive everyone who is in debt to us.Do not lead us into temptation.'"

5Jesus said to them, "Which of you will have a friend, and will go to him at midnight, and say to him, 'Friend, lend to me three loaves of bread,6since a friend of mine just came in from the road, and I do not have anything to set before him'?7Then the one inside who answered him may say, 'Do not bother me. The door is already shut, and my children, along with me, are in bed. I am not able to get up and give bread to you.'8I say to you, even if he does not get up and give bread to you because you are his friend, yet because of your shameless persistence, he will get up and give you as many loaves of bread as you need.9I also say to you, ask, and it will be given to you; seek, and you will find; knock, and it will be opened to you.10For every asking person receives; and the seeking person finds; and to the person who knocks, it will be opened.11Which father among you, if your son asks for a fish, will give him a snake instead of a fish? [1](#footnote-target-1)12Or if he asks for an egg, will you give a scorpion to him?13Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him?"

14Now Jesus was driving out a demon that was mute. When the demon had gone out, the man who had been mute spoke, and the crowd was amazed.15But some of the people said, "By Beelzebul, the ruler of demons, he is driving out demons."16Others tested him and sought from him a sign from heaven.

17But Jesus knew their thoughts and said to them, "Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate, and a house divided against itself falls.18If Satan is divided against himself, how will his kingdom stand? For you say I cast out demons by Beelzebul.19If I drive out demons by Beelzebul, by whom do your followers drive them out? Because of this, they will be your judges.20But if I drive out demons by the finger of God, then the kingdom of God has come to you.21When a strong man who is fully armed guards his own palace, his possessions are safe,22but when a stronger man overcomes him, the stronger man takes away the armor in which the man trusted and plunders the man's possessions.23The one who is not with me is against me, and the one who does not gather with me scatters.24When an unclean spirit has gone away from a man, it passes through waterless places and looks for rest. Finding none, it says, 'I will return to my house from which I came.'25Having returned, it finds the house had been swept clean and put in order.26Then it goes and takes along with it seven other spirits more evil than itself and they all come in to live there. Then the final condition of that man becomes worse than the first."

27It happened that, as he said these things, a certain woman raised her voice above the crowd and said to him, "Blessed is the womb that bore you and the breasts that nursed you."

28But he said, "Rather, blessed are they who hear the word of God and keep it."

29As the crowds were increasing, Jesus began to say, "This generation is an evil generation. It seeks a sign, though no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah.30For just as Jonah became a sign to the Ninevites, so too the Son of Man will be a sign to this generation.31The Queen of the South will rise up at the judgment with the men of this generation and condemn them, for she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon, and see, someone greater than Solomon is here.32The men of Nineveh will stand up at the judgment with this generation of people and will condemn it, for they repented at the preaching of Jonah, and see, someone greater than Jonah is here.

33No one, after lighting a lamp, puts it in a hidden place or under a basket, but on a lampstand, so that those who enter may see the light.34Your eye is the lamp of the body. When your eye is good, the whole body is filled with light. But when your eye is bad, your body is full of darkness.35Therefore, watch out that the light in you is not darkness.36If then your whole body is full of light, not having any member in darkness, then your whole body will be like when a lamp shines its brightness on you."

37When he had finished speaking, a Pharisee asked him to eat with him at his house, so Jesus went in and reclined.38The Pharisee was surprised that Jesus did not first wash before dinner.39But the Lord said to him, "Now then, you Pharisees clean the outside of cups and bowls, but the inside of you is filled with robbery and evil.40You senseless men! Did not the one who made the outside also make the inside?41Give what is inside as alms, and then all things will be clean for you.

42"But woe to you Pharisees, because you tithe mint and rue and every other garden herb, but you neglect justice and the love of God. It is necessary to act justly and love God, without failing to do the other things also.43Woe to you Pharisees, for you love the front seats in the synagogues and respectful greetings in the marketplaces.44Woe to you, for you are like unmarked graves that people walk over without knowing it."

45One of the experts in the law said to him, "Teacher, what you say insults us too."46Jesus said, "Woe to you, teachers of the law! For you put people under burdens that are hard to carry, but you do not touch the burdens with one of your own fingers.47Woe to you, because you build tombs for the prophets, and it was your ancestors who killed them.48So you are witnesses and you consent to the works of your ancestors, for they indeed killed them and you build their tombs.49For this reason also, God's wisdom said, 'I will send to them prophets and apostles, and they will persecute and kill some of them.'50As a result, this generation will be charged for all the blood of the prophets shed since the foundation of the world,51from Abel's blood to the blood of Zechariah, who was killed between the altar and the temple. Yes, I say to you, this generation will be held responsible.52Woe to you experts in the law, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering."

53After Jesus left there, the scribes and the Pharisees opposed him and argued with him about many things,54lying in wait to catch him in something he might say.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies have the shorter reading. Some ancient copies have a longer reading, which also is found in Matthew 7:9: Which father among you, if your son asks for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? Or a fish, will give him a snake?

#### Luke 11:1

##### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

#### Luke 11:2

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### may your name be honored as holy

"cause everyone to honor your name as holy." The phrase "your name" might refer to God himself. Alternate translation: "may all people honor you as holy"

##### May your kingdom come

"May you come and rule over everyone"

#### Luke 11:3

##### Give us

"Please give us"

##### our daily bread

Bread was an inexpensive food that people ate every day. It is used here to refer to food in general. Alternate translation: "the food we need each day"

#### Luke 11:4

##### Forgive us ... Do not lead us

"Please forgive us ... Please do not lead us"

##### Forgive us our sins

"Forgive us for sinning against you" or "Forgive our sins"

##### as we forgive

"since we also forgive"

##### who is in debt to us

"who has sinned against us" or "who has done wrong things to us"

##### Do not lead us into temptation

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Lead us away from temptation"

#### Luke 11:5

##### lend to me three loaves of bread

"let me borrow three loaves of bread" or "give me three loaves of bread and I will pay you later." The host does not have any food ready to give to his guest.

##### three loaves of bread

Bread is a food that people in Israel commonly ate. If people in your community do not know what bread is, you may translate it with a more general expression for food. Alternate translation: "some food"

#### Luke 11:6

##### since a friend ... to set before him'?

Jesus finishes asking the question that begins with the words "Which of you will have a friend" in verse 5. The whole question can be translated as a command. Alternate translation: "Imagine you have a friend and you go to him at midnight and say to him, 'Friend, lend me three loaves of bread, since a friend ... to set before him.'"

##### just came in from the road

It is implied that the visitor had come a long way. Alternate translation: "was traveling and just came to my house"

##### anything to set before him

"any food ready to give him"

#### Luke 11:8

##### because of your shameless persistence

"because you persist shamelessly" or "because you boldly continue to ask him"

#### Luke 11:9

##### ask ... seek, and you will find; knock

Jesus gives these commands to encourage his disciples to pray continually. Alternate translation: "keep asking God for what you need ... keep seeking what you need, and you will find it; keep knocking on the door"

##### it will be given to you

"God will give it to you" or "you will receive it"

##### knock

To knock on a door is to hit it a few times to let a person inside the house know you are standing outside. It can also be translated using the way people in your culture show that they have arrived, such as "call out" or "cough" or "clap."

##### it will be opened to you

"God will open the door for you"

#### Luke 11:11

##### Which father among you ... will give him a snake instead of a fish?

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. It could also be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "None of you fathers ... will give him a snake instead of a fish."

#### Luke 11:12

##### Or ... egg, will you give a scorpion to him?

This question could also be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "And you would never give him a scorpion ... egg."

##### scorpion

A scorpion is similar to a spider, but it has a tail with a poisonous sting. If scorpions are not known where you are, you could translate this as "poisonous spider" or "spider that stings"

#### Luke 11:13

##### if you who are evil know

"since you who are evil know" or "even though you are sinful, you know"

##### how much more will your Father from heaven give ... him?

This can also be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "you can be sure that your Father in heaven will give ... him."

#### Luke 11:14

##### Now

Here this word marks the beginning of a new event.

##### Jesus was driving out a demon

"Jesus was driving a demon out of a man" or "Jesus was making a demon leave a person"

##### a demon that was mute

"a demon that caused a man to be unable to speak"

##### When the demon had gone out

"When the demon had gone out of the man" or "When the demon left the man"

#### Luke 11:15

##### By Beelzebul, the ruler of demons, he is driving out demons

"He is driving out demons by the power of Beelzebul, the ruler of demons"

##### Beelzebul

This is another name for Satan.

#### Luke 11:16

##### Others tested him

"Other people tested Jesus." They wanted Jesus to prove that his authority was from God.

##### and sought from him a sign from heaven

"and demanded that he give them a sign from heaven." This was how they wanted Jesus to prove that his authority was from God.

#### Luke 11:17

##### Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate

The word "kingdom" here refers to the people in it. Alternate translation: "If people of a kingdom fight among themselves, they will destroy their kingdom"

##### a house divided against itself falls

The word "house" here refers to a family. Alternate translation: "if family members fight each other, they will ruin their family"

#### Luke 11:18

##### If Satan is divided against himself

"Satan" here refers to the demons who follow Satan as well as to Satan himself. Alternate translation: "If Satan and members of his kingdom are fighting among themselves"

##### how will his kingdom stand?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "his kingdom will not last." or "his kingdom will fall apart."

##### For you say I cast out demons by Beelzebul

"For you say that it is by the power of Beelzebul that I make demons leave people"

#### Luke 11:19

##### by whom do your followers drive them out?

"by whose power do your followers force demons to leave people?"

##### they will be your judges

"your followers will judge you"

#### Luke 11:20

##### by the finger of God

"by God’s power"

##### then the kingdom of God has come to you

"this shows that God's kingdom has come to you"

#### Luke 11:21

##### his possessions are safe

"no one can steal his things"

#### Luke 11:22

##### but when a stronger man overcomes him

"but when a stronger man attacks and defeats him"

##### takes away the armor

"removes the weapons and protection"

##### plunders the man's possessions

"steals the man's possessions"

#### Luke 11:23

##### The one who is not with me is against me, and the one who does not gather with me scatters

"Anyone who is not with me is against me, and anyone who does not gather with me scatters" or "Those who are not with me are against me, and those who do not gather with me scatter"

##### The one who is not with me is against me

"The one who does not support me opposes me"

##### the one who does not gather with me scatters

"the one who does not help me gather what belongs to me scatters it"

#### Luke 11:24

##### waterless places

"places that do not have water" or "deserts"

##### Finding none

"If the spirit does not find any rest there"

##### my house from which I came

This refers to the person in which the unclean spirit used to live. Alternate translation: "the person in whom I used to live"

#### Luke 11:25

##### it finds the house had been swept clean and put in order

"it sees that the person is like a house that is clean and organized"

#### Luke 11:26

##### worse than the first

"worse than his condition was before the spirit left him"

#### Luke 11:27

##### raised her voice above the crowd

"spoke loudly above the noise of the crowd"

##### Blessed is the womb that bore you and the breasts that nursed you

"How good it is for the woman who bore you and nursed you at her breasts" or "How happy must be the woman who gave birth to you and nursed you"

#### Luke 11:28

##### Rather, blessed are they who hear the word of God and keep it

"It is even better for those hear the message God has spoken and obey it"

#### Luke 11:29

##### This generation is an evil generation. It seeks ... to it

"The people living at this time are evil people. They seek ... to them" or "You people living at this time are evil people. You seek ... to you"

##### It seeks a sign

"It wants me to do a miracle to prove that I have come from God"

##### no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah

"The only sign that will be given to this generation is the sign of Jonah"

##### no sign will be given to it

"God will not give it a sign"

##### the sign of Jonah

"what happened to Jonah" or "the miracle that God did for Jonah"

#### Luke 11:30

##### For just as Jonah became a sign ... so too the Son of Man will be a sign

"For just as what happened to Jonah was a sign ... so too what happens to the Son of Man will be a sign"

##### the Son of Man will be a sign

"I, the Son of Man, will be a sign"

#### Luke 11:31

##### The Queen of the South

This refers to the Queen of Sheba. Sheba was a kingdom south of Israel.

##### she came from the ends of the earth

"she came a very great distance" or "she came from a place very far away"

##### someone greater than Solomon is here

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, who am greater than Solomon, am here"

#### Luke 11:32

##### for they repented at the preaching of Jonah

"for they repented when Jonah preached to them"

#### Luke 11:33

##### no one ... puts it in a hidden place or under a basket

"no one ... hides it or puts in under a basket" or "people ... do not put it in a hidden place or under a basket"

##### but on a lampstand

"but a person puts it on a lampstand" or "but they put it on a table"

#### Luke 11:34

##### Your eye is the lamp of the body

"Your eye is like the lamp of your body" or "your eye is like a lamp for you'

##### When your eye is good

"When your vision is good" or "when you see well"

##### the whole body is filled with light

"the light will fill your whole body" or "you will be able to see everything clearly"

##### your body is full of darkness

"you will not be able to see anything"

#### Luke 11:35

##### watch out that the light in you is not darkness

"look carefully to make sure that what you think is light is not actually darkness"

#### Luke 11:36

##### not having any member in darkness

"with none of its parts in darkness"

#### Luke 11:37

##### When he had finished speaking

"When Jesus had finished speaking"

##### reclined

It was the custom at a relaxed meal for men to eat while lying down comfortably around the table. Alternate translation: "sat down at the table" or "sat down to eat"

#### Luke 11:38

##### did not first wash

"did not first wash his hands" or "did not first wash his hands in order to be ritually clean"

#### Luke 11:40

##### You senseless men

"You fools"

##### Did not the one who made the outside also make the inside?

Jesus rebukes the Pharisees for not understanding that what is in their hearts matters to God. Alternate translation: "The one who made the outside also made the inside!"

#### Luke 11:41

##### as alms

"as gifts to the poor"

##### all things will be clean for you

"you will be completely clean" or "you will be clean both inside and outside"

#### Luke 11:42

##### you tithe mint and rue and every other garden herb

"you give God one tenth of your mint and rue and other herbs from your garden." Jesus was giving an example of how extreme the Pharisees were in giving a tenth of their income.

##### every other garden herb

Possible meanings are 1) "every other vegetable" 2) "every other garden herb" or 3) "every other garden plant."

##### you neglect justice and the love of God

"you do not pay attention to doing what is just and to loving God"

##### without failing to do the other things also

"and to always do the other good things as well"

#### Luke 11:43

##### the front seats

"the best seats"

##### respectful greetings

"you like people to greet you with special honor"

#### Luke 11:44

##### unmarked graves

"graves without makers." Graves were ceremonially unclean because of the dead bodies in them. An unmarked grave did not have a mark to warn people that it was a grave and that there was a dead body there.

##### that people walk over without knowing it

If someone walked over a grave, he would become ceremonially unclean because the grave was unclean. Alternate translation: "that people walk over without knowing that it is a grave" or "that people walk over without knowing that is is unclean"

#### Luke 11:46

##### you put people under burdens that are hard to carry

"you put burdens on people that are too heavy for them to carry." Jesus speaks about the teachers giving people many rules as if they giving people heavy things to carry. Alternate translation: "you burden people by giving them too many rules to follow"

##### you do not touch the burdens with one of your own fingers

"you do not do anything to help people carry those burdens"

#### Luke 11:48

##### you consent to the works of your ancestors

"you agree with what your ancestors did"

#### Luke 11:49

##### God's wisdom said

"God in his wisdom said" or "God wisely said"

##### I will send to them prophets and apostles

"I will send prophets and apostles to my people"

##### they will persecute and kill some of them

"my people will persecute and kill some of the prophets and apostles"

#### Luke 11:50

##### this generation will be charged

"God will hold this generation responsible"

##### for all the blood of the prophets shed

This refers to the blood that was spilled when people killed God's prophets. Alternate translation: "for all the murders of the prophets"

##### since the foundation of the world

"since the creation of the world" or "since God created the world"

#### Luke 11:51

##### Zechariah

This was probably the priest in the Old Testament who rebuked the people of Israel for idolatry. This was not the Father of John the Baptist.

##### who was killed

"whom people killed"

#### Luke 11:52

##### you have taken away the key of knowledge

"you have taken away the key that opens the door to knowledge" or "you have made it impossible to get knowledge" or "you have made it impossible to know God"

##### you do not enter in yourselves

"you yourselves do not go in to get knowledge" or "you yourselves do not get knowledge" or "you yourselves do not know God"

##### and you hinder those who are entering

"you keep others from going in" or "you make it hard for others to enter" or "you make it hard for others to know God"

#### Luke 11:53

##### After Jesus left there

"After Jesus left the Pharisee's house"

#### Luke 11:54

##### lying in wait to catch him in something he might say

"waiting to trap him in something he might say." The scribes and Pharisees hoped Jesus would say something wrong so that they could accuse him of breaking God's law. Alternate translation: "hoping that he would say something wrong so they could accuse him."

Chapter 12

1In the meantime, when many thousands of the people were gathered together so much that they trampled on each other, he began to say to his disciples first of all, "Beware of the yeast of the Pharisees, which is hypocrisy.2But there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed, and nothing hidden that will not be known.3So whatever you have said in the darkness will be heard in the light, and what you have spoken in the ear in the inner rooms will be proclaimed upon the housetops.4I say to you, my friends, do not be afraid of those who kill the body, and after that they have no more that they can do.5But I will warn you about whom to fear. Fear the one who, after he has killed, has authority to throw you into hell. Yes, I say to you, fear him.6Are not five sparrows sold for two small coins? Yet not one of them is forgotten in the sight of God.7But even the hairs of your head are all numbered. Do not fear. You are more valuable than many sparrows.8I say to you, everyone who confesses me before men, the Son of Man will also confess before the angels of God,9but he who denies me before men will be denied before the angels of God.10Everyone who speaks a word against the Son of Man, it will be forgiven him, but to him who blasphemes against the Holy Spirit, it will not be forgiven.11When they bring you before the synagogues, the rulers, and the authorities, do not worry about how you will speak in your defense, or what you will say,12for the Holy Spirit will teach you in that hour what you should say."

13Then someone from the crowd said to him, "Teacher, tell my brother to divide the inheritance with me."

14Jesus said to him, "Man, who appointed me a judge or a mediator over you?"15He said to them, "Watch that you keep yourselves from all greedy desires, because a person's life does not consist of the abundance of his possessions."16Then Jesus told them a parable, saying, "The field of a rich man yielded abundantly,17and he reasoned with himself, saying, 'What will I do, because I do not have a place to store my crops?'18He said, 'This is what I will do. I will tear down my barns and build bigger ones, and there I will store all of my grain and other goods.19I will say to my soul, "Soul, you have many goods stored up for many years. Rest easy, eat, drink, be merry."'20But God said to him, 'Foolish man, tonight your soul is required of you, and the things you have prepared, whose will they be?'21That is what someone is like who stores up treasure for himself and is not rich toward God."

22Jesus said to his disciples, "Therefore I say to you, do not worry about your life, what you will eat; or about your body, what you will wear.23For life is more than food, and the body is more than clothes.24Think about the ravens, that they do not sow or reap. They have no storeroom or barn, but God feeds them. How much more valuable you are than the birds!25Which of you by being anxious can add a cubit to his lifespan?26If then you are not able to do such a very little thing, why do you worry about the rest?27Think about the lilies—how they grow. They do not labor, neither do they spin. Yet I say to you, even Solomon in all his glory was not clothed like one of these.28If God so clothes the grass in the field, which exists today, and tomorrow is thrown into the oven, how much more will he clothe you, O you of little faith!29Do not seek what you will eat and what you will drink, and do not be anxious.30For all the nations of the world seek these things, and your Father knows that you need them.31But seek his kingdom, and these things will be added to you.32Do not fear, little flock, because your Father is very pleased to give you the kingdom.33Sell your possessions and give alms. Make for yourselves purses which will not wear out—treasure in the heavens that does not run out, where no thief comes near, and no moth destroys.34For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.

35"Keep your loins girded and your lamps lit,36and be like people waiting expectantly for their master when he returns from the marriage feast, so that when he comes and knocks, they may immediately open the door for him.37Blessed are those servants whom the master will find watching when he comes. Truly I say to you, he will gird himself to serve and have them sit down at the table, and he will come and serve them.38If the master comes in the second watch of the night, or if even in the third watch, and finds them ready, blessed are those servants.39But understand this, that if the master of the house had known the hour the thief was coming, he would not have let his house be broken into.40You also must be ready, because the Son of Man is coming at an hour that you do not expect."

41Peter said, "Lord, are you telling this parable only to us, or also to everyone?"

42The Lord said, "Who then is the faithful and wise manager whom his lord will set over his other servants to give them their portion of food at the right time?43Blessed is that servant whom his lord finds doing that when he comes.44Truly I say to you that he will set him over all his property.45But if that servant says in his heart, 'My lord delays his return,' and begins to beat the male servants and female servants and to eat and drink and to become drunk,46the lord of that servant will come in a day when he does not expect and in an hour that he does not know and will cut him in pieces and appoint a place for him with the unfaithful.47That servant, having known his lord's will and not having prepared or done according to his will, will be beaten with many blows.48But the one who did not know and did what deserved a beating, he will be beaten with a few blows. But everyone who has been given much, from them much will be required, and from the one who has been entrusted with much, even more will be asked.

49"I came to cast fire upon the earth, and how I wish that it were already kindled.50But I have a baptism to be baptized with, and how I am distressed until it is completed!51Do you think that I came to bring peace on the earth? No, I tell you, but rather division.52For from now on there will be five in one house divided—three people against two, and two people against three.53They will be divided, father against son and son against father, mother against daughter and daughter against mother, mother-in-law against her daughter-in-law and daughter-in-law against mother-in-law."

54Jesus was saying to the crowds also, "When you see a cloud rising in the west, immediately you say, 'A shower is coming,' and so it happens.55When a south wind is blowing, you say, 'There will be a scorching heat,' and it happens.56Hypocrites, you know how to interpret the appearance of the earth and the heavens, but how is it that you do not know how to interpret the present time?57Why do you not judge what is right for yourselves?58For when you go with your adversary before the magistrate, on the way make an effort to be reconciled with him so that he does not drag you to the judge, and so that the judge does not deliver you to the officer, and the officer does not throw you into prison.59I say to you, you will never come out from there until you have paid the very last bit of money."

#### Luke 12:1

##### In the meantime

"Meanwhile" or "At that time"

##### they trampled on each other

"they were stepping on each other" or "they were stepping on one another's feet"

##### he began to say to his disciples first of all

"Jesus first started speaking to his disciples and said to them"

##### Beware of the yeast of the Pharisees, which is hypocrisy

Just as yeast spreads through a whole lump of bread dough, the hypocrisy of the Pharisees was spreading through the whole community. Alternate translation: "Guard yourself against the hypocrisy of the Pharisees, which spreads like yeast"

#### Luke 12:2

##### there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed

"everything that is concealed will be shown" or "people will find out about everything that others do secretly"

##### nothing hidden that will not be known

"every thing that is hidden will be known" or "people will know about everything that others try to hide"

#### Luke 12:3

##### whatever you have said in the darkness will be heard in the light

"whatever you have said privately at night, people will hear it in the daylight"

##### what you have spoken in the ear

"whatever you have whispered to someone"

##### in the inner rooms

"in a closed room" or "in a closet." This refers to private speech.

##### will be proclaimed

"will be shouted loudly" or "people will proclaim"

##### upon the housetops

Houses in Israel had flat roofs, so people could go up and stand on top of them. If readers would be distracted trying to imagine how people would get up on the house tops, this could also be translated with a more general expression, such as "from a high place so that everyone will be able to hear."

#### Luke 12:4

##### they have no more that they can do

"they cannot cause any more harm"

#### Luke 12:5

##### Fear the one who, after ... has authority

The phrase "the one" refers to God. Alternate translation: "Fear God who, after ... has authority" or "Fear God, because after ... he has authority"

##### after he has killed

"after he kills you"

##### has authority to throw you into hell

This is a general statement about God's authority to judge people. It does not mean that he will do this to the disciples. Alternate translation: "has authority to throw people into hell"

#### Luke 12:6

##### Are not five sparrows sold for two small coins?

"You know that five sparrows are sold for only two small coins."

##### sparrows

very small, seed-eating birds

##### not one of them is forgotten in the sight of God

"God never forgets any of them" or "God indeed remembers every sparrow"

#### Luke 12:7

##### even the hairs of your head are all numbered

"God knows even how many hairs are on your head"

##### You are more valuable than many sparrows

"You are worth more to God than many sparrows"

#### Luke 12:8

##### everyone who confesses me before men

"if anyone confesses me before men" or "whoever tells others that he is my disciple" or "anyone who acknowledges before others that he is loyal to me"

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man"

##### the Son of Man will also confess before the angels of God

"the Son of man will acknowledge before the angels of God that he is loyal to him"

#### Luke 12:9

##### he who denies me before men will be denied before the angels of God

"if anyone denies me before men, I will deny him before the angels of God" or "I will deny before the angels of God that I know him who denies me before men"

##### denies me

"claims that he does not know me" or "claims that he is not my disciple"

#### Luke 12:10

##### Everyone who speaks a word against the Son of Man

"If anyone speaks a word against the Son of man" or "Everyone who says something bad about the Son of Man"

##### it will be forgiven him

"he will be forgiven" or "God will forgive him for that"

##### blasphemes against the Holy Spirit

"speaks evil against the Holy Spirit"

##### but to him who blasphemes against the Holy Spirit, it will not be forgiven

"but God will not forgive him who blasphemes against the Holy Spirit"

#### Luke 12:11

##### When they bring you before the synagogues, the rulers, and the authorities

"When people bring you before synagogues, rulers, and authorities to accuse you "

#### Luke 12:12

##### in that hour

"at that time" or "then"

#### Luke 12:13

##### to divide the inheritance with me

"to share the property with me that our father left for us"

#### Luke 12:14

##### who appointed me a judge or a mediator over you?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the man. Alternate translation: "do not expect me to be your judge and mediator."

##### you

This word refers to the man and his brother.

#### Luke 12:15

##### Watch that you keep yourselves from all greedy desires

"Be careful to guard yourself from every form of greed" or "Be careful not to selfishly want more things"

##### the abundance of his possessions

"how many things he owns" or "how much wealth he has"

#### Luke 12:16

##### yielded abundantly

"grew a very good harvest"

#### Luke 12:17

##### What will I do, because I do not have a place to store my crops?

This question reflects what the man was thinking to himself. Alternate translation: "I do not know what to do, because I do not have any place big enough to store all my crops!"

#### Luke 12:18

##### barns

buildings where farmers store the crops they have harvested

##### all of my grain and other goods

"all of my grain and the other good things that I own"

#### Luke 12:19

##### I will say to my soul, "Soul, you have ... years. Rest easy ... be merry."

"I will say to myself, 'I have ... years. So I will rest easy ... and be merry.'"

##### many goods

"many good things" or "many possessions"

#### Luke 12:20

##### tonight your soul is required of you

The "soul" refers to the life of a person. Alternate translation: "you will die tonight" or "I will take your life from you tonight"

##### the things you have prepared, whose will they be?

"who will own what you have stored up?" or "who will have what you prepared?" God uses a question to rebuke the man. Alternate translation: "the things that you have prepared will belong to someone else!"

#### Luke 12:21

##### stores up treasure for himself

"saves up valuable things for himself"

##### is not rich toward God

"does not use his riches for God"

#### Luke 12:22

##### about your body, what you will wear

"about your body and what you will wear" or "about having enough clothes to put on your body"

#### Luke 12:23

##### life is more than food

"life is more important than the food you eat"

##### the body is more than clothes

"your body is more important than the clothes you wear"

#### Luke 12:24

##### storeroom ... barn

These are places where food is stored.

##### How much more valuable you are than the birds!

"You are much more valuable than the birds!"

#### Luke 12:25

##### Which of you by being anxious can add a cubit to his lifespan?

"None of you can make your life any longer by being anxious!"

##### a cubit

the length from a man's elbow to the end of his fingers

#### Luke 12:26

##### If then you are not able to do such a very little thing, why do you worry about the rest?

"Since you cannot do even this small thing, you should not worry about the other things."

#### Luke 12:27

##### Think about the lilies—how they grow

"Think about how the lilies grow"

##### lilies

Lilies are beautiful flowers that grow wild in the fields.

##### neither do they spin

The process of making thread or yarn is called "spinning." Alternate translation: "neither do they make thread" or "and they do not make yarn"

##### Solomon in all his glory

"Solomon, who had great wealth" or "Solomon, who wore beautiful clothes"

#### Luke 12:28

##### If God so clothes the grass in the field"

"If God clothes the grass in the field like that" or "If God gives the grass in the field such beautiful clothing" or "If God makes the grass in the field beautiful like this"

##### and tomorrow is thrown into the oven

"and someone throws it into a fire tomorrow"

##### how much more will he clothe you

"he will certainly clothe you even better"

#### Luke 12:29

##### Do not seek what you will eat and what you will drink

"Do not focus on what you will eat and drink" or "Do not greatly desire more to eat and drink"

#### Luke 12:30

##### all the nations of the world

Here "nations" refers to unbelievers. Alternate translation: "the people of all the other nations" or "all the unbelievers in the world"

##### your Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Luke 12:31

##### seek his kingdom

"focus on God's kingdom" or "greatly desire God's kingdom"

##### these things will be added to you

"these things also will be given to you" or "God will also give you these things"

#### Luke 12:32

##### little flock

As a shepherd cares for his sheep, Jesus cares for his disciples. Alternate translation: "dear sheep" or "dear group"

#### Luke 12:33

##### Sell your possessions and give alms

"Sell your possessions and give what you earn to the poor"

##### Make for yourselves purses which will not wear out

This is the result of giving to the poor. Alternate translation: "In this way you will make for yourselves money bags that will not get holes in them

##### that does not run out

"that does not diminish" or "that does not become less"

##### where no thief comes near

"where thieves do not come near"

##### no moth destroys

"moths do not destroy. "A "moth" is a small insect that eats holes in fabric. You may need to use a different insect, such as an ant or termite.

#### Luke 12:34

##### where your treasure is, there your heart will be also

"your heart will be with your treasure" or "your heart will be focused on you treasure"

##### your heart

Here "heart" refers to a person's thoughts.

#### Luke 12:35

##### Keep your loins girded

People in Jesus's culture wore long robes. They would tuck the bottom of the robes into their belts to keep them out of the way while they worked. Alternate translation: "Always be ready to serve" or "Be dressed and ready to serve"

##### and your lamps lit

"and keep your lamps burning." They were to be ready to work even at night.

#### Luke 12:36

##### be like people waiting expectantly for their master

Jesus commands the disciples to be ready for him to return the same way servants should be ready for their master to return.

#### Luke 12:37

##### Blessed are those servants

"How good it is for those servants"

##### whom the master will find watching when he comes

"whose master finds them waiting for him when he returns"

##### he will gird himself to serve

"he will tuck in his robe to serve." If people are not familiar with this practice, it can also be translated in a more general way. Alternate translation: "he will dress himself to serve them"

#### Luke 12:38

##### in the second watch of the night

The second watch was between 9:00 p.m. and midnight. Alternate translation: "late at night" or "just before midnight"

##### or if even in the third watch

The third watch was from midnight to 3:00 a.m. Alternate translation: "or if he comes very late at night"

#### Luke 12:39

##### had known the hour

"had known when"

##### he would not have let his house be broken into

"he would not have let the thief break into his house" or "he would have stopped the thief from breaking into his house"

#### Luke 12:40

##### because the Son of Man is coming at an hour that you do not expect

The similarity between a thief (Luke 12:39) and the Son of Man is that people do not know when either one will come, so they need to be ready. Jesus is not saying that he himself is a thief.

##### the Son of Man is coming

Jesus is talking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am coming"

#### Luke 12:42

##### Who then is the faithful and wise manager ... right time?

Jesus uses a question to answer Peter's question indirectly. Alternate translation: "I said it for everyone who is like the faithful and wise manager ... right time."

##### whom his lord will set over his other servants

"whom his lord puts in charge of his other servants"

#### Luke 12:44

##### Truly I say to you

This expression means they should pay special attention to what he is about to say.

##### will set him over all his property

"will put him in charge of all his property"

#### Luke 12:45

##### says in his heart

"thinks to himself"

##### My lord delays his return

"My master will not return soon"

#### Luke 12:46

##### in a day when he does not expect and in an hour that he does not know

"on a day when the servant does not expect him and at a time the servant does not know about"

#### Luke 12:47

##### That servant, having known his lord's will and not having prepared or done according to his will, will be beaten with many blows

"Because that servant knew his master's will and did not prepare or do according to it, the master will beat him severely"

##### his lord's will

"what his master wanted him to do"

#### Luke 12:48

##### he will be beaten with a few blows

"he will be beaten less severely"

##### But everyone who has been given much, from them much will be required

"The master will require much from everyone he has given much to" or "The master will require much from everyone who has received much"

##### from the one who has been trusted with much, even more will be asked

"the master will ask even more of the one who has been entrusted with much"

##### the one who has been entrusted with much

"the one to whom the master has given much property to take care of" or "the one to whom the master has given much responsibility"

#### Luke 12:49

##### I came to cast fire upon the earth

"I came to throw fire on the earth" or "I came to set the earth on fire." Possible meanings are 1) Jesus has come to judge people or 2) Jesus has come to purify believers or 3) Jesus has come to cause division among people.

##### how I wish that it were already kindled

"I wish very much that it was already lit" or "how I wish that the fire had already begun"

#### Luke 12:50

##### I have a baptism to be baptized with

Here "baptism" refers to what Jesus must suffer. Just as water covers a person during baptism, suffering will overwhelm Jesus. Alternate translation: "I must go through a baptism of terrible suffering" or "I must be overwhelmed by suffering as a person being baptized is covered by water"

##### how I am distressed until it is completed

"I am terribly distressed and will be distressed until I complete this baptism"

#### Luke 12:51

##### Do you think that I came to bring peace on the earth? No, I tell you, but rather division

"You may think that I came to bring peace on the earth, but I tell you I did not come for that. Instead, I came to bring division"

##### division

"hostility" or "discord"

#### Luke 12:52

##### there will be five in one house divided

"five people in one house will be divided"

##### against ... against

"will oppose ... will oppose"

#### Luke 12:54

##### A shower is coming

"Rain is coming" or "It is going to rain"

#### Luke 12:56

##### the earth and the heavens

"the earth and the sky"

##### how is it that you do not know how to interpret the present time?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the crowd. Alternate translation: "you should know how to interpret the present time."

#### Luke 12:57

##### Why do you not judge what is right for yourselves?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the crowd. Alternate translation: "You yourselves should discern what is right."

#### Luke 12:58

##### For when you go

"For if you go"

##### make an effort to be reconciled with him

"try to be reconciled with your adversary"

##### the magistrate ... the judge

These words refer to the same person.

##### does not deliver you to the officer

"does not hand you over to the officer" or "does not put the officer in charge of you"

#### Luke 12:59

##### the very last bit of money

"the entire amount of money that your adversary demands"

Chapter 13

1At that time, some people there told him about the Galileans whose blood Pilate mixed with their own sacrifices.2Jesus answered and said to them, "Do you think that these Galileans were more sinful than all the other Galileans because they suffered in this way?3No, I tell you. But if you do not repent, all of you will perish in the same way.4Or those eighteen people in Siloam on whom a tower fell and killed them, do you think they were worse sinners than other men in Jerusalem?5No, I say. But if you do not repent, all of you will also perish."

6Jesus told this parable, "Someone had a fig tree planted in his vineyard and he came and looked for fruit on it but found none.7The man said to the gardener, 'Look, for three years I have come and tried to find fruit on this fig tree and found none. Cut it down. Why let it waste the ground?'

8"The gardener answered and said, 'Sir, leave it alone this year while I dig around it and put manure on it.9If it bears fruit next year, good; but if it does not, cut it down!'"

10Now Jesus was teaching in one of the synagogues during the Sabbath.11Behold, a woman was there who for eighteen years had a spirit of weakness. She was bent over and was not able to straighten up completely.12When Jesus saw her, he called to her and said, "Woman, you are freed from your weakness."13He placed his hands on her, and immediately she was made straight again and glorified God.

14But the synagogue ruler was indignant because Jesus had healed on the Sabbath. So the ruler answered and said to the crowd, "There are six days in which it is necessary to labor. Come and be healed then, not on the Sabbath day."

15The Lord answered him and said, "Hypocrites! Does not each of you untie his ox or his donkey from the stall and lead it to drink on the Sabbath?16So too this daughter of Abraham, whom Satan bound for eighteen long years, should her bonds not be untied on the Sabbath day?"17As he said these things, all those who opposed him were ashamed, but the whole crowd was rejoicing over all the glorious things he did.

18Then Jesus said, "What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?19It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden, and it grew into a big tree, and the birds of heaven built their nests in its branches."

20Again he said, "To what can I compare the kingdom of God?21It is like yeast that a woman took and mixed with three measures of flour until all the flour was leavened."

22Then Jesus traveled through the towns and villages, teaching and making his way toward Jerusalem.23Someone said to him, "Lord, are only a few people to be saved?"

So he said to them,24"Struggle to enter through the narrow door, because, I say to you, many will try to enter, but will not be able to enter.25Once the owner of the house gets up and locks the door, then you will stand outside and pound the door and say, 'Lord, Lord, let us in.'

"He will answer and say to you, 'I do not know you or where you are from.'

26"Then you will say, 'We ate and drank in front of you and you taught in our streets.'

27"But he will reply, 'I say to you, I do not know where you are from. Get away from me, all you workers of unrighteousness!'28There will be crying and the grinding of teeth when you see Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and all the prophets in God's kingdom, but you are thrown out.29They will come from the east, west, north, and south, and be seated at a table in the kingdom of God.30Know this, those who are least important will be first, and those who are most important will be last."

31In that same hour, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you."

32Jesus said, "Go and tell that fox, 'Look, I cast out demons and perform healings today and tomorrow, and the third day I will reach my goal.'33In any case, it is necessary for me to continue on today, tomorrow, and the following day, since it is not acceptable for a prophet to be destroyed outside of Jerusalem.34Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. How often I desired to gather your children the way a hen gathers her brood under her wings, but you did not desire this.35See, your house is abandoned. I say to you, you will not see me until you say, 'Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.'"

#### Luke 13:1

##### some people told him

"some people told Jesus"

##### whose blood Pilate mixed with their own sacrifices

Here "blood" refers to the death of the Galileans. Pilate ordered his soldiers to kill some Galileans while those Galileans were offering their sacrifices to God. Alternate translation: "whom Pilate killed while while they were offering sacrifices" or "whom Pilate's soldiers killed as they were sacrificing animals"

#### Luke 13:2

##### Do you think that these Galileans were more sinful ... way?

"Were these Galileans more sinful ... way?" or "Does this prove that these Galileans were more sinful ... way?" Jesus uses this question to challenge the understanding of the people. He answers the question in verse 3.

#### Luke 13:3

##### No, I tell you

Jesus answers the question he asked in 13:2. Here "I tell you" emphasizes "no." Alternate translation: "They certainly were not more sinful"

##### all of you will perish in the same way

"all of you also will die." The phrase "in the same way" means they will experience the same result; it does not mean that they will die by the same method.

#### Luke 13:4

##### Or those

This is Jesus's second example of people who suffered. Alternate translation: "Or consider those" or "Think about those"

##### Siloam

This is the name of an area in Jerusalem.

##### do you think they were worse sinners ... Jerusalem?

Jesus uses this question to challenge the understanding of the people. He answers the question in 13:4. Alternate translation: "were they more sinful ... Jerusalem?"

##### other men

"other people"

#### Luke 13:6

##### General Information:

Jesus begins to tell the crowd a parable to explain his last statement, "But if you do not repent, all of you will also perish."

##### vineyard

This may have been a vineyard where grapes were grown or simply a garden or orchard.

#### Luke 13:7

##### Why let it waste the ground?

"It is just wasting the ground." or "Do not let it waste the ground."

#### Luke 13:8

##### put manure on it

"put animal dung in the soil." Doing this makes the soil good for plants and trees.

#### Luke 13:10

##### Now

The author uses this word to mark the beginning of a new event.

##### during the Sabbath

"on a Sabbath day"

#### Luke 13:11

##### a spirit of weakness

"an evil spirit that made her weak"

#### Luke 13:12

##### Woman, you are freed from your weakness

By saying this, Jesus healed her. Alternate translation: "Woman, I now free you from your weakness" or "Woman, be healed from your illness"

#### Luke 13:13

##### He placed his hands on her

"He touched her"

##### she was made straight again

"she was able to stand up straight again"

#### Luke 13:14

##### was indignant

"was very angry"

##### be healed then

"let him heal you during those six days" or "ask for healing then"

#### Luke 13:15

##### Hypocrites!

"You hypocrites!" Jesus rebukes the religious leaders.

##### Does not each of you untie his ox or his donkey from the stall and lead it to drink on the Sabbath?

"Every one of you unties his ox or his donkey from the stall and leads it to drink water on the Sabbath day."

#### Luke 13:16

##### this daughter of Abraham

"this descendant of Abraham"

##### whom Satan bound

"whom Satan kept crippled by her illness" or "whom Satan bound with this disease"

##### eighteen long years

The word "long" here emphasizes that eighteen years was a very long time for the woman to suffer.

##### should her bonds not be untied on the Sabbath day?

Jesus speaks about the woman's disease as if it were ropes that bound her. Alternate translation: "it is right to untie the bonds of her illness on the Sabbath day."

#### Luke 13:18

##### What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

Jesus uses two questions to introduce what he is about to teach. Alternate translation: "I will tell you what the kingdom of God is like and what I can compare it to."

#### Luke 13:19

##### a mustard seed

A mustard seed is a very small seed that grows into a large plant. Alternate translation: "a small seed"

##### threw into his garden

"planted in his garden." People planted some kinds of seeds by throwing them so that they scattered in the garden.

##### a big tree

"a very large shrub"

##### birds of heaven

"birds of the sky" or "birds that fly in the sky" or "birds"

#### Luke 13:21

##### like yeast

Only a little bit of yeast is needed to make a lot of dough rise.

##### three measures of flour

This is a large amount of flour, since each measure was about 13 liters. You may need to use a term that your culture uses to measure flour. Alternate translation: "a large amount of flour"

##### until all the flour was leavened

When flour dough is leavened, it expands. Alternate translation: "until the whole lump of dough grew big"

#### Luke 13:23

##### are only a few people to be saved?

"will God save only a few people?"

#### Luke 13:24

##### Struggle to enter through the narrow door

"Work hard to go through the narrow doorway." Jesus is speaking about God's kingdom as if it were a house with a small doorway. Both are hard to enter.

#### Luke 13:25

##### Once the owner

"After the owner" or "When the owner"

##### and pound the door

"and knock on the door" or "and hit the door." This is an attempt to get the owner's attention.

#### Luke 13:27

##### Get away from me

"Go away from me"

#### Luke 13:28

##### There will be crying and the grinding of teeth

"You will cry and grind your teeth." These are symbolic acts that show great regret and sadness.

##### but you are thrown out

"but you yourselves will have been thrown outside" or "but God will have forced you outside"

#### Luke 13:29

##### and be seated at a table in the kingdom of God

"and they will sit down at the feast in the kingdom of God"

#### Luke 13:30

##### will be first ... will be last

Being first represents being important or honored. Alternate translation: "will be the most important ... will be the least important"

#### Luke 13:31

##### Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you

Translate this as a warning to Jesus. They were advising him to go somewhere else and be safe.

#### Luke 13:32

##### that fox

Jesus was calling Herod a fox. A fox is a small wild dog. Possible meanings are 1) Herod was not much of a threat at all or 2) Herod was deceptive.

#### Luke 13:33

##### In any case

"Nevertheless" or "However" or "Whatever happens"

##### it is not acceptable for a prophet to be destroyed outside of Jerusalem

The ancestors of the Jewish people had killed many of God's prophets in Jerusalem, and Jesus knew that the Jews would kill him there also. Alternate translation: "it is only in Jerusalem that it is acceptable for prophets to be killed."

#### Luke 13:34

##### who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you

"you people who kill the prophets and stone those whom God has sent to you"

##### How often I desired

"I have so often desired"

##### to gather your children

"to gather your people" or "to gather the people of Jerusalem"

##### the way a hen gathers her brood under her wings

This describes how a hen protects her young from harm by covering them with her wings.

#### Luke 13:35

##### your house is abandoned

This is a prophecy about what would soon happen to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "your house will be abandoned"

##### the name of the Lord

Here "name" refers to the Lord's power and authority.

Chapter 14

1It happened one Sabbath, when he went into the house of one of the leaders of the Pharisees to eat bread, that they were watching him closely.2Behold, there in front of him was a man who was suffering from edema.3Jesus asked the experts in the Jewish law and the Pharisees, "Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath, or not?"4But they kept silent. So Jesus took hold of him, healed him, and sent him away.5He said to them, "Which of you who has a son or an ox that falls into a well on the Sabbath day will not immediately pull him out?"6They were not able to give an answer to these things.

7When Jesus noticed how those who were invited chose the seats of honor, he spoke a parable, saying to them,8"When you are invited by someone to a wedding feast, do not sit down in the place of honor, because someone may have been invited who is more honored than you.9When the person who invited both of you arrives, he will say to you, 'Give this other person your place,' and then in shame you will proceed to take the lowest place.10But when you are invited, go and sit down in the lowest place, so that when the one who has invited you comes, he may say to you, 'Friend, go up higher.' Then you will be honored in the presence of all who sit at the table with you.11For everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, and he who humbles himself will be exalted."

12Jesus also said to the man who had invited him, "When you give a dinner or a banquet, do not invite your friends or your brothers or your relatives or your rich neighbors, as they may also invite you in return, and you will be repaid.13But when you give a banquet, invite the poor, the crippled, the lame, and the blind,14and you will be blessed, because they cannot repay you. For you will be repaid in the resurrection of the just."

15When one of them who sat at the table with Jesus heard these things, he said to him, "Blessed is he who will eat bread in the kingdom of God!"

16But Jesus said to him, "A certain man prepared a large dinner and invited many.17At the dinner hour, he sent his servant to say to those who were invited, 'Come, because everything is now ready.'

18"They all alike began to make excuses. The first said to him, 'I have bought a field, and I must go out and see it. Please excuse me.'

19"Another said, 'I have bought five pairs of oxen, and I am going to try them out. Please excuse me.'

20"Then another man said, 'I have married a wife, and therefore I cannot come.'

21"The servant came and told his master these things. Then the master of the house became angry and said to his servant, 'Go out quickly into the streets and lanes of the town and bring in here the poor, the crippled, the blind, and the lame.'

22"The servant said, 'Master, what you commanded has been done, and yet there is still room.'

23"The master said to the servant, 'Go out into the highways and hedges and compel them to come in, that my house may be filled.24For I say to you, none of those men who were invited will taste my dinner.'"

25Now large crowds were going with him, and he turned and said to them,26"If anyone comes to me and does not hate his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters, and even his own life, he cannot be my disciple.27Whoever does not carry his own cross and come after me cannot be my disciple.28For which of you who desires to build a tower does not first sit down and count the cost to calculate if he has what he needs to complete it?29Otherwise, when he has laid a foundation and is not able to finish, all who see it will begin to mock him,30saying, 'This man began to build and was not able to finish.'31Or what king, as he goes to encounter another king in war, will not sit down first and take advice about whether he is able with ten thousand men to fight the other king who comes against him with twenty thousand men?32If not, while the other army is still far away, he sends a delegation and asks for conditions of peace.33So therefore, any one of you who does not give up all his possessions cannot be my disciple.34Salt is good, but if the salt has lost its taste, how can it be made salty again?35It is of no use for the soil or even for the manure pile. It is thrown away. He who has ears to hear, let him hear."

#### Luke 14:1

##### he went into the house

"Jesus went into the house"

##### to eat bread

"to eat" or "for a meal." Bread was an important part of a meal and is used in this sentence to refer to a meal.

##### they were watching him closely

"they were watching him carefully." They wanted to see if they could accuse him of doing anything wrong.

#### Luke 14:2

##### was suffering from edema

Edema is swelling caused by water building up in parts of the body. Alternate translation: "was suffering because parts of his body were swollen with water"

#### Luke 14:3

##### Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath, or not

"Does the law permit us to heal on the Sabbath, or does it forbid it"

#### Luke 14:5

##### Which of you who has a son or an ox ... will not immediately pull him out?

Jesus wanted them to admit that it was good to help others on the Sabbath. Alternate translation: "Surely if your son or ox fell into a well on the Sabbath day, you would immediately pull him out, right?"

#### Luke 14:6

##### They were not able to give an answer to these things

They knew that Jesus was right, but they did not want to admit it. Alternate translation: "They had nothing to say about these things"

#### Luke 14:7

##### those who were invited

"those whom the leader of the Pharisees had invited to the meal"

##### the seats of honor

"the seats for honored people" or "the seats for important people"

#### Luke 14:8

##### When you are invited by someone

"When someone invites you"

##### because someone may have been invited who is more honored than you

"because the host may have invited someone who is more important than you are"

#### Luke 14:9

##### both of you

This refers to the two people who want the same seat of honor.

##### in shame

"you will feel ashamed and"

##### the lowest place

"the least important place" or "the place for the least important person"

#### Luke 14:10

##### go up higher

"move to a better seat"

##### Then you will be honored

"Then the one who invited you will honor you"

#### Luke 14:11

##### who exalts himself

"who tries to look important" or "who chooses an important position for himself"

##### will be humbled

"will be shown to be unimportant" or "will receive an unimportant position"

##### who humbles himself

"who chooses to look unimportant" or "who chooses an unimportant position for himself"

##### will be exalted

"will be shown to be important" or "will receive an important position"

#### Luke 14:12

##### as they may also invite you in return

"because they might invite you to their dinner or banquet"

##### you will be repaid

"in this way they will repay you"

#### Luke 14:14

##### you will be blessed

"God will bless you"

##### you will be repaid

"God will repay you"

##### in the resurrection of the just

"when God brings the righteous people back to life"

#### Luke 14:15

##### he said to him

he said to Jesus

##### Blessed is he

"Blessed is anyone" or "How good it will be for everyone"

##### he who will eat bread

The word "bread" refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "he who will eat at the meal"

#### Luke 14:16

##### General Information

Jesus tells a parable.

##### invited many

"invited many people" or "invited many guests"

#### Luke 14:17

##### At the dinner hour

"At the time for the dinner" or "When the dinner was about to begin"

##### those who were invited

"those he had invited"

#### Luke 14:18

##### to make excuses

"to say why they could not come to the dinner"

##### Please excuse me

"Please forgive me" or "Please accept my apology"

#### Luke 14:19

##### five pairs of oxen

People used pairs of oxen to pull farming tools. Alternate translation: “ten oxen to work in my fields”

##### I am going to try them out

"I am going to try using them"

#### Luke 14:20

##### I have married a wife

Use an expression that is natural in your language. Some languages may say "I just got married" or "I have taken a wife."

#### Luke 14:22

##### what you commanded has been done

"I have done what you commanded"

#### Luke 14:23

##### the highways and hedges

"the roads and paths outside of the city"

##### compel them to come in

"make anyone you find to come in"

##### that my house may be filled

"so that my house may be full of people"

#### Luke 14:24

##### who were invited

"whom I invited"

##### will taste my dinner

"will enjoy the dinner I have prepared"

#### Luke 14:25

##### Now large crowds were going with him

Now large crowds were going with Jesus

#### Luke 14:26

##### If anyone comes to me and does not hate his own father ... he cannot be my disciple

Here, "hate" is an exaggeration for the lesser love people are to show to people other than Jesus. Alternate translation: "If anyone comes to me and does not love me more than he loves his father ... he cannot be my disciple" or "Only if a person loves me more than he loves his own father ... can he be my disciple"

#### Luke 14:27

##### Whoever does not carry his own cross and come after me cannot be my disciple

"Only he who carries his own cross and comes after me can be my disciple" or "If anyone wants to be my disciple, he must carry his own cross and follow me"

#### Luke 14:28

##### General Information:

Jesus continues to explain to the crowd that it is important to count the cost of being a disciple.

##### For which of you who desires to build a tower does not first sit down and count the cost to calculate if he has what he needs to complete it?

"If a person wanted to build a tower, he would first sit down and determine if he had enough money to complete it."

##### tower

This may have been a watchtower. Alternate translation: "a tall building" or "a high lookout platform"

#### Luke 14:29

##### Otherwise

"If he does not first count the cost"

##### when he has laid a foundation

"when he has built a base" or "when he has completed the first part of the building"

#### Luke 14:31

##### what king ... will not sit down first and take advice ... men?

Jesus uses another question to teach the crowd about counting the cost. Alternate translation: "you know that a king ... would sit down first and take counsel ... men."

##### take advice

Possible meanings are 1) "think carefully " or 2) "listen to his advisors."

#### Luke 14:32

##### If not

"If he realizes that he will not be able to defeat the other king"

##### for conditions of peace

"for terms to end the war" or "what the other king wants him to do in order to end the war"

#### Luke 14:33

##### any one of you who does not give up all his possessions cannot be my disciple

"only those of you who give up all your possessions can be my disciples"

##### give up all his possessions

"leave behind all that he has"

#### Luke 14:34

##### how can it be made salty again?

Jesus uses a question to teach the crowd. Alternate translation: "it cannot be made salty again." or "no one can make it salty again."

#### Luke 14:35

##### manure pile

People use manure to fertilize gardens and fields. Salt without taste is so useless it is not even worth mixing with manure. Alternate translation: "compost heap" or "fertilizer"

##### It is thrown away

"People throw it away"

##### He who has ears to hear, let him hear

Jesus is saying that what he has just said is important, and people may need to take some effort to understand it. See how you translated this in Luke 8:8. Alternate translation: “Let the one who has ears to hear listen” or “If anyone can hear, let him listen and understand” or “If you have ears to hear, then listen"

Chapter 15

1Now all the tax collectors and other sinners were coming to Jesus to listen to him.2Both the Pharisees and the scribes grumbled to each other, saying, "This man welcomes sinners, and even eats with them."

3Jesus spoke this parable to them, saying,4"Which one of you, if he has a hundred sheep and then loses one of them, will not leave the ninety-nine in the wilderness, and go after the lost one until he finds it?5Then when he has found it, he lays it across his shoulders and rejoices.6When he comes to the house, he calls together his friends and his neighbors, saying to them, 'Rejoice with me, for I have found my lost sheep.'7I say to you that even so, there will be joy in heaven over one sinner who repents, more than over ninety-nine righteous persons who do not need to repent.

8"Or what woman who has ten silver coins, if she were to lose one coin, would not light a lamp, sweep the house, and seek diligently until she has found it?9When she has found it, she calls together her friends and neighbors, saying, 'Rejoice with me, for I have found the coin which I lost.'10Even so, I say to you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner who repents."

11Then Jesus said, "A certain man had two sons,12and the younger of them said to his father, 'Father, give me the portion of the wealth that falls to me.' So he divided his property between them.13Not many days later, the younger son gathered together all he owned and went to a country far away, and there he wasted all his wealth by living recklessly.14Now when he had spent everything, a severe famine spread through that country, and he began to be in need.15He went and hired himself out to one of the citizens of that country, who sent him into his fields to feed pigs.16He was longing to eat the carob pods that the pigs ate because no one gave him anything.17But when the young son came to himself, he said, 'How many of my father's hired servants have more than enough bread, and I am here, perishing from hunger!18I will get up and leave here and go to my father, and will say to him, "Father, I have sinned against heaven and against you.19I am no longer worthy to be called your son; make me as one of your hired servants."'20So the young son got up and left and came toward his father. While he was still far away, his father saw him and was moved with compassion, and he ran and embraced him and kissed him.21The son said to him, 'Father, I have sinned against heaven and against you. I am no longer worthy to be called your son.'

22"The father said to his servants, 'Bring quickly the best robe, and put it on him, and put a ring on his hand, and sandals on his feet.23Then bring the fattened calf and kill it. Let us feast and be merry!24For my son was dead, and now he is alive. He was lost, and now he is found.' Then they began to be merry.

25"Now his older son was out in the field. As he came and approached the house, he heard music and dancing.26He called to one of the servants and asked what these things might be.27The servant said to him, 'Your brother has come home and your father has killed the fattened calf because he has received him in good health.'

28"The older son was angry and would not go in, and his father came out and pleaded with him.29But the older son answered and said to his father, 'Look, these many years I slaved for you, and I never neglected a command of yours, and yet you never gave me a young goat that I might be merry with my friends,30but when your son came, who has devoured your living with prostitutes, you killed for him the fattened calf.'

31"The father said to him, 'Child, you are always with me, and all that is mine is yours.32But it was proper for us to be merry and rejoice, for this brother of yours was dead, and is now alive; he was lost, and has now been found.'"

#### Luke 15:1

##### Now

This marks the beginning of a new event.

##### all the tax collectors

"many tax collectors"

#### Luke 15:2

##### and even eats with them

The word "even" shows that they thought it was bad enough that Jesus allowed sinners to come to him, but it was worse that he would eat with them.

#### Luke 15:3

##### General Information:

Jesus begins to tell several parables. These parables are situations that anyone could experience. They are not about particular people.

#### Luke 15:4

##### Which one of you, if he has a hundred sheep and then loses one of them, will not leave ... until he finds it?

"If one of you had a hundred sheep and then lost one of them, he would leave ... until he finds it."

#### Luke 15:5

##### lays it across his shoulders

"carries it on his shoulders"

#### Luke 15:7

##### even so

"in the same way"

##### there will be joy in heaven

"everyone in heaven will rejoice"

#### Luke 15:8

##### Or what woman ... would not light a lamp ... and seek diligently until she has found it?

Jesus uses a question to remind the people that if they lost a silver coin, they would look for it diligently. Alternate translation: "Any woman ... would certainly light a lamp ... and seek diligently until she has found it."

#### Luke 15:10

##### Even so

"In the same way" or "Just as people would rejoice with the woman"

##### over one sinner who repents

"when one sinner repents"

#### Luke 15:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells another parable.

#### Luke 15:12

##### give me

The son wanted his father to give it to him immediately.

##### the portion of the wealth that falls to me

"the part of your wealth that you plan for me to receive when you die"

##### So he divided his property between them

"So the father divided his property between his two sons"

#### Luke 15:13

##### by living recklessly

"by living without thinking about the consequences of his actions" or "by living wildly"

#### Luke 15:14

##### a severe famine spread through that country

"a drought occurred there and the entire country did not have enough food"

##### to be in need

"to lack what he needed" or "to not have enough"

#### Luke 15:15

##### hired himself out to one of the citizens

"began to work for one of the citizens"

#### Luke 15:16

##### He was longing to eat

"He wished very much that he could eat"

##### the carob pods

These are the husks of beans that grow on the carob tree. Alternate translation: "the carob bean pods" or "the bean husks"

#### Luke 15:17

##### the young son came to himself

This phrase means he began to think clearly. Alternate translation: "he came to his senses"

##### How many of my father's hired servants have more than enough bread

This is part of an exclamation, and not a question. Alternate translation: "All my father's hired servants have more than enough bread to eat"

##### bread

The word “bread” refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "food"

##### perishing

"dying"

#### Luke 15:18

##### I will get up

This means that he will begin to act. It does not mean that he was sitting or lying down when he said these words.

##### I have sinned against heaven

Jewish people sometimes avoided saying the word "God" and used the word "heaven" instead. Alternate translation: "I have sinned against God"

#### Luke 15:19

##### I am no longer worthy to be called your son

"You called me son in the past, but now I am not worthy for you to call me son"

##### make me as one of your hired servants

"hire me and I will become one of your servants." This is a request, not a command.

#### Luke 15:20

##### While he was still far away

"While he was still far away from his father's house"

##### was moved with compassion

"had pity on him" or "loved him deeply from his heart"

##### embraced him and kissed him

The father did this to show his son that he loved him and was glad that the son was coming home. If people think that it is strange or wrong for a man to hug and kiss his son, you can substitute a way that men in your culture show affection to their sons. Alternate translation: "welcomed him affectionately"

#### Luke 15:21

##### I am no longer worthy to be called your son

"I am not worthy for you to call me your son"

#### Luke 15:22

##### the best robe

"the best coat" or "the best garment"

##### put a ring on his hand

A ring was a sign of authority that men wore on one of their fingers.

##### sandals

Wealthy people of that time wore sandals.

#### Luke 15:23

##### the fattened calf

People would give one of their young cows special food so that it would grow well. Then when they wanted to have a feast, they would eat that young cow. Alternate translation: "the best calf" or "the young animal we have been making fat"

##### kill it

"kill it and cook it"

#### Luke 15:24

##### my son was dead, and now he is alive

"it is as if my son were dead and became alive again" or "I felt like my son had died, but he is now alive"

##### He was lost, and now he is found

"It is as if I had lost my son and now I have found him" or "It is as if he had lost his way, but now he has returned"

#### Luke 15:25

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

##### was out in the field

"was out in the field working"

#### Luke 15:26

##### what these things might be

"what was happening"

#### Luke 15:27

##### he has received him in good health

"your father has received your brother, and your brother is healthy" or "your brother is well and has returned to your father"

#### Luke 15:29

##### I slaved for you

"I worked as hard as a slave for you"

##### a young goat

A young goat was smaller and less expensive than a fatted calf. Alternate translation: "even a young goat"

#### Luke 15:30

##### your son

"that son of yours." The older son refers to his brother this way in order to show how angry he is.

##### has devoured your living

"has wasted all your wealth" or "has thrown away all your money"

#### Luke 15:31

##### Child

"My dear child" or "My dear son." The father was addressing his son tenderly.

#### Luke 15:32

##### this brother of yours

The father was probably reminding the older son of his responsibility to love his brother.

##### this brother of yours was dead, and is now alive; he was lost, and has now been found.

See how you translated similar words in Luke 15:24.

Chapter 16

1Jesus also said to the disciples, "There was a certain rich man who had a manager, and it was reported to him that this manager was wasting his possessions.2So the rich man called him and said to him, 'What is this that I hear about you? Give an account of your management, for you can no longer be manager.'

3"The manager said to himself, 'What should I do, since my master is taking away my management job? I do not have strength to dig, and I am ashamed to beg.4I know what I will do, so that when I am removed from my management job, people will welcome me into their houses.'

5"Then the manager called for each one of his master's debtors, and he asked the first one, 'How much do you owe to my master?'6He said, 'A hundred baths of olive oil.' He said to him, 'Take your bill, sit down quickly, and write fifty.'

7"Then the manager said to another, 'How much do you owe?' He said, 'A hundred cors of wheat.' He said to him, 'Take your bill, and write eighty.'

8"The master then commended the unrighteous manager because he had acted shrewdly. For the sons of this world are more shrewd in dealing with their own people than are the sons of light.9I say to you, make friends for yourselves by means of unrighteous wealth so that when it is gone, they may welcome you into the eternal dwellings.

10"He who is faithful in very little is also faithful in much, and he who is unrighteous in very little is also unrighteous in much.11If you have not been faithful in using unrighteous wealth, who will trust you with true wealth?12If you have not been faithful in using other people's property, who will give you money of your own?

13"No servant can serve two masters, for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will be devoted to one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and wealth."

14Now the Pharisees, who were lovers of money, heard all these things, and they ridiculed him.15He said to them, "You justify yourselves in the sight of men, but God knows your hearts. That which is exalted among men is detestable in the sight of God.16The law and the prophets were in effect until John came. From that time on, the gospel of the kingdom of God is preached, and everyone tries to force their way into it.17But it is easier for heaven and earth to pass away than for one stroke of a letter of the law to become invalid.

18"Everyone who divorces his wife and marries another commits adultery, and he who marries one who is divorced from her husband commits adultery.

19"Now there was a certain rich man who was clothed in purple and fine linen and was enjoying every day his great wealth.20A certain beggar named Lazarus was laid at his gate, covered with sores,21and longing to eat what fell from the rich man's table. Even the dogs came and licked his sores.22It came about that the beggar died and was carried away by the angels to Abraham's side. The rich man also died and was buried,23and in Hades, being in torment, he lifted up his eyes and saw Abraham far away and Lazarus at his side.24So he cried out and said, 'Father Abraham, have mercy on me and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water and cool my tongue, for I am in anguish in this flame.'

25"But Abraham said, 'Child, remember that in your lifetime you received your good things, and Lazarus in like manner evil things. But now he is comforted here, and you are in agony.26Besides all this, a great chasm has been put in place, so that those who want to cross over from here to you cannot, and no one can cross over from there to us.'

27"The rich man said, 'I beg you, Father Abraham, that you would send him to my father's house—28for I have five brothers—in order that he may warn them, so that it may not be that they come into this place of torment.'

29"But Abraham said, 'They have Moses and the prophets; let them listen to them.'

30"The rich man replied, 'No, Father Abraham, but if someone would go to them from the dead, they will repent.'

31"But Abraham said to him, 'If they do not listen to Moses and the prophets, neither will they be persuaded if someone rises from the dead.'"

#### Luke 16:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins telling another parable.

##### it was reported to him

"people reported to the rich man"

##### was wasting his possessions

"was wasting the rich man's wealth"

#### Luke 16:2

##### What is this that I hear about you?

The rich man uses a question to scold the manager. Alternate translation: "I have heard what you are doing."

##### Give an account of your management

"Give me a report of how you have managed my possessions"

#### Luke 16:3

##### What should I do ... job?

The manager asks himself this question as a way of thinking about his options. Alternate translation: "I need to think about what I should do ... job."

#### Luke 16:4

##### when I am removed from my management job

"when I lose my management job" or "when my master takes away my management job"

#### Luke 16:5

##### his master's debtors

"the people who were in debt to his master" or "the people who owed things to his master"

#### Luke 16:6

##### He said ... He said to him

"The debtor said ... The manager said to the debtor"

##### A hundred baths of olive oil ... write fifty

A bath is about 22 liters. Alternate translation: "I owe 2,200 liters of olive oil ... write 1,100 liters"

##### Take your bill

A "bill" is a piece of paper that tells how much someone owes.

#### Luke 16:7

##### the manager said to another ... He said ... He said to him

"the manager said to another debtor ... The debtor said ... The manager said to the debtor"

##### A hundred cors of wheat ... write eighty

A cor is about 220 liters. Alternate translation: "I owe 22,000 liters of wheat ... write 17,600 liters" or "I owe one hundred large baskets of wheat ... write eighty large baskets of wheat "

#### Luke 16:8

##### commended

"praised" or "spoke well of" or "approved of"

##### he had acted shrewdly

"he had acted cleverly" or "he had done a sensible thing"

##### the sons of this world

"the people of this world" or "worldly people." This refers to those who, like the unrighteous manager, do not know or care about God.

##### the sons of light

Here "light" represents everything godly. Alternate translation: "the people of God" or "godly people"

#### Luke 16:9

##### make friends for yourselves by means of unrighteous wealth

"make people your friends by helping them with worldly wealth"

##### the eternal dwellings

This refers to heaven, where God lives.

#### Luke 16:10

##### He who is faithful ... is also faithful ... he who is unrighteous ... is also unrighteous

"People who are faithful ... are also faithful ... people who are unrighteous ... are also unrighteous."

##### faithful in very little ... unrighteous in very little

"faithful even with small things ... unrighteous even in small things"

#### Luke 16:11

##### who will trust you with true wealth?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "no one will trust you with true wealth." or "no one will give you true wealth to manage."

##### true wealth

This refers to wealth that is more genuine, real, or lasting than money and possessions.

#### Luke 16:12

##### who will give you money of your own?

Jesus uses this question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "no one will give you wealth for yourself."

#### Luke 16:13

##### No servant can serve two masters

"A servant cannot serve two masters"

#### Luke 16:14

##### Now

This word marks the author's shift from reporting what Jesus said to reporting something about the Pharisees.

##### who were lovers of money

"who loved having money" or "who where very greedy for money"

##### they ridiculed him

"the Pharisees ridiculed Jesus"

#### Luke 16:15

##### You justify yourselves in the sight of men

"You make yourselves look good to other people"

##### God knows your hearts

Here "hearts" represents the desires of people. Alternate translation: "God understands your true desires" or "God knows your motives"

##### That which is exalted among men is detestable in the sight of God

"Those things that men think are very important are things that God hates"

#### Luke 16:16

##### The law and the prophets

This refers to all of God's word that had been written up to that time.

##### were in effect

"had authority" or "were what people needed to obey"

##### John came

"John the Baptist came"

##### the gospel of the kingdom of God is preached

"we teach people about the good news of the kingdom of God"

##### everyone tries to force their way into it

"many people are doing everything they can to enter it"

#### Luke 16:17

##### one stroke of a letter of the law

A "stroke of a letter" is the smallest part of a letter. Here it represents something in the law that may seem to be insignificant. Alternate translation: "even the smallest detail of the law"

##### to become invalid

"to disappear" or "to cease to exist"

#### Luke 16:18

##### commits adultery

"is guilty of adultery"

#### Luke 16:19

##### Now

This word marks a shift in Jesus's speech. He begins to tell a story that will help people understand what he was teaching them.

##### who was clothed in purple and fine linen

"who wore clothing made with fine linen and purple dye" or "who wore very expensive clothes." Purple dye and fine linen cloth were very expensive.

#### Luke 16:20

##### A certain beggar named Lazarus was laid at his gate

"People had laid a certain beggar named Lazarus at his gate"

##### at his gate

"at the gate to the rich man's house"

##### covered with sores

"and the beggar had sores all over his body"

#### Luke 16:21

##### longing to eat what fell

"wishing he could eat the scraps of food that fell"

##### Even the dogs came

The word "Even" here shows that what follows is worse than what has already been told about Lazarus. Alternate translation: "In addition to that, the dogs came" or "Worse yet, the dogs came"

##### dogs

The Jews considered dogs to be unclean animals. Lazarus was too sick and weak to stop the dogs from licking his wounds.

#### Luke 16:22

##### It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an event in the story.

##### and was carried away by the angels

"and the angels carried him away"

##### to Abraham's side

"to be with Abraham" or "to sit next to Abraham"

##### and was buried

"and people buried him"

#### Luke 16:23

##### in Hades, being in torment

"he went to Hades, where, suffering in terrible pain"

##### he lifted up his eyes

"he looked up"

#### Luke 16:24

##### Father Abraham

Abraham was the ancestor of all the Jews, including the rich man.

##### I am in anguish in this flame

"I am in terrible pain in this flame" or "I am suffering terribly in this fire"

#### Luke 16:25

##### Child

The rich man was one of Abraham's descendants.

##### good things

"fine things" or "pleasant things"

##### and Lazarus in like manner evil things

"and Lazarus received evil things" or "and Lazarus received things that caused him to suffer"

##### he is comforted here

"he is comfortable here" or "he is happy here"

#### Luke 16:26

##### Besides all this

"In addition"

##### a great chasm has been put in place

"God has placed a huge ravine between you and us" or "there is a great chasm"

##### a great chasm

"a steep, deep and wide valley" or "a big separation" or "a huge ravine"

#### Luke 16:28

##### in order that he may warn them

"so that Lazarus may warn them"

##### this place of torment

"this place where we suffer torment" or "this place where we suffer terrible pain"

#### Luke 16:29

##### Moses and the prophets

This refers to their writings. Alternate translation: "what Moses and the prophets wrote"

##### let them listen to them

"your brothers should pay attention to Moses and the prophets"

#### Luke 16:30

##### if someone would go to them from the dead

The rich man would like this to happen. Alternate translation: "if a person who has died would go to them" or "if someone who has died would go and warn them"

##### from the dead

The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. Alternate translation: "from among all those who have died"

#### Luke 16:31

##### neither will they be persuaded if someone rises from the dead

"they will not believe even if someone comes back from the dead"

Chapter 17

1Jesus said to his disciples, "It is certain there will be stumbling blocks, but woe to that person through whom they come!2It would be better for him if a millstone were hung around his neck and he were thrown into the sea than that he should cause one of these little ones to stumble.3Watch yourselves. If your brother sins, rebuke him, and if he repents, forgive him.4If he sins against you seven times in the day, and seven times returns to you, saying, 'I repent,' you must forgive him!"

5The apostles said to the Lord, "Increase our faith."

6The Lord said, "If you had faith like a mustard seed, you would say to this mulberry tree, 'Be uprooted, and be planted in the sea,' and it would obey you.7But which of you, who has a servant plowing or keeping sheep, will say to him when he has come in from the field, 'Come immediately and sit down to eat'?8Will he not say to him, 'Prepare something for me to eat, and put a belt around your clothes and serve me until I have finished eating and drinking. Then afterward you will eat and drink'?9He does not thank the servant because he did the things that were commanded, does he?10Even so you also, when you have done everything that you are commanded, should say, 'We are unworthy servants. We have only done what we ought to do.'"

11It came about that as he traveled to Jerusalem, he went along the border between Samaria and Galilee.12As he entered into a certain village, there he was met by ten men who were lepers. They stood far away from him13and they lifted up their voices, saying, "Jesus, Master, have mercy on us."

14When he saw them, he said to them, "Go and show yourselves to the priests." As they went away they were cleansed.15When one of them saw that he was healed, he turned back, with a loud voice glorifying God.16He fell on his face at Jesus' feet, giving him thanks. Now he was a Samaritan.17Then Jesus said, "Were not the ten cleansed? Where are the nine?18Were there no others who returned to give glory to God, except this foreigner?"19He said to him, "Arise, and go. Your faith has made you well."

20Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God does not come with careful observing.21Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For look, the kingdom of God is within you."

22He said to the disciples, "The days are coming when you will desire to see one of the days of the Son of Man, but you will not see it.23Then they will say to you, 'Look, there! Look, here!' But do not go out or run after them,24for as the lightning shines brightly when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day.25But first he must suffer many things and be rejected by this generation.26As it happened in the days of Noah, even so will it also happen in the days of the Son of Man.27They ate, they drank, they married, and they were given in marriage until the day that Noah entered into the ark—and the flood came and destroyed them all.28In the same way, even as it happened in the days of Lot—they were eating and drinking, buying and selling, planting and building.29But in the day that Lot went out from Sodom, it rained fire and sulfur from heaven and destroyed them all.30After the same manner it will be in the day that the Son of Man is revealed.31In that day let him who is on the housetop not go down to get his goods out of the house, and in the same way let him who is in the field not return.32Remember Lot's wife.33Whoever seeks to gain his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life will save it.34I tell you, in that night there will be two people in one bed. One will be taken, and the other will be left.35There will be two women grinding grain together. One will be taken, and the other will be left."36[1](#footnote-target-1)

37They asked him, "Where, Lord?"

He said to them, "Where there is a body, there will the vultures also be gathered together."

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Luke 17:36 the best ancient copies do not have verse 36, There will be two in the field; one will be taken and the other left .

#### Luke 17:1

##### It is certain there will be stumbling blocks

"There will certainly be things that tempt people to sin" or "Things that tempt people to sin will certainly happen"

##### to that person through whom they come

"to anyone who causes the temptations to come" or "to any person who causes people to be tempted"

#### Luke 17:2

##### if a millstone were hung around his neck and he were thrown into the sea

"if they were to hang a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea" or "if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and push him into the sea"

##### a millstone

This is a very large, heavy circular stone that people use for grinding wheat grain into flour. Alternate translation: "a heavy stone"

##### these little ones

"these people whose faith is small"

##### to stumble

"to sin"

#### Luke 17:3

##### your brother

The word "brother" is here used in the sense of someone with the same belief. Alternate translation: "a fellow believer"

##### rebuke him

"tell him strongly that what he did was wrong" or "correct him"

#### Luke 17:5

##### Increase our faith

"Please give us more faith"

#### Luke 17:6

##### If you had faith like a mustard seed

A mustard seed is a very small seed. Jesus implies that they do not have even a small amount of faith. Alternate translation: "If you had faith that was as big as even a tiny mustard seed"

##### mulberry tree

If this type of tree is not familiar, it may be helpful to substitute another type of tree. Alternate translation: "fig tree" or "tree"

##### Be uprooted, and be planted in the sea

"Uproot yourself and plant yourself in the sea" or "Take your roots out of the ground, and put your roots down into the ocean"

#### Luke 17:7

##### But which of you, who ... sheep, will say ... sit down to eat'?

Jesus asks his disciples a question to help them think about the role of a servant. This could be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "But none of you who ... sheep would say ... sit down to eat.'

##### a servant plowing or keeping sheep

"a servant who plows your field or takes care of your sheep"

#### Luke 17:8

##### Will he not say to him ... eat and drink'?

Jesus uses a second question explain how someone would actually treat a servant. This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "He would certainly say to him ... eat and drink.'"

##### put a belt around your clothes and serve me

"tie your clothes at your waist and serve me" or "dress up properly and take care of me." People would tie their clothes closely around their waist so that their clothes would not get in their way while they worked.

##### Then afterward

"Then after you serve me"

#### Luke 17:9

##### he did the things that were commanded

"the servant did the things that the master commanded him to do"

##### does he?

"right?" or "is this not true?"

#### Luke 17:10

##### you also

Jesus was speaking to his disciples, so the word "you" refers to them.

##### that you are commanded

"that God has commanded you"

#### Luke 17:11

##### It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event.

#### Luke 17:12

##### there he was met by ten men who were lepers

"ten men who were lepers met him" or "ten men who had leprosy met him"

##### They stood far away from him

This was a respectful gesture, because lepers were not allowed to approach other people.

#### Luke 17:13

##### they lifted up their voices

"they called with loud voices" or "they called aloud"

#### Luke 17:14

##### they were cleansed

When people were healed, they were no longer ceremonially unclean. Alternate translation: "they were cleansed of their leprosy" or "they were healed of their leprosy and so became clean"

#### Luke 17:15

##### saw that he was healed

"realized that he was healed" or "realized that Jesus had healed him"

##### he turned back

"he went back to Jesus"

##### with a loud voice glorifying God

"and glorified God loudly"

#### Luke 17:16

##### He fell on his face at Jesus' feet

"he knelt down and put his face close to Jesus' feet." He did this to honor Jesus.

##### Now he was a Samaritan

The word "now" marks Luke's change from telling about what happened to telling about that man.

#### Luke 17:17

##### Were not the ten cleansed?

Jesus used questions here to show the people how disappointed he was that only one of the men came back to glorify God. Alternate translation: "Ten men were healed." or "God healed ten men."

##### Where are the nine?

"Why did not the other nine come back?" This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "The other nine men should have come back, too."

#### Luke 17:18

##### Were there no others who returned to give glory to God, except this foreigner?

This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one returned to give glory to God except this foreigner!"

#### Luke 17:19

##### Your faith has made you well

"Because of your faith you have become well" or "Because you believe, you are well again"

#### Luke 17:20

##### Being asked by the Pharisees

This is the beginning of a new event. Alternate translation: "When the Pharisees asked Jesus" or "One day the Pharisees asked Jesus"

##### The kingdom of God does not come with careful observing

"The kingdom of God does not come in a way that people can see"

#### Luke 17:21

##### the kingdom of God is within you

The idea of the noun "kingdom" can be expressed with the verb "rules" or "reigns." Possible meanings are 1) "God rules within you" or 2) "God reigns among you."

#### Luke 17:22

##### The days are coming when

"A time is coming when" or "Soon"

##### you will desire to see

"you will want to see" or "you will wish to experience"

##### one of the days of the Son of Man

"one of the days when the Son of Man will rule as king"

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man"

##### but you will not see it

"you will not experience it"

#### Luke 17:23

##### Look, there! Look, here!

"Look, he is over there! Look, he is over here!"

#### Luke 17:24

##### as the lightning shines brightly ... so will the Son of Man be

When lightning flashes, people can see it clearly. Alternate translation: "as people can see lightning clearly when it flashes ... so they will clearly see the Son of Man"

##### in his day

"when he comes to reign"

#### Luke 17:25

##### and be rejected by this generation

"and the people of this generation must reject him"

#### Luke 17:26

##### As it happened ... even so will it also happen

"As it was ... even so it will be" or "As it was ... it will be like that"

##### in the days of Noah

"when Noah lived"

##### in the days of the Son of Man

"when the Son of Man comes"

#### Luke 17:27

##### They ate, they drank, they married, and they were given in marriage

People were doing ordinary things. They did not care that God was going to judge them.

##### they married, and they were given in marriage

"they married, and they gave their daughters to be married" or "and they got married"

##### the ark

"the ship" or "the barge"

#### Luke 17:28

##### they were eating and drinking

"people were eating and drinking"

#### Luke 17:29

##### it rained fire and sulfur from heaven

"fire and burning sulfur fell from the sky like rain"

#### Luke 17:30

##### After the same manner it will be

"It will be the same" or "It will be like that"

##### in the day that the Son of Man is revealed

"when the Son of Man appears" or "when the Son of man comes"

#### Luke 17:31

##### let him who is on the housetop not go down

"whoever is on the housetop must not go down" or "if anyone is on his housetop, he must not go down."

##### on the housetop

Their housetops were flat, so people could walk or sit on them.

##### his goods

"his possessions" or "his things"

##### let him who is in the field not return

"whoever is in the field must not go back to his house." They must not go back to their house to get anything. They must flee quickly.

#### Luke 17:32

##### Remember Lot's wife

"Remember what happened to Lot's wife." This is a warning. She looked back toward Sodom and God punished her along with the people of Sodom. Alternate translation: "Do not do what Lot's wife did"

#### Luke 17:33

##### Whoever seeks to gain his life will lose it

"People who try save their lives will lose them" or "Whoever tries to save his old way of life will lose his life"

##### but whoever loses his life will save it

"but people who lose their lives will save them" or "but whoever abandons his old way of life will save his life"

#### Luke 17:34

##### in that night

The sentence tells what will happen if the Son of Man comes during the night.

##### One will be taken, and the other will be left

"God will take one person and leave the other" or "Angels will take one person and leave the other." The emphasis is not on two particular people but on the fact that some people will be taken away and others will be left.

#### Luke 17:37

##### Where, Lord?

"Lord, where will this happen?"

##### Where there is a body, there will the vultures also be gathered together

Apparently this is a proverb that means "It will be obvious" or "You will know it when it happens." Alternate translation: "It will be as obvious as it is when vultures gather around a dead body" or "As the gathering of vultures shows that there is a dead body, there will be signs about these things"

##### vultures

Vultures are large birds that eat the bodies of dead animals that they find. You could describe these birds this way or use the word for local birds that do this.

Chapter 18

1Then he spoke a parable to them about how they should always pray and not become discouraged,2saying, "In a certain city there was a judge who did not fear God and did not respect people.3Now there was a widow in that city, and she came often to him, saying, 'Help me get justice against my opponent.'

4For a long time he was not willing to help her, but after a while he said to himself, 'Though I do not fear God or respect man,5yet because this widow causes me trouble, I will help her get justice, so that she does not wear me out by her constant coming.'"6Then the Lord said, "Listen to what the unjust judge says.7Now will not God also bring justice to his chosen ones who cry out to him day and night? Will he delay long over them?8I say to you that he will bring justice to them speedily. Even so, when the Son of Man comes, will he indeed find faith on the earth?"

9Then he also spoke this parable to some who trusted in themselves that they were righteous and who despised other people:10"Two men went up into the temple to pray—the one was a Pharisee and the other was a tax collector.11The Pharisee stood and prayed these things about himself, 'God, I thank you that I am not like other people—robbers, unrighteous people, adulterers—or even like this tax collector.12I fast two times every week. I give tithes of all that I get.'

13But the tax collector, standing at a distance, would not even lift up his eyes to heaven, but hit his breast, saying, 'God, have mercy on me, a sinner.'14I say to you, this man went back down to his house justified rather than the other, because everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, but everyone who humbles himself will be exalted."

15The people were also bringing to him their infants so that he might touch them, but when the disciples saw it, they rebuked them.16But Jesus called them to him, saying, "Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them. For the kingdom of God belongs to such ones.17Truly I say to you, whoever will not receive the kingdom of God like a child will definitely not enter it."

18A certain ruler asked him, saying, "Good teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"

19Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me good? No one is good, except God alone.20You know the commandments—do not commit adultery, do not murder, do not steal, do not testify falsely, honor your father and mother."

21The ruler said, "All these things I have obeyed from the time I was a youth."

22When Jesus heard that, he said to him, "One thing you still lack. You must sell all that you have and distribute it to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven—and come, follow me."

23But when the ruler heard these things, he became extremely sad, for he was very rich.24Then Jesus, seeing him, [1](#footnote-target-1) said, "How difficult it is for those who are rich to enter the kingdom of God!25For it is easier for a camel to go through a needle's eye, than for a rich person to enter the kingdom of God."

26Those hearing it said, "Then who can be saved?"

27Jesus answered, "The things which are impossible with people are possible with God."

28Peter said, "Well, we have left everything that is our own and have followed you."

29Jesus then said to them, "Truly, I say to you that there is no one who has left house, or wife, or brothers, or parents, or children, for the sake of the kingdom of God,30who will not receive much more in this time, and in the age to come, eternal life."

31After he gathered the twelve to himself, he said to them, "See, we are going up to Jerusalem, and all the things that have been written by the prophets about the Son of Man will be accomplished.32For he will be given over to the Gentiles, and will be mocked, and shamefully treated, and spit upon.33After whipping him, they will kill him, and on the third day he will rise again."34They understood none of these things, and this word was hidden from them, and they did not understand the things that were said.

35It came about that, as Jesus approached Jericho, a certain blind man was sitting by the road begging,36and hearing a crowd going by, he asked what was happening.37They told him that Jesus of Nazareth was passing by.38So the blind man cried out, saying, "Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me."39The ones who were walking ahead rebuked the blind man, telling him to be quiet. But he cried out all the more, "Son of David, have mercy on me."

40Jesus stood still and commanded that the man be brought to him. Then when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him,41"What do you want me to do for you?"

He said, "Lord, I want to receive my sight."

42Jesus said to him, "Receive your sight. Your faith has healed you."43Immediately he received his sight and followed him, glorifying God. All the people, when they saw this, gave praise to God.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient Greek copies have the phrase: seeing that he had become sad .

#### Luke 18:1

##### Then he spoke a parable to them

"Then Jesus told them a parable"

#### Luke 18:2

##### did not respect people

"did not care about other people"

#### Luke 18:3

##### a widow

A widow is a woman whose husband has died and who has not remarried. She would not have had anyone to protect her from those who wanted to harm her.

##### she came often to him

The word "him" refers to the judge.

##### Help me get justice against my opponent

"Give me a just ruling against my opponent"

##### my opponent

"my enemy" or "the person who is trying to harm me." It is not clear whether the widow is suing the opponent or the opponent is suing the widow.

#### Luke 18:4

##### man

The word here refers to people in general.

#### Luke 18:5

##### causes me trouble

"bothers me"

##### so that she does not wear me out

"so that she will not exhaust me"

#### Luke 18:6

##### Listen to what the unjust judge says

"Think about what the unjust judge said"

#### Luke 18:7

##### Now

This word is used to show Jesus' change from talking about the the judge in the story to talking about God.

##### will not God also bring ... night?

Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. Alternate translation: "God will also certainly bring ... night!"

##### his chosen ones

"the people he has chosen"

##### Will he delay long over them?

Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. Alternate translation: "He will certainly not delay long over them!"

#### Luke 18:8

##### Even so, when the Son of Man comes, will he indeed find faith on the earth?

Jesus asks this question either to indicate that some people will not have faith in God or to encourage people to have faith in God. Alternate translation: “But when the Son of Man comes, will he see that people on earth believe God?"

#### Luke 18:9

##### who trusted in themselves that they were righteous

"who thought they were righteous"

##### despised other people

"looked down on other people'

#### Luke 18:10

##### into the temple

"into the temple courtyard"

#### Luke 18:11

##### The Pharisee stood and prayed these things about himself

Possible meanings are "The Pharisee stood and prayed about himself in this way" or "The Pharisee stood by himself and prayed."

#### Luke 18:12

##### all that I get

"everything I earn"

#### Luke 18:13

##### standing at a distance

This was a sign of humility. He did not feel worthy to stand closer.

##### would not even lift up his eyes to heaven

"would not even look up toward heaven"

##### hit his breast

This is a physical expression of great sorrow, It shows this man's repentance and humility. Alternate translation: "hit his breast to show his sorrow"

##### God, have mercy on me, a sinner

"God, please be merciful to me. I am a sinner" or "God, please have mercy on me even though I have committed many sins"

#### Luke 18:14

##### this man went back down to his house justified

"the tax collector went back down to his house with God's approval" or "God forgave this man"

##### rather than the other

"rather than the other man" or "and not the other man" or "but God did not forgive the Pharisee"

##### will be humbled ... will be exalted

"God will humble him ... God will exalt him"

#### Luke 18:15

##### The people were also bringing to him their infants

"The people were also bringing their babies to Jesus"

##### they rebuked them

"the disciples scolded the parents"

#### Luke 18:16

##### belongs to such ones

"belongs to people who are like these little children"

#### Luke 18:17

##### whoever will not receive the kingdom of God like a child will definitely not enter it

"whoever wants to enter God's kingdom must receive it as a child receives it"

#### Luke 18:18

##### A certain ruler asked him

"A certain ruler asked Jesus"

##### to inherit eternal life

"to receive life that does not end"

#### Luke 18:19

##### No one is good, except God alone

"The only one who is good is God"

#### Luke 18:21

##### All these things

"All of these commandments"

#### Luke 18:22

##### One thing you still lack

"You still need to do one more thing" or "There is one thing that you have not yet done"

##### distribute it to the poor

"give away the money to the poor people"

#### Luke 18:24

##### How difficult it is ... kingdom of God!

This is an exclamation, and not a question. Alternate translation: "It is so very hard ... kingdom of God!"

#### Luke 18:25

##### a needle's eye

A needle's eye is the hole in a sewing needle through which the thread is passed.

#### Luke 18:26

##### Those hearing it said

"The people who were listening to Jesus said"

##### Then who can be saved?

They were very surprised at what Jesus said. Alternate translation: "Does that mean that no one can be saved?" or "Does that mean that God will not save anyone?"

#### Luke 18:27

##### The things which are impossible with people are possible with God

"The things that people cannot do, God can do" or "God is able to do what people are not able to do"

#### Luke 18:29

##### Truly, I say to you

Jesus uses this expression to stress the importance of what he is about to say.

#### Luke 18:30

##### who will not receive

This could be stated in positively. First the words "there is not one who" in the previous verse (verse 29) would be changed to "everyone who" and then these words would be changed to "will receive."

##### in this time

"in this present world"

##### and in the age to come, eternal life

"and in the age to come, he will receive eternal life" or "and in the future world, he will receive eternal life"

#### Luke 18:31

##### the twelve

"his twelve disciples"

##### that have been written by the prophets

"that the prophets have written"

##### will be accomplished

"will happen" or "will occur"

#### Luke 18:32

##### For he will be given over to the Gentiles

"For the leaders in Jerusalem will give him over to the Gentiles"

##### and will be mocked, and shamefully treated, and spit upon

"and they will mock him, treat him shamefully, and spit on him"

#### Luke 18:33

##### on the third day

"on the third day after that"

#### Luke 18:34

##### They understood none of these things

"His disciples did not understand any of these things"

##### this word was hidden from them

"the meaning of this speech was mysterious to them"

##### the things that were said

"the things that Jesus said"

#### Luke 18:35

##### It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

#### Luke 18:36

##### and hearing a crowd going by

"When the blind man heard a crowd going by"

#### Luke 18:37

##### Jesus of Nazareth

People called him "Jesus of Nazareth" because he was from the town of Nazareth.

#### Luke 18:38

##### cried out

"called out" or "shouted"

##### Son of David

Jesus was a descendant of David, Israel's most important king.

##### have mercy on me

"show me pity" or "show me compassion"

#### Luke 18:39

##### cried out all the more

This could mean that he cried out louder or that he cried out more persistently.

#### Luke 18:40

##### commanded that the man be brought to him

"commanded the people to bring the blind man to him"

#### Luke 18:41

##### to receive my sight

"to be able to see"

#### Luke 18:42

##### Receive your sight

Jesus is healing the man by commanding him to be healed. Alternate translation: "You will now receive your sight" or "Begin to see"

##### Your faith has healed you

"You are healed because you have faith" or "I have healed you because you have believed in me"

#### Luke 18:43

##### glorifying God

"giving glory to God" or "praising God"

Chapter 19

1Jesus entered and was passing through Jericho.2Behold, there was a man there named Zacchaeus. He was a chief tax collector and was rich.3He was trying to see who Jesus was, but could not see over the crowd, because he was small in height.4So he ran on ahead of the people and climbed up into a sycamore tree to see him, because Jesus was about to pass that way.5When Jesus came to the place, he looked up and said to him, "Zacchaeus, come down quickly, for today I must stay at your house."6So he hurried and came down and welcomed him joyfully.7When everyone saw this, they all complained, saying, "He has gone in to visit a man who is a sinner."8Zacchaeus stood and said to the Lord, "Look, Lord, the half of my possessions I give to the poor, and if I have cheated anyone of anything, I will restore four times the amount."

9Jesus said to him, "Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.10For the Son of Man came to seek and to save the people who are lost."

11As they heard these things, he continued speaking and told a parable, because he was near to Jerusalem, and they thought that the kingdom of God was about to appear immediately.12He said therefore, "A certain nobleman went into a far country to receive for himself a kingdom and then to return.13He called ten of his servants and gave them ten minas and said to them, 'Conduct business until I come back.'

14"But his citizens hated him and sent a delegation after him, saying, 'We will not have this man reign over us.'15It happened when he returned, having received the kingdom, he commanded the servants to whom he had given the money to be called to him, that he might know what profit they had made by doing business.

16"The first came before him, saying, 'Lord, your mina has made ten minas more.'

17"The nobleman said to him, 'Well done, good servant. Because you were faithful in very little, you will have authority over ten cities.'

18"The second came, saying, 'Your mina, lord, has made five minas.'

19"The nobleman said to him, 'You take charge over five cities.'

20"Another came, saying, 'Lord, here is your mina, which I kept safely in a cloth,21for I was afraid of you, because you are a demanding person. You take up what you did not put in, and you reap what you did not sow.'

22"The nobleman said to him, 'By your own words I will judge you, you wicked servant. You knew that I am a demanding person, taking up what I did not put in, and reaping what I did not sow.23Then why did you not put my money in the bank, so that when I returned I would have collected it with interest?'24The nobleman said to them that stood by, 'Take away from him the mina, and give it to him that has the ten minas.'

25"They said to him, 'Lord, he has ten minas.'

26"'I say to you, that everyone who has will be given more, but from him that has not, even that which he has will be taken away.27But these enemies of mine, those who did not want me to reign over them, bring them here and kill them before me.'"

28When he had said these things, he went on ahead, going up to Jerusalem.

29It came about that when he came near to Bethphage and Bethany, to the mountain that is called Olives, he sent two of the disciples,30saying, "Go into the next village. As you enter, you will find a colt that has never been ridden. Untie it and bring it to me.31If anyone asks you, 'Why are you untying it?' say, 'The Lord has need of it.'"32Those who were sent went and found the colt just as Jesus had told them.

33As they were untying the colt, the owners said to them, "Why are you untying the colt?"

34They said, "The Lord has need of it."35They brought it to Jesus, and they threw their cloaks upon the colt and set Jesus on it.36As he went, they spread their cloaks on the road.

37As he was now approaching the place where the Mount of Olives descends, the whole multitude of the disciples began to rejoice and praise God with a loud voice for all the mighty works which they had seen, saying, 38"Blessed is the king who comes in the name of the Lord!Peace in heaven and glory in the highest!"

39Some of the Pharisees in the multitude said to him, "Teacher, rebuke your disciples."

40Jesus answered and said, "I tell you, if these were silent, the stones would cry out."

41When Jesus approached the city, he wept over it,42saying, "If only you had known in this day, even you, the things which bring you peace! But now they are hidden from your eyes.43For the days will come upon you when your enemies will build a barricade around you and surround you and press in on you from every side.44They will strike you down to the ground, and your children with you. They will not leave one stone upon another because you did not recognize the time of your visitation."

45Jesus entered the temple and began to cast out those who were selling,46saying to them, "It is written, 'My house will be a house of prayer,' but you have made it a den of robbers."

47So Jesus was teaching daily in the temple. The chief priests and the scribes were seeking to destroy him, as were the leaders of the people,48but they could not find a way to do it because all the people were listening to him intently.

#### Luke 19:1

##### Jesus entered and was passing through Jericho.

"Jesus entered Jericho and was passing through the city"

#### Luke 19:3

##### He was trying to see

"Zacchaeus was trying to see"

##### because he was small in height

"because he was short"

#### Luke 19:4

##### a sycamore tree

"a sycamore fig tree" or "a fig tree" or "a fruit tree"

#### Luke 19:5

##### the place

"the tree" or "where Zacchaeus was"

#### Luke 19:6

##### So he hurried

"So Zacchaeus hurried"

#### Luke 19:7

##### He has gone in to visit a man who is a sinner

"Jesus has gone into the house of a sinner to visit him"

#### Luke 19:8

##### the Lord

This refers to Jesus.

##### I will restore four times the amount

"I will return to them four times as much as I took from them"

#### Luke 19:9

##### salvation has come to this house

"God is saving this household" or "God is saving people in this home"

##### he too

"this man too" or "Zacchaeus also"

##### is a son of Abraham

Possible meanings are "is a descendant of Abraham" and "has faith as Abraham did."

#### Luke 19:10

##### the Son of Man came

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, came"

##### the people who are lost

"the people who have wandered away from God" or "those who by sinning have wandered away from God"

#### Luke 19:11

##### that the kingdom of God was about to appear immediately

The Jews believed that the Messiah would establish God's kingdom as soon as he came to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "that Jesus would immediately begin to rule over God's kingdom"

#### Luke 19:12

##### A certain nobleman

"A certain man who was a member of the ruling class" or "A certain man from an important family"

##### to receive for himself a kingdom

A great king would make the nobleman a lesser king and give him the authority to rule over a country.

#### Luke 19:13

##### He called

"The nobleman called" or "Before he left, he called"

##### gave them ten minas

"gave each of them one mina"

##### ten minas

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days' wages. Alternate translation: "ten valuable coins" or "a large amount of money"

##### Conduct business

"Trade with this money" or "Use this money in order to earn more money"

#### Luke 19:14

##### his citizens

"the people of his country"

##### a delegation

"a group of people to represent them" or "several messengers"

#### Luke 19:15

##### having received the kingdom

"after he had become king"

##### to be called to him

"to come to him"

##### what profit they had made

"how much money they had earned"

#### Luke 19:16

##### The first came before him

"The first servant came before the nobleman"

##### your mina has made ten minas more

"I used your mina and made a profit of ten more minas"

#### Luke 19:17

##### Well done

"You have done well." Your language may have a phrase that an employer would use to show approval, such as "Good job."

#### Luke 19:19

##### You take charge over five cities

"You will have authority over five cities"

#### Luke 19:20

##### Another came

"Another servant came"

##### which I kept safely in a cloth

"which I wrapped in a cloth and stored away"

#### Luke 19:21

##### a demanding person

"a stern man" or "a man who expects a lot from his servants"

##### You take up what you did not put in

This was probably a proverb that describes someone who benefits from other people's hard work. Alternate translation: "You take out what you did not put in" or "You take out what other people put in"

##### you reap what you did not sow

"you gather the fruit of what other people sowed"

#### Luke 19:22

##### By your own words

"Based on what you have said"

##### You knew that I am a demanding person

The nobleman was repeating what the servant had said about him. Alternate translation: "You say that I am a demanding person"

#### Luke 19:23

##### why did you not put my money ... interest?

The nobleman uses a question to rebuke the wicked servant. Alternate translation: "you should have put my money ... interest."

##### put my money in the bank

"lent my money to a bank." Cultures that do not have banks might translate it as "let someone borrow my money."

##### bank

A bank is a business that safely holds money for people. A bank lends that money to others for a profit. It also pays an extra amount, called interest, to the people who keep their money in the bank.

##### I would have collected it with interest

"I could have collected that amount plus the interest it would have earned" or "I would have gained a profit from it"

#### Luke 19:24

##### them that stood by

"the people who were standing near them"

#### Luke 19:25

##### he has ten minas

"he already has ten minas"

#### Luke 19:26

##### I say to you

It can be stated clearly that the nobleman is speaking. Alternate translation: "And the nobleman replied, 'I say to you" or "But the nobleman said, 'I tell you this"

##### everyone who has will be given more

"everyone who uses well what he has will be given more" or "I will give more to everyone who uses well what he has"

##### from him that has not

"from the person who does not use well what he has"

##### even that which he has will be taken away

"I will take away from him even what he has"

#### Luke 19:27

##### these enemies of mine

Since the enemies were not right there, some languages would say "those enemies of mine."

#### Luke 19:28

##### When he had said these things

"When Jesus had said these things"

#### Luke 19:29

##### It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event.

##### Bethphage

Bethphage is a village on the Mount of Olives, which is across the Kidron Valley from Jerusalem.

##### the mountain that is called Olives

"the hill that is called the Mount of Olives" or "the hill that is called 'Olive Tree Mountain'"

#### Luke 19:30

##### a colt

"a young donkey" or "a young riding animal"

##### that has never been ridden

"that no one has ever ridden"

#### Luke 19:31

##### If anyone asks you, 'Why are you untying it?' say

"If any one asks you why you are untying it, say"

#### Luke 19:32

##### Those who were sent

"The disciples that Jesus sent"

#### Luke 19:33

##### the owners

"the owners of the colt"

#### Luke 19:35

##### threw their cloaks upon the colt

"put their robes on the young donkey." Cloaks are outer robes.

##### set Jesus on it

"helped Jesus get up on the colt to ride it"

#### Luke 19:36

##### they spread their cloaks

"people spread their cloaks." This is a sign of giving honor to someone.

#### Luke 19:37

##### As he was now approaching the place where the Mount of Olives descends

"As Jesus was going near the place where the road goes down from the Mount of Olives"

##### all the mighty works which they had seen

"all the great things they had seen Jesus do"

#### Luke 19:38

##### in the name of the Lord

Here "name" refers to power and authority, and "Lord" refers to God.

##### Peace in heaven

"May there be peace in heaven"

##### glory in the highest

"may there be glory in the highest" or "Let everyone give glory to God in the highest heaven"

#### Luke 19:39

##### in the multitude

"in the large crowd"

##### rebuke your disciples

"tell your disciples to stop doing these things"

#### Luke 19:40

##### if these were silent

"I will not rebuke them, for if these people were to be quiet"

##### the stones would cry out

"the stones would call out praises"

#### Luke 19:41

##### the city

This refers to Jerusalem.

##### he wept over it

"he cried about the people of Jerusalem"

#### Luke 19:42

##### If only you had known ... bring you peace

Jesus expresses his sadness that the people of Jerusalem had missed the opportunity to be at peace with God.

##### now they are hidden from your eyes

"now you cannot see them"

#### Luke 19:43

##### For the days will come upon you when your enemies will build

This indicates that they will experience difficult times. "For soon these things will happen to you: Your enemies will build" or "For soon you will endure troublesome times. Your enemies will build"

##### a barricade around you

This refers to a wall to keep the people from getting out of the city.

#### Luke 19:44

##### They will strike you down to the ground, and your children with you

Jesus speaks of the people who live in the city as if they are the city's children. Alternate translation: "They will completely destroy you, and they will kill all who live in you" or "They will completely destroy your city, and they will kill all of you"

##### They will not leave one stone upon another

"They will not leave any of the stones in place." The enemies will completely destroy the city, which is built of stones.

##### the time of your visitation

"the time when God visited you" or "the time during which God was with you"

##### visitation

This is a visit by an overseer to make sure that things are going well with those over whom he is in charge. It is not a casual social visit.

#### Luke 19:45

##### Jesus entered the temple

You may need to make explicit that he first entered Jerusalem, where the temple was located. Alternate translation: "Jesus entered Jerusalem and then went into the temple courtyard"

##### entered the temple

Only priests were allowed to enter the temple building. Here the word "temple" refers to the courtyard at the temple. Alternate translation: "went into the temple courtyard"

##### began to cast out

"began to throw out" or "began to force out"

#### Luke 19:46

##### It is written

"The scriptures say" or "A prophet wrote these words in the scriptures"

##### My house

The word "My" refers to God and "house" refers to the temple.

##### a house of prayer

"a place where people pray to me"

##### a den of robbers

"a place where thieves hide"

#### Luke 19:47

##### in the temple

"in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

Chapter 20

1It came about one day as Jesus was teaching the people in the temple and preaching the gospel that the chief priests and the scribes came to him with the elders.2They spoke, saying to him, "Tell us by what authority you do these things, or who it is who gave you this authority."

3He answered and said to them, "I will also ask you a question, and you tell me.4The baptism of John: Was it from heaven or from men?"

5They reasoned with themselves, saying, "If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say, 'Then why did you not believe him?'6But if we say, 'From men,' all the people will stone us, for they are persuaded that John was a prophet."7So they answered that they did not know where it came from.

8Jesus said to them, "Neither will I tell you by what authority I do these things."

9He told the people this parable: "A man planted a vineyard, rented it out to vine growers, and went into another country for a long time.10At the appointed time he sent a servant to the vine growers, that they should give him of the fruit of the vineyard. But the vine growers beat him, and sent him away empty-handed.11He then sent yet another servant and they also beat him, treated him shamefully, and sent him away empty-handed.12He also sent yet a third and they also wounded him, and threw him out.13So the lord of the vineyard said, 'What will I do? I will send my beloved son. Maybe they will respect him.'

14"But when the vine growers saw him, they discussed among themselves, saying, 'This is the heir. Let us kill him, that the inheritance may be ours.'15They threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. What then will the lord of the vineyard do to them?16He will come and destroy these vine growers, and will give the vineyard to others."

When they heard it, they said, "May it never be!"

17But Jesus looked at them, and said, "What is the meaning of that which is written:'The stone that the builders rejectedhas become the cornerstone'?18Everyone who falls on that stone will be broken to pieces, and the one on whom it falls will be crushed."

19So the scribes and the chief priests sought to lay hands on him in that very hour, for they knew that he had spoken this parable against them. But they were afraid of the people.20Watching him carefully, they sent out spies who pretended to be righteous, that they might find fault with his speech, so as to deliver him up to the rule and to the authority of the governor.21They asked him, saying, "Teacher, we know that you say and teach rightly, and are not partial to anyone, but you teach the truth about the way of God.22Is it lawful for us to pay taxes to Caesar, or not?"

23But Jesus understood their craftiness, and said to them,24"Show me a denarius. Whose image and name is on it?"

They said, "Caesar's."

25He said to them, "Then give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's."26They were not able to find fault with what he had said in front of the people, but marveling at his answer, they were silent.

27When some of the Sadducees came to him, the ones who say that there is no resurrection,28they asked him, saying, "Teacher, Moses wrote to us that if a man's brother dies, having a wife, and being childless, the man should take the brother's wife, and raise up children for his brother.29There were seven brothers and the first took a wife, and died childless,30and the second as well.31The third took her, and in the same way the seven also left no children and died.32Afterward the woman also died.33In the resurrection, then, whose wife will she be? For the seven had her as their wife."

34Jesus said to them, "The sons of this age marry and are given in marriage.35But those who are regarded as worthy in that age to receive the resurrection from the dead will neither marry nor be given in marriage.36Neither can they die anymore, for they are equal to the angels and are sons of God, being sons of the resurrection.37But that the dead are raised, even Moses showed, in the place concerning the bush, where he calls the Lord the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob.38Now he is not the God of the dead, but of the living, because all live to him."

39Some of the scribes answered, "Teacher, you have answered well."40For they did not dare ask him any more questions.

41Jesus said to them, "How do they say that the Christ is David's son?42For David himself says in the Book of Psalms,The Lord said to my Lord,'Sit at my right hand,43until I make your enemiesyour footstool.'44David therefore calls the Christ 'Lord,' so how is he David's son?"

45In the hearing of all the people he said to his disciples,46"Beware of the scribes, who desire to walk in long robes and love special greetings in the marketplaces and chief seats in the synagogues and places of honor at feasts.47They also devour widows' houses, and for a show they make long prayers. Men like this will receive greater condemnation."

#### Luke 20:1

##### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### in the temple

"in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

#### Luke 20:4

##### Was it from heaven or from men

Jesus asks this question so the Jewish leaders will have to tell what they think to all who are listening. Alternate translation: "Do you think John's authority to baptize people came from heaven or from men" or "Was it God who told John to baptize people, or did people tell him to do it"

##### from heaven

Jewish people often used the word "heaven" to refer to God.

#### Luke 20:5

##### They reasoned

"They discussed" or "They considered their answer"

##### with themselves

"among themselves" or "with each other"

##### If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say

"If we say that John's authority is from heaven, Jesus will say"

#### Luke 20:6

##### if we say, 'From men,'

"if we say that John's authority is from men,"

##### will stone us

"will kill us by throwing stones at us"

#### Luke 20:7

##### they answered that they did not know where it came from.

"they said, 'We do not know where it came from.'"

##### where it came from

"where John's baptism came from" or "where John's authority to baptize came from" or "who authorized John to baptize people"

#### Luke 20:8

##### Neither will I tell you

"And I will not tell you." Jesus knew they were not willing to tell him the answer, so he responded in the same manner. Alternate translation: "Just as you will not tell me, I will not tell you"

#### Luke 20:9

##### rented it out to vine growers

"allowed some vine growers to use it in exchange for payment" or "allowed some vine growers to use it and pay him later." Payment might be in the form of money or a portion of the harvest.

##### vine growers

These are people who tend grape vines and grow grapes. Alternate translation: "grape farmers"

#### Luke 20:10

##### At the appointed time

"When the time came" or "At harvest time"

##### of the fruit of the vineyard

"some of the grapes" or "some of what they produced in the vineyard"

##### sent him away empty-handed

"sent him away without paying him" or "sent him away without anything"

#### Luke 20:11

##### beat him

"beat that servant"

##### treated him shamefully

"humiliated him"

#### Luke 20:12

##### yet a third

"even a third servant"

##### wounded him

"injured that servant"

##### threw him out

"threw him out of the vineyard"

#### Luke 20:13

##### What will I do?

The vineyard owner thought carefully about what he was going to do. Alternate translation: “This is what I will do:”

#### Luke 20:14

##### when the vine growers saw him

"when the farmers saw the owner's son"

##### Let us kill him

They were not asking permission. The said this to encourage each other to kill the son.

#### Luke 20:15

##### What then will the lord of the vineyard do to them?

Jesus uses a question to get his listeners to pay attention to what the owner of the vineyard will do. Alternate translation: "So now, listen to what the lord of the vineyard will do to them."

#### Luke 20:16

##### When they heard it

"When the people heard what Jesus said"

##### May it never be

"May it never happen"

#### Luke 20:17

##### But Jesus looked at them

"But Jesus stared at them" or "But he looked straight at them." He did this to hold them accountable to understand what he was saying.

##### What is the meaning of that which is written: 'The stone ... cornerstone'?

Jesus uses a question to teach the crowd. Alternate translation: "You should be able to understand that which is written: 'The stone ... cornerstone.'"

##### that which is written

"this scripture." Jesus quoted a scripture that prophesied about the Messiah.

##### The stone that the builders rejected

"The stone that the builders said was not good enough to use for building." In those days people used stones to build the walls of houses and other buildings.

##### the cornerstone

"the chief stone of the building" or "the most important stone of the building"

#### Luke 20:18

##### will be broken to pieces

"will break up into pieces"

##### and the one on whom it falls will be crushed

"and that stone will crush whomever it falls on"

#### Luke 20:19

##### sought to lay hands on him

"looked for a way to arrest Jesus"

##### they were afraid of the people

This is the reason that they did not arrest Jesus right away. The people respected Jesus, and the religious leaders were afraid of what the people might do if they arrested him.

#### Luke 20:20

##### that they might find fault with his speech

"so that the spies might accuse Jesus of saying something bad"

##### so as to deliver him up to the rule and to the authority of the governor

"so that they could hand him over to the governor to judge him"

#### Luke 20:21

##### They asked him

"The spies asked Jesus"

##### Teacher, we know ... way of God

The spies were trying to deceive Jesus. They did not believe these things about Jesus.

##### are not partial to anyone

Possible meanings are "you tell the truth even if important people do not like it" or "you do not favor one person over another"

#### Luke 20:22

##### Is it lawful ... or not?

They hoped that Jesus would say either "yes" or "no." If he said "yes," then the Jewish people would be angry with him for telling them to pay taxes to a foreign government. If he said "no," then the religious leaders could tell the Romans that Jesus was teaching the people to break the Roman laws.

##### Is it lawful

They were asking about God's law, not about Caesar's law. Alternate translation: "Does our law permit us"

##### to Caesar

Caesar was the ruler of the Roman government. Alternate translation: "to the Roman Emperor"

#### Luke 20:23

##### But Jesus understood their craftiness

"But Jesus understood how tricky they were" or "But Jesus saw that they were trying to trap him"

#### Luke 20:24

##### a denarius

This is a Roman silver coin worth a day's wages.

##### Whose image and name is on it?

Jesus uses a question to respond to those who were trying to trick him. Alternate translation: "Tell me, whose picture and name do you see on it?"

#### Luke 20:25

##### and to God the things that are God's

"and give to God the things that belong to God"

#### Luke 20:26

##### They were not able to find fault with what he had said

"The spies could not find anything wrong with what Jesus said"

##### but marveling at his answer, they were silent

"but they were amazed at his answer and did not say anything"

#### Luke 20:27

##### When some of the Sadducees came to him, the ones who say that there is no resurrection

The Sadducees did not believe that people will rise from the dead. Alternate translation: "When some of the Sadducees, people who say that there is no resurrection, came to him"

#### Luke 20:28

##### if a man's brother dies, having a wife, and being childless

"if a man's brother dies when he has a wife but does not have children" or "if a man's brother has a wife and no children and that brother dies"

##### the man should take the brother's wife

"the man should marry his dead brother's widow"

##### and raise up children for his brother

"and have children for his brother" or "and produce children for his brother"

#### Luke 20:29

##### There were seven brothers

This may have happened, but it is probably a story that the Saducees made up to test Jesus.

##### the first

"the first brother"

##### died childless

"died without having any children" or "died, but did not have any children"

#### Luke 20:30

##### the second as well

The Sadducees kept the story short by not repeating many of the details. Alternate translation: "the second brother took her as his wife, and the same thing happened" or "the second brother married that woman, and he also died without having any children"

#### Luke 20:31

##### and in the same way the seven also left no children and died

"and in the same way the rest of the seven brothers married her and died without having any children"

#### Luke 20:33

##### In the resurrection

"When people are raised from the dead" or "When dead people become alive again"

#### Luke 20:34

##### The sons of this age

"The people of this world" or "The people of this time." This is in contrast with those in heaven or the people who live after the resurrection.

##### marry and are given in marriage

In that culture, they spoke of men marrying women and women being given in marriage to their husband. Alternate translation: "marry" or "get married"

#### Luke 20:35

##### those who are regarded as worthy in that age

"the people in that time whom God will consider to be worthy"

##### to receive the resurrection from the dead

"to be raised from the dead" or "to rise from death" or "to become alive again"

#### Luke 20:36

##### Neither can they die anymore

This is after the resurrection. Alternate translation: "They will not be able to die anymore"

##### are sons of God, being sons of the resurrection

"are children of God because he has raised them from the dead"

#### Luke 20:37

##### But that the dead are raised, even Moses showed, in the place concerning the bush

The word "even" is here because the Sadducees did not expect Moses to have written that the dead are raised. Alternate translation: "But even Moses, in the scripture concerning the bush, showed that the dead are raised"

##### that the dead are raised

"that God raises people from the dead" or "that God causes the dead to live again"

##### in the place concerning the bush, where he calls the Lord the God of Abraham

"in the scripture about the burning bush, where he wrote about the Lord being the God of Abraham"

##### the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob

"the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob." They all worshiped the same God.

#### Luke 20:38

##### Now

This word marks a switch in Jesus's teaching. He was telling about Moses. Now he explains why what Moses said was important.

##### he is not the God of the dead, but of the living

"the Lord is not the God of dead people; he is the God of living people". Since these living people died physically, they must still be alive spiritually.

##### because all live to him

"because in God's sight they all are still alive" or "because they live in God's presence"

#### Luke 20:39

##### Some of the scribes answered

"Some of the scribes said to Jesus." There were scribes present when the Sadducees were questioning Jesus.

#### Luke 20:40

##### they did not dare ask him any more questions

"they were afraid to ask him any more questions" or "they did not risk asking him any more questions." Perhaps they realized that they did not know as much as Jesus did.

#### Luke 20:41

##### How do they say ... son?

"Why do people say ... son?" Jesus uses a question to make the scribes think about who the Messiah is. Alternate translation: "Let's think about them saying ... son." or "I will talk about them saying ... son."

##### David's son

"King David's descendant." The word "son" is used here to refer to a descendant. In this case it refers to the one who would reign over God's kingdom.

#### Luke 20:42

##### The Lord said to my Lord

This is a quotation from the book of Psalms which says "Yahweh said to my Lord." But the Jews stopped saying "Yahweh" and often said "Lord" instead. Alternate translation: "The Lord God said to my Lord"

##### my Lord

David was referring to the Christ as "my Lord."

##### Sit at my right hand

Sitting at the right hand of God is symbolic of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside me"

#### Luke 20:43

##### until I make your enemies your footstool

God speaks of the Messiah's enemies as if they were furniture on which the Messiah would rest his feet. God would conquer the enemies. Alternate translation: "until I make your enemies like a footstool for you"

#### Luke 20:44

##### David therefore calls the Christ 'Lord,'

David recognized that the Christ was greater than David.

##### so how is he David's son?

"so how can the Christ be David's son?" or "This shows that the Christ is not merely a son of David"

#### Luke 20:46

##### Beware of

"Be on guard against"

##### who desire to walk in long robes

Long robes would show that they were important. Alternate translation: "who like to walk around wearing their important robes"

#### Luke 20:47

##### They also devour widows' houses

"They also eat up widows' houses." Jesus speaks of the scribes as if they were hungry animals. Alternate translation: "They also take widows' houses from them"

##### for a show they make long prayers

"they make long prayers so that people will see them"

##### Men like this will receive greater condemnation

"They will receive a more severe judgment" or "God will certainly punish them more severely"

Chapter 21

1Jesus looked up and saw the rich men who were putting their gifts into the treasury.2He saw a certain poor widow putting in two mites.3So he said, "Truly I say to you, this poor widow put in more than all of them.4All of these gave gifts out of their abundance. But this widow, out of her poverty, put in all she had to live on."

5As some spoke of the temple, how it was decorated with beautiful stones and offerings, he said,6"As for these things that you see, the days will come when not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down."7So they asked him, saying, "Teacher, when will these things happen? What will be the sign when these things are about to happen?"8Jesus answered, "Be careful that you are not deceived. For many will come in my name, saying, 'I am he,' and, 'The time is near.' Do not go after them.9When you hear of wars and riots, do not be terrified, for these things must happen first, but the end will not happen immediately."

10Then he said to them, "Nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom.11There will be great earthquakes, and in various places famines and plagues. There will be terrifying events and great signs from heaven.12But before all of these things, they will lay their hands on you and will persecute you, delivering you over to the synagogues and prisons, bringing you before kings and governors because of my name.13It will lead to an opportunity for your testimony.14Therefore resolve in your hearts not to prepare your defense ahead of time,15for I will give you words and wisdom that all your adversaries will not be able to resist or contradict.16But you will be given over also by parents, brothers, relatives, and friends, and they will put some of you to death.17You will be hated by everyone because of my name.18But not a hair from your head will perish.19In your endurance you will gain your lives.

20"When you see Jerusalem surrounded by armies, then recognize that its desolation is near.21Then let those in Judea flee to the mountains, let those who are in the city leave it, and those who are out in the country must not enter the city.22For these are days of vengeance, so that all the things that are written will be fulfilled.23Woe to those who are pregnant and to those who are nursing in those days! For there will be great distress upon the land, and wrath to this people.24They will fall by the edge of the sword, and they will be led captive into all the nations, and Jerusalem will be trampled by the Gentiles until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled.

25"There will be signs in the sun, in the moon, and in the stars, and on the earth. The nations will be in distress, anxious because of the roar of the sea and waves.26There will be men fainting from fear and from expectation of the things which are coming upon the world. For the powers of the heavens will be shaken.27Then they will see the Son of Man coming in a cloud with power and great glory.28But when these things begin to happen, stand up and lift up your heads, because your redemption is coming near."

29Jesus told them a parable, "Look at the fig tree, and all the trees.30When they sprout buds, you see for yourselves and know that summer is already near.31So also, when you see these things happening, recognize that the kingdom of God is near.32Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all these things take place.33Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will never pass away.

34"But pay attention to yourselves, so that your hearts are not burdened with excessive drinking and drunkenness and the worries of life, and that day does not close on you suddenly35like a trap. For it will come upon everyone living on the face of the whole earth.36But be alert at all times, praying that you may be strong enough to escape all these things that will take place, and to stand before the Son of Man."

37So during the days he was teaching in the temple, and at night he went out and stayed on the mountain that is called Olives.38All of the people came early in the morning to hear him in the temple.

#### Luke 21:1

##### gifts

"gifts of money"

##### the treasury

The "treasury" means the boxes in the temple courtyard where people put money as a gift to God. Alternate translation: "the temple treasury" or "the collection box at the temple"

#### Luke 21:2

##### two mites

"two small coins" or "two tiny copper coins" or "two pennies." These were the least valuable of the coins people used then.

#### Luke 21:3

##### Truly I say to you

This means that what Jesus was about to say was very important.

##### I say to you

Jesus was talking to his disciples.

##### this poor widow put in more than all of them

God considers her gift, a small amount of money, more significant than the large amounts of money the men gave. Alternate translation: "the small gift of this widow is more valuable than the larger gifts of the rich men"

#### Luke 21:4

##### gave gifts out of their abundance

"have a lot of money but only gave a small portion of it"

##### out of her poverty

"who has very little money"

#### Luke 21:5

##### offerings

"things people had given to God"

#### Luke 21:6

##### these things that you see

This refers to the beautiful temple and its decorations.

##### the days will come when

"there will be a time when" or "someday"

##### not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down

"every stone will be removed from its place and torn down" or "not one stone will be left on another. Enemies will tear down every stone." The temple was made of stones, but enemies would come and destroy it.

#### Luke 21:7

##### they asked him

"the disciples asked Jesus" or "Jesus's disciples asked him"

##### these things

This refers to what Jesus has just said about enemies destroying the temple.

#### Luke 21:8

##### that you are not deceived

"that you do not believe lies" or "that no one deceives you"

##### many will come in my name

"many will come claiming to be me" or "many will come claiming to have my authority"

##### I am he

"I am the Christ" or "I am the Messiah"

##### Do not go after them

"Do not believe them" or "Do not become their disciples"

#### Luke 21:9

##### wars and riots

Here "wars" probably refers to fighting between countries, and "riots" probably refers to people fighting against their own leaders or against others in their country. Alternate translation: "wars and rebellions" or "wars and revolutions"

##### do not be terrified

"do not let these things terrify you" or "do not be afraid"

##### the end will not happen immediately

"the end will not happen immediately after those things happen" or "the end will not happen immediately after the wars and riots"

##### the end

Possible meanings are "the end of the age" or "the end of the world"

#### Luke 21:10

##### Nation will rise against nation

"The people of one nation will attack the people of another nation" or "The people of some nations will attack the people of other nations"

##### Nation

This refers to ethnic groups of people rather than to countries.

##### and kingdom against kingdom

"and the people of one kingdom will attack the people of another kingdom"" or "and the people of some kingdoms will attack the people of other kingdoms"

#### Luke 21:11

##### and in various places famines and plagues

"and there will be famines and plagues in many places" or "and there will be times of hunger and diseases in different places"

##### terrifying events

"events that terrify people" or "events that cause people to be very afraid"

#### Luke 21:12

##### they will lay their hands on you

"people will arrest you"

##### delivering you over to the synagogues

"giving you over to the leaders of the synagogues"

##### because of my name

"because of me" or "because you follow me"

#### Luke 21:13

##### for your testimony

"for you to tell them your testimony about me" or "for you to witness about me"

#### Luke 21:14

##### resolve in your hearts

"make up your mind" or "decide firmly"

##### not to prepare your defense ahead of time

"not to figure out ahead of time what you will say in order to defend yourself against their accusations"

#### Luke 21:15

##### I will give you words and wisdom

"I will give you wise words" or "I will tell you what wise things to say"

##### contradict

show to be false

#### Luke 21:16

##### you will be given over also by parents, brothers, relatives, and friends

"even your parents, brothers, relatives, and friends will give you over to the authorities"

##### they will put some of you to death

"they will kill some of you." Possible meanings are "the authorities will kill some of you" or "those who deliver you up will kill some of you." The first meaning is more likely.

#### Luke 21:17

##### You will be hated by everyone

"Everyone will hate you"

##### because of my name

"my name" here refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because you follow me"

#### Luke 21:18

##### But not a hair from your head will perish

Jesus speaks of one of the smallest parts of a person. He is emphasizing that the whole person will not perish. Jesus had already said that some of them would be put to death, so some understand this to mean that they would not be harmed spiritually. Alternate translation: "But even every hair on your head will be safe" or "But these things cannot really harm you"

#### Luke 21:19

##### In your endurance

"By holding firm." This can be stated in the opposite way. Alternate translation: "If you do not quit"

##### you will gain your lives

"you will save yourselves"

#### Luke 21:20

##### Jerusalem surrounded by armies

"armies surrounding Jerusalem"

##### that its desolation is near

"that Jerusalem will soon be destroyed" or "that they will soon destroy it"

#### Luke 21:21

##### flee

run away from danger

##### in the country

This refers to the rural areas outside Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "outside the city"

#### Luke 21:22

##### these are days of vengeance

"these are days of punishment" or "this will be the time when God will punish this city"

##### all the things that are written will be fulfilled

"all the things that the prophets wrote in the scriptures will happen"

#### Luke 21:23

##### to those who are nursing

"to mothers who are nursing their babies"

##### there will be great distress upon the land

Possible meanings are "the people of the land will be suffer terribly" or "there will be terrible disasters in the land."

##### and wrath to this people

"and there will be wrath to the people at that time" or "and this people will experience God's anger" or "and God will be very angry and will punish this people"

#### Luke 21:24

##### They will fall by the edge of the sword

"They will be killed by the edge of the sword" or "Enemy soldiers will kill them"

##### they will be led captive into all the nations

"their enemies will capture them and take them to many other countries"

##### Jerusalem will be trampled by the Gentiles

Jesus speaks about what will happen to Jerusalem as if the people of other nations will walk on it and crush it down with their feet. Possible meanings are the Gentile nations will conquer Jerusalem and occupy it or the Gentile nations will destroy the city of Jerusalem.

##### until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled

"until the period of the Gentiles ends"

#### Luke 21:25

##### The nations will be in distress

"The people of the nations will be deeply troubled"

##### anxious because of the roar of the sea and waves

"and the loud noise of the sea and its rough movements will frighten them." This seems to refer to unusual storms or disasters involving the seas.

#### Luke 21:26

##### the things which are coming upon the world

"the things that will happen in the world" or "the things that will happen to the world"

##### the powers of the heavens will be shaken

Possible meanings are "God will shake the sun, moon, and stars so they will not move in their normal ways" or "God will trouble the powerful spirits in the heavens." The first is recommended.

#### Luke 21:27

##### the Son of Man coming

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "me, the Son Man, coming"

##### with power and great glory

Here "power" probably refers to his authority to judge the world. Here "glory" may refer to a bright light. God sometimes shows his greatness with a very bright light. Alternate translation: "powerfully and gloriously" or "and he will be powerful and very glorious"

#### Luke 21:28

##### stand up

Sometimes when people are afraid, they crouch down in order to avoid being seen or hurt. When they are no longer afraid, they get up. Alternate translation: "stand up with confidence"

##### lift up your heads

"look up"

##### because your redemption is coming near

"because your salvation is coming near" or "because God will soon redeem you" or "because God will soon rescue you"

#### Luke 21:30

##### When they sprout buds

"When new leaves start to grow"

##### summer is already near

"summer is about to start" or "the dry, hot season is about to start" or "the first figs will become ripe soon"

#### Luke 21:31

##### So also, when you see these things happening

The words "these things" refer to the events that Jesus spoke about in 21:25-26.

##### the kingdom of God is near

"God will soon establish his kingdom"or "God will soon rule as king"

#### Luke 21:32

##### this generation

Possible meanings are the generation that will see the first of the signs Jesus speaks of or the generation Jesus is speaking to. The first is more likely.

##### will not pass away until

"will still be alive when"

#### Luke 21:33

##### Heaven and earth will pass away

"Heaven and earth will cease to exist." The word "heaven" here refers to the sky and the universe beyond it.

##### my words will never pass away

"my words will never cease to exist" or "my words will never fail." Jesus uses "words" here to refer to everything he says.

##### will never pass away

"will remain forever"

#### Luke 21:34

##### so that your hearts are not burdened

The "heart" here refers to the mind and thoughts of the person. Alternate translation: "so that you are not burdened"

##### are not burdened with excessive drinking and drunkenness

"are not distracted by excessive drinking and drunkenness" or "are not busy with drinking too much wine and becoming drunk"

##### the worries of life

"the things you worry about as you live every day"

##### that day does not close on you suddenly

"that day does not happen when you are not expecting it" or "that day does not surprise you"

##### that day

"the day when the Son of Man comes"

#### Luke 21:35

##### like a trap

"as when a trap closes suddenly on an animal”

##### it will come upon everyone

"it will affect everyone" or "the events of that day will affect everyone"

##### on the face of the whole earth

"on the surface of the whole earth" or "on the entire earth"

#### Luke 21:36

##### be alert

"be watchful" or "be aware of what is happening"

##### strong enough to escape all these things

Possible meanings are "strong enough to endure these things" or "able to avoid these things."

##### these things that will take place

"these things that will happen." Jesus has just told them about terrible things that will happen, such as persecution, war, and captivity.

##### to stand before the Son of Man

"to stand with confidence before the Son of Man." This probably refers to when the Son of Man judges everyone. A person who is not ready will be afraid of the Son of Man and will not stand with confidence.

#### Luke 21:37

##### during the days he was teaching

"during the daytime Jesus would teach" or "he would teach each day"

##### in the temple

"at the temple" or "in the temple courtyard"

##### at night he went out

"at night he would go out of the city"

#### Luke 21:38

##### came early in the morning

"would come early each morning"

##### to hear him in the temple

"to hear him teach in the temple courtyard"

Chapter 22

1Now the Festival of Unleavened Bread was approaching, which is called the Passover.2The chief priests and the scribes were seeking how they could put Jesus to death, for they were afraid of the people.

3Then Satan entered into Judas, the one called Iscariot, who was one of the twelve.4Judas went to the chief priests and captains and discussed with them how he would betray Jesus to them.5They were glad and agreed to give him money.6He consented and looked for an opportunity to give him over to them away from the crowd.

7Then came the day of unleavened bread, on which the Passover lamb had to be sacrificed.8So Jesus sent Peter and John, saying, "Go and prepare for us the Passover meal, so that we may eat it."

9They said to him, "Where do you want us to make preparations?"

10He answered them, "Look, when you have entered the city, a man bearing a pitcher of water will meet you. Follow him into the house that he goes into.11Then say to the master of the house, 'The Teacher says to you, "Where is the guest room, where I will eat the Passover with my disciples?"'12He will show you a large furnished upper room. Make the preparations there."13So they went, and found everything as he had said to them. Then they prepared the Passover meal.

14When the hour came, he sat down with the apostles.15Then he said to them, "I have greatly desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer.16For I say to you, I will not eat it again until it is fulfilled in the kingdom of God."17Then Jesus took a cup, and when he had given thanks, he said, "Take this, and share it among yourselves.18For I say to you, I will not drink of the fruit of the vine again until the kingdom of God comes."19Then he took bread, and when he had given thanks, he broke it, and gave to them, saying, "This is my body, which is given for you. Do this in remembrance of me."20He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.21But pay attention. The hand of the one who betrays me is with me at the table.22For the Son of Man indeed goes as it has been determined. But woe to that man through whom he is betrayed!"23They began to discuss among themselves which one of them it might be who would do this.

24Then there arose also a quarrel among them about which of them was considered to be greatest.25He said to them, "The kings of the Gentiles are lords over them, and the ones who have authority over them are called doers of good deeds.26But it must not be like this with you. Instead, let the greatest among you become like the youngest and the one who leads like the one who serves.27For who is greater, the one who sits at the table, or the one who serves? Is it not the one who sits at the table? Yet I am among you as one who serves.28But you are the ones who have continued with me in my trials.29I set you over a kingdom, even as my Father has set me over a kingdom,30that you may eat and drink at my table in my kingdom, and you will sit on thrones judging the twelve tribes of Israel.

31"Simon, Simon, be aware, Satan asked to have you, that he might sift you as wheat.32But I have prayed for you, that your faith may not fail. After you have turned back again, strengthen your brothers."

33Peter said to him, "Lord, I am ready to go with you both to prison and to death."

34Jesus replied, "I tell you, Peter, the rooster will not crow this day before you deny three times that you know me."

35Then Jesus said to them, "When I sent you out without a purse, a bag of provisions, or sandals, did you lack anything?"

They answered, "Nothing."

36Then he said to them, "But now, the one who has a purse, let him take it, and likewise a bag of provisions. The one who does not have a sword should sell his cloak and buy one.37For I say to you, what is written about me must be fulfilled, 'He was counted with the lawless ones.' For what is predicted about me is being fulfilled."

38Then they said, "Lord, look! Here are two swords."

He said to them, "It is enough."

39Jesus went, as he often did, to the Mount of Olives, and the disciples followed him.40When they arrived, he said to them, "Pray that you do not enter into temptation."41He went away from them about a stone's throw, and he knelt down and prayed,42saying, "Father, if you are willing, remove this cup from me. Nevertheless not my will, but yours be done."43Then an angel from heaven appeared to him, strengthening him.44Being in agony, he prayed more earnestly, and his sweat became like great drops of blood falling down upon the ground.45When he rose up from his prayer, he came to the disciples and found them sleeping because of their sorrow46and asked them, "Why are you sleeping? Rise and pray, that you may not enter into temptation."

47While he was still speaking, behold, a crowd appeared, with Judas, one of the twelve, leading them. He came near to Jesus to kiss him,48but Jesus said to him, "Judas, are you betraying the Son of Man with a kiss?"

49When those who were around Jesus saw what was happening, they said, "Lord, should we strike with the sword?"50Then one of them struck the servant of the high priest, and cut off his right ear.

51Jesus said, "That is enough!" He touched his ear, and healed him.52Jesus said to the chief priests, to the captains of the temple, and to elders who came against him, "Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs?53When I was daily with you in the temple, you did not lay your hands on me. But this is your hour, and the authority of darkness."

54Seizing him, they led him away and brought him into the high priest's house. But Peter followed from a distance.55After they had kindled a fire in the middle of the courtyard and had sat down together, Peter sat in the midst of them.56A certain female servant saw him as he sat in the light of the fire and looked straight at him and said, "This man also was with him."

57But Peter denied it, saying, "Woman, I do not know him."

58After a little while someone else saw him, and said, "You are also one of them."

But Peter said, "Man, I am not."

59After about an hour another man insisted and said, "Truly this man also was with him, for he is a Galilean."

60But Peter said, "Man, I do not know what you are saying." Immediately, while he was speaking, a rooster crowed.61Turning, the Lord looked at Peter, and Peter remembered the word of the Lord, when he said to him, "Before a rooster crows today you will deny me three times."62Peter went outside and wept bitterly.

63Then the men holding Jesus in custody mocked and beat him.64They put a cover over him and asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"65They spoke many other things against Jesus, blaspheming him.

66As soon as it was day, the elders of the people gathered together, both chief priests and scribes. They led him into the Council67and said, "If you are the Christ, tell us."

But he said to them, "If I tell you, you will not believe,68and if I ask you, you will not answer.69But from now on, the Son of Man will be seated at the right hand of the power of God."

70They all said, "Then you are the Son of God?"

Jesus said to them, "You say that I am."

71They said, "Why do we still need a witness? For we ourselves have heard from his own mouth."

#### Luke 22:1

##### Now

This word is used here to introduce a new event.

##### the Festival of Unleavened Bread

"the festival when they ate unleavened bread" or "the festival when they ate bread that did not have yeast"

##### was approaching

"was about to begin"

#### Luke 22:2

##### were seeking how

"were looking for an opportunity" or "were thinking of ways in which"

##### they could put Jesus to death

The priests and scribes did not have the authority to kill Jesus, but they hoped to get others to kill him. Alternate translation: "they could get the government to kill Jesus"

#### Luke 22:3

##### Satan entered into Judas, the one called Iscariot

What happened might have been similar to demon possession, but Judas was apparently able to control his own actions. Alternate translation: "Satan took control of Judas, the one called Iscariot"

#### Luke 22:4

##### captains

"officers of the temple guards"

##### how he would betray Jesus to them

"how he would help them arrest Jesus"

#### Luke 22:6

##### He consented

"Judas agreed"

#### Luke 22:7

##### the day of unleavened bread

"the day of bread without yeast." This was the day the Jews would take all bread made with yeast out of their homes. Then they would celebrate the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days.

##### the Passover lamb had to be sacrificed

Each family or group of people would kill a lamb and eat it together. Alternate translation: "people had to kill a lamb for their Passover meal"

#### Luke 22:8

##### prepare

This is a general word meaning "make ready." Jesus was not necessarily telling Peter and John to do all the cooking.

##### so that we may eat it

Jesus was including Peter and John when he said "we." Peter and John would be part of the group of the disciples that would eat the meal.

#### Luke 22:9

##### to make preparations

"to make preparations for the meal" or "to prepare the meal"

#### Luke 22:10

##### Look

"Listen" or "Pay attention"

##### a man bearing a pitcher of water will meet you

"you will see a man carrying a pitcher of water." He would probably be carrying the jar on his shoulder.

##### Follow him into the house

"Follow him, and go into the house"

#### Luke 22:11

##### The Teacher says to you, "Where is the guest room, where I ... with my disciples?"

The quote beginning with "Where is the guest room" is a direct quote of what Jesus, the teacher, wants to say to the master of his house. Alternate translation: "The Teacher asks where the guest room is in which he ... with his disciples" or "The Teacher says to show us the guest room where he ... with us and the rest of his disciples."

##### The Teacher

This refers to Jesus.

##### eat the Passover

"eat the Passover meal"

#### Luke 22:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues giving instructions to Peter and John.

##### He will show you

"The owner of the house will show you"

##### upper room

"room upstairs"

#### Luke 22:13

##### So they went

"So Peter and John went"

#### Luke 22:14

##### When the hour came

"When it was time to eat the meal"

##### he sat down

"Jesus sat down"

#### Luke 22:16

##### until it is fulfilled

Possible meanings are "until God completes the purpose of the Passover Festival" or "until what the Passover represents happens"

#### Luke 22:17

##### when he had given thanks

"when he had given thanks to God"

##### share it among yourselves

"share the wine in this cup among yourselves" or "each of you drink some of the wine from this cup"

#### Luke 22:18

##### I will not drink of the fruit of the vine

"I will not drink wine." Grapes grow on grapevines. People make wine from fermented grape juice.

##### until the kingdom of God comes

"until God establishes his kingdom" or "until God rules in his kingdom"

#### Luke 22:19

##### he broke it

"he ripped it" or "he tore it." The bread did not have yeast in it, so it was flat.

##### This is my body

Possible meanings are "This bread is my body" and "This bread represents my body."

##### my body, which is given for you

"my body, which I give for you"

#### Luke 22:20

##### This cup

"The wine in this cup" or "This cup of wine"

##### the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you

Here "blood, which is poured out" represents death. Jesus's death establishes the new covenant that God makes with his people. Alternate translation: "the new covenant that God will put into effect because I shed my blood for you"

#### Luke 22:21

##### The hand of the one who betrays me

"The person who betrays me" or "The man who is ready to betray me"

#### Luke 22:22

##### For the Son of Man indeed goes

"For, indeed, the Son of Man will die"

##### the Son of Man indeed goes

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, indeed go"

##### as it has been determined

"as God has determined" or "as God has planned"

##### But woe to that man through whom he is betrayed

"But woe to the man who betrays the Son of Man" or "But how terrible it will be for that man who betrays the Son of Man"

#### Luke 22:24

##### Then there arose also a quarrel among them

"Then the apostles began to argue among themselves"

##### was considered to be greatest

"was the most important" or "the people thought was most important"

#### Luke 22:25

##### are lords over them

"rule forcefully over the Gentiles"

##### are called

The ordinary people probably did not think that those rulers did good to them. Alternate translation: "like to be called" or "call themselves"

#### Luke 22:26

##### it must not be like this with you

"you must not act like that"

##### and the one who leads like the one who serves

"and let the one who leads become like the one who serves"

##### the one who serves

"a servant"

#### Luke 22:27

##### For who is greater ... serves?

"For who is more important ... serves?" Jesus uses this question to encourage his disciples to think. Alternate translation: "I want you to think about who is greater ... serves."

##### the one who sits at the table

"the one who is dining" or "the one who eats at the table"

##### Is it not the one who sits at the table?

"Of course the one who sits at the table is more important than the servant!"

##### Yet I am among you as one who serves

"But I am with you like a servant"

#### Luke 22:28

##### who have continued with me in my trials

"who have stayed with me as I have struggled"

#### Luke 22:29

##### I set you over a kingdom, even as my Father has set me over a kingdom

"Just as my Father has given a kingdom to me, I give a kingdom to you" or "Just as my Father has given me authority to rule as king, I give you authority to rule as kings"

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Luke 22:30

##### you will sit on thrones

Kings sit on thrones. Sitting on a throne is a symbol of ruling. Alternate translation: "you will work as kings" or "you will rule as kings"

#### Luke 22:31

##### Simon, Simon

Jesus said his name twice to show that what he was about to say to him was very important.

##### to have you, that he might sift you

The word "you" refers to all of the apostles.

##### that he might sift you as wheat

This means that Satan wanted to test the disciples to find something wrong. Alternate translation: "that he might test you like someone who passes grain through a sieve"

#### Luke 22:32

##### But I have prayed for you that your faith

The word "you" and "your" in this veres refer specifically to Simon.

##### that your faith may not fail

"that you will continue to have faith" or "that you will continue to trust me"

##### After you have turned back again

"After you start believing in me again" or "After you start serving me again"

##### strengthen your brothers

"encourage your brothers to be strong in their faith" or "help your brothers believe in me"

##### your brothers

"your fellow believers" or "the other disciples"

#### Luke 22:34

##### the rooster will not crow this day before you deny three times that you know me

"you will deny three times that you know me before the rooster crows this day"

##### rooster

a bird that calls out loudly before the sun comes up

##### this day

The Jewish day begins at sunset. Jesus was speaking after the sun had set. The rooster would crow just before morning. The morning was part of "this day." Alternate translation: "tonight" or "in the morning"

#### Luke 22:35

##### Jesus said to them, "When I sent you ... did you lack anything?" They answered, "Nothing."

The word "you" refers to the apostles. Jesus uses a question so that they would remember how God provided what they needed in the past.

##### a purse

A purse is a bag for holding money. Here the word is used to refer to money.

##### a bag of provisions

"a travelers' bag" or "a bag of food"

##### Nothing

"We did not lack anything" or "We had everything we needed"

#### Luke 22:36

##### and likewise a bag of provisions

"and let him also take a bag of provisions" or "and also a bag of provisions"

##### The one who does not have a sword should sell his cloak

"If anyone does not have a sword, he should sell his cloak"

##### cloak

"coat" or "outer garment"

#### Luke 22:37

##### what is written about me

"what a prophet wrote about me in the scriptures"

##### must be fulfilled

"must happen" or "God will cause to happen"

##### He was counted with the lawless ones

Here Jesus is quoting the scriptures. "People counted him as a member of the group of lawless men"

##### the lawless ones

"those who break the law" or "the criminals"

##### For what is predicted about me is being fulfilled

"For what the prophet predicted about me is about to happen"

#### Luke 22:38

##### It is enough

Possible meanings are "We have enough swords" or "Do not talk anymore about swords"

#### Luke 22:39

##### General Information:

Jesus goes to the Mount of Olives to pray.

#### Luke 22:40

##### that you do not enter into temptation

"that you are not tempted" or "that nothing tempts you and causes you to sin"

#### Luke 22:41

##### about a stone's throw

"about the distance that someone can throw a stone" or "a short distance"

#### Luke 22:42

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### remove this cup from me

Jesus refers to what he will soon experience as if it were a cup of bitter liquid that he would have to drink. Alternate translation: "allow me to not drink from this cup" or "allow me to not experience what is about to happen"

##### Nevertheless not my will, but yours be done

"But do what is according to your will rather than what is according to my will"

#### Luke 22:44

##### Being in agony, he prayed more earnestly

"He was suffering greatly, and so he prayed more intensely"

##### his sweat became like great drops of blood falling down upon the ground

"his sweat was falling to the ground like large drops of blood"

#### Luke 22:45

##### When he rose up from his prayer, he

"When Jesus got up after praying, he" or "After praying, Jesus got up and he"

##### found them sleeping because of their sorrow

"saw that they were sleeping because they were tired from their sadness"

#### Luke 22:47

##### behold, a crowd appeared

The word "behold" alerts us to an important event.

##### leading them

"leading them to Jesus"

##### to kiss him

"to greet him with a kiss" or "to greet him by kissing him." When men greeted other men who were family or friends, they would kiss them on one cheek or both cheeks. If your readers would find it embarrassing to say that a man would kiss another man, you could translate it in a more general way: "to give him a friendly greeting."

#### Luke 22:48

##### are you betraying the Son of Man with a kiss?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke Judas for betraying him with a kiss. Normally a kiss is a sign of love. Alternate translation: "it is a kiss you are using to betray the Son of Man!"

##### the Son of Man with a kiss

Jesus uses this term to refer to himself. Alternate translation: "me, the Son of Man, with a kiss"

#### Luke 22:49

##### those who were around Jesus

This refers to Jesus's disciples.

##### what was happening

This refers to the priests and soldiers coming to arrest Jesus.

##### should we strike with the sword

"should we fight against them with swords"

#### Luke 22:50

##### one of them struck the servant of the high priest

"one of the disciples struck the servant of the high priest with a sword"

#### Luke 22:51

##### That is enough

"Do not do any more of that"

##### touched his ear

"touched the servant where his ear had been cut off"

#### Luke 22:52

##### Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs?

"Do you come out with swords and clubs because you think I am a robber?" or "You know that I am not a robber, yet you come out to me bringing swords and clubs."

#### Luke 22:53

##### in the temple

"in the temple courts" or "at the temple"

##### you did not lay your hands on me

"you did not arrest me"

##### this is your hour

"this is your time to do what you want"

##### and the authority of darkness

"Darkness" represents evil. Alternate translation: "and darkness has authority" or "and darkness reigns"

#### Luke 22:54

##### led him away

"led Jesus away from the garden"

#### Luke 22:55

##### they had kindled a fire

"some people had made a fire." The fire was to keep the people warm during the cool night. Alternate translation: "some people started a fire to keep warm"

##### the middle of the courtyard

This was the courtyard at the high priest's house. It had walls around it, but no roof.

##### in the midst of them

"together with them"

#### Luke 22:56

##### This man also was with him

The woman was telling the people about Peter being with Jesus. She probably did not know Peter's name.

#### Luke 22:57

##### But Peter denied it

"But Peter said that it was not true"

##### Woman, I do not know him

Peter did not know the woman's name. He was not insulting her by calling her "woman." If people would think he was insulting her, you could use a culturally acceptable way for a man to address a woman he does not know, or you could leave out the word.

#### Luke 22:58

##### You are also one of them

"You are also one of those who were with Jesus"

##### Man, I am not

Peter did not know the man's name. He was not insulting him by calling him "Man." If people would think he was insulting him, you could use a culturally acceptable way for a man to address a man he does not know, or you could leave out the word.

#### Luke 22:59

##### insisted and said

"said insistently" or "said loudly"

##### Truly this man

Here "this man" refers to Peter. The speaker probably did not know Peter's name.

##### he is a Galilean

The man could probably tell Peter was from Galilee from the way he spoke.

#### Luke 22:60

##### I do not know what you are saying

"I do not know what you are talking about." This expression means that Peter completely disagrees with the man. Alternate translation: "what you said is not true at all"

#### Luke 22:61

##### Turning, the Lord looked at Peter

"The Lord turned and looked at Peter"

##### the word of the Lord

"what the Lord had said"

##### deny me three times

"deny three times that you know me"

#### Luke 22:62

##### Peter went outside

"Peter went out of the courtyard"

#### Luke 22:64

##### They put a cover over him

"They covered his eyes so that he could not see"

##### Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?

The guards believed that a prophet would know who hit him even if he could not see. But they did not believe that Jesus was a real prophet. Alternate translation: "Prove that you are a prophet. Tell us who hit you!" or "Hey prophet, who hit you?"

#### Luke 22:66

##### As soon as it was day

"At dawn"

##### They led him into the Council

"The elders had Jesus brought before the Council" or "They led Jesus into the Council meeting"

#### Luke 22:68

##### if I ask you, you will not answer

This was a way for Jesus to rebuke them without giving them a reason to convict him. These words, along with "If I tell you, you will not believe" (verse 67), show that Jesus did not believe that the council really wanted to know the truth.

#### Luke 22:69

##### will be seated at the right hand of the power of God

Sitting at the right hand of God is symbolic of having great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "will be seated in the place of honor beside the power of God"

##### the power of God

"the all-powerful God." Here "power" refers to God's supreme authority.

#### Luke 22:70

##### Then you are the Son of God?

"So when you said that, did you mean that you are the Son of God?"

##### Son of God

It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### You say that I am

"Yes, it is just like you say"

#### Luke 22:71

##### Why do we still need a witness?

"We have no further need for witnesses!"

##### have heard from his own mouth

"have heard him say it"

Chapter 23

1The whole company of them rose up and brought Jesus before Pilate.2They began to accuse him, saying, "We found this man misleading our nation, forbidding to give tribute to Caesar, and saying that he himself is Christ, a king."

3Pilate asked him, saying, "Are you the King of the Jews?"

Jesus answered him and said, "You say so."

4Pilate said to the chief priests and the multitudes, "I find no guilt in this man."

5But they were insisting, saying, "He stirs up the people, teaching throughout all Judea, beginning from Galilee even to this place."6So when Pilate heard this, he asked whether the man was a Galilean.7When he learned that he was under Herod's authority, he sent Jesus to Herod, who himself also was at Jerusalem in those days.

8When Herod saw Jesus, he was very glad, because he had wanted to see him for a long time. He had heard about him and he hoped to see some sign done by him.9Herod questioned Jesus in many words, but Jesus answered him nothing.10The chief priests and the scribes stood, vigorously accusing him.11Herod with his soldiers showed Jesus contempt and they mocked him. Then they dressed him in splendid clothes and sent him back to Pilate.12For Herod and Pilate had become friends with each other that very day, for before this they had been enemies with each other.

13Pilate then called together the chief priests and the rulers and the crowd of people14and said to them, "You brought to me this man like a man who is misleading the people. And see, I, having questioned him before you, find no guilt in this man concerning those things of which you accuse him.15No, nor does Herod, for he sent him back to us, and see, nothing worthy of death has been done by him.16I will therefore punish him and release him."17[1](#footnote-target-1)18But they cried out all together, saying, "Away with this man, and release to us Barabbas!"19Barabbas was a man who had been put into prison for a certain rebellion in the city and for murder.20Pilate addressed them again, desiring to release Jesus.21But they shouted, saying, "Crucify him, crucify him."22He said to them a third time, "Why, what evil has this man done? I have found no guilt deserving death in him. Therefore after punishing him, I will release him."23But they were insistent with loud voices, demanding for him to be crucified. Their voices convinced Pilate.24So Pilate decided to grant their demand.25He released the one they asked for who had been put in prison for rebellion and murder. But he delivered up Jesus to their will.

26As they led him away, they seized one Simon of Cyrene, coming from the country, and they laid the cross on him to carry, following Jesus.

27A great crowd of the people, and of women who grieved and mourned for him, were following him.28But turning to them, Jesus said, "Daughters of Jerusalem, do not weep for me, but weep for yourselves and for your children.29For see, the days are coming in which they will say, 'Blessed are the barren and the wombs that did not bear, and the breasts that did not nurse.'30Then they will begin to say to the mountains,'Fall on us,' and to the hills, 'Cover us.'31For if they do these things while the tree is green, what will happen when it is dry?"

32Other men, two criminals, were led away with him to be put to death.

33When they came to the place that is called "The Skull," there they crucified him and the criminals—one on his right and one on his left.34Jesus said, "Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing." Then they cast lots, dividing up his garments.

35The people stood watching while the rulers also were mocking him, saying, "He saved others. Let him save himself, if he is the Christ of God, the chosen one."

36The soldiers also ridiculed him, approaching him, offering him vinegar,37and saying, "If you are the King of the Jews, save yourself."38There was also a sign over him, "This is the King of the Jews."

39One of the criminals who was hanging there insulted him by saying, "Are you not the Christ? Save yourself and us."

40But the other rebuked him, saying, "Do you not fear God, since you are under the same sentence of condemnation?41We indeed are here justly, for we are receiving what we deserve for our deeds. But this man did nothing wrong."42Then he said, "Jesus, remember me when you come into your kingdom."

43Jesus said to him, "Truly I say to you, today you will be with me in paradise."

44It was now about the sixth hour, and darkness came over the whole land until the ninth hour45as the sun turned dark. Then the curtain of the temple was split in two.46Crying with a loud voice, Jesus said, "Father, into your hands I commit my spirit." Having said this, he died.

47When the centurion saw what was done, he glorified God, saying, "Surely this was a righteous man."48When all the multitudes who came together to witness this sight saw the things that were done, they returned beating their breasts.49But all those who knew him, and the women who followed him from Galilee, stood at a distance, watching these things.

50Behold, there was a man named Joseph, who was a member of the Council. He was a good and righteous man.51This man had not agreed with their plan and action. He was from Arimathea, a city of the Jews, and he was looking for the kingdom of God.52This man, approaching Pilate, asked for the body of Jesus.53He took it down, wrapped it in fine linen, and placed it in a tomb that was cut in stone, where no one had ever been laid.54It was the Day of the Preparation, and the Sabbath was about to begin.55The women who had come with Jesus out of Galilee followed and saw the tomb and how his body was laid.56They returned and prepared spices and ointments.

Then on the Sabbath they rested according to the commandment.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have Luke 23:17, Now Pilate was obligated to release to the Jews one prisoner at the feast .

#### Luke 23:1

##### The whole company of them

"All of the Jewish leaders" or "All the members of the Council"

##### rose up

This means that they began to act decisively.

##### before Pilate

"to Pilate" or "to be judged by Pilate"

#### Luke 23:2

##### misleading our nation

"causing our people to do things that are not right" or "causing trouble by telling lies to our people"

##### forbidding to give tribute to Caesar

"telling them not to pay taxes to the emperor"

#### Luke 23:3

##### You say so

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus indicates that he is the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "It is as you said" or 2) Jesus refuses to answer. Alternate translation: "You yourself have said so"

#### Luke 23:4

##### multitudes

large groups of people

##### I find no guilt in this man

"I do not find this man guilty of anything"

#### Luke 23:5

##### stirs up the people

"causes trouble among the people"

##### all Judea, beginning from Galilee even to this place

"all Judea. He began causing trouble in Galilee and now is causing trouble here"

#### Luke 23:6

##### heard this

"heard that Jesus began his teaching in Galilee"

##### he asked whether the man was a Galilean

"he asked if Jesus was from Galilee"

#### Luke 23:7

##### he was under Herod's authority

"Jesus was under the authority of Herod, the ruler of Galilee"

#### Luke 23:8

##### to see some sign done by him

"to see Jesus do some kind of sign"

##### sign

a miracle that would show that Jesus was more than a mere man

#### Luke 23:9

##### Herod questioned Jesus in many words

"Herod asked Jesus a lot of questions"

##### answered him nothing

"did not reply" or "did not give Herod an answer"

#### Luke 23:10

##### vigorously accusing him

They were showing great anger and using strong words and accusing him of many things.

#### Luke 23:11

##### dressed him in splendid clothes

"put beautiful clothes on him." They did this to mock Jesus and make fun of him.

#### Luke 23:14

##### like a man who

"saying that he"

##### is misleading the people

"is urging the people to act badly" or "is trying to get the people to rebel"

##### I, having questioned him before you,

"I have questioned him in your presence and I" or "I have questioned him with you here as witnesses, and I"

##### find no guilt in this man

"do not think that he is guilty"

#### Luke 23:15

##### No, nor does Herod

"Nor does Herod find guilt in this man" or "Herod also does not think that this man is guilty"

##### nor does Herod, for he sent him back to us

"nor does Herod. We know this because Herod sent him back to us." The word "us" refers to Pilate, the priests, and the scribes, but not those who were listening to Pilate.

##### nothing worthy of death has been done by him

"he has not done anything to deserve a death sentence"

#### Luke 23:16

##### I will therefore punish him and release him

"So I will punish him and then set him free"

#### Luke 23:18

##### they cried out all together

"the people in the crowd shouted"

##### Away with this man, and release to us Barabbas"

"Take this man away! Set Barabbas free for us"

#### Luke 23:19

##### who had been put into prison

"who was in prison" or "whom the Romans had put in prison"

##### for a certain rebellion in the city and for murder

"because he and others in the city had rebelled against the government and committed murder" or "because he was involved in a rebellion in the city and murder"

#### Luke 23:20

##### addressed them again

"spoke to them again" or "spoke again to the religious rulers and the crowd"

##### desiring to release Jesus

"because he wanted to set Jesus free"

#### Luke 23:22

##### Why, what evil has this man done?

"But what crime has this man committed?"

#### Luke 23:23

##### they were insistent with loud voices

"the crowd insisted and shouted"

##### for him to be crucified

"that Pilate have his soldiers crucify Jesus"

##### Their voices convinced Pilate

"Their shouting convinced Pilate"or "They kept shouting until they convinced Pilate"

#### Luke 23:24

##### to grant their demand

"to do what the crowd demanded"

#### Luke 23:25

##### he delivered up Jesus to their will

"he surrendered Jesus to what they wanted" or "he handed Jesus over so that what they wanted would happen to him"

#### Luke 23:26

##### As they led him away

"While the soldiers led Jesus away from where Pilate was"

##### they seized

The Roman soldiers had the authority to make people carry their loads. Do not translate this in a way that indicates that Simon was arrested for doing anything wrong.

##### one Simon of Cyrene, coming from the country

"a man named Simon, from the city of Cyrene, who was coming into Jerusalem from the countryside"

##### they laid the cross on him to carry, following Jesus

"they put the cross on his shoulders for him to carry and follow behind Jesus"

#### Luke 23:27

##### A great crowd

"A large crowd"

##### mourned for him

"mourned for Jesus"

##### were following him

This simply means they were walking along behind Jesus. It does not mean that they were all his disciples.

#### Luke 23:28

##### Daughters of Jerusalem

The "daughters" of a city are the women of the city. Alternate translation: "You women of Jerusalem"

#### Luke 23:29

##### the days are coming in which they will say

"there will soon be a time when people will say"

##### the barren

"the barren women" or "the women who could not have children"

##### the wombs that did not bear ... the breasts that did not nurse

These clauses more fully describe "the barren." Alternate translation: "the women who have never given birth to children or nursed babies"

#### Luke 23:30

##### Then they will begin to say

"In those days people will begin to say"

##### and to the hills

"and they will say to the hills"

#### Luke 23:31

##### For if they do these things while the tree is green, what will happen when it is dry?

Dry trees burn more quickly than green trees. Jesus uses this question to help the crowd understand that others would suffer even worse than he was suffering. Alternate translation: "Since they do these things while the tree is green, you can be sure that it will be worse when the tree is dry."

#### Luke 23:32

##### Other men, two criminals, were led away with him to be put to death

"The soldiers led away with Jesus two criminals to execute them also." Luke called the other two men criminals, but he did not call Jesus a criminal because Jesus was innocent.

#### Luke 23:34

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### for they do not know what they are doing

"because they do not understand what they are doing." The Roman soldiers did not understand that they were crucifying the Son of God.

##### they cast lots

The soldiers participated in a type of gambling. Alternate translation: "they tossed stones" or "they threw dice"

##### cast lots, dividing up his garments

"cast lots to decide who among them would take home each piece of Jesus's clothing"

#### Luke 23:35

##### Let him save himself

"He should be able to save himself." They said this to mock Jesus. They did not believe he could save himself.

##### the chosen one

"the one that God has chosen"

#### Luke 23:36

##### offering him vinegar

"offering Jesus vinegar to drink." Vinegar is a cheap drink that common people drink. The soldiers were mocking Jesus by giving a cheap drink to someone who claims to be a king.

#### Luke 23:38

##### a sign over him

"a notice above him on which was written." This was a notice attached to the top of the cross.

#### Luke 23:39

##### Are you not the Christ? Save yourself

The criminal uses a question to mock Jesus. Alternate translation: "You claim to be the Christ. So save yourself" or "If you really are the Christ, save yourself"

#### Luke 23:40

##### the other rebuked him

"the other criminal rebuked him"

##### Do you not fear God, since you are under the same sentence of condemnation?

The criminal uses a question to scold the other criminal. Alternate translation: "You should fear God, because you are under the same sentence of condemnation."

##### you are under the same sentence of condemnation

"the government has condemned you to be punished in the same way"

#### Luke 23:41

##### We indeed ... for we ... we deserve

These usages of "we" refer only to the two criminals. They do not refer to Jesus or the other people.

##### We indeed are here justly

"Truly we deserve this punishment"

#### Luke 23:42

##### remember me

"think about me and treat me well"

##### when you come into your kingdom

To "come into" one's kingdom means to begin to rule. Alternate translation: "when you begin to rule as king"

#### Luke 23:43

##### Truly I say to you, today

"Truly" adds emphasis to what Jesus is saying. Alternate translation: "I want you to know that today"

##### paradise

This is the place that righteous people go to when they die. Alternate translation: "the place where the righteous people live" or "the place where people live well"

#### Luke 23:44

##### about the sixth hour ... until the ninth hour

"about noon ... until 3 p.m." This reflects the custom at the time of counting hours beginning with daybreak at 6 a.m.

##### darkness came over the whole land

"the entire land became dark"

#### Luke 23:45

##### as the sun turned dark

This does not refer to sundown. Rather, the light of the sun became dark during the middle of the day.

##### the curtain of the temple was split in two

"the curtain that was hanging inside the temple tore into two pieces." This was the thick curtain that separated the most holy place from the rest of the temple.

#### Luke 23:46

##### Crying with a loud voice, Jesus said

"When that happened, Jesus shouted loudly, saying"

##### into your hands I commit my spirit

"The phrase "into your hands" refers to God's care. Alternate translation: "I entrust my spirit to your care"

##### Having said this

"After Jesus said this"

#### Luke 23:47

##### the centurion

This was a Roman officer who was in charge of the other Roman soldiers. He supervised the crucifixion.

##### what was done

"what happened"

#### Luke 23:48

##### all the multitudes

"all the crowd"

##### to witness this sight

"to see this event" or "to observe what was happening"

##### they returned beating their breasts

Beating one's breast is a symbol of sorrow and regret. Alternate translation: "they returned to their homes, beating their chests in sorrow"

#### Luke 23:50

##### Behold, there was a man named Joseph

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Alternate translation: "Now there was a man whose name was Joseph"

##### the Council

"the Jewish Council"

#### Luke 23:51

##### he was looking for the kingdom of God

he was waiting for the kingdom of God

#### Luke 23:52

##### This man, approaching Pilate, asked for the body of Jesus

"This man went to Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus"

#### Luke 23:53

##### He took it down

"Joseph took Jesus's body down from the cross"

##### wrapped it in fine linen

"wrapped the body in a fine linen cloth." This was the normal burial custom at that time.

##### a tomb that was cut in stone

"a tomb which someone had cut out of a rock cliff"

##### where no one had ever been laid

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "No one had ever put a body in that tomb before"

#### Luke 23:54

##### the Day of the Preparation

"the day for getting ready for the Sabbath"

#### Luke 23:55

##### who had come with Jesus out of Galilee

"who had come with Jesus from the region of Galilee"

##### followed and saw the tomb and how his body was laid

"followed Joseph and saw the tomb and how he laid Jesus's body inside it"

#### Luke 23:56

##### prepared spices and ointments

"prepared spices and ointments for Jesus's body"

##### they rested according to the commandment

"they did no work as the Jewish law required." They did not put the spice on his body yet because they were not allowed to work on the Sabbath.

Chapter 24

1Very early on the first day of the week, they came to the tomb, bringing the spices which they had prepared.2They found the stone rolled away from the tomb.3They entered in, but did not find the body of the Lord Jesus.4It happened that, while they were confused about this, suddenly, two men stood by them in bright shining garments.5As the women were terrified and bowed down their faces to the earth, they said to the women, "Why do you seek the living among the dead?6He is not here, but has been raised! Remember how he spoke to you when he was still in Galilee,7saying that the Son of Man must be delivered up into the hands of sinful men and be crucified, and on the third day rise again."8The women remembered his words9and returned from the tomb and told all these things to the eleven and all the rest.10Now Mary Magdalene, Joanna, Mary the mother of James, and the other women with them reported these things to the apostles.11But this message seemed like idle talk to the apostles, and they did not believe the women.12Yet Peter rose up and ran to the tomb, and, stooping and looking in, he saw the linen cloths by themselves. Peter then departed to his home, wondering what had happened.

13Behold, two of them were going that very day to a village named Emmaus, which was sixty stadia from Jerusalem.14They discussed with each other about all the things that had happened.15It happened that, while they discussed and questioned together, Jesus himself approached and went with them.16But their eyes were prevented from recognizing him.17Jesus said to them, "What are these matters you two are discussing as you walk?" They stood there looking sad.

18One of them, named Cleopas, answered him, "Are you the only person in Jerusalem who does not know the things which have happened there these days?"

19Jesus said to them, "What things?"

They answered him, "The things concerning Jesus the Nazarene, who was a prophet, mighty in deed and word before God and all the people,20and how the chief priests and our rulers delivered him up to be condemned to death and crucified him.21But we hoped that he was the one who was going to redeem Israel. Yes, and what is more, it is now the third day since all these things happened.22But also, some women of our company amazed us, having been at the tomb early in the morning.23When they did not find his body, they came, saying that they had also seen a vision of angels who said that he was alive.24Some men who were with us went to the tomb, and found it just as the women had said. But they did not see him."

25Jesus said to them, "O foolish men and slow of heart to believe in all that the prophets have spoken!26Was it not necessary for the Christ to suffer these things, and to enter into his glory?"27Then beginning from Moses and through all the prophets, Jesus interpreted to them the things concerning himself in all the scriptures.

28As they approached the village to which they were going, Jesus acted as though he were going further.29But they compelled him, saying, "Stay with us, for it is toward evening and the day is almost over." So Jesus went in to stay with them.30It happened that, when he had sat down with them to eat, he took the bread, blessed it, and breaking it, he gave it to them.31Then their eyes were opened, and they knew him, and he vanished out of their sight.32They said one to another, "Was not our heart burning within us, while he spoke to us on the way, while he opened to us the scriptures?"33They rose up that very hour and returned to Jerusalem. They found the eleven gathered together and those who were with them,34saying, "The Lord is risen indeed, and has appeared to Simon."35So they told the things that happened on the way, and how Jesus was recognized by them in the breaking of the bread.

36As they spoke these things, Jesus himself stood in the midst of them, and said to them, "Peace be to you."37But they were terrified and filled with fear and thought that they were seeing a spirit.38Jesus said to them, "Why are you troubled? Why do questions arise in your heart?39See my hands and my feet, that it is I myself. Touch me and see. For a spirit does not have flesh and bones, as you see me having."40When he had said this, he showed them his hands and his feet.41They still could not believe it because of joy, and they were amazed. Jesus said to them, "Do you have anything to eat?"42They gave him a piece of a broiled fish,43and he took it and ate it before them.

44He said to them, "These are my words that I spoke to you when I was with you, that all that was written in the law of Moses and the Prophets and the Psalms must be fulfilled."45Then he opened their minds, that they might understand the scriptures.46He said to them, "Thus it is written, that the Christ should suffer and rise again from the dead on the third day.47Repentance and forgiveness of sins should be preached in his name to all the nations, beginning from Jerusalem.48You are witnesses of these things.49See, I am sending you what my Father promised. But remain in the city until you are clothed with power from on high."

50Then Jesus led them out until they were near Bethany. He lifted up his hands and blessed them.51It happened that, while he was blessing them, he left them and was carried up into heaven.52So they worshiped him and returned to Jerusalem with great joy.53They were continually in the temple, blessing God.

#### Luke 24:1

##### General Information:

The women return to the tomb with spices to put on Jesus's body. The tomb was like a room that was dug out of a rock hill. There was a large stone blocking the entrance to the tomb.

#### Luke 24:2

##### They found the stone rolled away

"They saw that the stone had been rolled away" or "They saw that someone had rolled away the stone"

##### the stone

This was a large, cut, round stone big enough to completely block the doorway to the tomb.

#### Luke 24:4

##### General Information:

Two angels who look like men come and speak to the women.

#### Luke 24:5

##### bowed down their faces to the earth

"bowed low to the ground"

##### Why do you seek the living among the dead?

The men use a question to mildly rebuke the women for looking in a tomb for a living person. Alternate translation: "You are looking for a living person among dead people!" or "You should not look for a living person in a place for dead people!"

#### Luke 24:6

##### but has been raised

"but has been made alive again" or "because he has become alive again"

#### Luke 24:7

##### the Son of Man must be delivered up into the hands of sinful men and be crucified

"it was necessary that they hand the Son of Man over to sinful men who would crucify him"

##### third day

The Jews counted any portion of a day as a day. Therefore, the day Jesus was raised was "the third day" because it followed the day of his burial and the Sabbath day.

#### Luke 24:8

##### remembered his words

"remembered what Jesus had said"

#### Luke 24:9

##### the eleven and all the rest

"the eleven apostles and all the rest of the disciples who were with them." This is the first time Luke refers to the apostles as "the eleven." There had been twelve apostles before, but Judas left them and betrayed Jesus.

#### Luke 24:10

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. In this verse and the next, Luke tells about what happened when the women spoke to the apostles.

#### Luke 24:11

##### But this message seemed like idle talk to the apostles

"But the apostles thought that what the women said was foolish talk"

#### Luke 24:12

##### Yet Peter rose up

"Rose up" means "began to act." Whether Peter was sitting or standing when he decided to act is not important. Alternate translation: "Yet Peter started out"

##### stooping

Peter had to bend over in order to see inside the tomb because the entrance was very low. Alternate translation: "bending himself at the waist"

##### the linen cloths by themselves

"only the linen cloths." This refers to the cloths that had been wrapped around Jesus's body when he was buried. Jesus was not there.

#### Luke 24:13

##### Behold

The author uses this word to mark the beginning of a new event.

##### two of them

"two of the disciples"

##### that very day

"that same day." This refers to the day when the women found the tomb to be empty.

##### sixty stadia

"eleven kilometers." A "stadium" was 185 meters.

#### Luke 24:15

##### It happened that

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. It starts with Jesus approaching them.

##### Jesus himself

The word "himself" emphasizes the fact that the one they were talking about appeared to them.

#### Luke 24:16

##### their eyes were prevented from recognizing him

"their eyes were kept from recognizing him" or "God prevented them from recognizing Jesus"

#### Luke 24:18

##### Cleopas

This is the name of a man.

##### Are you the only person ... days?

Cleopas uses this question to show his surprise that this man appears not to know about the things that have happened in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "You must be the only person ... days."

#### Luke 24:19

##### What things

"What things have happened" or "What things have taken place"

##### a prophet, mighty in deed and word before God and all the people

"a prophet to whom God gave power to do and teach great things before all the people"

#### Luke 24:20

##### delivered him up to be condemned to death and crucified him

"gave him over in order for the governor to sentence Jesus to death and they crucified him"

#### Luke 24:21

##### who was going to redeem Israel

"who would free the the people of Israel from our enemies"

##### Yes, and what is more,

This introduces another reason why they no longer believed Jesus would free Israel. Alternate translation: "And in addition to that,"

#### Luke 24:22

##### But also

This introduces another reason why the men did not understand what was happening concerning Jesus.

##### of our company

"in our group"

##### having been at the tomb

The women were the ones who were at the tomb.

#### Luke 24:24

##### But they did not see him

"But they did not see Jesus"

#### Luke 24:25

##### slow of heart to believe

Here "heart" represents the mind. Alternate translation: "your minds are slow to believe" or "you are slow to believe"

#### Luke 24:26

##### Was it not necessary ... glory?

Jesus uses a question to remind the disciples about what the prophets said. Alternate translation: "Surely you know that it was necessary ... glory."

##### to enter into his glory

This refers to Jesus beginning to rule and to receive honor and glory.

#### Luke 24:27

##### beginning from Moses

Moses wrote the first books of the Bible. Alternate translation: "beginning with the writings of Moses"

##### Jesus interpreted to them

"Jesus explained to them"

#### Luke 24:28

##### Jesus acted as though he were going further

The two men understood from his actions that he was going on to another destination. There is no indication that Jesus wanted to deceive them.

#### Luke 24:29

##### they compelled him

"they persuade him to stay with them"

#### Luke 24:30

##### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### the bread

This refers to bread. It does not refer to food in general.

##### blessed it

"gave thanks for it" or "thanked God for it"

#### Luke 24:31

##### Then their eyes were opened

"Then they understood" or "Then they realized"

##### they knew him

"they recognized him." These disciples had known him before his death.

##### he vanished out of their sight

"he disappeared from their sight"

#### Luke 24:32

##### Was not our heart burning ... scriptures?

They use a question to emphasize how amazed they were about their encounter with Jesus. Alternate translation: "Our hearts were burning ... scriptures."

##### while he opened to us the scriptures

"while he explained the scriptures to us"

#### Luke 24:33

##### rose up

"got up" or "stood up"

##### the eleven

This refers to Jesus's apostles. Judas was no longer included with them.

#### Luke 24:34

##### saying

"and those people told the two men"

#### Luke 24:35

##### So they told

"So the two men told them"

##### the things that happened on the way

"what had happened while they were walking on the road"

##### how Jesus was recognized by them in the breaking of the bread

"how they recognized Jesus when he broke the bread"

#### Luke 24:36

##### Jesus himself

The word "himself" focuses on Jesus. The people in the room did not expect Jesus to appear.

##### in the midst of them

"among them"

##### Peace be to you

"May you have peace" or "May God give you peace!" The word "you" refers to the group of people.

#### Luke 24:37

##### terrified and filled with fear

"startled and afraid." These two phrases mean about the same thing, and are used together to emphasize their fear.

##### a spirit

Here it refers to the spirit of a dead person.

#### Luke 24:38

##### Why are you troubled?

Jesus uses a question to comfort them. Alternate translation: "Do not be frightened."

##### Why do questions arise in your heart?

Jesus uses a question to mildly rebuke them. Jesus was telling them not to doubt that he was alive. Alternate translation: "Do not let doubts come up in your minds!" or "Stop doubting!"

#### Luke 24:39

##### Touch me and see. For a spirit does not have flesh and bones, as you see me having

Jesus asks them to touch him so they can know that he is not a ghost. Alternate translation: "Touch me and know. For I have flesh and bones, but ghosts do not have them"

##### flesh and bones

This is a way of referring to the physical body.

#### Luke 24:40

##### his hands and his feet

Jesus's hands and feet had wounds from when he was nailed to the cross. These gave proof that he was Jesus. Alternate translation: "the wounds in his hands and his feet"

#### Luke 24:41

##### They still could not believe it because of joy

"They were so full of joy that they still could not believe it was really true"

#### Luke 24:43

##### ate it before them

"ate it in front of them." Doing this gave proof that he has a physical body and is not just a ghost.

#### Luke 24:44

##### all that was written ... Psalms must be fulfilled

"God would fulfill all that was written ... Psalms" or "God would cause all that was written ... Psalms to happen"

##### all that was written in the law of Moses and the Prophets and the Psalms

The words "law of Moses," "the Prophets," and "the Psalms" are parts of the Hebrew Bible. Alternate translation: "all that Moses wrote in the law, all that the prophets wrote, and all that the writers of the Psalms wrote about me"

#### Luke 24:45

##### Then he opened their minds, that they might understand the scriptures

"Then he enabled them to understand the scriptures"

#### Luke 24:46

##### Thus it is written

"This is what people long ago wrote"

#### Luke 24:47

##### Repentance and forgiveness of sins should be preached in his name to all the nations

"People must preach in Christ's name to people in all the nations that they need to repent and that they need God to forgive their sins"

##### in his name

His "name" here refers to his authority. Alternate translation: "by the Christ's authority"

##### beginning from Jerusalem

"starting in Jerusalem"

#### Luke 24:48

##### You are witnesses

"You are to tell others that what you saw of these things." The disciples had observed Jesus's life, death, and resurrection and could describe to other people what he did.

#### Luke 24:49

##### I am sending you what my Father promised

"I will give you what my Father promised to give you." God had promised to give the Holy Spirit.

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### until you are clothed with power from on high

"until you receive power from above" or "until you receive power from heaven"

#### Luke 24:50

##### Jesus led them out

"Jesus led the disciples outside the city"

##### He lifted up his hands

This was the action that priests performed when they blessed the people.

#### Luke 24:51

##### was carried up into heaven

"was taken up into heaven" or "went up into heaven"

#### Luke 24:53

##### in the temple

"at the temple" or "in the temple courtyard"

##### blessing God

"praising God"

## John

Chapter 1

1In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.2This one was in the beginning with God.3All things were made through him, and without him there was not one thing made that has been made.4In him was life, and the life was the light of men.5The light shines in the darkness, and the darkness did not overcome it.

6There was a man who was sent from God, whose name was John.7He came as a witness to testify about the light, that all might believe through him.8John was not the light, but came that he might testify about the light.

9The true light, which gives light to all men, was coming into the world.10He was in the world, and the world was made through him, and the world did not know him.11He came to his own, and his own did not receive him.12But to as many as received him, who believed in his name, he gave the right to become children of God.13These were not born of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God.

14The Word became flesh and lived among us. We have seen his glory, glory as of the one and only who came from the Father, full of grace and truth.15John testified about him and cried out, saying, "This was the one of whom I said, 'He who comes after me is greater than I am, for he was before me.'"16For from his fullness we have all received grace after grace.17For the law was given through Moses. Grace and truth came through Jesus Christ.18No one has ever seen God; the only God, who is at the Father's side, he has made God known.

19This is the testimony of John when the Jews sent priests and Levites to him from Jerusalem to ask him, "Who are you?"20He confessed—he did not deny, but confessed—"I am not the Christ."21So they asked him, "What are you then? Are you Elijah?" He said, "I am not." They said, "Are you the prophet?" He answered, "No."22Then they said to him, "Who are you, so that we may give an answer to those who sent us? What do you say about yourself?"23He said, "I am a voice, crying in the wilderness: 'Make the way of the Lord straight,' just as Isaiah the prophet said."

24Now some from the Pharisees were sent,25and they asked him and said to him, "Why do you baptize, then, if you are not the Christ nor Elijah nor the prophet?"26John answered them, saying, "I baptize with water. But among you stands someone you do not know.27He is the one who comes after me, the strap of whose sandal I am not worthy to untie."28These things were done in Bethany on the other side of the Jordan, where John was baptizing.

29The next day John saw Jesus coming to him and said, "Look, there is the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world!30This is the one of whom I said, 'The one who comes after me is more than me, for he was before me.'31I did not know him, but it was so that he could be revealed to Israel that I came baptizing with water."32John testified, saying, "I saw the Spirit coming down like a dove from heaven, and it stayed upon him.33I did not recognize him, but he who sent me to baptize in water said to me, 'The one on whom you see the Spirit come down and remain, he is the one who will baptize with the Holy Spirit.'34I have both seen and testified that this is the Son of God."

35Again, the next day, as John was standing with two of his disciples,36they saw Jesus walking by, and John said, "Look, the Lamb of God!"37His two disciples heard him say this and they followed Jesus.38Then Jesus turned and saw them following him and said to them, "What are you looking for?" They replied, "Rabbi" (which is translated "Teacher"), "where are you staying?"39He said to them, "Come and see." Then they came and saw where he was staying; they stayed with him that day, for it was about the tenth hour.

40One of the two who heard John speak and then followed Jesus was Andrew, the brother of Simon Peter.41He first found his own brother Simon and said to him, "We have found the Messiah" (which is translated "Christ").42He brought him to Jesus, and Jesus looked at him and said, "You are Simon son of John. You will be called Cephas" (which is translated "Peter").

43The next day, when Jesus wanted to leave to go to Galilee, he found Philip and said to him, "Follow me."44Now Philip was from Bethsaida, the city of Andrew and Peter.45Philip found Nathaniel and said to him, "He of whom Moses wrote in the law, and the prophets, we have found him: Jesus son of Joseph, from Nazareth."46Nathaniel said to him, "Can any good thing come out of Nazareth?" Philip said to him, "Come and see."47Jesus saw Nathaniel coming to him and said about him, "See, a true Israelite, in whom is no deceit!"48Nathaniel said to him, "How do you know me?" Jesus answered and said to him, "Before Philip called you, when you were under the fig tree, I saw you."49Nathaniel replied, "Rabbi, you are the Son of God! You are the King of Israel!"50Jesus replied and said to him, "Because I said to you, 'I saw you underneath the fig tree,' do you believe? You will see greater things than this."51Then he said, "Truly, truly, I say to you, you will see the heavens opened, and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of Man."

#### John 1:1

##### In the beginning

This refers to the very earliest time before God created the heavens and the earth.

##### the Word

This refers to Jesus. Translate as "the Word" if possible. If "Word" is feminine in your language, it could be translated as "the one who is called the Word."

#### John 1:3

##### All things were made through him

"God made all things through him"

##### without him there was not one thing made that has been made

"God did not make anything without him" or "with him there was every thing made that has been made" or "God made with him every thing that God has made"

#### John 1:4

##### In him was life, and the life was the light of men

"He is the one who caused everything to live. And he revealed to people what is true about God"

##### In him

Here "him" refers to the one who is called the Word.

##### life

Here use a general term for "life." If you must be more specific, translate as "spiritual life."

#### John 1:5

##### The light shines in the darkness, and the darkness did not overcome it

"The truth is like a light shining into a dark place, and no one in the dark place could put out the light"

#### John 1:7

##### testify about the light

"show how Jesus is like the true light of God"

#### John 1:9

##### The true light

Here light represents Jesus as the one who both reveals the truth about God and is himself that truth.

#### John 1:10

##### the world did not know him

"the people did not know who he really was"

#### John 1:11

##### He came to his own, and his own did not receive him

"He came to his own fellow countrymen, and his own fellow countrymen did not accept him either"

#### John 1:12

##### believed in his name

"believed in him"

##### he gave the right

"he gave them the authority" or "he made it possible for them"

##### children of God

The word "children" is a metaphor that represents our relationship to God, which is like children to a father.

#### John 1:14

##### The Word

This refers to Jesus. Translate as "the Word" if possible. See how you translated this in John 1:1.

##### became flesh

"became human" or "became a human being"

##### the one and only who came from the Father

"the unique Son of the Father" or "the only Son of the Father"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 1:15

##### He who comes after me

John is speaking about Jesus. The phrase "comes after me" means that John's ministry has already started and Jesus's ministry will start later.

##### is greater than I am

"is more important than I am" or "has more authority than I have"

##### for he was before me

Jesus is greater and more important than John because he is God the Son, who has always been alive.

#### John 1:16

##### grace after grace

"blessing after blessing"

#### John 1:18

##### the only God

"the only Son, who is himself God"

##### the only God

"the only begotten God" or "the only begotten Son, who is himself God" or "the only Son who proceeds from God and is himself God"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 1:19

##### the Jews sent

"the Jewish leaders sent"

#### John 1:20

##### He confessed—he did not deny, but confessed

This means that John was telling the truth and was strongly stating that he was not the Christ. Your language may have a different way of doing this.

#### John 1:21

##### What are you then?

"What then is the case, if you are not the Messiah?" or "What then is going on?" or "What then are you doing?"

#### John 1:22

##### they said to him

"the priests and Levites said to John"

#### John 1:23

##### He said

"John said"

##### I am a voice, crying in the wilderness

"I am the one calling out in the wilderness"

##### Make the way of the Lord straight

"Prepare yourselves for the Lord's arrival the same way that people prepare the road for an important person to use"

#### John 1:27

##### who comes after me

John is speaking about Jesus. The phrase "comes after me" means that John's ministry has already started and Jesus's ministry will start later.

##### me, the strap of whose sandal I am not worthy to untie

"me, whom I am not worthy to serve in even the most unpleasant way" or "me. I am not even worthy to untie the strap of his sandal"

#### John 1:29

##### Lamb of God

Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" because he was sacrificed to pay for people's sins.

##### world

The word "world" refers to all the people in the world.

#### John 1:32

##### like a dove

Possible meanings: 1) the Spirit descended in the form of a dove or 2) the Spirit descended in the way a dove descends.

##### heaven

The word "heaven" refers to the "sky."

#### John 1:33

##### The one on whom

"The one upon whom"

##### he is the one who will baptize with the Holy Spirit

"he is the one who will baptize in the Holy Spirit"

#### John 1:34

##### the Son of God

Some copies of this text say "Son of God"; others say "chosen one of God."

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### John 1:35

##### Again, the next day

This is another day. It is the second day that John sees Jesus.

#### John 1:39

##### tenth hour

"hour 10." This phrase indicates a time in the afternoon, before dark, at which it would be too late to start traveling to another town, possibly around 4 p.m.

#### John 1:42

##### son of John

This is not John the Baptist. "John" was a very common name.

#### John 1:46

##### Nathaniel said to him

"Nathaniel said to Philip"

##### Can any good thing come out of Nazareth?

"No good thing can come out of Nazareth!"

#### John 1:47

##### in whom is no deceit

"a completely truthful man"

#### John 1:49

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### John 1:50

##### Because I said to you, 'I ... tree,' do you believe?

"You believe only because I said, 'I ... tree'!"

#### John 1:51

##### Truly, truly

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true.

Chapter 2

1Three days later, there was a wedding in Cana of Galilee, and the mother of Jesus was there.2Jesus and his disciples were invited to the wedding.3When the wine ran out, the mother of Jesus said to him, "They have no wine."4Jesus said to her, "Woman, why do you come to me? My time has not yet come."5His mother said to the servants, "Whatever he says to you, do it."

6Now there were six stone water pots there used for the Jewish ceremonial washing, each containing two to three metretes.7Jesus said to them, "Fill the water pots with water." So they filled them up to the brim.8Then he told the servants, "Take some out now and take it to the head waiter." So they did.

9The head waiter tasted the water that had become wine, but he did not know where it came from (but the servants who had drawn the water knew). Then he called the bridegroom10and said to him, "Every man serves the good wine first and then the cheaper wine when they are drunk. But you have kept the good wine until now."11This first sign Jesus did in Cana of Galilee, and he revealed his glory, and his disciples believed in him.12After this Jesus, his mother, his brothers, and his disciples went down to Capernaum and they stayed there for a few days.

13Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and Jesus went up to Jerusalem.14He found sellers of oxen and sheep and pigeons in the temple, and the money changers were sitting there.15So he made a whip of cords and drove all of them out from the temple, including both the sheep and the cattle. He scattered the coins of the money changers and turned their tables over.16To the pigeon sellers he said, "Take these things away from here. Stop making the house of my Father a marketplace."17His disciples remembered that it was written, "Zeal for your house will consume me."

18Then the Jewish authorities responded and said to him, "What sign will you show us, since you are doing these things?"19Jesus replied, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up."20Then the Jewish authorities said, "This temple was built in forty-six years, and you will raise it up in three days?"21However, he was speaking about the temple of his body.22After he was raised from the dead, his disciples remembered that he said this, and they believed the scripture and this statement that Jesus had spoken.

23Now when he was in Jerusalem at the Passover festival, many believed in his name when they saw the signs that he did.24But Jesus did not trust in them because he knew them all,25because he did not need anyone to testify to him about man, for he knew what was in man.

#### John 2:1

##### Three days later

Most interpreters read this as on the third day after Jesus called Philip and Nathaniel to follow him.

#### John 2:2

##### Jesus and his disciples were invited to the wedding

"Someone invited Jesus and his disciples to the wedding"

#### John 2:4

##### Woman

This refers to Mary. If it is impolite for a son to call his mother "woman" in your language, use another word that is polite, or leave it out.

##### why do you come to me?

"this has nothing to do with me." or "you should not tell me what to do."

##### My time has not yet come

"It is not yet the right time for me to perform a mighty act"

#### John 2:6

##### two to three metretes

"75 to 115 liters"

#### John 2:7

##### to the brim

This means "to the very top" or "completely full."

#### John 2:8

##### the head waiter

This refers to the person in charge of the food and drink.

#### John 2:10

##### drunk

unable to tell the difference between cheap wine and expensive wine because of drinking too much alcohol

#### John 2:11

##### Cana

This is a place name.

##### revealed his glory

"showed his power"

#### John 2:12

##### went down

This indicates that they went from a higher place to a lower place. Capernaum is northeast of Cana and is at a lower elevation.

##### his brothers

The word "brothers" includes both brothers and sisters. All Jesus's brothers and sisters were younger than he was.

#### John 2:13

##### went up to Jerusalem

This indicates that he went from a lower place to a higher place. Jerusalem is built on a hill.

#### John 2:14

##### were sitting there

The next verse makes it clear that these people are in the temple courtyard. That area was intended for worship and not for commerce.

##### sellers of oxen and sheep and pigeons

People are buying animals in the temple courtyard to sacrifice them to God.

##### money changers

Jewish authorities required people who wanted to buy animals for sacrifices to exchange their money for special money from the "money changers."

#### John 2:15

##### So

This word marks an event that happens because of something else that has happened first. In this case, Jesus has seen the money changers sitting in the temple.

#### John 2:16

##### Stop making the house of my Father a marketplace

"Stop buying and selling things in my Father's house"

##### the house of my Father

This is a phrase Jesus uses to refer to the temple.

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 2:17

##### your house

This term refers to the temple, God's house.

##### consume

Jesus's love for the temple is like a fire that burns within him.

#### John 2:18

##### sign

This refers to an event that proves something is true.

##### these things

This refers to Jesus's actions against the money changers in the temple.

#### John 2:19

##### Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up

"If you destroy this temple, I will rebuild it in three days"

#### John 2:20

##### you will raise it up in three days?

"you will rebuild it in three days?" or "you cannot possibly rebuild it in three days!"

#### John 2:23

##### Now when he was in Jerusalem

The word "now" introduces us to a new event in the story.

##### believed in his name

"believed in him" or "trusted in him"

##### the signs that he did

Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.

#### John 2:25

##### about man, for he knew what was in man

"about people, for he knew what was in people"

Chapter 3

1Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader.2This man came to Jesus at night and said to him, "Rabbi, we know that you are a teacher that came from God, for no one can do these signs that you do unless God is with him."3Jesus replied to him, "Truly, truly, unless someone is born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God."

4Nicodemus said to him, "How can a man be born when he is old? He cannot enter a second time into his mother's womb and be born, can he?"5Jesus replied, "Truly, truly, unless someone is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.6That which is born of the flesh is flesh, and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit.7Do not be amazed that I said to you, 'You must be born again.'8The wind blows wherever it wishes; you hear its sound, but you do not know where it comes from or where it is going. So is everyone who is born of the Spirit."

9Nicodemus replied and said to him, "How can these things be?"10Jesus answered and said to him, "Are you a teacher of Israel, and yet you do not understand these things?11Truly, truly, I say to you, we speak what we know, and we testify about what we have seen. Yet you do not accept our testimony.12If I told you about earthly things and you do not believe, how will you believe if I tell you about heavenly things?13No one has ascended into heaven except he who descended from heaven—the Son of Man.14Just as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up,15so that all who believe in him may have eternal life.

16"For God so loved the world, that he gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him will not perish but have eternal life.17For God did not send the Son into the world in order to condemn the world, but in order to save the world through him.18He who believes in him is not condemned, but he who does not believe is already condemned because he has not believed in the name of the only Son of God.19This is the reason for the judgment: The light has come into the world, and men loved the darkness rather than the light because their deeds were evil.20For everyone who does evil hates the light, and does not come to the light, so that his deeds will not be exposed.21However, he who practices the truth comes to the light so that it may be plainly seen that his deeds have been done in God."

22After this, Jesus and his disciples went into the land of Judea. There he spent some time with them and baptized.23Now John was also baptizing in Aenon near to Salim because there was much water there. People were coming to him and were being baptized,24for John had not yet been thrown in prison.

25Then there arose a dispute between some of John's disciples and a Jew about ceremonial washing.26They went to John and said to him, "Rabbi, the one who was with you on the other side of the Jordan River, about whom you have testified, look, he is baptizing, and they are all going to him."

27John replied, "A man cannot receive anything unless it has been given to him from heaven.28You yourselves can testify that I said, 'I am not the Christ,' but instead, 'I have been sent before him.'29The bride belongs to the bridegroom. Now the friend of the bridegroom, who stands and hears him, rejoices greatly because of the voice of the bridegroom. This, then, is my joy made complete.30He must increase, but I must decrease.

31"He who comes from above is above all. He who is from the earth is from the earth and speaks about the earth. He who comes from heaven is above all.32He testifies about what he has seen and heard, but no one accepts his testimony.33He who has received his testimony has confirmed that God is true.34For the one whom God has sent speaks the words of God. For he does not give the Spirit by measure.35The Father loves the Son and has given all things into his hand.36He who believes in the Son has eternal life, but the one who disobeys the Son will not see life, but the wrath of God stays on him."

#### John 3:1

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story and to introduce Nicodemus.

#### John 3:3

##### Truly, truly

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true. See how you translated this in John 1:51

##### born again

"born from above" or "born of God"

##### he cannot see the kingdom of God

Possible meanings of seeing the kingdom of God are 1) seeing the place God rules over or 2) knowing what God's kingdom is like or 3) belonging to the kingdom of God.

#### John 3:4

##### How can a man be born when he is old?

"A man certainly cannot be born again when he is old!"

##### He cannot enter a second time into his mother's womb and be born, can he?

"Certainly, he cannot enter a second time into his mother's womb!

##### womb

the part of a woman's body where a baby grows

#### John 3:5

##### born of water and the Spirit

There are two possible meanings: 1) "baptized in water and in the Spirit" or 2) "born physically and spiritually"

##### he cannot enter into the kingdom of God

"he cannot belong to the kingdom of God"

#### John 3:8

##### The wind blows wherever it wishes

"The Holy Spirit is like a wind that blows wherever it wants"

#### John 3:9

##### How can these things be?

"This cannot be!" or "This is not able to happen!"

#### John 3:10

##### Are you a teacher of Israel, and yet you do not understand these things?

"You are a teacher of Israel, so I am surprised you do not understand these things!" or "You are a teacher of Israel, so you should understand these things!"

#### John 3:11

##### you do not accept

The word "you" is plural and refers either the Pharisees or to the Jewish leaders or to the Jews in general.

##### we speak

When Jesus said "we," he was not including Nicodemus.

#### John 3:12

##### I told you ... you do not believe ... how will you believe if I tell you

In all three places "you" is plural and refers to Jews in general.

##### how will you believe if I tell you about heavenly things?

"you certainly will not believe if I tell you about spiritual things!"

#### John 3:13

##### No one has ascended into heaven except he who descended from heaven

"The only one who has ascended into heaven is he who descended from heaven"

#### John 3:14

##### Just as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up

Some people will "lift up" Jesus just as Moses "lifted up" the bronze serpent in the place where Moses and the Israelites walked around for forty years.

#### John 3:16

##### God so loved the world

Here "world" refers to everyone in the world.

##### loved

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

#### John 3:17

##### For God did not send the Son into the world in order to condemn the world, but in order to save the world through him

God""'s real reason for sending his Son into the world was to save it"

##### to condemn

"to punish." Usually "punish" implies that the person who has been punished is then accepted by God. When a person is condemned, he is punished but never accepted by God.

#### John 3:18

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### John 3:19

##### The light has come into the world

"The one who is like a light has revealed God's truth to all people" or "I, who am like a light, have come into the world"

##### men loved the darkness

Here "darkness" means evil.

#### John 3:20

##### so that his deeds will not be exposed

"so that the light will not show the things he does" or "so that the light does not make clear his deeds"

#### John 3:21

##### plainly seen that his deeds

"people may clearly see his deeds" or "everyone may clearly see the things he does"

#### John 3:22

##### After this

This refers to after Jesus had spoken with Nicodemus.

#### John 3:23

##### Aenon

This word means "springs," as of water.

##### Salim

a village or town next to the Jordan River

##### were being baptized

"John was baptizing them" or "he was baptizing them"

#### John 3:25

##### Then there arose a dispute between some of John's disciples and a Jew

"Then John's disciples and a Jew began to fight with each other using words"

#### John 3:26

##### you have testified, look, he is baptizing,

"you have testified, 'Look! He is baptizing,'" or "you have testified. 'Look at that! He is baptizing,'"

#### John 3:27

##### A man cannot receive anything unless

"Nobody has any power unless"

##### it has been given to him from heaven

"God has given it to him"

#### John 3:28

##### You yourselves

"You all" or "All of you"

##### I have been sent before him

"God sent me to arrive before him"

#### John 3:29

##### The bride belongs to the bridegroom

Jesus is like the "bridegroom" and John is like the friend of the "bridegroom."

##### This, then, is my joy made complete

"So then I rejoice greatly" or "So I rejoice much"

##### my joy

The word "my" refers to John the Baptist, the one who is speaking.

#### John 3:30

##### He must increase

"He" refers to the bridegroom, Jesus, who will continue to grow in importance.

#### John 3:31

##### He who comes from above is above all

"He who comes from heaven is more important than anyone else"

##### He who is from the earth is from the earth and speaks about the earth

"He who is born in this world is like everyone else who lives in the world and he speaks about what happens in this world"

#### John 3:32

##### He testifies about what he has seen and heard

"The one from heaven tells about what he has seen and heard in heaven"

##### no one accepts his testimony

"very few people believe him"

#### John 3:33

##### He who has received his testimony

"Anyone who believes what Jesus says"

##### has confirmed

"proves" or "agrees"

#### John 3:34

##### For the one whom God has sent speaks

"This Jesus, whom God has sent to represent him, speaks"

##### For he does not give the Spirit by measure

"For he is the one to whom God gave all the power of his Spirit"

#### John 3:35

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### given ... into his hand

This means to be put in his power or control.

#### John 3:36

##### He who believes

"A person who believes" or "Anyone who believes"

##### the wrath of God stays on him

"God will continue to punish him"

Chapter 4

1Now when Jesus knew that the Pharisees had heard that he was making and baptizing more disciples than John2(although Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were),3he left Judea and went back again to Galilee.4But it was necessary for him to go through Samaria.5So he came to a town of Samaria, called Sychar, near the piece of land that Jacob had given to his son Joseph.6The well of Jacob was there. Jesus was tired from his journey and sat by the well. It was about the sixth hour.

7A Samaritan woman came to draw water, and Jesus said to her, "Give me some water to drink."8For his disciples had gone away into the town to buy food.

9Then the Samaritan woman said to him, "How is it that you, being a Jew, are asking me, being a Samaritan woman, for something to drink?" For Jews have no dealings with Samaritans.

10Jesus answered and said to her, "If you had known the gift of God, and who it is that is saying to you, 'Give me a drink,' you would have asked him, and he would have given you living water."

11The woman said to him, "Sir, you do not have a bucket and the well is deep. Where then do you have the living water?12You are not greater, are you, than our father Jacob, who gave us the well and drank from it himself, as did his sons and his livestock?"

13Jesus replied and said to her, "Everyone who drinks from this water will be thirsty again,14but whoever drinks from the water that I will give him will not ever be thirsty again. Instead, the water that I will give him will become a fountain of water in him, springing up to eternal life."

15The woman said to him, "Sir, give me this water so that I may not become thirsty and not have to come here to draw water."

16Jesus said to her, "Go, call your husband, and come back here."

17The woman answered and said to him, "I do not have a husband."

Jesus replied, "You have said correctly, 'I have no husband,'18for you have had five husbands, and the one you now have is not your husband. What you have said is true."

19The woman said to him, "Sir, I see that you are a prophet.20Our fathers worshiped on this mountain, but you say that Jerusalem is the place where people have to worship."

21Jesus said to her, "Believe me, woman, that an hour is coming when you will worship the Father neither on this mountain nor in Jerusalem.22You worship what you do not know. We worship what we know, for salvation is from the Jews.23However, the hour is coming, and is now here, when true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth, for the Father is seeking such people to be his worshipers.24God is Spirit, and the people who worship him must worship in spirit and truth."

25The woman said to him, "I know that the Messiah is coming (the one called Christ). When he comes, he will explain everything to us."

26Jesus said to her, "I am he, the one speaking to you."

27At that moment his disciples returned. Now they were wondering why he was speaking with a woman, but no one said, "What are you looking for?" or "Why are you speaking with her?"

28So the woman left her water pot, went back to the town, and said to the people,29"Come, see a man who told me everything that I have ever done. This could not be the Christ, could it?"30They left the town and came to him.

31In the meantime, the disciples were urging him, saying, "Rabbi, eat."32But he said to them, "I have food to eat that you do not know about."33So the disciples said to each other, "No one has brought him anything to eat, have they?"

34Jesus said to them, "My food is to do the will of him who sent me and to complete his work.35Do you not say, 'There are four more months and then the harvest comes'? I am saying to you, look up and see the fields, for they are already ripe for harvest!36He who is harvesting receives wages and gathers fruit for everlasting life, so that he who sows and he who reaps may rejoice together.37For in this the saying, 'One sows, and another reaps,' is true.38I sent you to reap what you have not worked for. Others have labored, and you have entered into their labor."

39Many of the Samaritans in that city believed in him because of the report of the woman who was testifying, "He told me everything that I have done."40So when the Samaritans came to him, they asked him to stay with them, and he stayed there two days.41Many more believed because of his word.42They said to the woman, "We no longer believe because of what you said, for we ourselves have heard, and we know that this one is indeed the Savior of the world."

43After those two days, he departed from there for Galilee.44For Jesus himself declared that a prophet has no honor in his own country.45When he came into Galilee, the Galileans welcomed him. They had seen all the things that he had done in Jerusalem at the festival, for they had also gone to the festival.

46Now he came again to Cana in Galilee, where he had made the water wine. There was a certain royal official whose son in Capernaum was ill.47When he heard that Jesus had come from Judea to Galilee, he went to Jesus and asked him to come down and heal his son, who was about to die.48Jesus then said to him, "Unless you see signs and wonders, you will not believe."49The royal official said to him, "Sir, come down before my child dies."50Jesus said to him, "Go. Your son lives." The man believed the word that Jesus spoke to him, and he went away.51While he was going down, his servants met him, saying that his son was living.52So he asked them the hour when he began to improve. They replied to him, "Yesterday at the seventh hour the fever left him."53Then the father realized that it was at that hour that Jesus had said to him, "Your son lives." So he himself and his whole household believed.54This was the second sign that Jesus did when he came out of Judea to Galilee.

#### John 4:1

##### Now when Jesus knew that the Pharisees had heard that he was making and baptizing more disciples than John

"Now Jesus was making and baptizing more disciples than John. When he knew that the Pharisees had heard that he was doing this"

#### John 4:2

##### Jesus himself was not baptizing

It was not Jesus who was baptizing, but his disciples.

#### John 4:3

##### he left Judea and went back again to Galilee

When Jesus knew that the Pharisees learned what he was doing, he left Judea and went back again to Galilee"

#### John 4:8

##### For his disciples had gone

He did not ask his disciples to draw water for him because they had gone.

#### John 4:9

##### Then the Samaritan woman said to him

The word "him" refers to Jesus.

##### How is it that you, being a Jew, are asking me, being a Samaritan woman, for something to drink?

"I cannot believe that you, being a Jew, are asking me, a Samaritan woman, for a drink!"

##### have no dealings with

"do not associate with"

#### John 4:10

##### living water

“Living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit, who works in a person to transform and bring new life.

#### John 4:12

##### You are not greater, are you, than our father Jacob ... livestock?

You are not greater than our father Jacob ... livestock!"

##### our father Jacob

"our ancestor Jacob"

##### drank from it

"drank water that came from it"

#### John 4:13

##### will be thirsty again

"will need to drink water again"

#### John 4:14

##### the water that I will give him will become a fountain of water in him

"the water that I will give him will become like a spring of water in him"

##### eternal life

Here "life" refers to the "spiritual life" that only God can give.

#### John 4:15

##### Sir

In this context, the Samaritan woman is addressing Jesus as "Sir," which is a term of respect or politeness.

##### draw water

"get water" or "pull water up from the well" using a container and rope

#### John 4:17

##### You have said correctly

Jesus is acknowledging that what she had said was strictly true but was hiding a fact about her that she expected Jesus to disapprove of. He was saying neither that it was a good thing that she had no husband nor that her answer showed that she was morally good.

#### John 4:18

##### What you have said is true

Jesus said this to emphasize the words "You are right in saying, 'I have no husband'" in verse 17. He wanted the woman to know that he knew she was telling the truth.

#### John 4:19

##### I see that you are a prophet

"I can understand that you are a prophet"

#### John 4:20

##### Our fathers

"Our forefathers" or "Our ancestors"

#### John 4:21

##### Believe me

To believe someone is to acknowledge what the person has said is true.

##### you will worship the Father

Eternal salvation from sin comes from God the Father, who is Yahweh, the God of the Jews.

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 4:22

##### You worship what you do not know. We worship what we know

Jesus means that God revealed himself and his commands to the Jewish people, not to the Samaritans. Through the Scriptures the Jewish people know who God is better than the Samaritans.

##### salvation is from the Jews

Eternal salvation from sin comes from God the Father, who is Yahweh, the God of the Jews.

#### John 4:23

##### However, the hour is coming, and is now here, when true worshipers will

"However, it is now the right time for true worshipers to"

##### the Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### in spirit and truth

"with the Spirit's help in thinking correctly of what is true about God"

#### John 4:25

##### I know that the Messiah ... Christ

Both of these words mean "God's promised king."

##### he will explain everything to us

"he will tell us everything we need to know"

#### John 4:27

##### Now they were wondering why he was speaking with a woman

It was very unusual for a Jew to speak with a woman he did not know, especially if that woman was a Samaritan.

##### no one said, "What ... looking for?" or "Why ... her?"

Possible meanings are 1) "no one asked Jesus, 'What ... looking for?' or 'Why ... her?'" or 2) "no one asked the woman, 'What ... looking for?' or asked Jesus, 'Why ... her?'"

#### John 4:29

##### Come, see a man who told me everything that I have ever done

"Come see a man who knows very much about me, even though I have never met him before"

##### This could not be the Christ, could it?

The woman is not sure that Jesus is the Christ, so she asks a question that expects "no" for an answer, but she also asks a question instead of making a statement because she wants the people to decide for themselves.

#### John 4:31

##### In the meantime

"While the woman was going into town"

#### John 4:32

##### I have food to eat that you do not know about

Here Jesus is not talking about literal "food," but is preparing his disciples for a spiritual lesson in John 4:34.

#### John 4:33

##### No one has brought him anything to eat, have they?

"Surely no one brought him any food while we were in town!"

#### John 4:34

##### My food is to do the will of him who sent me and to complete his work

"Just as food satisfies a hungry person, obeying God's will is what satisfies me"

#### John 4:35

##### Do you not say

"Is this not one of your popular sayings"

##### look up and see the fields, for they are already ripe for harvest

"look up and see the the people! They are ready to believe my message, like crops in the fields that are ready for people to harvest them"

#### John 4:36

##### and gathers fruit for everlasting life

"and the people who believe the message and receive eternal life are like the fruit that a harvester gathers"

#### John 4:37

##### One sows, and another reaps

"One person plants the seeds, and another person reaps the crops"

#### John 4:38

##### you have entered into their labor

"you are now joining in their work"

#### John 4:39

##### believed in him

To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. Here this also means that they believed he was the Son of God.

##### He told me everything that I have done

"He told me many things about my life"

#### John 4:41

##### his word

"his message"

#### John 4:42

##### world

"all the believers in the world"

#### John 4:44

##### a prophet has no honor in his own country

"people do not show respect or honor to a prophet of their own country" or "a prophet is not respected by the people in his own community"

#### John 4:45

##### at the festival

Here the festival is the Passover.

#### John 4:46

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here the author starts a new part of the story. If you have a way of doing this in your language, you may consider using it.

##### royal official

someone who is in the service of the king

#### John 4:48

##### Unless you see signs and wonders, you will not believe

"You will believe only if you see a signs and wonders"

#### John 4:50

##### believed the word

"believed the message"

#### John 4:51

##### While

This word is used to mark two events that are happening at the same time. As the official was going home, his servants were coming to meet him on the road.

#### John 4:54

##### sign

Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.

Chapter 5

1After this there was a Jewish festival, and Jesus went up to Jerusalem.2Now in Jerusalem by the sheep gate there is a pool, which in the Aramaic language is called Bethesda, and it has five roofed porches.3A large number of people who were sick, blind, lame, or paralyzed were lying there. [1](#footnote-target-1)4[2](#footnote-target-2)5A certain man was there who had been sick for thirty-eight years.6When Jesus saw him lying there, and after he realized that he had been there a long time, he said to him, "Do you want to be healthy?"7The sick man replied, "Sir, I do not have anyone to put me into the pool when the water is stirred up. When I come, another steps down before me."8Jesus said to him, "Get up, take up your bed, and walk."9Immediately the man was healed, and he took up his bed and walked.

Now that day was a Sabbath.10So the Jews said to him who was healed, "It is the Sabbath and you are not permitted to carry your mat."11He replied, "He who made me healthy said to me, 'Pick up your mat and walk.'"12They asked him, "Who is the man that said to you, 'Pick it up and walk'?"13However, the one who was healed did not know who it was because Jesus had gone away secretly, for there was a crowd in the place.

14Afterward, Jesus found him in the temple and said to him, "See, you have become healthy! Do not sin anymore, so that something worse will not happen to you."15The man went away and reported to the Jews that it was Jesus who had made him healthy.

16Now because of these things the Jews persecuted Jesus, because he did these things on the Sabbath.17Jesus replied to them, "My Father is working even now, and I, too, am working."18Because of this, the Jews sought even more to kill him because he not only broke the Sabbath, but also called God his own Father, making himself equal to God.

19Jesus answered them, "Truly, truly, the Son can do nothing of himself, except only what he sees the Father doing, for whatever the Father is doing, the Son does in the same way.20For the Father loves the Son and he shows him everything that he himself does, and he will show him greater works than these so that you will be amazed.21For as the Father raises the dead and gives them life, so also the Son gives life to anyone he wishes.22For the Father judges no one, but he has given all judgment to the Son23so that everyone will honor the Son just as they honor the Father. The one who does not honor the Son does not honor the Father who sent him.24Truly, truly, he who hears my word and believes him who sent me has eternal life and will not be condemned, but he has passed from death to life.

25"Truly, truly, I tell you the time is coming, and is now, when the dead will hear the voice of the Son of God, and those who hear will live.26For just as the Father has life in himself, so he has also given to the Son so that he has life in himself,27and the Father has given the Son authority to carry out judgment because he is the Son of Man.28Do not be amazed at this, for there is a time coming in which everyone who is in the tombs will hear his voice29and will come out: those who have done good to the resurrection of life, and those who have done evil to the resurrection of judgment.

30"I can do nothing from myself. As I hear, I judge, and my judgment is righteous because I am not seeking my own will but the will of him who sent me.31If I should testify about myself, my testimony would not be true.32There is another who testifies about me, and I know that the testimony that he gives about me is true.33You have sent to John, and he has testified to the truth.34But the testimony that I receive is not from man. I say these things that you might be saved.35John was a lamp that was burning and shining, and you were willing to rejoice in his light for a while.36Yet the testimony that I have is greater than that of John, for the works that the Father has given me to accomplish, the very works that I do, testify about me that the Father has sent me.37The Father who sent me has himself testified about me. You have neither heard his voice nor seen his form at any time.38You do not have his word remaining in you, for you are not believing in the one whom he has sent.39You search the scriptures because you think that in them you have eternal life, and these same scriptures testify about me,40and you are not willing to come to me so that you may have life.41I do not receive glory from men,42but I know that you do not have the love of God in yourselves.43I have come in my Father's name, and you do not receive me. If another should come in his own name, you would receive him.44How can you believe, you who accept glory from one another but are not seeking the glory that comes from the only God?45Do not think that I myself will accuse you before the Father. The one who accuses you is Moses, in whom you have hoped.46If you believed Moses, you would believe me, because he wrote about me.47If you do not believe his writings, how are you going to believe my words?"

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have the phrase, waiting for the moving of the water . [2](#footnote-caller-2)The best ancient copies do not have verse 4, For an angel of the Lord went down and stirred up the water at certain times and whoever stepped in while the water was stirring was healed from whatever disease he suffered from .

#### John 5:1

##### there was a Jewish festival

"the Jews were celebrating a festival"

##### went up to Jerusalem

Jerusalem is located on the top of a hill. Roads to Jerusalem went up and down smaller hills. If your language has a different word for going up a hill than for walking on level ground, you may use it here.

#### John 5:2

##### pool

This was a hole in the ground that people filled with water. Sometimes they lined the pools with tiles or other stonework.

##### Bethesda

a place name

##### roofed porches

roofed structures with at least one wall missing and attached to buildings

#### John 5:6

##### he realized

"he understood" or "he found out"

##### he said to him

"Jesus said to the paralyzed man"

#### John 5:7

##### Sir, I do not have

Here the word "sir" is a polite form of address.

##### when the water is stirred up

"when the angel moves the water"

##### another steps down before me

"someone else always goes down the steps into the water before me"

#### John 5:8

##### Get up

"Stand up"

##### take up your bed, and walk

"pick up your sleeping mat, and walk"

#### John 5:9

##### the man was healed

"the man became healthy again"

#### John 5:10

##### So the Jews said to him

The Jews (especially the leaders of the Jews) became angry when they saw the man carrying his mat on the Sabbath because it is God's day of rest.

#### John 5:11

##### He who made me healthy

"The man who made me well"

#### John 5:12

##### They asked him

"The Jewish leaders asked the man who was healed"

#### John 5:14

##### Jesus found him

"Jesus found the man he had healed"

#### John 5:16

##### the Jews

"the Jewish leaders"

#### John 5:17

##### is working

This refers to doing labor, including anything that is done to serve other people.

##### My Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 5:18

##### making himself equal to God

"saying that he was like God" or "saying that he had as much authority as God"

#### John 5:19

##### Truly, truly

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true. See how you translated this in John 1:51.

##### whatever the Father is doing, the Son does in the same way

Jesus, as the Son of God, followed and obeyed his Father's leadership on earth, because Jesus knew the Father loved him.

##### Son ... Father

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### John 5:20

##### you will be amazed

"you will be surprised" or "you will be shocked"

##### loves

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

#### John 5:21

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

##### life

This refers to "spiritual life."

#### John 5:22

##### For the Father judges no one, but he has given all judgment to the Son

The word "for" marks a comparison. The Son of God carries out judgment for God the Father.

#### John 5:23

##### honor the Son just as ... the Father. The one who does not honor the Son does not honor the Father

God the Son must be honored and worshiped just like God the Father. If we fail to honor God the Son, then we also fail to honor God the Father.

#### John 5:24

##### he who hears my word

"anyone who hears my message"

##### will not be condemned

"he will not receive condemnation" or "God will not condemn him"

#### John 5:25

##### the dead will hear the voice of the Son of God, and those who hear will live

The voice of Jesus, the Son of God, will raise dead people from the grave.

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### John 5:26

##### For just as the Father has life in himself, so he has also given to the Son so that he has life in himself

The word "For" marks a comparison. The Son of God has the power to give life, just as the Father does.

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### life

This means spiritual life.

#### John 5:27

##### Father ... Son of Man

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### the Father has given the Son authority to carry out judgment

The Son of God has the authority of God the Father to judge.

#### John 5:28

##### Do not be amazed at this

"This" refers to the fact that Jesus, as the Son of Man, has the power to give eternal life and to carry out judgment.

##### hear his voice

"hear my voice"

#### John 5:29

##### to the resurrection of life

"will rise to live" or "will rise and live"

##### to the resurrection of judgment

"will rise to be judged" or "will rise and be judged"

#### John 5:30

##### the will of him who sent me

The word "him" refers to God the Father.

#### John 5:32

##### There is another who testifies about me

"There is someone else who tells people about me"

##### the testimony that he gives about me is true

"what he tells people about me is true"

#### John 5:34

##### the testimony that I receive is not from man

"I do not need people's testimony"

##### that you might be saved

"so God can save you"

#### John 5:35

##### John was a lamp that was burning and shining, and you were willing to rejoice in his light for a while

"John taught you about God and this was like a lamp shining its light. And for a while what John said made you happy"

#### John 5:36

##### the works that the Father has given me to accomplish ... that the Father has sent me

God the Father has sent God the Son, Jesus, to earth. Jesus completes what the Father gives him to do.

##### the very works that I do, testify about me that the Father has sent me

"what I do, shows the people that God has sent me"

#### John 5:37

##### The Father who sent me has himself testified

This emphasizes that it is the Father, not someone less important, who has testified.

#### John 5:38

##### You do not have his word remaining in you

"You do not live according to his word" or "You do not obey his word"

#### John 5:39

##### in them you have eternal life

"you will find eternal life if you read them" or "the scriptures will tell you how you can have eternal life"

#### John 5:40

##### you are not willing to come to me

"you refuse to believe my message"

#### John 5:41

##### receive glory

"accept praise"

#### John 5:42

##### you do not have the love of God in yourselves

This can mean 1) "you really do not love God" or 2) "you have really not received God's love."

#### John 5:43

##### in my Father's name

"with my Father's authority"

##### receive

welcome as a friend

##### If another should come in his own name

"If another should come in his own authority"

#### John 5:44

##### How can you believe, you who accept glory ... God?

"There is no way you can believe because you accept glory ... God!"

##### believe

This means to trust in Jesus.

##### accept glory ... seeking the glory

"accept praise ... seeking the praise"

#### John 5:45

##### in whom you have hoped

"whom you expect to help you" or "whom you trust to defend you before the Father you"

#### John 5:47

##### If you do not believe his writings, how are you going to believe my words?

"You do not believe his writings, so you will never believe what I say"

Chapter 6

1After these things, Jesus went away to the other side of the Sea of Galilee, also called the Sea of Tiberias.2A great crowd was following him because they saw the signs that he was doing on those who were sick.3Jesus went up the mountain and there he sat down with his disciples.4(Now the Passover, the Jewish festival, was near.)5When Jesus looked up and saw a great crowd coming to him, he said to Philip, "Where are we going to buy bread so that these may eat?"6(But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do.)7Philip answered him, "Two hundred denarii worth of bread would not be sufficient for each one to have even a little."8One of the disciples, Andrew, the brother of Simon Peter, said to Jesus,9"There is a boy here who has five loaves of barley bread and two fish, but what are these among so many?"10Jesus said, "Make the people sit down." Now there was much grass in the place. So the men sat down, about five thousand in number.11Then Jesus took the loaves and after giving thanks, he gave it to those who were sitting. He did the same with the fish, as much as they wanted.12When the people were filled, he said to his disciples, "Gather up the broken pieces which remain, so that nothing will be lost."13So they gathered them up and filled twelve baskets with broken pieces from the five barley loaves left over by those who had eaten.14Then, when the people saw this sign that he did, they said, "This truly is the prophet who is to come into the world."15When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself.

16When it became evening, his disciples went down to the sea.17They got into a boat, and were going over the sea to Capernaum. It was dark by this time, and Jesus had not yet come to them.18A strong wind was blowing, and the sea was getting rough.19When they had rowed about twenty-five or thirty stadia, they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat, and they were afraid.20But he said to them, "It is I! Do not be afraid."21Then they were willing to receive him into the boat, and immediately the boat reached the land where they were going.

22The next day, the crowd that had been standing on the other side of the sea saw that there was no other boat there except the one, and that Jesus had not entered it with his disciples but that his disciples had gone away alone.23However, there were some boats that came from Tiberias close to the place where they had eaten the bread loaves after the Lord had given thanks.24When the crowd discovered that neither Jesus nor his disciples were there, they themselves got into the boats and went to Capernaum seeking Jesus.25After they found him on the other side of the sea, they said to him, "Rabbi, when did you come here?"26Jesus replied to them, saying, "Truly, truly, you seek me, not because you saw signs, but because you ate some of the bread loaves and were filled.27Do not labor for the food that perishes, but labor for the food that endures to eternal life which the Son of Man will give you, for God the Father has set his seal on him."28Then they said to him, "What must we do, so that we may do the works of God?"29Jesus replied and said to them, "This is the work of God: That you believe in the one whom he has sent."30So they said to him, "What sign then will you do, so that we may see and believe you? What will you do?31Our fathers ate the manna in the wilderness, as it is written, 'He gave them bread from heaven to eat.'"32Then Jesus replied to them, "Truly, truly, it was not Moses who gave you the bread out of heaven, but it is my Father who is giving you the true bread from heaven.33For the bread of God is that which comes down from heaven and gives life to the world."34So they said to him, "Sir, give us this bread always."35Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.36But I told you that indeed you have seen me, and you do not believe.37Everyone whom the Father gives me will come to me, and he who comes to me I will certainly not throw out.38For I have come down from heaven, not to do my own will, but the will of him who sent me.39This is the will of him who sent me, that I would lose not one of all those whom he has given me, but will raise them up on the last day.40For this is the will of my Father, that everyone who sees the Son and believes in him will have eternal life and I will raise him up on the last day."

41Then the Jews grumbled about him because he had said, "I am the bread that has come down from heaven."42They said, "Is not this Jesus son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know? How then does he now say, 'I have come down from heaven'?"43Jesus replied and said to them, "Stop grumbling among yourselves.44No one can come to me unless the Father who sent me draws him, and I will raise him up on the last day.45It is written in the prophets, 'Everyone will be taught by God.' Everyone who has heard and learned from the Father comes to me.46Not that anyone has seen the Father, except he who is from God—he has seen the Father.47Truly, truly, he who believes has eternal life.48I am the bread of life.49Your fathers ate the manna in the wilderness, and they died.50This is the bread which comes down from heaven, so that a person may eat some of it and not die.51I am the living bread that came down from heaven. If anyone eats some of this bread, he will live forever. The bread that I will give is my flesh for the life of the world."

52The Jews became angry among themselves and began to argue, saying, "How can this man give us his flesh to eat?"53Then Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you will not have life in yourselves.54Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood has everlasting life, and I will raise him up at the last day.55For my flesh is true food, and my blood is true drink.56He who eats my flesh and drinks my blood remains in me, and I in him.57As the living Father sent me, and as I live because of the Father, so he who eats me, he will also live because of me.58This is the bread that has come down from heaven, not as the fathers ate and died. He who eats this bread will live forever."59But Jesus said these things in the synagogue while he was teaching in Capernaum.

60Then many of his disciples who heard this said, "This is a difficult saying; who can hear it?"61Jesus, because he knew in himself that his disciples were grumbling at this, said to them, "Does this offend you?62Then what if you should see the Son of Man going up to where he was before?63It is the Spirit who makes alive; the flesh profits nothing. The words that I have spoken to you are spirit, and they are life.64Yet there are some of you who do not believe." For Jesus knew from the beginning who were the ones that would not believe and who it was who would betray him.65He said, "It is because of this that I said to you that no one can come to me unless it is granted to him by the Father."

66Because of this, many of his disciples went away and no longer walked with him.67Then Jesus said to the twelve, "You do not want to go away also, do you?"68Simon Peter answered him, "Lord, to whom would we go? You have words of eternal life,69and we have believed and come to know that you are the Holy One of God." [1](#footnote-target-1)70Jesus said to them, "Did not I choose you, the twelve, and one of you is a devil?"71Now he spoke of Judas son of Simon Iscariot, for it was he, one of the twelve, who would betray Jesus.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The phrase the Holy One of God is in the best ancient copies. Some later copies add an additional description and they read: the Christ, the Holy One of God .

#### John 6:1

##### After these things

The phrase "these things" refers to the events in John 5:1-46 and introduces the event that follows.

##### Jesus went away

"Jesus traveled by boat with his disciples"

#### John 6:2

##### signs

This refers to the miracles that are used as evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over everything.

#### John 6:4

##### Now the Passover, the Jewish festival, was near

John briefly stops telling about the events in the story in order to give background information about when the events happened.

#### John 6:6

##### But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do

John briefly stops telling about the events in the story in order to explain why Jesus asked Philip where to buy bread.

##### for he himself knew

Jesus knew what he would do.

#### John 6:7

##### Two hundred denarii worth of bread

"The amount of bread that costs two hundred days' wages"

#### John 6:9

##### what are these among so many?

"these few loaves and fishes are not enough to feed so many people!"

#### John 6:10

##### So the men sat down, about five thousand in number

While the crowd probably included women and children in John 6:4-5, here John is counting only the men.

#### John 6:11

##### giving thanks

Jesus prayed to God the Father and thanked him for the fish and the loaves.

##### he gave it

"Jesus and his disciples gave it"

#### John 6:13

##### they gathered

"the disciples gathered"

#### John 6:14

##### this sign

Jesus feeding the 5,000 people with five barley loaves and two fish

##### the prophet

the special prophet who Moses said would come into the world

#### John 6:19

##### they had rowed

Boats usually had two, four, or six people rowing with rowers on each side working together. Your culture may have different ways of making a boat go across a large body of water.

##### about twenty-five or thirty stadia

"about five or six kilometers"

#### John 6:21

##### they were willing to receive him into the boat

"they gladly received him into the boat"

#### John 6:22

##### the sea

"the Sea of Galilee"

##### there was no other boat there except the one

"there was only that one boat there"

#### John 6:23

##### boats that came from Tiberias

The next day, after Jesus fed the people, some boats with people from Tiberius came to see Jesus.

#### John 6:26

##### Truly, truly

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true.

#### John 6:27

##### eternal life which the Son of Man will give you, for God the Father has set his seal on him

God the Father has given his approval to Jesus, the Son of Man, to give eternal life to those who believe in him.

##### Son of Man ... God the Father

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### John 6:31

##### Our fathers

"Our forefathers" or "Our ancestors"

##### heaven

This refers to the place where God lives.

#### John 6:32

##### it is my Father who is giving you the true bread from heaven

"the Father gives to you the Son as the true bread from heaven"

#### John 6:33

##### gives life to the world

"gives spiritual life to the world"

##### the world

Here, the "world" refers to all of the people in the world who trust in Jesus.

#### John 6:35

##### I am the bread of life

"Just as food keeps you alive physically, I can give you spiritual life"

##### believes in

This means to believe that Jesus is the Son of God, to trust him as Savior, and to live in a way that honors him.

#### John 6:37

##### Everyone whom the Father gives me will come to me

God the Father and God the Son will save forever those who believe in Jesus.

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### he who comes to me I will certainly not throw out

"I will keep everyone who comes to me"

#### John 6:38

##### him who sent me

"my Father, who sent me"

#### John 6:39

##### I would lose not one of all those

"I should keep all of them"

##### will raise them up

"will cause them to live again"

#### John 6:41

##### grumbled

talked unhappily

##### I am the bread

"I am the one who is like true bread"

#### John 6:42

##### Is not this Jesus son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know?

"This is just Jesus, the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know!

##### How then does he now say, 'I have come down from heaven'?

"He is lying when he says that he came from heaven!"

#### John 6:44

##### raise him up

"cause him to live again"

##### draws

This can mean 1) "pulls" or 2) "attracts."

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 6:45

##### It is written in the prophets

"The prophets wrote"

##### Everyone who has heard and learned from the Father comes to me

Those who truly learn from God the Father believe in Jesus, who is God the Son.

#### John 6:46

##### Not that anyone has seen the Father, except he who is from God—he has seen the Father

"I am not saying that anyone has seen the Father. Only he who is from God-he has seen the Father"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 6:47

##### he who believes has eternal life

God gives "eternal life" to those who trust in Jesus, the Son of God.

#### John 6:48

##### I am the bread of life

"Just like food that keeps you alive physically, I can give you spiritual life that lasts forever"

#### John 6:49

##### Your fathers

"Your forefathers" or "Your ancestors"

##### died

This refers to physical death.

#### John 6:50

##### This is the bread

"I am like the true bread"

##### not die

"live forever." Here the word "die" refers to spiritual death.

#### John 6:51

##### living bread

This means "the bread that causes people to live"

##### for the life of the world

"that will give life to all the people in the world"

#### John 6:52

##### How can this man give us his flesh to eat?

"There is no way that this man can give us his flesh to eat!"

#### John 6:53

##### eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood

Here, the phrases "eat the flesh" and "drink his blood" shows how trusting in Jesus, the Son of Man, is like receiving spiritual food and drink. However, the Jews did not understand this.

##### you will not have life in yourselves

"you will not receive eternal life"

#### John 6:54

##### raise him up

"cause him to live again"

##### at the last day

"on the day when God judges everyone"

#### John 6:55

##### my flesh is true food ... my blood is true drink

The phrases "true food" and "true drink" means Jesus gives life to those who trust in him. However, the Jews did not understand this.

#### John 6:56

##### remains in me, and I in him

"has a close relationship with me"

#### John 6:57

##### so he who eats me

The phrase "eats me" means to trust Jesus. However, the Jews did not understand this.

##### living Father

Possible meanings are 1) "the Father who gives life" or 2) "the Father who is alive."

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 6:58

##### This is the bread that has come down from heaven

"I am the bread that has come down from heaven"

##### He who eats this bread will live forever

"He who eats me, the bread, will live forever"

##### He who eats this bread

Here "eats this bread" means to trust Jesus. However, the Jews did not understand this.

##### the fathers

"the forefathers" or "the ancestors"

#### John 6:59

##### Jesus said these things in the synagogue ... in Capernaum

Here John gives background information about when this event happened.

#### John 6:60

##### who can hear it?

"no one can understand it!" or "it is too hard to understand!"

#### John 6:61

##### Does this offend you?

"Does this shock you?" or "Does this upset you?"

#### John 6:62

##### Then what if you should see the Son of Man going up to where he was before?

"Then you will not know what to think when you see me, the Son of Man, going up into heaven!"

#### John 6:63

##### profits

The word "profit" means to cause good things to happen.

##### The words that I have spoken to you

"What I have told you"

##### are spirit, and they are life

Possible meanings are 1) "are about the Spirit and eternal life" or 2) "are from the Spirit and give eternal life" or 3) "are about spiritual things and life."

#### John 6:64

##### For Jesus knew from the beginning who were the ones ... who it was who would betray him

Here John gives background information about what Jesus knew would happen.

#### John 6:65

##### no one can come to me unless it is granted to him by the Father

Whoever wants to believe must come to God through the Son. Only God the Father allows people to come to Jesus.

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### come to me

"follow me and receive eternal life"

#### John 6:66

##### no longer walked with him

They no longer wanted to hear what he had to say.

##### his disciples

Here "his disciples" refers to the general group of people who followed Jesus.

#### John 6:67

##### the twelve

"the twelve disciples"

#### John 6:68

##### Lord, to whom would we go?

"Lord, we could never follow anyone but you!"

#### John 6:70

##### Did not I choose you, the twelve, and one of you is a devil?

"I chose you all myself, yet one of you is a servant of Satan!"

Chapter 7

1After these things Jesus traveled about in Galilee, for he did not want to go into Judea because the Jews were seeking to kill him.2Now the Jewish Festival of Shelters was near.3His brothers therefore said to him, "Leave this place and go to Judea, so that your disciples also may see the works that you do.4No one does anything in secret if he himself seeks to be known openly. If you do these things, show yourself to the world."5For even his brothers did not believe in him.6Jesus therefore said to them, "My time has not yet come, but your time is always ready.7The world cannot hate you, but it hates me because I testify about it that its works are evil.8You go up to the festival; I am not going to this festival because my time has not yet been fulfilled."9After he said these things to them, he stayed in Galilee.

10But when his brothers had gone up to the festival, then he also went up, not publicly but in secret.11The Jews were looking for him at the festival and said, "Where is he?"12There was much discussion among the crowds about him. Some said, "He is a good man." Others said, "No, he leads the crowds astray."13Yet no one spoke openly about him for fear of the Jews.

14When the festival was already half over, Jesus went up into the temple and began to teach.15Then the Jews marveled, saying, "How does this man know so much? He has never been educated."16Jesus answered them and said, "My teaching is not mine, but is of him who sent me.17If anyone wishes to do his will, he will know about this teaching, whether it comes from God, or whether I speak from myself.18Whoever speaks from himself seeks his own glory, but whoever seeks the glory of him who sent him, that person is true, and there is no unrighteousness in him.19Did not Moses give you the law? Yet none of you keeps the law. Why do you seek to kill me?"20The crowd answered, "You have a demon. Who seeks to kill you?"21Jesus answered and said to them, "I did one work, and you all marvel because of it.22Moses gave you circumcision (not that it is from Moses, but from the ancestors), and on the Sabbath you circumcise a man.23If a man receives circumcision on the Sabbath so that the law of Moses is not broken, why are you angry with me because I made a man completely healthy on the Sabbath?24Do not judge according to appearance, but judge righteously."

25Some of them from Jerusalem said, "Is not this the one they seek to kill?26See, he speaks openly, and they say nothing to him. It cannot be that the rulers indeed know that this is the Christ, can it?27Yet we know where this one is from. But when the Christ comes, no one will know where he is from."28Then Jesus cried out in the temple, teaching and saying, "You both know me and know where I come from. I have not come of myself, but he who sent me is true, and you do not know him.29I know him because I come from him and he sent me."30They were trying to arrest him, but no one laid a hand on him because his hour had not yet come.31But many in the crowd believed in him, and they said, "When the Christ comes, will he do more signs than what this one has done?"32The Pharisees heard the crowds whispering these things about Jesus, and the chief priests and the Pharisees sent officers to arrest him.33Jesus then said, "I am still with you for a short amount of time, and then I go to him who sent me.34You will seek me but you will not find me; where I go, you will not be able to come."35The Jews therefore said among themselves, "Where will this man go that we will not be able to find him? Will he go to the dispersion among the Greeks and teach the Greeks?36What is this word that he said, 'You will seek me but will not find me; where I go, you will not be able to come'?"

37Now on the last, great day of the festival, Jesus stood and cried out, saying, "If anyone is thirsty, let him come to me and drink.38He who believes in me, just as the scripture says, rivers of living water will flow from his belly."39But he said this about the Spirit, whom those who believed in him would receive; the Spirit had not yet been given because Jesus was not yet glorified.40Some of the crowd, when they heard these words, said, "This is indeed the prophet."41Others said, "This is the Christ." But some said, "Does the Christ come from Galilee?42Have the scriptures not said that the Christ will come from the descendants of David and from Bethlehem, the village where David was?"43So there arose a division in the crowds because of him.44Some of them would have arrested him, but no one laid hands on him.

45Then the officers came back to the chief priests and Pharisees, who said to them, "Why did you not bring him?"46The officers answered, "Never has anyone spoken like this."47So the Pharisees answered them, "Have you also been deceived?48Have any of the rulers believed in him, or any of the Pharisees?49But this crowd that does not know the law, they are cursed."50Nicodemus (one of the Pharisees, who came to him earlier) said to them,51"Does our law judge a man before hearing from him and knowing what he does?"52They answered and said to him, "Are you also from Galilee? Search and see that no prophet comes from Galilee."

53[1](#footnote-target-1) [Then everyone went to his own house.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have John 7:53-8:11.

#### John 7:1

##### After these things

These words tell the reader that the writer will begin talking about a new event. "After he finished speaking with the disciples"

##### the Jews were seeking to kill him

"the Jewish leaders were making plans to kill him"

#### John 7:2

##### Now the Jewish Festival of Shelters was near

"Now the time for the festival of the Jews was near" or "Now it was almost time for the Jewish festival of Shelters"

#### John 7:3

##### brothers

This refers to the actual younger brothers of Jesus, the sons of Mary and Joseph.

##### the works that you do

The word "works" refers to the miracles that Jesus had performed.

#### John 7:4

##### the world

"all people" or "everyone"

#### John 7:5

##### his brothers

"his younger brothers"

#### John 7:6

##### My time has not yet come

"It is not the right time for me to end my work"

##### your time is always ready

"any time is good for you"

#### John 7:7

##### The world cannot hate you

"The people in the world cannot hate you"

##### I testify about it that its works are evil

"I tell them that what they are doing is evil"

#### John 7:8

##### my time has not yet been fulfilled

"It is not the right time for me to go to Jerusalem"

#### John 7:10

##### he also went up

Jerusalem is at a higher elevation than Galilee where Jesus and his brothers were previously.

#### John 7:11

##### The Jews were looking for him

"The Jewish leaders were looking for Jesus"

#### John 7:12

##### he leads the crowds astray

"he deceives the people"

#### John 7:13

##### the Jews

"the Jewish leaders"

#### John 7:15

##### How does this man know so much?

"It is amazing how much he knows about the scriptures!"

#### John 7:16

##### but is of him who sent me

"but comes from God, the one who sent me"

#### John 7:18

##### but whoever seeks the glory of him who sent him, that person is true, and there is no unrighteousness in him

"when a person only seeks to honor the one who sent him, that person is speaking the truth. He does not lie"

#### John 7:19

##### Did not Moses give you the law?

"It was Moses who gave you the law"

##### keeps the law

"obeys the law"

##### Why do you seek to kill me?

"You break the Law yourselves and yet you want to kill me!"

#### John 7:20

##### You have a demon

"This shows that you are crazy, or maybe a demon is controlling you!"

##### Who seeks to kill you?

"No one is trying to kill you!"

#### John 7:21

##### one work

"one miracle" or "one sign"

##### you all marvel

"you all are shocked"

#### John 7:22

##### on the Sabbath you circumcise a man

"you circumcise a male baby on the on the Jewish Day of Rest. That is working too"

#### John 7:23

##### If a man receives circumcision on the Sabbath so that the law of Moses is not broken

"If you circumcise a male baby on the Sabbath so that you do not break the law of Moses"

##### why are you angry with me because I made a man completely healthy on the Sabbath?

"you should not be angry with me because I made a man completely well on the Jewish Day of Rest"

#### John 7:24

##### Do not judge according to appearance, but judge righteously

"Stop judging people according to what you see! Be more concerned with what is right according to God"

#### John 7:25

##### Is not this the one they seek to kill?

"This is Jesus whom they are seeking to kill!"

#### John 7:26

##### they say nothing to him

"they say nothing to oppose him"

##### It cannot be that the rulers indeed know that this is the Christ, can it?

"Maybe they have decided that he is truly the Messiah!"

#### John 7:28

##### cried out

"spoke in a loud voice"

##### in the temple

"in the temple courtyard"

##### You both know me and know where I come from

"You all know me and you think you know where I come from"

##### of myself

"on my own authority."

##### he who sent me is true

"God is the one who sent me and he is true"

#### John 7:30

##### his hour had not yet come

"it was not the right time to arrest him"

#### John 7:31

##### When the Christ comes, will he do more signs than what this one has done?

"When the Christ comes, surely he will not be able to do more signs than this man has done!"

##### signs

This refers to the miracles that prove that Jesus is the Christ.

#### John 7:33

##### I am still with you for a short amount of time

"I will remain with you for only a short period of time"

##### then I go to him who sent me

Here Jesus refers to God the Father, who sent him.

#### John 7:34

##### where I go, you will not be able to come

"you will not be able to come to the place where I am"

#### John 7:35

##### The Jews therefore said among themselves

"The Jewish leaders said among themselves"

##### the dispersion

This refers to the Jews that were spread all across the Greek world, outside of Palestine.

#### John 7:36

##### What is this word that he said

"What is he talking about when he said"

#### John 7:37

##### great day

It is "great" because it is the last, or most important, day of the festival.

##### If anyone is thirsty

"Anyone who desires the things of God like a thirsty man desires water"

##### let him come to me and drink

"let him come to me and quench his spiritual thirst"

#### John 7:38

##### He who believes in me, just as the scripture says

"As the scripture says about anyone who believes in me"

##### rivers of living water will flow

"spiritual life will flow like rivers of water"

##### living water

Possible meanings are 1) "water that gives life" or 2) "water that causes people to live."

##### from his belly

"from inside of him" or "from his heart"

#### John 7:39

##### But he

Here "he" refers to Jesus.

##### the Spirit had not yet been given

"the Spirit had not yet come to live in the believers"

##### because Jesus was not yet glorified

Here the word "glorified" refers to the time when God would honor the Son after his death and resurrection.

#### John 7:40

##### This is indeed the prophet

"This is indeed the prophet who is like Moses that we have been waiting for"

#### John 7:41

##### Does the Christ come from Galilee?

"The Christ cannot come from Galilee!"

#### John 7:42

##### Have the scriptures not said that the Christ will come from the descendants of David and from Bethlehem, the village where David was?

"The scriptures teach that Christ will come from the line of David and from Bethlehem, the village where David lived!"

##### Have the scriptures not said ... was?

"Did the prophets not write in the scriptures ... was?" or "The prophets wrote in the scriptures ... was."

#### John 7:43

##### So there arose a division in the crowds because of him

The crowds could not agree about who or what Jesus was.

#### John 7:44

##### but no one laid hands on him

"but no one grabbed him to arrest him"

#### John 7:45

##### the officers

"the temple guards"

#### John 7:46

##### Never has anyone spoken like this

"We have never heard anyone say such amazing things as this man!"

#### John 7:47

##### So the Pharisees answered them

"Because they said that, the Pharisees answered the officers"

##### Have you also been deceived?

"You have been deceived too!"

#### John 7:48

##### Have any of the rulers believed in him, or any of the Pharisees?

"None of the rulers or Pharisees have believed in him!"

#### John 7:49

##### the law

This is a reference to the law of the Pharisees and not the law of Moses.

##### But this crowd that does not know the law, they are cursed

"As for this crowd that does not know the law, God will cause them to perish!"

#### John 7:51

##### Does our law judge a man ... does?

"Do we judge a man ... does?" or "We do not judge a man ... does."

#### John 7:52

##### Are you also from Galilee?

"You must also be one of those inferior persons from Galilee!"

##### Search and see

"Search carefully and read what is written in the Scriptures"

##### no prophet comes from Galilee

This probably refers to the belief that Jesus was born in Galilee.

Chapter 8

1[1](#footnote-target-1) Jesus went to the Mount of Olives.2Early in the morning he came to the temple again, and all the people came; he sat down and taught them.3The scribes and the Pharisees brought a woman caught in the act of adultery. They placed her in the middle.4Then they said to him, "Teacher, this woman has been caught in the act of adultery.5Now in the law, Moses commanded us to stone such people; what do you say about her?"6They said this in order to trap him so that they might have something to accuse him about, but Jesus bent down and wrote on the ground with his finger.7When they continued asking him questions, he stood up and said to them, "The one among you who has no sin, let him be the first to throw a stone at her."8Again he stooped down, and wrote on the ground with his finger.9When they heard it, they left one by one, beginning with the oldest. Finally Jesus was left alone, with the woman who had been in the middle.10Jesus stood up and said to her, "Woman, where are your accusers? Did no one condemn you?"11She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] [2](#footnote-target-2)

12Again Jesus spoke to them, saying, "I am the light of the world; he who follows me will not walk in the darkness but will have the light of life."13The Pharisees said to him, "You testify about yourself; your testimony is not true."14Jesus answered and said to them, "Even if I testify about myself, my testimony is true. I know where I came from and where I am going, but you do not know where I came from or where I am going.15You judge according to the flesh; I judge no one.16Yet if I judge, my judgment is true because I am not alone, but I am with the Father who sent me.17Yes, and in your law it is written that the testimony of two men is true.18I am he who testifies about myself, and the Father who sent me testifies about me."19They said to him, "Where is your father?" Jesus answered, "You know neither me nor my Father; if you had known me, you would have known my Father also."20He said these words in the treasury as he taught in the temple, and no one arrested him because his hour had not yet come.

21So again he said to them, "I am going away; you will seek me and will die in your sin. Where I am going, you cannot come."22The Jews said, "Will he kill himself? Is that why he says, 'Where I am going you cannot come'?"23Jesus said to them, "You are from below; I am from above. You are of this world; I am not of this world.24Therefore, I said to you that you will die in your sins. For unless you believe that I AM, you will die in your sins."25They said therefore to him, "Who are you?" Jesus said to them, "What I have said to you from the beginning.26I have many things to speak and to judge about you. However, he who sent me is true; and the things that I heard from him, these things I say to the world."27They did not understand that he was speaking to them about the Father.28Jesus said, "When you have lifted up the Son of Man, then you will know that I AM, and that I do nothing of myself. As the Father taught me, I speak these things.29He who sent me is with me, and he has not left me alone, because I always do what is pleasing to him."30As Jesus was saying these things, many believed in him.

31Jesus said to those Jews who had believed him, "If you remain in my word, then you are truly my disciples;32and you will know the truth, and the truth will set you free."33They answered him, "We are descendants of Abraham and have never been slaves of anyone; how can you say, 'You will be set free'?"34Jesus answered them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, everyone who commits sin is the slave of sin.35The slave does not remain in the house forever; the son remains forever.36Therefore, if the Son sets you free, you will be truly free.37I know that you are Abraham's descendants; you seek to kill me because my word has no place in you.38I say what I have seen with my Father, and you also do what you heard from your father."39They answered and said to him, "Our father is Abraham." Jesus said to them, "If you were Abraham's children, you would do the works of Abraham.40Yet, now you seek to kill me, a man who has told you the truth that I heard from God. Abraham did not do this.41You do the works of your father." They said to him, "We were not born in sexual immorality; we have one Father: God."42Jesus said to them, "If God were your Father, you would love me, for I came from God and am here; for neither have I come of myself, but he sent me.43Why do you not understand my words? It is because you cannot hear my words.44You are of your father, the devil, and you wish to do the desires of your father. He was a murderer from the beginning and does not stand in the truth because there is no truth in him. When he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own nature because he is a liar and the father of lies.45Yet, because I speak the truth, you do not believe me.46Which one of you convicts me of sin? If I speak the truth, why do you not believe me?47He who is of God hears the words of God; you do not hear them because you are not of God."48The Jews answered and said to him, "Do we not truly say that you are a Samaritan and have a demon?"49Jesus answered, "I do not have a demon, but I honor my Father, and you dishonor me.50I do not seek my glory; there is one seeking and judging.51Truly, truly, I say to you, if anyone keeps my word, he will never see death."52The Jews said to him, "Now we know that you have a demon. Abraham and the prophets died; but you say, 'If anyone keeps my word, he will never taste death.'53You are not greater than our father Abraham who died, are you? The prophets also died. Who do you make yourself out to be?"54Jesus answered, "If I glorify myself, my glory is nothing; it is my Father who glorifies me—about whom you say that he is your God.55You have not known him, but I know him. If I would say, 'I do not know him,' I would be like you, a liar. However, I know him and keep his word.56Your father Abraham rejoiced at seeing my day; he saw it and was glad."57The Jews said to him, "You are not yet fifty years old, and you have seen Abraham?"58Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, before Abraham was, I AM."59Then they picked up stones to throw at him, but Jesus hid himself and went out of the temple.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)See the note on John 7:53. [2](#footnote-caller-2)See the note on John 7:53.

#### John 8:2

##### all the people

This is a general way of speaking. It means "many people."

#### John 8:3

##### General Information:

While some texts have 7:53-8:11, the best and earliest texts do not include them.

##### The scribes and the Pharisees brought

"Some scribes and Pharisees brought" or "Some men who taught the Jewish laws and some who were Pharisees brought"

##### a woman caught in the act of adultery

"a woman whom they had found committing adultery"

#### John 8:5

##### such people

"people like that" or "people who do that"

##### what do you say about her?

"so you tell us. What should we do about her?"

#### John 8:6

##### to trap him

This means to use a trick question.

##### so that they might have something to accuse him about

"so that they could accuse him of saying something wrong" or "so that they could accuse him of not obeying the law of Moses or the Roman law"

#### John 8:7

##### When they continued

The word "they" refers to the scribes and Pharisees.

##### The one among you who has no sin

"The one among you is has never sinned" or "If any one of you has never sinned"

##### let him

"let that person"

#### John 8:10

##### Woman, where are your accusers

When Jesus called her "woman," he was not trying to make her feel insignificant. If people in your language group would think that he was doing that, this can be translated without the word "Woman."

#### John 8:12

##### I am the light of the world

"I am the one who gives light to the world"

##### the world

"the people of the world"

##### he who follows me

"everyone who does what I teach" or "everyone who obeys me"

##### will not walk in the darkness

"will not live as if he were in the darkness of sin"

##### light of life

"truth that brings eternal life"

#### John 8:13

##### You testify about yourself

"You are just saying these things about yourself"

##### your testimony is not true

"you cannot be your own witness" or "what you say about yourself may not be true"

#### John 8:14

##### Even if I testify about myself

"Even if I say these things about myself"

#### John 8:15

##### the flesh

"human standards and the laws of men"

##### I judge no one

Possible meanings are 1) "I do not judge anyone yet" or 2) "I am not judging anyone now."

#### John 8:16

##### if I judge

Possible meanings are 1) "if I judge people" or 2) "whenever I judge people"

##### my judgment is true

Possible meanings are 1) "my judgment will be right" or 2) "my judgment is right."

##### I am not alone, but I am with the Father who sent me

Jesus, the Son of God, has authority because of his special relationship with his Father.

##### I am with the Father who sent me

"the Father who sent me also judges with me" or "the Father who sent me judges as I do"

##### the Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 8:17

##### Yes, and in your law

The word "Yes" shows that Jesus is adding to what he was saying before.

##### it is written

"Moses wrote"

##### the testimony of two men is true

"if two men say the same thing, then people know it is true"

#### John 8:18

##### I am he who testifies about myself

"I give evidence to you about myself"

##### the Father who sent me testifies about me

"my Father who sent me also brings evidence about me. So you should believe that what we tell you is true"

##### the Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 8:19

##### You know neither me nor my Father; if you had known me, you would have known my Father also

Jesus indicates that to know him is to also know the Father. Both Father and Son are God. "Father" and "Son" are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### John 8:20

##### his hour had not yet come

"it was not yet the right time for Jesus to die"

#### John 8:21

##### die in your sin

"die while you are still sinful" or "you will die while you are sinning"

##### you cannot come

"you are not able to come"

#### John 8:22

##### The Jews said

"The Jewish leaders said" or "The Jewish authorities said"

#### John 8:23

##### You are from below

"You were born in this world"

##### I am from above

"I came from heaven"

##### You are of this world

"You belong to this world"

##### I am not of this world

"I do not belong to this world"

#### John 8:24

##### you will die in your sins

"you will die without God's forgiving your sins"

##### that I AM

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is identifying himself as Yahweh, who identified himself to Moses as "I AM," or 2) Jesus expects the people to understand that he is referring to what he already has already said about himself: "I am from above."

#### John 8:26

##### these things I say to the world

"these things I say to all the people"

#### John 8:27

##### the Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 8:28

##### When you have lifted up

This refers to placing Jesus on the cross to kill him.

##### lifted up the Son of Man

Jesus used the title "Son of Man" to refer to himself. Alternate translation: "lifted me, the Son of Man, up"

##### I AM

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is identifying himself as Yahweh, who identified himself to Moses as "I AM," or 2) Jesus is saying, "I am the one I claim to be."

##### As the Father taught me, I speak these things

"I am only saying what my Father taught me to say."

#### John 8:29

##### He who sent me

The word "He" refers to God.

#### John 8:30

##### many believed in him

"many people trusted him"

#### John 8:31

##### remain in my word

"obey what I have said"

##### my disciples

"my followers"

#### John 8:32

##### the truth will set you free

"if you obey what is true about God, God will set you free"

#### John 8:33

##### how can you say, 'You will be set free'?

"We do not need to be set free!"

#### John 8:34

##### Truly, truly

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true.

##### is the slave of sin

"is like a slave to sin"

#### John 8:35

##### in the house forever

"as a permanent member of a family"

##### the son remains forever

"the son is a member of the family forever"

#### John 8:36

##### If I, the Son, set you free, you will be truly free

"if the Son sets you free, you will truly be able to refrain from sin"

#### John 8:37

##### my word has no place in you

"you do not accept my teachings" or "you do not allow my message to change your life"

#### John 8:38

##### I say what I have seen with my Father

"I am telling you about the things I saw when I was with my Father"

##### you also do what you heard from your father

"you also continue doing what your father has told you to do"

#### John 8:39

##### father

forefather

#### John 8:40

##### Abraham did not do this

"Abraham never tried to kill anyone who told him the true revelation from God"

#### John 8:41

##### You do the works of your father

"No! You are doing the things that your real father did"

##### We were not born in sexual immorality

"We do not know about you, but we are not illegitimate children" or "We were all born from proper marriages"

##### we have one Father: God

Here the Jewish leaders claim God as their spiritual Father. This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 8:42

##### love

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves.

#### John 8:43

##### Why do you not understand my words?

"I will tell you why you do not understand what I say!"

##### It is because you cannot hear my words

"It is because you will not accept my teachings.

#### John 8:44

##### You are of your father, the devil

"You belong to your father, Satan"

##### the father of lies

"he is the one who created all lies in the beginning"

#### John 8:46

##### Which one of you convicts me of sin?

"None of you can show that I have ever sinned!"

##### If I speak the truth

"If I say things that are true"

##### why do you not believe me?

"you have no reason for not believing in me!"

#### John 8:47

##### the words of God

"the message of God" or "the truth that comes from God"

#### John 8:48

##### The Jews

"The Jewish leaders"

##### Do we not truly say that you are a Samaritan and have a demon?

"We are certainly right in saying that you are a Samaritan and that a demon lives in you!"

#### John 8:51

##### keeps my word

"obeys my teachings" or "does what I say"

##### see death

"die spiritually"

#### John 8:52

##### Jews

"Jewish leaders"

##### If anyone keeps my word

"If anyone obeys my teaching"

##### taste death

"die"

#### John 8:53

##### You are not greater than our father Abraham who died, are you?

"You are certainly not greater than our father Abraham who indeed died!"

##### father

forefather

##### Who do you make yourself out to be?

"You should not think that you are so important!"

#### John 8:54

##### it is my Father who glorifies me—about whom you say that he is your God

"it is my Father who honors me, and you say that he is your God"

#### John 8:55

##### keep his word

"I obey what he says to do"

#### John 8:56

##### my day

"what I would do during my life"

##### he saw it and was glad

"he foresaw my coming through God's revelation and he rejoiced"

#### John 8:57

##### The Jews said to him

"The Jewish leaders said to him"

##### You are not yet fifty years old, and you have seen Abraham?

"You are less than fifty years old. You could not have seen Abraham!"

#### John 8:58

##### I AM

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is identifying himself as Yahweh, who identified himself to Moses as "I AM," or 2) Jesus is saying, "before Abraham existed, I existed."

#### John 8:59

##### Then they picked up stones to throw at him

"Then they picked up stones to kill him because he claimed to be equal with God"

Chapter 9

1Now as Jesus passed by, he saw a man blind from birth.2His disciples asked him, "Rabbi, who sinned, this man or his parents, so that he was born blind?"3Jesus answered, "Neither did this man sin, nor his parents, but so that the works of God would be revealed in him.4We must do the works of him who sent me while it is day. Night is coming when no one will be able to work.5While I am in the world, I am the light of the world."6After Jesus said these things, he spit on the ground, made mud with the saliva, and smeared the mud on his eyes.7He said to him, "Go, wash in the pool of Siloam" (which is translated "Sent"). So the man went away, washed, and came back seeing.8Then the man's neighbors and those who had seen him previously as a beggar were saying, "Is not this the man that used to sit and beg?"9Some said, "It is he." Others said, "No, but he is like him." But he said, "I am the one."10They said to him, "Then how were your eyes opened?"11He answered, "The man who is called Jesus made mud and smeared it on my eyes and said to me, 'Go to Siloam and wash.' So I went and washed, and I received my sight."12They said to him, "Where is he?" He replied, "I do not know."

13They brought the man who used to be blind to the Pharisees.14Now it was the Sabbath day when Jesus made the mud and opened his eyes.15Then again the Pharisees asked him how he had received his sight. He said to them, "He put mud on my eyes, I washed, and I now can see."16Some of the Pharisees said, "This man is not from God because he does not keep the Sabbath." Others said, "How can a man who is a sinner do such signs?" So there was a division among them.17So they asked the blind man again, "What do you say about him, since he opened your eyes?" The blind man said, "He is a prophet."18Now the Jews still did not believe about him that he was blind and had received his sight until they called the parents of him who had received his sight.19They asked the parents, "Is this your son whom you say was born blind? How then does he now see?"20So his parents answered them, "We know that this is our son and that he was born blind.21How he now sees, we do not know, and who opened his eyes, we do not know. Ask him, he is an adult. He can speak for himself."22His parents said these things, because they were afraid of the Jews. For the Jews had already agreed that if anyone would confess him to be the Christ, he would be thrown out of the synagogue.23Because of this, his parents said, "He is an adult, ask him."24So for a second time they called the man who had been blind and said to him, "Give glory to God. We know that this man is a sinner."25Then that man replied, "I do not know if he is a sinner. One thing I do know: I was blind, and now I see."26Then they said to him, "What did he do to you? How did he open your eyes?"27He answered, "I have told you already, and you did not listen! Why do you want to hear it again? You do not want to become his disciples too, do you?"28They insulted him and said, "You are his disciple, but we are disciples of Moses.29We know that God has spoken to Moses, but we do not know where this one is from."30The man answered and said to them, "This is remarkable, that you do not know where he is from, and yet he opened my eyes.31We know that God does not listen to sinners, but if someone worships God and does his will, he listens to him.32Since the world began it has never been heard that anyone opened the eyes of a man born blind.33If this man were not from God, he could do nothing."34They answered and said to him, "You were completely born in sins, and you are teaching us?" Then they threw him out.

35Jesus heard that they had cast him out of the synagogue. He found him and said, "Do you believe in the Son of Man?"36He replied and said, "Who is he, Lord, that I may believe in him?"37Jesus said to him, "You have seen him, and it is the one who is speaking with you."38The man said, "Lord, I believe," and he worshiped him.39Jesus said, "For judgment I came into this world so that those who do not see may see and so that those who see may become blind."40Some of the Pharisees who were with him heard these things and asked him, "Are we also blind?"41Jesus said to them, "If you were blind, you would have no sin, but now you say, 'We see,' so your sin remains."

#### John 9:1

##### as Jesus passed by

"as Jesus and his disciples passed by"

#### John 9:2

##### who sinned, this man or his parents, so that he was born blind?

"Teacher, we know that sin causes a person to be blind. Whose sin caused this man to be born blind? Did this man himself sin, or was it his parents who sinned?"

#### John 9:5

##### in the world

"living among the people of this world"

##### the light of the world

"the one who shows what is true, just as light allows people to see what is in the darkness"

#### John 9:6

##### made mud with the saliva

"and used his fingers to mix the dirt and saliva to make mud"

#### John 9:7

##### which is translated "Sent"

"which means 'Sent'"

#### John 9:8

##### Is not this the man that used to sit and beg?

"This man is the one who used to sit and beg!"

#### John 9:14

##### Sabbath day

"Jewish Day of Rest"

#### John 9:16

##### he does not keep the Sabbath

This means Jesus does not obey the law about doing no work on the Jewish Day of Rest.

##### How can a man who is a sinner do such signs?

"A sinner can not do such signs!"

##### signs

This is another word for miracles. "Signs" give evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.

#### John 9:18

##### Now the Jews still did not believe

"Now the Jewish leaders still did not believe"

#### John 9:22

##### they were afraid of the Jews

"they were afraid of what the Jewish leaders might do to them"

##### would confess him to be the Christ

"would say that Jesus is the Christ"

##### he would be thrown out of the synagogue

"he would not be allowed to go into the synagogue" or "he would no longer belong to the synagogue"

#### John 9:24

##### Give glory to God

"In the presence of God, tell the truth" or "Speak the truth before God"

##### this man

This refers to Jesus.

#### John 9:25

##### that man

This refers to the man who had been blind.

#### John 9:27

##### Why do you want to hear it again?

"I am surprised that you want to hear again what happened to me!"

##### You do not want to become his disciples too, do you?

"It sounds like you also want to become his disciples!"

#### John 9:28

##### You are his disciple

"You are following Jesus!"

##### but we are disciples of Moses

"but we are following Moses"

#### John 9:29

##### We know that God has spoken to Moses

"We are sure that God has spoken to Moses"

##### we do not know where this one is from

"we do not know where he comes from or where he gets his authority"

#### John 9:30

##### that you do not know where he is from

"that you do not know where he gets his authority"

#### John 9:31

##### does not listen to sinners ... he listens to him

"does not answer the prayers of sinners ... God answers his prayers"

#### John 9:32

##### Since the world began

"Since the beginning of time" or "As far back as anyone can remember"

##### it has never been heard that anyone opened

"no one has ever heard of anyone who healed a man who was blind from birth"

#### John 9:33

##### If this man were not from God, he could do nothing

"Only a man from God could do something like that"

#### John 9:34

##### You were completely born in sins, and you are teaching us?

"You were born as a result of your parents' sins. You are not qualified to teach us!"

##### they threw him out

"they threw him out of the synagogue"

#### John 9:35

##### believe in the Son of Man

This means to "believe in Jesus," to believe that he is the Son of God, to trust him as Savior, and live in a way that honors him.

##### the Son of Man

Here the reader needs to understand that Jesus was speaking as if "the Son of Man" were another person. The man who had been born blind did not realize that Jesus was speaking of himself when he spoke of "the Son of Man." You should translate so that the man does not learn that Jesus is the Son of Man until verse 37.

#### John 9:39

##### came into this world

"came to live among the people of this world"

##### so that those who do not see may see

"so that those who do not see spiritually may see spiritually"

##### so that those who see

"so that those who think that they see spiritually"

##### may become blind

"may never see spiritually"

#### John 9:40

##### and asked him, "Are we also blind?"

"and said to him, 'Are you saying that we are blind?'" or "and said to him, 'You seem to be saying that we, too, are blind.'"

#### John 9:41

##### If you were blind, you would have no sin

"If you truly were spiritually blind, you would not be guilty of your sin"

##### but now you say, 'We see,' so your sin remains

"but since you think that you understand spiritual truth, you remain guilty of your sin"

Chapter 10

1"Truly, truly, I say to you, he who does not enter through the gate into the sheep pen, but climbs up some other way, that man is a thief and a robber.2He who enters through the gate is the shepherd of the sheep.3The gatekeeper opens for him. The sheep hear his voice, and he calls his own sheep by name and leads them out.4When he has brought out all his own, he goes ahead of them, and the sheep follow him, for they know his voice.5They will not follow a stranger but instead they will avoid him, for they do not know the voice of strangers."6Jesus spoke this parable to them, but they did not understand what these things were that he was saying to them.

7Then Jesus said to them again, "Truly, truly, I say to you, I am the gate of the sheep.8Everyone who came before me is a thief and a robber, but the sheep did not listen to them.9I am the gate. If anyone enters in through me, he will be saved; he will go in and out and will find pasture.10The thief does not come except to steal and kill and destroy. I have come so that they will have life and have it abundantly.11I am the good shepherd. The good shepherd lays down his life for the sheep.12The hired servant is not a shepherd and does not own the sheep. He sees the wolf coming and abandons the sheep and escapes, and the wolf snatches them and scatters them.13He runs away because he is a hired servant and does not care for the sheep.14I am the good shepherd, and I know my own, and my own know me.15The Father knows me, and I know the Father, and I lay down my life for the sheep.16I have other sheep that are not of this sheep pen. I must bring them also, and they will hear my voice so that there will be one flock and one shepherd.17This is why the Father loves me: I lay down my life so that I may take it again.18No one takes it away from me, but I lay it down of myself. I have authority to lay it down, and I have authority to take it up again. I have received this command from my Father."

19A division again occurred among the Jews because of these words.20Many of them said, "He has a demon and is insane. Why do you listen to him?"21Others said, "These are not the words of a demon-possessed man. Can a demon open the eyes of the blind?"

22Then it was time for the Festival of the Dedication in Jerusalem. It was winter,23and Jesus was walking in the temple in the porch of Solomon.24Then the Jews surrounded him and said to him, "How long will you hold us doubting? If you are the Christ, tell us openly."25Jesus replied to them, "I told you, but you do not believe. The works that I do in the name of my Father, these testify concerning me.26Yet you do not believe because you are not my sheep.27My sheep hear my voice; I know them, and they follow me.28I give them eternal life; they will never die, and no one will snatch them out of my hand.29My Father, who has given them to me, is greater than all others, and no one is able to snatch them out of the hand of the Father.30I and the Father are one."31Then the Jews took up stones again to stone him.32Jesus answered them, "I have shown you many good works from the Father. For which of those works are you stoning me?"33The Jews answered him, "We are not stoning you for any good work, but for blasphemy, because you, a man, are making yourself God."34Jesus answered them, "Is it not written in your law, 'I said, "You are gods"'?35If he called them gods, to whom the word of God came (and the scripture cannot be broken),36do you say to him whom the Father set apart and sent into the world, 'You are blaspheming,' because I said, 'I am the Son of God'?37If I am not doing the works of my Father, do not believe me.38But if I am doing them, even if you do not believe me, believe in the works so that you may know and understand that the Father is in me and that I am in the Father."39They tried to seize him again, but he went away out of their hand.

40He went away again beyond the Jordan to the place where John had first been baptizing, and he stayed there.41Many people came to him and they said, "John indeed did no signs, but all the things that John has said about this man are true."42Many people believed in him there.

#### John 10:1

##### sheep pen

This is a fenced area where a shepherd keeps his sheep.

#### John 10:3

##### The gatekeeper opens for him

"The gatekeeper opens the gate for the shepherd"

##### The gatekeeper

This is a hired man who watches the gate of the sheep pen at night while the shepherd is away.

##### The sheep hear his voice

"The sheep hear the shepherd's voice"

#### John 10:4

##### he goes ahead of them

"he walks in front of them"

##### for they know his voice

"because they recognize his voice"

#### John 10:6

##### they did not understand

Possible meanings: 1) "the disciples did not understand" or 2) "the crowd did not understand."

##### this parable

The "sheep" represent those who follow Jesus, and the "strangers" are the Jewish leaders, including the Pharisees, who try to deceive the people.

#### John 10:7

##### I am the gate of the sheep

"I am like the gate that the sheep use to enter into the sheepfold"

#### John 10:8

##### Everyone who came before me

"All of the teachers who came without my authority"

##### a thief and a robber

Jesus calls those teachers "a thief and a robber" because their teachings were false, and they were trying to lead God's people while not understanding the truth. As a result, they deceived the people.

#### John 10:9

##### I am the gate

"I myself am like that gate"

##### pasture

The word "pasture" means a grassy area where sheep eat.

#### John 10:10

##### does not come except to steal and kill and destroy

"comes only to steal, kill, and destroy the sheep"

##### so that they will have life

"so that they will really live, lacking nothing"

#### John 10:11

##### I am the good shepherd

"I am like a good shepherd"

##### lays down his life

"dies"

#### John 10:12

##### The hired servant

"The one who is like a hired servant"

##### abandons the sheep

Like a hired servant who abandons the sheep, Jesus says that the Jewish leaders and teachers do not care for God's people.

#### John 10:13

##### does not care for the sheep

Jesus says that the Jewish leaders and teachers are like a hired servant who abandons the sheep, and they do not care for God's people.

#### John 10:14

##### I am the good shepherd

"I am like a good shepherd"

#### John 10:15

##### The Father knows me, and I know the Father

God the Father and God the Son know each other unlike anyone else knows them. This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### I lay down my life for the sheep

"I die for the sheep"

#### John 10:16

##### I have other sheep

Here "other sheep" refers to followers of Jesus who are not Jews.

##### one flock and one shepherd

All of Jesus's followers, Jews and non-Jews, will be like one flock of sheep. He will be like a shepherd who cares for all of them.

#### John 10:17

##### This is why the Father loves me: I lay down my life

God's eternal plan was for God the Son to give his life to pay for the sins of humanity. Jesus's death on the cross reveals the intense love of the Son for the Father and of the Father for the Son.

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### loves

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

##### I lay down my life so that I may take it again

"I allow myself to die in order that I may bring myself back to life"

#### John 10:18

##### I lay it down of myself

"I myself lay it down"

##### I have received this command from my Father

"This is what my Father has commanded me to do." The word "Father" is an important title for God.

#### John 10:20

##### Why do you listen to him?

"Do not listen to him!"

#### John 10:21

##### Can a demon open the eyes of the blind?

"Certainly a demon cannot cause a blind man to see!" or "Certainly a demon cannot give sight to blind people!"

#### John 10:22

##### It was winter

Winter is the coldest time of the year. You may use your language's term for the coldest season if your reader understands that in Israel this was in December, not in June.

##### Festival of the Dedication

This is an eight-day winter holiday Jews use to remember a miracle where God made a small amount of oil remain lit in a lampstand for eight days. They lit the lampstand to dedicate the Jewish temple to God. To dedicate something is to promise to use it for a special purpose.

#### John 10:23

##### Jesus was walking in the temple

"Jesus was walking in the temple courtyard"

##### porch

This is a structure attached to the entrance of a building; it has a roof and it may or may not have walls.

#### John 10:24

##### Then the Jews surrounded him

"Then the Jewish leaders surrounded him"

##### hold us doubting

"keep us wondering" or "keep us from knowing for sure"

#### John 10:25

##### in the name of my Father

"through my Father's power" or "with my Father's power"

##### these testify concerning me

"these offer proof concerning me"

#### John 10:26

##### not my sheep

"not my followers" or "not my disciples"

#### John 10:27

##### My sheep hear my voice

"Just as sheep obey the voice of their true shepherd, my followers heed my voice"

#### John 10:28

##### no one will snatch them out of my hand

"no one will steal them away from me" or "they will remain secure forever in my care"

#### John 10:29

##### My Father, who has given them to me

The word "Father" is an important title for God.

##### snatch them out of the hand of the Father

"steal them from my Father"

#### John 10:30

##### I and the Father are one

"I and the Father are completely united" or "I and the Father are exactly alike"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 10:31

##### Then the Jews took up stones again

"Then the Jewish leaders started picking up stones again"

#### John 10:32

##### Jesus answered them, "I have shown you many good works from the Father

Jesus performed the miracles by the power of God. The word "Father" is an important title for God.

##### For which of those works are you stoning me?

This question uses irony. Jesus knows the Jewish leaders do not want to stone him because he has done good works.

#### John 10:33

##### The Jews answered him

"The Jewish opponents replied" or "The Jewish leaders answered him"

##### making yourself God

"claiming to be God"

#### John 10:34

##### Is it not written in your law, 'I said, "You are gods"'?

"You should already know that it is written in your law, 'I said, "You are gods."'"

##### You are gods

Here Jesus quotes a scripture where God calls his followers "gods," perhaps because he has chosen them to represent him on earth.

#### John 10:35

##### the word of God came

"God spoke his message"

##### the scripture cannot be broken

Possible meanings are 1) "no one can change the scripture" or 2) "the scripture will always be true."

#### John 10:36

##### do you say to him whom the Father set apart and sent into the world, 'You are blaspheming,' because I said, 'I am the Son of God'?

"you should not say to the very one whom the Father set apart to send into the world, 'You are blaspheming,' when I say that I am the Son of God!"

##### You are blaspheming

"You are insulting God." Jesus's opponents understood that when said that he is the Son of God, he was implying that he is equal with God.

##### Father ... Son of God

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### John 10:37

##### believe me

Here the word "believe" means to accept or trust what Jesus said is true.

#### John 10:38

##### believe in the works

Here "believe in" is to acknowledge that the works Jesus does are from the Father.

##### the Father is in me and that I am in the Father

"my Father and I are completely joined together as one"

#### John 10:39

##### went away out of their hand

"got away from them again"

#### John 10:40

##### beyond the Jordan

"to the east side of the Jordan River"

##### he stayed there

"Jesus stayed there for several days"

#### John 10:41

##### John indeed did no signs, but all the things that John has said about this man are true

"It is true that John did no signs, but he certainly did speak the truth about this man, who does signs."

##### signs

These are miracles that prove that something is true or that give someone credibility.

#### John 10:42

##### believed in

Here "believed in" means accepted or trusted what Jesus said was true.

Chapter 11

1Now a certain man named Lazarus was sick. He was from Bethany, the village of Mary and her sister Martha.2It was Mary who anointed the Lord with myrrh and wiped his feet with her hair, whose brother Lazarus was sick.3The sisters then sent for Jesus, saying, "Lord, see, he whom you love is sick."4When Jesus heard it, he said, "This sickness is not to death, but instead it is for the glory of God so that the Son of God may be glorified by it."5Now Jesus loved Martha and her sister and Lazarus.6So when he heard that Lazarus was sick, Jesus stayed two more days in the place where he was.7Then after this, he said to the disciples, "Let us go to Judea again."8The disciples said to him, "Rabbi, right now the Jews are trying to stone you, and you are going back there again?"9Jesus answered, "Are there not twelve hours of light in a day? If someone walks in the daytime, he will not stumble, because he sees by the light of this world.10However, if he walks at night, he will stumble because the light is not in him."11He said these things, and after these things, he said to them, "Our friend Lazarus has fallen asleep, but I am going so that I may wake him out of sleep."12The disciples therefore said to him, "Lord, if he has fallen asleep, he will recover."13Now Jesus had spoken of his death, but they thought that he was speaking about the sleep of resting.14Then Jesus said to them plainly, "Lazarus is dead.15I am glad, for your sakes, that I was not there so that you may believe. Let us go to him."16Thomas, who was called Didymus, said to his fellow disciples, "Let us also go so that we may die with Jesus."

17When Jesus came, he found that Lazarus had already been in the tomb for four days.18Now Bethany was near Jerusalem, about fifteen stadia away.19Many of the Jews had come to Martha and Mary, to comfort them about their brother.20Then Martha, when she heard that Jesus was coming, went to meet him, but Mary was sitting in the house.21Martha then said to Jesus, "Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died.22Even now, I know that whatever you ask from God, he will give to you."23Jesus said to her, "Your brother will rise again."24Martha said to him, "I know that he will rise again in the resurrection on the last day."25Jesus said to her, "I am the resurrection and the life; he who believes in me, even if he dies, will live;26and whoever lives and believes in me will never die. Do you believe this?"27She said to him, "Yes, Lord, I believe that you are the Christ, the Son of God, who is coming into the world."28When she had said this, she went away and called her sister Mary privately. She said, "The Teacher is here and is calling for you."29When she heard this, she got up quickly and went to him.30Now Jesus had not yet come into the village but was still in the place where Martha had met him.31So when the Jews, who were with her in the house and who were comforting her, saw Mary getting up quickly and going out, they followed her, thinking that she was going to the tomb to weep there.32When Mary came to the place where Jesus was and saw him, she fell down at his feet and said to him, "Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died."33When Jesus saw her weeping, and the Jews who came with her also weeping, he was deeply moved in his spirit and was troubled;34he said, "Where have you laid him?" They said to him, "Lord, come and see."35Jesus wept.36Then the Jews said, "See how much he loved Lazarus!"37But some of them said, "Could not this man, who opened the eyes of a blind man, also have made this man not die?"38Then Jesus again, being deeply moved in himself, went to the tomb. Now it was a cave, and a stone lay against it.39Jesus said, "Take away the stone." Martha, the sister of Lazarus, the one who had died, said to Jesus, "Lord, by this time the body will be decaying, for he has been dead for four days."40Jesus said to her, "Did I not say to you that, if you believed, you would see the glory of God?"41So they took away the stone. Jesus lifted up his eyes and said, "Father, I thank you that you listened to me.42I knew that you always listen to me, but it is because of the crowd that is standing around me that I said this, so that they may believe that you have sent me."43After he had said this, he cried out with a loud voice, "Lazarus, come out!"44The dead man came out; his feet and hands were bound with cloths, and his face was bound about with a cloth. Jesus said to them, "Untie him and let him go."

45Then many of the Jews who came to Mary, and saw what Jesus did, believed in him.46But some of them went away to the Pharisees and told them the things that Jesus had done.

47Then the chief priests and the Pharisees gathered the council together and said, "What will we do? This man does many signs.48If we leave him alone like this, all will believe in him; the Romans will come and take away both our place and our nation."49However, a certain man among them, Caiaphas, who was high priest that year, said to them, "You know nothing.50You do not consider that it is better for you that one man dies for the people than that the whole nation perishes."51Now this he said not from himself. Instead, being high priest that year, he prophesied that Jesus should die for the nation;52and not only for the nation, but so that the children of God who are scattered would be gathered together into one.53So from that day onward they planned how to put Jesus to death.

54No longer did Jesus walk openly among the Jews, but he departed from there into the country near to the wilderness into a town called Ephraim. There he stayed with the disciples.55Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves.56They were looking for Jesus and speaking one with another as they stood in the temple: "What do you think? That he will not come to the festival?"57Now the chief priests and the Pharisees had given an order that if anyone knew where Jesus was, he should report it so that they might seize him.

#### John 11:3

##### sent for Jesus

"asked Jesus to come"

##### love

Here "love" refers to brotherly love, a natural, human love between friends or relatives.

#### John 11:4

##### This sickness is not to death

"Death will not be the final result of this sickness"

##### death

This refers to physical death.

##### but instead it is for the glory of God so that the Son of God may be glorified by it

"but the purpose is that the people might see how great God is because of what his power will allow me to do"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

#### John 11:8

##### Rabbi, right now the Jews are trying to stone you, and you are going back there again?

"Teacher, you surely do not want to go back there! The Jewish leaders were trying to stone you the last time you were there!"

#### John 11:9

##### Are there not twelve hours of light in a day?

"You know that the day has twelve hours of light!"

##### If someone walks in the daytime, he will not stumble, because he sees by the light of this world

Jesus is implying that people who live according to truth will be able to successfully do the things that God wants them to do.

#### John 11:10

##### the light is not in him

Possible meanings are 1) "he cannot see" or "he does not have God's light."

#### John 11:11

##### Our friend Lazarus has fallen asleep

Jesus meant that Lazarus had died, but the disciples did not understand this. So it is important to keep the idea of sleeping in the translation.

##### but I am going so that I may wake him out of sleep

"but I am going there to wake him up"

#### John 11:12

##### if he has fallen asleep

The disciples misunderstand Jesus to mean that Lazarus is resting and will recover.

#### John 11:14

##### Then Jesus said to them plainly

"So Jesus told them in words that they could understand"

#### John 11:15

##### for your sakes

"for your benefit"

##### that I was not there so that you may believe

"that I was not there. Because of this you will learn to trust me more"

#### John 11:16

##### who was called Didymus

"whom they called Didymus," which means 'twin."

#### John 11:17

##### he found that Lazarus had already been in the tomb for four days

"he learned that people had put Lazarus in a tomb four days before"

#### John 11:18

##### fifteen stadia away

"about three kilometers away."

#### John 11:19

##### about their brother

"about their younger brother"

#### John 11:21

##### my brother would not have died

"my younger brother would still be alive"

#### John 11:23

##### Your brother will rise again

"Your younger brother will become alive again"

#### John 11:24

##### he will rise again

"he will become alive again"

#### John 11:25

##### I am the resurrection and the life

"I am the one who raises those who die and causes them to live again"

##### he who believes in me, even if he dies, will live

"even a person who dies will live forever, if he believes in me"

#### John 11:26

##### whoever lives and believes in me will never die

"those who live and trust in me will never be separated eternally from God" or "those who live and trust in me will be spiritually alive with God forever"

#### John 11:27

##### She said to him

"Martha said to Jesus"

##### Yes, Lord, I believe that you are the Christ, the Son of God ... coming into the world

Martha believes that Jesus is Lord, the Christ (the Messiah), the Son of God.

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

#### John 11:28

##### she went away and called her sister Mary

"she went away and called her younger sister Mary"

##### Teacher

This is a title referring to Jesus.

##### is calling for you

"is asking that you come"

#### John 11:32

##### fell down at his feet

Mary lay down or knelt at the feet of Jesus to show respect.

##### my brother would not have died

"my younger brother would still be alive"

#### John 11:33

##### he was deeply moved in his spirit and was troubled

"he was greatly upset"

#### John 11:34

##### Where have you laid him

"Where have you buried him?"

#### John 11:35

##### Jesus wept

"Jesus began to cry" or "Jesus started crying"

#### John 11:36

##### loved

This refers to brotherly love or human love for a friend or family member.

#### John 11:37

##### Could not this man, who opened the eyes of a blind man, also have made this man not die?

"He could heal a man who was blind, so he should have been able to heal this man so he would not have died!" or "Since he did not keep this man from dying, maybe he did not really heal the man who was born blind, as they say he did!"

#### John 11:39

##### Martha, the sister of Lazarus

"Martha, the older sister of Lazarus"

##### by this time the body will be decaying

"by this time there will be a bad smell" or "the body is already stinking"

#### John 11:40

##### Did I not say to you that, if you believed, you would see the glory of God?

"I told you that if you trusted me, you would see what God can do!"

#### John 11:41

##### Jesus lifted up his eyes

"Jesus looked up toward heaven"

##### Father, I thank you that you listened to me

"Father, I thank you that you have heard me" or "Father, I thank you that you have heard my prayer"

#### John 11:42

##### that you have sent me

"that I am here because you have sent me to them"

#### John 11:43

##### After he had said this

"After Jesus had prayed"

##### he cried out with a loud voice

"he shouted"

#### John 11:44

##### his feet and hands were bound with cloths, and his face was bound about with a cloth

"Someone had wrapped strips of cloth around his hands and feet. They had also tied a cloth around his face"

##### Jesus said to them

The word "them" refers to the people who were there and saw the miracle.

#### John 11:47

##### Then the chief priests

"Then the leaders among the priests"

##### What will we do?

"What are we going to do about Jesus?"

#### John 11:48

##### all will believe in him

"everyone will trust in him and rebel against Rome"

##### the Romans will come

"the Roman army will come"

##### take away both our place and our nation

"destroy both our temple and our nation"

#### John 11:49

##### a certain man among them

This is a way to introduce a new character to the story. If you have a way to do this in your language, you can use it here.

##### You know nothing

"You do not understand what is happening" or "You speak as though you know nothing"

#### John 11:50

##### than that the whole nation perishes

"than that the Romans kill all the people of our nation"

#### John 11:51

##### die for the nation

The word "nation" refers to the people of the nation of Israel.

#### John 11:52

##### and not only for the nation

"and that he should die not only for the nation"

##### would be gathered together into one

"would be gathered into one people"

##### children of God

This refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus and are spiritually God's children.

#### John 11:54

##### walk openly among the Jews

"live where all the Jews could see him" or "walk openly among the Jewish leaders who opposed him"

##### the country

the rural area outside cities where fewer people live

##### There he stayed with the disciples

"There he stayed with his disciples for a short period of time"

#### John 11:56

##### They were looking for Jesus

The word "they" refers to the Jewish people who had traveled to Jerusalem.

##### What do you think? That he will not come to the festival?

"Do you think that he will come to the festival?" or "I do not know what to think. He might come to the festival, or he might not." 2) The speakers were sure that Jesus would not come. Alternate translation: "We can be sure that he will not come to the festival."

Chapter 12

1Six days before the Passover, Jesus came to Bethany, where Lazarus was, whom Jesus had raised from the dead.2So they made him a dinner there, and Martha was serving, but Lazarus was one of those who were lying down at the table with Jesus.3Then Mary took a litra of perfume made of very precious pure nard, anointed the feet of Jesus with it, and wiped his feet with her hair. The house was filled with the fragrance of the perfume.4Judas Iscariot, one of his disciples, the one who would betray him, said,5"Why was this perfume not sold for three hundred denarii and given to the poor?"6Now he said this, not because he cared about the poor, but because he was a thief. He had the moneybag and would steal from what was put in it.7Jesus said, "Allow her to keep what she has for the day of my burial.8You will always have the poor with you. But you will not always have me."

9Now a large crowd of the Jews learned that Jesus was there, and they came, not only for Jesus, but also to see Lazarus, whom Jesus had raised from the dead.10The chief priests conspired together so that they might also put Lazarus to death;11for it was because of him that many of the Jews went away and believed in Jesus.

12On the next day a great crowd came to the festival. When they heard that Jesus was coming to Jerusalem,13they took the branches of the palm trees and went out to meet him and cried out, "Hosanna! Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord, the King of Israel."

14Jesus found a young donkey and sat on it; as it was written,15"Do not fear, daughter of Zion;see, your King is coming,sitting on the colt of a donkey."

16His disciples did not understand these things at first; but when Jesus was glorified, they remembered that these things had been written about him and that they had done these things to him.17Now the crowd testified that they had been with him when he called Lazarus out of the tomb and raised him up from the dead.18It was also for this reason that the crowd went out to meet him, because they heard that he had done this sign.19The Pharisees therefore said among themselves, "Look, you can do nothing good; see, the world has gone after him."

20Now certain Greeks were among those who were going up to worship at the festival.21These went to Philip, who was from Bethsaida in Galilee, and asked him, saying, "Sir, we want to see Jesus."22Philip went and told Andrew; Andrew went with Philip, and they told Jesus.23Jesus answered them and said, "The hour has come for the Son of Man to be glorified.24Truly, truly, I say to you, unless a grain of wheat falls into the earth and dies, it remains by itself alone; but if it dies, it will bear much fruit.25He who loves his life will lose it; but he who hates his life in this world will keep it for eternal life.26If anyone serves me, let him follow me; and where I am, there will my servant also be. If anyone serves me, the Father will honor him.27Now my soul is troubled and what should I say? 'Father, save me from this hour'? But for this reason I came to this hour.28Father, glorify your name." Then a voice came from heaven and said, "I have glorified it and I will glorify it again."29Then the crowd that stood by and heard it said that it had thundered. Others said, "An angel has spoken to him."30Jesus answered and said, "This voice did not come for me, but for you.31Now is the judgment of this world: Now will the ruler of this world be thrown out.32When I am lifted up from the earth, I will draw everyone to myself."33He said this to indicate what kind of death he would die.34The crowd answered him, "We have heard from the law that the Christ will stay forever. How can you say, 'The Son of Man must be lifted up'? Who is this Son of Man?"35Jesus then said to them, "The light will still be with you for a short amount of time. Walk while you have the light, so that darkness does not overtake you. He who walks in the darkness does not know where he is going.36While you have the light, believe in the light so that you may be sons of light."

Jesus said these things and then departed and hid from them.37Although Jesus had done so many signs before them, yet they did not believe in him38so that the word of Isaiah the prophet would be fulfilled, in which he said:"Lord, who has believed our report,and to whom has the armof the Lord been revealed?"

39For this reason they could not believe, for Isaiah had also said,40"He has blinded their eyes, and he has hardened their heart, otherwise they would see with their eyes and understand with their hearts, and turn, and I would heal them."

41Isaiah said these things because he saw the glory of Jesus and spoke of him.42But despite that, many of the rulers believed in Jesus; but because of the Pharisees, they did not confess it so that they would not be banned from the synagogue.43They loved the glory that comes from people more than the glory that comes from God.

44Jesus cried out and said, "The one who believes in me believes not only in me but also in him who sent me,45and the one who sees me sees him who sent me.46I have come as a light into the world, so that whoever believes in me may not remain in the darkness.47If anyone hears my words but does not keep them, I do not judge him; for I have not come to judge the world, but to save the world.48The one who rejects me and who does not receive my words has one who judges him. The word I have spoken will judge him on the last day.49For I did not speak for myself, but it is the Father who sent me, who has given me the command about what to say and what to speak.50I know that his command is eternal life, so that is what I say—just as the Father has spoken to me, so I speak."

#### John 12:1

##### Six days before the Passover

The author uses these words to mark the beginning of a new event.

##### had raised from the dead

"had made alive again"

#### John 12:3

##### a litra

You may convert this to a the measure system used in your area. The word "litra" was used for measures of about 300 milliliters of liquids or about 300 grams of solids. Because the perfume was a liquid, the word here probably refers to the liquid measure as guessed by those who saw the size of the container.

##### perfume

This is a good-smelling liquid made by using the oils of pleasant smelling plants and flowers.

##### nard

This is a perfume made from a pink, bell-shaped flower in the mountains of Nepal, China, and India.

##### The house was filled with the fragrance of the perfume

"The scent of her perfume filled the house"

#### John 12:4

##### the one who would betray him

"the one who later enabled Jesus's enemies to seize him"

#### John 12:5

##### Why was this perfume not sold for three hundred denarii and given to the poor?

"This perfume could have been sold for three hundred denarii and the money could have been given to the poor!"

##### denarii

A denarius was the amount of silver that a common laborer could earn in one day of work.

#### John 12:6

##### he said this, not because he cared about the poor, but because he was a thief

"he said this because he was a thief. He did not care about the poor"

#### John 12:7

##### Allow her to keep what she has for the day of my burial

"Allow her to show how much she appreciates me! In this way she has prepared my body for burial"

#### John 12:8

##### You will always have the poor with you

"There will always be poor people among you, and you can help them whenever you want"

##### But you will not always have me

"But I will not always be here with you"

#### John 12:11

##### believed in Jesus

"were putting their trust in Jesus"

#### John 12:13

##### Hosanna

This means "May God save us now!"

##### Blessed

This expresses a desire for God to cause good things to happen to a person.

##### comes in the name of the Lord

"comes as the representative of the Lord" or "comes in the power of the Lord"

#### John 12:14

##### Jesus found a young donkey and sat on it

"he found a young donkey and sat on it, riding into the city"

##### as it was written

"as the prophets wrote in the Scripture"

#### John 12:15

##### daughter of Zion

"you people of Jerusalem"

#### John 12:16

##### His disciples did not understand these things

Here the words "these things" refer to the words that the prophet had written about Jesus.

##### when Jesus was glorified

"when God glorified Jesus"

##### they had done these things to him

The words "these things" refer to what the people did when Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a donkey

#### John 12:18

##### this sign

A "sign" is an event or occurrence that proves something is true. In this case, the "sign" of raising Lazarus proves that Jesus is the Messiah.

#### John 12:19

##### Look, you can do nothing good

"It seems like we can do nothing to stop him"

##### see, the world has gone after him

"It looks like everyone is becoming his disciple"

#### John 12:20

##### Now certain Greeks

The phrase "now certain" marks the introduction of new characters to the story.

##### Greeks ... to worship at the festival

"Greeks ... to worship God at the Passover festival"

#### John 12:21

##### Bethsaida

This was a town in the province of Galilee.

#### John 12:22

##### they told Jesus

"they told Jesus what the Greeks had said"

#### John 12:23

##### The hour has come for the Son of Man to be glorified

"God will soon honor me when I die and rise again"

#### John 12:24

##### unless a grain of wheat falls into the earth and dies ... it will bear much fruit

Just as a seed is planted and grows again into a plant that will bear much fruit, so will many people trust in Jesus after he is killed, buried, and raised back to life.

#### John 12:25

##### He who loves his life will lose it

"Whoever values his own life more than the lives of others will not receive eternal life"

##### he who hates his life in this world will keep it for eternal life

"whoever considers the lives of others as more important than his own life will live with God forever"

#### John 12:26

##### where I am, there will my servant also be

"when I am in heaven, my servant will also be there with me"

##### the Father will honor him

Here "Father" is an important title for God.

#### John 12:27

##### what should I say? 'Father, save me from this hour'?

"I will not pray, 'Father, save me from this hour!'"

##### Father

TThis refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### this hour

Here "this hour" is a metonym that represents when Jesus would suffer and die on the cross.

#### John 12:28

##### glorify your name

"make your glory known" or "reveal your glory"

##### a voice came from heaven

"God spoke from the heavens"

#### John 12:31

##### Now is the judgment of this world

"Now is the time for God to judge all of the people"

##### Now will the ruler of this world be thrown out

"Now is the time when I will destroy the power of Satan, who rules this world"

#### John 12:32

##### When I am lifted up from the earth

"When people raise me high on a cross"

##### will draw everyone to myself

Through his crucifixion, Jesus will provide a way for everyone to trust in him.

#### John 12:33

##### He said this to indicate what kind of death he would die

"He said this to let the people know how he would die"

#### John 12:34

##### The Son of Man must be lifted up

"The Son of Man must be lifted up on a cross"

##### Who is this Son of Man?

Possible meanings are 1) "What is the identity of this Son of Man? or 2) "What kind of Son of Man are you talking about?"

#### John 12:35

##### The light will still be with you for a short amount of time. Walk while you have the light, so that darkness does not overtake you. He who walks in the darkness does not know where he is going

"My words are like a light to you, to help you understand how to live as God wants you to. I will not be with you much longer. You need to follow my instructions while I am still with you. If you reject my words, it will be like walking in darkness and you cannot see where you are going"

#### John 12:36

##### While you have the light, believe in the light so that you may be sons of light

"While I am with you, believe what I teach so that God's truth will be in you"

#### John 12:38

##### so that the word of Isaiah the prophet would be fulfilled

"in order to fulfill the message of Isaiah the prophet"

##### Lord, who has believed our report, and to whom has the arm of the Lord been revealed?

"Lord, hardly anyone has believed our message, even though they have seen that you are powerfully able to save them!"

##### the arm of the Lord

The arm of the Lord refers to the Lord's ability to rescue with power.

#### John 12:40

##### he has hardened their heart ... understand with their heart

"he has made them stubborn ... truly understand"

##### and turn

"and they would repent"

#### John 12:42

##### so that they would not be banned from the synagogue

"so people would not stop them from going to the synagogue"

#### John 12:43

##### They loved the glory that comes from people more than the glory that comes from God

"They wanted people to praise them more than they wanted God to praise them"

#### John 12:44

##### Jesus cried out and said

"Jesus shouted out to the crowd that had gathered"

#### John 12:45

##### the one who sees me sees him who sent me

"the one who sees me sees God, who sent me"

#### John 12:46

##### I have come as a light into the world

"I have come to give light to the people of the world"

##### may not remain in the darkness

"may not continue to be spiritually blind"

##### the world

Here "the world" represents all of the people in the world.

#### John 12:47

##### If anyone hears my words but does not keep them, I do not judge him; for I have not come to judge the world, but to save the world

"If anyone hears my teaching and rejects it, I do not condemn him. I have not come to condemn people. Instead, I have come to save those who trust in me"

#### John 12:48

##### on the last day

"at the time when God judges people's sins"

#### John 12:49

##### Father

his refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 12:50

##### I know that his command is eternal life

"I know that the words that he commanded me to speak are the words that give life forever"

Chapter 13

1Now it was before the Festival of the Passover. Jesus knew that his hour had come to go out of this world and go to the Father. Having loved his own who were in the world, he loved them to the end.2Now the devil had already put it into the heart of Judas Iscariot son of Simon to betray Jesus. So during dinner,3Jesus—who knew that the Father had given everything over into his hands and that he had come from God and was going back to God—4got up from dinner and took off his outer clothing. Then he took a towel and wrapped it around himself.5Then he poured water into a basin and began to wash the feet of the disciples and dry them with the towel that he had put around himself.6He came to Simon Peter, and Peter said to him, "Lord, are you going to wash my feet?"7Jesus answered and said to him, "What I am doing you do not understand now, but you will understand this later."8Peter said to him, "You will never wash my feet." Jesus answered him, "If I do not wash you, you have no share with me."9Simon Peter said to him, "Lord, do not only wash my feet, but also my hands and my head."10Jesus said to him, "He who is bathed has no need, except to wash his feet, but he is completely clean; you are clean, but not everyone."11(For Jesus knew who would betray him; that is why he said, "Not all of you are clean.")

12So when Jesus had washed their feet and taken his garments and sat down again, he said to them, "Do you understand what I have done for you?13You call me 'teacher' and 'Lord,' and you are speaking correctly, because so I am.14If I then, the Lord and the Teacher, have washed your feet, you should also wash the feet of one another.15For I have given you an example so that you should also do just as I did for you.16Truly, truly, I say to you, a servant is not greater than his master; nor is a messenger greater than he who sent him.17If you know these things, you are blessed if you do them.18I am not speaking about all of you; I know those whom I have chosen—but this is so that the scripture will be fulfilled: 'He who eats my bread lifted up his heel against me.'19I tell you this now before it happens so that when it happens, you may believe that I AM.20Truly, truly, I say to you, whoever receives the one I send receives me, and whoever receives me receives the one who sent me."

21When Jesus said this, he was troubled in spirit. He testified and said, "Truly, truly, I say to you that one of you will betray me."22The disciples looked at each other, wondering of whom he was speaking.23One of his disciples, whom Jesus loved, was lying down at the table against Jesus' side.24Simon Peter motioned to this disciple and said, "Ask him who he is speaking about."25So he leaned back against the side of Jesus and said to him, "Lord, who is it?"26Then Jesus answered, "It is the one for whom I will dip the piece of bread and give it him." So when he had dipped the bread, he gave it to Judas son of Simon Iscariot.27Then after the bread, Satan entered into him, so Jesus said to him, "What you are doing, do it quickly."28Now no one who was lying down at the table knew why he said this to him.29Some thought that, since Judas had the moneybag, Jesus said to him, "Buy what we need to have for the festival," or that he should give something to the poor.30After Judas received the bread, he went out immediately. It was night.

31When Judas was gone, Jesus said, "Now the Son of Man is glorified, and God is glorified in him.32If God is glorified in him, God will also glorify the Son in himself, and he will glorify him at once.33Little children, I am with you for still a short amount of time. You will seek me, and as I said to the Jews, 'Where I am going, you cannot come.' Now I also say this to you.34I am giving you a new commandment, that you should love one another; as I have loved you, so also you should love one another.35By this everyone will know that you are my disciples, if you have love one for another."

36Simon Peter said to him, "Lord, where are you going?" Jesus answered, "Where I am going, you cannot follow me now, but you will follow later."37Peter said to him, "Lord, why can I not follow you now? I will lay down my life for you."38Jesus answered, "Will you lay down your life for me? Truly, truly, I say to you, the rooster will not crow before you have denied me three times."

#### John 13:1

##### loved

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

#### John 13:2

##### the devil had already put it into the heart of Judas Iscariot son of Simon to betray Jesus

"the devil had already caused Judas Iscariot, the son of Simon, to think about betraying Jesus"

#### John 13:3

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### had given everything over into his hands

"had given him complete power and authority over everything"

##### he had come from God and was going back to God

Jesus had always been with the Father, and would return there after his work on earth was finished.

#### John 13:4

##### got up from dinner and took off his outer clothing

Because the region was very dusty, it was customary for the host of a dinner to provide a servant to wash the feet of the guests. Jesus took off his outer clothing so he would look like a servant.

#### John 13:5

##### began to wash the feet of the disciples

Because the region was very dusty, it was customary for the host of a dinner to provide a servant to wash the feet of the guests. Jesus did the work of the servant by washing the disciples' feet.

#### John 13:6

##### Lord, are you going to wash my feet?

"Lord, it is not right for you to wash the feet of me, a sinner!"

#### John 13:8

##### If I do not wash you

"If I do not wash your feet"

##### you have no share with me

"you will not be my disciple" or "you will not belong to me"

#### John 13:10

##### He who is bathed has no need, except to wash his feet, but he is completely clean

"He who is bathed has no need, except to wash his feet, because he is completely clean" or "He who is bathed has no need, except to wash his feet; he is completely clean"

#### John 13:12

##### Do you understand what I have done for you?

"You need to understand what I have done for you!"

#### John 13:13

##### You call me 'teacher' and 'Lord,'

"You show me great respect when you call me 'teacher' and 'Lord.'"

#### John 13:15

##### you should also do just as I did for you

"you should also humbly serve each other"

#### John 13:17

##### you are blessed

"God will bless you"

#### John 13:18

##### this is so that the scripture will be fulfilled

"this is in order to fulfill the scripture"

##### He who eats my bread lifted up his heel against me

"The one who has pretended to be my friend has turned out to be an enemy"

#### John 13:19

##### I tell you this now before it happens

"I am telling you now what is going to happen before it happens"

##### I AM

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is identifying himself as Yahweh, who identified himself to Moses as "I AM," or 2) Jesus is saying, "I am the one I claim to be."

#### John 13:22

##### The disciples looked at each other, wondering of whom he was speaking.

"The disciples looked at each other and wondered: 'Who will betray Jesus?'"

#### John 13:23

##### One of his disciples, whom Jesus loved

This refers to John.

##### lying down at the table

During the time of Christ, Jews would often dine together in the Greek style, in which they lay on their sides on low couches.

##### Jesus' side

Lying with one's head against the side of another diner in the Greek style was considered to be the place of greatest friendship with him.

##### loved

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves.

#### John 13:26

##### Iscariot

This indicates that Judas was from the village of Kerioth.

#### John 13:27

##### Then after the bread

"Then after Judas took the bread"

##### Satan entered into him

"Satan took control of him" or "Satan started to command him"

##### so Jesus said to him

Here Jesus is speaking to Judas.

##### What you are doing, do it quickly

"Do quickly what you are planning to do"

#### John 13:29

##### that he should give something to the poor

"'Go and give some money to the poor'"

#### John 13:30

##### he went out immediately. It was night

"he went out immediately into the dark night"

#### John 13:31

##### Now the Son of Man is glorified, and God is glorified in him

"Now people are about to see how the Son of Man will receive honor and how God will receive honor through what the Son of Man is doing"

#### John 13:32

##### God will also glorify the Son in himself, and he will glorify him at once

"God himself will immediately give honor to the Son of Man"

#### John 13:33

##### Little children

Jesus uses the term "Little children" to communicate that he loves the disciples as though they were his children.

##### as I said to the Jews

"as I said to the Jewish leaders"

#### John 13:35

##### everyone

You may need to make explicit that this exaggeration refers only to those people who see how the disciples love each other.

#### John 13:37

##### lay down my life

"give up my life" or "die"

#### John 13:38

##### Will you lay down your life for me?

"You say that you will die for me, but the truth is that you will not!"

##### the rooster will not crow before you have denied me three times

"you will say that you do not know me three times before the rooster crows"

Chapter 14

1"Do not let your heart be troubled. You believe in God; believe also in me.2In my Father's house are many rooms. If it were not so, I would have told you, for I am going to prepare a place for you.3If I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again and receive you to myself, so that where I am you will also be.4You know the way to where I am going."5Thomas said to Jesus, "Lord, we do not know where you are going; how can we know the way?"6Jesus said to him, "I am the way, the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father except through me.7If you had known me, you would have known my Father also. From now on you know him and have seen him."8Philip said to Jesus, "Lord, show us the Father, and that will be enough for us."9Jesus said to him, "I have been with you for such a long time and you still do not know me, Philip? Whoever has seen me has seen the Father. How can you say, 'Show us the Father'?10Do you not believe that I am in the Father and the Father is in me? The words that I say to you I do not speak from my own authority, but the Father living in me is doing his work.11Believe me that I am in the Father, and the Father is in me, or else believe because of the works themselves.12Truly, truly, I say to you, he who believes in me will do the works that I do, and he will do greater works than these because I am going to the Father.13Whatever you ask in my name, I will do it so that the Father will be glorified in the Son.14If you ask me anything in my name, I will do it.15If you love me, you will keep my commandments,16and I will pray to the Father, and he will give you another Comforter so that he will be with you forever—17the Spirit of truth. The world cannot receive him because it does not see him or know him. But you know him, for he lives with you and will be in you.18I will not leave you as orphans; I will come back to you.19Yet a short amount of time and the world will no longer see me, but you will see me. Because I live, you will also live.20On that day you will know that I am in my Father, and that you are in me, and that I am in you.21He who has my commandments and keeps them is the one who loves me, and he who loves me will be loved by my Father, and I will love him and I will show myself to him."22Judas (not Iscariot) said to Jesus, "Lord, why is it that you will show yourself to us and not to the world?"23Jesus answered and said to him, "If anyone loves me, he will keep my word. My Father will love him, and we will come to him and we will make our home with him.24He who does not love me does not keep my words. The word that you hear is not from me but from the Father who sent me.

25I have said these things to you, while I am staying with you.26However, the Comforter—the Holy Spirit whom the Father will send in my name—he will teach you everything and he will remind you of everything that I said to you.27I leave you peace; I give you my peace. I do not give it as the world gives. Do not let your heart be troubled, and do not be afraid.28You heard that I said to you, 'I am going away, and I will come back to you.' If you loved me, you would be glad because I am going to the Father, for the Father is greater than I am.29Now I have told you before it happens so that, when it happens, you will believe.30I will no longer speak much with you, for the ruler of this world is coming. He has no power over me,31but in order that the world will know that I love the Father, I do just as the Father commanded me. Let us get up and go from here."

#### John 14:1

##### Do not let your heart be troubled

"Stop being so anxious and worried"

#### John 14:2

##### In my Father's house

This refers to heaven, where God lives.

##### many rooms

The word "room" can refer to a single room, or to a larger dwelling.

##### I am going to prepare a place for you

Jesus will prepare a place in heaven for every person who trusts in him. The "you" is plural and refers to all his disciples.

#### John 14:4

##### the way

Possible meanings of this metaphor are 1) "the way to God" or 2) "the one who takes people to God."

#### John 14:5

##### how can we know the way?

"how can we know how to get there?"

#### John 14:6

##### the truth

Possible meanings of this metaphor are 1) "the true person" or 2) "the one who speaks true words about God."

##### the life

"the one who can make people alive"

##### no one comes to the Father except through me

"everyone comes to the Father only through me" or "the only way anyone comes to the Father is through me"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 14:9

##### I have been with you for such a long time and you still do not know me, Philip?

"Philip, I have been with you disciples already for a very long time. You should know me by now!"

##### Whoever has seen me has seen the Father

To see Jesus, who is God the Son, is to see God the Father. This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### How can you say, 'Show us the Father'?

"So you really should not be saying, 'Show us the Father!'"

#### John 14:10

##### Do you not believe ... in me?

"You really should believe ... in me."

##### The words that I say to you I do not speak from my own authority

"What I am telling you is not from me" or "The words I tell you are not from me"

##### The words that I say to you

Here "you" is plural. Jesus is now speaking to all of his disciples.

#### John 14:11

##### I am in the Father, and the Father is in me

"I am one with the Father, and the Father is one with me" or "my Father and I are just as though we were one"

#### John 14:12

##### believes in me

This means to believe that Jesus is the Son of God.

#### John 14:13

##### Whatever you ask in my name

"Whatever you ask, using my authority"

##### so that the Father will be glorified in the Son

"so I can show everyone how great my Father is"

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### John 14:14

##### If you ask me anything in my name, I will do it

"If you ask me anything as one of my followers, I will do it" or "Whatever you ask of me, I will do it because you belong to me"

#### John 14:16

##### another Comforter

This refers to the Holy Spirit.

#### John 14:17

##### Spirit of truth

This refers to the Holy Spirit who teaches people what is true about God.

##### The world cannot receive him because it does not

"The unbelieving people in this world will never welcome him because they do not" or "Those who oppose God will not accept him because they do not"

#### John 14:18

##### leave you as orphans

"leave you with no one to care for you"

#### John 14:19

##### the world

"the unbelievers"

#### John 14:20

##### you will know that I am in my Father

"you will know that my Father and I are just like one person"

##### you are in me, and that I am in you

"you and I are just like one person"

#### John 14:21

##### he who loves me will be loved by my Father

"my Father will love anyone who loves me"

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 14:22

##### Judas (not Iscariot)

This refers to another disciple whose name was Judas, not to the disciple who was from the village of Kerioth who betrayed Jesus.

##### why is it that you will show yourself to us

"why will you reveal yourself only to us" or "why will you only let us see how wonderful you are"

##### not to the world

"not to those who do not belong to God"

#### John 14:23

##### If anyone loves me, he will keep my word

"The one who loves me will do what I have told him to do"

##### we will come to him and we will make our home with him

"we will come to live with him, and will have a personal relationship with him"

#### John 14:24

##### The word that you hear is not from me but from the Father who sent me

"The things I have told you are not things that I have decided to say on my own"

##### The word

"The message"

##### that you hear

Here when Jesus says "you" he is speaking to all of his disciples.

#### John 14:27

##### world

The "world" refers to those people who do not love God.

##### Do not let your heart be troubled, and do not be afraid

"So stop being anxious, and do not be afraid"

#### John 14:28

##### I am going to the Father

"I am going back to the Father"

##### the Father is greater than I

"the Father has greater authority than I have here"

#### John 14:30

##### the ruler of this world is coming

"Satan, who rules this world, is coming to attack me"

#### John 14:31

##### in order that the world will know

"in order that the ones who do not belong to God may know"

Chapter 15

1"I am the true vine, and my Father is the gardener.2He takes away every branch in me that does not bear fruit, and he prunes every branch that bears fruit so that it will bear more fruit.3You are already clean because of the message that I have spoken to you.4Remain in me, and I in you. Just as a branch cannot bear fruit by itself unless it remains in the vine, so neither can you, unless you remain in me.5I am the vine, you are the branches. He who remains in me and I in him, he bears much fruit, for without me you can do nothing.6If anyone does not remain in me, he is thrown away like a branch and dries up, and they gather the branches and throw them into the fire, and they are burned up.7If you remain in me, and if my words remain in you, ask whatever you wish, and it will be done for you.8My Father is glorified in this, that you bear much fruit and so prove that you are my disciples.9As the Father has loved me, I have also loved you. Remain in my love.10If you keep my commandments, you will remain in my love, as I have kept the commandments of my Father and remain in his love.11I have spoken these things to you so that my joy will be in you and so that your joy will be made full.12This is my commandment, that you love one another as I have loved you.13No one has greater love than this—that one lays down his life for his friends.14You are my friends if you do the things that I command you.15No longer do I call you servants, for the servant does not know what his master is doing. I have called you friends, for everything that I heard from my Father I have made known to you.16You did not choose me, but I chose you and appointed you so that you would go and bear fruit, and that your fruit should remain. This is so that whatever you ask of the Father in my name, he will give it to you.17These things I command you, so that you love one another.18If the world hates you, know that it has hated me before it hated you.19If you were of the world, the world would love you as its own. But because you are not of the world and because I chose you out of the world, therefore the world hates you.20Remember the word that I said to you, 'A servant is not greater than his master.' If they persecuted me, they will also persecute you; if they kept my word, they will also keep yours.21They will do all these things to you because of my name, because they do not know him who sent me.22If I had not come and spoken to them, they would not have sin, but now they have no excuse for their sin.23He who hates me also hates my Father.24If I had not done the works that no one else did among them, they would have no sin, but now they have seen and hated both me and my Father.25But this is in order to fulfill the word that is written in their law, 'They hated me without a cause.'26When the Comforter comes—whom I will send to you from the Father, that is, the Spirit of truth, who goes out from the Father—he will testify about me.27You also must testify, because you have been with me from the beginning.

#### John 15:1

##### I am the true vine

"I am like a vine that produces good fruit"

##### my Father is the gardener

"my Father is like a gardener"

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 15:2

##### He takes away every branch in me that does not bear fruit

Here "every branch" represents people, and "bear fruit" represents living in a way that pleases God.

##### takes away

"cuts off and takes away"

##### prunes every branch

"trims every branch"

#### John 15:3

##### You are already clean because of the message that I have spoken to you

"It is as if you have already been pruned and are clean branches because you have obeyed what I have taught you"

##### you

The word "you" throughout this passage is plural and refers to the disciples of Jesus.

#### John 15:4

##### Remain in me, and I in you

"If you remain joined to me, I will remain joined to you" or "Remain joined to me, and I will remain joined to you"

##### unless you remain in me

"unless you stay joined to me and depend upon me for everything"

#### John 15:5

##### I am the vine, you are the branches

"I am like a vine, and you are like branches that are attached to the vine"

##### He who remains in me and I in him

"He who stays joined to me and I stay joined to him"

##### he bears much fruit

"you will bear much fruit"

#### John 15:6

##### he is thrown away like a branch and dries up

"the vinedresser throws him away like a branch and it dries up"

##### they are burned up

"the fire burns them"

#### John 15:7

##### ask whatever you wish

"ask God whatever you wish"

#### John 15:8

##### My Father is glorified in this, that

"It causes people to honor my Father when"

##### My Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### in this, that you bear much fruit

"when you live in a way that pleases him"

##### prove that you are my disciples

"show you are my disciples" or "demonstrate you are my disciples"

#### John 15:9

##### As the Father has loved me, I have also loved you

Jesus shares the love that God the Father has for him with those who trust in him. Father refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### Remain in my love

"Continue to accept my love"

#### John 15:10

##### If you keep my commandments, you will remain in my love, as I have kept the commandments of my Father and remain in his love

"When you do the things I have told you to do, you are living in my love, just as I obey my Father and live in his love"

#### John 15:11

##### I have spoken these things to you so that my joy will be in you

"I have told you these things so that you will have the same kind of joy that I have"

##### so that your joy will be made full

"so that you will be completely joyful" or "so that your joy may have nothing missing"

#### John 15:15

##### everything that I heard from my Father I have made known to you

"I have told you everything my Father told me"

#### John 15:16

##### You did not choose me

"You did not decide to become my disciples"

##### go and bear fruit, and that your fruit should remain

"live lives that please God so that the results of what you do last forever"

##### whatever you ask of the Father in my name, he will give it to you

"Because you belong to me, whatever you ask of the Father, he will give it to you"

#### John 15:18

##### the world

the people who do not belong to God and are opposed to him

#### John 15:19

##### love

This refers to human, brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

#### John 15:20

##### Remember the word that I said to you

"Remember the message that I spoke to you"

#### John 15:21

##### because of my name

"because you belong to me"

#### John 15:22

##### If I had not come and spoken to them, they would not have sin, but now they have no excuse for their sin

"Because I have come and told them God's message, they have no excuse when God judges them for their sins"

#### John 15:23

##### He who hates me also hates my Father

To hate God the Son is to hate God the Father.

#### John 15:24

##### If I had not done the works ... they would have no sin, but

"Because I have done the works ... they have sin, and"

##### they would have no sin

"they would not be guilty of sin."

##### they have seen and hated both me and my Father

To hate God the Son is to hate God the Father.

#### John 15:25

##### to fulfill the word that is written in their law

"to fulfill the prophecy in their law"

##### law

This refers generally to the entire Old Testament, which contained all of God's instructions for his people.

#### John 15:26

##### will send ... from the Father ... the Spirit of truth ... he will testify about me

God the Father would soon send God the Spirit to show the world that Jesus is God the Son.

##### the Spirit of truth

"the Spirit who tells the truth about God and me"

#### John 15:27

##### You also must testify

You also must tell everyone what you know about me"

##### You also must

"You also will"

##### the beginning

"from the very first days when I began teaching the people and doing miracles"

Chapter 16

1"I have spoken these things to you so that you will not fall away.2They will throw you out of the synagogues. But the hour is coming when everyone who kills you will think that he is offering a service to God.3They will do these things because they have not known the Father nor me.4I have spoken these things to you so that when their hour comes, you will remember that I told you about them. I did not tell you about these things in the beginning, because I was with you.5But now I go to him who sent me, yet none of you asks me, 'Where are you going?'6But because I have said these things to you, sorrow has filled your heart.7But truly I tell you, it is better for you that I go away. For if I do not go away, the Comforter will not come to you, but if I go, I will send him to you.8When he comes, the Comforter will prove the world to be wrong about sin, about righteousness, and about judgment—9about sin, because they do not believe in me;10about righteousness, because I am going to the Father, and you will no longer see me;11and about judgment, because the ruler of this world has been judged.12I have many things to say to you, but you cannot bear them now.13But when he, the Spirit of truth, comes, he will guide you into all the truth, for he will not speak from himself. But he will say whatever he hears, and he will tell you things that are to come.14He will glorify me, because he will take from what is mine and he will tell it to you.15Everything that the Father has is mine. Therefore, I said that the Spirit will take from what is mine and he will tell it to you.16In a short amount of time you will no longer see me, and after another short amount of time you will see me."17Then some of his disciples said to one another, "What is this that he says to us, 'A short amount of time you will no longer see me and after another short amount of time you will see me,' and, 'Because I go to the Father'?"18Therefore they said, "What is this that he says, 'A short amount of time'? We do not know what he is talking about."19Jesus saw that they wanted to ask him, and he said to them, "Is this what you are asking each other, what I meant by saying, 'In a short amount of time and you will no longer see me, and again in a short amount of time and you will see me'?20Truly, truly, I say to you, you will weep and lament, but the world will be glad. You will be sorrowful, but your sorrow will be turned into joy.21When a woman gives birth, she has sorrow because her hour has come, but when she has given birth to the child, she no longer remembers her tribulation because of her joy that a man has been born into the world.22So you have sorrow now, but I will see you again, and your heart will be glad, and no one will be able to take away your joy from you.23On that day you will not ask me anything. Truly, truly, I say to you, if you ask anything of the Father in my name, he will give it to you.24Until now you have not asked anything in my name. Ask and you will receive, so that your joy will be fulfilled.

25"I have said these things to you in figures of speech, but the hour is coming when I will no longer speak to you in figures of speech, but instead I will tell you plainly about the Father.26On that day you will ask in my name and I do not say to you that I will pray to the Father for you,27for the Father himself loves you because you have loved me and because you have believed that I came from God.28I came from the Father, and I have come into the world. Again, I am leaving the world and I am going to the Father."29His disciples said, "See, now you are speaking plainly and you are not using figures of speech.30Now we know that you know all things, and you do not need anyone to ask you questions. Because of this, we believe that you have come from God."31Jesus answered them, "Do you believe now?32See, the hour is coming, yes, and has indeed come, when you will be scattered, everyone to his own home, and you will leave me alone. Yet I am not alone because the Father is with me.33I have spoken these things to you so that you will have peace in me. In the world you have tribulation. But have courage! I have conquered the world."

#### John 16:1

##### you will not fall away

"you will not stop trusting" or "you will not stop believing in me because of the difficulties you must face"

#### John 16:2

##### the hour is coming when everyone who kills you will think that he is offering a service to God

"it will someday happen that people who kill you will think they are doing something good for God."

#### John 16:3

##### They will do these things because they have not known the Father nor me

They will kill some believers because they do not know God the Father or Jesus.

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 16:4

##### when their hour comes

"when they cause you to suffer"

##### in the beginning

"when you first started following me"

#### John 16:6

##### sorrow has filled your heart

"you are now very sad"

#### John 16:7

##### if I do not go away, the Comforter will not come to you

"the Comforter will come to you only if I go away"

##### Comforter

This is a title for the Holy Spirit, who will be with the disciples after Jesus goes away.

#### John 16:8

##### the Comforter will prove the world to be wrong about sin

When the Holy Spirit came, he began to show people that they were sinners.

##### Comforter

This refers to the Holy Spirit. See how you translated this in John 14:16.

##### world

This refers to the people in the world.

#### John 16:9

##### about sin, because they do not believe in me

"they are guilty of sin because they do not trust in me"

#### John 16:10

##### about righteousness, because I am going to the Father, and you will no longer see me

"when I return to God, and they see me no more, they will know that I did the right things"

#### John 16:11

##### about judgment, because the ruler of this world has been judged

"God will hold them accountable and will punish them for their sins, just as he will punish Satan, the one who rules this world"

##### because the ruler of this world has

"because Satan, who rules this world, has"

#### John 16:12

##### you cannot bear them

"you cannot understand them" Or 2) being able to obey the words. Alternate translation: "you cannot obey them"

#### John 16:13

##### the Spirit of truth

This is the Holy Spirit, who will tell the people the truth about God.

##### he will guide you into all the truth

"he will teach you all the spiritual truth you need to know"

##### he will say whatever he hears

"he will say whatever God tells him to say"

#### John 16:14

##### he will take from what is mine and he will tell it to you

"he will reveal to you that what I have said and done are indeed true"

#### John 16:15

##### the Spirit will take from what is mine and he will tell it to you

"The Holy Spirit will tell everyone that my words and works are true"

#### John 16:17

##### A short amount of time you will no longer see me

The disciples did not understand that this refers to Jesus's death on the cross.

##### after another short amount of time you will see me

Possible meanings are 1) This could refer to Jesus's resurrection or 2) This could refer to Jesus's coming at the end of time.

#### John 16:19

##### Is this what you are asking each other, what I meant by saying, ... see me'?

"You are asking each other what I meant when I said, ... see me.'"

#### John 16:20

##### Truly, truly, I say to you

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true.

##### but the world will be glad

"but the people who oppose God will be glad"

##### but your sorrow will be turned into joy

"but your sadness will become joy" or "but afterwards instead of being sad you will be very happy"

#### John 16:22

##### your heart will be glad

"you will be very happy" or "you will be very joyful"

#### John 16:23

##### if you ask anything of the Father in my name, he will give it to you

"if you ask anything of the Father, he will give it to you because you belong to me"

##### in my name

"because you are my followers" or "on my authority"

#### John 16:24

##### your joy will be fulfilled

"you will become very joyful"

#### John 16:25

##### in figures of speech

"in language that is not clear"

##### the hour is coming

"it will soon happen"

##### tell you plainly about the Father

"tell you about the Father in a way that you will clearly understand"

#### John 16:26

##### you will ask in my name

"you will ask because you belong to me"

#### John 16:27

##### the Father himself loves you because you have loved me

When a person loves Jesus, the Son, they also love the Father, because the Father and the Son are one.

#### John 16:28

##### I came from the Father ... I am leaving the world and I am going to the Father

After his death and resurrection, Jesus would return to God the Father.

#### John 16:31

##### Do you believe now?

"So, now you finally place your trust in me!

#### John 16:32

##### you will be scattered

"others will scatter you"

#### John 16:33

##### so that you will have peace in me

"so that you may have inner peace because of your relationship with me"

##### I have conquered the world

"I have conquered the troubles of this world"

Chapter 17

1After Jesus said these things, he lifted up his eyes to the heavens and said, "Father, the hour has come, glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you—2just as you gave him authority over all flesh so that he would give eternal life to everyone whom you have given him.3This is eternal life: That they know you, the only true God, and him whom you sent, Jesus Christ.4I glorified you on the earth. I have finished the work that you have given me to do.5Now, Father, glorify me along with yourself with the glory that I had with you before the world was made.6I revealed your name to the people whom you gave me from the world. They were yours, and you gave them to me, and they have kept your word.7Now they know that everything that you have given me comes from you,8for I have given them all the words that you gave me. They received them and truly knew that I came from you, and they believed that you sent me.9I pray for them. I do not pray for the world but for those whom you have given me, for they are yours.10Everything that is mine is yours, and yours is mine, and I am glorified in them.11I am no longer in the world, but these people are in the world, and I am coming to you. Holy Father, keep them in your name that you have given me so that they will be one, just as we are one.12While I was with them, I kept them safe in your name, which you have given me. I guarded them, and not one of them was destroyed, except for the son of destruction, so that the scriptures would be fulfilled.13Now I am coming to you, but I am saying these things in the world so that they will have my joy fulfilled in themselves.14I have given them your word, and the world has hated them because they are not of the world, just as I am not of the world.15I do not ask for you to take them away from the world, but for you to keep them safe from the evil one.16They are not of the world, just as I am not of the world.17Set them apart by the truth. Your word is truth.18Just as you sent me into the world, so I have sent them into the world.19For their sakes I have set myself apart, so that they themselves may also be set apart in truth.20I pray not only for these, but also for those who will believe in me through their word21so that they will all be one, just as you, Father, are in me, and I am in you. May they also be in us so that the world will believe that you have sent me.22The glory that you gave me, I have given to them, so that they will be one, just as we are one:23I in them, and you in me—that they may be brought to complete unity, so that the world will know that you sent me, and that you have loved them just as you loved me.24Father, I want those you have given me to be with me where I am, and to see my glory, the glory you gave me because you loved me before the foundation of the world.25Righteous Father, the world did not know you, but I know you; and these know that you sent me.26I made your name known to them, and I will make it known so that the love with which you have loved me will be in them, and I will be in them."

#### John 17:1

##### he lifted up his eyes to the heavens

"he looked up to the sky"

##### Father ... glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you

Jesus asks God the Father to honor him so that he can give honor to God.

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### the hour has come

"it is time for me to suffer and die"

#### John 17:2

##### all flesh

This refers to all people.

#### John 17:3

##### This is eternal life ... know you, the only true God, and ... Jesus Christ

Eternal life is to know the only true God, God the Father, and also God the Son.

#### John 17:4

##### the work that you have given me to do

Here "work" refers to Jesus's entire earthly ministry.

#### John 17:5

##### Father, glorify me along with yourself with the glory that I had with you before the world was made

"Father, give me honor by bringing me into your presence as as I was before we made the world"

#### John 17:6

##### I revealed your name

"I taught who you really are and what you are like"

##### from the world

Here "world refers to the people of the world that oppose God. This means that God has separated the believers spiritually from the people who do not believe in him.

##### kept your word

"obeyed your teaching"

#### John 17:9

##### I do not pray for the world

"I am not praying for those who do not belong to you"

#### John 17:11

##### in the world

"among the people who do not belong to you"

##### Holy Father, keep them ... that they will be one ... as we are one

Jesus asks the Father to keep those who trust in him so they can have a close relationship with God.

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### keep them in your name that you have given me

"keep them safe by your power and authority, which you have given me"

#### John 17:12

##### I kept them safe in your name

"I kept them safe with your protection"

##### not one of them was destroyed, except for the son of destruction

"the only one among them who was destroyed was the son of destruction"

##### the son of destruction

"the one whom you long ago decided you would destroy"

##### so that the scriptures would be fulfilled

"to fulfill the prophecy about him in the scriptures"

#### John 17:13

##### the world

These refers to the people who live in the world.

##### so that they will have my joy fulfilled in themselves

"so that you might give them great joy"

#### John 17:14

##### I have given them your word

"I have spoken your message to them"

##### the world ... because they are not of the world ... I am not of the world

"the people who oppose you ... because they do not belong to those who do not believe ... I do not belong to them"

#### John 17:15

##### keep them safe from the evil one

"protect them from Satan, the evil one"

#### John 17:17

##### Set them apart by the truth

"Make them your own people by teaching them the truth"

##### Your word is truth

"Your message is true" or "What you say is true"

#### John 17:18

##### into the world

"to the people of the world"

#### John 17:19

##### so that they themselves may also be set apart in truth

"so that they may also truly set themselves apart to you"

#### John 17:20

##### those who will believe in me through their word

"those who will believe in me because these teach about me"

#### John 17:21

##### they will all be one, just as you, Father, are in me, and I am in you. May they also be in us

Those who trust in Jesus become united with the Father and the Son when they believe.

##### the world

"the people who do not know God"

#### John 17:22

##### The glory that you gave me, I have given to them

"I have honored my followers just as you have honored me"

##### so that they will be one, just as we are one

"so that you can unite them just as you have united us"

#### John 17:23

##### that they may be brought to complete unity

"that they may be completely united"

##### that the world will know

"that all the people will know"

##### loved

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves.

#### John 17:24

##### where I am

"with me in heaven"

##### to see my glory

"to see my greatness"

##### before the foundation of the world

"before the world was created" or "before you created the world"

#### John 17:25

##### Righteous Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### the world did not know you

"those who do not belong to you do not know what you are like"

#### John 17:26

##### I made your name known to them, and I will make it known

"I revealed to them what you are like, and I will continue to do that"

Chapter 18

1After Jesus spoke these words, he went out with his disciples to the other side of the Kidron Brook, where there was a garden into which he and his disciples entered.2Now Judas, who was going to betray him, also knew the place, for Jesus often met there with his disciples.3Then Judas, leading a company of soldiers and some officers from the chief priests and Pharisees, went there with lanterns, torches, and weapons.4Then Jesus, having known all the things that would happen to him, went forward and asked them, "Who are you looking for?"5They answered him, "Jesus of Nazareth." Jesus said to them, "I am." Judas, who betrayed him, was also standing with the soldiers.6So when he said to them, "I am," they went backward and fell to the ground.7Then again he asked them, "Who are you looking for?" Again they said, "Jesus of Nazareth."8Jesus answered, "I told you that I am. So if you are looking for me, let these go."9This was in order to fulfill the word that he said: "Of those whom you have given me, I lost no one."10Then Simon Peter, who had a sword, drew it and struck the servant of the high priest and cut off his right ear. Now the name of the servant was Malchus.11Jesus said to Peter, "Put the sword back into its sheath. Should I not drink the cup that the Father has given me?"

12So a company of soldiers and the captain, and the officers of the Jews, seized Jesus and tied him up.13They led him first to Annas, for he was father-in-law of Caiaphas, who was high priest that year.14Now Caiaphas was the one who had given the advice to the Jews that it would be better that one man die for the people.

15Simon Peter followed Jesus, and so did another disciple. Now that disciple was known to the high priest, and he entered with Jesus into the courtyard of the high priest;16but Peter was standing at the door outside. So the other disciple, who was known to the high priest, went out and spoke to the doorkeeper, and he brought Peter in.17Then the female servant, the doorkeeper, said to Peter, "Are you not also one of the disciples of this man?" He said, "I am not."18Now the servants and the officers were standing there, and they had made a charcoal fire, for it was cold, and they were warming themselves. Peter was also with them, standing there and warming himself.

19The high priest then asked Jesus about his disciples and his teaching.20Jesus answered him, "I have spoken openly to the world. I was always teaching in synagogues and in the temple where all the Jews come together. I said nothing in secret.21Why did you ask me? Ask those who have heard me about what I said. Look, these people know what I said."22When Jesus had said this, one of the officers standing there struck Jesus and said, "Is that how you answer the high priest?"23Jesus answered him, "If I spoke wrongly, testify about the wrong, but if rightly, why do you hit me?"24Then Annas sent him tied up to Caiaphas the high priest.

25Now Simon Peter was standing and warming himself. The people then said to him, "Are you not also one of his disciples?" He denied it and said, "I am not."26One of the servants of the high priest, who was a relative of the man whose ear Peter had cut off, said, "Did I not see you in the garden with him?"27Then Peter denied it again; and immediately the rooster crowed.

28Then they led Jesus from Caiaphas to the government headquarters. It was early in the morning, and they did not enter the government headquarters so that they would not be defiled but would be able to eat the Passover.29So Pilate went out to them and said, "What accusation are you bringing against this man?"30They answered and said to him, "If this man was not an evildoer, we would not have given him over to you."31Pilate therefore said to them, "Take him yourselves, and judge him according to your law." The Jews said to him, "It is not lawful for us to put any man to death."32They said this so that the word of Jesus would be fulfilled which he had spoken to indicate by what kind of death he would die.

33Then Pilate entered the government headquarters again and called Jesus, and he said to him, "Are you the King of the Jews?"34Jesus answered, "Do you speak from yourself, or did others speak to you about me?"35Pilate answered, "I am not a Jew, am I? Your own people and the chief priests gave you over to me. What did you do?"36Jesus answered, "My kingdom is not of this world. If my kingdom were part of this world, then my servants would fight so that I would not be given over to the Jews. But now my kingdom is not from here."37Pilate then said to him, "Are you a king then?" Jesus answered, "You say that I am a king. For this purpose I have been born, and for this purpose I have come into the world, to testify to the truth. Everyone who belongs to the truth listens to my voice."38Pilate said to him, "What is truth?" When he had said this, he went out again to the Jews and said to them, "I find no guilt in this man.39But you have the custom that I release one person to you at the Passover. So do you want me to release the King of the Jews to you?"40Then they cried out again and said, "Not this man, but Barabbas." Now Barabbas was a revolutionary.

#### John 18:1

##### After Jesus spoke these words

The author uses these words to mark the beginning of a new event.

##### the Kidron Brook

This was a low place in Jerusalem separating the Temple Mount from the Mount of Olives. It has a small stream in it only after heavy rains. Many modern English translations read, "the Kidron Valley"

##### where there was a garden

"where there was a grove of olive trees"

#### John 18:4

##### Then Jesus, who knew all the things that were happening to him

"Then Jesus, who knew everything that was about to happen to him"

#### John 18:5

##### Jesus of Nazareth

"Jesus, the man from Nazareth"

##### I am

"I am he"

##### who betrayed him

"who handed him over"

#### John 18:6

##### I am

"I am he"

##### fell to the ground

"fell down because of Jesus's power"

#### John 18:7

##### Jesus of Nazareth

"Jesus, the man from Nazareth"

#### John 18:8

##### I am

"I am he"

#### John 18:9

##### This was in order to fulfill the word that he said

"This happened in order to fulfill the words that he had said when he was praying to his Father"

#### John 18:10

##### Malchus

a male servant of the high priest

#### John 18:11

##### sheath

the cover for a knife or sword that keeps the knife or sword from cutting the owner

##### Should I not drink the cup that the Father has given me?

"I must surely drink the cup that the Father has given to me!"

##### the cup

Here "cup" refers to the suffering that Jesus must endure.

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 18:12

##### the Jews

"the Jewish leaders"

##### seized Jesus and tied him up

"captured Jesus and tied him up to prevent him from escaping"

#### John 18:15

##### Now that disciple was known to the high priest, and he entered with Jesus

"Now the high priest knew that disciple so he was able to enter with Jesus"

#### John 18:16

##### So the other disciple, who was known to the high priest

"So the other disciple, whom the high priest knew"

##### the doorkeeper

The doorkeeper was a woman.

##### and he brought Peter in

The word "he" refers to the other disciple.

#### John 18:17

##### Are you not also one of the disciples of this man?

"You are also one of the arrested man's disciples! Are you not?"

#### John 18:18

##### Now the servants and the officers were standing there, and they had made a charcoal fire, for it was cold, and they were warming themselves

"It was cold, so the high priest's servants and temple guards made a charcoal fire and were standing and warming themselves around it"

#### John 18:19

##### The high priest

This was Caiphas

##### about his disciples and his teaching

"about his disciples and what he had been teaching the people"

#### John 18:20

##### I have spoken openly to the world

Here "the world" emphasizes that Jesus has spoken openly.

##### where all the Jews come together

Here "all the Jews" emphasizes that Jesus spoke where anyone who wanted to hear him could hear him.

#### John 18:21

##### Why did you ask me?

"You should not be asking me these questions!"

#### John 18:22

##### Is that how you answer the high priest?

"That is not how you should answer the high priest!"

#### John 18:23

##### testify about the wrong

"tell me what I said that was wrong"

##### if rightly, why do you hit me?

"if I said only what was right, you should not be hitting me!"

#### John 18:25

##### Are you not also one of his disciples?

"You are also one of the arrested man's disciples, are you not?"

#### John 18:26

##### Did I not see you in the garden with him?

"I saw you in the garden with him, did I not?"

#### John 18:27

##### Then Peter denied it again

"Peter denied him again"

##### immediately the rooster crowed

"immediately the rooster crowed, just as Jesus had said would happen"

#### John 18:28

##### Then they led Jesus from Caiaphas

"Then they led Jesus from Caiaphas' house"

##### they did not enter the government headquarters so that they would not be defiled

"they themselves remained outside Pilate's headquarters because Pilate was a Gentile. They did not want to become defiled"

#### John 18:30

##### If this man was not an evildoer, we would not have given him over to you

"This man is an evildoer, and we had to hand him over to you"

#### John 18:31

##### The Jews said to him

"The Jewish leaders said to him"

##### It is not lawful for us to put any man to death

"According to Roman law, we cannot put a person to death"

#### John 18:32

##### so that the word of Jesus would be fulfilled which he had spoken

"in order to fulfill what Jesus had said earlier"

##### to indicate by what kind of death he would die

"regarding how he would die"

#### John 18:35

##### I am not a Jew, am I?

"Well I am certainly not a Jew, and I have no interest in these matters!"

##### Your own people

"Your fellow Jews"

#### John 18:36

##### My kingdom is not of this world

Possible meanings are 1) "My kingdom is not part of this world" or 2) "I do not need this world's permission to rule as their king" or "It is not from this world that I have authority to be king."

##### so that I would not be given over to the Jews

"and would prevent the Jewish leaders from arresting me"

##### the Jews

This refers to the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus.

#### John 18:37

##### Are you a king then?

“So, you are a king.”

##### testify to the truth

"tell people the truth about God"

##### Everyone who belongs to the truth listens to my voice

"Everyone who belongs to the truth listens to the things I say" or "me"

#### John 18:38

##### What is truth?

"No one can know what is true!"

##### the Jews

Here "Jews" refers to the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus.

#### John 18:40

##### Not this man, but Barabbas

"No! Do not release this man! Release Barabbas instead"

##### Now Barabbas was a revolutionary

Here John provides background information about Barabbas.

##### revolutionary

person who wants to take over the government

Chapter 19

1Then Pilate took Jesus and whipped him.2The soldiers wove a crown of thorns. They put it on the head of Jesus and dressed him with a purple garment.3They came to him and said, "Hail, King of the Jews!" and they struck him.

4Then Pilate went outside again and said to them, "See, I am bringing him outside to you so that you will know that I find no guilt in him."5So Jesus came out, wearing the crown of thorns and the purple garment. Pilate said to them, "Look, here is the man!"

6When therefore the chief priests and the officers saw Jesus, they cried out and said, "Crucify him, crucify him!"

Pilate said to them, "Take him yourselves and crucify him, for I find no guilt in him."7The Jews answered him, "We have a law, and according to that law he has to die because he claimed to be the Son of God."8When Pilate heard this statement, he was even more afraid,9and he entered the government headquarters again and said to Jesus, "Where do you come from?" But Jesus gave him no answer.10Then Pilate said to him, "Are you not speaking to me? Do you not know that I have authority to release you, and authority to crucify you?"11Jesus answered him, "You do not have any authority over me except for what has been given to you from above. Therefore, he who gave me over to you has a greater sin."12At this answer, Pilate tried to release him, but the Jews cried out, saying, "If you release this man, you are not a friend of Caesar. Everyone who makes himself a king speaks against Caesar."

13When Pilate heard these words, he brought Jesus out and sat down in the judgment seat in a place called "The Pavement," but in the Aramaic language, "Gabbatha."14Now it was the day of preparation for the Passover, at about the sixth hour. Pilate said to the Jews, "See, here is your king!"

15They cried out, "Away with him, away with him; crucify him!"

Pilate said to them, "Should I crucify your King?"

The chief priests answered, "We have no king but Caesar."16Then Pilate gave Jesus over to them to be crucified.

17Then they took Jesus, and he went out, carrying the cross for himself, to the place called "The Place of a Skull," which in the Aramaic language is called "Golgotha."18They crucified Jesus there, and with him two other men, one on each side, with Jesus in the middle.19Pilate also wrote a sign and put it on the cross. There it was written: JESUS OF NAZARETH, THE KING OF THE JEWS.20Many of the Jews read this sign because the place where Jesus was crucified was near the city. The sign was written in Aramaic, in Latin, and in Greek.21Then the chief priests of the Jews said to Pilate, "Do not write, 'The King of the Jews,' but rather, 'This one said, "I am King of the Jews."'"

22Pilate answered, "What I have written I have written."

23When the soldiers crucified Jesus, they took his clothes, divided them into four shares, one for each of them; and also the tunic. Now the tunic was seamless, woven in one piece from the top.24Then they said to each other, "Let us not tear it, but instead let us cast lots for it to decide whose it will be." This happened so that the scripture would be fulfilled which said,"They divided my garments among themselvesand cast lots for my clothing." This is what the soldiers did.

25Now standing beside Jesus' cross were his mother, his mother's sister, Mary the wife of Clopas, and Mary Magdalene.26When Jesus saw his mother and the disciple whom he loved standing nearby, he said to his mother, "Woman, see, your son!"27Then he said to the disciple, "See, your mother!" From that hour the disciple took her to his own home.

28After this, knowing that everything was now accomplished and so that the scriptures would be fulfilled, Jesus said, "I am thirsty."29A container full of sour wine was placed there, so they put a sponge full of the sour wine on a hyssop staff and lifted it up to his mouth.30When Jesus had taken the sour wine, he said, "It is finished." He bowed his head and gave up his spirit.

31Then the Jews, because it was the day of preparation, and so that the bodies would not remain on the cross during the Sabbath (for that Sabbath was especially important), asked Pilate to break their legs and to remove them.32Then the soldiers came and broke the legs of the first man and of the second man who had been crucified with Jesus.33When they came to Jesus, they saw that he was already dead, so they did not break his legs.34However, one of the soldiers pierced his side with a spear, and immediately blood and water came out.35The one who saw this has testified, and his testimony is true. He knows that what he said is true so that you may also believe.36For these things happened in order to fulfill scripture, "Not one of his bones will be broken."37Again, another scripture says, "They will look at him whom they pierced."

38After these things, Joseph of Arimathea, since he was a disciple of Jesus (but secretly for fear of the Jews), asked Pilate if he could take away the body of Jesus. Pilate gave him permission. So Joseph came and took away his body.39Nicodemus also came—he who at first had come to Jesus by night. He brought a mixture of myrrh and aloes, about one hundred litras.40So they took the body of Jesus and wrapped it in linen cloths with the spices, as was the custom of the Jews to bury bodies.41Now in the place where he was crucified there was a garden; and in the garden was a new tomb in which no person had yet been buried.42Because it was the day of preparation for the Jews and because the tomb was close by, they laid Jesus in it.

#### John 19:1

##### Then Pilate took Jesus and whipped him

"Then Pilate's soldiers took Jesus out of the room and whipped him"

#### John 19:3

##### Hail, King of the Jews

The greeting "Hail" with a raised hand was only used to greet Caesar. As the soldiers use the crown of thorns and the purple robe to mock Jesus, it is ironic that they do not recognize that he is indeed a king.

#### John 19:4

##### I find no guilt in him

"I see no reason to punish him"

#### John 19:7

##### The Jews answered him

"The Jewish leaders answered Pilate"

##### he has to die because he claimed to be the Son of God

Jesus was condemned to death by crucifixion because he claimed he was "the Son of God."

#### John 19:10

##### Are you not speaking to me?

"I cannot believe you are refusing to speak to me!" or "Answer me!"

##### Do you not know that I have authority to release you, and authority to crucify you?

"You should know that I have authority to release you or to order my soldiers to crucify you!"

#### John 19:11

##### You do not have any authority over me except for what has been given to you from above

"The authority you have over me is only what has been given to you by God"

##### he who gave me over

"he who handed me over"

#### John 19:12

##### At this answer

"When Pilate heard Jesus's answer"

##### Pilate tried to release him

"he tried hard to release Jesus" or "he tried again and again to release Jesus"

##### but the Jews cried out

"but the Jewish leaders kept shouting"

##### you are not a friend of Caesar

"you are opposing Caesar" or "you are opposing the emperor"

##### makes himself a king

"claims that he is a king"

#### John 19:13

##### he brought Jesus out

"Pilate ordered the soldiers to bring Jesus out"

##### in the judgment seat

This is the special chair that an important person like Pilate sat in when he was making an official judgment. If your language has a special way to describe this action, you can use it here.

##### in a place called "The Pavement," but

"in a place the people called The Pavement, but"

##### Aramaic

This was the language that the Jews in Judea spoke among themselves. Some translations say "Hebrew," following the form of the Greek word.

#### John 19:14

##### Pilate said to the Jews

“Pilate said to the Jewish leaders”

#### John 19:15

##### Should I crucify your King?

"Do you really want me to tell my soldiers to nail your king to a cross?"

#### John 19:16

##### Then Pilate gave Jesus over to them to be crucified

"So Pilate gave the Jews power over Jesus so they could crucify Jesus"

#### John 19:17

##### to the place called "The Place of a Skull,"

"to the place that the people called 'The Place of a Skull,'"

##### which in the Aramaic language is called "Golgotha."

"which in the Aramaic language they call 'Golgotha.'"

#### John 19:18

##### with him two other men

"they also nailed two other criminals to their crosses"

#### John 19:19

##### Pilate also wrote a sign and put it on the cross

"Pilate also commanded someone to write on a sign and to attach it to Jesus's cross"

##### There it was written: JESUS OF NAZARETH, THE KING OF THE JEWS

"The sign said,'Jesus of Nazareth, King of the Jews'"

#### John 19:20

##### the place where Jesus was crucified

"the place where the soldiers crucified Jesus"

##### The sign was written in Aramaic, in Latin, and in Greek

"The one who prepared the sign wrote the words in 3 languages: Aramaic, Latin, and Greek"

##### Latin

This was the language of the Roman government.

#### John 19:21

##### Then the chief priests of the Jews said to Pilate

"The chief priests went back to Pilate and said"

#### John 19:22

##### What I have written I have written

"I have written what I wanted to write, and I will not change it"

#### John 19:23

##### also the tunic

"they kept his tunic separate"

#### John 19:24

##### let us cast lots for it to decide whose it will be

"let us gamble for the tunic and the winner will get to keep it"

##### This happened so that the scripture would be fulfilled which said

"This fulfilled the scripture that said" or "This happened to make the scripture come true which said"

##### cast lots

"gamble"

#### John 19:26

##### the disciple whom he loved

This is John, the writer of this Gospel.

##### Woman, see, your son

"Woman, here is the man who will act like a son to you"

#### John 19:27

##### See, your mother

"Think of this woman as if she were your own mother"

##### From that hour

"From that very moment"

#### John 19:28

##### knowing that everything was now accomplished

"knowing that he had completed everything" or "he knew that he had done everything that God had sent him to do"

#### John 19:29

##### A container full of sour wine was placed there

"Someone had placed there a full container of sour wine"

##### they put

Here "they" refers to the Roman guards.

##### a sponge

a small object that can soak up and hold much liquid

##### on a hyssop staff

"on a branch of a plant called hyssop"

#### John 19:30

##### He bowed his head and gave up his spirit

"He bowed his head and gave God his spirit" or "He bowed his head and died"

#### John 19:31

##### the Jews

"the Jewish leaders"

##### day of preparation

This is the time before the Passover when people prepared food for the Passover.

##### to break their legs and to remove them

"to break their legs so they would die and to have the soldiers remove them"

#### John 19:32

##### who had been crucified with Jesus

"whom they had crucified near Jesus"

#### John 19:35

##### The one who saw this

This sentence gives background information to the story. John is telling readers that he was there and that we can trust what he has written.

##### has testified, and his testimony is true

"has told the truth about what he has seen"

##### so that you would also believe

"so that you will also put your trust in Jesus"

#### John 19:36

##### in order to fulfill scripture

"to fulfill the words that someone wrote in the scripture"

##### Not one of his bones will be broken

This is a quotation from Psalm 34. "No one will break any of his bones"

#### John 19:37

##### They will look at him whom they pierced

This is a quotation from Zechariah 12.

#### John 19:38

##### Joseph of Arimathea

"Joseph from the town of Arimathea"

##### for fear of the Jews

"for fear of the Jewish leaders"

##### if he could take away the body of Jesus

"for permission to take the body of Jesus down from the cross for burial"

#### John 19:39

##### Nicodemus

Nicodemus was one of the Pharisees who believed in Jesus. See how you translated this name in John 3:1.

##### myrrh and aloes

These are plant substances that smell nice and that people used to prepare a body for burial.

##### about one hundred litras

Because myrrh and aloes were more like solids than liquids, the measurement here is probably of weight, about 30 kilograms, rather than of volume, about 30 liters.

#### John 19:41

##### Now in the place where he was crucified there was a garden

"Now in the place where they crucified Jesus, there was a garden"

##### in which no person had yet been buried

"in which people had buried no one"

#### John 19:42

##### Because it was the day of preparation for the Jews

"Because the Passover was about to begin that evening"

Chapter 20

1Now early on the first day of the week, while it was still dark, Mary Magdalene came to the tomb, and she saw the stone rolled away from the tomb.2So she ran and came to Simon Peter and to the other disciple whom Jesus loved, and she said to them, "They took away the Lord out from the tomb, and we do not know where they have laid him."

3Then Peter and the other disciple went out, and they were going to the tomb.4They both ran together, and the other disciple quickly ran ahead of Peter and arrived at the tomb first.5Then stooping down, he saw the linen cloths lying there, but he did not go inside.6Simon Peter then arrived after him and went into the tomb. He saw the linen cloths lying there7and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place by itself.8Then the other disciple, the one who first arrived at the tomb, also went in, and he saw and believed.9For until that time they still did not know the scripture that he should rise from the dead.10So the disciples went back home again.

11But Mary was standing outside the tomb weeping. As she wept, she stooped down into the tomb.12She saw two angels in white sitting, one at the head, and one at the foot of where the body of Jesus had lain.13They said to her, "Woman, why are you weeping?"

She said to them, "Because they took away my Lord, and I do not know where they have put him."14When she said this, she turned around and saw Jesus standing there, but she did not know that it was Jesus.

15Jesus said to her, "Woman, why are you weeping? Whom are you looking for?"

She thought that he was the gardener, so she said to him, "Sir, if you have taken him away, tell me where you have put him, and I will take him away."

16Jesus said to her, "Mary."

She turned and said to him in Aramaic, "Rabboni" (which is to say "Teacher").

17Jesus said to her, "Do not touch me, for I have not yet gone up to the Father, but go to my brothers and say to them that I will go up to my Father and your Father, and my God and your God."

18Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples, "I have seen the Lord," and that he had said these things to her.

19On the evening of that day, the first day of the week, the doors being locked where the disciples were for fear of the Jews, Jesus came and stood in the middle of them and said to them, "Peace to you."20After he said this, he showed them his hands and his side. The disciples rejoiced when they saw the Lord.21Jesus then said to them again, "Peace to you. As the Father has sent me, so I am sending you."22When Jesus had said this, he breathed on them and said to them, "Receive the Holy Spirit.23Whoever's sins you forgive, they are forgiven; whoever's sins you keep back, they are kept back."

24Thomas, one of the twelve, called Didymus, was not with them when Jesus came.25The other disciples later said to him, "We have seen the Lord."

He said to them, "Unless I see in his hands the mark of the nails, and put my finger into the mark of the nails, and put my hand into his side, I will not believe."

26After eight days his disciples were inside again, and Thomas was with them. Jesus came while the doors were closed, and stood among them, and said, "Peace to you."27Then he said to Thomas, "Reach here with your finger and see my hands. Reach here with your hand and put it into my side. Do not be unbelieving, but believe."

28Thomas answered and said to him, "My Lord and my God."

29Jesus said to him, "Because you have seen me, you have believed. Blessed are those who have not seen, and believed."

30Now Jesus did many other signs in the presence of the disciples, signs that have not been written in this book,31but these have been written so that you would believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and so that believing, you would have life in his name.

#### John 20:1

##### first day of the week

"Sunday"

##### she saw the stone rolled away

"she saw that someone had rolled away the stone"

#### John 20:2

##### disciple whom Jesus loved

This phrase appears to be the way that John refers to himself throughout his book. Here the word "love" refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

##### They took away

The author uses the word "they" here to show that Mary Magdalene did not know who took the Lord away. She was probably thinking of the Jews or Romans, but it would be best to translate using your language's way of leaving the actor or actors unknown.

##### the Lord ... laid him

"the Lord's dead body ... laid it"

#### John 20:3

##### the other disciple

John is referring to himself here as "the other disciple," rather than including his name.

#### John 20:5

##### linen cloths

These were the burial cloths that people had used to wrap the body of Jesus.

#### John 20:7

##### cloth that had been on his head

"cloth that someone had used to cover Jesus's face"

##### but was folded up in a place by itself

"but someone had folded it and put it aside, separate from the linen cloths"

#### John 20:8

##### he saw and believed

"he saw these things and now believed that Jesus had risen from the dead"

#### John 20:9

##### they still did not know the scripture

These words refer to the disciples. Possible meanings are 1) they did not know that that scripture exists or 2) they did not understand that that scripture said that Jesus would come alive again.

##### rise

become alive again

##### the dead

All those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld.

#### John 20:10

##### went back home again

"went back to where they were staying in Jerusalem"

#### John 20:12

##### She saw two angels in white

"She saw two angels dressed in white clothing"

#### John 20:13

##### Because they took away my Lord, and I do not know where they have put him

"Because they took away the body of my Lord, and I do not know where they have put it"

#### John 20:15

##### if you have taken him away, tell me where you have put him, and I will take him away

"if you have taken his dead body away, tell me where you have put it, and I will take it away"

#### John 20:16

##### Rabboni

The word "Rabboni" means "teacher" in Aramaic.

##### Aramaic

This was the language that the Jews in Judea spoke among themselves. Some translations say "Hebrew," following the form of the Greek word.

#### John 20:17

##### brothers

Jesus used the word "brothers" to refer to his disciples.

##### I will go up to my Father and your Father, and my God and your God

"I am about to return to heaven to be with my Father and your Father, to the one who is my God and your God"

#### John 20:18

##### Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples

"Mary Magdalene went to where the disciples were and told them"

#### John 20:19

##### that day, the first day of the week

This refers to Sunday.

##### the doors being locked where the disciples were

"the disciples had locked the doors where they were"

##### for fear of the Jews

"because they were afraid that the Jewish leaders might arrest them"

##### Peace to you

This is a common greeting that means "May God give you peace" .

#### John 20:23

##### they are forgiven

"God will forgive them"

##### whoever's sins you keep back

"If you do not forgive another's sins"

##### they are kept back

"God will not forgive them"

#### John 20:24

##### Didymus

This is a male name that means "twin."

#### John 20:25

##### disciples later said to him

The word "him" refers to Thomas.

##### Unless I see ... his side, I will not believe

"I will believe only if I see ... his side"

##### in his hands ... into his side

The word "his" refers to Jesus.

#### John 20:26

##### his disciples

The word "his" refers to Jesus.

##### while the doors were closed

"when they had locked the doors"

#### John 20:27

##### Do not be unbelieving, but believe

"This is what is most important for you to do: you must believe"

##### believe

"put your trust in me"

#### John 20:29

##### you have believed

"you have believed that I am alive"

##### Blessed are those

This means "God gives great happiness to those."

##### who have not seen

"who have not seen me alive"

#### John 20:30

##### signs

The word "signs" refers to miracles that show that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.

##### signs that have not been written in this book

"signs that the author did not write about in this book"

#### John 20:31

##### but these have been written

"but the author wrote about these signs"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### life in his name

"you may have life because of Jesus"

##### life

This refers to spiritual life.

Chapter 21

1After these things Jesus revealed himself again to the disciples at the Sea of Tiberias. This is how he revealed himself:2Simon Peter was together with Thomas called Didymus, Nathaniel from Cana in Galilee, the sons of Zebedee, and two other disciples of Jesus.3Simon Peter said to them, "I am going fishing." They said to him, "We, too, will come with you." They went and got into a boat, but they caught nothing during the whole night.

4Now, when it was already early in the morning, Jesus stood on the beach, but the disciples did not know it was Jesus.5So Jesus said to them, "Young men, do you have anything to eat?"

They answered him, "No."

6He said to them, "Throw your net on the right side of the boat, and you will find some." So they threw their net and were not able to draw it in because of the large number of fish.

7Then the disciple whom Jesus loved said to Peter, "It is the Lord." When Simon Peter heard that it was the Lord, he tied up his outer garment (for he was undressed), and threw himself into the sea.8The other disciples came in the boat (for they were not far from the land, about two hundred cubits off), and they were pulling the net full of fish.9When they got out upon the land, they saw a charcoal fire there and fish laid on it, with bread.

10Jesus said to them, "Bring some of the fish that you have just caught."11Simon Peter then went up and drew the net to land, full of large fish, 153 of them, but even with so many, the net was not torn.12Jesus said to them, "Come and eat breakfast." None of the disciples dared ask him, "Who are you?" They knew it was the Lord.13Jesus came, took the bread, and gave it to them, and the fish also.14This was the third time that Jesus revealed himself to the disciples after he had risen from the dead.

15After they ate breakfast, Jesus said to Simon Peter, "Simon son of John, do you love me more than these?"

Peter said to him, "Yes Lord, you know that I love you."

Jesus said to him, "Feed my lambs."

16He said to him again a second time, "Simon son of John, do you love me?"

Peter said to him, "Yes Lord, you know that I love you."

Jesus said to him, "Shepherd my sheep."

17He said to him a third time, "Simon son of John, do you love me?"

Peter was sorrowful because Jesus had said to him a third time, "Do you love me?" He said to him, "Lord, you know all things, you know that I love you."

Jesus said to him, "Feed my sheep. 18Truly, truly, I say to you, when you were young, you used to gird yourself and walk wherever you wanted, but when you become old, you will stretch out your hands, and someone else will gird you and carry you where you will not want to go."

19Now Jesus said this in order to indicate with what kind of death Peter would glorify God. After he had said this, he said to Peter, "Follow me."

20Peter turned around and saw the disciple whom Jesus loved following them, the one who had also leaned back against the side of Jesus at the dinner and who had said, "Lord, who is the one who will betray you?"21Peter saw him and then said to Jesus, "Lord, what will this man do?"

22Jesus said to him, "If I want him to stay until I come, what is that to you? Follow me."

23So this statement spread among the brothers, that that disciple would not die. Yet Jesus did not say to Peter that the other disciple would not die, but, "If I want him to stay until I come, what is that to you?"

24This is the disciple who testifies about these things, and who wrote these things, and we know that his testimony is true.25There are also many other things that Jesus did. If each one were written down, I suppose that even the world itself could not contain the books that would be written.

#### John 21:5

##### Young men

"My dear friends."

#### John 21:6

##### you will find some

"you will catch some fish in your net"

##### draw it in

"pull the net in"

#### John 21:7

##### loved

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

##### he tied up his outer garment

"he secured his outer garment around him" or "he put on his tunic"

##### for he was undressed

"for he had taken off some of his clothes"

##### threw himself into the sea

"jumped into the sea and swam to shore"

#### John 21:8

##### two hundred cubits

"90 meters." A cubit was a little less than half a meter.

#### John 21:11

##### Simon Peter then went up

"So Simon Peter went back to the boat"

##### drew the net to land

"pulled the net to the shore"

##### full of large fish, 153

"full of large fish, one hundred and fifty-three."

#### John 21:12

##### breakfast

the morning meal

#### John 21:14

##### the third time

You can translate this ordinal term as "time number 3."

#### John 21:15

##### do you love me

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves.

##### you know that I love you

When Peter answers, he uses the word for "love" that refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

##### Feed my lambs

"Feed the people I care for"

#### John 21:16

##### Shepherd my sheep

"Care for the people I care for"

#### John 21:17

##### do you love me

This time when Jesus asks this question he uses the word for "love" that refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

##### Feed my sheep

"Care for the people I care for"

#### John 21:18

##### you used to gird yourself ... someone else will gird you

"you used to dress yourself ... someone else will dress you"

#### John 21:19

##### to indicate with what kind of death Peter would glorify God

"to indicate that Peter would die on a cross to honor God"

##### Follow me

"Keep on being my disciple"

#### John 21:20

##### the disciple whom Jesus loved

John refers to himself in this way throughout the book, rather than mentioning his name.

##### loved

This is the kind of love that comes from God and always desires the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

##### at the dinner

This is a reference to the Last Supper

#### John 21:21

##### Peter saw him

Here "him" refers to "the disciple whom Jesus loved."

##### Lord, what will this man do?

"Lord, what will happen to this man?"

#### John 21:22

##### Jesus said to him

"Jesus said to Peter"

##### If I want him to stay

Here "him" refers to the "disciple whom Jesus loved"

##### I come

This refers to Jesus's second coming, his return to earth from heaven.

##### what is that to you?

"that is not your concern." or "you should not be concerned about that."

#### John 21:23

##### among the brothers

Here "the brothers" refers to all the followers of Jesus.

#### John 21:24

##### the disciple

"the disciple John"

##### who testifies about these things

"who has seen all these things"

##### we know

"we who trust in Jesus know"

#### John 21:25

##### If each one were written down

"If someone wrote down all of them"

##### even the world itself could not contain the books

John exaggerates to emphasize that Jesus did many more miracles than what people could write about in many books.

##### the books that would be written

"the books that people could write about what he did"

## Acts

Chapter 1

1The former account I wrote, Theophilus, told all that Jesus began to do and to teach,2until the day that he was taken up, after he had given commands through the Holy Spirit to the apostles he had chosen.3After his suffering, he presented himself alive to them with many convincing proofs. For forty days he appeared to them, and he spoke about the kingdom of God.4When he was meeting together with them, he commanded them not to leave Jerusalem, but to wait for the promise of the Father, about which he said, "You heard from me5that John indeed baptized with water, but you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit in a few days."

6When they were assembled together they asked him, "Lord, is this the time you will restore the kingdom to Israel?"7He said to them, "It is not for you to know the times or the seasons which the Father has determined by his own authority.8But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes upon you, and you will be my witnesses both in Jerusalem and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth."9When the Lord Jesus had said these things, as they were looking up, he was raised up, and a cloud hid him from their eyes.10While they were looking intensely to heaven as he went, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing.11They said, "You men of Galilee, why do you stand here looking into heaven? This Jesus, who has been taken up from you into heaven, will return in the same manner as you saw him going into heaven."

12Then they returned to Jerusalem from the mountain that is called Olives, which is near to Jerusalem, a Sabbath day's journey.13When they arrived, they went up into the upper chamber, where they were staying. They were Peter, John, James, Andrew, Philip, Thomas, Bartholomew, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas son of James.14They all were devoted with one purpose to prayer, together with the women, and Mary the mother of Jesus, and his brothers.

15In those days Peter stood up in the midst of the brothers, about 120 names, and said,16"Brothers, it was necessary that the scripture should be fulfilled, that the Holy Spirit spoke before by the mouth of David concerning Judas, who guided the ones who arrested Jesus.17For he was one of us and received a share of this ministry."18(Now this man bought a field with the earnings he received for his wickedness, and there he fell headfirst, and his body burst open, and all his intestines poured out.19All those living in Jerusalem heard about this, so they called that field in their language "Akeldama," that is, "Field of Blood.")20"For it is written in the Book of Psalms,

'Let his field be made desolate,and do not let even one person live there';'Let someone else take his position of leadership.'

21It is necessary, therefore, that one of the men who accompanied us all the time the Lord Jesus went in and out among us,22beginning from the baptism of John to the day that he was taken up from us, become a witness with us of his resurrection."23They put forward two men, Joseph called Barsabbas, who was also called Justus, and Matthias.24They prayed and said, "You, Lord, know the hearts of all people, so reveal which of these two is the one whom you have chosen25to take the place in this ministry and apostleship from which Judas turned away to go to his own place."26They cast lots for them, and the lot fell to Matthias, and he was numbered with the eleven apostles.

#### Acts 1:1

##### The former account I wrote

The "former account" is the Gospel of Luke.

##### Theophilus

Luke wrote this book to a man named Theophilus. Some translations follow their own culture's way of addressing a letter and write "Dear Theophilus" at the beginning of the sentence. Theophilus means "friend of God"

#### Acts 1:2

##### until the day that he was taken up

"until the day on which God took him up to heaven" or "until the day that he ascended into heaven"

#### Acts 1:3

##### After his suffering

This refers to Jesus's suffering and death on the cross.

##### he presented himself alive to them

Jesus appeared to his apostles and to many other disciples.

#### Acts 1:4

##### the promise of the Father, about which he said

"the Holy Spirit, whom the Father promised to send, about whom Jesus said"

#### Acts 1:5

##### John indeed baptized with water ... baptized with the Holy Spirit

Jesus contrasts how John baptized people in water with how God would baptize believers in the Holy Spirit.

##### you will be baptized

"God will baptize you"

#### Acts 1:6

##### is this the time you will restore the kingdom to Israel

"will you now make Israel a great kingdom again"

#### Acts 1:7

##### the times or the seasons

"the exact time"

#### Acts 1:8

##### you will receive power ... and you will be my witnesses

"God will empower you ... to be my witnesses"

##### to the ends of the earth

Possible meanings are 1) "all over the world" or 2) "to the places on earth that are farthest away"

#### Acts 1:9

##### as they were looking up

"as they were looking up at the sky"

##### he was raised up

"he rose up into the sky" or "God raised him up into the sky"

##### a cloud hid him from their eyes

"a cloud blocked their view so that they could no longer see him"

#### Acts 1:11

##### will return in the same manner

Jesus ascended into the sky, through the clouds, and the clouds hid him. He will return from the sky, through (or on) the clouds, and people will be able to see him.

#### Acts 1:12

##### Then they returned

"The apostles returned"

##### a Sabbath day's journey

"about one kilometer away"

#### Acts 1:13

##### the upper chamber

"the room on the upper level of the house"

#### Acts 1:14

##### They all were devoted ... to prayer

They all spent much time ... praying

##### with one purpose

The phrase "with one purpose" translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Acts 1:15

##### In those days

"During that time"

##### names

"people"

##### in the midst of the brothers

Here the word "brothers" refers to fellow believers and includes both men and women.

#### Acts 1:16

##### it was necessary that the scripture should be fulfilled

"the things that we read about in scripture had to take place"

##### by the mouth of David

"through the words of David"

#### Acts 1:18

##### Now this man

The words "this man" refers to Judas Iscariot.

##### the earnings he received for his wickedness

The words "his wickedness" refer to Judas Iscariot's betraying Jesus to the people who killed him.

##### there he fell headfirst, and his body burst open, and all his intestines poured out

This suggests that Judas fell from a high place, rather than just falling down. The fall was severe enough to cause his body to burst open. Other passages of scripture mention that he hanged himself.

#### Acts 1:19

##### Field of Blood

When the people living in Jerusalem heard of the way in which Judas died, they renamed the field.

#### Acts 1:20

##### Let his field be made desolate

Possible meanings are 1) that the word "field" refers to the field where Judas died or 2) that the word "field" refers to Judas's dwelling place and is a metaphor for his family line.

##### be made desolate

"become empty"

#### Acts 1:21

##### It is necessary, therefore

Based on the scriptures that he quoted and on what Judas had done, Peter tells the group what they must do.

##### the Lord Jesus went in and out among us

"the Lord Jesus lived among us"

#### Acts 1:22

##### beginning from the baptism of John

Possible meanings: 1) "beginning from when John baptized Jesus" or 2) "beginning from when John baptized people"

##### to the day that he was taken up from us

"until the day when Jesus left us and rose up to heaven" or "until the day that God took him up from us"

##### become a witness with us of his resurrection

"must begin to testify with us about his resurrection"

#### Acts 1:23

##### They put forward two men

"They proposed two men who fulfilled the requirements that Peter listed"

##### Joseph called Barsabbas, who was also called Justus

"Joseph, whom people also called Barsabbas and Justus"

#### Acts 1:24

##### They prayed and said

"The believers prayed together and one of the apostles said"

##### You, Lord, know the hearts of all people

"You, Lord, know the thoughts and motives of everyone"

#### Acts 1:25

##### to take the place in this ministry and apostleship

"to take Judas's place in this apostolic ministry" or "to take Judas's place in serving as an apostle"

##### from which Judas turned away

"which Judas stopped fulfilling"

##### to go to his own place

"to go where he belongs"

#### Acts 1:26

##### They cast lots for them

The apostles cast lots to decide between Joseph and Matthias.

##### the lot fell to Matthias

The lot indicated that Matthias was the one to replace Judas.

##### he was numbered with the eleven apostles

"the believers considered him to be an apostle with the other eleven"

Chapter 2

1When the day of Pentecost came, they were all together in the same place.2Suddenly a sound like the rush of a violent wind came from heaven, and it filled the whole house where they were sitting.3There appeared to them tongues like fire that were distributed, and they sat upon each one of them.4They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other tongues, as the Spirit gave them the ability.

5Now there were Jews who were living in Jerusalem, godly men, from every nation under heaven.6When this sound was heard, the multitude came together and was confused because everyone heard them speaking in his own language.7They were amazed and marveled; they said, "Really, are not all these who are speaking Galileans?8Why is it that we are hearing them, each in our own language in which we were born?9Parthians and Medes and Elamites, and those who live in Mesopotamia, in Judea and Cappadocia, in Pontus and Asia,10Phrygia and Pamphylia, in Egypt and the parts of Libya toward Cyrene, and visitors from Rome,11Jews and proselytes, Cretans and Arabians—we hear them telling in our languages about the mighty works of God."12They were all amazed and perplexed; they said to one another, "What does this mean?"13But others mocked and said, "They are full of new wine."

14But Peter stood with the eleven, raised his voice, and declared to them, "Men of Judea and all of you who live at Jerusalem, let this be known to you; pay attention to my words.15For these people are not drunk as you assume, for it is only the third hour of the day.16But this is what was spoken through the prophet Joel:17'It will be in the last days,' God says,'I will pour out my Spirit on all flesh.Your sons and your daughters will prophesy,your young men will see visions,and your old men will dream dreams.18Surely on my servantsand my female servants in those daysI will pour out my Spirit, and they will prophesy.19I will show wonders in the sky aboveand signs on the earth below,blood, fire, and vapor of smoke.20The sun will be turned to darknessand the moon to bloodbefore the great and remarkableday of the Lord comes.21It will be that everyone who callson the name of the Lord will be saved.'

22Men of Israel, hear these words: Jesus of Nazareth was a man accredited to you by God with the mighty deeds and wonders and signs which God did through him in your midst, as you yourselves know.23This man was handed over by God's predetermined plan and foreknowledge; and you, by the hand of lawless men, put him to death by nailing him to a cross.24But God raised him up, freeing him from the agonies of death, because it was impossible for him to be held by it.25For David says about him,'I saw the Lord always before my face,for he is beside my right handso that I should not be moved.26Therefore my heart was gladand my tongue rejoiced.Also, my flesh will live in hope.27For you will not abandon my soul to Hades,neither will you allowyour Holy One to see decay.28You have made known to me the ways of life;you will make me full of gladness with your face.'

29Brothers, it is proper for me to speak to you confidently about the patriarch David, that he both died and was buried, and his tomb is with us to this day.30Therefore, he was a prophet and knew that God had sworn with an oath to him that he would set one of the fruit of his loins on his throne.31He saw what was to happen in the future and spoke about the resurrection of the Christ, that he was neither abandoned to Hades, nor did his flesh see decay.32This Jesus—God raised him up, of which we all are witnesses.33Therefore, having been exalted to the right hand of God and having received the promised Holy Spirit from the Father, he has poured out what you see and hear.34For David did not ascend to the heaven, but he says,'The Lord said to my Lord,"Sit at my right hand35until I make your enemiesthe footstool for your feet."'

36Therefore, let all the house of Israel certainly know that God has made him both Lord and Christ, this Jesus whom you crucified."

37Now when they heard this, they were pierced in their hearts, and said to Peter and the rest of the apostles, "Brothers, what must we do?"

38Then Peter said to them, "Repent and be baptized, each of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.39For the promise is to you and to your children and to all who are far off, as many people as the Lord our God will call."40With many other words he testified and exhorted them, saying, "Be saved from this perverse generation."41Then they received his word and were baptized, and there were added in that day about three thousand souls.42They devoted themselves to the apostles' teaching and fellowship, in the breaking of bread and in prayers.

43Fear came upon every soul, and many wonders and signs were done through the apostles.44All who believed were together and had all things in common,45and they sold their property and possessions and distributed them to all, according to the needs anyone had.46So day after day they devoted themselves with one purpose in the temple. They also broke bread in homes, and they shared food together with glad and generous hearts,47praising God and having favor with all the people, and every day the Lord added to their number those who were being saved.

#### Acts 2:2

##### a sound like the rush of a violent wind came from heaven

"a sound came from heaven" or 2) "heaven" refers to the sky. Alternate translation: "a sound came from the sky"

#### Acts 2:3

##### There appeared to them tongues like fire

Possible meanings are 1) tongues that looked like they were made of fire or 2) small flames of fire that looked like tongues.

##### that were distributed, and they sat upon each one of them

This means that the "tongues like fire" spread out so that there was one on each person.

#### Acts 2:4

##### They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and

"The Holy Spirit filled all of those who were there and they"

##### speak in other tongues

They were speaking in languages that they did not already know.

##### as the Spirit gave them the ability

The Holy Spirit gave them the ability to speak; they were dependent on the Spirit to speak in different languages.

#### Acts 2:5

##### godly men

Here "godly men" refers to people who were devout in their worship of God and tried to obey all of the Jewish laws.

##### every nation under heaven

"many different nations"

#### Acts 2:6

##### When this sound was heard

"When they heard this sound"

##### the multitude

"the large crowd of people"

#### Acts 2:7

##### Really, are not all these who are speaking Galileans?

"All of these Galileans could not possibly know our languages!"

#### Acts 2:8

##### Why is it that we are hearing them, each in our own language in which we were born?

Possible meanings are 1) this is a rhetorical question that expresses how amazed they were or 2) this is a real question for which the people wanted an answer.

#### Acts 2:9

##### Parthians ... Medes ... Elamites

These are names of people groups.

##### Mesopotamia ... Judea ... Cappadocia ... Pontus ... Asia

These are names of large areas of land.

#### Acts 2:10

##### Phrygia ... Pamphylia ... Egypt ... Libya ... Cyrene

These are names of large areas of land.

#### Acts 2:11

##### Cretans ... Arabians

These are names of people groups.

##### proselytes

converts to the Jewish religion

#### Acts 2:12

##### amazed and perplexed

"surprised and confused"

#### Acts 2:13

##### They are full of new wine

"They are drunk"

##### new wine

This refers to wine that is in the process of fermentation.

#### Acts 2:14

##### stood with the eleven

All the apostles stood up in support of Peter's statement.

##### declared to them

Made a formal, important speech to them.

##### let this be known to you

"know this" or "let me explain this to you"

##### pay attention to my words

"listen carefully to what I am saying"

#### Acts 2:15

##### it is only the third hour of the day

"It is only nine o'clock in the morning." Peter expected his audience to know that people do not get drunk that early in the day.

#### Acts 2:16

##### this is what was spoken through the prophet Joel

"this is what God told the prophet Joel to write" or "this is that which the prophet Joel spoke"

#### Acts 2:17

##### It will be

"This is what will happen" or "This is what I will do"

##### I will pour out my Spirit on all flesh

"I will give my Spirit abundantly to all people"

#### Acts 2:18

##### my servants and my female servants

These words emphasize that God will pour out his Spirit on all of his servants, both men and women.

##### I will pour out my Spirit

"I will give my Spirit abundantly to all people"

#### Acts 2:20

##### The sun will be turned to darkness

"The sun will become dark"

##### the moon to blood

"the moon will be turned to blood" or "the moon will appear to be red"

##### the great and remarkable day

"the very great day"

#### Acts 2:21

##### everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved

"the Lord will save everyone who calls on him"

#### Acts 2:22

##### accredited to you by God with the mighty deeds and wonders and signs

This means that God proved that he had appointed Jesus for his mission, and proved who he was by his many miracles.

#### Acts 2:23

##### by God's predetermined plan and foreknowledge

"because God planned out and knew beforehand everything that would happen")

##### This man was handed over

Possible meanings: 1) "you handed Jesus over into the hands of his enemies" or 2) "Judas betrayed Jesus to you."

##### by the hand of lawless men

"through the actions of lawless men" or "by what lawless men did"

##### lawless men

Possible meanings are 1) the unbelieving Jews who accused Jesus of crimes or 2) the Roman soldiers who performed the execution of Jesus.

#### Acts 2:24

##### But God raised him up

"But God caused him to live again"

##### freeing him from the agonies of death

"ending the pains of death"

##### for him to be held by it

"for him to remain dead"

#### Acts 2:25

##### For David says about him, 'I saw

"For David spoke these words as if he were the Christ: 'I saw"

##### before my face

"in my presence" or "with me"

##### beside my right hand

"right beside me" or "with me to help me"

##### I should not be moved

"people will not be able to cause me trouble" or "nothing will trouble me"

#### Acts 2:26

##### my heart was glad and my tongue rejoiced

"I was glad and rejoiced"

##### my flesh will live in hope

"I will live in hope"

##### will live in hope

"will live with confidence in God" or "will confidently wait for God to rescue me"

#### Acts 2:27

##### neither will you allow your Holy One to see decay

"neither will you allow me, your Holy One, to see decay"

##### to see decay

The word "decay" refers to the decomposition of his body after death. Alternate translation: "to decay"

#### Acts 2:28

##### full of gladness with your face

"very glad when I see you" or "very glad when I am in your presence"

#### Acts 2:29

##### Brothers, it

"My fellow Jews, it"

##### he both died and was buried

"he died and people buried him"

#### Acts 2:30

##### he would set one of the fruit of his loins on his throne

"God would appoint one of David's descendants to be king in David's place"

#### Acts 2:31

##### he was neither abandoned to Hades, nor did his flesh see decay

"Neither did God abandon him to Hades nor did his flesh see decay" or "God did not abandon him to Hades, and his flesh did not see decay"

#### Acts 2:32

##### This Jesus—God raised him up

"It is this Jesus whom God raised up" or "God caused him to live again"

#### Acts 2:33

##### having been exalted to the right hand of God

"because God has exalted Jesus up to his right hand"

##### right hand of God

"Christ is in the position of God"

##### he has poured out what

"he has caused to happen these things that"

#### Acts 2:34

##### Sit at my right hand

"Sit in the place of honor beside me"

#### Acts 2:35

##### until I make your enemies the footstool for your feet

"until I make you victorious over all of your enemies"

#### Acts 2:36

##### all the house of Israel

"every Israelite"

#### Acts 2:37

##### they were pierced in their hearts, and said

"Peter's words deeply troubled their hearts, and they said"

#### Acts 2:38

##### be baptized

"allow us to baptize you"

##### in the name of Jesus Christ

"by the authority of Jesus Christ"

#### Acts 2:39

##### all who are far off

This means either 1) "all people who live far away" or 2) "all people who are far from God."

#### Acts 2:40

##### he testified and exhorted them

"he strongly urged them"

##### exhorted

"pleaded with"

##### Be saved from this perverse generation

"Be saved from the punishment that these wicked people will suffer"

##### Be saved

"Save yourselves" or "Flee" or "Escape"

#### Acts 2:41

##### they received his word

"they believed what Peter said"

##### were baptized

"people baptized them"

##### there were added in that day about three thousand souls

"about three thousand people joined the believers on that day"

#### Acts 2:42

##### the breaking of bread

"eating the Lord's Supper together"

#### Acts 2:43

##### Fear came upon every soul

"Each person felt a deep respect and awe for God"

##### many wonders and signs were done through the apostles

Possible meanings are 1) "the apostles performed many wonders and signs" or 2) "God performed many wonders and signs through the apostles"

#### Acts 2:44

##### All who believed were together

Possible meanings are 1) "All of them believed the same thing" or 2) "All who believed were together in the same place."

##### had all things in common

"shared their belongings with one another"

#### Acts 2:45

##### property and possessions

"land and things they owned"

##### distributed them to all

"distributed the proceeds to all"

##### according to the needs anyone had

They distributed the proceeds that they earned from selling their property and possessions to any believer who had a need.

#### Acts 2:46

##### they devoted themselves with one purpose in the temple

"they devoted themselves to the apostles' teaching with one purpose in the temple"

##### They also broke bread in homes

"They also ate meals together in their homes"

#### Acts 2:47

##### praising God and having favor with all the people

"praising God. All the people approved of them"

##### those who were being saved

"those whom the Lord saved"

Chapter 3

1Now Peter and John were going up into the temple at the hour of prayer, the ninth hour.2Now a man who was lame from his mother's womb was being carried to the temple gate called Beautiful. They would place him there every day so he could ask those who were going into the temple for alms.3When he saw Peter and John about to enter the temple, he asked them for alms.4Peter, fastening his eyes upon him, with John, said, "Look at us."5The lame man looked at them, expecting to receive something from them.6But Peter said, "Silver and gold I do not have, but what I do have, I will give to you. In the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, walk."7Taking him by the right hand, Peter raised him up, and immediately the man's feet and ankles were made strong.8Leaping up, the lame man stood and began to walk; and he entered with Peter and John into the temple, walking, leaping, and praising God.9All the people saw him walking and praising God.10They noticed that it was the man who had been asking people for alms at the Beautiful Gate of the temple; and they were filled with wonder and amazement because of what had happened to him.

11As he was holding on to Peter and John, all the people ran together to them in the porch that is called Solomon's, greatly marveling.12When Peter saw this, he answered the people, "You Israelite men, why do you marvel? Why do you fix your eyes on us, as if we made him walk by our own power or godliness?13The God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob, the God of our fathers, has glorified his servant Jesus. He is the one whom you handed over and rejected before the face of Pilate, when he had decided to release him.14You rejected the Holy and Righteous One, and you asked instead for a murderer to be given to you.15You killed the Founder of life, whom God raised from the dead—and we are witnesses of this.16On the basis of faith in his name, his name made this man, whom you see and know, strong. The faith that is through Jesus has given him this perfect health in the presence of you all.17Now, brothers, I know that you acted in ignorance, as did also your rulers.18But the things which God foretold by the mouth of all the prophets, that his Christ should suffer, he has now fulfilled.19Repent, therefore, and turn, so that your sins may be blotted out,20so that times of refreshing may come from the presence of the Lord; and that he may send the Christ who has been appointed for you, Jesus.21He is the One heaven must receive until the time of the restoration of all things, about which God spoke from ancient times by the mouth of his holy prophets.22Moses indeed said, 'The Lord God will raise up a prophet like me from among your brothers. You must listen to everything he tells you.23It will happen that every person who does not listen to that prophet will be completely destroyed from among the people.'24Yes, and all the prophets from Samuel and those who came after him, they spoke out and announced these days.25You are the sons of the prophets and of the covenant that God made with your ancestors, as he said to Abraham, 'In your seed all the families of the earth will be blessed.'26After God raised up his servant, he sent him to you first, in order to bless you by turning every one of you from your wickedness."

#### Acts 3:1

##### Peter and John go into the temple

They did not go into the temple building where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: "to the temple courtyard" or "into the temple area"

#### Acts 3:2

##### a man who was lame from his mother's womb was being carried

"people were carrying a man who was unable to walk ever since he was born"

##### the temple gate called Beautiful

This was one of the gates in the high, strong wall that surrounded the temple. People sometimes gathered near the gate.

#### Acts 3:4

##### Peter, fastening his eyes upon him, with John, said

Both Peter and John looked at the man, but only Peter spoke.

##### fastening his eyes upon him

Possible meanings are 1) "looking directly at him" or 2) "looking intently at him"

#### Acts 3:5

##### The lame man looked at them

"The lame man paid close attention to them"

#### Acts 3:6

##### Silver and gold I do not have

"I do not own any silver or gold"

##### what I do have

It is understood that Peter has the ability to heal the man.

##### In the name of Jesus Christ

"With the authority of Jesus Christ"

#### Acts 3:7

##### Peter raised him up

"Peter caused him to stand"

#### Acts 3:8

##### he entered ... into the temple

"he entered ... the temple area" or "he entered ... into the temple courtyard"

#### Acts 3:10

##### noticed that it was the man

"realized that it was the man" or "recognized him as the man"

##### they were filled with wonder and amazement

"they were extremely amazed"

#### Acts 3:11

##### the porch that is called Solomon's

"Solomon's Porch." This was a covered walkway that consisted of rows of pillars that supported a roof, and which people named after king Solomon. It was in the temple courtyard.

##### greatly marveling

"extremely surprised"

#### Acts 3:12

##### When Peter saw this

Here the word "this" refers to the amazement of the people.

##### You Israelite men

"Fellow Israelites." Peter was addressing the crowd.

##### why do you marvel?

"you should not be surprised."

##### Why do you fix your eyes on us, as if we made him walk by our own power or godliness?

"Do not look at us. We did not make him walk by our own power or godliness."

#### Acts 3:13

##### rejected before the face of Pilate

"rejected in Pilate's presence"

##### when he had decided to release him

"when Pilate had decided to release Jesus"

#### Acts 3:14

##### for a murderer to be given to you

"for Pilate to release a murderer to you"

#### Acts 3:15

##### the Founder of life

This refers to Jesus. Possible meanings are 1) "the one who gives people eternal life" or 2) "the ruler of life" or 3) "the one who leads people to life"

#### Acts 3:16

##### On the basis of faith in his name

"Because of faith in his name" or 2) this is how the man was made strong.

##### On the basis of faith in his name

"Because we believed in Jesus's name"

##### his name

"his name" refers to either Jesus or for Jesus's power.

##### made this man ... strong

"made this man ... well"

##### The faith that is through Jesus

"The faith that comes from Jesus" or 2) this is faith in Jesus.

#### Acts 3:17

##### you acted in ignorance

Possible meanings are 1) that the people did not know that Jesus was the Messiah or 2) that the people did not understand the significance of what they were doing.

#### Acts 3:18

##### God foretold by the mouth of all the prophets

"God foretold by telling all of the prophets what to speak"

##### God foretold

"God spoke about ahead of time" or "God told about before they happened"

#### Acts 3:19

##### and turn

"and start obeying the Lord"

##### so that your sins may be blotted out

"so that God will forgive you for sinning against him"

#### Acts 3:20

##### times of refreshing

Possible meanings are 1) "times when God will strengthen your spirits" or 2) "times when God will revive you"

##### from the presence of the Lord

"from the Lord"

##### that he may send the Christ

"that he may again send the Christ." This refers to Christ's coming again.

##### who has been appointed for you

"whom he has appointed for you"

#### Acts 3:21

##### He is the One heaven must receive

"He is the One heaven must welcome."

##### heaven must receive until

This means that it is necessary for Jesus to remain in heaven because that is what God has planned.

##### until the time of the restoration of all things

Possible meanings are 1) "until the time when God will restore all things" or 2) "until the time when God will fulfill everything that he foretold."

##### about which God spoke from ancient times by the mouth of his holy prophets

"about which things God spoke long ago by telling his holy prophets to speak about them"

#### Acts 3:22

##### will raise up a prophet like me from among your brothers

"will cause one of your brothers to become a true prophet, and everyone will know about him"

##### your brothers

"your nation"

#### Acts 3:23

##### that prophet will be completely destroyed

"that prophet, God will completely destroy"

#### Acts 3:24

##### Yes, and all the prophets

"In fact, all the prophets."

##### from Samuel and those who came after him

"beginning with Samuel and continuing with the prophets who lived after he did"

##### these days

"these times" or "the things that are happening now"

#### Acts 3:25

##### You are the sons of the prophets and of the covenant

"You are the heirs of the prophets and heirs of the covenant"

##### In your seed

"Because of your offspring"

##### all the families of the earth will be blessed

"I will bless all the people groups in the world"

#### Acts 3:26

##### After God raised up his servant

"After God caused Jesus to become his servant and made him famous"

##### his servant

This refers to the Messiah, Jesus.

##### turning every one of you from your wickedness

"causing every one of you to stop doing wicked things" or "causing every one of you to repent from your wickedness"

Chapter 4

1As Peter and John were speaking to the people, the priests and the captain of the temple and the Sadducees came upon them.2They were deeply troubled because Peter and John were teaching the people and proclaiming in Jesus the resurrection from the dead.3They laid hands on them and put them in custody until the next morning, since it was now evening.4But many of the people who had heard the message believed; and the number of the men who believed was about five thousand.

5It came about on the next day that their rulers, elders, and scribes gathered together in Jerusalem.6Annas the high priest was there, and Caiaphas, and John, and Alexander, and all who were relatives of the high priest.7When they had set Peter and John in their midst, they asked them, "By what power, or in what name, have you done this?"8Then Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit, said to them, "You rulers of the people, and elders,9if we are on trial today concerning a good deed done to a sick man, and by what means this man was healed,10let it be known to you all and to all the people of Israel that this man stands before you healthy in the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, whom you crucified, but whom God raised from the dead.11Jesus Christ is the stone which you builders rejected but which has been made the cornerstone.12There is no salvation in any other person, for there is no other name under heaven given among men by which we must be saved."

13Now when they saw the boldness of Peter and John and realized that they were ordinary, uneducated men, they were surprised, becoming aware that Peter and John had been with Jesus.14Because they saw the man who was healed standing with them, they had nothing to say against this.15But after they had commanded the apostles to leave the council meeting, they talked among themselves.16They said, "What should we do with these men? For a remarkable sign has been done through them, and this is evident to everyone who lives in Jerusalem, and we cannot deny it.17But in order that it spreads no further among the people, let us warn them not to speak anymore to anyone in this name."18Then they called them in and commanded them not to speak or teach at all in the name of Jesus.19But Peter and John answered and said to them, "Whether it is proper in the sight of God to obey you rather than him, you judge.20We are not able to stop speaking about the things we have seen and heard."21After further warning Peter and John, they let them go. They were unable to find any excuse to punish them, because all of the people were glorifying God for what had been done.22The man who had experienced this sign of healing was more than forty years old.

23After they were set free, Peter and John came to their own people and reported all that the chief priests and the elders had said to them.24When they heard it, they raised their voices with one purpose to God and said, "Lord, you made the heavens and the earth and the sea, and all that is in them.25You spoke by the Holy Spirit through the mouth of your servant, our father David,'Why did the Gentile nations rage,and the peoples imagine useless things?'26You said,'The kings of the earth set themselves together,and the rulers gathered togetheragainst the Lord, and against his Christ.'

27Indeed, both Herod and Pontius Pilate, together with the Gentiles and the people of Israel, gathered together in this city against your holy servant Jesus, whom you anointed.28They gathered together to do all that your hand and your plan had decided in advance would happen.29Now, Lord, look upon their warnings and grant to your servants to speak your word with all boldness.30Stretch out your hand to heal and to give signs and wonders through the name of your holy servant Jesus."31After they had prayed, the place where they were gathered together was shaken, and they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and they spoke the word of God with boldness.

32The great number of those who believed were of one heart and soul. No one said that anything he possessed was his own, but they had everything in common.33With great power the apostles were proclaiming their testimony about the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, and great grace was upon them all.34There was no person among them who lacked anything, for all who owned title to lands or houses sold them and brought the money from the things that were sold35and laid it at the apostles' feet, and it was distributed to each one according to their need.

36Joseph, whom the apostles called Barnabas (which is translated Son of Encouragement), a Levite, a man from Cyprus,37sold a field that belonged to him and brought the money and laid it at the apostles' feet.

#### Acts 4:1

##### came upon them

"approached them" or "came to them"

#### Acts 4:2

##### They were deeply troubled

"They were very angry." The Sadducees, in particular, would have been angry about what Peter and John were saying because they did not believe in resurrection.

##### proclaiming in Jesus the resurrection from the dead

Peter and John were saying that God would raise people from the dead in the same way as he had raised Jesus from among the dead. Translate this in a way that allows "the resurrection" to refer to both Jesus's resurrection and the general resurrection of other people.

##### from the dead

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

#### Acts 4:3

##### They laid hands on them

"The priests, the captain of the temple, and the Sadducees arrested Peter and John"

#### Acts 4:4

##### the number of the men who believed

This refers only to men and does not include how many women or children believed.

##### was about five thousand

"grew to about five thousand"

#### Acts 4:5

##### It came about ... that

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### their rulers, elders, and scribes

This is a reference to the Sanhedrin, the Jewish ruling court, which consisted of these three groups of people.

#### Acts 4:6

##### John, and Alexander

These two men were members of the high priest's family. This is not the same John as the apostle.

#### Acts 4:7

##### By what power

"Who gave you power"

##### in what name

"by whose authority"

#### Acts 4:8

##### Then Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit, said

"God filled Peter with the Holy Spirit, and Peter said"

#### Acts 4:9

##### we are on trial today

"you are questioning us today"

##### by what means this man was healed

"by what means we have made this man well"

#### Acts 4:10

##### let it be known to you all and to all the people of Israel

"May all of you and all of the people of Israel know this"

##### in the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth

"by the power of Jesus Christ of Nazareth"

##### whom God raised from the dead

"whom God caused to live again"

#### Acts 4:11

##### Jesus Christ is the stone ... which has been made the cornerstone

Peter is quoting from the Psalms. This means that means the religious leaders, like builders, rejected Jesus, but God will made him the most important in his kingdom, as a cornerstone in a building is important.

#### Acts 4:12

##### There is no salvation in any other person

"He is the only person who is able to save"

##### no other name under heaven given among men

"no other name under heaven that God has given among men"

##### under heaven

"in the world"

##### by which we must be saved

"which can save us" or "who can save us"

#### Acts 4:13

##### the boldness of Peter and John

"how boldly Peter and John had spoken" or "how bold Peter and John were"

##### ordinary, uneducated men

The words "ordinary" and "uneducated" share similar meanings. They emphasize that Peter and John had received no formal training in Jewish law.

#### Acts 4:14

##### the man who was healed

"the man whom Peter and John had healed"

##### nothing to say against this

"nothing to say against Peter and John's healing of the man."

#### Acts 4:15

##### the apostles

This refers to Peter and John.

#### Acts 4:16

##### What should we do with these men?

"There is nothing that we can do with these men!"

##### For a remarkable sign has been done through them, and this is evident to everyone who lives in Jerusalem

"For God has done a remarkable sign through them, and many of the people who lives in Jerusalem has seen it" or "For everyone who lives in Jerusalem knows that they have done a remarkable sign"

##### sign

The miracle of healing was a sign that Peter and John were obeying God, who did the healing.

#### Acts 4:17

##### in order that it spreads no further

"in order that news of this miracle spreads no further" or "in order that no more people hear about this miracle"

##### not to speak anymore to anyone in this name

"not to speak anymore to anyone about this person, Jesus"

#### Acts 4:19

##### Whether it is proper in the sight of God

"Whether God thinks it is right"

#### Acts 4:21

##### They were unable to find any excuse to punish them

Although the Jewish leaders threatened Peter and John, they could not find a reason to punish them without causing the people to riot.

##### for what had been done

"for what Peter and John had done"

#### Acts 4:22

##### The man who had experienced this sign of healing

"The man whom Peter and John had miraculously healed"

#### Acts 4:23

##### came to their own people

"went to the other believers"

#### Acts 4:24

##### General Information:

Speaking together, the people quote a Psalm of David from the Old Testament. Here the word "they" refers to the rest of the believers, but not to Peter and John.

##### with one purpose

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Acts 4:25

##### You spoke by the Holy Spirit through the mouth of your servant, our father David

This means that the Holy Spirit caused David to speak or write down what God said.

##### our father David

Here the word "father" refers to an ancestor.

##### Why did the Gentile nations rage, and the peoples imagine useless things?

"The Gentile nations should not have raged, and the peoples should not have imagined useless things against God"

#### Acts 4:26

##### The kings of the earth set themselves together, and the rulers gathered together against the Lord

These two lines mean basically the same thing. The two lines emphasize the combined effort of the earth's rulers to oppose God.

##### against the Lord, and against his Christ

Here the word "Lord" refers to God. In the Psalms, the word "Christ" refers to the Messiah or God's anointed one.

#### Acts 4:27

##### in this city

"this city" refers to Jerusalem.

##### your holy servant Jesus

"Jesus, who serves you faithfully"

#### Acts 4:28

##### to do all that your hand and your plan had decided

"to do all that you in your power had decided and planned they would do"

#### Acts 4:29

##### look upon their warnings

"notice how they threaten to punish us"

##### speak your word with all boldness

"speak your message boldly" or "be bold when we speak your message"

#### Acts 4:30

##### Stretch out your hand to heal and to give

"Show your power by healing people and by giving"

##### through the name of your holy servant Jesus

"through the power of your holy servant Jesus"

#### Acts 4:31

##### they were all filled with the Holy Spirit

"the Holy Spirit had filled them all" or "God had filled them all with the Holy Spirit"

#### Acts 4:32

##### were of one heart and soul

"thought the same way and wanted the same things"

##### they had everything in common

"they shared their belongings with one another."

#### Acts 4:33

##### great grace was upon them all

Possible meanings are: 1) that God was greatly blessing the believers or 2) that the people in Jerusalem held the believers in very high esteem.

#### Acts 4:34

##### all who owned title to lands or houses

"Many people who owned title to lands or houses" or "People who owned title to lands or houses"

##### the money from the things that were sold

"the money that they received from the things that they sold"

#### Acts 4:35

##### laid it at the apostles' feet

"presented it to the apostles" or "gave it to the apostles"

##### it was distributed to each one according to their need

"they distributed the money to each believer who needed it"

#### Acts 4:36

##### Son of Encouragement

"Encourager" or "one who encourages"

#### Acts 4:37

##### laid it at the apostles' feet

"presented it to the apostles" or "gave it to the apostles"

Chapter 5

1Now a certain man named Ananias, with Sapphira his wife, sold a piece of property,2and he kept back part of the sale money (his wife also knew it), and brought the other part of it and laid it at the apostles' feet.3But Peter said, "Ananias, why has Satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit and to keep back part of the price of the land?4While it remained unsold, did it not remain your own, and after it was sold, was it not under your authority? Why did you put it in your heart to do this? You have not lied to men, but to God."5Hearing these words, Ananias fell down and breathed his last, and great fear came upon all who heard it.6The young men arose and wrapped him up, and they carried him out and buried him.

7After about three hours, his wife came in, not knowing what had happened.8Peter said to her, "Tell me whether you sold the land for so much." She said, "Yes, for so much."9Then Peter said to her, "How is it that you have agreed together to test the Spirit of the Lord? Look, the feet of the men who buried your husband are at the door, and they will carry you out."10She immediately fell down at his feet and breathed her last. When the young men came in, they found her dead, and carried her out and buried her beside her husband.11Great fear came upon the whole church and upon all who heard these things.

12Many signs and wonders were taking place among the people through the hands of the apostles. They were all together in Solomon's Porch.13But none of the rest had the courage to join them; however, they were held in high esteem by the people.14Still more believers were being added to the Lord, multitudes of men and women,15so that they even carried the sick into the streets and laid them on beds and couches, so that as Peter came by, his shadow might fall on some of them.16There also came together a great number of people from the towns around Jerusalem, bringing the sick and those afflicted with unclean spirits, and they were all healed.

17But the high priest rose up, and all those who were with him (which is the sect of the Sadducees); and they were filled with jealousy18and laid hands on the apostles, and held them in custody in the common prison.19Yet during the night an angel of the Lord opened the doors of the prison and led them out, and said,20"Go, stand in the temple and speak to the people all the words of this life."21When they heard this, they entered into the temple about daybreak and taught. But the high priest came, and those who were with him, and called the council together, all the elders of the people of Israel, and sent to the prison to have the apostles brought.22But the officers that went did not find them in the prison, and they returned and reported,23"We found the prison securely shut and the guards standing at the door, but when we had opened it, we found no one inside."24Now when the captain of the temple and the chief priests heard these words, they were much perplexed concerning them as to what would come of it.25Then someone came and told them, "The men whom you put in the prison are standing in the temple and teaching the people."26So the captain went with the officers and brought them back, but without violence, for they feared the people, that they might be stoned.27When they had brought them, they set them before the council. The high priest interrogated them,28saying, "We ordered you with a command not to teach in this name, and yet you have filled Jerusalem with your teaching and desire to bring this man's blood upon us."29But Peter and the apostles answered, "We must obey God rather than men.30The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom you killed by hanging him on a tree.31God exalted him to his right hand to be a Prince and a Savior, to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.32We are witnesses of these things, and so is the Holy Spirit, whom God has given to those who obey him."

33When the council members heard this, they were furious and they wanted to kill the apostles.34But a Pharisee named Gamaliel, a teacher of the law who was honored by all the people, stood up in the council and gave a command to take the men outside for a little while.35Then he said to them, "Men of Israel, pay close attention to what you propose to do with these people.36For before these days, Theudas rose up claiming to be somebody, and a number of men, about four hundred, joined him. He was killed, and all who had been obeying him were scattered and came to nothing.37After this man, Judas of Galilee rose up in the days of the census and drew away some people after him. He also perished, and all who had been obeying him were scattered.38Now I say to you, keep away from these men and let them alone, for if this plan or work is of men, it will be overthrown.39But if it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them; you may even find that you are fighting against God." So they were persuaded.40Then they called the apostles in and beat them and commanded them not to speak in the name of Jesus, and let them go.41They went away from before the council, rejoicing that they were counted worthy to suffer dishonor for the Name.42Thereafter every day, in the temple and from house to house, they were continuously teaching and proclaiming the good news that the Christ is Jesus.

#### Acts 5:2

##### his wife also knew it

"his wife also knew that he kept back part of the sale money"

##### laid it at the apostles' feet

"presented it to the apostles" or "gave it to the apostles"

#### Acts 5:3

##### why has Satan filled your heart to lie ... land?

"you should not have let Satan fill your heart to lie ... land."

##### Satan filled your heart

Possible meanings of the metaphor are 1) "Satan completely controlled you" or 2) "Satan convinced you"

##### to lie to the Holy Spirit and to keep back part of the price

This implies that Ananias had told the apostles that he was giving the entire amount that he had received from selling his land.

#### Acts 5:4

##### While it remained unsold, did it not remain your own ... authority?

"Before you sold it, it was your own ... authority."

##### after it was sold, was it not under your authority?

"after it was sold, you had control over the money that you received."

##### Why did you put it in your heart to do this?

"You should not have thought of doing this thing." or "It is Satan who has put this activity in your heart."

#### Acts 5:5

##### fell down and breathed his last

"died and fell to the ground"

#### Acts 5:7

##### his wife came in

"Ananias' wife came in" or "Sapphira came in"

##### what had happened

"that her husband had died"

#### Acts 5:8

##### for so much

"for this much money." This refers to the amount of money that Ananias had given to the apostles.

#### Acts 5:9

##### How is it that you have agreed together to test the Spirit of the Lord?

"You should not have agreed together to test the Spirit of the Lord!"

##### to test the Spirit of the Lord

Here the word "test" means to challenge or to prove. They were trying to see if they could get away with lying to God without receiving punishment.

##### Look, the feet of the men

"Pay attention! The men" or "Listen! The footsteps of the men"

#### Acts 5:10

##### fell down at his feet

This means that when she died, she fell on the floor in front of Peter. This expression should not be confused with falling down at a person's feet as a sign of humility.

##### breathed her last

Here "breathed his last" means "breathed her final breath" and is a polite way of saying "she died."

#### Acts 5:12

##### Many signs and wonders were taking place among the people through the hands of the apostles

"The apostles performed many signs and wonders among the people"

##### signs and wonders

"supernatural events and miraculous deeds."

##### through the hands of the apostles

"through the apostles"

##### Solomon's Porch

This was a covered walkway that consisted of rows of pillars that supported a roof, and which people named after king Solomon.

#### Acts 5:13

##### none of the rest

Possible meanings are 1) the apostles were in Solomon's Porch, but the rest of the believers were afraid to join them there, or 2) all the believers were in Solomon's Porch, and the word "none" means that most of the people who were not believers were afraid to join them.

##### they were held in high esteem by the people

"the people held the believers in high esteem"

#### Acts 5:14

##### more believers were being added to the Lord

"more people were believing in the Lord"

#### Acts 5:15

##### his shadow might fall on some of them

It is implied that God would heal them if Peter's shadow touched them.

#### Acts 5:16

##### those afflicted with unclean spirits

"those whom unclean spirits had afflicted"

##### they were all healed

"God healed them all" or "the apostles healed them all"

#### Acts 5:17

##### the high priest rose up

"the high priest took action"

#### Acts 5:18

##### laid hands on

"sent soldiers to arrest"

#### Acts 5:20

##### in the temple

"in the temple courtyard"

##### all the words of this life

Possible meanings are 1) "all this message of eternal life" or 2) "the whole message of this new way of living"

#### Acts 5:21

##### sent to the prison to have the apostles brought

"sent someone to the jail to bring the apostles"

#### Acts 5:23

##### we found no one inside

"we did not find them inside" or 2) the apostles had been the only prisoners and now there were no prisoners at all in the jail.

#### Acts 5:24

##### they were much perplexed

"they were very puzzled" or "they were very confused"

##### concerning them

"concerning the words they had just heard" or "concerning these things"

##### as to what would come of it

"and what would happen as a result" or "what would happen next"

#### Acts 5:25

##### standing in the temple

"standing in the temple courtyard"

#### Acts 5:26

##### brought them back

"brought the apostles back"

##### they feared the people, that they might be stoned

"they feared that the people might stone them"

#### Acts 5:27

##### they had brought them, they set them ... interrogated them

"the captain and officers had brought the apostles, the captain and the officers set the apostles ... interrogated the apostles"

##### interrogated

questioned to find out what was true

#### Acts 5:28

##### We ... us

The speakers were referring to themselves, but not to the apostles, so these words are exclusive.

##### you ... your

These words refer to the apostles and so are plural.

##### in this name

"not to speak anymore about this person, Jesus"

##### you have filled Jerusalem with your teaching

"you have taught many people in Jerusalem about him" or "you have taught about him throughout the Jerusalem"

##### desire to bring this man's blood upon us

"desire to make us responsible for this man's death"

#### Acts 5:30

##### The God of our fathers raised up Jesus

"The God of our fathers caused Jesus to live again"

##### by hanging him on a tree

"by hanging him on a cross"

#### Acts 5:31

##### God exalted him to his right hand

"God exalted him to the place of honor beside him"

##### give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins

"give the people of Israel an opportunity to repent and have God forgive their sins"

##### Israel

The word "Israel" refers to the Jewish people.

#### Acts 5:32

##### those who obey him

"those who submit to God's authority"

#### Acts 5:34

##### Gamaliel, a teacher of the law who was honored by all the people

Luke introduces Gamaliel and provides background information about him.

##### who was honored by all the people

"whom all the people honored"

##### to take the men outside

The words "the men" refers to the apostles.

#### Acts 5:35

##### pay close attention to

"think carefully about" or "be cautious about." Gamaliel was warning them not to do something that they would later regret.

#### Acts 5:36

##### Theudas rose up

Possible meanings are 1) "Theudas rebelled" or 2) "Theudas appeared."

##### claiming to be somebody

"claiming to be somebody important"

##### He was killed

"People killed him"

##### all who had been obeying him were scattered

"all the people scattered who had been obeying him" or "all who had been obeying him went in different directions"

##### came to nothing

This means that they did not do what they had planned to do.

#### Acts 5:37

##### After this man

"After Theudas"

##### in the days of the census

"during the time of the census"

##### drew away some people after him

"caused many people to follow him" or "caused many people to join him in rebellion"

#### Acts 5:38

##### keep away from these men and let them alone

Gamaliel is telling the Jewish leaders not to punish the apostles any more and not to put them back in jail.

##### if this plan or work is of men

"if men have devised this plan or are doing this work"

##### it will be overthrown

"someone will overthrow it"

#### Acts 5:39

##### if it is of God

"if God has devised this plan or commanded these men to do this work"

##### So they were persuaded

"So Gamaliel persuaded them"

#### Acts 5:40

##### to speak in the name of Jesus

"to speak anymore in the authority of Jesus"

#### Acts 5:41

##### they were counted worthy to suffer dishonor for the Name

"God had counted them worthy to suffer dishonor for Jesus"

#### Acts 5:42

##### in the temple and from house to house

"in the temple courtyard and in different people's houses"

Chapter 6

1Now in these days, when the number of the disciples was multiplying, a complaint by the Grecian Jews began against the Hebrews, because their widows were being overlooked in the daily distribution of help.2The twelve called the multitude of the disciples to them and said, "It is not right for us to give up the word of God in order to serve tables.3You should therefore choose, brothers, seven men from among yourselves, men of good reputation, full of the Spirit and of wisdom, whom we may appoint over this business.4As for us, we will always continue in prayer and in the ministry of the word."5Their speech pleased the whole multitude. So they chose Stephen, a man full of faith and of the Holy Spirit, and Philip, Prochorus, Nicanor, Timon, Parmenas, and Nicolaus, a proselyte from Antioch.6The believers brought these men before the apostles, who prayed and then placed their hands upon them.

7So the word of God continued to spread, and the number of disciples in Jerusalem increased greatly, and a large number of the priests became obedient to the faith.

8Now Stephen, full of grace and power, was doing great wonders and signs among the people.9But there arose some people who belonged to the synagogue called the synagogue of the Freedmen, of the Cyrenians and Alexandrians, and some from Cilicia and Asia. These people were debating with Stephen.10But they were not able to stand against the wisdom and the Spirit with which Stephen spoke.11Then they bribed some men to say, "We have heard Stephen speak blasphemous words against Moses and against God."12They stirred up the people, the elders, and the scribes, and they approached Stephen and seized him and brought him before the council.13They brought false witnesses, who said, "This man does not stop speaking words against this holy place and the law.14For we have heard him say that this Jesus of Nazareth will destroy this place and change the customs that Moses handed down to us."15Everyone who sat in the council fixed their eyes on him and saw his face was like the face of an angel.

#### Acts 6:1

##### Now in these days

Consider how new parts of a story are introduced in your language.

##### was multiplying

"was greatly increasing"

##### Grecian Jews

These were believers who had grown up as Jews or become converts living somewhere in the Roman Empire outside of Israel and speaking Greek. Their language and culture were somewhat different from those who had grown up in Israel.

##### the Hebrews

These were believers who had grown up as Jews or become converts in Israel speaking Hebrew or Aramaic.

##### widows

A widow is a woman who has not remarried since her husband died.

##### their widows were being overlooked

"the Hebrew believers were overlooking the Grecian widows"

##### being overlooked

"being ignored" or "being forgotten." There were so many who needed help that some were missed.

##### daily distribution of help

Possible meanings are 1) the disciples used the money to buy food, which they would give to the widows, or 2) the disciples gave the money directly to the widows.

#### Acts 6:2

##### The twelve

This refers to the eleven apostles plus Matthias, who was selected in Acts 1:26

##### the multitude of the disciples

"all of the disciples" or "all the believers"

##### give up the word of God

"stop preaching and teaching the word of God"

##### serve tables

This is a phrase meaning to serve food to the people.

#### Acts 6:3

##### men of good reputation, full of the Spirit and of wisdom

Possible meanings are 1) the men have three qualities—a good reputation, being full of the Spirit, and being full of wisdom or 2) the men have a reputation for two qualities—being full of the Spirit, and being full of wisdom .

##### over this business

"to be responsible to do this task"

#### Acts 6:4

##### the ministry of the word

"the ministry of teaching and preaching the message"

#### Acts 6:5

##### Their speech pleased the whole multitude

"All the disciples liked their suggestion"

##### Stephen ... Philip, Prochorus, Nicanor, Timon, Parmenas, and Nicolaus

These are Greek names, so it seems that all of the men elected were from the Grecian Jewish group of believers

##### proselyte

a Gentile who converted to the Jewish religion

#### Acts 6:6

##### placed their hands upon them

This represented giving a blessing and imparting responsibility and authority for the work to the seven.

#### Acts 6:7

##### the word of God continued to spread

"the number of people who believed the word of God increased" or "the number of people who believed the message from God increased"

##### became obedient to the faith

"followed the teaching of the new belief"

##### the faith

Possible meanings are 1) the gospel message of trust in Jesus or 2) the teaching of the church or 3) the Christian teaching.

#### Acts 6:8

##### Stephen, full of grace and power, was doing

"God was giving Stephen power to do"

#### Acts 6:9

##### there arose some people ... Asia. These people were debating with Stephen

"some people ... Asia, began to debate against Stephen"

##### synagogue of the Freedmen

"Freedmen" were probably ex-slaves from these different locations. It is unclear if the other people listed were part of the synagogue or just participated in the debate with Stephen.

##### the Cyrenians and Alexandrians

"people from Cyrene and Alexandria." Cyrene and Alexandria were cities in Northern Africa. They were south of the Mediterranean Sea.

##### some from Cilicia and Asia

Cilicia was a city and Asia was a Roman province, both north of the Mediterranean Sea.

##### debating with Stephen

"arguing with Stephen"

#### Acts 6:10

##### not able to stand against

"could not argue against"

##### Spirit

this refers to the Holy Spirit

#### Acts 6:11

##### some men to say

"some men to lie and say"

##### blasphemous words against

"bad things about"

#### Acts 6:12

##### stirred up the people, the elders, and the scribes

"caused the people, the elders, and the scribes to be very angry at Stephen"

##### seized him

"grabbed him and held him so he could not get away"

#### Acts 6:14

##### handed down to us

"taught by our ancestors"

#### Acts 6:15

##### fixed their eyes on him

"looked intently at him" or "stared at him"

Chapter 7

1The high priest said, "Are these things true?"2Stephen said,

"Brothers and fathers, listen to me: The God of glory appeared to our father Abraham when he was in Mesopotamia, before he lived in Haran;3he said to him, 'Leave your land and your relatives, and go into the land that I will show you.'

4"Then he left the land of the Chaldeans and lived in Haran; from there, after his father died, God brought him into this land, where you live now.5He gave none of it as an inheritance to him, no, not even enough to set a foot on. But he promised—even though Abraham had no child yet—that he would give the land as a possession to him and to his descendants after him.6God was speaking to him like this, that his descendants would live for a while in a foreign land, and that the inhabitants there would bring them into slavery and mistreat them for four hundred years.7'But I will judge the nation that they serve,' said God, 'and after that they will come out and worship me in this place.'8Then God gave Abraham the covenant of circumcision, so Abraham became the father of Isaac and circumcised him on the eighth day; Isaac became the father of Jacob, and Jacob the father of the twelve patriarchs.

9"Because the patriarchs were jealous of Joseph, they sold him into Egypt; but God was with him10and rescued him from all his tribulation. He gave Joseph favor and wisdom in the presence of Pharaoh, king of Egypt, who appointed him governor over Egypt and over all his household.

11"Now a famine and great tribulation came over all Egypt and Canaan, and our fathers could find no food.12But when Jacob heard that there was grain in Egypt, he sent out our fathers on their first trip.13On their second trip Joseph made himself known to his brothers, and Joseph's family became known to Pharaoh.14Joseph sent his brothers back to invite Jacob his father to come to Egypt, along with all his relatives, seventy-five persons in all.15So Jacob went down into Egypt, and he died, he and our fathers.16They were carried over to Shechem and laid in the tomb that Abraham had bought for a price in silver from the sons of Hamor in Shechem.

17"As the time of the promise approached, the promise that God had made to Abraham, the people grew and multiplied in Egypt,18until there arose another king over Egypt, a king who did not know about Joseph.19He deceived our people and mistreated our fathers, forcing them to expose their newborn infants so they would not be kept alive.

20"At that time Moses was born; he was very beautiful before God and was nourished for three months in his father's house.21When he was placed outside, Pharaoh's daughter adopted him and raised him as her own son.22Moses was educated in all the wisdom of the Egyptians, and he was mighty in his words and works.

23"But when he was about forty years old, it came into his heart to visit his brothers, the descendants of Israel.24Seeing an Israelite being mistreated, Moses defended him and avenged him who was oppressed by striking the Egyptian:25he thought that his brothers would understand that God, by his hand, was giving them salvation, but they did not understand. 26On the next day he appeared to them when they were fighting, and he tried to make peace between them, saying, 'Men, you are brothers; why are you wronging one another?'

27"But the one who had wronged his neighbor pushed him away, and said, 'Who appointed you a ruler and a judge over us?28Would you like to kill me, as you killed the Egyptian yesterday?'29Moses ran away after hearing this statement; he became a foreigner in the land of Midian, where he became the father of two sons.

30"When forty years were past, an angel appeared to him in the wilderness of Mount Sinai, in a flame of fire in a bush.31When Moses saw the fire, he marveled at the sight; and as he approached to look at it, the voice of the Lord came, saying,32'I am the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob.' Moses trembled and did not dare to look.

33"The Lord said to him, 'Take off the sandals from your feet, for the place where you are standing is holy ground.34I have certainly seen the oppression of my people who are in Egypt; I have heard their groaning, and I have come down to rescue them; now come, I will send you to Egypt.'

35"This Moses whom they rejected, when they said, 'Who appointed you a ruler and a judge?'—he was the one whom God sent as both a ruler and deliverer. God sent him by the hand of the angel who appeared to Moses in the bush.36Moses led them out of Egypt, after doing miracles and signs in Egypt and at the Sea of Reeds, and in the wilderness during forty years.

37"It is the same Moses who said to the people of Israel, 'God will raise up a prophet for you from among your brothers, a prophet like me.'38This is the man who was in the assembly in the wilderness with the angel who had spoken to him on Mount Sinai, who was with our fathers, and who received living words to give to us.

39"But our fathers refused to obey him; they pushed him away from themselves, and in their hearts they turned back to Egypt.40At that time they said to Aaron, 'Make us gods who will lead us. As for this Moses, who led us out of the land of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him.'41So they made a calf in those days and brought a sacrifice to the idol, and rejoiced because of the work of their hands.42But God turned and gave them up to worship the stars in the sky, as it is written in the book of the prophets,

'Did you bring me offerings and sacrifices during the forty years in the wilderness, house of Israel?43You accepted the tabernacle of Molechand the star of the god Rephan,and the images that you made to worship them:and I will carry you away beyond Babylon.'

44"Our fathers had the tabernacle of the testimony in the wilderness, just as God commanded when he spoke to Moses, that he should make it like the pattern that he had seen.45Later, our fathers, under Joshua, received the tabernacle and brought it with them when they took possession of the land. God took the land from the nations and drove them out before the face of our fathers. The tabernacle remained in the land until the time of David,46who found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob [1](#footnote-target-1).47But it was Solomon who built the house for God.

48"However, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands, as the prophet says,49'Heaven is my throne,and the earth is the footstool for my feet.What kind of house can you build for me? says the Lord,or what is the place for my rest?50Did my hand not make all these things?'

51"You stiff-necked people, uncircumcised in heart and ears, you always resist the Holy Spirit; you act just as your fathers acted.52Which of the prophets did your fathers not persecute? They killed the prophets who appeared in advance of the coming of the Righteous One; and you have now become the betrayers and murderers of him also,53you people who received the law that angels had ordained, but you did not keep it."

54Now when the council members heard these things, they were furious in their hearts and they ground their teeth at Stephen.55But he, being full of the Holy Spirit, looked up intently into heaven and saw the glory of God; and he saw Jesus standing at the right hand of God.56Stephen said, "Look, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of Man standing at the right hand of God."

57At this the council members covered their ears, and shouting out with a loud voice, they rushed at him with one purpose.58They forced him out of the city and began to stone him. The witnesses laid down their outer clothing at the feet of a young man named Saul.

59As they were stoning Stephen, he was calling out to the Lord and saying, "Lord Jesus, receive my spirit."60He knelt down and cried out with a loud voice, "Lord, do not hold this sin against them." When he had said this, he fell asleep.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The phrase: the house of Jacob, is found in many ancient copies. Other ancient texts have the phrase: the God of Jacob .

#### Acts 7:5

##### enough to set a foot on

"a very tiny piece of ground"

##### as a possession to him and to his descendants after him

"for Abraham to own and to give to his descendants"

#### Acts 7:6

##### God was speaking to him like this

"Later God told Abraham"

#### Acts 7:7

##### I will judge the nation

"I will judge the people of the nation that they will serve"

#### Acts 7:8

##### gave Abraham the covenant of circumcision

"made a covenant with Abraham to circumcise the males of his family"

#### Acts 7:9

##### the patriarchs

"the founders of our tribes" or "our ancestors." A patriarch is a man who rules a family.

##### sold him into Egypt

"sold him as a slave in Egypt"

#### Acts 7:10

##### over Egypt

"over all the people of Egypt"

##### all his household

"everything he owned"

#### Acts 7:11

##### our fathers

This refers Jacob and his sons, who were the ancestors of the Jewish people.

#### Acts 7:13

##### made himself known

Joseph revealed to his brothers his identity as their brother.

##### Joseph's family became known to Pharaoh

"Pharaoh learned that they were Joseph's family"

#### Acts 7:14

##### sent his brothers back

"sent his brothers back to Canaan" or "sent his brothers back home"

#### Acts 7:15

##### he died

"eventually Jacob died"

##### he and our fathers

"Jacob and his sons, who became our ancestors"

#### Acts 7:16

##### They were carried over ... and laid

"Jacob's descendants carried Jacob's body and his son's bodies over ... and buried them"

#### Acts 7:17

##### time of the promise approached

It was close to the time that God would fulfill his promise to Abraham.

#### Acts 7:18

##### there arose another king

"another king began to rule over the people of Egypt"

##### who did not know about Joseph

"who did not know that Joseph had helped Egypt"

#### Acts 7:20

##### very beautiful before God

Moses was very beautiful.

##### was nourished

"his parents nourished him" or "his parents cared for him"

#### Acts 7:21

##### When he was placed outside

"When his parents placed him outside" or "When they abandoned him"

##### Pharaoh's daughter ... raised him as her own son

She did for him every good thing a mother would do for her own son. Use your language's normal word for what a mother does to make sure her son becomes a healthy adult.

##### adopted him

If your language has a word for an informal procedure, not a formal legal procedure, in which one family takes a child in and raises him, you may want to use that here. Pharaoh's daughter did do for Moses what any mother would do for her child, but this involved no formal legal procedure.

##### as her own son

"as if he were her own son"

#### Acts 7:22

##### Moses was educated

"The Egyptians educated Moses"

##### mighty in his words and works

"effective in his speech and actions" or "influential in what he said and did"

#### Acts 7:23

##### it came into his heart

"it came into his mind" or "he decided"

##### visit his brothers, the descendants of Israel

"see how his own people, the children of Israel, were doing"

#### Acts 7:24

##### Seeing an Israelite being mistreated ... the Egyptian

"Seeing an Egyptian mistreating an Israelite, Moses defended and avenged the Israelite by striking the Egyptian who was oppressing him"

##### striking the Egyptian

Moses hit the Egyptian so hard that he died.

#### Acts 7:25

##### by his hand, was giving them salvation

"was giving them salvation through what he, Moses, was doing"

##### was giving them salvation

"was saving them" or "was rescuing them"

#### Acts 7:26

##### when they were fighting

"when two men of Israel were fighting"

##### make peace between them

"make them stop fighting"

##### Men, you are brothers

Moses was addressing the Israelites who were fighting.

##### why are you wronging one another?

"you should not do wrong to each other!"

#### Acts 7:27

##### Who appointed you a ruler and a judge over us?

"No one appointed you ruler or judge over us." or "You have no authority over us!"

#### Acts 7:28

##### Would you like to kill me, as you killed the Egyptian yesterday?

The man used this question to warn Moses that he and probably others knew Moses had killed the Egyptian.

#### Acts 7:30

##### When forty years were past

"Forty years after Moses fled from Egypt"

##### an angel appeared

Stephen's audience knew that God spoke through the angel.

#### Acts 7:31

##### he marveled at the sight

"because the bush was not burning up"

#### Acts 7:32

##### I am the God of your fathers

"I am the God whom your ancestors worshiped"

##### Moses trembled with fear and did not dare to look

This may mean Moses drew back in fear when he heard the voice.

#### Acts 7:33

##### Take off the sandals

God told Moses this so he would honor God.

##### for the place where you are standing is holy ground

The implied information is that where God is present, the immediate area around God is considered holy or is made holy by God.

#### Acts 7:34

##### the oppression of my people

"the way the Egyptians are oppressing my people"

##### my people

"the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob"

##### I have come down to rescue them

"will personally cause their release"

##### now come

"get ready." God uses an order here.

#### Acts 7:35

##### This Moses whom they rejected

This refers back to the events recorded in Acts 7:27-28.

##### deliverer

"rescuer"

##### by the hand of the angel ... bush

"by the action of the angel" or "by having the angel ... bush command him to return to Egypt"

#### Acts 7:36

##### during forty years

"during the 40 years that the Israelite people lived in the wilderness"

#### Acts 7:37

##### raise up a prophet

"cause a man to be a prophet"

##### from among your brothers

"from among your own people"

#### Acts 7:38

##### This is the man who was in the assembly

"This is the man Moses who was among the Israelites"

##### who received living words to give to us

"to whom God spoke living words to give to us"

##### living words

Possible meanings are 1) "a message that endures" or 2) "words that give life."

#### Acts 7:39

##### pushed him away from themselves

"they rejected him as their leader"

##### in their hearts they turned back

"they desired to turn back"

#### Acts 7:40

##### At that time

"When they decided to return to Egypt"

#### Acts 7:41

##### they made a calf

"they made a statue that looked like a calf"

##### a calf ... the idol ... the work of their hands

These phrases all refer to the same statue of the calf.

#### Acts 7:42

##### God gave them up

"God abandoned them and stopped correcting them"

##### the book of the prophets

This was apparently a collection of the writings of several of the Old Testament prophets into one scroll. It would also have included the writings of Amos.

##### Did you bring me offerings and sacrifices ... Israel?

"You did not honor me when brought offerings and sacrifices ... Israel."

##### house of Israel

"all you Israelites"

#### Acts 7:43

##### You accepted

"you carried with you from place to place"

##### tabernacle of Molech

the tent that housed the false god Molech

##### the star of the god Rephan

the star that is identified with the false god Rephan

##### the images that you made

They made statues or images of the gods Molech and Rephan in order to worship them.

##### I will carry you away beyond Babylon

"I will remove you to places even farther than Babylon." This would be God's act of judgment.

#### Acts 7:44

##### the tabernacle of the testimony

The tent that housed the ark (a box) with the 10 commandments carved in stone inside it

#### Acts 7:45

##### our fathers, under Joshua, received the tabernacle and brought it with them

"our fathers, in accordance with Joshua's instructions, received the tabernacle and brought it with them"

##### God took the land from the nations and drove them out before the face of our fathers

"God forced the nations to leave the land before the face of our fathers"

##### the nations

"the people who previously lived here"

#### Acts 7:46

##### he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob

"he might build a place where people could worship the God of Jacob")

##### the house of Jacob

Many versions read, "the God of Jacob."

#### Acts 7:48

##### made with hands

"made by people"

#### Acts 7:49

##### Heaven is my throne ... the earth is the footstool for my feet

The prophet is comparing the greatness of God's presence to how impossible it is for man to build a place for God to rest on earth since the whole earth is nothing but a place for God to rest his feet.

##### What kind of house can you build for me?

"You can not build a house adequate enough for me!"

##### what is the place for my rest?

"There is no place of rest good enough for me!"

#### Acts 7:50

##### Did my hand not make all these things?

"My hand made all these things!"

#### Acts 7:51

##### You stiff-necked people

Stephen shifts from identifying with the Jewish leaders to rebuking them.

##### uncircumcised in heart and ears

"you refuse to obey and hear"

#### Acts 7:52

##### Which of the prophets did your fathers not persecute?

"Your forefathers persecuted every prophet!"\

##### Righteous One

This refers to the Christ, the Messiah.

##### you have now become the betrayers and murderers of him also

"you have also betrayed and murdered him"

#### Acts 7:53

##### the law that angels had ordained

"the laws that God caused angels to give to our ancestors"

#### Acts 7:54

##### Now when the council members heard these things

This is the turning point; the sermon ends and the council members react.

##### they were furious in their hearts

This means that they were extremely angry.

##### ground their teeth at Stephen

"they became so angry that they ground their teeth together" or "moved their teeth back and forth as they looked at Stephen"

#### Acts 7:55

##### looked up intently into heaven

"stared up into heaven." It appears that only Stephen saw this vision and not anyone else in the crowd.

##### saw the glory of God

"saw a bright light from God"

##### and he saw Jesus standing at the right hand of God

"and he saw Jesus standing in the place of honor and authority beside God"

#### Acts 7:56

##### Son of Man

Stephen refers to Jesus by the title "Son of Man."

#### Acts 7:57

##### covered their ears

"put their hands on their ears." They did this to show that they did not want to hear any more of what Stephen said.

##### with one purpose

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Acts 7:58

##### They forced him out of the city

"They seized Stephen and forcefully took him out of the city"

##### outer clothing

These are cloaks or robes they would wear outside to stay warm, similar in function to a jacket or coat.

##### at the feet

"in front of." They were placed there so Saul could watch them.

##### a young man

Saul was probably around 30 years old at the time.

#### Acts 7:59

##### receive my spirit

"please receive my spirit"

#### Acts 7:60

##### He knelt down

This is an act of submission to God.

##### do not hold this sin against them

"forgive them for this sin"

##### fell asleep

"died"

Chapter 8

1Saul was in agreement with his death.

So there began on that day a great persecution against the church that was in Jerusalem; and the believers were all scattered throughout the regions of Judea and Samaria, except the apostles.2Devout men buried Stephen and made great lamentation over him.3But Saul tried to destroy the church. He would enter house after house, drag off both men and women, and put them in prison.

4Yet the believers who had been scattered went about preaching the word.5Philip went down to the city of Samaria and proclaimed to them the Christ.6Crowds of people were giving close attention to what was being said by Philip; with one mind they heard him, and they saw the signs he did.7Unclean spirits came out of many who were possessed, crying out with a loud voice, and many who were paralyzed and lame were healed.8So there was much joy in that city.

9But there was a certain man in the city named Simon, who had earlier been practicing sorcery; he used to astonish the people of Samaria while claiming that he was an important person.10All the Samaritans, from the least to the greatest, paid attention to him; they said, "This man is that power of God which is called Great."11They listened to him because he had astonished them for a long time with his sorceries.12But when they believed Philip as he proclaimed the gospel about the kingdom of God and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women.13Even Simon himself believed, and after he was baptized he stayed with Philip constantly. When he saw signs and mighty works taking place, he was amazed.

14Now when the apostles in Jerusalem heard that Samaria had received the word of God, they sent to them Peter and John.15When they had come down, they prayed for them, that they might receive the Holy Spirit.16For until that time, the Holy Spirit had not come upon any of them; they had only been baptized into the name of the Lord Jesus.17Then Peter and John placed their hands on them, and they received the Holy Spirit.18Now when Simon saw that the Holy Spirit was given through the laying on of the apostles' hands, he offered them money.19He said, "Give me this authority, too, that whoever I place my hands on might receive the Holy Spirit."

20But Peter said to him, "May your silver perish along with you, because you thought to obtain the gift of God with money.21You have no part or allotted portion in this matter, because your heart is not right with God.22Therefore repent of this wickedness of yours, and pray to the Lord, so that he might perhaps forgive you for the intention of your heart.23For I see that you are in the poison of bitterness and in the bonds of unrighteousness."

24Simon answered and said, "Pray to the Lord for me, so that nothing you have said may happen to me."

25When they had testified and spoken the word of the Lord, Peter and John returned to Jerusalem, proclaiming the gospel to many villages of the Samaritans.

26Now an angel of the Lord spoke to Philip and said, "Arise and go toward the south to the road that goes down from Jerusalem to Gaza." (This road is in a desert.)27He arose and went. Behold, there was a man from Ethiopia, a eunuch of great authority under Candace, queen of the Ethiopians. He was in charge of all her treasure. He had come to Jerusalem to worship.28He was returning and sitting in his chariot, and was reading the prophet Isaiah.

29The Spirit said to Philip, "Go over and stay close to this chariot."

30So Philip ran to him, and heard him reading Isaiah the prophet, and said, "Do you understand what you are reading?"

31Then he said, "How can I, unless someone guides me?" He invited Philip to come up into the chariot and sit with him.

32Now the passage of the scripture which the Ethiopian was reading was this,

"He was led like a sheep to the slaughter,and like a lamb before his shearer is silent,so he did not open his mouth.33In his humiliationjustice was taken away from him.Who can give a full account of his descendants?For his life was taken from the earth."

34So the eunuch asked Philip, and said, "I beg you, tell me who is the prophet speaking about, himself, or someone else?"35Philip began to speak, and beginning with this scripture he proclaimed the gospel about Jesus to him.36As they went on the road, they came to some water and the eunuch said, "Look, there is water here. What prevents me from being baptized?"37[1](#footnote-target-1)38So the Ethiopian commanded the chariot to stop. They went down into the water, both Philip and the eunuch, and Philip baptized him.39When they came up out of the water, the Spirit of the Lord took Philip away, and the eunuch saw him no more, but went on his way rejoicing.40But Philip appeared at Azotus and he went through that region, proclaiming the gospel to all the cities until he came to Caesarea.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have Acts 8:37, Philip said, "If you believe with all your heart, you may be baptized." The Ethiopian answered, "I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God" .

#### Acts 8:2

##### Devout men

"God-fearing men" or "Men who feared God"

##### made great lamentation over him

"greatly mourned his death"

#### Acts 8:3

##### drag off both men and women

"took away both men and women by force." Saul forcefully took Jewish believers out of their homes and put them into prison.

#### Acts 8:4

##### who had been scattered

"who had fled the great persecution"

##### the word

"the message about Jesus"

#### Acts 8:5

##### proclaimed to them the Christ

"told them about Jesus Christ" or "told them about Jesus the Messiah"

#### Acts 8:6

##### Crowds of people

"Many people in the city of Samaria."

##### with one mind

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Acts 8:7

##### who were possessed

"who had them" or "who were controlled by them"

#### Acts 8:8

##### So there was much joy in that city

"So the people of the city were rejoicing"

#### Acts 8:9

##### But there was a certain man ... named Simon

This is a way of introducing a new person into the story. Your language may use different wording to introduce a new person into the story.

##### the city

"the city in Samaria"

#### Acts 8:10

##### All the Samaritans

"Many of the Samaritans" or "The Samaritans in the city"

##### from the least to the greatest

"no matter how important they were"

##### that power of God which is called Great

Possible meanings are 1) the powerful representative of God or 2) God or 3) the most powerful man or 4) an angel. Since the term is unclear, it may be best to simply translate it as "the Great power of God."

#### Acts 8:12

##### they were baptized

"Philip baptized them" or "Philip baptized the new believers"

#### Acts 8:13

##### Simon himself believed

"Simon was also one of those who believed"

##### he was baptized

"Philip baptized Simon"

#### Acts 8:14

##### Samaria

This refers to the many people who had become believers throughout the district of Samaria.

##### had received

"had believed" or "had accepted"

#### Acts 8:15

##### When they had come down

"when Peter and John had come down"

##### come down

This phrase is used here because Samaria is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

##### they prayed for them

"Peter and John prayed for the Samaritan believers"

##### that they might receive the Holy Spirit

"that the Samaritan believers might receive the Holy Spirit"

#### Acts 8:16

##### they had only been baptized

"Philip had only baptized the Samaritan believers"

##### they had only been baptized into the name of the Lord Jesus

"they had only been baptized to become disciples of the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 8:17

##### Peter and John placed their hands on them

The word "them" refers to the Samaritan people who believed Stephen's message of the gospel.

#### Acts 8:18

##### the Holy Spirit was given through the laying on of the apostles' hands

"the apostles gave the Holy Spirit by laying their hands on people"

#### Acts 8:19

##### that whoever I place my hands on might receive the Holy Spirit

"that I can give the Holy Spirit to anyone on whom I place my hands"

#### Acts 8:20

##### May your silver perish along with you

"May you and your money be destroyed"

##### the gift of God

Here this refers to the ability of a person to give the Holy Spirit by laying his hands on someone.

#### Acts 8:21

##### You have no part or allotted portion in this matter

"You may not participate in this work"

##### your heart is not right

"you are not right in your heart" or "the motives of your mind are not right"

#### Acts 8:22

##### this wickedness

"these evil thoughts"

##### he might perhaps forgive

"he may be willing to forgive"

##### for the intention of your heart

"for what you intended to do" or "for what you were thinking of doing"

#### Acts 8:23

##### in the poison of bitterness

"very envious"

##### in the bonds of unrighteousness

"because you continue sinning you are like a prisoner" or "sin has made you its prisoner"

#### Acts 8:24

##### nothing you have said may happen to me

"the things you have said may not happen to me"

#### Acts 8:25

##### testified

Peter and John told what they personally knew about Jesus to the Samaritans.

##### spoken the word of the Lord

Peter and John explained the message about Jesus to the Samaritans.

##### to many villages of the Samaritans

"to the people in many Samaritan villages"

#### Acts 8:26

##### Arise and go

"Get ready to travel"

#### Acts 8:27

##### Behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### eunuch

The emphasis of "eunuch" here is about the Ethiopian's being a high government official, and also his physical state of being castrated.

##### Candace

This was a title for the queens of Ethiopia. It is similar to the way the word Pharaoh was used for the kings of Egypt.

##### He had come to Jerusalem to worship

"He had come to worship God at the temple in Jerusalem"

#### Acts 8:28

##### chariot

Possibly "wagon" or "carriage" is more fitting in this context. Chariots are normally mentioned as a vehicle for war, not as a vehicle for long-distance travel. Also, people stood to ride in chariots.

##### reading the prophet Isaiah

"reading from the book of the prophet Isaiah"

#### Acts 8:29

##### stay close to this chariot

"accompany the man in this chariot"

#### Acts 8:30

##### reading Isaiah the prophet

"reading from the book of the prophet Isaiah"

##### Do you understand what you are reading?

"Do you understand the meaning of what you are reading?"

#### Acts 8:31

##### How can I, unless someone guides me?

"I cannot understand unless someone guides me."

##### He invited

Possible meanings are that 1) he offered a sincere invitation or 2) he made a sincere request.

#### Acts 8:32

##### like a lamb before his shearer is silent

A shearer is a person who cuts the wool off the sheep so that it may be used.

#### Acts 8:33

##### In his humiliation justice was taken away from him

"He was humiliated and they did not judge him fairly" or "He allowed himself to be humbled before his accusers and he suffered injustice"

##### Who can give a full account of his descendants?

"No one will be able to speak about his descendants, for there will not be any."

##### his life was taken from the earth

"men killed him" or "men took his life from the earth"

#### Acts 8:34

##### I beg you

"Please tell me"

#### Acts 8:35

##### this scripture

"the writings of Isaiah"

#### Acts 8:36

##### they went on the road

"they continued to travel along the road"

##### What prevents me from being baptized?

"Please allow me to be baptized."

#### Acts 8:38

##### commanded the chariot to stop

"told the driver of the chariot to stop"

#### Acts 8:39

##### the Spirit of the Lord took Philip away

The words "took Philip away" imply that the Spirit took forceful, physical action, perhaps a miracle that moved Philip in an instant. The angel probably did not just suggest or even command that Philip leave the eunuch and go elsewhere.

##### the eunuch saw him no more

"the eunuch did not see Philip again"

#### Acts 8:40

##### Philip appeared at Azotus

There was no indication of Philip's traveling between where he baptized the Ethiopian and Azotus. He just suddenly disappeared along the road to Gaza and reappeared at the town of Azotus.

##### that region

This refers to the area around the town of Azotus.

##### to all the cities

"to all the cities in that region"

Chapter 9

1But Saul, still speaking threats even of murder against the disciples of the Lord, went to the high priest2and asked him for letters for the synagogues in Damascus, so that if he found any who belonged to the Way, whether men or women, he might bring them bound to Jerusalem.3As he was traveling, it happened that as he came near to Damascus, suddenly there shone all around him a light out of heaven;4and he fell upon the ground and heard a voice saying to him, "Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me?"5Saul replied, "Who are you, Lord?" The Lord said, "I am Jesus, whom you are persecuting;6but rise, enter into the city, and it will be told you what you must do."7The men who traveled with Saul stood speechless, hearing the voice, but seeing no one.8Saul arose from the ground, and when he opened his eyes, he could see nothing; so they led him by the hand and brought him into Damascus.9For three days he was without sight, and he neither ate nor drank.

10Now there was a disciple at Damascus named Ananias. The Lord said to him in a vision, "Ananias!" He said, "See, I am here, Lord."

11The Lord said to him, "Arise, and go to the street which is called Straight, and at the house of Judas ask for a man from Tarsus named Saul, for he is praying.12He has seen in a vision a man named Ananias coming in and laying his hands on him, so that he might see again."

13But Ananias answered, "Lord, I have heard from many about this man, how much harm he has done to your holy people in Jerusalem.14He has authority from the chief priests to put in bonds everyone here who calls upon your name."

15But the Lord said to him, "Go, for he is a chosen instrument of mine, to carry my name before the Gentiles and kings and the children of Israel;16for I will show him how much he must suffer for the cause of my name."

17So Ananias departed, and entered into the house. Laying his hands on him, he said, "Brother Saul, the Lord Jesus, who appeared to you on the road when you were coming, has sent me so that you might receive your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit."18Immediately something like scales fell from Saul's eyes, and he received his sight; he arose and was baptized;19and he ate and was strengthened.

He stayed with the disciples in Damascus for several days.20Right away he proclaimed Jesus in the synagogues, saying that he is the Son of God.21All who heard him were amazed and said, "Is not this the man who destroyed those in Jerusalem who called on this name? He has come here to take them bound to the chief priests."22But Saul became more and more powerful, and he was causing distress among the Jews who lived in Damascus by proving that Jesus is the Christ.

23After many days, the Jews planned together to kill him.24But their plan became known to Saul. They watched the gates day and night in order to kill him.25But his disciples took him by night and let him down through the wall, lowering him in a basket.

26When he had come to Jerusalem, Saul attempted to join the disciples, but they were all afraid of him, not believing that he was a disciple.27But Barnabas took him and brought him to the apostles, and he told them how Saul had seen the Lord on the road and that the Lord had spoken to him, and how at Damascus Saul had spoken boldly in the name of Jesus.28He was with them, going in and out around Jerusalem. He spoke boldly in the name of the Lord Jesus29and debated with the Grecian Jews; but they kept trying to kill him.30When the brothers learned of this, they brought him down to Caesarea and sent him away to Tarsus.

31So then, the church throughout all Judea, Galilee, and Samaria had peace and was built up; and, walking in the fear of the Lord and in the comfort of the Holy Spirit, the church grew in numbers.32Now it came about that, as Peter went throughout the whole region, he came down also to God's holy people who lived in the town of Lydda.33There he found a certain man named Aeneas, who had been in his bed for eight years, for he was paralyzed.34Peter said to him, "Aeneas, Jesus Christ heals you. Get up and make your bed," and right away he got up.35So everyone who lived in Lydda and in Sharon saw the man and they turned to the Lord.

36Now there was in Joppa a certain disciple named Tabitha (which is translated "Dorcas"). This woman was full of good works and merciful deeds that she did for the poor.37It came about in those days that she fell sick and died; when they had washed her, they laid her in an upper room.38Since Lydda was near Joppa, and the disciples had heard that Peter was there, they sent two men to him, pleading with him, "Come to us without delay."39Peter arose and went with them. When he had arrived, they brought him to the upper room, and all the widows stood by him weeping, showing him the tunics and garments that Dorcas had made while she had been with them.40Peter put them all out of the room, knelt down, and prayed; then, turning to the body, he said, "Tabitha, arise." Then she opened her eyes, and seeing Peter she sat up.41Peter then gave her his hand and raised her up; and when he called God's holy people and the widows, he presented her alive to them.42This matter became known throughout all Joppa, and many people believed on the Lord.43It happened that Peter stayed for many days in Joppa with a man named Simon, a tanner.

#### Acts 9:1

##### still speaking threats even of murder against the disciples

"still speaking threats, even to murder the disciples"

#### Acts 9:2

##### for the synagogues

"for the people in the synagogues" or "for the leaders in the synagogues"

##### if he found any people who belonged to the Way

"when he found people who followed the teachings of Jesus Christ" or "if he found people who followed the teachings of Jesus Christ"

##### he might bring them bound to Jerusalem

"Paul's purpose can be made clear by adding "so that the Jewish leaders could judge and punish them"

#### Acts 9:3

##### As he was traveling

Saul left Jerusalem and now travels to Damascus.

##### it happened that

This is an expression that marks a change in the story to show something different is about to happen.

##### there shone all around him a light out of heaven

"a light from heaven shone all around him"

##### out of heaven

Possible meanings are 1) out of heaven, where God lives or 2) out of the sky. The first meaning is preferable. Use that meaning if your language has a separate word for it.

#### Acts 9:4

##### he fell upon the ground and heard

Possible meanings are that 1) "Saul threw himself to the ground and heard" or 2) "the light caused Saul to fall to the ground, and he heard" or 3) "Saul fell to the ground the way one who faints falls, and he heard"

##### why are you persecuting me?

"You are persecuting me!" or "Stop persecuting me!"

#### Acts 9:5

##### Who are you, Lord?

Saul was not acknowledging that Jesus is the Lord. He uses that title because he understood that he spoke to someone of supernatural power.

#### Acts 9:6

##### but rise, enter into the city

"get up and go into the city Damascus"

##### it will be told you

"someone will tell you"

#### Acts 9:7

##### stood speechless, hearing the voice, but seeing no one

"stood speechless. They heard the voice, but they did not see anyone"

#### Acts 9:8

##### when he opened his eyes

This implies that he had closed his eyes because the light was too bright.

##### he could see nothing

"he could not see anything." Saul was blind.

#### Acts 9:9

##### was without sight

"was blind" or "could not see anything"

##### he neither ate nor drank

It is not stated whether he chose not to eat or drink as a form of worship, or if he had no appetite because he was too distressed from his situation. It is preferable not to specify the reason.

#### Acts 9:10

##### Now there was

This introduces Ananias as a new character.

##### He said

"Ananias said"

#### Acts 9:11

##### go to the street which is called Straight

"go to Straight Street"

##### house of Judas

This Judas was not the disciple who had betrayed Jesus. This Judas was owner of a house in Damascus where Saul was staying.

##### a man from Tarsus named Saul

"a man from the city of Tarsus named Saul" or "Saul of Tarsus"

#### Acts 9:12

##### laying his hands on him

This was a symbol of giving a spiritual blessing to Saul.

##### he might see again

"he might regain his ability to see"

#### Acts 9:13

##### your holy people in Jerusalem

"the people in Jerusalem who believe in you"

#### Acts 9:14

##### authority ... to put in bonds everyone here

It is implied that the extent of the power and authority granted Saul was limited to the Jewish people at this point in time.

##### put in bonds

Putting someone in bonds is a metonym for arresting that person. Alternate translation: "arrest"

##### calls upon your name

Here "your name" refers to Jesus.

#### Acts 9:15

##### he is a chosen instrument of mine

"I have chosen him to serve me"

##### to carry my name

"in order that he might speak about me"

#### Acts 9:16

##### for the cause of my name

This is an expression meaning "for telling people about me."

#### Acts 9:17

##### So Ananias departed, and entered into the house

"So Ananias went, and after he found the house where Saul was, he entered it"

##### Laying his hands on him

Ananias put his hands on Saul. This was a symbol of giving a blessing to Saul.

##### so that you might receive your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit

"so that you might see again and that the Holy Spirit might fill you"

#### Acts 9:18

##### something like scales fell

"something that appeared like fish scales fell"

##### he received his sight

"he was able to see again"

##### he arose and was baptized

"he got up and Ananias baptized him"

#### Acts 9:20

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Acts 9:21

##### All who heard him

"Those who heard him" or "Many who heard him"

##### Is not this the man who destroyed those in Jerusalem who called on this name?

"This is the man who destroyed those in Jerusalem who called on this name Jesus!"

#### Acts 9:22

##### causing distress among the Jews

They were distressed in the sense that they could not find a way to refute Saul's arguments that Jesus was the Christ.

#### Acts 9:23

##### the Jews

"the Jewish leaders"

#### Acts 9:24

##### But their plan became known to Saul

"But someone told their plan to Saul" or "But Saul learned about their plan"

##### They watched the gates

This city had a wall surrounding it. People could normally only enter and exit the city through the gates.

#### Acts 9:25

##### his disciples

people who believed Saul's message about Jesus and were following his teaching

##### let him down through the wall, lowering him in a basket

"used ropes to lower him in a large basket through an opening in the wall"

#### Acts 9:27

##### had spoken boldly in the name of Jesus

"had openly preached the message about Jesus"

#### Acts 9:28

##### He was with them, going in and out around Jerusalem

Here the word "He" refers to Saul, and the word "them" probably refers to the apostles and other disciples in Jerusalem.

##### in the name of the Lord Jesus

"about the Lord Jesus" or 2) "name" is a metonym for authority. Alternate translation: "under the authority of the Lord Jesus" or "with the authority that the Lord Jesus gave him"

#### Acts 9:29

##### debated with the Grecian Jews

Saul tried to reason with the Jews who spoke Greek.

#### Acts 9:30

##### the brothers

Here the words "the brothers" refer to the believers in Jerusalem.

##### brought him down to Caesarea

The phrase "brought him down" is used here because Caesarea is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

##### sent him away to Tarsus

Caesarea was a seaport. They brothers probably sent Saul to Tarsus by ship.

#### Acts 9:31

##### the church throughout all Judea, Galilee, and Samaria

This is the first use of the singular "church" to refer to more than one local congregation. Here it refers to all the believers in all the groups throughout Israel.

##### had peace

"lived peacefully." This means the persecution that started with the murder of Stephen was finished.

##### was built up

"God helped them grow" or "the Holy Spirit built them up"

##### walking in the fear of the Lord

"living in obedience to the Lord" or "continuing to honor the Lord"

##### in the comfort of the Holy Spirit

"with the Holy Spirit strengthening and encouraging them"

#### Acts 9:32

##### Now it came about

This phrase is used to mark a new part of the story.

##### throughout the whole region

This is an generalization for Peter's visiting the believers in many places in the region of Judea, Galilee, and Samaria.

##### Lydda

Lydda is a city located about 18 kilometers southeast of Joppa. This city is called Lod in the Old Testament and in modern Israel.

#### Acts 9:33

##### There he found a certain man named Aeneas

"There Peter met a man named Aeneas"

##### who had been in his bed ... was paralyzed

This is background information about Aeneas.

##### paralyzed

This means he was unable to walk. He probably was unable to move any part of his body below his waist.

#### Acts 9:34

##### make your bed

"roll up your mat"

#### Acts 9:35

##### everyone who lived in Lydda and in Sharon

"those who lived in Lydda and in Sharon" or "many people who lived in Lydda and Sharon"

##### saw the man

"saw the man whom Peter had healed"

##### and they turned to the Lord

"and they repented of their sins and started obeying the Lord"

#### Acts 9:36

##### Now there was

This introduces a new part in the story.

##### Tabitha (which is translated "Dorcas"). This woman

"Tabitha, which in the Greek language was Dorcas. This woman"

##### was full of good works and merciful deeds

"doing many good things and performed merciful deeds"

#### Acts 9:37

##### It came about in those days

"It came about while Peter was nearby"

##### washed her

This was washing to prepare for her burial.

##### they laid her in an upper room

This was a temporary display of the body during the funeral process.

#### Acts 9:38

##### they sent two men to him

"the disciples sent two men to Peter"

#### Acts 9:39

##### to the upper room

"to the upstairs room where Dorcas' body was lying"

##### all the widows

It is possible that all the widows of the town were there since it was not a large town.

##### widows

women whose husbands had died and therefore needed help

##### while she had been with them

"while she was still alive with the disciples"

#### Acts 9:40

##### put them all out of the room

"told them all to leave the room." Peter had everyone leave so he could be alone to pray for Tabitha.

#### Acts 9:41

##### gave her his hand and raised her up

Peter took hold of her hand and helped her to sit up in the bed and then stand up on the floor.

##### God's holy people and the widows

The widows were possibly also believers but are mentioned specifically because Tabitha was so important to them.

#### Acts 9:42

##### This matter became known throughout all Joppa

"People throughout all Joppa heard about this matter"

##### believed on the Lord

"believed in the gospel of the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 9:43

##### It happened that

"It came about that." This introduces the beginning of the next event in the story.

##### Simon, a tanner

"a man named Simon who made leather from animal skins"

Chapter 10

1Now there was a certain man in the city of Caesarea, Cornelius by name, a centurion of what was called the Italian Company of Soldiers.2He was a devout man, one who feared God with all his household, gave many alms to the people, and prayed to God constantly.3About the ninth hour of the day, he clearly saw in a vision an angel of God coming to him. The angel said to him, "Cornelius!"4Cornelius stared at the angel and was very afraid and said, "What is it, sir?"

The angel said to him, "Your prayers and your alms have gone up as a memorial offering into God's presence.5Now send men to the city of Joppa to bring a man named Simon who is called Peter.6He is staying with a tanner named Simon, whose house is by the seaside."

7When the angel who spoke to him had left, Cornelius called two of his house servants, and a devout soldier from among those who served him.8Cornelius told them all that had happened and sent them to Joppa.

9Now on the next day at about the sixth hour, as they were on their journey and were approaching the city, Peter went up upon the housetop to pray.10He then became hungry and wanted something to eat, but while the people were cooking some food, a trance came on him,11and he saw the sky open and a certain container descending, something like a large sheet coming down to the earth, let down by its four corners.12In it were all kinds of four-footed animals and things that crawled on the earth, and birds of the sky.13Then a voice spoke to him: "Rise, Peter, kill and eat."

14But Peter said, "Not so, Lord; for I have never eaten anything that was defiled and unclean."

15But the voice came to him again a second time: "What God has made clean, you must not call defiled."16This happened three times; then the container was immediately taken back up into the sky.

17Now while Peter was very confused about what the vision that he had seen could mean, behold, the men who were sent by Cornelius stood before the gate, after they had asked their way to the house.18They called out and asked whether Simon, who was also called Peter, was staying there.

19While Peter was still thinking about the vision, the Spirit said to him, "Behold, three men are looking for you. [1](#footnote-target-1)20Arise and go down and go with them. Do not hesitate to go with them, because I have sent them."

21So Peter went down to the men and said, "I am he whom you are seeking. Why have you come?"

22They said, "A centurion named Cornelius, a righteous man and one who fears God, and is well spoken of by all the nation of the Jews, was instructed by a holy angel to send for you to come to his house, so he could listen to a message from you."23So Peter invited them to come in and stay with him.

On the next morning he got up and went with them, and some of the brothers from Joppa accompanied him.24On the following day they came to Caesarea. Cornelius was waiting for them; he had called together his relatives and his close friends.25It came about that when Peter entered, Cornelius met him and fell down at his feet to worship him.26But Peter helped him up, saying, "Stand up! I too am a man."

27While Peter was talking with him, he went in and found many people gathered together.28He said to them, "You yourselves know that it is not lawful for a Jewish man to associate with or to visit a foreigner. But God has shown me that I should not call any man defiled or unclean.29That is why I came without arguing, when I was sent for. So I ask you why you sent for me."

30Cornelius said, "Four days ago at this very hour, I was praying at the ninth hour in my house; and see, a man stood before me in bright clothing.31He said, 'Cornelius, your prayer has been heard by God, and your alms have reminded God about you.32So send someone to Joppa, and call to you a man named Simon who is called Peter. He is staying in the house of a tanner named Simon, by the seaside.' [2](#footnote-target-2)33So at once I sent for you. You are kind to have come. Now then, we are all here present in the sight of God to hear everything that you have been instructed by the Lord to say." [3](#footnote-target-3)

34Then Peter opened his mouth and said, "Truly I understand that God is not partial.35Instead, in every nation anyone who fears him and does what is right is acceptable to him.36You know the message that he sent to the people of Israel, when he announced the good news about peace through Jesus Christ, who is Lord of all—37you yourselves know the events that took place, which occurred throughout all Judea, beginning in Galilee, after the baptism that John announced;38the events concerning Jesus of Nazareth, how God anointed him with the Holy Spirit and with power. He went about doing good and healing all who were oppressed by the devil, for God was with him.39We are witnesses of all the things Jesus did, both in the country of the Jews and in Jerusalem. They killed him by hanging him on a tree,40but God raised him up on the third day and caused him to be seen,41not by all the people, but to the witnesses who were chosen beforehand by God—by us who ate and drank with him after he rose from the dead.42He commanded us to proclaim to the people and to testify that this is the one who has been chosen by God to be the Judge of the living and the dead.43About him all the prophets testify, that everyone who believes in him receives forgiveness of sins through his name."

44While Peter was still saying these things, the Holy Spirit fell on all of those who were listening to his message.45The people who belonged to the circumcision group of believers—all of those who came with Peter—were amazed, because the gift of the Holy Spirit was poured out also on the Gentiles.46For they heard these Gentiles speaking in tongues and exalting God. Then Peter answered,47"Can anyone keep water from these people so they should not be baptized, these people who have received the Holy Spirit as well as we?"48Then he commanded them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ. Then they asked him to stay with them for several days.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient copies have, two men are looking for you or some men are looking for you . [2](#footnote-caller-2)Some ancient copies add: When he comes, he will speak to you . [3](#footnote-caller-3)Instead of instructed by the Lord to say, some ancient copies have, instructed by God to say .

#### Acts 10:1

##### Now there was a certain man

This was a way of introducing a new person to this part of the historical account.

##### in the city of Caesarea, Cornelius by name, a centurion of what was called the Italian Company of Soldiers

"Cornelius was from the city of Caesarea. He was an officer in charge of 60 soldiers from the Italian Company of Soldiers, in the Roman army"

#### Acts 10:2

##### a devout man

a man who wanted to do what God expected of him

##### feared God

worshiped God with deep respect and awe

##### prayed to God constantly

"prayed to God often" or "he prayed to God regularly"

#### Acts 10:3

##### the ninth hour

"three o'clock in the afternoon." This was the normal afternoon prayer time for Jews.

##### he clearly saw

"Cornelius clearly saw"

#### Acts 10:4

##### Your prayers and your alms have gone up ... into God's presence

"God is pleased by your prayers and alms. They have gone up ... to him"

#### Acts 10:6

##### a tanner

a person who makes leather from animal skins

#### Acts 10:7

##### When the angel who spoke to him had left

"When Cornelius' vision of the angel had ended."

##### a devout soldier

a soldier who wanted to do what God expected of him.

#### Acts 10:8

##### told them all that had happened

Cornelius explained his vision to his two servants and to one of his soldiers.

##### sent them to Joppa

"sent two of his two servants and the one soldier to Joppa."

#### Acts 10:9

##### about the sixth hour

"around noon"

##### up upon the housetop

The roofs of the houses were flat, and people often did many different activities on them.

#### Acts 10:10

##### a trance came on him

"he went into a trance"

##### trance

Peter saw things in his mind, not with his physical eyes.

#### Acts 10:11

##### he saw the sky open

This was the beginning of Peter's vision. It can be a new sentence.

##### let down by its four corners

"with its four corners suspended" or "with its four corners higher than the rest of it"

#### Acts 10:12

##### things that crawled on the earth

snakes and insects, as opposed to "four-footed animals"

#### Acts 10:13

##### a voice spoke to him

The person speaking is not specified. The "voice" was probably God, although it could possibly have been an angel from God.

#### Acts 10:14

##### Not so

"I will not do that"

#### Acts 10:15

##### What God has made clean

"What I, God, have made clean"

#### Acts 10:16

##### This happened three times

Possible meanings are 1) Peter heard the words "What God has made clean, you must not call defiled" three times or 2) a total of three times the sheet came down from heaven and Peter heard and responded to the voice. It would be best to translate without adding information here.

#### Acts 10:17

##### Peter was very confused

This means that Peter was having difficulty understanding what the vision meant.

##### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows, in this case, the two men standing at the gate.

##### stood before the gate

"stood before the gate to the house." It is implied that this house had a wall with a gate one would use to enter the property.

#### Acts 10:18

##### They called out

Cornelius' men remained outside the gate while asking about Peter.

#### Acts 10:19

##### thinking about the vision

"wondering about the meaning of the vision"

##### the Spirit

"the Holy Spirit"

##### three men are looking for you

Some ancient texts have a different number of men.

#### Acts 10:20

##### go down

"go down from the roof of the house"

##### Do not hesitate to go with them

It would be natural for Peter not to want to go with them, because they were strangers and they were Gentiles.

#### Acts 10:21

##### I am he whom you are seeking

"I am the man you are looking for"

#### Acts 10:22

##### fears God

worships God with deep respect and awe

##### all the nation of the Jews

This number of people is exaggerated with the word "all" to emphasize how widely this was known among the Jews.

#### Acts 10:23

##### So Peter invited them to come in and stay with him

The journey to Caesarea was too long for them to begin that afternoon.

##### stay with him

"be his guests"

##### some of the brothers from Joppa

This refers to believers who lived in Joppa.

#### Acts 10:24

##### On the following day

This was the next day after they left Joppa. The journey to Caesarea took longer than one day.

##### Cornelius was waiting for them

"Cornelius expected them"

#### Acts 10:25

##### when Peter entered

"when Peter entered the house"

##### fell down at his feet to worship him

"he knelt down and put his face close to Peter's feet." He did this to honor Peter.

#### Acts 10:26

##### Stand up! I too am a man

"Do not worship me! I am only a man, as you are"

#### Acts 10:28

##### it is not lawful for a Jewish man

"it is forbidden for a Jewish man." This refers to the Jewish religious law.

##### a foreigner

people who are not Jews

#### Acts 10:30

##### at the ninth hour

The normal afternoon time that the Jews pray to God.

#### Acts 10:31

##### your prayer has been heard by God

"God has heard your prayer"

#### Acts 10:32

##### call to you a man named Simon who is called Peter

"tell Simon who is also called Peter to come to you"

#### Acts 10:33

##### at once

"right away"

##### You are kind to have come

"I certainly thank you for coming"

##### we are all here

This refers to Cornelius and his family but not to Peter, so this is exclusive.

##### present in the sight of God

"present with God"

##### that you have been instructed by the Lord to say

"that the Lord has told you to say"

#### Acts 10:34

##### opened his mouth

"began to speak"

##### Truly

This means that what he is about to say is especially important to know.

##### God is not partial

"God does not favor certain people"

#### Acts 10:35

##### anyone who fears him and does what is right is acceptable to him

"he accepts anyone who fears him and does what is right"

#### Acts 10:37

##### throughout all Judea

"throughout Judea" or "in many places in Judea"

##### after the baptism that John announced

"after John preached to the people to repent and then baptized them"

#### Acts 10:38

##### God anointed him with the Holy Spirit and with power

The Holy Spirit and God's power are spoken of as if they are something that can be poured out onto a person.

##### all who were oppressed by the devil

"those who were oppressed by the devil" or "many people who were oppressed by the devil"

##### God was with him

"God was helping him."

#### Acts 10:39

##### in the country of the Jews

This refers mainly to Judea at that time.

##### hanging him on a tree

"nailing him to a wooden cross"

#### Acts 10:40

##### God raised him up

"God caused him to live again"

##### the third day

"the third day after he died"

##### caused him to be seen

"permitted many people to see him after he was raised from the dead"

#### Acts 10:41

##### from the dead

From among all those who have died.

#### Acts 10:42

##### that this is the one who has been chosen by God

"that God chose this Jesus"

##### the living and the dead

"the people who are alive and the people who are dead"

#### Acts 10:43

##### About him all the prophets testify

"All the prophets testify about Jesus"

##### everyone who believes in him receives forgiveness of sins

"God will forgive the sins of everyone who believes in Jesus because of what Jesus has done"

##### through his name

"through what Jesus has done for them"

#### Acts 10:44

##### the Holy Spirit fell

"the Holy Spirit suddenly came"

##### all of those who were listening

Here "all" refers to all the Gentiles at the house who were listening to Peter.

#### Acts 10:45

##### the gift of the Holy Spirit was poured out also

"God also poured out the Holy Spirit"

##### the gift of the Holy Spirit

That is, the Holy Spirit himself was the gift.

##### the gift

"the free gift"

##### also on the Gentiles

Here "also" refers to the fact that the Holy Spirit had already been given to the Jewish believers.

#### Acts 10:46

##### Gentiles speaking in tongues and exalting God

These were known spoken languages that caused the Jews to acknowledge that the Gentiles were indeed praising God.

##### speaking in tongues

"speaking in other languages"

#### Acts 10:47

##### Can anyone keep water from these people so they should not be baptized, these people who have received ... we?

"No one should keep water from these people! We should baptize them because they have received ... we!"

#### Acts 10:48

##### he commanded them to be baptized

"Peter commanded the Gentile believers to allow the Jewish Christians to baptize them" or "Peter commanded the Jewish Christians to baptize them"

##### be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ

"be baptized as believers in Jesus Christ"

Chapter 11

1Now the apostles and the brothers who were in Judea heard that the Gentiles also had received the word of God.2When Peter had come up to Jerusalem, they who belonged to the circumcision group criticized him;3they said, "You associated with uncircumcised men and ate with them!"4But Peter started to explain the matter to them in detail, saying,5"I was praying in the city of Joppa, and in a trance I saw a vision of a container coming down, like a large sheet let down from heaven by its four corners. It descended to me.6I gazed at it and I thought about it. I saw the four-legged animals of earth, wild beasts, things that crawled, and birds of the sky.7Then I heard a voice say to me, 'Get up, Peter; kill and eat!'

8I said, 'Not so, Lord; for nothing unholy or unclean has ever entered into my mouth.'

9But the voice answered again from heaven, 'What God has made clean, you must not call defiled.'10This happened three times, and then everything was taken back up into heaven again.

11"Behold, right away there were three men standing in front of the house where we were; they had been sent from Caesarea to me.12The Spirit commanded me to go with them, and that I should make no distinction regarding them. These six brothers went with me, and we went into the man's house.13He told us how he had seen the angel standing in his house and saying, 'Send men to Joppa and bring back Simon who is called Peter.14He will speak to you a message by which you will be saved—you and all your household.'15As I began to speak to them, the Holy Spirit came on them, just as on us in the beginning.16I remembered the words of the Lord, how he said, 'John indeed baptized with water; but you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit.'17Then if God gave to them the same gift as he gave to us when we believed on the Lord Jesus Christ, who was I, that I could oppose God?"

18When they heard these things, they said nothing in response, but they glorified God and said, "Then God has given repentance for life to the Gentiles also."

19Now those who had been scattered by the persecution that arose over Stephen spread as far as Phoenicia, Cyprus, and Antioch, speaking the word only to Jews.20But some of them, men from Cyprus and Cyrene, came to Antioch and spoke also to Greeks, proclaiming to them the gospel about the Lord Jesus.21The hand of the Lord was with them; a great number believed and turned to the Lord.22News about them came to the ears of the church in Jerusalem, and they sent out Barnabas as far as Antioch.23When he came and saw the grace of God, he was glad and he encouraged them all to remain with the Lord with purpose of heart.24For he was a good man and full of the Holy Spirit and of faith, and many people were added to the Lord.25Barnabas then went out to Tarsus to search carefully for Saul.26When he found him, he brought him to Antioch. It came about that for an entire year they gathered together with the church and taught many people. The disciples were first called Christians in Antioch.

27Now in these days some prophets came down from Jerusalem to Antioch.28One of them, Agabus by name, stood up and indicated by the Spirit that a great famine would occur over all the world. This happened in the days of Claudius.29So the disciples, as each one was able, determined to send a contribution for the relief of the brothers in Judea.30They did this; they sent money to the elders by the hand of Barnabas and Saul.

#### Acts 11:1

##### the brothers

The phrase "brothers" here refers to the believers in Judea.

##### had received the word of God

"believed the message of God about Jesus"

#### Acts 11:2

##### they who belonged to the circumcision group

"some Jewish believers in Jerusalem who wanted all followers of Christ to be circumcised"

#### Acts 11:3

##### uncircumcised men

The phrase "uncircumcised men" refers to Gentiles.

##### ate with them

It was against Jewish tradition for Jews to eat with Gentiles.

#### Acts 11:4

##### Peter started to explain

Peter did not criticize the Jewish believers but reacted in a friendly, explanatory manner.

#### Acts 11:5

##### in a trance I saw

Peter saw something that was only in his mind. It was not physical. His mind was not working in its usual way.

##### like a large sheet

The container holding the animals had the appearance of a large square piece of cloth. See how you translated this in Acts 10:11.

##### by its four corners

"with its four corners suspended" or "with its four corners higher than the rest of it."

#### Acts 11:6

##### four-legged animals of earth

"animals and birds that the Mosaic laws forbade Jews to eat"

##### wild beasts

This probably refer to the animals people do not or cannot tame or control.

##### things that crawled

snakes and insects, as opposed to "four-footed animals."

#### Acts 11:7

##### I heard a voice

The person speaking is not specified. The "voice" was probably God, although it could possibly have been an angel from God. See how you translated "a voice" in Acts 10:13

#### Acts 11:8

##### nothing unholy or unclean has ever entered into my mouth

"I have eaten only meat from holy and clean animals"

##### unclean

In the Old Testament Jewish law, a person became ritually "unclean" in various ways, such as eating certain forbidden animals.

#### Acts 11:9

##### What God has made clean, you must not call defiled

This refers to the animals in the sheet.

#### Acts 11:10

##### This happened three times

Possible meanings are 1) Peter heard the words "What God has made clean, you must not call defiled" three times or 2) a total of three times the sheet came down from heaven and Peter heard and responded to the voice. It would be best to translate without adding information here. See how you translated "This happened three times" in Acts 10:16.

#### Acts 11:11

##### General Information:

Here "we" refers to Peter and the believers in Joppa. It does not include his current audience in Jerusalem.

##### Behold

This word alerts us to the new people in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### right away

"immediately" or "at that exact moment"

##### they had been sent

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone had sent them"

#### Acts 11:12

##### that I should make no distinction regarding them

"that I should not be concerned that they were Gentiles"

##### These six brothers

"These six Jewish believers"

##### into the man's house

This refers to the house of Cornelius.

#### Acts 11:14

##### all your household

"everyone who lives in your house"

#### Acts 11:15

##### As I began to speak to them, the Holy Spirit came on them

This implies that Peter had not finished speaking but had intended to say more.

##### the Holy Spirit came on them, just as on us in the beginning

"the Holy Spirit came on the Gentile believers, just as he came on the Jewish believers at Pentecost"

#### Acts 11:16

##### you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit

"God will baptize you with the Holy Spirit"

#### Acts 11:17

##### Then if God gave to them ... who was I, that I could oppose God?

"Since God gave to them ... I decided that I could not oppose God!"

##### the same gift

Peter refers to the gift of the Holy Spirit.

#### Acts 11:18

##### they said nothing in response

"they did not argue with Peter"

##### God has given repentance for life to the Gentiles also

"God has also given the Gentiles the ability to repent and then live eternally" or "God has allowed the Gentiles also to repent and live eternally"

#### Acts 11:19

##### those who had been scattered by the persecution that arose over Stephen spread

The Jews began persecuting Jesus's followers because Stephen had said and done things that the Jews did not like. Because of this persecution, many of Jesus's followers left Jerusalem and went to many different places.

##### only to Jews

The believers thought God's message was for the Jewish people, and not for the Gentiles.

#### Acts 11:20

##### spoke also to Greeks

"also spoke to Gentiles who spoke Greek"

#### Acts 11:21

##### The hand of the Lord was with them

"God was powerfully enabling those believers to preach effectively"

##### turned to the Lord

"they repented of their sins and began to obey the Lord"

#### Acts 11:22

##### ears of the church

"the believers in the church"

#### Acts 11:23

##### saw the grace of God

"saw how God acted kindly toward the believers"

##### he encouraged them

"he kept on encouraging them"

##### to remain with the Lord with purpose of heart

"to remain faithful to the Lord" or "to continue to trust in the Lord, with complete commitment"

#### Acts 11:24

##### full of the Holy Spirit

The Holy Spirit controlled Barnabas as he obeyed the Holy Spirit.

##### many people were added to the Lord

"many more people also believed in the Lord"

#### Acts 11:25

##### out to Tarsus

"out to the city of Tarsus"

#### Acts 11:26

##### When he found him

It probably took some time and effort for Barnabas to locate Saul.

##### they gathered together with the church

"Barnabas and Saul gathered together with the church"

##### The disciples were first called Christians in Antioch

"People in Antioch were the fist to call the disciples Christians"

#### Acts 11:28

##### Agabus by name

"whose name was Agabus"

##### indicated by the Spirit

"the Holy Spirit enabled him to prophesy"

##### a great famine would occur

"a great shortage of food would happen"

##### over all the world

"all over the inhabited world" or "throughout the Roman Empire"

##### in the days of Claudius

"when Claudius was the Roman emperor"

#### Acts 11:29

##### as each one was able

The richer people sent more; the poorer people sent less.

##### the brothers in Judea

"the believers in Judea"

#### Acts 11:30

##### by the hand of Barnabas and Saul

"by having Barnabas and Saul take it to them"

Chapter 12

1Now about that time Herod the king laid hands on some who belonged to the church so that he might mistreat them.2He killed James the brother of John with the sword.3After he saw that this pleased the Jews, he proceeded to arrest Peter also. That was during the days of unleavened bread.4After arresting him, he put him in prison, assigning him over to four squads of soldiers to guard him; he was intending to bring him to the people after the Passover.5So Peter was kept in the prison, but prayer was made earnestly to God for him by those in the church.6On the night before Herod was going to bring him out for trial, Peter was sleeping between two soldiers, bound with two chains, while guards in front of the door were keeping watch over the prison.7Behold, an angel of the Lord suddenly appeared by him, and a light shone in the prison cell. He struck Peter on the side and woke him and said, "Get up quickly," and his chains fell off his hands.8The angel said to him, "Gird yourself and put on your sandals." Peter did so. The angel said to him, "Put on your outer garment and follow me."9So Peter followed the angel and went out. He did not know that what was done by the angel was real. He thought he was seeing a vision.10After they had passed by the first guard and the second, they came to the iron gate that led into the city; it opened for them by itself. They went out and went down a street, and the angel left him right away.11When Peter came to himself, he said, "Now I truly know that the Lord has sent his angel and delivered me out of the hand of Herod, and from everything the Jewish people were expecting."12When he realized this, he went to the house of Mary the mother of John, also called Mark, where many people had gathered and were praying.13When he knocked at the door of the gate, a servant girl named Rhoda came to answer.14When she recognized Peter's voice, out of joy she failed to open the gate; instead, she came running into the room; she reported that Peter was standing at the gate.15So they said to her, "You are insane." But she insisted that it was so. They said, "It is his angel."16But Peter continued knocking, and when they had opened the door, they saw him and were amazed.17Peter motioned to them with his hand to be silent, and he told them how the Lord had brought him out of prison. He said, "Report these things to James and the brothers." Then he left and went to another place.18Now when it became day, there was no small disturbance among the soldiers over what had happened to Peter.19After Herod had searched for him and could not find him, he questioned the guards and ordered them to be put to death.

Then Herod went down from Judea to Caesarea and stayed there.20Now Herod was very angry with the people of Tyre and Sidon. They went to him with one purpose, and after persuading Blastus, the king's assistant, to help them, they asked for peace because their country received its food from the king's country.21On a set day Herod dressed himself in royal clothing and sat on a throne; he made a speech to them.22The people shouted, "This is the voice of a god, not of a man!"23Immediately an angel of the Lord struck him, because he did not give God the glory; he was eaten by worms and died.

24But the word of God increased and multiplied.

25So when Barnabas and Saul had completed their mission, they returned from Jerusalem, [1](#footnote-target-1) bringing with them John, also called Mark.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient copies read, they returned to Jerusalem .

#### Acts 12:1

##### about that time

This refers to the time of the famine.

##### laid hands on

"sent soldiers to arrest"

##### some who belonged to the church

Only James and Peter are specified, which implies that these were leaders of the church in Jerusalem.

##### so that he might mistreat them

"in order to cause the believers to suffer"

#### Acts 12:2

##### He killed James

"Herod gave the order and they killed James"

#### Acts 12:3

##### After he saw that this pleased the Jews

"When Herod realized that putting James to death made the Jewish leaders happy"

##### the days of unleavened bread

"the festival when the Jewish people ate bread without yeast"

#### Acts 12:4

##### four squads of soldiers

"four groups of soldiers." Each squad had four soldiers that guarded Peter, one group at a time. The groups divided the 24 hour day into four shifts. Each time two soldiers would have been at his side and the other two soldiers by the entrance.

##### he was intending to bring him to the people

"Herod planned to judge Peter in the presence of the people" or "Herod planned to judge Peter before the Jewish people"

#### Acts 12:5

##### So Peter was kept in the prison

"So the soldiers guarded Peter in the prison"

##### prayer was made earnestly to God for him by those in the church

"the group of believers in Jerusalem earnestly prayed to God for him"

##### earnestly

continuously and with dedication

#### Acts 12:6

##### On the night before Herod was going to bring him out for trial

"The happened on the day before Herod was going to bring Peter out from prison to put him on trial and then to execute him"

##### bound with two chains

"tied with two chains" or "fastened with two chains." Each chain would have been attached to one of the two guards who stayed beside Peter.

##### were keeping watch over the prison

"were guarding the prison doors"

#### Acts 12:7

##### Behold

This word alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### He struck Peter

"The angel tapped Peter" or "The angel poked Peter." Peter was evidently sleeping deeply enough that this was required to wake him.

##### his chains fell off his hands

The angel caused the chains to fall from Peter without touching them.

#### Acts 12:8

##### Gird yourself and put on your sandals

Peter had probably loosened his belt and taken off his sandals so he could go to sleep. The angel was telling Peter to get ready to leave the cell.

##### Peter did so

"Peter did what the angel told him to do" or "Peter obeyed"

#### Acts 12:9

##### He did not know

"He did not understand"

##### what was done by the angel was real

"the actions of the angel were real" or "what the angel did truly happened"

#### Acts 12:10

##### After they had passed by the first guard and the second

"The first and second guards did not see them as they passed by, and then"

##### and the second

"and the second guard"

##### they came to the iron gate that led into the city

"Peter and the angel arrived at the iron gate that went from the prison to the city"

##### it opened for them by itself

"the gate swung open for them" or "the gate opened itself for them"

##### went down a street

"walked along a street"

##### left him right away

"left Peter suddenly" or "suddenly disappeared"

#### Acts 12:11

##### When Peter came to himself

"When Peter became fully awake and alert" or "When Peter became aware that what had happened was real"

##### delivered me out of the hand of Herod

"brought me from the harm Herod had planned for me"

##### delivered me

"rescued me"

##### everything the Jewish people were expecting

"all that the Jewish leaders thought would happen to me"

#### Acts 12:12

##### realized this

He became aware that God had rescued him.

##### John, also called Mark

"John, whom people also called Mark"

#### Acts 12:13

##### he knocked

"Peter knocked." Tapping on the door was a normal Jewish custom to let others know you wish to visit them. You may need to change this to fit your culture.

##### at the door of the gate

"at the outer door" or "at the door of the entrance from the street to the courtyard"

##### came to answer

"came to the gate to ask who was knocking"

#### Acts 12:14

##### out of joy

"because she was so joyful" or "being overly excited"

##### failed to open the gate

"did not open the gate" or "forgot to open the gate"

##### she reported

"she told them" or "she said"

#### Acts 12:15

##### You are insane

"You are crazy"

##### she insisted that it was so

"she insisted that what she said was true"

##### It is his angel

"What you have seen is Peter's angel." Some Jews believed in guardian angels and may have thought that Peter's angel had come to them.

#### Acts 12:16

##### But Peter continued knocking

The word "continued" means that Peter kept knocking the entire time those inside were talking.

#### Acts 12:17

##### Report these things

"Tell these things"

##### the brothers

"the other believers"

#### Acts 12:18

##### when it became day

"in the morning"

##### there was no small disturbance among the soldiers over what had happened to Peter

"there was a great disturbance among the soldiers over what had happened to Peter"

#### Acts 12:19

##### After Herod had searched for him and could not find him

"After Herod searched for Peter and could not find him"

##### After Herod had searched for him

Possible meanings are that 1) "Herod" here is a metonym for his soldiers, that is, when Herod heard Peter was missing, he sent other soldiers to search the prison, or 2) when Herod heard Peter was missing, he went himself to search the prison.

##### he questioned the guards and ordered them to be put to death

It was the normal punishment for the Roman government to kill the guards if their prisoner escaped.

##### Then Herod went down

The phrase "went down" is used here because Caesarea is lower in elevation than Judea.

#### Acts 12:20

##### very angry

This phrase translates a word that speaks of a person being so angry that he is ready to kill other people.

##### They went to him with one purpose

"Men representing the people of Tyre and Sidon went with one purpose to talk with Herod"

##### after persuading Blastus

"after these men persuaded Blastus"

##### Blastus

a man's name

##### the king's assistant

This phrase refers to a person who assists the king in his personal life, not necessarily his work as ruler.

##### they asked for peace

"these men requested peace"

##### their country received its food from the king's country

"the people of Tyre and Sidon bought all their food from the people that Herod ruled"

#### Acts 12:21

##### On a set day

"On the day when Herod agreed to meet them"

##### royal clothing

expensive clothing that would demonstrate he was the king

##### sat on a throne

This was where Herod formally addressed people who came to see him.

#### Acts 12:23

##### Immediately an angel

"Right away an angel" or "While the people were praising Herod, an angel"

##### struck him

"afflicted Herod" or "caused Herod to become very ill"

##### he did not give God the glory

Herod let those people worship him instead of telling them to worship God.

##### he was eaten by worms and died

"worms ate Herod's insides and he died"

#### Acts 12:24

##### the word of God increased and multiplied

"the message of God spread to more places and more people believed in him"

##### the word of God

"the message God sent about Jesus"

#### Acts 12:25

##### completed their mission

"delivered the money to the church leaders in Jerusalem"

##### they returned from Jerusalem

"Barnabas and Saul returned to Antioch"

Chapter 13

1Now in the church in Antioch, there were some prophets and teachers. They were Barnabas, Simeon (who is called Niger), Lucius of Cyrene, Manaen (the foster brother of Herod the tetrarch), and Saul.2While they were worshiping the Lord and fasting, the Holy Spirit said, "Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul, to do the work to which I have called them."3After they had fasted, prayed, and laid their hands on these men, they sent them off.

4So Barnabas and Saul, having been sent out by the Holy Spirit, went down to Seleucia; from there they sailed away to Cyprus.5While they were in the city of Salamis, they proclaimed the word of God in the synagogues of the Jews. They also had John for an assistant.6When they had gone through the whole island to Paphos, they found a certain magician, a Jewish false prophet, whose name was Bar-Jesus.7This magician associated with the proconsul, Sergius Paulus, who was an intelligent man. This man summoned Barnabas and Saul, because he sought to hear the word of God.8But Elymas "the magician" (that is how his name is translated) opposed them; he tried to turn the proconsul away from the faith.9But Saul, who is also called Paul, filled with the Holy Spirit, stared at him intensely10and said, "You son of the devil, you are full of all kinds of deceit and wickedness. You are an enemy of every kind of righteousness. You will never stop twisting the straight paths of the Lord, will you?11Now look, the hand of the Lord is upon you, and you will become blind. You will not see the sun for a while." Immediately there fell on Elymas a mist and darkness; he started going around seeking people to lead him by the hand.12After the proconsul saw what had happened, he believed, because he was astonished at the teaching about the Lord.

13Now Paul and his friends set sail from Paphos and came to Perga in Pamphylia. But John left them and returned to Jerusalem.14Paul and his friends traveled from Perga and came to Antioch of Pisidia. There they went into the synagogue on the Sabbath day and sat down.15After the reading of the law and the prophets, the leaders of the synagogue sent them a message, saying, "Brothers, if you have any message of encouragement for the people here, say it."16So Paul stood up and motioned with his hand; he said, "Men of Israel and you who fear God, listen.17The God of this people Israel chose our fathers and exalted the people when they stayed in the land of Egypt, and with an uplifted arm he led them out of it.18For about forty years he put up with them in the wilderness. [1](#footnote-target-1)19After he had destroyed seven nations in the land of Canaan, he gave our people their land for an inheritance.20All these events took place over 450 years. After all these things, God gave them judges until Samuel the prophet.21Then the people asked for a king, and God gave them Saul son of Kish, a man from the tribe of Benjamin, to be king for forty years.22After God removed him from the kingship, he raised up David to be their king. It was about David that God testified, saying, 'I have found David son of Jesse to be a man after my heart, who does all I want him to do.'23From this man's descendants God has brought to Israel a Savior, Jesus, as he promised to do.24Before the arrival of Jesus, John proclaimed a baptism of repentance to all the people of Israel.25As John was finishing his work, he said, 'Who do you think I am? I am not the one. But listen, one is coming after me, the sandals of whose feet I am not worthy to untie.'26Brothers, children of the offspring of Abraham, and those among you who fear God, it is to us that the message about this salvation has been sent.27For they who live in Jerusalem and their rulers did not recognize him, and they fulfilled the voices of the prophets that are read every Sabbath by condemning him.28Even though they found no reason for the death penalty, they called on Pilate to kill him.29When they had completed all the things that were written about him, they took him down from the tree and laid him in a tomb.30But God raised him from the dead.31He was seen for many days by those who had come up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem. These people are now his witnesses to the people.32So we tell you the good news: The promise that came to our fathers33God has fulfilled for us, their children, by raising up Jesus. As it is written in the second Psalm:

'You are my Son,today I have become your Father.'

34As to his raising him from the dead, never to return to decay, he has spoken in this way:'I will give you the holy and sure blessingspromised to David.'

35This is why he also says in another Psalm,'You will not allow your Holy Oneto see decay.'

36For when David had served the purpose of God in his own generation, he fell asleep; he was laid with his fathers and his body experienced decay.37But he whom God raised up experienced no decay.38So let it be known to you, brothers, that through this man forgiveness of sins is proclaimed to you. The law of Moses could not make you righteous.39But by this man God makes righteous everyone who believes.40So then be careful that the thing the prophets spoke about does not happen to you:41'Look, you despisers,and be astonished and then perish; For I am doing a work in your days, a work that you would never believe,even if someone announces it to you.'"

42As Paul and Barnabas left, the people begged them that they might speak these same words again the next Sabbath.43When the synagogue meeting ended, many of the Jews and devout proselytes followed Paul and Barnabas, who were speaking to them and persuading them to continue in the grace of God.

44On the next Sabbath, almost the whole city was gathered together to hear the word of the Lord.45When the Jews saw the crowds, they were filled with envy and spoke against the things that were said by Paul and insulted him.46But Paul and Barnabas spoke out boldly and said, "It was necessary that the word of God should first be spoken to you. Seeing you push it away from yourselves and consider yourselves unworthy of eternal life, see, we will turn to the Gentiles.47For so has the Lord commanded us, saying,

'I have appointed you as a light for the Gentiles,that you should bring salvationto the uttermost parts of the earth.'"

48As the Gentiles heard this, they were glad and glorified the word of the Lord. As many as were appointed to eternal life believed.49The word of the Lord was spread out through the whole region.50But the Jews incited the devout women of high standing and the leading men of the city. They stirred up persecution against Paul and Barnabas and threw them out of their region.51But Paul and Barnabas shook off the dust from their feet against them. Then they went to the city of Iconium.52And the disciples were filled with joy and with the Holy Spirit.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient copies read, For about forty years he cared for them in the wilderness .

#### Acts 13:1

##### Now in the church in Antioch

"At that time in the church at Antioch"

##### Simeon ... Niger ... Lucius ... Manaen

These are men's names.

##### foster brother of Herod the tetrarch

Manaen was probably Herod's playmate or close friend while they were growing up.

#### Acts 13:2

##### Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul

"Appoint Barnabas and Saul to serve me"

##### I have called them

The verb here means that God chose them to do this work.

#### Acts 13:3

##### laid their hands on these men

"laid their hands on these men whom God had set apart for his service." This act showed that the leaders agreed that the Holy Spirit had called Barnabas and Saul to do this work.

##### sent them off

"sent those men off" or "sent those men off to do the work the Holy Spirit told them to do"

#### Acts 13:4

##### So

This word marks an event that happened because of a previous event. In this case, the previous event is Barnabas and Saul being set apart by the Holy Spirit.

##### Seleucia

a city by the sea

#### Acts 13:5

##### city of Salamis

The city of Salamis was on Cyprus Island.

##### proclaimed the word of God

"proclaimed the message of God"

##### synagogues of the Jews

Possible meanings are that 1) there were multiple Jewish synagogues in the city of Salamis where Barnabas and Saul preached or 2) Barnabas and Saul started at the synagogue at Salamis and continued to preach in all the synagogues they found while they traveled around the Island of Cyprus.

##### They also had John for an assistant

"John Mark went with them and was helping them"

#### Acts 13:6

##### the whole island

They crossed from one side of the island to the other and shared the gospel message in each town they passed through.

##### Paphos

a major city on Cyprus island where the proconsul lived

##### they found

"they met" or "they came upon"

##### a certain magician

"a particular person who practiced witchcraft" or "a person who practiced supernatural magic arts"

##### whose name was Bar-Jesus

"Bar-Jesus" means "Son of Jesus." There is no relation between this man and Jesus Christ. "Jesus" was a common name at that time.

#### Acts 13:7

##### associated with

"was often with" or "was often in the company of"

##### proconsul

"governor"

##### who was an intelligent man

This is background information about Sergius Paulus.

##### This man summoned

The phrase "this man" refers to Sergius Paulus.

##### he sought to hear the word of God

"he wanted to hear the word of God"

#### Acts 13:8

##### Elymas "the magician"

This was Bar Jesus, who was also called "the magician"

##### that is how his name is translated

"that was what he was called in Greek"

##### tried to turn the proconsul away from the faith

"attempted to persuade the governor not to believe the gospel message"

#### Acts 13:9

##### Saul, who is also called Paul

"Saul" was his Jewish name, and "Paul" was his Roman name. Since he was speaking to a Roman official, he used his Roman name. Alternate translation: "Saul, who now called himself Paul"

##### stared at him intensely

"looked at him intensely"

#### Acts 13:10

##### You son of the devil

"You are like the devil" or "You act like the devil"

##### you are full of all kinds of deceit and wickedness

"you are always intent in causing others to believe what is not true using falsehood and are always doing what is wrong"

##### wickedness

The word in this context means laziness and lack of diligence in following God's law.

##### You are an enemy of every kind of righteousness

Paul is grouping Elymas with the devil. Just as the devil is an enemy of God and is against righteousness, so also was Elymas.

##### You will never stop twisting the straight paths of the Lord, will you?

"You are always saying that the truth about the Lord God is false!"

##### the straight paths of the Lord

"the true ways of the Lord"

#### Acts 13:11

##### the hand of the Lord is upon you

"The Lord will punish you"

##### you will become blind

"God will make you blind"

##### You will not see the sun

"You will not even see the sun"

##### for a while

"for a period of time" or "until the time appointed by God"

##### there fell on Elymas a mist and darkness

"the eyes of Elymas became blurry and then dark" or "Elymas started seeing unclearly and then he could not see anything"

##### he started going around

"Elymas wandered around" or "Elymas started feeling around and"

#### Acts 13:12

##### he believed

"he believed in Jesus"

##### he was astonished at the teaching about the Lord

"the teaching about the Lord amazed him"

#### Acts 13:13

##### Now

This marks the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### set sail from Paphos

"traveled by sailboat from Paphos"

##### came to Perga in Pamphylia

"arrived in Perga, which is in Pamphylia"

##### But John left them

"But John Mark left Paul and Barnabas"

#### Acts 13:14

##### Antioch of Pisidia

"the city of Antioch in the district of Pisidia." This is different from the city of Antioch that Paul and Barnabas left at the beginning of the chapter.

#### Acts 13:15

##### After the reading of the law and the prophets

"After someone read from the books of the law and the writings of the prophets from the Jewish Scriptures"

##### Brothers

The term "brothers" is here used by the people in the synagogue to refer to Paul and Barnabas as fellow Jews.

##### if you have any message of encouragement

"if you want to say anything to encourage us, please tell it to us"

#### Acts 13:16

##### motioned with his hand

"moved his hands to show that he was about to speak"

##### you who fear God

This refers to Gentiles who had converted to Judaism. "you who are not Israelites but who worship God"

##### God, listen

"God, listen to me" or "God, listen to what I am about to say"

#### Acts 13:17

##### The God of this people Israel

"The God the people of Israel worship"

##### our fathers

"our ancestors"

##### exalted the people

"caused the people to become very numerous"

##### with an uplifted arm

"with great power"

##### out of it

"out from the land of Egypt"

#### Acts 13:18

##### he put up with them

"God endured their disobedience" or "God took care of them"

#### Acts 13:19

##### nations

Here the word "nations" refers to different people groups and not to lands with geographical boundaries.

#### Acts 13:20

##### took place over 450 years

"took more than 450 years to accomplish"

##### until Samuel the prophet

"until the time of the prophet Samuel"

#### Acts 13:21

##### king for forty years

"their king for forty years" or "king, and he reigned over them for forty years"

#### Acts 13:22

##### removed him from the kingship

"rejected Saul from being king"

##### he raised up David to be their king

"God chose David to be their king the king over the Israelites"

##### It was about David that God testified, saying,

"God gave this testimony about David:"

##### I have found David ... to be a man after my heart

"I have observed that David ... is a man who wants what I want."

#### Acts 13:23

##### From this man's descendants

"From David's descendants." This is placed at the beginning of the sentence to emphasize that the savior had to be one of David's descendants.

##### has brought to Israel

"gave to the people of Israel"

##### as he promised to do

"just as God promised he would do"

#### Acts 13:24

##### a baptism of repentance to all the people of Israel

"that all the people of Israel who wanted to repent of their sin needed to have him baptize them"

#### Acts 13:25

##### Who do you think I am?

"Think about who I am."

##### I am not the one

"I am not the Messiah"

##### But listen

This emphasizes the importance of what he will say next.

##### one is coming after me

"The Messiah will soon come"

##### the sandals of whose feet I am not worthy to untie

"I am not worthy even to untie his sandals." The Messiah is so much greater than John that he did not even feel worthy do the lowest job for him.

#### Acts 13:26

##### Brothers, children of the offspring of Abraham, and those among you who fear God

Possible meanings are 1) this is a list with three items, and Paul is addressing three groups of people together, or 2) the phrases "children of the offspring of Abraham" and "those among you who fear God" refer to the two groups of people whom Paul addresses as "brothers."

##### those among you who fear God

These words refer specifically to Gentiles who worshiped in the synagogue and obeyed much of the law of Moses but had not been circumcised.

##### the message about this salvation has been sent

"God has sent the message about this salvation"

##### about this salvation

"that God will save people"

#### Acts 13:27

##### did not recognize him

"did not realize that this man Jesus was the one whom God had sent to save them"

##### the voices of the prophets

"the writings of the prophets" or "the messages of the prophets"

##### that are read

"which someone reads"

#### Acts 13:28

##### they found no reason for the death penalty

"they found no legal reason for Jesus to be killed" or "they found no legal reason to kill Jesus"

#### Acts 13:29

##### When they had completed all the things that were written about him

"When they did to Jesus all the things that the prophets said would happen to him"

##### they took him down from the tree

"they killed Jesus and then took him down from the cross after he died"

#### Acts 13:30

##### But God raised him

"But" indicates a strong contrast between what the people did and what God did.

##### raised him from the dead

"caused him to live again"

#### Acts 13:31

##### He was seen for many days by those who had come up with him ... Jerusalem

"The disciples who traveled with Jesus ... Jeruaslem saw him for many days"

##### many days

We know from other writings that this period was 40 days. Translate "many days" with a term that would be appropriate for that length of time.

##### are now his witnesses to the people

"are now testifying to the people about Jesus" or "are now telling the people about Jesus"

#### Acts 13:32

##### So

This word marks an event that happened because of previous event. In this case, the previous event is God's raising Jesus from the dead.

##### our fathers

"our ancestors." Paul is still speaking to the Jews and Gentile converts in the synagogue at Antioch of Pisidia. These were the physical ancestors of the Jews, and the spiritual ancestors of the converts.

#### Acts 13:33

##### for us, their children

"for us, who are the children of our ancestors." Paul is still speaking to the Jews and Gentile converts in the synagogue at Antioch of Pisidia. These ancestors were the physical ancestors of the Jews and the spiritual ancestors of the converts.

##### by raising up Jesus

"by making Jesus alive again"

##### As it is written in the second Psalm

"This is what was written in the second Psalm"

##### Son ... Father

These are important titles that describe the relationship between Jesus and God.

#### Acts 13:34

##### As to his raising him from the dead, never to return to decay, he has spoken in this way:

"God has spoken in this way that he raised him up from the dead never to return to decay" "God used these words to say that he raised him up from the dead, and so he would never die again"

##### never to return to decay

"and he will never die again"

##### he has spoken in this way

God has said using these words

##### sure blessings

"certain blessings"

#### Acts 13:35

##### This is why he also says in another Psalm

"In another Psalm of David, he also says about the Messiah"

##### he also says

"David also says." David is the author of Psalm 16, from which this quotation is taken.

##### You will not allow your Holy One to see decay

"You will not allow the body of your Holy One to rot"

##### You will not allow

David is speaking to God here.

#### Acts 13:36

##### in his own generation

"during his lifetime"

##### served the purpose of God

"did what God wanted him to do" or "did what pleased God"

##### he fell asleep

"he died"

##### was laid with his fathers

"was buried with his ancestors who had died"

##### his body experienced decay

The phrase "his body experienced decay" is a less direct way of saying "his body decayed" or "his body rotted."

#### Acts 13:37

##### he whom God raised up experienced

"Jesus, whom God raised up, experienced"

##### God raised up

"God caused to live again"

##### experienced no decay

"did not rot"

#### Acts 13:38

##### let it be known to you

"know this" or "this is important for you to know"

##### brothers

"my fellow Israelites and other friends"

##### that through this man forgiveness of sins is proclaimed to you

"that we proclaim to you that your sins can be forgiven through Jesus"

#### Acts 13:39

##### But by this man God makes righteous everyone who believes

"But God makes righteous everyone who believes in this man"

##### by this man

Here "this man" refers to Jesus Christ.

#### Acts 13:40

##### be careful

"give close attention to the things I have said"

##### that the thing the prophets spoke about

"so that what the prophets spoke about"

#### Acts 13:41

##### you despisers

"you who feel contempt" or "you who ridicule"

##### be astonished

"be amazed" or "be shocked"

##### then perish

"then die"

##### am doing a work

"am doing something" or "am doing a great deed"

##### in your days

"during your lifetime"

##### even if someone announces it to you

"even if someone tells you about it"

#### Acts 13:42

##### As Paul and Barnabas left

"When Paul and Barnabas were leaving"

##### begged them that they might

"begged them to"

##### these same words

"this same message"

#### Acts 13:43

##### When the synagogue meeting ended

Possible meanings are 1) this restates "As Paul and Barnabas left" in verse 42 or 2) Paul and Barnabas left the meeting before it ended and this occurs later.

##### proselytes

These were non-Jewish people who converted to Judaism.

##### who were speaking to them and persuading them

"and Paul and Barnabas were speaking to those people and persuading them"

##### to continue in the grace of God

"to continue to trust that God kindly forgives people's sins because of what Jesus did"

#### Acts 13:44

##### almost the whole city was

"almost all the people of the city were"

##### to hear the word of the Lord

"to hear Paul and Barnabas speak about the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 13:45

##### the Jews

"the Jewish leaders"

##### were filled with envy

"became very envious"

##### spoke against

"contradicted" or "opposed"

##### the things that were said by Paul

"the things that Paul said"

#### Acts 13:46

##### It was necessary

"God commanded"

##### that the word of God should first be spoken to you

"that we speak the message from God to you first" or "that we speak the word of God to you first"

##### Seeing you push it away from yourselves

"Since you reject the word of God"

##### consider yourselves unworthy of eternal life

"have shown that you are not worthy of eternal life" or "act as though you are not worthy of eternal life"

##### we will turn to the Gentiles

"we will leave you and start preaching to the Gentiles"

#### Acts 13:47

##### commanded us ... 'I have appointed you as a light ... you should bring salvation to the uttermost parts of the earth.'

Both instances of "you" here are singular, but when Paul said, "... the Lord commanded us," Paul was applying those singular words to both himself and Barnabas. The words in the quotation were originally spoken by God through Isaiah the prophet to God's servant. By quoting Isaiah's prophecy, Paul was saying that he and Barnabas were doing what God commanded his servant to do. Paul was not saying that God had spoken directly to him.

##### as a light

Here the truth about Jesus that Paul was preaching is spoken of as if it were a light that allowed people to see.

##### bring salvation to the uttermost parts of the earth

"tell people everywhere in the world that I want to save them"

#### Acts 13:48

##### glorified the word of the Lord

"glorified God for the message about the Lord Jesus" or "glorified the Lord for his word"

##### As many as were appointed to eternal life

"As many as God appointed to eternal life" or "All the people whom God had chosen to receive eternal life"

#### Acts 13:49

##### The word of the Lord was spread out through the whole region

"Those who believed spread the word of the Lord through the whole region" or "Those who believed went everywhere in the region and told others about the message of Jesus"

#### Acts 13:50

##### the Jews

"the Jewish leaders"

##### incited ... women ... and ... men

"stirred up ... women ... and ... men"

##### the devout women of high standing

The word "devout" means that these women feared God. The phrase "of high standing" means that people respected these women.

##### the leading men

"the most important men"

##### They stirred up persecution against Paul and Barnabas

The word "they" here probably refers to the devout women and the leading men. They listened to the Jews and then convinced the rest of the people in the city to persecute the apostles and throw them out.

##### threw them out of their region

"made Paul and Barnabas leave their land"

#### Acts 13:51

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul and Barnabas end their time in Antioch of Pisidia and go to Iconium.

##### shook off the dust from their feet against them

This was a symbolic act to indicate to the unbelieving people that God had rejected them and would punish them.

#### Acts 13:52

##### the disciples

This probably refers to the new believers in the Antioch of Pisidia that Paul and Barnabas just left.

Chapter 14

1It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue of the Jews and spoke in such a way that a great multitude both of Jews and of Greeks believed.2But the Jews who were disobedient stirred up the minds of the Gentiles and made them bitter against the brothers.3So they stayed there for a long time, speaking boldly with the Lord's power, while he gave evidence about the message of his grace. He did this by granting signs and wonders to be done by the hands of Paul and Barnabas.4But the people of the city were divided; some sided with the Jews, others with the apostles.5Both Gentiles and Jews (together with their leaders) made an attempt to mistreat them and to stone them,6but as soon as they learned about this, they fled to the Lycaonian cities of Lystra and Derbe and the surrounding region,7where they continued to proclaim the gospel.

8At Lystra a certain man sat, powerless in his feet, a cripple from his mother's womb, who never had walked.9This man heard Paul speaking. Paul fixed his eyes on him and saw that he had faith to be made well.10So he said to him in a loud voice, "Stand up on your feet." Then the man jumped up and walked around.

11When the multitude saw what Paul had done, they raised their voice, saying in the dialect of Lycaonia, "The gods have become like men and come down to us."12They called Barnabas "Zeus," and Paul "Hermes," because he was the main speaker.13The priest of Zeus, whose temple was just outside the city, brought oxen and wreaths to the gates; he and the multitudes wanted to offer sacrifice.14But when the apostles, Barnabas and Paul, heard of it, they tore their clothing and quickly went out into the crowd, crying out,15"Men, why are you doing these things? We also are human beings, with the same nature as you. We are telling you good news that you should turn from these useless things to the living God, who made the heavens, the earth, the sea, and everything that is in them.16In the past ages, he allowed all the nations to walk in their own ways.17But still, he did not leave himself without witness, in that he did good and gave you the rains from heaven and fruitful seasons, filling your hearts with food and gladness."18Even with these words, Paul and Barnabas barely kept the multitudes from sacrificing to them.

19But some Jews from Antioch and Iconium came and persuaded the crowds. They stoned Paul and dragged him out of the city, thinking that he was dead.20Yet as the disciples were standing around him, he got up and entered the city. The next day, he went to Derbe with Barnabas.21After they had proclaimed the gospel in that city and made many disciples, they returned to Lystra, to Iconium, and to Antioch.22They kept strengthening the souls of the disciples and encouraging them to continue in the faith, saying, "We must enter into the kingdom of God through many tribulations."23When they had appointed for them elders in every church, and had prayed with fasting, they entrusted them to the Lord, in whom they had believed.24Then they passed through Pisidia and came to Pamphylia.25When they had spoken the word in Perga, they went down to Attalia.26From there they sailed to Antioch, where they had been committed to the grace of God for the work which they had now completed.27When they arrived in Antioch and gathered the church together, they reported all the things that God had done with them, and how he had opened a door of faith for the Gentiles.28They stayed for a long time with the disciples.

#### Acts 14:1

##### It came about in Iconium that

Possible meanings here are 1) "It happened in Iconium that" or 2) "In Iconium, as usual,"

##### spoke in such a way

"spoke the message about Jesus so powerfully"

#### Acts 14:2

##### the Jews who were disobedient

This refers to the portion of the Jews who did not believe the message about Jesus.

##### stirred up the minds of the Gentiles

Causing the Gentiles to become angry is spoken of as if calm waters were disturbed.

##### the minds of the Gentiles

"the Gentiles"

##### the brothers

Here "brothers" refers to Paul and Barnabas and the new believers.

#### Acts 14:3

##### gave evidence about the message of his grace

"demonstrated that the message about the Lord's grace"

##### by granting signs and wonders to be done by the hands of Paul and Barnabas

"by enabling Paul and Barnabas to perform signs and wonders"

##### by the hands of Paul and Barnabas

"by the ministry of Paul and Barnabas"

#### Acts 14:4

##### the people of the city were divided

"the people of the city disagreed with each other"

##### sided with the Jews

"supported the Jews" or "agreed with the Jews." The first group mentioned did not agree with the message about grace.

##### with the apostles

"sided with the apostles"

##### the apostles

Luke refers to Paul and Barnabas. Here "apostle" might be used in the general sense of "ones sent out."

#### Acts 14:5

##### made an attempt to mistreat them

Here the words "made an attempt" implies that they were not able to mistreat Paul and Barnabas before Paul and Barnabas left the city.

##### to mistreat them and to stone

"to beat Paul and Barnabas and to kill them by throwing stones at them"

#### Acts 14:6

##### Lycaonia

A district in Asia Minor

##### Lystra

A city in Asia Minor south of Iconium and north of Derbe

##### Derbe

A city in Asia Minor south of Iconium and Lystra

#### Acts 14:7

##### where they continued to proclaim the gospel

"where Paul and Barnabas continued to proclaim the good news"

#### Acts 14:8

##### a certain man sat

This introduces a new person in the story.

##### powerless in his feet

"unable to move his legs" or "unable to walk on his feet"

##### a cripple from his mother's womb

"having been born as a person who cannot walk"

##### cripple

person who cannot walk

#### Acts 14:9

##### Paul fixed his eyes on him

"Paul looked straight at him"

##### had faith to be made well

"believed that Jesus could heal him" or "believed that Jesus could make him well"

#### Acts 14:10

##### he said to him

"Paul said to the crippled man"

#### Acts 14:11

##### what Paul had done

This refers to Paul's healing the crippled man.

##### they raised their voice

"they spoke loudly"

##### in the dialect of Lycaonia

"in their own Lycaonian language." The people of Lystra spoke Lycaonian and also Greek.

##### The gods have become like men and come down to us

"The gods have come down from heaven to us in the form of men"

#### Acts 14:12

##### Zeus

The people of Iconium probably considered Zeus to be the king over all the other pagan gods.

##### Hermes

The people of Iconium probably considered Hermes to be the pagan god who brought messages to people from Zeus and the other gods.

#### Acts 14:13

##### The priest of Zeus, whose temple was just outside the city, brought

"There was a temple just outside the city where the people worshiped Zeus. When the priest who served in the temple heard what Paul and Barnabas had done, he brought"

##### oxen and wreaths

The oxen were to be sacrificed. The wreaths were either to crown Paul and Barnabas, or put on the oxen for sacrifice.

##### to the gates

The gates of the cities were often used as a meeting place for the people of the city.

##### wanted to offer sacrifice

"wanted to offer sacrifice to Paul and Barnabas as the gods Zeus and Hermes"

#### Acts 14:14

##### they tore their clothing

This was a symbolic action to show that they were deeply distressed and upset that the crowd wanted to sacrifice to them.

#### Acts 14:15

##### Men, why are you doing these things?

"Men, you must not do these things!"

##### doing these things

"worshiping us"

##### We also are human beings, with the same nature as you

"We are just human beings like you. We are not gods"

##### with the same nature as you

"like you in every way"

##### turn from these useless things to the living God

"stop worshiping these false gods that cannot help you, and instead begin to worship the living God"

##### the living God

"the God who truly exists" or "the God who lives"

#### Acts 14:16

##### In the past ages

"In previous times" or "Until now"

##### to walk in their own ways

"to live their lives the way they wanted to" or "to do whatever they wanted to do"

#### Acts 14:17

##### he did not leave himself without witness

"God has certainly left a witness" or "God has indeed testified"

##### in that

"as shown by the fact that"

##### filling your hearts with food and gladness

"giving you enough to eat and things about which to be happy"

#### Acts 14:18

##### Paul and Barnabas barely kept the multitudes from sacrificing to them

Paul and Barnabas stopped the multitude from sacrificing to them, but it was difficult to do so.

##### barely kept

"had difficulty preventing"

#### Acts 14:19

##### persuaded the crowds

"persuaded the people not to believe Paul and Barnabas, and to turn against them"

##### the crowds

This may not be the same group as the "multitude" in the previous verse. Some time had passed, and this might be a different group that gathered together.

##### thinking that he was dead

"because they thought that he was already dead"

#### Acts 14:20

##### the disciples

These were new believers in the city of Lystra.

##### entered the city

"Paul re-entered Lystra with the believers"

##### he went to Derbe with Barnabas

"Paul and Barnabas went to the city of Derbe"

#### Acts 14:21

##### that city

"Derbe"

#### Acts 14:22

##### They kept strengthening the souls of the disciples

"Paul and Barnabas urged the believers to continue to believe the message about Jesus" or "Paul and Barnabas urged the believers to continue to grow strong in their relationship with Jesus

##### encouraging them to continue in the faith

"encouraging the believers to keep trusting in Jesus"

##### saying, "We must enter into the kingdom of God through many tribulations."

Some version translate this as an indirect quote, "saying that we must enter into the kingdom of God through many tribulations." The word "we" here includes Luke and the readers.

##### We must enter

Paul includes his hearers, so the word "we" is inclusive.

#### Acts 14:23

##### they had appointed for them

"Paul and Barnabas had appointed for the believers"

##### they entrusted them ... they had believed

Possible meanings are 1) "Paul and Barnabas entrusted the elders they had appointed ... the elders had believed" or 2) "Paul and Barnabas entrusted the elders they had appointed and the other disciples ... the elders and other disciples had believed"

#### Acts 14:25

##### had spoken the word

"had spoken the message of God"

##### went down to Attalia

The phrase "went down" is used here because Attalia is lower in elevation than Perga.

#### Acts 14:26

##### where they had been committed to the grace of God

"where believers and leaders in Antioch had committed Paul and Barnabas to the grace of God" or "where the people of Antioch prayed that God would care for and protect Paul and Barnabas"

#### Acts 14:27

##### gathered the church together

"called the local believers to meet together"

##### he had opened a door of faith for the Gentiles

"God had made it possible for the Gentiles to believe"

Chapter 15

1Some men came down from Judea to Antioch and taught the brothers, saying, "Unless you are circumcised according to the custom of Moses, you cannot be saved."2This brought Paul and Barnabas into a sharp dispute and debate with them. So Paul and Barnabas, along with some others from among them, were appointed to go up to Jerusalem to meet with the apostles and elders about this question.3They therefore, being sent by the church, passed through both Phoenicia and Samaria and announced the conversion of the Gentiles. They brought great joy to all the brothers.4When they came to Jerusalem, they were welcomed by the church and the apostles and the elders, and they reported all the things that God had done with them.5But certain men who believed, who belonged to the group of Pharisees, stood up and said, "It is necessary to circumcise them and to command them to keep the law of Moses."6So the apostles and the elders gathered together to consider this matter.

7After much debate, Peter stood up and said to them, "Brothers, you know that a good while ago God made a choice among you, that by my mouth the Gentiles should hear the word of the gospel, and believe.8God, who knows the heart, has testified to them by giving them the Holy Spirit, just as he did to us.9He made no distinction between us and them, having cleansed their hearts by faith.10Now therefore why do you test God, that you should put a yoke upon the neck of the disciples which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear?11But we believe that we will be saved through the grace of the Lord Jesus, just as they were."

12All the multitude kept silent while they listened to Barnabas and Paul report the signs and wonders God had worked among the Gentiles through them.13After they stopped speaking, James answered, saying,

"Brothers, listen to me.14Simon has told how God first graciously helped the Gentiles in order to take from them a people for his name.15The words of the prophets agree with this, as it is written,16'After these things I will return,and I will build again the tabernacle of David,which has fallen down;I will set up and restore its ruins again,17so that the remnant of men may seek the Lord,including all the Gentiles called by my name.'18This is what the Lord says,who has done these thingsthat have been known from ancient times. [1](#footnote-target-1)

19Therefore, I have decided that we should not trouble those of the Gentiles who turn to God.20But we will write to them that they must keep away from the pollution of idols, from sexual immorality, and from the meat of strangled animals, and from blood.21For Moses has been proclaimed in every city from ancient generations and he is preached in the synagogues every Sabbath."

22Then it seemed good to the apostles and the elders, with the whole church, to choose Judas called Barsabbas, and Silas, who were leaders of the brothers, and send them to Antioch with Paul and Barnabas.

23They wrote this with their hands, 24Because we have heard that certain men have gone out from us, with no orders from us, and have disturbed you with words that upset your souls,25it seemed good to us, who have come to one mind, to choose men and to send them to you with our beloved Barnabas and Paul,26men who have risked their lives for the name of our Lord Jesus Christ.27Therefore we have sent Judas and Silas, who will report to you the same things in their own words.28For it seemed good to the Holy Spirit and to us, to lay upon you no greater burden than these necessary things:29that you abstain from things sacrificed to idols, blood, things strangled, and from sexual immorality. If you avoid these things, you will do well.

30So they, when they were dismissed, came down to Antioch; after they gathered the multitude together, they delivered the letter.31When they had read it, they rejoiced because of the encouragement.32Judas and Silas, also prophets, encouraged the brothers with many words and strengthened them.33After they had spent some time there, they were sent away in peace from the brothers to those who had sent them.34[2](#footnote-target-2)35But Paul and Barnabas stayed in Antioch, teaching and preaching (along with many others) the word of the Lord.

36After some days Paul said to Barnabas, "Let us return now and visit the brothers in every city where we proclaimed the word of the Lord, and see how they are."37Barnabas wanted to also take with them John, who was called Mark.38But Paul thought it was not good to take Mark, who had left them in Pamphylia and did not go further with them in the work.39Then there arose a sharp disagreement, so that they separated from each other, and Barnabas took Mark with him and sailed away to Cyprus.40But Paul chose Silas and left, after he was entrusted by the brothers to the grace of the Lord.41Then he went through Syria and Cilicia, strengthening the churches.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)There are some copies of the ancient Greek text that have a slightly different meaning, This is what the Lord says, to whom are known all his deeds from ancient times . [2](#footnote-caller-2)The best ancient copies do not have verse 34 (See: Acts 15:40), But it seemed good to Silas to remain there .

#### Acts 15:1

##### came down from Judea

The phrase "came down" is used here because Judea is higher in elevation than Antioch.

##### taught the brothers

"taught the believers at Antioch" or "were teaching the believers at Antioch"

##### Unless you are circumcised according to the custom of Moses, you cannot be saved

"Unless someone circumcises you according to the custom of Moses, God cannot save you" or "God will not save you from your sins unless you receive circumcision according to the law of Moses"

#### Acts 15:2

##### This brought ... into a sharp dispute and debate with them

"... had confronted and debated with the men from Judea"

#### Acts 15:3

##### They therefore, being sent by the church

"Therefore the community of believers sent them from Antioch to Jerusalem"

##### announced the conversion of the Gentiles

"announced to the community of believers in those places that Gentiles were believing in God"

##### They brought great joy to all the brothers

"What they said caused their fellow believers to rejoice"

##### the brothers

Here "brothers" refers to fellow believers.

#### Acts 15:4

##### they were welcomed by the church and the apostles and the elders

"the apostles, the elders, and the rest of the community of believers welcomed them"

##### with them

"through them"

#### Acts 15:5

##### But certain men

Here Luke contrasts those who believe that salvation is only in Jesus to others who believe salvation is by Jesus but also believe that circumcision is required for salvation.

##### to keep the law of Moses

"to obey the law of Moses"

#### Acts 15:6

##### to consider this matter

The church leaders decided to discuss whether or not Gentiles needed to be circumcised and obey the law of Moses in order for God to save them from their sins.

#### Acts 15:7

##### Brothers

Peter is addressing all of the believers who are present.

##### by my mouth

"from me" or "by me"

##### the word of the gospel

"the message about Jesus"

#### Acts 15:8

##### who knows the heart

"who knows the people's minds" or "who knows what people think"

##### has testified to them

"has testified to the Gentiles"

##### giving them the Holy Spirit

"causing the Holy Spirit to come upon them"

#### Acts 15:9

##### made no distinction

God did not treat Jewish believers differently from Gentile believers.

##### having cleansed their hearts by faith

"forgiving their sins because they believe in Jesus"

#### Acts 15:10

##### why do you test God, that you should put a yoke upon the neck of the disciples which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear?

"Do not test God by putting a burden on the non-Jewish believers which we Jews were not able to bear!"

##### our fathers

This refers to their Jewish ancestors.

#### Acts 15:11

##### But we believe that we will be saved through the grace of the Lord Jesus, just as they were

"But we believe the Lord Jesus will save us by his grace, just as he saved the non-Jewish believers"

#### Acts 15:12

##### All the multitude

"Everyone" or "The whole group"

##### God had worked

"God had done" or "God had caused"

#### Acts 15:13

##### Brothers, listen

"Fellow believers, listen." James was probably speaking only to men.

#### Acts 15:14

##### in order to take from them a people

"so that he might choose from among them a people"

##### for his name

"for himself"

#### Acts 15:15

##### The words of the prophets agree

"What the prophets said agrees" or "The prophets agree"

##### agree with this

"confirm this truth"

##### as it is written

"as they wrote" or "as the prophet Amos wrote long ago"

#### Acts 15:16

##### I will build again the tabernacle of David, which has fallen down ... its ruins again

This speaks of God's again choosing one of David's descendants to rule over his people as though he were setting up a tent again after it fell down.

##### tabernacle

Here the word "tabernacle," a dwelling place, stands for David's family. The same word is used for the tent that Yahweh told Moses to construct.

#### Acts 15:17

##### the remnant of men may seek the Lord

This speaks about people wanting to obey God and learn more about him as if they were literally looking for him.

##### remnant of men

"remnant of people"

##### may seek the Lord

"may seek me, the Lord"

##### including all the Gentiles called by my name

"including all the Gentiles who belong to me"

##### my name

Here "my name" stands for God.

#### Acts 15:18

##### that have been known

"that people have known"

#### Acts 15:19

##### we should not trouble those of the Gentiles

"we should not require the Gentiles to become circumcised and obey the laws of Moses"

##### who turn to God

A person who starts obeying God is spoken of as if the person is physically turning towards God.

#### Acts 15:20

##### they must keep away from the pollution of idols ... sexual immorality ... strangled ... blood

Sexual immorality, strangling animals, and consuming blood were often part of ceremonies to worship idols and false gods.

##### pollution of idols

This possibly refers to eating the meat of an animal that someone has sacrificed to an idol or to anything to do with idol worship.

##### from the meat of strangled animals, and from blood

God did not allow Jews to eat meat that still had the blood in it. Also, even earlier in Moses's writings in Genesis, God had forbidden the drinking of blood. Therefore, they could not eat an animal that someone strangled because the blood was not properly drained from the body of the animal.

#### Acts 15:21

##### Moses has been proclaimed in every city ... and he is preached in the synagogues every Sabbath

James is implying that Gentiles know how important these rules are because Jews preach them in every city where there is a synagogue. It also implies the Gentiles can go to the teachers from the synagogues to learn more about these rules.

##### Moses has been proclaimed ... he is preached

"The law of Moses has been proclaimed ... the law is read" or "Jews have taught the law of Moses ... they read the law"

##### in every city

"in many cities"

#### Acts 15:22

##### Judas called Barsabbas

This is the name of a man. "Barsabbas" is a second name that people called him.

##### leaders of the brothers

"leaders of the believers" or "leaders of the church"

#### Acts 15:23

##### They wrote this with their hands

One or more of the apostles and elders wrote the letter and gave it to Judas and Silas so Judas and Silas could give it to the Gentile brothers.

##### From the apostles and elders, your brothers, to the Gentile brothers in Antioch, Syria, and Cilicia: Greetings!

"This letter is from your brothers, the apostles and elders. We are writing to you Gentile believers in Antioch, Syria, and Cilicia. Greetings to you" or "To our Gentile brothers in Antioch, Syria, and Cilicia. Greetings from the apostles and elders, your brothers"

##### your brothers ... the Gentile brothers

Here the word "brothers" refers to fellow believers. By using these words, the apostles and elders assure the Gentile believers that they accept them as fellow believers.

##### Cilicia

This is the name of a province on the coast in Asia Minor north of the Island of Cyprus.

#### Acts 15:24

##### that certain men

"that some men"

##### with no orders from us

"even though we gave no orders for them to go"

##### disturbed you with words that upset your souls

"taught things that have troubled you"

#### Acts 15:25

##### who have come to one mind

"who are now agree completely"

##### to choose men

The men they sent were Judas, who was called Barsabbas, and Silas

#### Acts 15:26

##### men who have risked their lives

These words refer to Barnabas and Paul, not to Judas and Silas.

##### for the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

"because they believe in our Lord Jesus Christ" or "because they serve our Lord Jesus Christ"

#### Acts 15:27

##### who will report to you the same things in their own words

"who themselves will tell you the same things about which we have written"

#### Acts 15:28

##### to lay upon you no greater burden than these necessary things

This speaks about laws that people need to obey as if they were objects that people carry on their shoulders.

#### Acts 15:29

##### from things sacrificed to idols

This means they are not allowed to eat the meat of an animal that someone sacrifices to an idol.

##### blood

This refers to drinking blood or eating meat from which the blood has not been drained.

##### things strangled

A strangled animal was killed but its blood was not drained.

##### Farewell

"Goodbye"

#### Acts 15:30

##### So they, when they were dismissed, came down to Antioch

The word "they" refers to Paul, Barnabas, Judas, and Silas. Alternate translation: "So when the four men were dismissed, they came down to Antioch"

##### came down to Antioch

The phrase "came down" is used here because Antioch is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

#### Acts 15:31

##### they rejoiced

"the believers in Antioch rejoiced"

##### because of the encouragement

"because what the apostles and elders wrote encouraged them"

#### Acts 15:32

##### also prophets

"because they were prophets" or "who were also prophets"

##### the brothers

"the fellow believers"

##### strengthened them

Judas and Silas' helping them to depend even more on Jesus is spoken of as if they were making them physically stronger.

#### Acts 15:33

##### After they had spent some time there

"After they stayed there for a while"

##### they were sent away in peace from the brothers

"the brothers sent Judas and Silas back in peace"

##### the brothers

This refers to the believers in Antioch.

##### to those who had sent them

"to the believers in Jerusalem who sent Judas and Silas"

#### Acts 15:35

##### the word of the Lord

"the message about the Lord"

#### Acts 15:36

##### Let us return now

"I suggest we now return"

##### visit the brothers

"care for the brothers" or "offer to help the believers"

##### the word of the Lord

"the message about the Lord"

##### see how they are

"learn how they are doing." They want to learn about the current condition of the brothers and how they are holding on to God's truth.

#### Acts 15:37

##### to also take with them John, who was called Mark

"to take John, who was also called Mark"

#### Acts 15:38

##### Paul thought it was not good to take Mark

"Paul thought that taking Mark would be bad"

##### Pamphylia

This was a province in Asia Minor.

##### did not go further with them in the work

"did not continue to work with them then" or "did not continue to serve with them"

#### Acts 15:39

##### Then there arose a sharp disagreement

"They strongly disagreed with each other"

#### Acts 15:40

##### after he was entrusted by the brothers to the grace of the Lord

"after the believers in Antioch entrusted Paul to the grace of the Lord" or "after the believers in Antioch prayed for the Lord to take care of Paul and show kindness to him"

#### Acts 15:41

##### he went

"they went" or "Paul and Silas went" or "Paul took Silas and went"

##### went through Syria and Cilicia

These are provinces or areas in Asia Minor, near the island of Cyprus.

##### strengthening the churches

"encouraging the believers in the churches" or "helping the community of believers to depend even more in Jesus"

Chapter 16

1Paul also came to Derbe and to Lystra, and behold, a certain disciple named Timothy was there, the son of a Jewish woman who was a believer, but his father was a Greek.2He was well spoken of by the brothers who were at Lystra and Iconium.3Paul wanted him to travel with him, so he took him and circumcised him because of the Jews that were in those places, for they all knew that his father was a Greek.4As they were going along through the cities, they were passing along the decrees to obey that were decided on by the apostles and elders who were in Jerusalem. 5So the churches were strengthened in the faith and increased in number daily.

6Paul and his companions went through the regions of Phrygia and Galatia, since they had been forbidden by the Holy Spirit to proclaim the word in the province of Asia.7When they came near Mysia, they attempted to go into Bithynia, but the Spirit of Jesus prevented them.8So passing by Mysia, they came down to the city of Troas.9A vision appeared to Paul in the night: A man of Macedonia was standing there, begging him and saying, "Come over into Macedonia and help us."10When Paul had seen the vision, immediately we sought to go to Macedonia, concluding that God had called us to preach the gospel to them.

11Setting sail therefore from Troas, we made a straight course to Samothrace, and the next day we came to Neapolis.12From there we went to Philippi, which is a city of Macedonia, the most important city in the district and a Roman colony, and we stayed in this city for several days.

13On the Sabbath day we went outside the gate by the river, where we thought there would be a place of prayer. We sat down and spoke to the women who had come together.14A certain woman named Lydia, a seller of purple from the city of Thyatira, who worshiped God, listened to us. The Lord opened her heart to pay attention to what was said by Paul.15When she and her house were baptized, she pleaded with us, saying, "If you have judged me to be faithful to the Lord, come and stay in my house." And she persuaded us.

16It came about that, as we were going to the place of prayer, a certain slave girl who had a spirit of divination encountered us. She brought her masters much gain by fortunetelling.17This woman followed after Paul and us and shouted, saying, "These men are servants of the Most High God. They proclaim to you the way of salvation."18She did this for many days. But Paul, being greatly annoyed by her, turned and said to the spirit, "I command you in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her." And it came out at that same hour.

19When her masters saw that their hope of profit was now gone, they seized Paul and Silas and dragged them into the marketplace before the authorities.20When they had brought them to the magistrates, they said, "These men are causing trouble in our city. They are Jews.21They proclaim customs that are not lawful for Romans to accept or practice."

22Then the crowd rose up together against Paul and Silas; the magistrates tore their garments off them and commanded them to be beaten with rods.23When they had laid many blows upon them, they threw them into prison and commanded the jailer to guard them securely.24After he got this command, the jailer threw them into the inner prison and fastened their feet in the stocks.

25Around midnight Paul and Silas were praying and singing hymns to God, and the other prisoners were listening to them.26Suddenly there was a great earthquake, so that the foundations of the prison were shaken; and immediately all the doors were opened, and everyone's chains were unfastened.27The jailer was awakened from sleep and saw the open prison doors; he drew his sword and was about to kill himself, because he thought that the prisoners had escaped.

28But Paul shouted with a loud voice, saying, "Do not harm yourself, because we are all here."

29The jailer called for lights and rushed in and, trembling for fear, fell down before Paul and Silas,30and brought them out and said, "Sirs, what must I do to be saved?"

31They said, "Believe in the Lord Jesus, and you will be saved, you and your household."32They spoke the word of the Lord to him, together with everyone in his house.33Then the jailer took them at the same hour of the night, and washed their wounds, and he and those in his entire house were baptized immediately.34Then as he brought Paul and Silas up into his house and he set food before them, he rejoiced greatly with those of his house, that he had believed in God.

35Now when it was day, the magistrates sent word to the guards, saying, "Let those men go."

36The jailer reported the words to Paul, saying, "The magistrates have sent word to me to let you go. Now therefore come out, and go in peace."

37But Paul said to them, "They have publicly beaten us without a trial, even though we are Roman citizens—and they threw us into prison. Do they now want to send us away secretly? No! Let them come themselves and lead us out."

38The guards reported these words to the magistrates, and when they heard that Paul and Silas were Romans, they were afraid.39The magistrates came and apologized to them and brought them out, asking them to go away from the city.40So Paul and Silas went out of the prison and came to the house of Lydia. When Paul and Silas saw the brothers, they encouraged them and then departed from the city.

#### Acts 16:1

##### Paul also came

Here "came" can be translated as "went."

##### Derbe

This is the name of a city in Asia Minor.

##### behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the narrative. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### who was a believer

"who was a believer in Christ" or "who believed in Christ"

#### Acts 16:2

##### He was well spoken of by the brothers

"The brothers spoke well of him" or "Timothy had a good reputation among the brothers" or "The brothers said good things about him"

##### by the brothers

"by the believers"

#### Acts 16:3

##### wanted him ... took him ... circumcised him ... his father

"wanted Timothy ... took Timothy ... circumcised Timothy ... Timothy's father"

##### circumcised him

It is possible that Paul himself circumcised Timothy, but it is more likely that he had someone else circumcise Timothy.

##### because of the Jews that were in those places

"because of the Jews living in the areas where Paul and Timothy would be traveling"

##### for they all knew that his father was a Greek

Since Greek men did not have their sons circumcised, the Jews would have known Timothy was not circumcised, and they would have rejected Paul and Timothy before hearing their message about Christ.

#### Acts 16:4

##### the decrees to obey

"the decrees for the church members to obey" or "the decrees for the believers to obey"

##### that were decided on by the apostles and elders who were in Jerusalem

"that the apostles and elders in Jerusalem had decided on"

#### Acts 16:5

##### the churches were strengthened in the faith and increased in number daily

"the believers became stronger in their faith, and there were more and more people becoming believers every day"

#### Acts 16:6

##### Phrygia

This is a region in Asia. .

##### they had been forbidden by the Holy Spirit

"the Holy Spirit had forbidden them" or "the Holy Spirit did not permit them"

##### the word

"the message about Christ"

#### Acts 16:7

##### When they came

Here "came" can be translated as "went" or "arrived."

##### Mysia ... Bithynia

These are two more regions in Asia.

##### the Spirit of Jesus

"the Holy Spirit"

#### Acts 16:9

##### A vision appeared to Paul

"Paul saw a vision from God" or "Paul had a vision from God"

##### begging him

Or "inviting him."

##### Come over into Macedonia

The phrase "Come over" is used because Macedonia is across the sea from Troas.

#### Acts 16:10

##### we sought to go to Macedonia ... God had called us

Here the words "we" and "us" refer to Paul and his companions, including Luke, the author of Acts.

##### we sought to go to Macedonia

"we looked for a way to go to Macedonia" or "we prepared to go to Macedonia"

#### Acts 16:11

##### Samothrace ... Neapolis

These are coastal cities near Phillipi in Macedonia.

#### Acts 16:12

##### a Roman colony

This is a city outside of Italy where many people who came from Rome lived. The people there had the same rights and freedoms as people who lived in cities in Italy. They could govern themselves and they did not have to pay taxes.

#### Acts 16:14

##### A certain woman named Lydia

"There was a woman named Lydia"

##### a seller of purple

"a merchant who sold purple cloth"

##### Thyatira

This is the name of a city.

##### worshiped God

A worshiper of God is a Gentile who gives praise to God and follows him, but does not obey all of the Jewish laws.

##### The Lord opened her heart to pay attention

"The Lord caused her to listen well and to believe"

##### opened her heart

Here "heart" stands for a person's mind. Also, the author speaks about the "heart" or "mind" as if it were a box that a person could open so it is ready for someone to fill it.

#### Acts 16:15

##### When she and her house were baptized

"When they baptized Lydia and members of her household"

##### her house

"the members of her household" or "her family and household servants"

#### Acts 16:16

##### a certain slave girl ... encountered

"there was a slave girl ... who encountered"

##### a spirit of divination

An evil spirit spoke to her often about the immediate future of people.

#### Acts 16:17

##### the way of salvation

"how God can save you"

#### Acts 16:18

##### in the name of Jesus Christ

Here "name" stands for speaking with the authority or as the representative of Jesus Christ.

##### it came out at that same hour

"the spirit came out immediately"

#### Acts 16:19

##### her masters

"the owners of the slave girl"

##### their hope of profit was now gone

"their opportunity to make money was now gone" or "they could no longer expect to make money"

##### their hope of profit was now gone

"she could no longer earn money for them by telling fortunes"

##### into the marketplace

"into the public square." This is a public place of business, where buying and selling of goods, cattle, or services takes place.

##### before the authorities

"into the presence of the authorities" or "so that the authorities could judge them"

#### Acts 16:20

##### When they had brought them to the magistrates

"When they had brought them to the judges"

##### These men are causing trouble in our city

Here the word "our" refers to the people of the city and includes the magistrates who ruled it.

#### Acts 16:21

##### to accept or practice

"to believe or to obey" or "to accept or to do"

#### Acts 16:22

##### commanded them to be beaten with rods

"commanded the soldiers to beat them with rods"

#### Acts 16:23

##### they had ... upon them, they threw them ... guard them

"the magistrates had ... upon Paul and Silas, the magistrates threw Paul and Silas ... keep Paul and Silas"

##### had laid many blows upon them

"had hit them many times with rods"

##### commanded the jailer to guard them securely

"told the jailer to make sure they did not get out"

##### jailer

a person responsible for all the people held in the jail or prison

#### Acts 16:24

##### he got this command

"he heard this command"

##### fastened their feet in the stocks

"securely locked their feet in the stocks"

##### stocks

a piece of wood with holes for preventing a person's feet from moving

#### Acts 16:26

##### earthquake, so that the foundations of the prison were shaken

"earthquake which shook the foundations of the prison"

##### everyone's chains were unfastened

"everyone's chains came loose"

#### Acts 16:27

##### was about to kill himself

"was ready to kill himself." The jailer preferred to commit suicide rather than suffer the consequences of letting the prisoners escape.

#### Acts 16:29

##### called for lights

"called for someone to bring light so he could see who was still in the prison"

##### for lights

"for torches" or "for lamps"

##### rushed in

"quickly entered the jail"

##### fell down before Paul and Silas

The jailer humbled himself by bowing down at the feet of Paul and Silas.

#### Acts 16:30

##### brought them out

"led them outside the jail"

##### what must I do to be saved

"what must I do for God to save me from my sins"

#### Acts 16:31

##### you will be saved

"God will save you" or "God will save you from your sins"

##### your house

"all the members of your household" or "your family"

#### Acts 16:32

##### They spoke the word of the Lord to him

"They told him the message about the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 16:33

##### he and those in his entire house were baptized immediately

"Paul and Silas immediately baptized the jailer and all the members of his household"

#### Acts 16:35

##### sent word to the guards

"The magistrates sent a message to the guards" or "The magistrates sent a command to the guards"

##### Let those men go

"Release those men" or "Allow those men to leave"

#### Acts 16:36

##### come out

"come outside of the jail"

#### Acts 16:37

##### said to them

"said to the jailer"

##### They have publicly beaten us

"The magistrates ordered their soldiers to beat us in public"

##### without a trial, even though we are Roman citizens—and they threw us into prison

"men who are Roman citizens, and they had their soldiers put us in jail though they had not proven in court that we were guilty"

##### Do they now want to send us away secretly? No!

"I will certainly not let them send us out of the city in secret!"

##### Let them come themselves

Here "themselves" is used for emphasis.

#### Acts 16:38

##### when they heard that Paul and Silas were Romans, they were afraid

To be a Roman meant to be a legal citizen of the Empire. Citizenship provided freedom from torture and the right to a fair trial. The city leaders were afraid that more important Roman authorities might learn how the city leaders had mistreated Paul and Silas.

#### Acts 16:40

##### saw the brothers

"saw the believers"

Chapter 17

1Now when they had passed through the cities of Amphipolis and Apollonia, they came to the city of Thessalonica, where there was a synagogue of the Jews.2Paul, as his custom was, went to them, and for three Sabbath days reasoned with them from the scriptures.3He was opening the scriptures and explaining that it was necessary for the Christ to suffer and to rise again from the dead. He said, "This Jesus whom I proclaim to you is the Christ."4Some of the Jews were persuaded and joined Paul and Silas, including a large number of devout Greeks, and not a few of the leading women.5But the unbelieving Jews, being moved with jealousy, took certain wicked men from the marketplace, gathered a crowd together, and set the city in an uproar. Assaulting the house of Jason, they were seeking to bring Paul and Silas out to the people.6But when they did not find them, they dragged Jason and certain other brothers before the officials of the city, crying, "These men who have turned the world upside down have come here also.7These men whom Jason has welcomed act against the decrees of Caesar; they say that there is another king—Jesus."8They troubled the crowd and the officials of the city who heard these things.9But after they took security from Jason and the rest, they let them go.

10That night the brothers sent Paul and Silas to Berea. When they arrived there, they went into the synagogue of the Jews.11Now these people were more noble than those in Thessalonica, for they received the word with all readiness of mind, examining the scriptures daily to see whether these things were so.12Therefore many of them believed, including some influential Greek women and many men.13But when the Jews of Thessalonica learned that Paul was also proclaiming the word of God at Berea, they went there and stirred up and troubled the crowds.14Then immediately, the brothers sent Paul to go to the sea, but Silas and Timothy stayed there.15Those who were leading Paul took him as far as the city of Athens. As they left Paul there, they received from him instructions for Silas and Timothy to come to him as quickly as possible.

16Now while Paul was waiting for them in Athens, his spirit was provoked within him as he saw the city full of idols.17So he reasoned every day in the synagogue with the Jews and others who worshiped God, as well as in the marketplace with those who happened to be there.18But also some of the Epicurean and Stoic philosophers encountered him. Some said, "What is this babbler trying to say?" Others said, "He seems to be one who calls people to follow strange gods," because he was proclaiming the gospel about Jesus and the resurrection.19They took Paul and brought him to the Areopagus, saying, "May we know this new teaching which you were speaking?20For you bring some strange things to our ears. Therefore, we want to know what these things mean."21(Now all the Athenians and the strangers living there spent their time in nothing but either telling or listening about something new.)

22So Paul stood in the middle of the Areopagus and said,

"You men of Athens, I see that you are very religious in every way.23For as I passed along and observed the objects of your worship, I found an altar with this inscription, 'TO AN UNKNOWN GOD.' What therefore you worship in ignorance, this I announce to you.

24The God who made the world and everything in it, since he is Lord of heaven and earth, does not live in temples built with hands.25Neither is he served by men's hands, as though he needed anything, since he himself gives people life and breath and everything else.26From one man he made every nation of people to live on the surface of the earth, having determined their appointed seasons and the boundaries of their living areas,27so that they should search for God and perhaps they may feel their way toward him and find him. Yet he is not far from each one of us.28For in him we live and move and have our being, just as one of your own poets has said: 'For we also are his offspring.'

29"Therefore, since we are God's offspring, we ought not to think that the qualities of deity are like gold, or silver, or stone—images created by the art and imagination of man.30Therefore God overlooked the times of ignorance, but now he commands all men everywhere to repent.31This is because he has set a day when he will judge the world in righteousness by the man he has appointed. God has given proof of this man to everyone by raising him from the dead."

32Now when the men of Athens heard of the resurrection of the dead, some mocked Paul; but others said, "We will listen to you again about this matter."33After that, Paul left them.34But certain men joined him and believed, including Dionysius the Areopagite, a woman named Damaris, and others with them.

#### Acts 17:1

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here Luke, the author, starts to tell a new part of the story.

##### passed through

"traveled through"

##### cities of Amphipolis and Apollonia

These are coastal cities in Macedonia.

#### Acts 17:2

##### went to them ... reasoned with them

"went to the Jews ... reasoned with the Jews"

##### as his custom was

"as his habit was" or "as his common practice was." Paul usually went to the synagogue on the Sabbath when Jews would be present.

##### for three Sabbath days

"on each Sabbath day for three weeks"

##### reasoned with them from the scriptures

"gave them reasons to believe from the scriptures" or "debated with them about the scriptures" or "discussed the scriptures with them." Paul explained what the scriptures mean in order to prove to the Jews that Jesus is the Messiah.

#### Acts 17:3

##### He was opening the scriptures

Possible meanings are 1) to explain the scriptures in a way that people can understand is spoken of as if Paul were opening something so people can see what is inside of it) or 2) Paul was literally opening a book or scroll and reading from it.

##### it was necessary

"it was part of God's plan"

##### to rise again

"to come back to life"

##### from the dead

From among all those who have died. The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

#### Acts 17:4

##### the Jews were persuaded

"the Jews believed" or "the Jews understood"

##### devout Greeks

This refers to Greeks who worshiped God but had not converted to Judaism through circumcision.

##### not a few of the leading women

"many leading women"

#### Acts 17:5

##### being moved with jealousy

"feeling very jealous" or "feeling very angry" because some of the Jews and Greeks believed Paul's message.

##### took certain wicked men

Here "took" does not mean the Jews took these people by force. It means the Jews persuaded these wicked men to help them.

##### from the marketplace

"from the public square." This is a public place of business, where buying and selling of goods, cattle, or services take place.

##### set the city in an uproar

"caused the people of the city to be in an uproar" or "caused the people of the city to riot"

##### Assaulting the house

"Violently attacking the house." This probably means the people were throwing rocks at the house and trying to break down the door of the house.

##### Jason

This is the name of a man.

##### they were seeking to bring Paul ... out

The word "seeking" here means that the people wanted to bring Paul out and were trying to bring him out.

##### out to the people

Possible meanings or "people" are 1) a governmental or legal group of citizens gathered to make a decision or 2) a mob.

#### Acts 17:6

##### certain other brothers

"some other believers"

##### before the officials

"into the presence of the officials"

##### These men who have

The Jewish leaders were speaking, and the phrase "These men" refers to Paul and Silas.

##### turned the world upside down

"caused trouble everywhere in the world" or "caused trouble everywhere they have gone"

#### Acts 17:8

##### They troubled the crowd

"They caused the people in the city to be afraid"

#### Acts 17:9

##### the rest

The words "the rest" refers to other believers that the Jews brought before the officials.

##### took security

Jason and the others gave the money to the officials to show that they would not cause any more trouble. This was not a fine or a punishment, so they might have expected the officials to give the money back later.

#### Acts 17:11

##### Now

The word "now" is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here Luke tells background information about the people in Berea and how they were willing to listen to Paul and examine what he said.

##### more noble

"more open minded" or "more willing to listen"

##### received the word

"listened to the teaching"

##### with all readiness of mind

These Bereans were prepared to examine earnestly Paul's teachings about the scripture.

##### examining the scriptures daily

"carefully reading and evaluating the scriptures every day"

##### these things were so

"the things Paul said were true"

#### Acts 17:13

##### went there and stirred up

"went there and agitated" or "went there and disturbed"

##### troubled the crowds

"worried the crowds" or "caused dread and fear among the people"

#### Acts 17:14

##### to go to the sea

"to go to the coast." From here Paul would probably sail to another city.

#### Acts 17:15

##### who were leading Paul

"who were accompanying Paul" or "who were going along with Paul"

##### they received from him instructions for Silas and Timothy

"he told them to instruct Silas and Timothy."

#### Acts 17:16

##### his spirit was provoked within him as he saw the city full of idols

"he became upset because he saw that there were idols everywhere in the city" or "seeing the idols everywhere in the city upset him"

#### Acts 17:17

##### he reasoned

"he debated" or "he discussed." This means that his listeners also spoke and asked him questions. He was not the only speaker.

##### others who worshiped God

This refers to Gentiles who gave praise to God and followed him but did not obey all of the Jewish laws.

##### in the marketplace

"in the public square." This is a public place of business, where buying and selling of goods, cattle, or services take place.

#### Acts 17:18

##### Epicurean and Stoic philosophers

"thinkers called Epicureans and Stoics"

##### encountered him

"happened upon him"

##### Some said

"Some of the philosophers said"

##### What is this babbler

The word "babbler" was used to refer to birds picking up seeds as food. It refers negatively to a person who only knows a little bit of information. The philosophers said Paul had bits of information which were not worth listening to. Alternate translation: "What is this uneducated person"

##### Others said

"Other philosophers said"

##### He seems to be one who calls people to follow

"He seems to be a proclaimer" or "He seems to be on a mission to add people to his philosophy"

##### strange gods

This is not in the sense of "odd," but in the sense of "foreign," that is, gods that Greeks and Romans do not worship or know about.

#### Acts 17:19

##### They took ... brought him

This does not mean they arrested Paul. The philosophers invited Paul to speak formally to their leaders.

##### the Areopagus, saying

"the Areopagus. The leaders said to Paul"

##### Areopagus

This is a prominent rock outcropping or hill in Athens upon which the supreme court of Athens may have met.

#### Acts 17:20

##### For you bring some strange things to our ears

"For you are teaching some things that we have never heard before"

#### Acts 17:21

##### Now all the Athenians and the strangers living there

"Now many of the Athenians and the foreigners living there"

##### spent their time in nothing but either telling or listening

"used their time doing nothing but either telling or listening" or "were always doing nothing but telling or listening"

##### telling or listening about something new

"discussing new philosophical ideas" or "talking about what was new to them"

#### Acts 17:22

##### very religious in every way

Paul is referring to the Athenians' public display of honoring the gods through prayers, building altars, and offering sacrifices.

#### Acts 17:23

##### as I passed along and observed the objects of your worship

"as I walked among the objects of your worship and observed them" or "as I walked around in the city, I observed the objects of your worship"

##### To an Unknown God

Possible meanings are 1) "to a certain unknown god" or 2) "to a god not known." This was a specific writing or inscription on that altar.

#### Acts 17:24

##### the world

In the most general sense, the "world" refers to the heavens and the earth and everything in them.

##### since he is Lord

"because he is the Lord." Here "he" is referring to the unknown god mentioned in Acts 17:23 that Paul is explaining is the Lord God.

##### of heaven and earth

The words "heaven" and "earth" are used together to mean all beings and things in heaven and earth.

##### built with hands

"built by the hands of people" or "that people built"

#### Acts 17:25

##### Neither is he served by men's hands

"Neither do men's hands take care of him"

##### by men's hands

"by humans"

##### since he himself

"because he himself." The word "himself" is added for emphasis.

#### Acts 17:26

##### one man

This means Adam, the first person God created. This can be stated to include Eve. It was through Adam and Eve that God made all other people. Alternate translation: "one couple"

##### having determined their appointed seasons and the boundaries of their living areas

"and he determined when and where they would live"

#### Acts 17:27

##### so that they should search for God and perhaps they may feel their way toward him and find him

"so that they should want to know God and perhaps pray to him and become one of his people"

##### Yet he is not far from each one of us

"Yet he is very near to every one of us"

#### Acts 17:28

##### For in him

"Because of him"

#### Acts 17:29

##### are God's offspring

Because God created everyone, all people are spoken of as if they were God's literal children.

##### the qualities of deity are like

"God is like"

##### images created by the art and imagination of man

"which a man then uses his skill to make it into something that he has designed" or "images that people make by using their art and imagination"

#### Acts 17:30

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true"

##### God overlooked the times of ignorance

"God decided not to punish people during the time of ignorance"

##### times of ignorance

This refers to the time before God fully revealed himself through Jesus Christ and before people truly knew how to obey God.

##### all men

"all people"

#### Acts 17:31

##### when he will judge the world in righteousness by the man he has appointed

"when the man he has chosen will judge all people in righteousness"

##### in righteousness

"justly" or "fairly"

##### God has given proof of this man

"God has demonstrated his choice of this man"

##### from the dead

From among all those who have died. The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

#### Acts 17:32

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here Luke changes from Paul's teachings to the reaction of the people of Athens.

##### the men of Athens

These are the people who were present at the Areopagus and were listening to Paul.

##### some mocked Paul

"some ridiculed Paul" or "some laughed at Paul." These did not believe it was possible for someone to die and then return to life.

#### Acts 17:34

##### Dionysius the Areopagite

Dionysius is a man's name. Areopagite implies that Dionysius was one of the judges at the council of Areopagus.

##### Damaris

This is the name of a woman.

Chapter 18

1After these things Paul left Athens and went to Corinth.2There he met a Jew named Aquila, a native of Pontus, who had recently come from Italy with his wife Priscilla, because Claudius had commanded all the Jews to leave Rome. Paul went to them,3and because he worked at the same trade, he stayed with them and labored, for they were tentmakers by trade.4So Paul reasoned in the synagogue every Sabbath, trying to persuade both Jews and Greeks.5Now when Silas and Timothy came down from Macedonia, Paul devoted himself to the word, testifying to the Jews that Jesus was the Christ.6But when the Jews opposed and insulted him, Paul shook out his garment at them and said to them, "May your blood be upon your own heads; I am clean. From now on I will go to the Gentiles."7Then he left from there and went to the house of a man named Titius Justus, a man who worshiped God. His house was next to the synagogue.8Crispus, the leader of the synagogue, believed in the Lord, together with all his household; and many of the Corinthians who heard about it believed and were baptized.9The Lord said to Paul in the night in a vision, "Do not be afraid, but speak and do not be silent.10For I am with you, and no one will try to harm you, for I have many people in this city."11Paul lived there for a year and six months, teaching the word of God among them.

12But when Gallio became governor of Achaia, the Jews rose up with one mind against Paul and brought him before the judgment seat;13they said, "This man persuades people to worship God contrary to the law."14Yet when Paul was about to speak, Gallio said to the Jews, "You Jews, if indeed it were a matter of wrong or a wicked crime, it would be reasonable to put up with you.15But since these are questions about words and names and your own law, settle it yourselves. I do not wish to be a judge of these matters."16Gallio made them leave the judgment seat.17So they all seized Sosthenes, the ruler of the synagogue, and beat him in front of the judgment seat. But Gallio did not care what they did.

18Paul, after staying there for many more days, left the brothers and sailed for Syria with Priscilla and Aquila. Before he left the seaport, Cenchreae, he had his hair cut off because of a vow he had taken.19When they came to Ephesus, Paul left Priscilla and Aquila there, but he himself went into the synagogue and reasoned with the Jews.20When they asked Paul to stay a longer time, he declined.21But taking his leave of them, he said, "I will return again to you if it is God's will." He then set sail from Ephesus.

22When Paul had landed at Caesarea, he went up and greeted the Jerusalem church and then went down to Antioch.23After having spent some time there, Paul departed and went through the regions of Galatia and Phrygia, strengthening all the disciples.

24Now a certain Jew named Apollos, an Alexandrian by birth, came to Ephesus. He was eloquent in speech and mighty in the scriptures.25Apollos had been instructed in the teachings of the Lord. Being fervent in spirit, he spoke and taught accurately the things concerning Jesus, but he knew only the baptism of John.26Apollos began to speak boldly in the synagogue. But when Priscilla and Aquila heard him, they took him aside and explained to him the way of God more accurately.27When he desired to pass over into Achaia, the brothers encouraged him and wrote to the disciples in Achaia to welcome him. When he arrived, he greatly helped those who believed by grace.28Apollos powerfully refuted the Jews in public debate, showing by the scriptures that Jesus is the Christ.

#### Acts 18:1

##### After these things

"After these events took place in Athens"

#### Acts 18:2

##### There he met

Possible meanings are that 1) Paul happened to find by chance or 2) Paul intentionally found.

##### a Jew named Aquila

Here the phrase "a certain" indicates this is introducing new person in the story.

##### a native of Pontus

Pontus was a province on the southern coast of the Black Sea.

##### had recently come

This is probably sometime in the past year.

##### Italy

This is the name of land. Rome is the capital city of Italy.

##### Claudius had commanded

Claudius was the current Roman emperor.

#### Acts 18:3

##### he worked at the same trade

"he did the same kind of work that they did"

#### Acts 18:4

##### So Paul reasoned

"So Paul debated" or "So Paul discussed." He gave reasons. This means that rather than just preaching, Paul talked and interacted with the people.

##### trying to persuade both Jews and Greeks

Possible meanings are 1) "and he caused both Jews and Greeks to believe" or 2) "and he kept trying to persuade the Jews and the Greeks."

#### Acts 18:6

##### shook out his garment

This is a symbolic action to indicate that Paul will no longer try to teach the Jews there about Jesus. He is leaving them to God's judgment.

##### May your blood be upon your own heads

"You alone bear the responsibility for your punishment for sin"

##### I am clean

"I am innocent" or "God will not punish me when he punishes you"

#### Acts 18:7

##### he left ... His house

"Paul left ... Titius' Justus's house"

##### Titius Justus

This is the name of a man.

##### worshiped God

A worshiper of God is a Gentile who gives praise to God and follows him but does not necessarily obey all of the Jewish laws.

#### Acts 18:8

##### Crispus

This is the name of a man.

##### leader of the synagogue

a layperson who sponsored and administered the synagogue, not necessarily the teacher

##### all his household

"the people who lived with him in his house"

##### his household

Crispus's household

#### Acts 18:9

##### Do not be afraid, but speak and do not be silent

"You must not be afraid; instead, you should continue to speak and not become silent"

##### do not be silent

"do not stop speaking about the gospel"

#### Acts 18:10

##### I have many people in this city

"there are many people in this city who have put their faith in me" or "many people in this city will put their faith in me"

#### Acts 18:11

##### Paul lived there ... teaching the word of God among them

"Paul lived there ... teaching the scriptures among them"

#### Acts 18:12

##### Gallio

This is the name of a man.

##### the Jews

This stands for the Jewish leaders that did not believe in Jesus.

##### rose up

This phrase means that the Jews began to act, not that they rose into the air or rose to stand from a sitting position. If your language has a different idiom for beginning to act, you may use it here.

##### with one mind

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

##### brought him before the judgment seat

"took him so that the governor could judge him at the judgment seat"

#### Acts 18:14

##### Gallio said

Gallio was the Roman governor of the Province.

#### Acts 18:15

##### your own law

Here "law" can refer to either the law of Moses or the Jewish customs of Paul's time. Gallio is simply telling the Jews that they are to do what they think right and that he is not interested in being the judge.

##### I do not wish to be a judge of these matters

"I refuse to make a judgment about these matters"

#### Acts 18:16

##### Gallio made them leave the judgment seat

"Gallio made them leave his presence in the court" or "Gallio made them leave the court"

#### Acts 18:17

##### So they all seized Sosthenes, the ruler of the synagogue, and beat him in front of the judgment seat

Possible meanings are 1) the Gentiles beat Sosthenes in the court in front of the judgment seat because he was the Jewish leader or 2) Sosthenes was a believer in Christ, so even though he was "the ruler of the synagogue," the Jews beat him in front of the court.

##### they all seized

"many people seized" or "many of them grabbed"

##### beat him

"repeatedly hit him" or "repeatedly punched him."

#### Acts 18:18

##### left the brothers

"left the fellow believers"

##### sailed for Syria with Priscilla and Aquila

Paul got on a ship that sailed for Syria. Priscilla and Aquila went with him.

##### Cenchreae

This was a town near Corinth in Greece. It was on the coast, and Paul probably got on the ship there.

##### he had his hair cut off

"he had someone cut off the hair on his head"

#### Acts 18:19

##### Connecting Statement:

This continues Paul's missionary journey as Paul, Priscilla, and Aquila leave Corinth. This seems to indicate that Silas and Timothy remain, since it says "he" here and not "they." The word "they" refers to Paul, Priscilla, and Aquila.

##### reasoned with the Jews

"gave the Jews reasons to believe" or "debated with the Jews about the scriptures" or "discussed the scriptures with the Jews." Paul explained what the scriptures mean in order to prove to the Jews that Jesus is the Messiah. See how you translated "reasoned with" in Acts 17:2.

#### Acts 18:21

##### taking his leave of them

"saying good-bye to them"

#### Acts 18:22

##### landed at Caesarea

"arrived at Caesarea." The word "landed" is used to show that he arrived by ship.

##### he went up

He traveled to the city of Jerusalem. The phrase "went up" is used here because Jerusalem is higher in elevation than Caesarea.

##### greeted the Jerusalem church

"greeted the members of the church of Jerusalem"

##### then went down

The phrase "went down" is used here because Antioch is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

#### Acts 18:23

##### Paul departed

"Paul went away" or "Paul left"

##### After having spent some time there

After staying there for a while"

#### Acts 18:24

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story.

##### a certain Jew named Apollos

The phrase "a certain" indicates that Luke is introducing a new person in the story.

##### an Alexandrian by birth

"a man who was born in the city of Alexandria." This was a city in Egypt on the north coast of Africa.

##### eloquent in speech

"a good speaker"

##### mighty in the scriptures

"he knew the scriptures thoroughly." He understood the Old Testament writings well.

#### Acts 18:25

##### Apollos had been instructed in the teachings of the Lord

"Other believers had taught Apollos how the Lord Jesus wanted people to live"

##### Being fervent in spirit

"Being very enthusiastic"

##### the baptism of John

"the baptism that John performed." John's baptism was with water, but Jesus's baptism is with the Holy Spirit.

#### Acts 18:26

##### the way of God

How God wants people to live is spoken of as if it were a road that a person travels.

##### more accurately

"correctly" or "more fully"

#### Acts 18:27

##### General Information:

Here the he words "he" and "him" refer to Apollos

##### to pass over into Achaia

"to go to the region of Achaia." The phrase "pass over" is used here because Apollos had to cross the Aegean Sea to get to Achaia from Ephesus.

##### Achaia

Achaia was a Roman Province in the southern section of Greece.

##### brothers

"fellow believers in Ephesus"

##### wrote to the disciples

"wrote a letter to the Christians in Achaia"

##### those who believed by grace

"those who had believed in salvation by grace" or "those who by God's grace believed in Jesus"

#### Acts 18:28

##### Apollos powerfully refuted the Jews in public debate

"In public debate Apollos powerfully showed that the Jews were wrong"

##### showing by the scriptures that Jesus is the Christ

"as he showed them by the scriptures that Jesus is the Christ"

Chapter 19

1It came about that while Apollos was at Corinth, Paul passed through the upper country and came to the city of Ephesus, and found certain disciples there.2Paul said to them, "Did you receive the Holy Spirit when you believed?"

They said to him, "No, we did not even hear about the Holy Spirit."

3Paul said, "Into what then were you baptized?"

They said, "Into John's baptism."

4So Paul replied, "John baptized with the baptism of repentance. He told the people that they should believe in the one who would come after him, that is, in Jesus."5When the people heard this, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.6Then when Paul had laid his hands on them, the Holy Spirit came on them and they spoke in tongues and prophesied.7In all they were about twelve men.

8Paul went into the synagogue and spoke boldly for three months, reasoning and persuading them about the kingdom of God.9But when some Jews were hardened and disobedient, they began to speak evil of the Way before the crowd. So Paul left them and took the disciples with him, reasoning with them every day in the lecture hall of Tyrannus.10This continued for two years, so that all who lived in Asia heard the word of the Lord, both Jews and Greeks.11God was doing extraordinary miracles by the hands of Paul,12so that even handkerchiefs and aprons that had touched him were taken to the sick and their illnesses left them and the evil spirits came out of them.

13But there were Jewish exorcists traveling through the area. They called on the name of the Lord Jesus so they could have power over evil spirits when they said, "By the Jesus whom Paul proclaims, I command you to come out."14The Jewish high priest, whose name was Sceva, had seven sons who were doing this.

15An evil spirit answered them, "Jesus I know, and Paul I know; but who are you?"16The evil spirit in the man leaped on the exorcists and subdued them and beat them up. Then they fled out of that house naked and wounded.17This became known to all, both Jews and Greeks, who lived at Ephesus. They became very afraid, and the name of the Lord Jesus was honored.18Also, many of the believers came and confessed and gave a full account of the evil things they had done.19Many who practiced magic brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. When they counted the value of them, it was fifty thousand pieces of silver.20So the word of the Lord spread very widely in powerful ways.

21Now after these things were completed, Paul decided in the Spirit to pass through Macedonia and Achaia on his way to Jerusalem; he said, "After I have been there, I must also see Rome."22Paul sent to Macedonia two of those who served him, Timothy and Erastus. But he himself stayed in Asia for a while.

23At about that time there was no small disturbance in Ephesus concerning the Way.24A certain silversmith named Demetrius, who made silver shrines of Artemis, brought in much business for the craftsmen.25So he gathered together the workmen of that occupation and said, "Men, you know that in this business we make much money.26You see and hear that, not only at Ephesus, but almost throughout all Asia, this Paul has persuaded and turned away many people. He is saying that gods made by hands are not gods.27Not only is there danger that our trade will be discredited, but also that the temple of the great goddess Artemis might be regarded as worthless, and her greatness would be brought to nothing, she whom all Asia and the world worship."

28When they heard this, they were filled with anger and cried out, saying, "Great is Artemis of the Ephesians."29The whole city was filled with confusion, and the people rushed with one mind into the theater. They had seized Paul's travel companions, Gaius and Aristarchus, who came from Macedonia.30Paul wanted to enter in among the crowd of people, but the disciples prevented him.31Also, some of the officials of the province of Asia who were his friends sent him a message pleading with him not to enter the theater.32Some people were shouting one thing, and some another, for the crowd was in confusion. Most of them did not even know why they had come together.33Some of the crowd advised Alexander, whom the Jews were pushing forward. So Alexander motioned with his hand, wanting to give a defense to the assembly.34But when they recognized that he was a Jew, they all cried out for about two hours with one voice, saying, "Great is Artemis of the Ephesians."35When the town clerk had quieted the crowd, he said, "You men of Ephesus, what man is there who does not know that the city of the Ephesians is temple keeper of the great Artemis and of the image which fell down from heaven?36Seeing then that these things are undeniable, you ought to be quiet and do nothing rash.37For you have brought these men to this court who are neither robbers of temples nor blasphemers of our goddess.38Therefore, if Demetrius and the craftsmen who are with him have an accusation against anyone, the courts are open and there are proconsuls. Let them accuse one another.39But if you are seeking anything more, it should be resolved in the regular assembly.40For we are in danger of being accused of rioting today, and there is no cause we can give to justify this uproar." When he had said this, he dismissed the assembly. [1](#footnote-target-1)

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some Greek copies number this last sentence as verse 41.

#### Acts 19:1

##### General Information:

The "upper country" was an area of Asia which today is part of modern-day Turkey to the north of Ephesus. Paul must have traveled by land around the top of the Aegean Sea in order to come to Ephesus (also in Turkey today), which is directly east of Corinth by sea.

##### It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### passed through

"traveled through"

#### Acts 19:2

##### receive the Holy Spirit

This means to have the Holy Spirit come upon them.

##### we did not even hear about the Holy Spirit

"we have not even heard about the Holy Spirit"

#### Acts 19:3

##### Into what then were you baptized?

"What kind of baptism did you receive?"

##### Into John's baptism

"We were baptized into John's baptism" or "We received the kind of baptism about which John taught"

#### Acts 19:4

##### the baptism of repentance

"the baptism that people requested when they wanted to repent"

##### the one who would come

Here "the one" refers to Jesus.

##### come after him

This means to come after John the Baptist in time and not following after him physically.

#### Acts 19:5

##### When the people

Here "people" refers to the disciples in Ephesus who were talking with Paul.

##### they were baptized

"they received baptism"

##### in the name of the Lord Jesus

"as believers in the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 19:6

##### laid his hands on them

"placed his hands on their heads as he prayed"

##### they spoke in tongues and prophesied

Unlike in Acts 2:3-4, there are no details of who understood their messages.

#### Acts 19:8

##### Paul went into the synagogue and spoke boldly for three months

"Paul regularly attended the synagogue meetings for three months and spoke there boldly"

##### reasoning and persuading them

Probable meanings are 1) the words "reasoning" and "persuading" mean "arguing persuasively" or 2) the words describe two separate activities, "giving them reasons to believe" and "convincing them"

##### about the kingdom of God

"about God's rule as king" or "about how God would show himself as king"

#### Acts 19:9

##### some Jews were hardened and disobedient

"some Jews were stubborn and did not believe" or "some Jews stubbornly refused to accept and obey the message"

##### to speak evil of the Way before the crowd

"to speak evil about Christianity to the crowd" or "to speak to the crowd evil things about those who follow Christ and who obey his teaching about God"

##### in the lecture hall of Tyrannus

"in the large room where Tyrannus had taught people"

##### Tyrannus

This is the name of a man.

#### Acts 19:10

##### all who lived in Asia heard the word of the Lord

Here "all" is a generalization that means very many people throughout Asia heard the gospel.

##### the word of the Lord

"the message about the Lord"

#### Acts 19:11

##### God was doing extraordinary miracles by the hands of Paul

"God was causing Paul to do extraordinary miracles" or "God was doing extraordinary miracles through Paul"

#### Acts 19:12

##### even handkerchiefs and aprons that had touched him were taken to the sick and

"when they took to sick people even handkerchiefs and aprons that had touched Paul"

##### handkerchiefs

cloths worn around the head

##### aprons

clothing worn on the front of the body to protect the clothes of people

##### the sick

"sick people" or "those who were sick"

##### their illnesses left them

"those who were sick became healthy"

#### Acts 19:13

##### exorcists

people who send evil spirits away from people or places

##### the name of the Lord Jesus

Here, "name" refers to Jesus's power and authority.

##### By the Jesus whom Paul proclaims

"Jesus" was a common name at the time, so these exorcists wanted people to know of whom they spoke.

##### By the Jesus

"by the authority of Jesus" or "by the power of Jesus"

#### Acts 19:14

##### Sceva

This is the name of a man.

#### Acts 19:15

##### Jesus I know, and Paul I know

"I know Jesus and Paul" or "I know Jesus, and I know Paul"

##### but who are you?

"but I do not know you!" or "but you have no authority over me!"

#### Acts 19:16

##### The evil spirit in the man leaped

This means that the evil spirit caused the man whom it was controlling to leap on the exorcists.

##### exorcists

This refers to people who send evil spirits from people or places.

##### they fled ... naked

The exorcists fled with their clothes ripped off them.

#### Acts 19:17

##### the name of the Lord Jesus was honored

"they honored the name of the Lord Jesus" or "they considered the name of the Lord Jesus to be great"

##### the name

This stands for the power and authority of Jesus.

#### Acts 19:19

##### brought their books

"collected their books." The word "books" refers to scrolls on which magical incantations and formulas were written.

##### in the sight of everyone

"in front of everyone"

##### the value of them

"the value of the books" or "the value of the scrolls"

##### pieces of silver

A "piece of silver" was the approximate daily wage for a common laborer.

#### Acts 19:20

##### So the word of the Lord spread very widely in powerful ways

"So because of these powerful deeds, more and more people heard the message about the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 19:21

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here Luke starts to tell a new part of the story.

##### these things were completed

"Paul completed the work that God had for him to do in Ephesus"

##### Paul decided in the Spirit

Possible meanings are 1) Paul decided with the help of the Holy Spirit or 2) Paul decided within his own spirit, which means he made up his mind.

##### Achaia

Achaia was the Roman province in which Corinth was located. It was the largest city in southern Greece and the capital of the province.

##### I must also see Rome

"I must also travel to Rome"

#### Acts 19:22

##### Erastus

This is the name of a man.

##### But he himself stayed in Asia for a while

It is made explicit in the next few verses that Paul remains in Ephesus.

#### Acts 19:23

##### there was no small disturbance in Ephesus concerning the Way

This is a summary opening statement.

##### there was no small disturbance

"the people became very upset"

##### the Way

This was a term used to refer to Christianity. See how you translated this title in Acts 9:1.

#### Acts 19:24

##### A certain silversmith named Demetrius

The use of the words "a certain" introduces a new person in the story.

##### silversmith

a craftsman who works with silver metal to make statues and jewelry

##### named Demetrius

This is the name of a man. Demetrius was a silversmith in Ephesus who was against Paul and the local church.

##### brought in much business for the craftsmen

"enabled those who made the idols to make much money"

##### shrines of Artemis

These were probably carved or molten images of the temple of Artemis or of the part of the temple in which the statue of Artemis stood.

#### Acts 19:25

##### the workmen of that occupation

"others who did that kind of work"

#### Acts 19:26

##### You see and hear that

"You have come to know and understand that"

##### persuaded and turned away many people

"persuaded many people and caused them to stop worshiping the local gods"

##### He is saying that gods made by hands are not gods

"He is saying that the idols that people make are not real gods"

#### Acts 19:27

##### that our trade will be discredited

"that what Paul is saying will discredit our trade" or "that people will think that our trade is false"

##### our trade

This refers to their business of making and selling idols.

##### the temple of the great goddess Artemis might be regarded as worthless

"people will think that the temple of the great goddess Artemis is worthless" or "people will think there is no benefit in going to the temple to worship the great goddess Artemis"

##### her greatness would be brought to nothing

"People would no longer recognize how great she is" or "She will lose her reputation of being great"

##### whom all Asia and the world worship

"whom many people in Asia and in other parts of the world worship"

#### Acts 19:28

##### they were filled with anger

"they became very angry"

##### cried out

"shouted aloud" or "shouted loudly"

#### Acts 19:29

##### The whole city was filled with confusion

"Then people all over the city became upset and started shouting"

##### the people rushed with one mind

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

##### into the theater

The Ephesus theater was used for public meetings and for entertainment such as plays and music. It was an outdoor semi-circular area with bench seats that could hold thousands of people.

##### Paul's travel companions

The men who had been with Paul.

##### Gaius and Aristarchus

These are names of men. Gaius and Aristarchus came from Macedonia but were working with Paul in Ephesus at this time.

#### Acts 19:31

##### officials of the province of Asia

Ephesus was in the Roman Empire's province of Asia.

#### Acts 19:33

##### Alexander

This is the name of a man.

##### motioned with his hand

"gestured to the crowd to be quiet"

##### to give a defense

It is not clear whom or what Alexander wanted to defend. If your language requires this information, it might be best to use a general phrase like "to explain what was going on."

#### Acts 19:34

##### with one voice

"in unison" or "together"

#### Acts 19:35

##### the town clerk

This refers to the town "writer" or "secretary."

##### what man is there who does not know that the city of the Ephesians is temple keeper ... heaven?

"every man knows that the city of the Ephesians is temple keeper ... heaven."

##### temple keeper

The Ephesian people maintained and guarded the temple of Artemis.

##### the image which fell down from heaven

Within the temple of Artemis was an image of the goddess. It had been fashioned from a meteorite which fell from the sky. People thought that this rock had come directly from Zeus, the ruler of the Greek gods (idols).

#### Acts 19:36

##### Seeing then that these things are undeniable

"Since you know these things"

##### do nothing rash

"do not do anything before you have had time to think about it"

#### Acts 19:37

##### these men

The words "these men" refer to Gaius and Aristarchus, Paul's traveling companions

#### Acts 19:38

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true." The town clerk had said in Acts 19:37 that Gaius and Aristarchus were not robbers or blasphemers.

##### have an accusation against anyone

"want to accuse someone"

##### proconsuls

the Roman governor's representatives who made legal decisions in court

##### Let them accuse one another

"There people can accuse one another"

#### Acts 19:39

##### But if you are seeking anything more

"But if you want to ask about anything more" or "But if you have something to discuss about other matters"

##### it should be resolved in the regular assembly

"let us settle it in the regular assembly"

##### the regular assembly

This refers to a regular public gathering of citizens over which the county clerk presided.

#### Acts 19:40

##### For we are in danger of being accused of rioting today

"in danger of the Roman authorities accusing us of starting this riot today"

Chapter 20

1After the uproar was over, Paul sent for the disciples and after he encouraged them, he said farewell and left to go into Macedonia.2When he had gone through those regions and had spoken many words of encouragement to them, he came to Greece.3After he had spent three months there, a plot was formed against him by the Jews as he was about to sail for Syria, so he decided to return through Macedonia.4Accompanying him as far as Asia were Sopater son of Pyrrhus from Berea; Aristarchus and Secundus, both from the Thessalonian believers; Gaius of Derbe; Timothy; and Tychicus and Trophimus from Asia.5But these men had gone before us and were waiting for us at Troas.6We sailed away from Philippi after the days of unleavened bread, and in five days we came to them in Troas. There we stayed for seven days.

7On the first day of the week, when we were gathered together to break bread, Paul spoke to the believers. He was planning to leave the next day, so he prolonged his message until midnight.8There were many lamps in the upper room where we had come together.9In the window was sitting a young man named Eutychus, who fell into a deep sleep. As Paul spoke even longer, this young man, still sleeping, fell down from the third story and was picked up dead.10But Paul went down, stretched himself out on him, and embraced him. Then he said, "Do not be upset any more, for he is alive."11Then he went upstairs again and broke bread and ate. After talking with them much longer until dawn, he left.12They brought back the boy alive and were greatly comforted.

13We ourselves went ahead of Paul by ship and sailed away to Assos, where we planned to take Paul on board. This is what he himself desired to do, because he planned to go by land.14When he met us at Assos, we took him onto the ship and went to Mitylene.15Then we sailed from there and arrived the next day opposite the island of Chios. The following day we touched at the island of Samos, and the day after we came to the city of Miletus.16For Paul had decided to sail past Ephesus, so that he would not spend any time in Asia; for he was hurrying to be in Jerusalem for the day of Pentecost, if it were at all possible for him to do so.

17From Miletus he sent men to Ephesus and called to himself the elders of the church.18When they had come to him, he said to them, "You yourselves know, from the first day that I set foot in Asia, how I always spent my time with you.19I kept serving the Lord with all lowliness of mind and with tears, and in trials that happened to me because of the plots of the Jews.20You know how I did not keep back from declaring to you anything that was useful, and how I taught you in public and from house to house,21testifying to both Jews and Greeks about repentance toward God and of faith in our Lord Jesus.22Now look, I am going to Jerusalem, compelled by the Spirit, not knowing what will happen to me there,23except that the Holy Spirit testifies to me in every city that chains and afflictions await me.24But I do not consider my life valuable to myself, if only I may finish the race and complete the ministry that I received from the Lord Jesus, to testify to the gospel of the grace of God.25Now look, I know that you all, among whom I went about proclaiming the kingdom, will see my face no more.26Therefore I testify to you this day, that I am innocent of the blood of any man.27For I did not hold back from declaring to you the whole will of God.28Therefore be careful about yourselves, and about all the flock of which the Holy Spirit has appointed you overseers. Be careful to shepherd the church of God, which he purchased with his own blood. [1](#footnote-target-1)29I know that after my departure, vicious wolves will come in among you and will not spare the flock.30Even from your own number men will arise and distort the truth to draw away the disciples after them.31So be on guard. Remember that for three years I never stopped warning each one of you night and day with tears.32Now I commit you to God and to the word of his grace, which is able to build you up and to give you the inheritance among all those who are being sanctified.33I coveted no man's silver, gold, or clothing.34You yourselves know that these hands served my own needs and the needs of those who were with me.35In all things I gave you an example of how you should help the weak by laboring, and of how you should remember the words of the Lord Jesus, words that he himself said: 'It is more blessed to give than to receive.'"

36After he had spoken in this way, he knelt down and prayed with them all.37There was a lot of crying and they embraced Paul and kissed him.38They were in anguish most of all because of what he had said, that they would never see his face again. Then they escorted him to the ship.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Instead of with his own blood , some ancient copies read, with the blood of his own Son .

#### Acts 20:1

##### After the uproar

"After the riot" or "Following the riot"

##### he said farewell

"he said goodbye"

#### Acts 20:2

##### had spoken many words of encouragement to them

"had greatly encouraged the believers" or "had said many things to encourage the believers"

#### Acts 20:3

##### After he had spent three months there

"After he had stayed there three months."

##### a plot was formed against him by the Jews

"the Jews formed a plot against him" or "the Jews formed a secret plan to harm him"

##### by the Jews

"by some of the Jews"

#### Acts 20:4

##### Accompanying him

"Traveling with him." Here the word "him" refers to Paul

##### Sopater ... Pyrrhus ... Secundus ... Tychicus ... Trophimus

These are names of men.

##### Berea ... Derbe

These are names of places.

##### Aristarchus ... Gaius

These are names of men.

#### Acts 20:5

##### these men had gone before us

"these men had traveled ahead of us"

##### Troas

This is the name of a place.

#### Acts 20:6

##### the days of unleavened bread

This refers to the Jewish religious feast time during the Passover season.

#### Acts 20:7

##### the next day

"when the sun came up again." If the writer was using the Jewish system of determining days, Paul was planning to travel after sunrise on "the first day of the week." If the writer was using the Greek system, Paul was planning to travel on the second day of the week.

##### to break bread

"to eat the Lord's Supper"

##### he prolonged his message

"he continued to speak"

#### Acts 20:8

##### upper room

This may have been on the third floor of the house.

#### Acts 20:9

##### In the window

This was an opening in the wall with a ledge that was wide enough on which a person could sit.

##### Eutychus

This is the name of a man.

##### who fell into a deep sleep

"who slept soundly" or "who became more and more tired until finally he was sleeping soundly"

##### third story and was picked up dead

"third story; and when they went to pick him up, they found that he was dead"

##### third story

This means two floors above the ground floor. If your culture does not count the ground floor, you may state this as the "second story."

#### Acts 20:10

##### on him ... embraced him ... he is alive

Here "him" and "he" refers to the young man, Eutychus.

##### he said

Here "he" refers to Paul.

#### Acts 20:11

##### broke bread

Bread was a common food during meals. Here "broke bread" probably means that they shared a meal with more kinds of food than just bread.

##### he left

"he went away"

#### Acts 20:12

##### the boy

This refers to Eutychus. Possible meanings are 1) he was a young man over 14 years old or 2) he was a boy between 9 and 14 years old or 3) the word "boy" implies that he was a servant or a slave.

#### Acts 20:13

##### We ourselves went

The word "ourselves" adds emphasis and separates Luke and his traveling companions from Paul, who did not travel by boat.

##### sailed away to Assos

Assos is a town located directly below present day Behram in Turkey on the coast of the Aegean sea.

##### to go by land

"to travel on land"

#### Acts 20:14

##### he met ... took him

Here "he" and "him" refer to Paul.

##### met us ... we took

Here the words "we" and "us" refer to the writer and those traveling with him, but not to the reader.

##### went to Mitylene

Mitylene is a town located in present day Mitilini in Turkey on the coast of the Aegean sea.

#### Acts 20:15

##### opposite the island

"near the island" or "across from the island"

##### the island of Chios

Chios is an island off the coast of modern day Turkey in the Aegean Sea.

##### we touched at the island of Samos

"we arrived at the island of Samos"

##### island of Samos

Samos is an island south of Chios in the Aegean Sea off the coast of modern day Turkey.

##### the city of Miletus

Miletus was a port city in western Asia Minor near the mouth of the Meander River.

#### Acts 20:16

##### For Paul had decided to sail past Ephesus

Paul sailed south past the port city of Ephesus, further south in order to land at Miletus.

##### so that he would not spend any time

"so that he would not have to remain for a time" or "so that he would not have a delay"

#### Acts 20:18

##### You yourselves

Here "yourselves" is used for emphasis.

##### I set foot in Asia

"I entered Asia"

##### how I always spent my time with you

"how I always conducted myself when I was with you"

#### Acts 20:19

##### lowliness of mind

"humility" or "humbleness"

##### with tears

"with crying as I served the Lord"

##### in trials that happened to me

"while God was testing me"

##### of the Jews

"of some of the Jews"

#### Acts 20:20

##### You know how I did not keep back from declaring to you

"You know how I was never silent, but I always declared to you"

##### from house to house

"I also taught when I was in your homes"

#### Acts 20:21

##### about repentance toward God and of faith in our Lord Jesus

"that they need to repent before God and believe in our Lord Jesus Christ"

##### our Lord Jesus

The word "our" refers to Paul and the elders to whom he is speaking.

#### Acts 20:22

##### compelled by the Spirit

"because the Spirit compels me to go there"

##### not knowing what will happen to me there

"and I do not know what will happen to me there"

#### Acts 20:23

##### chains and afflictions await me

"people will put me in prison and cause me to suffer"

#### Acts 20:24

##### if only I may finish the race and complete the ministry that I received from the Lord Jesus

"so that I may complete the work that the Lord Jesus has commanded me to do"

##### to testify to the gospel of the grace of God

"to tell people the good news about God's grace." This is the ministry that Paul received from Jesus.

#### Acts 20:25

##### I know that you all

"I know that all of you"

##### among whom I went about proclaiming the kingdom

"to whom I preached the message about God's reign as king" or "to whom I preached about how God will show himself as king"

##### will see my face no more

"will not see me anymore on this earth"

#### Acts 20:26

##### I am innocent of the blood of any man

"I am not responsible for anyone whom God judges guilty of sin because they did not trust in Jesus"

##### any man

"any person"

#### Acts 20:27

##### For I did not hold back from declaring to you

"For I certainly declared to you"

#### Acts 20:28

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true," referring to all that Paul has said so far in his speech about his leaving them.

##### the flock of which the Holy Spirit has appointed you overseers. Be careful to shepherd the church of God

"the group of believers the Holy spirit has entrusted to you. Be sure to take care of the church of God"

##### the church of God, which he purchased with his own blood

"the people Christ saved from their sins by shedding his blood on the cross"

##### his own blood

Here "blood" stands for Christ's death.

#### Acts 20:29

##### vicious wolves will come in among you and will not spare the flock

"many enemies will come among you and try to harm the community of believers"

#### Acts 20:30

##### to draw away the disciples after them

"in order to convince people who are disciples of Christ to become his disciples instead"

#### Acts 20:31

##### be on guard

"be awake and alert" or "watch out." Christian leaders being alert about anyone that may harm the community of believers is spoken of as if they were guards in an army watching out for the enemy army.

##### Remember that

"Continue to remember that" or "Do not forget that"

##### for three years I never stopped warning ... night and day

Paul taught them over the space of three years, but not necessarily every day for three years.

##### I never stopped warning ... you

"I warned ... you as often as I could"

##### with tears

Here "tears" refers to Paul's crying because of the strong emotion of concern he felt while he was warning the people.

#### Acts 20:32

##### I commit you to God and to the word of his grace

"I ask God to take care of you and to help you to keep believing the message I spoke to you about his grace"

##### which is able to build you up

"which is able to make become stronger and stronger in your faith"

##### to give you the inheritance

"God will give you the inheritance"

##### the inheritance

The blessings that God gives believers are spoken of as if they were money or property that a child inherits from his father.

#### Acts 20:33

##### I coveted no man's silver

"I did not desire someone's silver" or "I did not want for myself anyone's silver"

##### man's silver, gold, or clothing

Clothing was considered a treasure; the more you had, the richer you were.

#### Acts 20:34

##### You yourselves

The word "yourselves" is used here to add emphasis.

##### these hands served my own needs

"I worked to earn money and pay for my own expenses"

#### Acts 20:35

##### you should help the weak by laboring

"you should work so as to have money to help people who cannot earn it for themselves"

##### the weak

"weak persons" or "those who are weak"

##### the words of the Lord Jesus

Here, "words" refers to what Jesus has said.

##### It is more blessed to give than to receive

This means a person receives the favor of God and experiences more joy when he gives to other people rather than always receiving from other people.

#### Acts 20:36

##### he knelt down and prayed

It was a common custom to kneel down while praying. It was a sign of humility before God.

#### Acts 20:37

##### embraced Paul

"hugged him closely" or "put their arms around him"

##### kissed him

Kissing someone on the cheek is an expression of brotherly or friendly love in the Middle East.

#### Acts 20:38

##### they would never see his face again

"they would not see him anymore on this earth"

Chapter 21

1When we had gone away from them and set sail, we took a straight course to the city of Cos, and the next day to the city of Rhodes, and from there to the city of Patara.2When we found a ship crossing over to Phoenicia, we went aboard and set sail.3After sighting Cyprus, leaving it on the left side of the boat, we sailed on to Syria and landed at Tyre, where the ship was to unload its cargo.4After we found the disciples, we stayed there seven days. Through the Spirit they kept urging Paul not to go to Jerusalem.5When our days there were over, we left and went on our way, and they all, with their wives and children, accompanied us out of the city. Then we knelt down on the beach, prayed,6and said farewell to each other. Then we went on board the ship, and they returned home.

7When we had finished the voyage from Tyre, we arrived at Ptolemais. There we greeted the brothers and stayed with them for one day.8On the next day we left and went to Caesarea. We entered the house of Philip, the evangelist, who was one of the seven, and we stayed with him.9Now this man had four virgin daughters who prophesied.

10As we stayed there for some days, a certain prophet named Agabus came down from Judea.11He came to us and took Paul's belt. With it he tied his own feet and hands and said, "Thus says the Holy Spirit, 'This is how the Jews in Jerusalem will tie up the man who owns this belt, and they will hand him over into the hands of the Gentiles.'"12When we heard these things, both we and the people who lived in that place pleaded with Paul not to go up to Jerusalem.

13Then Paul answered, "What are you doing, weeping and breaking my heart? For I am ready, not only to be tied up, but also to die in Jerusalem for the name of the Lord Jesus."

14Since Paul would not be persuaded, we remained silent and then we said, "May the will of the Lord be done."

15After these days, we picked up our bags and went up to Jerusalem.16There also went with us some of the disciples from Caesarea. They brought with them a man named Mnason, a man from Cyprus, an early disciple, with whom we would stay.

17When we had arrived in Jerusalem, the brothers welcomed us gladly.18The next day Paul went with us to James, and all the elders were present.19When he had greeted them, he reported one by one the things that God had done among the Gentiles through his ministry.20When they heard it, they glorified God, and they said to him, "You see, brother, how many thousands have believed among the Jews. They are all zealous to keep the law.21They have been told about you, that you teach all the Jews who live among the Gentiles to abandon Moses, and that you tell them not to circumcise their children, and not to walk according to the traditional ways.22What should we do? They will certainly hear that you have come.23So do what we say to you. We have four men who made a vow.24Take these men and purify yourself with them, and pay their expenses for them, so that they may shave their heads. So everyone will know that the things they have been told about you are false. They will learn that you also live correctly, obeying the law.25But concerning the Gentiles who have believed, we wrote about our decision that they should keep themselves from things sacrificed to idols, from blood, from what is strangled, and from sexual immorality."26Then Paul took the men, and the next day he purified himself along with them. Then they went into the temple, giving notice when the days of purification would be fulfilled and the offering would be presented for each of them.

27When the seven days were almost finished, some Jews from Asia, seeing Paul in the temple, stirred up the whole crowd and laid hands on him.28They were shouting, "Men of Israel, help us. This is the man who teaches all men everywhere things that are against the people, the law, and this place. Besides, he has also brought Greeks into the temple and has defiled this holy place."29For they had previously seen Trophimus the Ephesian with him in the city, and they thought that Paul had brought him into the temple.30All the city was excited, and the people ran together and laid hold of Paul. They dragged him out of the temple, and the doors were immediately shut.31As they were trying to kill him, news came up to the chief captain of the company of soldiers, that all Jerusalem was in an uproar.32Right away he took soldiers and centurions and ran down to the crowd. When the people saw the chief captain and the soldiers, they stopped beating Paul.33Then the chief captain approached and laid hold of Paul, and commanded him to be bound with two chains. Then he asked who he was and what he had done.34Some in the crowd were shouting one thing and others another. Since the captain could not learn the truth because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.35When he came to the steps, he was carried by the soldiers because of the crowd's violence.36For the crowd of people followed after and kept shouting out, "Away with him!"

37As Paul was about to be brought into the fortress, he said to the chief captain, "Is it permitted for me to say something to you?"

The captain said, "Do you know Greek?38Are you not then the Egyptian who some time ago started a rebellion and led the four thousand men of the 'Assassins' out into the wilderness?"

39Paul said, "I am a Jew, from the city of Tarsus in Cilicia. I am a citizen of no unimportant city. I beg you, allow me to speak to the people."

40When the captain had given him permission, Paul stood on the steps and motioned with the hand to the people. When there was a deep silence, he spoke to them in the Hebrew language. He said,

#### Acts 21:1

##### we took a straight course to the city of Cos

"we went straight to the city of Cos" or "we went directly to the city of Cos"

##### city of Cos

Cos is a Greek island off the coast of modern day Turkey in the South Aegean Sea region.

##### city of Rhodes

Rhodes is a Greek island off the coast of modern day Turkey in the South Aegean Sea region south of Cos and northeast of Crete.

##### city of Patara

Patara is a city on the southwest coast of modern day Turkey south of the Aegean Sea in the Mediterranean Sea.

#### Acts 21:2

##### When we found a ship crossing over to Phoenicia

"When we found a ship with a crew sailing over to Phoenicia"

#### Acts 21:3

##### Cyprus, leaving it on the left side of the boat

"Cyprus, sailing south of it"

##### where the ship was to unload its cargo

"the crew would unload the cargo from the ship"

#### Acts 21:4

##### Through the Spirit they kept urging Paul not to go to Jerusalem

"Because the Spirit had told them that Paul would suffer in Jerusalem, they urged him again and again not to go there"

#### Acts 21:5

##### When our days there were over

"When the seven days were over" or "When it was time to leave"

#### Acts 21:6

##### said farewell to each other

"said goodbye to one another"

#### Acts 21:7

##### we arrived at Ptolemais

Ptolemais was a city south of Tyre, Lebanon. Ptolemais is modern day Acre, Israel.

##### the brothers

"fellow believers"

#### Acts 21:8

##### one of the seven

The "seven" refers to the men chosen to distribute food and aid to the widows in Acts 6:5.

##### evangelist

a person who tells people good news

#### Acts 21:9

##### this man

"Philip" from verse 8.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here Luke tells background information about Philip and his daughters.

##### four virgin daughters who prophesied

"four virgin daughters who regularly received and passed along messages from God"

#### Acts 21:10

##### a certain prophet named Agabus

Agabus was a man from Judea.

#### Acts 21:11

##### took Paul's belt

"removed Paul's belt from Paul's waist"

##### Thus says the Holy Spirit, 'This is how the Jews in Jerusalem will tie up ... of the Gentiles.'

"The Holy Spirit says that this will be how the Jews in Jerusalem will tie up ... of the Gentiles."

##### the Jews

"the Jewish leaders" or "some of the Jews"

##### hand him over

"deliver him"

##### into the hands of the Gentiles

"into the legal custody of the Gentiles" or "to the Gentile authorities"

#### Acts 21:13

##### What are you doing, weeping and breaking my heart?

"Stop what you are doing. Your weeping is breaking my heart."

##### breaking my heart

"discouraging me" or "making me very sad"

##### not only to be tied up

"not only for them to tie me up"

##### for the name of the Lord Jesus

"for the sake of the Lord Jesus" or "because I believe in the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 21:14

##### Paul would not be persuaded

"Paul would not allow us to to persuade him" or "we were unable to persuade Paul to not go up to Jerusalem"

##### May the will of the Lord be done

"May everything happen as the Lord has planned it"

#### Acts 21:16

##### They brought with them a man

"Among them was a man"

##### Mnason, a man from Cyprus

Mnason was a man from the island of Cyprus.

##### an early disciple

This means Mnason was one of the first to believe in Jesus.

#### Acts 21:17

##### the brothers welcomed us

"the fellow believers welcomed us"

#### Acts 21:19

##### he reported one by one

"he gave a detailed account of all"

#### Acts 21:20

##### they heard ... they glorified ... they said to him

Here the word "they" refers to James and the elders. The word "him" refers to Paul.

##### They are

The word "they" refers to Jewish believers who wanted all believing Jews to keep the Jewish laws and customs.

##### the law

this phrase here refers to the law of Moses

#### Acts 21:21

##### They have been told

"People have told the Jewish believers"

##### to abandon Moses

"to stop obeying the laws that Moses gave us"

##### not to walk according to the traditional ways

"not to obey the old customs" or "not to practice the old customs"

#### Acts 21:22

##### we do

Here the word "we" refers to James and the elders

##### They will

The word "They" refers to the Jewish believers in Jerusalem who wanted to teach Jewish believers that they could still follow the laws of Moses.

##### you have come

The word "you" refers to Paul.

#### Acts 21:23

##### four men who made a vow

"four men who made a promise to God." This was the kind of vow where a person would not drink alcohol or cut his hair until the end of a set period of time.

#### Acts 21:24

##### Take these men and purify yourself with them

They had to make themselves ritually pure so they could worship in the temple.

##### pay their expenses for them

"pay for what they will need." The expenses would go toward buying a male and female lamb, a ram, and grain and drink offerings.

##### they may shave their heads

This was a sign that the person had completed what they promised God they would do.

##### the things they have been told about you

"the things that people are saying about you"

#### Acts 21:25

##### they should keep themselves from things sacrificed to idols, from blood, from what is strangled

All of these are rules about what they can eat. They are forbidden to eat meat of animals sacrificed to an idol, meat with blood still in it, and meat from a strangled animal because it would still have blood in the meat. See how you translated similar phrases in Acts 15:20

##### they should keep themselves from things sacrificed to idols

"they stay away from the meat of an animal that someone sacrificed to an idol"

##### from what is strangled

"from animals that a person has strangled" or "from animals that a person killed for food but did not drain its blood"

#### Acts 21:26

##### took the men

These are the 4 men who made a vow.

##### he purified himself along with them

Before entering the temple area the Jews were required to be ceremonially or ritually clean. This cleansing had to do with Jews having contact with Gentiles.

##### went into the temple

"went into the temple courtyard"

##### the days of purification

This is a separate purification process from the purification process which they were required to fulfill in order to enter the temple area.

##### the offering would be presented

"they presented the animals for an offering"

#### Acts 21:27

##### the seven days

These are the seven days for purification.

##### stirred up the whole crowd

"caused a large number of people to be very angry at Paul"

##### laid hands on him

"grabbed Paul"

#### Acts 21:28

##### the people, the law, and this place

"the people of Israel, the law of Moses, and the temple"

##### Besides, he has also brought Greeks into the temple

Only Jewish males were allowed in certain areas of the courtyard of the Jerusalem temple.

#### Acts 21:29

##### For they had previously ... into the temple

This is background information. Luke is explaining why the Jews from Asia thought Paul brought a Greek into the temple.

##### Trophimus

This was a Greek man that they accused Paul of having brought into the inner temple area that was only for Jews.

#### Acts 21:30

##### All the city was excited

"Many people in the city became angry at Paul"

##### the doors were immediately shut

"some of the Jews immediately shut the temple doors" or "the temple guards immediately shut the doors"

#### Acts 21:31

##### news came up to the chief captain of the company of soldiers

"someone gave news to the chief captain of the cohort"

##### the chief captain

This is a Roman military leader of about 1,000 soldiers.

##### all Jerusalem was in an uproar

"all the people in Jerusalem were in an uproar" or "the large crowd in Jerusalem was in an uproar"

#### Acts 21:33

##### laid hold of Paul

"took hold of Paul" or "arrested Paul"

##### commanded him to be bound

"commanded his soldiers to bind him"

##### with two chains

This means they bound Paul to two Roman soldiers, one on each side of him.

##### he asked who he was and what he had done.

"he asked, 'Who is this man? What has he done?'"

##### he asked who he was

The chief captain is speaking to the crowd, not to Paul.

#### Acts 21:34

##### and others another

"and others were shouting another" or "and others in the crowd were shouting something else"

##### he ordered that Paul be brought

"he ordered his soldiers to bring Paul"

##### into the fortress

This fortress was connected to the outer temple court.

#### Acts 21:35

##### When he came to the steps, he was carried

"When Paul came to the steps of the fortress, the soldiers carried him"

#### Acts 21:36

##### Away with him

"Put him to death" or "Kill him"

#### Acts 21:37

##### As Paul was about to be brought

"As the soldiers were ready to bring Paul"

##### The captain said, "Do you know Greek?

"So you know Greek." or "I didn't know you know how to speak and understand the Greek language."

#### Acts 21:38

##### Are you not then the Egyptian

Shortly before Paul's visit, an unnamed man from Egypt had launched a revolt against Rome in Jerusalem. Later he escaped into the wilderness and the commander wonders if Paul might be the same man.

##### started a rebellion

"caused people to rebel against the Roman government"

##### the four thousand men

"the 4,000 terrorists"

#### Acts 21:39

##### Tarsus in Cilicia

Cilicia was a Roman province across the Mediterranean Sea from Egypt, and Tarsus was a large, well-known city.

##### I am a citizen of no unimportant city

"I am a citizen of an important city"

##### I beg you

Or "I plead with you."

##### allow me

"please allow me" or please permit me"

#### Acts 21:40

##### the captain had given him permission

"the captain permitted Paul to speak" or "the captain allowed Paul to speak"

##### Paul stood on the steps

The word "steps" here refers to the steps on the stairway to the fortress.

##### motioned with the hand to the people

"motioned with his hand for the people to be quiet"

##### When there was a deep silence

"When the people were completely silent"

Chapter 22

1"Brothers and fathers, listen to my defense which I will now make to you."

2When the crowd heard Paul speak to them in the Hebrew language, they became quiet. He said,

3"I am a Jew, born in Tarsus of Cilicia, but educated in this city at the feet of Gamaliel. I was instructed according to the strict ways of the law of our fathers. I am zealous for God, just as all of you are today.4I persecuted this Way to the death, binding up and delivering to prison both men and women,5as the high priest and all the elders can testify. I received letters from them for the brothers in Damascus, and I went there to bring them back in bonds to Jerusalem to be punished.6It happened that when I was traveling and nearing Damascus, about noon suddenly a great light from heaven began to shine around me.7I fell to the ground and heard a voice say to me, 'Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me?'

8I answered, 'Who are you, Lord?'

He said to me, 'I am Jesus of Nazareth, whom you are persecuting.'

9Those who were with me saw the light, but they did not understand the voice of him who spoke to me.10I said, 'What should I do, Lord?'

The Lord said to me, 'Arise and go into Damascus. There you will be told everything that has been appointed for you to do.'11I could not see because of that light's brightness, and being led by the hands of those who were with me, I came into Damascus.12There I met a man named Ananias, a devout man according to the law and well spoken of by all the Jews who lived there.13He came to me, stood by me, and said, 'Brother Saul, receive your sight.' In that very hour I saw him.14Then he said, 'The God of our fathers has appointed you to know his will, to see the Righteous One, and to hear the voice coming from his own mouth.15For you will be a witness for him to all men about what you have seen and heard.16Now why are you waiting? Arise, be baptized, and wash away your sins, calling on his name.'17After I had returned to Jerusalem, and while I was praying in the temple, a trance came on me.18I saw him say to me, 'Hurry and leave Jerusalem quickly, because they will not accept your testimony about me.'19I said, 'Lord, they themselves know that I imprisoned and beat those who believed in you in every synagogue.20When the blood of Stephen your witness was spilled, I also was standing by and agreeing, and I was guarding the cloaks of those who killed him.'21But he said to me, 'Go, because I will send you far away to the Gentiles.'"

22They listened to him until that statement. Then they raised their voices and said, "Away with such a fellow from the earth, for it is not right that he should live."23As they were shouting, throwing off their cloaks, and throwing dust into the air,24the chief captain commanded Paul to be brought into the fortress. He ordered that he should be questioned with scourging, so that he himself might know why they were shouting against him like that.25When they had tied him up with the thongs, Paul said to the centurion who was standing by, "Is it lawful for you to scourge a man who is a Roman and who has not been put on trial?"

26When the centurion heard this, he went to the chief captain and told him, saying, "What are you about to do? For this man is a Roman citizen."27The chief captain came and said to him, "Tell me, are you a Roman citizen?"

Paul said, "Yes."

28The chief captain answered, "It was only with a large amount of money that I acquired citizenship."

But Paul said, "I was born a Roman citizen."29Then the men who were going to question him left him immediately. The chief captain also was afraid, when he learned that Paul was a Roman citizen, because he had tied him up.

30On the next day, the chief captain wanted to know for certain about the Jews' accusations against Paul. So he untied his bonds and ordered the chief priests and all the council to meet. Then he brought Paul down and placed him in their midst.

#### Acts 22:1

##### Brothers and fathers

This is a polite way of addressing men who are Paul's age as well as the older men in the audience.

##### I will now make to you

"I will now explain to you" or "I will now present to you"

#### Acts 22:2

##### the Hebrew language

The Hebrew language was the language of the Jews.

#### Acts 22:3

##### but educated in this city at the feet of Gamaliel

"but I was a student of Gamaliel here in Jerusalem"

##### Gamaliel

Gamaliel was one of the most prominent teachers of the Jewish law. See how you translated this name in Acts 5:34.

##### I was instructed according to the strict ways of the law of our fathers

"He instructed me how to carefully obey every law of our forefathers" or "The instruction I received followed the exact details of the law of our forefathers"

##### law of our fathers

"law of our ancestors." This refers to the law that God gave to the people of Israel through Moses.

##### I am zealous for God

"I am completely dedicated to obeying God" or "I am passionate about my service to God"

##### just as all of you are today

"in the same way all of you are today." Paul compares himself with the crowd.

#### Acts 22:4

##### I persecuted this Way to the death

"I persecuted the people who belonged to this Way and I looked for ways to kill them"

##### this Way

This was a term used to refer to Christianity. See how you translated "the Way" in Acts 9:2.

##### binding up and delivering to prison both men and women

"tying up both men and women and taking them to prison"

#### Acts 22:5

##### I received letters from them

"The high priests and elders gave me letters"

##### for the brothers in Damascus

Here "brothers" refers to "fellow Jews."

##### to bring them back in bonds to Jerusalem

"to bind those of the Way with chains and bring them back to Jerusalem"

##### to be punished

"so that they would receive punishment" or "so that the Jewish authorities could punish them"

#### Acts 22:7

##### heard a voice say to me

"I heard someone say to me"

#### Acts 22:9

##### they did not understand the voice of him who spoke to me

"they did not understand what the one who spoke to me was saying"

#### Acts 22:10

##### There you will be told

"There someone will tell you" or "There you will learn"

#### Acts 22:11

##### I could not see because of that light's brightness

"I was left blind because of that light's brightness"

##### being led by the hands of those who were with me, I came into Damascus

"those with me guided me into Damascus"

#### Acts 22:12

##### Ananias

Though this is not the same Ananias who died earlier in Acts 5:3, you may translate it the same way that you did in Acts 5:1.

##### devout man according to the law

Ananias was very serious about following God's law.

##### law and well spoken of by all the Jews who lived there

"law. All the Jews who lived there spoke well of him"

#### Acts 22:13

##### Brother Saul

"My friend Saul"

##### receive your sight

"see again"

##### In that very hour

"At that instant" or "Instantly" or "Immediately"

#### Acts 22:14

##### his will

"what God is planning and will cause to happen"

##### to hear the voice coming from his own mouth

"to hear him speak directly to you"

#### Acts 22:15

##### to all men

"to all people"

#### Acts 22:16

##### why are you waiting?

"do not wait!" or "do not delay!"

##### be baptized

"let me baptize you" or "receive baptism"

##### wash away your sins

"ask forgiveness for your sins"

##### calling on his name

"calling on the Lord" or "trusting in the Lord"

#### Acts 22:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins to tell the crowd about his vision of Jesus.

##### a trance came on me

"I went into a trance"

#### Acts 22:18

##### I saw him say to me

"I saw Jesus as he said to me"

##### they will not accept your testimony about me

"those who live in Jerusalem will not believe what you tell them about me"

#### Acts 22:19

##### in every synagogue

Paul went to synagogues to find Jews who believed in Jesus.

#### Acts 22:20

##### the blood of Stephen your witness was spilled

"they killed Stephen, who testified about you"

#### Acts 22:22

##### until that statement

"until Paul said that"

##### Away with such a fellow from the earth

"Kill him"

#### Acts 22:23

##### As they were

"While they were." The phrase "As they were" is used to mark two events that are happening at the same time.

##### throwing off their cloaks, and throwing dust into the air

These actions show that the Jews there are outraged because they feel Paul has spoken against God.

#### Acts 22:24

##### commanded Paul to be brought

"ordered his soldiers to bring Paul"

##### the fortress

This fortress was connected to the outer temple court..

##### He ordered that he should be questioned with scourging

"He ordered his soldiers to whip Paul to force him to tell the truth"

#### Acts 22:25

##### the thongs

These were strips of leather or animal hide.

##### Is it lawful for you to scourge a man who is a Roman and who has not been put on trial?

"It is not lawful for you to whip a man who is a Roman and who was not given his legal right to a trial!"

#### Acts 22:26

##### What are you about to do?

"You should not do this!"

#### Acts 22:27

##### The chief captain came

Here "came" can be translated as "went."

#### Acts 22:28

##### It was only with a large amount of money

"It was only after I paid a lot of money to the Roman authorities." The captain makes this statement because he knows how hard it is to become a Roman citizen, and he suspects Paul is not telling truth.

##### I acquired citizenship

"I became a citizen"

##### I was born a Roman citizen

If a man was a Roman citizen, then his children become Roman citizens automatically when they were born.

#### Acts 22:29

##### the men who were going to question

"the men who planned to question" or "the men who were preparing to question"

#### Acts 22:30

##### So he untied his bonds

"So the chief captain ordered his soldiers to untie Paul's bonds"

##### he brought Paul down

There was a stairway going down from the fortress to the temple courts.

Chapter 23

1Paul looked directly at the council members and said, "Brothers, I have lived before God in all good conscience until this day."2The high priest Ananias commanded those who stood by him to strike him on the mouth.

3Then Paul said to him, "God will strike you, you whitewashed wall. Are you sitting to judge me by the law, yet order me to be struck, against the law?"

4Those who stood by said, "Is this how you insult God's high priest?"

5Paul said, "I did not know, brothers, that he was high priest. For it is written, 'You must not speak evil of a ruler of your people.'"

6When Paul saw that the one part of the council were Sadducees and the other Pharisees, he spoke loudly in the council: "Brothers, I am a Pharisee, a son of Pharisees. It is because I have the hope of the resurrection of the dead that I am being judged."7When he said this, an argument began between the Pharisees and Sadducees, and the crowd was divided.8For the Sadducees say that there is no resurrection, no angels, and no spirits, but the Pharisees acknowledge all of them.

9So a large uproar occurred, and some of the scribes belonging to the Pharisees stood up and argued, saying, "We find nothing wrong with this man. What if a spirit or an angel has spoken to him?"10When there arose a great argument, the chief captain feared that Paul would be torn to pieces by them, so he commanded the soldiers to go down and take him by force from among the council members, and bring him into the fortress.

11The following night the Lord stood beside him and said, "Have courage, for as you have testified about me in Jerusalem, so you must also testify in Rome."

12When it became day, some Jews formed a conspiracy and put themselves under an oath, saying that they would not eat or drink anything until they had killed Paul.13There were more than forty men who formed this conspiracy.14They went to the chief priests and the elders and said, "We have sworn a great oath to eat nothing until we have killed Paul.15Now, therefore, let the council formally request the chief captain to bring him down to you, as if you would decide his case more precisely. As for us, we are ready to kill him before he comes here."

16But Paul's sister's son heard that they were lying in wait, so he went and entered the fortress and told Paul.

17Paul called one of the centurions and said, "Take this young man to the chief captain, for he has something to report to him."

18So the centurion took the young man and brought him to the chief captain and said, "Paul the prisoner called me to him, and asked me to bring this young man to you. He has something to say to you."

19The chief captain took him by the hand to a private place and asked him, "What is it that you have to report to me?"

20The young man said, "The Jews have agreed to ask you to bring down Paul tomorrow to the council, as if they were going to ask more precisely about his case.21But do not be persuaded by them, because there are more than forty men who are lying in wait for him. They have put themselves under oath neither to eat nor to drink until they have killed him. Even now they are ready, waiting for your approval."

22So the chief captain let the young man go, after instructing him, "Tell no one that you have reported these things to me."

23Then he called to him two of the centurions and said, "Get two hundred soldiers ready to go as far as Caesarea, and seventy horsemen also, and two hundred spearmen. You will leave at the third hour of the night."24He also ordered them to provide animals which Paul could ride and to take him safely to Felix the governor.

25Then he wrote a letter like this:26"Claudius Lysias,27This man was arrested by the Jews and was about to be killed by them when I came upon them with soldiers and rescued him, since I learned that he was a Roman citizen.28I wanted to know why they accused him, so I took him down to their council.29I learned that he was being accused about questions concerning their own law, but that there was no accusation against him that deserved death or imprisonment.30Then it was reported to me that there was a plot against the man, so I immediately sent him to you and instructed his accusers also to bring their charges against him in your presence.

31So the soldiers obeyed their orders. They took Paul and brought him by night to Antipatris.32On the next day, most of the soldiers left the horsemen to go with him and they themselves returned to the fortress.33When the horsemen reached Caesarea and delivered the letter to the governor, they also presented Paul to him.34When the governor read the letter, he asked what province Paul was from. When he learned that he was from Cilicia,35he said, "I will hear you fully when your accusers come here." Then he commanded him to be kept in Herod's government headquarters.

#### Acts 23:1

##### Brothers

Here this means "Fellow Jews."

##### I have lived before God in all good conscience until this day

"I know that even to this day I have done what God has wanted me to do"

#### Acts 23:2

##### Ananias

This is the name of a man.

#### Acts 23:3

##### whitewashed wall

"white-painted wall" or "wall painted white"

##### Are you sitting to judge ... against the law?

"You are wrong to sit there to judge ... against the law."

##### order me to be struck

"command people to strike me"

#### Acts 23:4

##### Is this how you insult God's high priest?

"Do not insult God's high priest!"

#### Acts 23:5

##### For it is written

"For Moses wrote in the law"

#### Acts 23:6

##### a son of Pharisees

"and my father and forefathers were Pharisees"

##### I have the hope of the resurrection of the dead

"I confidently expect the resurrection of the dead" or "I trust that the dead will become alive again"

##### the dead

The phrase "the dead" can be expressed as "those who have died."

##### I am being judged

"you are judging me"

#### Acts 23:7

##### the crowd was divided

"the people in the crowd strongly disagreed with one another"

#### Acts 23:8

##### For the Sadducees ... but the Pharisees

This is background information about the Sadducees and Pharisees.

#### Acts 23:9

##### So a large uproar occurred

"So they began shouting loudly at one another." The word "so" marks an event that happened because of something else that happened previously. In this case, the previous event is Paul's stating his belief in the resurrection.

##### What if a spirit or an angel has spoken to him?

"Maybe a spirit or an angel has spoken with him!"

#### Acts 23:10

##### When there arose a great argument

"When they began to argue violently"

##### chief captain

This is a Roman military leader of about 1,000 soldiers. See how you translated this in Acts 21:31.

##### Paul would be torn to pieces by them

"they might tear Paul to pieces" or "they would cause Paul great physical harm"

##### take him by force

"use physical force to take him away"

##### into the fortress

This fortress was connected to the outer temple court.

#### Acts 23:11

##### The following night

"That night"

##### testify in Rome

"testify about me in Rome"

#### Acts 23:12

##### formed a conspiracy

"organized a group with a shared purpose." The purpose for organizing this group was to kill Paul.

##### put themselves under an oath

"asked God to curse them if they did not do what they promised"

#### Acts 23:13

##### who formed this conspiracy

"who made this plan" or "who planned to kill Paul"

#### Acts 23:14

##### We have sworn a great oath to eat nothing until we have killed Paul

"We have sworn to eat nothing until we have killed Paul. We asked God to curse us if we do not do what we promised to do"

#### Acts 23:15

##### Now, therefore

"Because what we have just said is true" or "Because we have put ourselves under this curse"

##### bring him down to you

"bring Paul from the fortress to meet with you"

##### as if you would decide his case more precisely

"as though you want to learn more about what Paul has done"

#### Acts 23:16

##### Paul's sister's son

"the son of Paul's sister" or "Paul's nephew"

##### they were lying in wait

"they were ready to ambush Paul" or "they were waiting to kill Paul"

#### Acts 23:18

##### Paul the prisoner called me to him

"Paul the prisoner asked me to come talk with him"

##### this young man

Since the chief captain calls him a young man, this suggests Paul's nephew may have been 12 to 15 years old.

#### Acts 23:20

##### The Jews have agreed

"Some of the Jews have agreed"

##### to bring down Paul

"to bring Paul down from the fortress"

##### they were going to ask more precisely about his case

"they wanted to learn more about what Paul has done"

#### Acts 23:21

##### lying in wait for him

"ready to ambush Paul" or "ready to kill Paul"

##### They have put themselves under oath neither to eat nor to drink until they have killed him

"They have sworn to eat and drink nothing until they have killed Paul. And they asked God to curse them if they do not do what they promised to do"

##### for your approval

"for you to agree to do what they have asked you to do"

#### Acts 23:23

##### he called to him

"he called to himself." Both "he" and "him" refer to the chief captain.

##### third hour of the night

This was about 9:00 p.m. at night.

#### Acts 23:24

##### Felix the governor

Felix, who resided at Caesarea, was the roman governor of the area.

#### Acts 23:26

##### Claudius Lysias to the most excellent Governor Felix, greetings

"I, Claudius Lysias, am writing to you, the most excellent Governor Felix, and I greet you"

##### to the most excellent Governor Felix

"to Governor Felix, you who deserve the greatest honors"

#### Acts 23:27

##### This man was arrested by the Jews

"Some of the Jews arrested this man"

##### was about to be killed by them

"they were ready to kill him"

##### I came upon them with soldiers

"I with my soldiers arrived at the place where Paul and these Jews were"

#### Acts 23:28

##### General Information:

Here the word "I" refers to Claudius Lysias, the chief captain. The word "they" refers to the Jews who accused Paul. The word "him" refers to Paul.

#### Acts 23:29

##### that he was being accused about questions concerning

"that they were accusing him of questions about"

##### but that there was no accusation against him that deserved death or imprisonment

"but nobody accused him of anything that should cause Roman authorities to kill him or to send him to prison"

#### Acts 23:30

##### Then it was reported to me

"Then someone told me" or "Then I learned"

##### sent him to you

Here "you" refers to Governor Felix.

#### Acts 23:31

##### So the soldiers obeyed their orders

The word "so" marks an event that happened because of something else that happened previously. In this case, the previous event is the chief captain's commanding the soldiers to escort Paul.

##### They took Paul and brought him by night

"They got Paul and took him at night"

##### Antipatris

Antipatris was a city built by Herod in honor of his father, Antipater. It stood at a site located today in central Israel.

#### Acts 23:32

##### to go with him

Here "him" refers to Paul.

#### Acts 23:34

##### he asked what province Paul was from. When he learned that he was from Cilicia

"he asked Paul, 'What province are you from?' Paul said, 'I am from Cilicia.' When the governor learned this"

##### When he learned that he

"When the governor learned that Paul"

#### Acts 23:35

##### he said

"the governor said"

##### I will hear you fully

"I will listen to all you have to say"

##### he commanded him to be kept

"he commanded soldiers to keep him" or "commanded soldiers to restrain him"

Chapter 24

1After five days, Ananias the high priest, certain elders, and an orator named Tertullus went there. These men brought charges against Paul before the governor.2When Paul stood before the governor, Tertullus began to accuse him and said to the governor, "Because of you we have great peace, and your foresight brings good reform to our nation;3so with all thankfulness we welcome everything that you do, most excellent Felix.4So that I detain you no more, I beg you in your kindness to hear us briefly.5For we have found this man to be a pest and one who causes all the Jews throughout the world to rebel. He is a leader of the Nazarene sect.6He even tried to desecrate the temple, so we arrested him. [1](#footnote-target-1)7[2](#footnote-target-2)8When you examine Paul about all these matters, you will be able to learn about all the things of which we are accusing him."9The Jews also joined in the accusation, affirming that these charges were true.

10But when the governor motioned for Paul to speak, Paul answered, "I understand that for many years you have been a judge to this nation, and so I gladly explain myself to you.

11You can learn for yourself that it has not been more than twelve days since I went up to worship in Jerusalem.12When they found me in the temple, I did not argue with anyone, and I did not stir up a crowd, either in the synagogues, or in the city.13They cannot prove to you the accusations they are now making against me.14But I confess this to you, that according to the Way, which they call a sect, I serve the God of our fathers, believing all things that are according to the law and that has been written in the prophets.15I have a hope in God, which these men also have, that there will be a resurrection of both the righteous and the wicked.16So I always strive to have a blameless conscience before God and human beings.17Now after many years I came to give alms to my nation and present sacrifices.18When I did this, certain Jews from Asia found me in a purification ceremony in the temple, not with a crowd or an uproar.19These men ought to be before you now and accuse me, if they have anything.20Or else, these same men should say what wrong they found in me when I stood before the Jewish council,21unless it is about this one thing that I shouted out when I stood among them, 'It is concerning the resurrection of the dead that I am on trial before you today.'"

22Then Felix, who was well informed about the Way, postponed the hearing. He said, "When Lysias the commander comes down from Jerusalem, I will decide your case."23Then he commanded the centurion that Paul should be kept in custody, but to have some freedom so that none of his friends would be prevented from attending to his needs.

24After some days, Felix returned with Drusilla his wife, who was Jewish, and he sent for Paul and he heard from him about faith in Christ Jesus.25But when Paul reasoned with him about righteousness, self-control, and the coming judgment, Felix became frightened and said, "Go away for now. But when I have time later on, I will send for you."26At the same time he hoped that Paul would give money to him, so he often sent for him and spoke with him.27But when two years passed, Porcius Festus became the governor after Felix, but Felix wanted to gain favor with the Jews, so he left Paul bound.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient copies add, We wanted to judge him according to our law . [2](#footnote-caller-2)Some ancient copies have for verse 7 and the beginning of verse 8, 7 But Lysias, the officer, came and took him by force out of our hands, 8 commanding his accusers to come to you .

#### Acts 24:1

##### After five days

"Five days after the Roman soldiers took Paul to Caesarea"

##### an orator

"a lawyer." Tertullus was an expert in Roman law who was there to accuse Paul in court.

##### went there

"went to Caesarea where Paul was"

##### before the governor

"in the presence of the governor, who was judge in the court"

##### brought charges against Paul

"began to argue the case before the governor that Paul had broken the law."

#### Acts 24:2

##### Because of you

Here the word "you" refers to Felix, the governor.

##### we have great peace

"we, the people that you govern, have great peace"

##### and your foresight brings good reform to our nation

"and your planning has greatly improved our nation"

#### Acts 24:3

##### so with all thankfulness we welcome everything that you do

"so we are very thankful and we welcome everything that you do" or "so we thank you very much and welcome everything that you do"

##### most excellent Felix

"Governor Felix, who deserves greatest honor." Felix was the roman governor over the whole region.

#### Acts 24:4

##### So that I detain you no more

Possible meanings are 1) "so that I will not take up too much of your time" or 2) "so that I will not tire you"

##### in your kindness to hear us briefly

"to be kind and listen to the short speech I am giving to state these men's case"

#### Acts 24:5

##### this man to be a pest

"this man to be a trouble maker"

##### all the Jews throughout the world

The word "all" here is probably an exaggeration used to strengthen their accusation against Paul.

##### He is a leader of the Nazarene sect

"He also leads the entire group whom people call the followers of the Nazarene"

##### sect

This is a smaller group of people within a larger group group. Tertullus considers the Christians to be a small group within Judaism.

#### Acts 24:8

##### to learn about all the things of which we are accusing him

"to learn whether or not these charges that we bring against him are true" or "to learn whether or not he is guilty of the things we accuse him of"

#### Acts 24:9

##### The Jews

This refers to the Jewish leaders who were there at Paul's trial.

#### Acts 24:10

##### the governor motioned

"the governor gestured"

##### a judge to this nation

"a judge for the people of the Jewish nation"

##### explain myself

"explain my situation"

#### Acts 24:12

##### I did not stir up a crowd

"I did not cause a crowd to riot"

#### Acts 24:13

##### the accusations

"the blames for wrongdoings" or "the charges for crimes"

#### Acts 24:14

##### I confess this to you

"I acknowledge this to you"

##### that according to the Way

The phrase "the Way" was a title used for Christianity during Paul's time.

##### the law

Paul is referring to the law of Moses.

#### Acts 24:15

##### I have a hope in God, which these men also have, that there will be a resurrection

"Just as these men, I trust in God that there will be a resurrection"

##### these men

the Jews who are accusing Paul in court

##### that there will be a resurrection of both the righteous and the wicked

"that God will resurrect all who have died, both the righteous and the unrighteous"

##### the righteous and the wicked

"righteous people and wicked people" or "those who have done what is right and those who have done what is evil"

#### Acts 24:16

##### I always strive

"I always work hard" or "I do my best"

##### to have a blameless conscience

"to be blameless" or "to always do what is right"

##### before God

"in the presence of God"

#### Acts 24:17

##### Now

This word marks a shift in Paul's argument. Here he explains the situation in Jerusalem when some of the Jews arrested him.

##### after many years

"after many years away from Jerusalem"

##### I came to give alms to my nation and present sacrifices

"I went to help my people by bringing them money as a gift; I also went to present sacrifices"

#### Acts 24:18

##### in a purification ceremony in the temple

"in the temple after I had finished a ceremony to purify myself"

##### in the temple, not with a crowd or an uproar

"in the temple. I had not gathered a crowd nor was I trying to start a riot"

#### Acts 24:19

##### These men

"The Jews from Asia"

##### if they have anything

"if they have anything to say"

#### Acts 24:20

##### these same men

This refers to the members of the council who were present in Jerusalem at Paul's trial.

##### should say what wrong they found in me

"should say the wrong thing I did that they were able to prove"

#### Acts 24:21

##### It is concerning the resurrection of the dead

"It is because I believe that God will bring back to life those who have died"

##### I am on trial before you today

"you are judging me today"

#### Acts 24:22

##### When Lysias the commander comes down

"when Lysias the commander comes down" or "at the time Lysias the commander comes down"

##### Lysias

This is the name of the chief captain. See how you translated this name in Acts 23:26.

##### I will decide your case

"I will make a decision concerning these accusations against you" or "I will judge whether you are guilty"

#### Acts 24:23

##### to have some freedom

"to have some freedom not otherwise granted to prisoners"

#### Acts 24:24

##### After some days

"After several days"

##### Drusilla his wife

Drusilla is a woman's name.

#### Acts 24:25

##### Felix became frightened

Felix may have felt conviction of his sins.

##### for now

"for the present time"

#### Acts 24:26

##### so he often sent for him and spoke with him

"so Felix often sent for Paul and spoke with Paul"

#### Acts 24:27

##### Porcius Festus

This was the Roman Governor who replaced Felix.

##### wanted to gain favor with the Jews

"wanted the Jewish leaders to like him"

##### he left Paul bound

"he left Paul in prison"

Chapter 25

1Now, Festus entered the province, and after three days, he went from Caesarea up to Jerusalem.2The chief priests and the prominent Jews brought their charges against Paul, and they asked Festus earnestly—3asking him to do them a favor against Paul—to summon him to Jerusalem, for they were preparing an ambush to kill him along the way.4Festus answered that Paul was being held in custody at Caesarea, and that he himself was going there soon.5"Therefore, those who can," he said, "should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him."

6Festus stayed not more than eight or ten days and then he went down to Caesarea, and on the next day he sat on the judgment seat and commanded Paul to be brought to him.7When he arrived, the Jews from Jerusalem stood nearby, and they brought many serious charges which they could not prove.

8Paul defended himself and said, "I have committed no sin against the law of the Jews or against the temple or against Caesar."

9But Festus wanted to gain the favor of the Jews, and so he answered Paul and said, "Do you want to go up to Jerusalem and to be judged by me about these things there?"10Paul said, "I stand before the judgment seat of Caesar where I must be judged. I have wronged no Jews, just as you also very well know.11Though if I have done wrong and if I have done what is worthy of death, I do not refuse to die. But if their accusations are nothing, no one can hand me over to them. I appeal to Caesar."12After Festus talked with the council, he answered, "You have appealed to Caesar. To Caesar you will go!"

13Now after some days, King Agrippa and Bernice arrived at Caesarea to pay an official visit to Festus.14After they had been there for many days, Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner.15When I was in Jerusalem, the chief priests and the elders of the Jews brought charges against this man to me, and they asked for a sentence of condemnation against him.16I answered them that it was not the custom of the Romans to hand over anyone before the accused had faced his accusers and received an opportunity to defend himself against the charges.17Therefore, when they came together here, I did not wait, but the next day I sat in the judgment seat and I ordered the man to be brought in.18When the accusers stood up, they charged him with nothing that I considered wickedness.19Instead, they had certain disputes with him about their own religion and about a certain Jesus who was dead, whom Paul claims to be alive.20I was perplexed about how to investigate this matter, and so I asked him if he would be willing to go to Jerusalem to stand trial there about these charges.21But when Paul appealed to be kept in custody while awaiting the decision of the emperor, I ordered him to be held in custody until I could send him to Caesar."22Agrippa spoke to Festus: "I would also like to listen to this man." "Tomorrow," Festus said, "you will hear him."

23So on the next day, Agrippa and Bernice came with much ceremony; they came into the hall with the military officers and with the prominent men of the city. When Festus spoke the command, Paul was brought to them.24Festus said, "King Agrippa, and all you men who are here with us, you see this man; all the multitude of Jews appealed to me in Jerusalem and here also, and they shouted to me that he should no longer live.25I found he had done nothing worthy of death; but because he appealed to the emperor, I decided to send him to Rome.26But I do not have anything certain to write to my lord. For this reason, I have brought him to you, especially to you, King Agrippa, so that I might have something more to write about the case.27For it seems unreasonable for me to send a prisoner and to not also state the charges against him."

#### Acts 25:1

##### Festus entered the province

Possible meanings are 1) Festus arrived in the area to begin his rule or 2) Festus simply arrived in the area.

#### Acts 25:2

##### The chief priests and the prominent Jews brought their charges against Paul

"The chief priests and the important Jews accused Paul to Festus"

#### Acts 25:3

##### to summon him to Jerusalem

Some versions translate this as "to have him summoned to Jerusalem." The word "him" refers to Paul. The Jews wanted Festus to have his soldiers take Paul to Jerusalem.

##### for they were preparing an ambush to kill him along the way

They were going to hide along the road and kill Paul as he was passing by, but Festus was not aware of this part of their plan.

#### Acts 25:4

##### Festus answered that Paul was being held in custody at Caesarea, and that he himself was going there soon.

"But Festus said, 'Paul is being held in custody in Caesarea, and I myself will soon return there.'"

#### Acts 25:5

##### "Therefore, those who can," he said, "should go there with us

"Then he said, 'Therefore, those who are able to go to Caesarea should go there with us"

##### If there is something wrong with the man

"If Paul has done something wrong"

##### you should accuse him

"you should accuse him of violating laws" or "you should bring charges against him"

#### Acts 25:6

##### sat on the judgment seat

"sat upon the seat where he acted as judge" or "sat down as judge"

##### Paul to be brought to him

"his soldiers bring Paul to him"

#### Acts 25:7

##### When he arrived

"When Paul came and stood before Festus"

##### they brought many serious charges

"they spoke against Paul many serious things"

#### Acts 25:8

##### against the temple

"against the entry rules of the temple"

#### Acts 25:9

##### wanted to gain the favor of the Jews

"wanted to please the Jewish leaders"

##### and to be judged by me about these things there

"where I will judge you with regard to these charges"

#### Acts 25:10

##### I stand before the judgment seat of Caesar where I must be judged

"I ask to go before Caesar, so he can judge me"

#### Acts 25:11

##### Though if I have done wrong ... I do not refuse to die

Paul does not believe that he has done wrong, but he shows that he will submit to the law and will not refuse to be punished if he really has done wrong.

##### if I have done what is worthy of death

"if I have done some wrong that deserves the death penalty"

##### if their accusations are nothing

"if the charges against me are not true"

##### no one can hand me over to them

Possible meanings are 1) Festus does not have the legal authority to hand Paul over to these false accusers or 2) the governor should not give in to the request of the Jews.

##### I appeal to Caesar

"I ask to go before Caesar so he can judge me"

#### Acts 25:12

##### with the council

"with his own government advisors"

#### Acts 25:13

##### Now

This word marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

##### to pay an official visit to Festus

"to visit Festus concerning official matters"

#### Acts 25:14

##### After they

"After King Agrippa and Bernice"

##### A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner

"When Felix left office, he left a man in prison here"

#### Acts 25:15

##### brought charges against this man to me

"spoke to me against this man"

##### they asked for a sentence of condemnation against him

"they asked me to sentence him to death" or "they asked me to condemn him to death"

#### Acts 25:16

##### to hand over anyone

"let someone punish anyone" or "to condemn anyone to death"

##### before the accused had faced his accusers

"before the person whom others have accused of a crime had met directly with those who accused him"

#### Acts 25:17

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true." Festus has just said that an accused man should be able to face his accusers and make his defense.

##### when they came together here

"when the Jewish leaders came to meet with me here"

##### I ordered the man to be brought in

"I ordered the soldiers to bring Paul before me"

#### Acts 25:19

##### their own religion

Here "religion" means the belief system people have toward life and the supernatural.

#### Acts 25:20

##### to stand trial there about these charges

"to go to trial about these charges" or "for a judge to decide if these charges against him are true or not"

#### Acts 25:21

##### But when Paul appealed to be kept in custody while awaiting the decision of the emperor

"But when Paul insisted that he stay under Roman guard until the time when the emperor could decide his case"

##### I ordered him to be held in custody

"I ordered the soldiers to keep him in custody" or "I told the soldiers to guard him"

#### Acts 25:22

##### "Tomorrow," Festus said, "you will hear him."

"Festus said, 'I will arrange for you to listen to Paul tomorrow.'"

#### Acts 25:23

##### with much ceremony

"with a great ceremony to honor them"

##### the hall

This was a large room where people gathered for ceremonies, trials, and other events.

##### Paul was brought to them

"the soldiers brought Paul to appear before them"

#### Acts 25:24

##### all the multitude of Jews

"a great number of the Jews" or "many of the Jewish leaders"

##### they shouted to me

"they spoke very strongly to me"

##### he should no longer live

"he should die immediately"

#### Acts 25:25

##### because he appealed to the emperor

"because he said that he wanted the emperor to judge him"

##### the emperor

The emperor was the ruler of the Roman empire. He ruled over many countries and provinces.

#### Acts 25:26

##### to write to my lord

"to write to the emperor"

##### I have brought him to you, especially to you, King Agrippa

"I have brought Paul to all of you, but especially to you, King Agrippa"

##### so that I might have something more to write

"so that I will have something else to write" or "so that I will know what I should write"

#### Acts 25:27

##### it seems unreasonable for me to send a prisoner and to not also state

"it seems reasonable to me to send a prisoner and to also state"

##### the charges against him

Possible meanings are 1) the accusations that the Jewish leaders have brought against him or 2) the charges under Roman law that apply to Paul's case.

Chapter 26

1So Agrippa said to Paul, "You may speak for yourself." Then Paul stretched out his hand and made his defense.

2"I consider myself happy, King Agrippa, to make my case before you today against all the accusations of the Jews,3especially because you are an expert in all the Jewish customs and questions. So I beg you to hear me patiently.4Truly, all the Jews know how I lived from my youth in my own nation and at Jerusalem.5They have known about me from the beginning, if they are willing to admit it, that I lived as a Pharisee, the strictest party of our religion.6Now I stand here to be judged because of my hope in the promise made by God to our fathers.7It is this promise that our twelve tribes hope to receive as they worship God earnestly night and day, and it is for this hope, king, that the Jews are accusing me.8Why should any of you judge it to be incredible that God raises the dead?9Now indeed, I myself thought that I should do many things against the name of Jesus of Nazareth.10I did these in Jerusalem. I locked up in prison many of God's holy people by the authority I received from the chief priests; and when they were killed, I cast my vote against them.11I punished them many times in all the synagogues, and I tried to force them to blaspheme. I was furiously enraged against them, and I persecuted them even to foreign cities.12While I was doing this, I went to Damascus with authority and orders from the chief priests;13and on the way there, in the middle of the day, king, I saw a light from heaven that was brighter than the sun, and it shone around both me and the men who were traveling with me.14When we all fell to the ground, I heard a voice speaking to me that said in the Hebrew language, 'Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.'15Then I said, 'Who are you, Lord?' The Lord replied, 'I am Jesus whom you persecute.16Now get up and stand on your feet; because for this purpose I appeared to you, to appoint you to be a servant and a witness concerning the things that you know about me now and the things that I will show to you later;17and I will rescue you from the people and from the Gentiles to whom I am sending you,18to open their eyes and to turn them from darkness to light and from the dominion of Satan to God, so that they may receive from God the forgiveness of sins and the inheritance that I give to them who are sanctified by faith in me.'19Therefore, King Agrippa, I did not disobey the heavenly vision;20but, to those in Damascus first, and then at Jerusalem, and throughout all the country of Judea, and also to the Gentiles, I gave them the message that that they should repent and turn to God, doing deeds worthy of repentance.21For this cause the Jews arrested me in the temple and tried to kill me.22Therefore I have received the help that comes from God until this very day, and I stand and testify to both small and great about nothing more than what the prophets and Moses said would happen—23that Christ must suffer, and by being the first to rise from the dead he would proclaim light to our own people and to the Gentiles."

24As Paul completed his defense, Festus said with a loud voice, "Paul, you are insane; your great learning makes you insane."25But Paul said, "I am not insane, most excellent Festus, but I am declaring words of truth and sound judgment.26For the king knows about these things; and so I speak boldly to him, for I am persuaded that none of this is hidden from him; for this has not been done in a corner.27Do you believe the prophets, King Agrippa? I know that you believe."28Agrippa said to Paul, "In a short time would you persuade me and make me a Christian?"

29Paul said, "I pray to God, that whether in a short or long time, not you only, but also all that hear me today, would be like me, but without these prison chains."

30Then the king stood up, and the governor, and Bernice also, and those who were sitting with them;31when they left the hall, they talked to one another and said, "This man does nothing worthy of death or of bonds."

32Agrippa said to Festus, "This man could have been freed if he had not appealed to Caesar."

#### Acts 26:1

##### Agrippa

Agrippa was the current reigning king in Palestine, though he ruled over only a few territories.

##### stretched out his hand

"held out his hand" or "gestured with his hand"

##### made his defense

"began to defend himself against those who were accusing him"

#### Acts 26:2

##### I consider myself happy

Paul was happy because he considered his appearance before Agrippa to be an opportunity to speak about the gospel.

##### to make my case

"to defend myself"

##### against all the accusations of the Jews

"against all the Jews who are accusing me"

##### the Jews

"the Jewish leaders"

#### Acts 26:3

##### questions

"questions about religious matters"

#### Acts 26:4

##### all the Jews

Possible meanings are 1) Jews in general who knew about Paul. Alternate translation: "the Jews" or 2) Pharisees who knew Paul. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders"

##### in my own nation

Possible meanings are 1) among his own people, not necessarily in the geographical land of Israel or 2) in the land of Israel.

#### Acts 26:5

##### the strictest party of our religion

"a group within Judaism that lives by very strict rules"

#### Acts 26:6

##### I stand here to be judged

"I am here, where they are putting me on trial"

##### because of my hope in the promise made by God to our fathers

"because of my hope that God will do what he promised our forefathers he would do" or "because I confidently wait for God to do what he promised our forefather he would do"

#### Acts 26:7

##### this promise that our twelve tribes hope to receive

"the promise that our twelve tribes confidently wait for God to fulfill"

##### worship God earnestly night and day

"continually worship God earnestly"

##### king

Paul is addressing King Agrippa by his title, not by his name. Your language may require that you add the king's name, as in "King Agrippa," or that you use another expression such as "Your Majesty."

##### that the Jews

"that the leaders of the Jews"

#### Acts 26:8

##### Why should any of you judge it to be incredible that God raises the dead?

"You should not judge it to be unbelievable that God raises the dead" Or "You should not say that it is impossible to believe that God raises the dead."

##### raises the dead

"makes dead people come alive again"

#### Acts 26:9

##### Now indeed

Paul uses this phrase to mark another shift in his defense. He is now beginning to describe how he formerly persecuted Jesus's people.

##### against the name of Jesus

"to stop people from teaching about Jesus"

#### Acts 26:10

##### when they were killed, I cast my vote against them

"I voted in agreement with the other Jewish leaders to condemn believers to die"

#### Acts 26:11

##### I punished them many times

Possible meanings are 1) Paul punished some believers many times or 2) Paul punished many different believers.

#### Acts 26:12

##### While I was doing this

Paul uses this phrase to mark another shift in his defense. He is now telling about when he saw Jesus and became his disciple.

##### While

This word is used to mark two events that are happening at the same time. In this case, Paul went to Damascus during the time when he persecuted Christians.

##### with authority and orders

Paul had letters from the Jewish leaders granting him authority to persecute the Jewish believers.

#### Acts 26:14

##### I heard a voice speaking to me that said

"I heard someone speaking to me who said"

##### Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me?

"Saul, Saul, you are persecuting me." or "Saul, Saul, stop persecuting me."

##### It is hard for you to kick a goad

"You will only harm yourself like an ox kicking a goad"

#### Acts 26:18

##### to open their eyes

"to make them able to understand the truth"

##### to turn them from darkness to light and from the dominion of Satan to God

"to help them stop doing what is evil, stop obeying Satan, and start trusting and obeying God"

##### they may receive from God the forgiveness of sins

"God may forgive their sins and they may receive"

##### the inheritance that I give

"they may inherit that which I give"

##### the inheritance

The blessings that Jesus gives to those who believe in him are spoken of as if they were an inheritance that children receive from their father.

##### sanctified by faith in me

Jesus choosing some people to belong to him is spoken of as if he literally set them apart from other people.

##### by faith in me

"because they believe in me." Here Paul finishes quoting the Lord.

#### Acts 26:19

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true." Paul had just explained what the Lord had commanded him in his vision.

##### I did not disobey

"I obeyed"

##### the heavenly vision

"what the person from heaven told me in the vision"

#### Acts 26:20

##### turn to God

"trust in God"

##### doing deeds worthy of repentance

"and start doing good deeds to show they truly have repented"

#### Acts 26:21

##### the Jews

"some Jews"

#### Acts 26:22

##### to both small and great about nothing

"to all people, whether unimportant or important, about nothing"

##### about nothing more than what

"about the exact thing that"

##### what the prophets

Paul is referring to the collective writings of the Old Testament prophets.

#### Acts 26:23

##### that Christ must suffer

"that Christ must suffer and die"

##### from the dead

The phrase "the dead" refers to the spirits of people who have died. To rise from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

##### he would proclaim light

"he would proclaim the message about how God saves people"

#### Acts 26:24

##### your great learning makes you insane

"you have learned so much that you are now crazy"

#### Acts 26:25

##### I am not insane ... but

"I am sane ... and" or "I am able to think well ... and"

##### most excellent Festus

"Festus, who deserves highest honors"

#### Acts 26:26

##### For the king ... to him ... from him

Paul is still speaking to King Agrippa, but he is referring to him in the third person. Alternate translation: "For you ... to you ... from you"

##### I am persuaded

"I am sure"

##### that none of this is hidden from him

"that he is aware of this" or "that you are aware of this"

##### has not been done in a corner

"has not happened in a dark place" or "in secret"

#### Acts 26:27

##### Do you believe the prophets, King Agrippa?

"You already believe what the Jewish prophets said, King Agrippa."

#### Acts 26:28

##### In a short time would you persuade me and make me a Christian?

"Surely you do not think you can convince me so easily to believe in Jesus!"

#### Acts 26:29

##### but without these prison chains

"but, of course, I do not want you to be a prisoner, as I am"

#### Acts 26:30

##### Then the king stood up, and the governor

"Then King Agrippa stood up, and Governor Festus"

#### Acts 26:31

##### the hall

This was a large room for ceremonies, trials, and other events.

##### This man does nothing worthy of death or of bonds

"This man does not deserve to die or to be in prison"

#### Acts 26:32

##### This man could have been freed

"This man could have gone free" or "I could have freed this man"

Chapter 27

1When it was decided that we should sail for Italy, they committed Paul and some other prisoners to a centurion named Julius, who belonged to the Augustan company of soldiers.2We boarded a ship from Adramyttium which was about to sail along the coast of Asia. So we went to sea. Aristarchus from Thessalonica in Macedonia went with us.3The next day we landed at the city of Sidon, where Julius treated Paul kindly and allowed him to go to his friends to receive their care.4From there we went to sea and sailed under the lee of Cyprus, close to the island, because the winds were against us.5When we had sailed across the sea past Cilicia and Pamphylia, we landed at Myra, a city of Lycia.6There, the centurion found a ship from Alexandria that was going to sail to Italy. He put us on it.7When we had sailed slowly for many days and had finally arrived with difficulty near Cnidus and the wind no longer allowed us to go that way, we sailed along the sheltered side of Crete, opposite Salmone.8We sailed along the coast with difficulty, until we came to a certain place called Fair Havens, which is near the city of Lasea.

9We had now taken much time, the time of the Jewish fast also had passed, and it had now become dangerous to sail. So Paul warned them,10and said, "Men, I see that the voyage we are about to take will be with injury and much loss, not only of the cargo and the ship, but also of our lives."11But the centurion was more persuaded by the master and by the owner of the ship than by those things that were spoken by Paul.12Because the harbor was not easy to spend the winter in, most of the sailors advised to sail from there, and if by any means we could reach the city of Phoenix, to spend the winter there. Phoenix is a harbor in Crete, facing both southwest and northwest.13When a south wind began to blow gently, the sailors thought that they had what they needed. So they weighed anchor and sailed along Crete, close to the shore.14But after a short time a wind of hurricane force, called the northeaster, began to beat down from the island.15When the ship was caught by the storm and could no longer head into the wind, we had to give way to the storm and were driven along by the wind.16We sailed along the lee of a small island called Cauda, and with difficulty we were able to secure the lifeboat.17When they had hoisted the lifeboat up, they used its ropes to bind the hull of the ship. They were afraid that they should run upon the sandbars of Syrtis, so they lowered the sea anchor and were driven along.18We took such a violent battering by the storm that the next day they began throwing the cargo overboard.19On the third day the sailors threw overboard the ship's equipment with their own hands.20When the sun and stars did not shine on us for many days, and the great storm still beat upon us, any more hope that we should be saved was abandoned.21When they had gone long without food, then Paul stood up among the sailors and said, "Men, you should have listened to me, and not have set sail from Crete, so as to get this injury and loss.22Now I urge you to take courage, for there will be no loss of life among you, but only the loss of the ship.23For last night an angel of the God to whom I belong, whom also I worship—his angel stood beside me24and said, 'Do not be afraid, Paul. You must stand before Caesar, and see, God in his kindness has given to you all those who are sailing with you.'25Therefore have courage, men! For I trust God that it will happen just as it was told to me.26But we must run aground upon some island."

27When the fourteenth night had come, as we were driven this way and that in the Adriatic Sea, about midnight the sailors thought that they were approaching some land.28They took soundings and found twenty fathoms; after a little while, they took more soundings and found fifteen fathoms.29They were afraid that we might crash on the rocks, so they lowered four anchors from the stern and prayed that morning would come soon.30The sailors were looking for a way to abandon the ship and had lowered the lifeboat into the sea, and pretended that they would throw down the anchors from the bow.31But Paul said to the centurion and to the soldiers, "Unless these men stay in the ship, you cannot be saved."32Then the soldiers cut away the ropes of the boat and let it drift away.33When daylight was coming on, Paul encouraged them all to take some food. He said, "This day is the fourteenth day that you have been on constant guard and have gone without food—you have not eaten anything.34So I urge you to share some food, for this is necessary for you to survive. For not one of you will lose a single hair from his head." 35When he had said this, he took bread and he thanked God in the sight of everyone. Then he broke the bread and began to eat.36Then they were all encouraged and they also took food.37We were 276 souls on the ship.38When they had eaten enough, they made the ship lighter by throwing out the wheat into the sea.39When it was day, they did not recognize the land, but they saw a bay with a beach, and they discussed whether they could drive the ship onto it.40So they cut loose the anchors and left them in the sea. At the same time they loosed the ropes of the rudders and raised the foresail to the wind; and so they headed to the beach.41But the ship struck a sandbar and ran aground. The bow was stuck there and remained unmovable, and the stern was broken up by the force of the waves.42The soldiers' plan was to kill the prisoners so that none of them could swim away and escape.43But the centurion wanted to save Paul, so he stopped their plan; and he ordered those who could swim to jump overboard first and get to land.44Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. In this way it happened that all of us were brought safely to land.

#### Acts 27:1

##### When it was decided

"When the king and the governor decided"

##### sail for Italy

Italy is the name of the province Rome was in. See how you translated "Italy" in Acts 18:2.

##### they committed Paul and some other prisoners to a centurion named Julius, who belonged to the Augustan company of soldiers.

"they put a centurion named Julius, of the Imperial Regiment, in charge of Paul and some other prisoners"

##### they committed

Possible meanings are that 1) "they" refers to the governor and the king or 2) "they" refers to other Roman officials.

##### a centurion named Julius

Julius is a man's name.

##### the Augustan company of soldiers

Some versions translate the word Augustan as "Imperial" or "emperor's."

#### Acts 27:2

##### a ship from Adramyttium

Possible meanings are 1) a ship that had come from Adramyttium or 2) a ship that was registered or licensed in Adramyttium.

##### about to sail

"soon going to sail" or "would depart soon"

##### went to sea

"began our journey on the sea"

##### Aristarchus

Aristarchus came from Macedonia but had been working with Paul in Ephesus. See how you translated his name in Acts 19:29.

#### Acts 27:3

##### Julius treated Paul kindly

"Julius treated Paul with a friendly concern."

##### go to his friends to receive their care

"go to his friends so they could care for him" or "go to his friends so they could help him with whatever he needed"

#### Acts 27:4

##### sailed under the lee of Cyprus, close to the island

"the lee of Cyprus" is the side of that island that blocks the strong wind, so sailing vessels are not forced off their course.

#### Acts 27:5

##### we landed at Myra, a city of Lycia

"came to Myra, a city of Lycia, where we got off the ship"

##### a city of Lycia

Lycia was a Roman province, located on the southwestern coast of modern-day Turkey.

#### Acts 27:6

##### Alexandria

This is the name of a city.

#### Acts 27:7

##### When we had sailed slowly ... finally arrived with difficulty

You can make explicit that the reason they were sailing slowly and with difficulty was because the wind was blowing against them.

##### near Cnidus

This is an ancient settlement located in modern-day Turkey.

##### the wind no longer allowed us to go that way

"we could no longer go that way because of the strong wind"

##### we sailed along the sheltered side of Crete

"we sailed along the side of Crete where there was less wind"

##### opposite Salmone

This is a coastal city in Crete.

#### Acts 27:8

##### We sailed along the coast with difficulty

You can make explicit that even though the winds were not as strong as before, they were still strong enough to make sailing difficult.

##### Fair Havens

This was a port near Lasea, located on the south coast of Crete.

##### near the city of Lasea

This is a coastal city in Crete.

#### Acts 27:9

##### We had now taken

The writer includes himself, Paul, and those who were traveling with them.

##### the time of the Jewish fast also had passed, and it had now become dangerous to sail

This fast took place on the Day of Atonement, which was usually either in the last part of September or the first part of October according to Western calendars. After this time, there was a higher risk of seasonal storms.

#### Acts 27:10

##### with injury

If your language has a word for "injury" that results from wrongdoing, you may want to use it here.

##### we are about to take ... our lives

Paul includes himself and his hearers, so this is inclusive.

##### loss, not only of the cargo and the ship, but also of our lives

Here "loss" means destruction when referring to things and death when referring to people.

##### not only of the cargo and the ship

"not only the ship and the goods on the ship"

#### Acts 27:11

##### that were spoken by Paul

"that Paul said"

#### Acts 27:12

##### harbor was not easy to spend the winter in

"harbor did not sufficiently protect docked ships during winter storms"

##### harbor

a place near land that is usually safe for ships

##### city of Phoenix

Phoenix was a port city on the south coast of Crete.

##### to spend the winter there

"to stay there for the cold season"

##### facing both southwest and northwest

These directions are based on what one sees as one faces the setting sun. Northwest is a little to the right of the setting sun, and southwest is a little to the left of the setting sun.

#### Acts 27:13

##### weighed anchor

Here "weighed" means "pulled out of the water." An anchor is a heavy object attached to a rope that is secured to the boat. The anchor is tossed into the water and sinks to the bottom of the sea to keep the ship from drifting about.

#### Acts 27:14

##### after a short time

"after a little while"

##### a wind of hurricane force

"a very strong, dangerous wind"

##### called the northeaster

"called 'a strong wind from the northeast.'" The word for "the northeaster" in the original language is "Euroclydon." You can transliterate this word for your language.

##### began to beat down from the island

"came in from the island of Crete, and it blew strongly against our ship"

#### Acts 27:15

##### When the ship was caught by the storm and could no longer head into the wind

"When the wind blew so strongly against the front of the ship that we could not sail against it"

##### we had to give way to the storm and were driven along by the wind

"we stopped trying to sail forward, and we let the wind push us whichever way it blew"

#### Acts 27:16

##### We sailed along the lee of a small island

"We sailed on the side of the island where the wind was not so strong"

##### a small island called Cauda

This island was located on the south coast of Crete.

##### lifeboat

This was a smaller boat towed behind or secured onto a ship, used to take people and goods across water too shallow for the ship and also to escape from the ship if it sank. At this point the lifeboat was in the water being towed by the ship.

#### Acts 27:17

##### they had hoisted the lifeboat up

"they had lifted up the lifeboat" or "they had pulled the lifeboat aboard the ship"

##### they used its ropes to bind the hull of the ship

The "hull" is the body of the ship. They tied ropes around it so that the ship would not come apart during the storm.

##### sandbars of Syrtis

Sandbars are very shallow areas in the sea where ships can get stuck in the sand. Syrtis is located on the coast of Libya, northern Africa.

##### they lowered the sea anchor

"they let the floating anchor down into the water"

##### were driven along

"had to go in whatever direction the wind blew us"

#### Acts 27:18

##### We took such a violent battering by the storm

"The wind blew us so roughly back and forth that all of us were badly battered and bruised by the storm"

##### they began throwing the cargo overboard

The word "they" refers to the sailors. This is done to lighten the weight of the ship in an effort to prevent the ship from sinking.

#### Acts 27:19

##### the sailors threw overboard the ship's equipment with their own hands

Here "equipment" refers to the sailors' equipment needed to sail the ship: tackle, hoists, beams of wood, block and tackle, ropes, lines, sails, and the like. This indicates how desperate the situation was.

#### Acts 27:20

##### When the sun and stars did not shine on us for many days

They could not see the sun and stars because of the dark storm clouds. Sailors needed to see the sun and stars in order to know where they were and what direction they were headed.

##### the great storm still beat upon us

"the terrible storm still blew us roughly back and forth"

##### any more hope that we should be saved was abandoned

"we quit thinking that we might be rescued"

#### Acts 27:21

##### When they had gone long without food

"When we had gone a long time without food"

##### among the sailors

"among the men"

##### so as to get this injury and loss

"and as a result suffer this harm and loss"

#### Acts 27:22

##### there will be no loss of life among you, but only the loss of the ship

"none of us will die: the storm will destroy only the ship"

#### Acts 27:24

##### You must stand before Caesar

"You must stand before Caesar so he can judge you"

##### has given to you all those who are sailing with you

"has decided to allow all those who are sailing with you to live"

#### Acts 27:25

##### just as it was told to me

"just as the angel told me"

#### Acts 27:26

##### we must run aground upon some island

"we must steer our boat so that it wrecks on some island"

#### Acts 27:27

##### When the fourteenth night had come

"After 14 days since the storm started, that night"

##### as we were driven this way and that

"as the wind blew us back and forth"

##### the Adriatic Sea

This is the sea between Italy and Greece.

#### Acts 27:28

##### They took soundings

"They measured the depth of the sea water." They measured the depth of water by dropping a line with a weight tied to the end of it into the water.

##### found twenty fathoms

"found 40 meters"

##### found fifteen fathoms

"found 30 meters"

#### Acts 27:29

##### anchors

An anchor is a heavy object attached to a rope that is secured to the boat. The anchor is tossed into the water and sinks to the bottom of the sea, keeping the ship from drifting about. See how you translated this in Acts 27:13.

##### from the stern

"from the back of the ship"

#### Acts 27:30

##### from the bow

"from the front of the ship"

#### Acts 27:31

##### Unless these men stay in the ship, you cannot be saved

"You can be saved only if these men stay in the ship" or "Only if these men stay in the ship will you survive"

#### Acts 27:33

##### When daylight was coming on

"When it was almost sunrise"

##### This day is the fourteenth day that

"For 14 days"

#### Acts 27:34

##### not one of you will lose a single hair from his head

"every one of you will survive this disaster unharmed"

#### Acts 27:35

##### broke the bread

"tore the bread" or "tore off a piece from the loaf of bread"

#### Acts 27:36

##### Then they were all encouraged

"This encouraged all of them"

#### Acts 27:37

##### We were 276 souls on the ship

"There were two hundred and seventy-six of us in the ship."

##### souls

"people"

#### Acts 27:39

##### bay

a large area of water partly surrounded by land

##### did not recognize the land

"saw land but could not recognize it as any place they knew"

#### Acts 27:40

##### cut loose the anchors and left them

"cut the ropes and left the anchors behind"

##### rudders

large oars or pieces of wood at the back of the ship used for steering

##### the foresail

"the sail at the front of the ship." The sail was a large piece of cloth that caught the wind to move the ship.

##### they headed to the beach

"they steered the ship toward the beach"

#### Acts 27:41

##### a sandbar

an underwater pile of sand that made the water suddenly shallow

##### The bow

the front end of the ship

##### the stern

"the back end of the ship"

#### Acts 27:42

##### The soldiers' plan was

"The soldiers were planning"

#### Acts 27:43

##### so he stopped their plan

"so he stopped them from doing what they planned to do"

#### Acts 27:44

##### some on planks

"some on wooden boards"

Chapter 28

1When we were brought safely through, we learned that the island was called Malta.2The native people offered to us not just ordinary kindness, but they lit a fire and welcomed us all because of the constant rain and cold.3But when Paul had gathered a bundle of sticks and placed them on the fire, a viper came out because of the heat and fastened onto his hand.4When the native people saw the animal hanging from his hand, they said one to another, "This man certainly is a murderer who has been saved from the sea; Justice does not permit him to live."5But then he shook the animal into the fire and suffered no harm.6They were waiting for him to swell up or suddenly fall down dead. But after they watched him for a long time and saw that nothing was wrong with him, they changed their minds and said that he was a god.

7Now in a nearby place there were lands belonging to the chief man of the island, a man named Publius. He welcomed us and kindly provided for us for three days.8It happened that the father of Publius was lying afflicted with a fever and dysentery. When Paul went to him, he prayed, placed his hands on him, and healed him.9After this happened, the rest of the people on the island who were sick also came and were healed.10The people also honored us with many honors. When we were preparing to sail, they gave us what we needed.

11After three months we set sail in a ship that had spent the winter at the island, a ship of Alexandria, with "the twin gods" as its figurehead.12After we landed at the city of Syracuse, we stayed there three days.13From there we sailed and arrived at the city of Rhegium. After one day a south wind sprang up, and in two days we came to the city of Puteoli.14There we found some brothers and were invited to stay with them for seven days. In this way we came to Rome.15From there the brothers, after they heard about us, came to meet us as far as the Market of Appius and the Three Taverns. When Paul saw the brothers, he thanked God and took courage.

16When we entered Rome, Paul was allowed to live by himself with the soldier who was guarding him.

17Then it came about that after three days Paul called together those men who were the leaders among the Jews. When they had come together, he said to them, "Brothers, although I have done nothing wrong against the people or the customs of our fathers, I was delivered as a prisoner from Jerusalem into the hands of the Romans.18After they questioned me, they wished to set me free, because there was no reason for the death penalty in my case.19But when the Jews spoke against their desire, I was forced to appeal to Caesar, although it is not as if I were bringing any accusation against my nation.20For this reason, therefore, I called upon you that I might see you and speak with you, since it is because of the hope of Israel that I am now wearing this chain."

21Then they said to him, "We neither received letters from Judea about you, nor did any of the brothers come and report or say anything bad about you.22But we want to hear from you what you think about this sect, because it is known by us that it is spoken against everywhere."

23When they had appointed a day for him, more people came to him at his dwelling place. He presented the matter to them, and testified about the kingdom of God. He tried to persuade them about Jesus, both from the law of Moses and from the prophets, from morning until evening.24Some were convinced about the things which were said, while others did not believe.25When they did not agree with one another, they left after Paul had spoken this one word: "The Holy Spirit spoke well through Isaiah the prophet to your fathers.

26He said, 'Go to this people and say, "Hearing you will hear, but you will never understand; seeing, you will see, but you will never know.27For the heart of this people has become dull,and with their ears they hardly hear,and they have shut their eyes.Otherwise they might see with their eyes,and hear with their ears,and understand with their heart and turn again,and I would heal them."'

28Therefore, you should know that this salvation of God has been sent to the Gentiles, and they will listen."29[1](#footnote-target-1)

30Paul lived for two whole years in his own rented house, and he welcomed all who came to him.31He was proclaiming the kingdom of God and was teaching the things about the Lord Jesus Christ with all boldness without being hindered.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Acts 28:29—Some ancient copies have verse 29: When he had said these things, the Jews went away. They were having a great dispute among themselves .

#### Acts 28:1

##### When we were brought safely through

"When we arrived safely"

##### we learned

"we learned from the people" or "we found out from the residents"

##### the island was called Malta

Malta is an island located south of the modern-day island of Sicily.

#### Acts 28:2

##### The native people

"The local people"

##### offered to us not just ordinary kindness

"were not only very kind to us"

##### they lit a fire

"they put together twigs and branches and burned them"

##### welcomed us all

Possible meanings are 1) "welcomed all of the people from the ship" or 2) "welcomed Paul and all his companions."

#### Acts 28:3

##### a viper came out

"a poisonous snake came out of the bundle of sticks"

##### fastened onto his hand

"bit Paul's hand and did not let go"

#### Acts 28:4

##### This man certainly is a murderer

"For sure, this man is a murderer" or "This man is truly a murderer"

##### Justice

"the goddess called Justice"

#### Acts 28:5

##### shook the animal into the fire

"shook his hand so that the snake fell from his hand into the fire"

##### suffered no harm

"Paul was not hurt at all"

#### Acts 28:6

##### waiting for him to swell up

They thought that his body would swell because of the snake venom.

##### nothing was wrong with him

"everything about him was as it should be"

##### they changed their minds

"they thought again"

##### said that he was a god.

"said, 'This man must be a god.'"

#### Acts 28:7

##### Now in a nearby place

"Now" is used to introduce a new person or event in the account.

##### chief man of the island

Possible meanings are 1) the main leader of the people or 2) someone who was the most important person on the island, perhaps because of his wealth.

#### Acts 28:8

##### It happened that the father of Publius ... fever and dysentery

This is background information about Publius' father that is important to understanding the story.

##### was lying afflicted

"was in bed, ill"

##### afflicted with a fever and dysentery

Dysentery is an infectious disease of the intestines.

##### placed his hands on him

"touched him with his hands"

#### Acts 28:9

##### were healed

"he healed them too"

#### Acts 28:10

##### honored us with many honors

Probably they honored Paul and those with him by giving them gifts.

#### Acts 28:11

##### that had spent the winter at the island

"that the crew left at the island for the cold season"

##### a ship of Alexandria

Possible meanings are this refers to 1) a ship that came from Alexandria, or 2) a ship that was registered or licensed in Alexandria.

##### the twin gods

On the bow of the ship, there was a carving of the two idols called "the twin gods." Their names were Castor and Pollux.

#### Acts 28:12

##### city of Syracuse

Syracuse is a city on the southeast coast of the modern-day island of Sicily, just southwest of Italy.

#### Acts 28:13

##### city of Rhegium

This is the port city located at the southwestern tip of Italy.

##### a south wind sprang up

"the wind began to blow from the south"

##### city of Puteoli

Puteoli is located in modern-day Naples on the west coast of Italy.

#### Acts 28:14

##### brothers

"fellow believers"

##### In this way we came to Rome

"And after we stayed seven days with them, we went to Rome"

#### Acts 28:15

##### after they heard about us

"after they heard we were coming"

##### he thanked God and took courage

"this encouraged him, and he thanked God"

#### Acts 28:16

##### When we entered Rome, Paul was allowed to

"After we had arrived in Rome, the Roman authorities gave Paul permission to"

#### Acts 28:17

##### the leaders among the Jews

These are the Jewish civil or religious leaders present in Rome.

##### Brothers

Here this means "Fellow Jews."

##### against the people

"against our people" or "against the Jews"

##### I was delivered as a prisoner from Jerusalem into the hands of the Romans

"some of the Jews arrested me in Jerusalem and placed me in the custody of the Roman authorities"

##### into the hands of the Romans

Here "hands" stands for power or control.

#### Acts 28:18

##### there was no reason for the death penalty in my case

"there was no reason for them to execute me" or "I had done nothing to cause them to kill me"

#### Acts 28:19

##### spoke against their desire

"complained about what the Roman authorities wanted to do"

##### I was forced to appeal to Caesar

"I had to ask for Caesar to judge me"

##### although it is not as if I were bringing any accusation against my nation

"but it was not because I wanted to accuse the people of my nation before Caesar"

#### Acts 28:20

##### the hope of Israel

Paul did not state clearly what Israel hoped for. He may have been referring 1) to their hope that the Messiah would come or 2) to their hope that God would cause those who have died to live again.

##### Israel

"the people of Israel" or "the Jews"

#### Acts 28:21

##### nor did any of the brothers

"nor did any of our fellow Jews"

#### Acts 28:22

##### you think about this sect

"you think about this group to which you belong"

##### because it is known by us

"because we know"

##### it is spoken against everywhere

"many Jews all over the Roman Empire are saying bad things about it"

#### Acts 28:23

##### had appointed a day for him

"had chosen a time for him to speak to them"

##### testified about the kingdom of God

"told them about God's rule as king" or "told them how God would show himself as king"

##### from the prophets

"from what the prophets wrote"

#### Acts 28:24

##### Some were convinced about the things which were said

"Paul was able to convince some of them"

#### Acts 28:25

##### after Paul had spoken this one word

"after Paul had said one more thing" or "after Paul had made this statement"

##### The Holy Spirit spoke well through Isaiah the prophet to your fathers.

This sentence contains quotations within quotations.

#### Acts 28:26

##### He said, 'Go to this people and say, "Hearing you will hear, but you will never understand; seeing, you will see, but you will never know.

"The Spirit told Isaiah to go tell them that they will hear but will not understand and they will see but they will not know"

##### Hearing you will hear ... seeing, you will see

The words "hear" and "see" are repeated for emphasis. "You will listen carefully ... you will look intently"

##### but you will never understand ... but you will never know

Both of these phrases mean basically the same thing. They emphasize that the Jewish people will not understand God's plan.

#### Acts 28:27

##### For the heart of this people has become dull

People who stubbornly refuse to understand what God is saying or doing are spoken of as if their heart is dull.

##### with their ears they hardly hear, and they have shut their eyes

People who stubbornly refuse to understand what God is saying or doing are spoken of as if they are unable to hear and are shutting their eyes so that they will not see.

##### understand with their heart

Here "heart" stands for the mind.

##### turn again

To start obeying God is spoken of as though the person were physically turning toward God.

##### I would heal them

This does not mean God would only heal them physically. He would also heal them spiritually by forgiving their sins.

#### Acts 28:28

##### this salvation of God has been sent to the Gentiles

"God is sending his messengers to the Gentiles to tell them about how he will save them"

##### they will listen

"some of them will listen." This response of the Gentiles is in contrast to the way the Jews of that time responded.

#### Acts 28:31

##### He was proclaiming the kingdom of God

"He was preaching about God's rule as king" or "He was preaching about how God will show himself as king"

## Romans

Chapter 1

1Paul, a servant of Jesus Christ, called to be an apostle and set apart for the gospel of God,2which he promised beforehand by his prophets in the holy scriptures,3concerning his Son who was a descendant of David according to the flesh.4Through the Spirit of holiness he was declared with power to be the Son of God by the resurrection from the dead, Jesus Christ our Lord.5Through him we have received grace and apostleship for obedience of faith among all the nations, for the sake of his name.6Among these nations, you also have been called to belong to Jesus Christ.

7To all in Rome who are beloved of God and called to be his holy people: Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

8First, I thank my God through Jesus Christ for all of you, because your faith is proclaimed throughout the whole world.9For God is my witness, whom I serve in my spirit in the gospel of his Son, of how continually I make mention of you.10I always request in my prayers that by any means I may at last be successful now by the will of God in coming to you.11For I desire to see you, that I may give you some spiritual gift, in order to strengthen you.12That is, I long to be mutually encouraged among you, through each other's faith, yours and mine.13Now I do not want you to be uninformed, brothers, that I often intended to come to you (but I was hindered until now), in order to have some fruit among you also, just as I have had among the rest of the Gentiles.14I am a debtor both to Greeks and to foreigners, both to the wise and to the foolish.15So, as for me, I am ready to proclaim the gospel also to you who are in Rome.

16For I am not ashamed of the gospel, for it is the power of God for salvation for everyone who believes, for the Jew first and for the Greek.17For in it God's righteousness is revealed from faith to faith, as it has been written, "The righteous will live by faith."

18For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of people who through unrighteousness hold back the truth.19This is because that which is known about God is visible to them. For God has enlightened them.20For ever since the creation of the world, his invisible qualities, namely his eternal power and divine nature, have been clearly seen, having been discerned in the things that have been made. So they are without excuse.21This is because, although they knew about God, they did not glorify him as God, nor did they give him thanks. Instead, they became foolish in their thoughts, and their senseless hearts were darkened.22They claimed to be wise, but they became foolish.23They exchanged the glory of the imperishable God for the likenesses of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts, and of creeping things.

24Therefore God delivered them over to the lusts of their hearts for uncleanness, for their bodies to be dishonored among themselves.25It is they who exchanged the truth of God for a lie, and who worshiped and served the creation instead of the Creator, who is blessed forever. Amen.

26Because of this, God delivered them over to dishonorable lusts, for their women exchanged natural relations for those that were unnatural.27In the same way, the men also left their natural relations with women and burned in their lust for one another. These were men who committed shameless acts with men and received in themselves the penalty they deserved for their error.

28And just as they did not approve of having God in their awareness, he gave them up to a corrupted mind, for them to do those things that are not proper.29They have been filled with all unrighteousness, wickedness, covetousness, and malice. They are full of envy, murder, strife, deceit, and evil intentions. They are gossips,30slanderers, haters of God, insolent, arrogant, boastful, inventing ways of doing evil; they are disobedient to parents.31They are senseless, faithless, heartless, and unmerciful.32They understand the ordinance of God, that those who practice such things are deserving of death. But not only do they do these things, they also approve of others who do them.

#### Romans 1:1

##### Paul, a servant of Jesus Christ

"I, Paul, write this letter. I am a servant of Jesus Christ." Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter.

##### Christ, called to be an apostle and set apart for the gospel of God

"Christ. God called me to be an apostle and chose me to tell people about the gospel"

#### Romans 1:2

##### which he promised beforehand

"which God promised long ago"

#### Romans 1:3

##### his Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### who was a descendant of David according to the flesh

"who is a descendant of David according to the physical nature" or "who was born a descendant of David"

#### Romans 1:4

##### he was declared with power to be the Son of God

"God declared with power that Jesus Christ is the Son of God". This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### by the resurrection from the dead

"when Jesus Christ was raised from the dead" or "by God raising him from death to life"

##### Spirit of holiness

This refers to the Holy Spirit.

#### Romans 1:5

##### we have received grace and apostleship

"God gave us grace and made us apostles" or "God gave me the privilege of being an apostle. "

##### for obedience of faith among all the nations, for the sake of his name

"in order to teach all nations to obey because of their faith in him"

#### Romans 1:7

##### To all in Rome who are beloved of God and called to be his holy people

"I am writing this letter to all of you in Rome whom God loves and has chosen to become his people"

##### Grace to you and peace

"May God give you grace and peace"

##### God our Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Romans 1:9

##### God is my witness ... of how continually I make mention of you

God sees ... how constantly I pray for you

##### in the gospel of his Son

by preaching the good news about his Son

##### his Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Romans 1:10

##### I always request in my prayers that ... I may at last be successful ... in coming to you

"Every time I pray, I ask God that ... I may finally succeed ... in coming to visit you"

##### by any means

"in whatever way God allows"

##### now by the will of God

"now, because God desires it,"

#### Romans 1:12

##### That is, I long to be mutually encouraged among you, through each other's faith, yours and mine

"I mean that I want us to encourage each other by sharing our experiences of faith in Jesus"

#### Romans 1:13

##### I do not want you to be uninformed

"I want you to know"

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### but I was hindered until now

"but until now, something has always prevented me"

##### in order to have some fruit among you, just as I have had among the rest of the Gentiles

"so that my work may bear spiritual fruit among you, just as it has among the other Gentiles

#### Romans 1:14

##### I am a debtor both to

"I am obligated both to " or "I have a duty to preach both to"

#### Romans 1:16

##### it is the power of God for salvation for everyone who believes

"it is through the gospel that God powerfully saves those who trust in Him"

##### for the Jew first and for the Greek

"for Jewish people first and also for Greek people"

#### Romans 1:17

##### For in it God's righteousness is revealed from faith to faith

"For the gospel reveals that righteousness from God is from from faith to faith

##### as it has been written

"as the Scriptures say"

##### The righteous will live by faith

"Those who are righteous will live by faith". Paul quotes from Habakkuk 2:4.

#### Romans 1:18

##### the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of people

"God reveals from heaven how angry he is with people who are ungodly and do unrighteous deeds"

##### hold back the truth

"hide the true information about God"

#### Romans 1:19

##### that which is known about God is visible to them

"they can know about God because of what they can plainly see"

##### For God has enlightened them

"For God has given them light to know what he is like"

#### Romans 1:20

##### his invisible qualities, namely his eternal power and divine nature, have been clearly seen

"people have clearly understood God's invisible qualities, namely his eternal power and divine nature"

##### namely his eternal power and divine nature

"that is, that his power is eternal and he is truly God"

##### having been discerned in the things that have been made

"because people have understood those qualities by seeing the things that God has made"

##### they are without excuse

"people do not have an excuse" or "these people can never say that they did not know"

#### Romans 1:21

##### became foolish in their thoughts

"began to think foolish things"

##### their senseless hearts were darkened

"their foolish hearts became dark with lack of understanding"

#### Romans 1:23

##### They exchanged the glory of the imperishable God for the likenesses of an image of perishable man

"They rejected the glory of the God who never dies and chose images that look like human beings, who die"

##### of birds, of four-footed beasts, and of creeping things

"or that look like birds, four-footed beasts, and animals that crawl"

#### Romans 1:24

##### God delivered them over to

"God allowed them to indulge in"

##### the lusts of their hearts for uncleanness

"the morally impure things they greatly desired"

##### for their bodies to be dishonored among themselves

"and they committed sexually immoral and degrading acts"

#### Romans 1:25

##### who worshiped and served the creation

"who worshiped and served things that God created"

#### Romans 1:26

##### God delivered them over to dishonorable lusts

"God allowed them to do all the dishonorable things they very much wanted to do"

##### exchanged natural relations for those that were unnatural

"rejected natural sexual relations and chose unnatural sexual relations"

#### Romans 1:27

##### burned in their lust for one another

"had strong sexual desire for other men"

##### committed shameless acts with men

"committed acts with men for which they should have been ashamed"

##### and received in themselves the penalty they deserved for their error

"and God punished them justly for the wrong they committed"

#### Romans 1:28

##### And just as they did not approve of having God in their awareness

"And just as they did not think it was necessary to know God"

##### he gave them up to a corrupted mind

"God allowed their immoral minds to completely control them"

##### not proper

"sinful"

#### Romans 1:29

##### They have been filled with all

"They have a strong desire for all" or "They strongly desire to do deeds of"

##### They are full of envy, murder, strife, deceit, and evil intentions

"They envy, murder, fight, deceive others and want to do evil things"

#### Romans 1:30

##### slanderers

A slanderer says false things about another person in order to damage that person's reputation.

##### inventing ways of doing evil

"thinking of new ways to do evil things to others"

#### Romans 1:32

##### They understand the ordinance of God

"They know God's judgment"

##### that those who practice such things are deserving of death

"that those who do those things deserve to die"

Chapter 2

1Therefore you are without excuse, you person, you who judge, for in things for which you judge the other person, you condemn yourself. For you who judge practice the same things.2But we know that God's judgment is according to truth when it falls on those who practice such things.3But consider this, you person, you who judge those who practice such things although you do the same things. Will you escape from the judgment of God?4Or do you think so little of the riches of his kindness, his delayed punishment, and his patience? Do you not know that his kindness is meant to lead you to repentance?5But it is to the extent of your hardness and unrepentant heart that you are storing up for yourself wrath on the day of wrath, that is, the day of the revelation of God's righteous judgment.6He will pay back to every person according to his actions:7to those who according to the perseverance of good deeds have sought glory, honor, and incorruptibility, he will give eternal life.8But to those who are self-seeking, who disobey the truth but obey unrighteousness, wrath and fierce anger will come.9God will bring tribulation and distress on every human soul that has practiced evil, to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.10But glory, honor, and peace will come to everyone who practices good, to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.11For there is no partiality with God.12For as many as have sinned without the law will also perish without the law, and as many as have sinned with respect to the law will be judged by the law.13For it is not the hearers of the law who are righteous before God, but it is the doers of the law who will be justified.14For when Gentiles, who do not have the law, do by nature the things of the law, they are a law to themselves, although they do not have the law.15By this they show that the actions required by the law are written in their hearts. Their conscience also bears witness to them, and their own thoughts either accuse or defend them16on the day when God will judge the secrets of all people, according to my gospel, through Jesus Christ.

17But if you say that you are a Jew and rest upon the law and boast in God,18and know his will and approve of what is excellent because you have been instructed from the law;19and if you are convinced that you yourself are a guide to the blind, a light to those who are in darkness,20an instructor of the foolish, a teacher of little children, and that you have in the law the form of knowledge and of the truth, then how does this affect the way you live your life?21You who teach others, do you not teach yourself? You who preach against stealing, do you steal?22You who say that one must not commit adultery, do you commit adultery? You who hate idols, do you rob temples?23You who boast in the law, do you dishonor God by transgressing the law?24For "the name of God is blasphemed among the Gentiles because of you," just as it has been written.25For circumcision is profitable to you if you obey the law, but if you are a transgressor of the law, your circumcision becomes uncircumcision.26If, then, the uncircumcised person keeps the requirements of the law, will not his uncircumcision be considered as circumcision?27And will not the one who is naturally uncircumcised condemn you if he fulfills the law? This is because you have the written law and circumcision, yet you are a transgressor of the law!28For he is not a Jew who is merely one outwardly; neither is circumcision that which is merely outward in the flesh.29But he is a Jew who is one inwardly, and circumcision is that of the heart, in the Spirit, not in the letter. The praise of such a person comes not from people but from God.

#### Romans 2:1

##### you person, you who judge

"any of you who judge others"

##### for in things for which you judge the other person, you condemn yourself

"because you condemn yourself in the things that you judge other people for"

#### Romans 2:2

##### But we know

Here the pronoun "we" may include those to whom Paul is writing.

##### God's judgment is according to truth when it falls on those who practice such things

"God judges rightly when he judges those who do those kinds of things"

#### Romans 2:3

##### consider this

"think about what I am going to tell you"

##### Will you escape from the judgment of God?

"You will certainly not escape God's judgment!". This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis.

#### Romans 2:4

##### Or do you think so little of the riches of his kindness, his delayed punishment, and his patience?

"You act like it does not matter that God is so kind and patient and that he is not quick does not punish.". Paul uses this question to rebuke the people who sin and yet judge others.

##### Do you not know that his kindness is meant to lead you to repentance?

"You should know that God is kind to you so that you will repent!"

#### Romans 2:5

##### But it is to the extent of your hardness and unrepentant heart

"But because you are stubborn and refuse to repent"

##### you are storing up for yourself wrath

"you are making your punishment worse". The longer they go without repenting, the more severely God will punish them.

##### on the day of wrath ... the day of the revelation of God's righteous judgment

"when God will show everyone that he is angry and that he judges all people fairly"

#### Romans 2:6

##### pay back

"give a fair reward or punishment"

##### to every person according to his actions

"to each person according to what that person has done"

#### Romans 2:7

##### who according to the perseverance of good deeds

who, by persevering and doing good deeds

##### have sought glory, honor, and incorruptibility

"have tried to get glory, honor, and the ability to never decay" or "have tried to get glory, honor, and the ability to never die"

#### Romans 2:8

##### self-seeking

"selfish" or "only concerned with what makes themselves happy"

##### wrath and fierce anger will come

"there will be wrath and fierce anger" or "God will show his terrible anger"

#### Romans 2:9

##### on every human soul that has practiced evil

"upon every person who has done evil"

##### evil, to the Jew first, and also to the Greek

"evil. He will judge the Jewish people first, and then those people who are not Jewish"

#### Romans 2:10

##### But glory, honor, and peace will come

"But God will praise, honor, and give peace"

##### good, to the Jew first, and also to the Greek

"good. God will reward the Jewish people first, and then those people who are not Jewish"

#### Romans 2:11

##### For there is no partiality with God

"For God treats all people the same"

#### Romans 2:12

##### without the law will also perish without the law

"without knowing the law of Moses will certainly still die spiritually"

##### as many as have sinned

"all those who have sinned"

#### Romans 2:13

##### it is not the hearers of the law

"it is not those who only hear the law of Moses"

##### who are righteous before God

"whom God considers righteous"

##### but it is the doers of the law

"but it is those who obey the law of Moses"

##### who will be justified

"whom God will accept"

#### Romans 2:14

##### For

This verse is the beginning of an interruption of Paul's main argument, in which he gives the reader extra information. If you have a way to mark an interruption like this in your language, you can use it here.

##### a law to themselves ... do not have the law

"have God's laws already inside them ... actually do not have the law"

##### they do not have the law

"they do not actually have the laws that God gave to Moses"

#### Romans 2:15

##### that the actions required by the law are written in their hearts

"that God has written on their hearts what the law requires them to do" or "that they know the actions that God wants them to do according to his law"

##### bears witness to them

"tells them if they are disobeying or obeying God's law"

#### Romans 2:16

##### when God will judge

"This will happen when God judges"

#### Romans 2:17

##### rest upon the law

"rely on the law of Moses"

#### Romans 2:18

##### know his will

"and know God's will"

##### because you have been instructed from the law

"because people have taught you what is right from the law" or "because you have learned from the law"

#### Romans 2:19

##### that you yourself are a guide to the blind, a light to those who are in darkness

"that because you teach the law, you yourself are like a guide to blind people, and you are like a light to people who are lost in the dark"

#### Romans 2:20

##### a teacher of little children

"you teach those who do not know the law"

##### and that you have in the law the form of knowledge and of the truth

"and you are sure you understand the truth that God has given in the law"

#### Romans 2:22

##### do you rob temples

"do you steal items from local pagan temples to sell and make a profit" or "do you keep back from the Jerusalem temple all the money that is due to God"

#### Romans 2:23

##### You who boast in the law, do you dishonor God by transgressing the law?

"It is wicked that you claim to be proud of the law while at the same time you disobey it and bring shame to God!"

#### Romans 2:24

##### the name of God is blasphemed among the Gentiles

"many Gentiles blaspheme the name of God"

##### name of God

The word "name" refers to the entirety of God, not just his name.

#### Romans 2:25

##### For circumcision is profitable to you

"I say all of this because it is good for you to be circumcised"

##### if you are a transgressor of the law

"if you do not obey the commandments found in the law"

##### your circumcision becomes uncircumcision

"it is as though you were no longer circumcised"

#### Romans 2:26

##### keeps the requirements of the law

"obeys what God commands in the law"

##### will not his uncircumcision be considered as circumcision?

"God will consider him as circumcised."

#### Romans 2:27

##### And will not the one who is naturally uncircumcised condemn you ... the law?

"The one who is not physically circumcised will condemn you ... the law."

#### Romans 2:28

##### outwardly

This refers to Jewish rituals, such as circumcision, which people can see.

##### merely outward in the flesh

This refers to the physical change to a man's body when someone circumcises him.

##### flesh

"body"

#### Romans 2:29

##### inwardly

This refers to the values and motivations of the person whom God has transformed.

##### of the heart

Here "heart" refers to the inner person.

##### in the Spirit, not in the letter

"through the work of the Holy Spirit, not because you know the Scriptures"

Chapter 3

1Then what advantage does the Jew have? And what is the benefit of circumcision?2It is great in every way. First of all, the Jews were entrusted with revelation from God.

3For what if some Jews were without faith? Will their unbelief nullify God's faithfulness?4May it never be. Instead, let God be found to be true, even though every man is a liar. As it has been written,  
  
"That you might be shown to be righteous in your words,and that you might prevail when you come into judgment."

5But if our unrighteousness shows the righteousness of God, what can we say? Can we say that God is unrighteous to bring his wrath upon us? (I am using a human argument.)6May it never be! For then how would God judge the world?7But if through my lie the truth of God increases his glory, why am I still being judged as a sinner?8Why not say, as we are slandered as saying, and as some affirm that we say, "Let us do evil, so that good may come"? Their condemnation is just.

9What then? Are we excusing ourselves? Not at all. For we have already accused both Jews and Greeks, all of them, of being under sin.10This is as it is written:“No one is righteous, not one;11there is no one who understands;there is no one who seeks God.12They have all turned away; together they have become useless.There is no one who does good, no, not even one.”13"Their throat is an open grave.Their tongues have deceived.The poison of snakes is under their lips.”14"Their mouths are full of cursing and bitterness.”15"Their feet are swift to pour out blood.16Destruction and suffering are in their paths.17These people have not known a way of peace."18"There is no fear of God before their eyes."

19Now we know that whatever the law says, it speaks to the ones who are under the law, so that every mouth may be shut, and the whole world held accountable to God.20For no flesh will be justified by the works of the law in his sight. For through the law comes the knowledge of sin.

21But now apart from the law the righteousness of God has been revealed, to which the Law and the Prophets bear witness—22the righteousness of God through faith in Jesus Christ for all those who believe. For there is no distinction,23for all have sinned and come short of the glory of God,24and they are freely justified by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus.25For God provided Christ Jesus as an atoning sacrifice through faith in his blood. He offered Christ as proof of his justice, because of his disregard of previous sins26in his patience. This was to show his righteousness at this present time, so he might be just and the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus.

27Where then is boasting? It is excluded. Through what kind of law? Of works? No, but through a law of faith.28We conclude then that a person is justified by faith without works of the law.29Or is God the God of Jews only? Is he not also the God of Gentiles? Yes, of Gentiles also.30If, indeed, God is one, he will justify the circumcision by faith, and the uncircumcision through faith.

31Do we then nullify the law through faith? May it never be! Instead, we uphold the law.

#### Romans 3:1

##### Then what advantage does the Jew have? And what is the benefit of circumcision?

"Some people might say, 'Then what advantage does the Jew have? And what is the benefit of circumcision?'" or "Some people might say, 'If that is true, then the Jews do not have any advantage, and there is no benefit in being circumcised.'"

#### Romans 3:2

##### It is great in every way

"But there is great advantage to being a Jew"

##### First of all

"First in order of time" or "Most certainly" or "Most importantly."

##### the Jews were entrusted with revelation from God

"God gave his words that contain his promises to the Jews"

#### Romans 3:3

##### For what if some Jews were without faith? Will their unbelief nullify God's faithfulness?

"Some Jews have not been faithful to God. We should not conclude from this that God will not fulfill his promise."

#### Romans 3:4

##### May it never be

This expression strongly denies that this could happen. You may have an expression in your language that you could use here. "That is not possible!" or "Certainly not!"

##### let God be found to be true

"God always does what he has promised"

##### even though every man is a liar

"even if every man were a liar"

##### As it has been written

"The Scriptures themselves agree with what I am saying"

##### That you might be shown to be righteous in your words, and that you might prevail when you come into judgment

"Everyone must acknowledge that what you say is true, and you will always win your case when anyone accuses you"

#### Romans 3:5

##### But if our unrighteousness shows the righteousness of God, what can we say? Can we say that God is unrighteous to bring his wrath upon us?

"Some people say that since our unrighteousness shows God's righteousness, then God is unrighteous when he punishes us."

##### to bring his wrath upon us

"to bring his punishment upon us" or "to punish us"

##### I am using a human argument

"I am saying here what some people say"

#### Romans 3:6

##### May it never be

"We must never say that God is unrighteous"

##### For then how would God judge the world?

"We all know that God will in fact judge the world!"

##### the world

"the people who live in the world"

#### Romans 3:7

##### But if through my lie the truth of God increases his glory, why am I still being judged as a sinner?

Here Paul imagines someone continuing to reject the Christian gospel. That adversary argues that his sin shows that God is righteous, so God should not declare that person guilty of sin on judgment day.

##### increases his glory

"causes people to praise God for his glory"

#### Romans 3:8

##### Why not say ... come"?

"I might as well be saying ... come!'"

##### as we are slandered as saying

"as some lie to others, claiming that this what we are saying"

##### Their condemnation is just

God will be acting justly when he condemns these enemies of Paul for telling lies about what Paul has been teaching.

#### Romans 3:9

##### What then? Are we excusing ourselves?

"We Jews should not try to imagine we are going to escape God's judgment, just because we are Jewish!"

#### Romans 3:10

##### This is as it is written

"This is as the prophets have written in the Scriptures"

#### Romans 3:11

##### there is no one who understands

"no one really understands what is right"

##### there is no one who seeks God

"no one sincerely tries to have a right relationship with God"

#### Romans 3:12

##### They have all turned away

"They have all turned away from God"

#### Romans 3:13

##### Their ... Their

The word "their" refers to the "Jews and Greeks" of Romans 3:9.

##### Their tongues have deceived

"People speak lies"

##### The poison of snakes is under their lips

"Their evil words injure people just like the poison of a venomous snake"

#### Romans 3:14

##### Their mouths are full of cursing and bitterness

"They often speak curses and cruel words"

#### Romans 3:15

##### Their feet are swift to pour out blood

"They are in a hurry to harm and murder people"

#### Romans 3:16

##### Destruction and suffering are in their paths

"They try to destroy others and cause them to suffer"

#### Romans 3:18

##### There is no fear of God before their eyes

"They refuse to give God the respect he deserves"

#### Romans 3:19

##### whatever the law says, it speaks to

"everything that the law says people should do is for"

##### the ones who are under the law

"those who must obey the law"

##### so that every mouth may be shut

"so that no people will be able to say anything valid to defend themselves"

##### the whole world held accountable to God

"that God can declare everyone in the world guilty"

#### Romans 3:20

##### flesh

Here "flesh" refers to all human beings.

##### through the law comes the knowledge of sin

"when someone knows God's law, he realizes that he has sinned"

#### Romans 3:21

##### now

The word "now" refers to the time since Jesus came to the earth.

##### apart from the law the righteousness of God has been revealed

"God has made known a way to be right with him without obeying the law"

##### to which the Law and the Prophets bear witness

"What Moses and the prophets wrote confirms this"

#### Romans 3:22

##### the righteousness of God through faith in Jesus Christ

"being right with God through trusting Jesus Christ"

##### For there is no distinction

"There is no difference at all between the Jews and the Gentiles"

#### Romans 3:23

##### come short of the glory of God

"have failed to be like God"

#### Romans 3:24

##### they are freely justified by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus

"God makes them right with himself as a free gift, because Christ Jesus sets them free"

##### they are freely justified

"they are made right with God without earning it"

#### Romans 3:25

##### in his blood

"in his death as a sacrifice for sins"

##### his disregard

Possible meanings are 1) his ignoring or 2) his forgiving.

#### Romans 3:26

##### This was to show his righteousness at this present time

"God did this to show at this present time that he is righteous"

##### so he might be just and the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus

"By this he shows that he is both just and the the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus"

##### the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus

"the one who declares everyone righteous who has faith in Jesus"

#### Romans 3:27

##### Where then is boasting? It is excluded

"So there is no way that we can boast that God favors us because we obeyed those laws. God does not allow it"

##### Through what kind of law? Of works? No, but through a law of faith

"On what grounds does God exclude boasting? Does he exclude it through a law of works? No, he excludes it through a law of faith"

##### Through what kind of law? Of works?

"Let me tell you what kind of law he excludes it through. It is not through a law of works."

#### Romans 3:28

##### a person is justified by faith

"God justifies a person because he has faith"

##### without works of the law

"even if he has done no works of the law"

#### Romans 3:29

##### Or is God the God of Jews only?

"You who are Jews certainly should not think that you are the only ones whom God will accept!"

##### Is he not also the God of Gentiles? Yes, of Gentiles also

"He will also accept non-Jews, that is, Gentiles"

#### Romans 3:30

##### he will justify the circumcision by faith, and the uncircumcision through faith

"God will make both Jews and non-Jews right with himself through their faith in Christ"

#### Romans 3:31

##### Do we then nullify the law through faith?

"Someone might say that we can ignore the law because we have faith."

##### we uphold the law

"we obey the law"

##### we

This pronoun refers to Paul, other believers, and the readers.

Chapter 4

1What then will we say that Abraham, our forefather according to the flesh, found?2For if Abraham had been justified by works, he would have had a reason to boast, but not before God.3For what does the scripture say? "Abraham believed God, and it was counted to him as righteousness."

4Now for him who labors, his wage is not counted as a gift, but as what is owed.5But for him who does not work but instead believes in the one who justifies the ungodly, his faith is counted as righteousness.6David also pronounces blessing on the man to whom God counts righteousness without works.

7He says,"Blessed are those whose lawless deeds are forgiven,and whose sins are covered.8Blessed is the man against whom the Lord will not count sin."

9Then is this blessing pronounced only on those of the circumcision, or also on those of the uncircumcision? For we say, "Faith was counted to Abraham as righteousness."10How was it counted to him? Was it before or after he had been circumcised? It was not after, but before!11Abraham received the sign of circumcision as a seal of the righteousness that he had by faith while he was still uncircumcised. The purpose was to make him the father of all who believe but have not been circumcised, so that righteousness would be counted to them.12He is also the father of the circumcised who not only are circumcised but who also walk in the footsteps of the faith that our father Abraham had before he was circumcised.

13For the promise to Abraham and to his descendants that he would be heir of the world did not come through the law but through the righteousness of faith.14For if those who live by the law are to be the heirs, faith is made empty, and the promise does nothing.15For the law brings about wrath, but where there is no law, there is no transgression.16For this reason it is by faith, in order that the promise may rest on grace and be guaranteed to all of Abraham's descendants—not only to those who are under the law, but also to those who share the faith of Abraham. He is the father of us all,17as it is written, "I have appointed you the father of many nations." Abraham was in the presence of him whom he trusted, that is, God, who gives life to the dead and calls the things that do not exist into existence.18In hope he believed against hope, that he would become the father of many nations, according to what he had been told, "So will your descendants be."19Without becoming weak in faith, he considered his own body as dead (because he was about a hundred years old), and the deadness of Sarah's womb.20But because of God's promise, Abraham did not hesitate in unbelief. Instead, he was strengthened in faith and gave glory to God.21He was fully convinced that what God had promised, he was also able to accomplish.22Therefore this was also "counted to him as righteousness."23But the words "it was counted to him" were not written for his sake alone.24They were written also for us, and it will be counted to us who believe in him who raised Jesus our Lord from the dead.25This is the one who was delivered up for our trespasses and was raised for our justification.

#### Romans 4:1

##### What then will we say that Abraham, our forefather according to the flesh, found?

"This is what Abraham our physical ancestor found."

#### Romans 4:3

##### For what does the scripture say?

"For this is what is in the scripture:"

##### "Abraham believed God and it was counted to him as righteousness"

"God considered Abraham to be a righteous person because he believed". Paul quotes Genesis 15:6.

#### Romans 4:4

##### his wage is not counted as a gift

"no one counts what his employer pays him as a gift from his employer"

##### but as what is owed

"but as what his employer owes him"

#### Romans 4:5

##### in the one who justifies

"in God, who justifies"

##### his faith is counted as righteousness

"God considers that person's faith as righteousness" or "God considers that person righteous because of his faith"

#### Romans 4:7

##### whose lawless deeds are forgiven ... whose sins are covered

"who have broken the law, but the Lord has forgiven ... whose sins the Lord has covered". See Psalm 32:1 and Psalm 32:2.

#### Romans 4:9

##### Then is this blessing pronounced only on those of the circumcision, or also on those of the uncircumcision?

"I want to show you how it is that God blesses not only those who are circumcised, but also those who are not circumcised"

##### those of the circumcision

"the Jews"

##### those of the uncircumcision

"the Gentiles"

##### Faith was counted to Abraham as righteousness

"God considered the faith of Abraham as righteousness"

#### Romans 4:10

##### How was it counted to him? Was it before or after he had been circumcised? It was not after, but before!

"This is when righteousness was counted to him: it was not after he had been circumcised, but before!"

##### How was it counted to him?

"How did God consider Abraham to be righteous?"

##### It was not after, but before

"It happened before he was circumcised, not after he was circumcised"

#### Romans 4:11

##### a seal of the righteousness that he had by faith while he was still uncircumcised

"a visible sign that God considered him righteous because he had believed in God before he was circumcised"

##### so that righteousness would be counted to them

"so that God would consider them righteous"

#### Romans 4:12

##### He is also the father of the circumcised

Here "the circumcision" refers to Jews.

##### who also walk in the footsteps of the faith that our father Abraham had

"who follow our father Abraham's example in the faith that he had" or "who have faith as our father Abraham did"

#### Romans 4:13

##### law but through the righteousness of faith

"law, but the promise came through faith, which God considers as righteousness"

#### Romans 4:14

##### heirs

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member.

##### if those who live by the law are to be the heirs

"if those who obey the law are the ones who will inherit the earth"

##### faith is made empty, and the promise does nothing

"faith has no value, and the promise is meaningless"

#### Romans 4:15

##### there is no transgression

"no one has disobeyed the law"

#### Romans 4:16

##### it is by faith

"it is by faith that we receive the promise" or "we receive the promise by faith"

##### in order that the promise may rest on grace

"so that what he promised might be a free gift"

##### those who are under the law

This refers to the Jewish people, who were obligated to obey the law of Moses.

##### those who share the faith of Abraham

"those who believe as Abraham did"

##### father of us all

Here the word "us" refers to Paul and includes all Jewish and non-Jewish believers in Christ. Abraham is the physical ancestor of the Jewish people, but he is also the spiritual father of those who have faith.

#### Romans 4:17

##### as it is written

"as someone has written in the Scriptures"

##### I have appointed you

Here the word "you" is singular and refers to Abraham.

##### calls the things that do not exist into existence

"creates everything from nothing"

#### Romans 4:18

##### In hope he believed against hope

"Even though it seemed to be impossible for him to have descendants, Abraham believed God and confidently expected"

##### according to what he had been told

"just as God said to Abraham"

##### So will your descendants be

"You will have more descendants than you can count"

#### Romans 4:21

##### He was fully convinced

"Abraham was completely sure"

##### he was also able to accomplish

"God was able to do"

#### Romans 4:22

##### Therefore this was also "counted to him as righteousness."

"Therefore God counted Abraham's belief as righteousness" or "Therefore God considered Abraham righteous because Abraham believed him"

#### Romans 4:23

##### for his sake alone

"for Abraham only"

##### it was counted to him

"God counted righteousness to him" or "God considered him righteous"

#### Romans 4:24

##### for us

The word "us" refers to Paul and includes all believers in Christ.

##### it will be counted to us who believe in him

"God will count righteousness to us who believe in him" or "God will consider us righteous if we believe in him"

##### him who raised Jesus our Lord from the dead

"him who caused Jesus our Lord to live again"

#### Romans 4:25

##### who was delivered up for our trespasses and was raised for our justification

"whom God gave over to enemies for our trespasses and whom God brought back to life so he could make us right with him"

Chapter 5

1Since we are justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.2Through him we also have our access by faith into this grace in which we stand, and we boast in the hope of the glory of God.3Not only this, but we also boast in our tribulations. We know that tribulation brings about perseverance.4Perseverance produces character, and character produces hope,5and hope does not make ashamed because the love of God has been poured into our hearts through the Holy Spirit, who was given to us.6For while we were still weak, at the right time Christ died for the ungodly.7For one will hardly die for a righteous person, though perhaps someone would dare to die for a good person.8But God proves his own love toward us, because while we were still sinners, Christ died for us.9Much more, then, now that we are justified by his blood, we will be saved by him from the wrath of God.10For if, while we were enemies, we were reconciled to God through the death of his Son, much more, after having been reconciled, will we be saved by his life.11Not only this, but we also rejoice in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, through whom we now have received this reconciliation.

12So then, as through one man sin entered into the world, in this way death entered through sin. And death spread to all people, because all sinned.13For until the law, sin was in the world, but there is no accounting for sin when there is no law.14Nevertheless, death reigned from Adam until Moses, even over those who did not sin like Adam's disobedience, who is a pattern of him who was to come.

15But the gift is not like the trespass. For if by the trespass of one the many died, how much more did the grace of God and the gift by the grace of the one man, Jesus Christ, abound for the many!16For the gift is not like the outcome of that one man's sin. The judgment followed one trespass and brought condemnation, but the gift followed many trespasses and brought justification.17For if, by the trespass of the one, death ruled through the one, how much more will those who receive the abundance of grace and the gift of righteousness reign in life through the one, Jesus Christ.18So then, as one trespass led to condemnation for all people, so also through the one act of righteousness came justification and life for all people.19For as through the one man's disobedience the many were made sinners, even so through the obedience of the one will the many be made righteous.20But the law came in to increase the trespass. But where sin abounded, grace abounded even more.21This happened so that, as sin reigned in death, even so grace might reign through righteousness for everlasting life through Jesus Christ our Lord.

#### Romans 5:1

##### we ... our

All occurrences of "we" and "our" refer to all believers and should be inclusive.

##### Lord

Here "Lord" means that Jesus is God.

#### Romans 5:2

##### Through him we also have our access by faith into this grace in which we stand

"Because we trust in Jesus, God allows us to come into his presence"

##### we boast in the hope of the glory of God

"we rejoice because we confidently expect to share in the glory of God"

#### Romans 5:3

##### tribulation brings about perseverance

"suffering helps us learn to endure"

#### Romans 5:4

##### Perseverance produces character

"We develop character when we endure hardship"

##### character

the desire and ability to do what is right

##### character produces hope

"character helps us to trust God"

#### Romans 5:5

##### our ... us

These words refer to all believers and should be inclusive.

##### hope does not make ashamed

"we are very confident that we will receive the things that we wait for"

##### make ashamed

"make us ashamed"

##### because the love of God has been poured into our hearts

"because he has loved us greatly" or "because God has shown us how much he loves us"

#### Romans 5:7

##### For one will hardly die for a righteous person

"It is hard to find someone who is willing to die, even for a righteous person"

##### though perhaps someone would dare to die for a good person

"but you might find someone who is willing to die for such a good person"

#### Romans 5:9

##### Much more, then, now that we are justified by his blood, we will be saved

"Now that we are justified by his blood, we will more certainly be saved"

##### now that we are justified by his blood

"now that God has made us right with himself because of the sacrificial death of Jesus on the cross"

##### saved

God forgives us and rescues us from being punished in hell for our sin.

##### the wrath of God

"God's punishment"

#### Romans 5:10

##### his Son ... his life

"God's Son ... the life of God's Son"

##### we were reconciled to God through the death of his Son

"God allowed us to have a peaceful relationship with him because his Son died for us"

##### Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### after having been reconciled

"now that God has made us his friends again"

#### Romans 5:12

##### through one man sin entered ... death entered through sin

Paul describes sin as a dangerous thing that came into the world through the actions of "one man," Adam. This sin then became an opening through which death, pictured here as another dangerous thing, also came into the world.

#### Romans 5:13

##### For until the law, sin was in the world

"People in the world sinned before God gave his law to Moses"

##### but there is no accounting for sin when there is no law

"but God recorded no sin against the law before he gave the law"

#### Romans 5:14

##### death reigned from Adam until Moses

"people continued to die from the time of Adam until the time of Moses as a consequence of their sin"

##### Moses, even over those who did not sin like Adam's disobedience, who is

"Moses. Even people whose sins were different from Adam's continued to die, Adam being"

##### who is a pattern of him who was to come

Adam was a pattern of Christ, who appeared much later. He had much in common with him.

#### Romans 5:15

##### how much more did the grace of God and the gift by the grace of the one man, Jesus Christ, abound for the many

"even more through the man Jesus Christ, who died for us all, did God kindly offer us this gift of everlasting life, although we do not deserve it"

#### Romans 5:16

##### For the gift is not like the outcome of that one man's sin

"The gift is not like the result of Adam's sin"

##### The judgment followed one trespass and brought condemnation

"After one man trespassed, God judged all people and condemned them to be punished" or "God declared that all people deserved to have him punish them because one man committed one sin"

##### but the gift followed many trespasses and brought justification

"but after people trespassed many times, God gave the gift and justified them" or "but the gift is greater because he gave it after many people had committed many sins, and by giving the gift he justified them"

#### Romans 5:17

##### trespass of the one

This refers to the sin of Adam.

##### death ruled

"everyone died"

#### Romans 5:18

##### as one trespass led to condemnation for all people

"as all people are condemned because one person sinned against God"

##### one trespass

This refers to Adam's sin.

##### condemnation for all people

"all people deserve God's punishment for sin"

##### through the one act of righteousness came justification and life for all people

"one act of righteousness allows all people to be justified and live" or "all people can be justified and live because one person did that one righteous act"

##### the one act of righteousness

This refers to Jesus's obedience to God in dying for our sins.

#### Romans 5:19

##### the many were made sinners

"many people sinned"

##### the obedience of the one

the obedience of Jesus

##### of the one will the many be made righteous

"of the one, God will make many people right with him"

#### Romans 5:20

##### the law came in

"God gave his law to Moses"

##### sin abounded

"sin increased"

##### grace abounded even more

"God continued to act even more kindly toward them, in a way that they did not deserve"

#### Romans 5:21

##### sin reigned in death ... grace might reign through righteousness for everlasting life

"as people obeyed their desire to sin and therefore had to die ... God might show grace to people and allow them to be right with him, resulting in everlasting life"

##### our Lord

Paul includes himself, his readers, and all believers.

Chapter 6

1What then will we say? Should we continue in sin so that grace may abound?2May it never be. We who died to sin, how can we still live in it?3Do you not know that as many as were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death?4We were buried, then, with him through baptism into death. This happened in order that just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, so also we might walk in newness of life.5For if we have become united with him in the likeness of his death, we will also be united with his resurrection.6We know this, that our old man was crucified with him in order that the body of sin might be destroyed. This happened so that we should no longer be enslaved to sin.7He who has died is declared righteous with respect to sin.8But if we have died with Christ, we believe that we will also live together with him.9We know that since Christ has been raised from the dead, he cannot die again; death no longer rules over him.10For in regard to the death that he died to sin, he died once for all. However, the life that he lives, he lives for God.11In the same way, you also must consider yourselves to be dead to sin, but alive to God in Christ Jesus.

12Therefore do not let sin rule in your mortal body so that you obey its lusts.13Do not present the members of your bodies to sin, to be tools used for unrighteousness. But present yourselves to God as those who have been brought from death to life, and present the members of your bodies to God as tools to be used for righteousness.14Do not allow sin to rule over you. For you are not under law, but under grace.

15What then? Are we to sin because we are not under law, but under grace? May it never be.16Do you not know that if you present yourselves as slaves, you are slaves to the one whom you obey? You are either slaves to sin, which leads to death, or slaves to obedience, which leads to righteousness.17But thanks be to God! For you were slaves of sin, but you have obeyed from the heart the pattern of teaching that you were given.18You have been made free from sin, and you have been made slaves of righteousness.19I speak like a man because of the weakness of your flesh. For just as you presented the members of your bodies as slaves to uncleanness and to lawlessness, resulting in more lawlessness, in the same way, now present the members of your bodies as slaves to righteousness for sanctification.20For when you were slaves of sin, you were free from righteousness.21At that time, what fruit then did you have of the things of which you are now ashamed? For the outcome of those things is death.22But now that you have been made free from sin and are enslaved to God, you have your fruit for sanctification. The result is eternal life.23For the wages of sin are death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.

#### Romans 6:1

##### What then will we say? Should we continue in sin so that grace may abound?

"So, what should we say about all of this? We certainly should not keep on sinning so that God will give us more and more grace!

##### we say

The pronoun "we" refers to Paul, his readers, and other people.

#### Romans 6:2

##### We who died to sin, how can we still live in it?

"We are now like dead people on whom sin has no effect! So we certainly should not keep on sinning!"

#### Romans 6:3

##### Do you not know that as many as were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death?

"Remember, when someone baptized us to show that we have a relationship with Christ, this also shows that we died with Christ on the cross!

#### Romans 6:4

##### We were buried, then, with him through baptism into death

"When someone baptized us, it is just like that person buried us with Christ in the tomb"

##### just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, so also we might walk in newness of life

"just as the Father brought Jesus back to life after he died, we might have new spiritual life and obey God"

##### the dead

All those who have died. To be raised from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

#### Romans 6:5

##### become united with him in the likeness of his death ... be united with his resurrection

"died with him ... come back to life with him". Paul compares our union with Christ to death. Those who are joined with Christ in death will share in his resurrection.

#### Romans 6:6

##### our old man was crucified with him

"our sinful person died on the cross with Jesus"

##### old man

This means the person who once was, but who does not exist now.

##### the body of sin

"our sinful nature"

##### might be destroyed

"might die"

##### we should no longer be enslaved to sin

"sin should no longer enslave us" or "we should no longer be controlled by sin"

#### Romans 6:7

##### He who has died is declared righteous with respect to sin

"When God declares a person right with him, that person is no longer controlled by sin"

#### Romans 6:8

##### we have died with Christ

Here "died" refers to the fact that believers are no longer controlled by sin.

#### Romans 6:9

##### We know that since Christ has been raised from the dead

"We know since God brought Christ back to life after he died"

##### death no longer rules over him

"He cannot ever die again"

#### Romans 6:10

##### he died once for all

Possible meanings are 1) he died once, and he will not die again, nor will anyone else need to die, or 2) it is true now and will be true for all time that he died.

#### Romans 6:11

##### consider yourselves to be

"think of yourselves as" or "see yourselves as"

##### dead to sin

"as if you were dead to the power of sin"

##### dead to sin, but alive to God

"dead to the power of sin, but living to honor God"

##### alive to God in Christ Jesus

"living to honor God through the power Christ Jesus gives you"

#### Romans 6:12

##### do not let sin rule in your mortal body

"Do not let sinful desires control you"

##### your mortal body

"you"

##### so that you obey its lusts

Obeying the mortal body's lusts would be the result of letting sin rule in the body. That is why Paul commands people not to let sin rule in their mortal body—so they do not obey its lusts.

#### Romans 6:13

##### Do not present the members of your bodies to sin, to be tools used for unrighteousness

"Do not offer yourselves to sin so that you do what is not right"

##### But present yourselves to God as those who have been brought from death to life

"But offer yourselves to God because he has given you new spiritual life" or "But offer yourselves to God as those who had died and are now alive"

##### present the members of your bodies to God as tools to be used for righteousness

"let God use you for what is pleasing to him"

#### Romans 6:14

##### Do not allow sin to rule over you

"Do not let sinful desires control what you do" or "Do not allow yourselves to do the sinful things you want to do"

##### For you are not under law

"For you are no longer bound to the law of Moses, which could not give you the power to stop sinning"

##### but under grace

"but you are bound to God's grace, which does give you the power to stop sinning"

#### Romans 6:15

##### What then? Are we to sin because we are not under law, but under grace? May it never be

"However, just because we are bound to grace instead of the law of Moses certainly does not mean we are allowed to sin"

##### May it never be

"We would never want that to happen!" or "May God help me not to do that!"

#### Romans 6:16

##### Do you not know that if you present yourselves as slaves, you are slaves to the one whom you obey?

"You should know that if you present yourselves as slaves to anyone, you are slaves to whomever you obey!"

#### Romans 6:17

##### For you were slaves of sin

"you were like slaves of sin"

##### but you have obeyed from the heart

"but you truly obeyed"

##### the pattern of teaching that you were given

"the teaching that Christian leaders gave you"

#### Romans 6:18

##### You have been made free from sin

"Christ has freed you from sin" or "You have been made free from sin's control over you"

##### you have been made slaves of righteousness

"you have been made like slaves of righteousness"

#### Romans 6:19

##### I speak like a man

"I am speaking about this in human terms" or "I am using examples from everyday life"

##### because of the weakness of your flesh

"because you do not fully understand spiritual things"

##### presented the members of your bodies as slaves to uncleanness and to lawlessness

"offered yourselves as slaves to everything that is evil and not pleasing to God"

##### present the members of your bodies as slaves to righteousness for sanctification

"offer yourselves as slaves to what is right before God so that he might set you apart and give you the power to serve him"

#### Romans 6:20

##### you were free from righteousness

"you behaved as though you did not have to do what was right"

#### Romans 6:21

##### At that time, what fruit then did you have of the things of which you are now ashamed?

"Nothing good came from those things that now cause you shame." or "You gained nothing by doing those things that now cause you shame."

#### Romans 6:22

##### But now that you have been made free from sin and are enslaved to God

"But now that you have become free from sin and have become God's slaves" or "But now that God has freed you from sin and made you his slaves"

##### But now that you have been made free from sin

"But now that God has made you able not to sin"

##### and are enslaved to God

"and God has made you able to serve him"

##### you have your fruit for sanctification

"the benefit is your sanctification" or "the benefit is that you live in a holy way"

##### The result is eternal life

"The result of all of this is that you will live forever with God"

#### Romans 6:23

##### For the wages of sin are death

"For if you continue sinning, God will punish you with spiritual death"

##### but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord

"but God gives eternal life to those who belong to Christ Jesus our Lord"

Chapter 7

1Or do you not know, brothers (for I am speaking to people who know about law), that the law rules over a person for whatever time he lives?2For the married woman is bound by law to the husband while he lives, but if the husband dies, she is released from the law of marriage.3So then, while her husband is living, if she lives with another man, she will be called an adulteress. But if the husband dies, she is free from the law, so she is not an adulteress if she lives with another man.4Therefore, my brothers, you were also made dead to the law through the body of Christ. This is so that you could be joined to another, that is, to him who was raised from the dead, in order that we might produce fruit for God.5For when we were in the flesh, the sinful passions, aroused by the law, were at work in the members of our bodies to bear fruit for death.6But now we have been released from the law. We have died to that by which we were bound. This is so that we might serve in newness of the Spirit, and not in oldness of the letter.

7What will we say then? Is the law itself sin? May it never be. However, I would never have known sin, if it were not through the law. For I would not have known covetousness unless the law said, "You must not covet."8But sin took the opportunity through the commandment and produced every kind of coveting in me. For apart from the law, sin was dead.9At one time I was alive without the law, but when the commandment came, sin regained life10and I died. The commandment that was to bring life turned out to be death for me.11For sin took the opportunity through the commandment and deceived me. Through the commandment it killed me.12So the law is holy, and the commandment is holy, righteous, and good.

13So did what is good become death to me? May it never be. But sin, in order that it might be shown to be sin, brought about death in me through what was good, and through the commandment sin might become sinful beyond measure.14For we know that the law is spiritual, but I am of the flesh. I have been sold under slavery to sin.15For what I do, I do not really understand. For what I want to do, I do not do, and what I hate, I do.16But if I do what I do not want, I agree with the law that the law is good.17But now it is no longer I who do it, but the sin that lives in me.18For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh) lives no good thing. For the desire for good is with me, but I cannot do it.19For the good that I want, I do not do, but the evil that I do not want, that I do.20Now if I do what I do not want to do, then it is no longer I who am acting, but rather sin that lives in me.21So, I find this law: When I want to do good, evil is present with me.22For I rejoice in the law of God with my inner person.23But I see a different law in the members of my body. It fights against that new law in my mind. It takes me captive by the law of sin that is in the members of my body.24I am a miserable man! Who will deliver me from this body of death?25But thanks be to God through Jesus Christ our Lord! So then, I myself serve the law of God with my mind. However, with the flesh I serve the law of sin.

#### Romans 7:1

##### Or do you not know, brothers ... that the law rules over a person for whatever time he lives?

"So you certainly know brothers ... that people have to obey laws only while they are alive"

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

#### Romans 7:2

##### the married woman is bound by law to the husband

"according to the law, the married woman is united to the husband"

#### Romans 7:3

##### she will be called an adulteress

"God will consider her an adulteress" or "people will call her an adulteress"

##### she is free from the law

"she does not have to obey that law"

#### Romans 7:4

##### you were also made dead to the law through the body of Christ

"you also died to the law when through Christ you died on the cross"

##### to him who was raised from the dead

"to him whom God raised from the dead" or "to him whom God caused to live again"

##### we might produce fruit for God

"we might be able to do things pleasing to God"

#### Romans 7:5

##### to bear fruit for death

"which resulted in spiritual death" or "the outcome of which was our own spiritual death"

#### Romans 7:6

##### we have been released from the law

"God has released us from the law"

##### to that by which we were bound

"to the law, which bound us"

##### the letter

"the law of Moses"

#### Romans 7:7

##### May it never be

"Of course that is not true!"

##### sin

"my desire to sin"

#### Romans 7:8

##### coveting

This word includes both the desire to have what belongs to other people and wrong sexual desire.

##### apart from the law, sin was dead

"if there were no law, there would be no breaking of the law, so there would be no sin"

#### Romans 7:9

##### sin regained life

"I realized that I was sinning" or "I strongly desired to sin"

#### Romans 7:10

##### The commandment that was to bring life turned out to be death for me

"God gave me the commandment so I would live, but it killed me instead"

#### Romans 7:11

##### For sin took the opportunity through the commandment and deceived me. Through the commandment it killed me

"Because I wanted to sin, I deceived myself into thinking that I could sin and obey the commandment at the same time, but God punished me for disobeying the commandment by separating me from him"

##### took the opportunity through the commandment

Paul is comparing sin to a person who can act.

##### it killed me

"it separated me from God"

#### Romans 7:12

##### the law is holy

Possible meanings are that it is holy because 1) it comes from God or 2) it reveals God's true nature.

#### Romans 7:13

##### what is good

This refers to God's law.

##### become death to me

"cause me to die"

##### brought about death in me

"separated me from God". Paul speaks of being separated from God as if he were literally dead.

##### through the commandment

"because I disobeyed the commandment"

#### Romans 7:15

##### For what I do, I do not really understand

"I am not sure why I do some of the things that I do"

##### what I want to do, I do not do

"I do not always do what I want to do"

##### what I hate, I do

"the things that I know are not good are the things that I sometimes do"

#### Romans 7:16

##### I agree with the law that the law is good

"I agree with God that the law is good"

#### Romans 7:20

##### rather sin that lives in me

Paul speaks of "sin" as if it were alive and living inside him.

#### Romans 7:21

##### this law: When I want to do good, evil is present with me

The words "this law" refer to the natural human desire to rebel against God and disobey him. Paul calls this a law because he has observed that this is the way people live. It is not a collection of written commands.

##### evil is present with me

Paul speaks of evil here as if it were alive and living with him.

#### Romans 7:22

##### with my inner person

"with my heart" or "with my soul"

#### Romans 7:23

##### a different law

These words refer to the natural human desire to rebel against God and disobey him. Paul calls this a law because he has observed that this is the way people live. It is not a collection of written commands.

##### in the members of my body

"in my actions" or "in my behviors"

##### that new law in my mind

These words refer to the law of Moses, which was God's commands in written form.

#### Romans 7:24

##### Who will deliver me from this body of death?

"I want someone to set me free from the control of what my body desires!"

#### Romans 7:25

##### So then, I myself serve the law of God with my mind. However, with the flesh I serve the law of sin

"My mind chooses to please God by obeying the law of Moses, but my flesh chooses to disobey God and sin"

Chapter 8

1There is therefore now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus.2For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus has set you free from the law of sin and death.3For what the law was unable to do because it was weak through the flesh, God did. He sent his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh to be an offering for sin, and he condemned sin in the flesh.4He did this in order that the requirements of the law might be fulfilled in us, we who walk not according to the flesh, but according to the Spirit.5Those who live according to the flesh set their minds on the things of the flesh, but those who live according to the Spirit set their minds on the things of the Spirit.6For the mind set on the flesh is death, but the mind set on the Spirit is life and peace.7The mind set on the flesh is hostile toward God, for it does not submit to God's law, nor is it able to do so.8Those who are in the flesh cannot please God.9However, you are not in the flesh but in the Spirit, if indeed God's Spirit lives in you. But if anyone does not have the Spirit of Christ, he does not belong to him.10If Christ is in you, the body is dead with respect to sin, but the spirit is alive with respect to righteousness.11If the Spirit of him who raised Jesus from the dead lives in you, he who raised Christ from the dead will give life also to your mortal bodies through his Spirit, who lives in you.

12So then, brothers, we are debtors, but not to the flesh to live according to the flesh.13For if you live according to the flesh, you are about to die, but if by the Spirit you put to death the body's actions, you will live.14For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, these are sons of God.15You did not receive a spirit of slavery so that you live in fear again; but you received the Spirit of adoption, by which we cry, "Abba, Father!"16The Spirit himself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God.17If we are children, then we are also heirs—heirs of God. And we are joint heirs with Christ, if indeed we suffer with him so that we may also be glorified with him.

18For I consider that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory that will be revealed to us.19For the eager expectation of the creation waits for the revealing of the sons of God.20For the creation was subjected to futility, not of its own will, but because of him who subjected it, in hope21that the creation itself will be delivered from slavery to decay, and that it will be brought into the freedom of the glory of the children of God.22For we know that the whole creation groans and labors in pain together even now.23Not only that, but even we ourselves, who have the firstfruits of the Spirit, groan inwardly, as we wait eagerly for our adoption, the redemption of our body.24For in this hope we were saved. Now hope that is seen is not hope. For who hopes for what he can see?25But if we hope for what we do not see, we wait for it with patience.

26In the same way, the Spirit also helps in our weakness. For we do not know how we should pray, but the Spirit himself intercedes for us with inexpressible groans.27He who searches out the hearts knows the mind of the Spirit, because he intercedes on behalf of God's holy people according to the will of God.28We know that for those who love God, he works all things together for good, [1](#footnote-target-1) for those who are called according to his purpose.29Because those whom he foreknew he also predestined to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brothers.30Those whom he predestined, these he also called. Those whom he called, these he also justified. Those whom he justified, these he also glorified.

31What, therefore, can we say about these things? If God is for us, who is against us?32He who did not spare his own Son but delivered him up on behalf of us all, how will he not also with him freely give us all things?33Who will bring any accusation against God's chosen ones? God is the one who justifies.34Who is the one who condemns? Christ Jesus is the one who died—more than that, who was raised—who is at the right hand of God, and who also is interceding for us.35Who will separate us from the love of Christ? Tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or hunger, or nakedness, or danger, or sword?36Just as it is written,  
  
"For your benefit we are killed all day long.We were considered as sheep for the slaughter."

37In all these things we are more than conquerors through the one who loved us.38For I have been convinced that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor governments, nor things present, nor things to come, nor powers,39nor height, nor depth, nor any other created thing, will be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Instead of he works all things together for good , some Greek copies read, all things work together for good .

#### Romans 8:1

##### There is therefore now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus

"God will not condemn and punish those who are joined to Christ Jesus"

##### There is therefore now

"For that reason, there is now"

#### Romans 8:2

##### the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus

"God's Spirit in Christ Jesus"

##### has set you free from the law of sin and death

"has caused the law of sin and death to no longer control you"

##### the law of sin and death

"the law which causes sin and death"

#### Romans 8:3

##### For what the law was unable to do because it was weak through the flesh, God did

"For the law did not have the power to stop us from sinning, because the power of sin within us was too strong. But God did stop us from sinning"

##### through the flesh

"because of people's sinful nature"

##### He ... sent his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh ... an offering for sin ... he condemned sin

The Son of God forever satisfied God's holy anger against our sin by giving his own body and human life as the eternal sacrifice for sin.

##### Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### in the likeness of sinful flesh

"who looked like a sinful human being"

##### to be an offering for sin

"so that he could die as a sacrifice for our sins"

##### he condemned sin in the flesh

"in Christ's flesh God condemned sin" or "by Christ's death God broke the power of the sin"

#### Romans 8:4

##### we who walk not according to the flesh

"we who do not obey our sinful desires"

##### but according to the Spirit

"but who obey the Holy Spirit"

#### Romans 8:6

##### the mind set on the flesh ... the mind set on the Spirit

"the way sinful people think ... the way people who listen to the Holy Spirit think"

##### death

Here this means the separation of a person from God.

#### Romans 8:8

##### Those who are in the flesh

This refers to people who do what their sinful nature tells them to do.

#### Romans 8:9

##### in the flesh

"acting according to your sinful natures."

##### in the Spirit

"acting according to the Holy Spirit"

#### Romans 8:10

##### If Christ is in you

"If Christ lives in you through the Holy Spirit"

##### the body is dead with respect to sin

Possible meanings are 1) a person is spiritually dead to the power of sin or 2) the physical body will still die because of sin.

##### the spirit is alive with respect to righteousness

Possible meanings are 1) a person is spiritually alive because God has given him power to do what is right or 2) God will bring the person back to life after he dies because God is righteous and gives believers eternal life.

#### Romans 8:11

##### of him who raised ... from the dead lives

"of God, who caused Jesus to live again"

##### mortal bodies through his Spirit

"physical bodies through his Spirit" or "bodies, which will die someday, through his Spirit"

#### Romans 8:12

##### So then

"Because what I have just told you is true"

##### but not to the flesh to live according to the flesh

"but we are not debtors to the flesh, and we do not have to obey our sinful desires"

#### Romans 8:13

##### For if you live according to the flesh

"Because if you live only to please your sinful desires"

##### you are about to die

"you will certainly be separated from God"

##### but if by the Spirit you put to death the body's actions

"but if by the power of the Holy Spirit you stop obeying your sinful desires"

#### Romans 8:14

##### For as many as are led by the Spirit of God

"For all the people whom the Spirit of God leads"

##### sons of God

Here this means all believers in Jesus and is often translated as "children of God."

#### Romans 8:15

##### Abba, Father

"Abba" is "Father" in the Aramaic language.

#### Romans 8:17

##### heirs of God

"and we also will one day receive what God has promised us"

##### we are joint heirs with Christ

"we will also receive what God has promised us and Christ together"

##### that we may also be glorified with him

"that God may glorify us along with him"

#### Romans 8:18

##### I consider that ... are not worthy to be compared with

"I cannot compare ... with"

##### will be revealed

"God will make known"

#### Romans 8:19

##### the eager expectation of the creation waits for

Paul describes everything that God created as a person who eagerly waits for something.

##### for the revealing of the sons of God

"for the time when God will reveal his children"

##### sons of God

Here this means all believers in Jesus. You can also translate this as "children of God."

#### Romans 8:20

##### For the creation was subjected to futility

"For God caused what he had created to be unable to achieve what he intended"

##### not of its own will, but because of him who subjected it

"not because this is what the created things wanted, but because it is what God wanted"

##### in hope

"confidently expecting" or "confidently waiting"

#### Romans 8:21

##### the creation itself will be delivered

"God will save creation"

##### from slavery to decay

"from being like a slave to decay"

##### that it will be brought into the freedom of the glory of the children of God

"that it will become gloriously free from decay like the children of God"

#### Romans 8:22

##### For we know that the whole creation groans and labors in pain together even now

"For we know that everything that God created wants to be free and groans for it the way a woman giving birth groans for her baby to be born"

#### Romans 8:23

##### as we wait eagerly for our adoption, the redemption of our body

"as we wait eagerly for God to adopt us and redeem our bodies"

#### Romans 8:24

##### in this hope we were saved

"we were saved that we might trust God to do this"

##### this hope

The phrase "this hope" refers to the hope of our adoption, the redemption of our bodies (8:23).

##### Now hope that is seen is not hope

"If we already have what we hope for, that is not hope" or "If we have what we want, we would not say that we hope for it"

#### Romans 8:25

##### if we hope for what we do not see

"if we trust God for what we do not yet have"

#### Romans 8:26

##### inexpressible groans

"groanings that we cannot express in words"

#### Romans 8:27

##### He who searches out the hearts knows

"God, who knows what all our thoughts and feelings are, knows"

#### Romans 8:28

##### for those who are called

"for those whom God chose"

#### Romans 8:29

##### those whom he foreknew

"those whom he knew before he even created them"

##### he also predestined to be conformed

"he also planned in advance that they would be conformed"

##### to be conformed to the image of his Son

"that he would change them to be like his Son"

##### Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### that he might be the firstborn

"so that his Son would be the firstborn"

##### among many brothers

"among many brothers and sisters who belong to the family of God"

#### Romans 8:30

##### Those whom he predestined

"Those whom God made plans for in advance"

##### these he also justified

"these he also put right with himself"

##### these he also glorified

"these he will also glorify"

#### Romans 8:31

##### What, therefore, can we say about these things? If God is for us, who is against us?

"This is what we should know from all of this: since God is helping us, no one can defeat us."

#### Romans 8:32

##### He who did not spare his own Son

God the Father sent the Son of God, Jesus Christ, to the cross as the holy, infinite sacrifice necessary to satisfy God's infinite, holy nature against the sin of humanity. These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### but delivered him up

"but put him under the control of his enemies"

##### how will he not also with him freely give us all things?

"he will certainly and freely give us all things!"

#### Romans 8:33

##### Who will bring any accusation against God's chosen ones? God is the one who justifies

"No one can accuse us before God because he is the one who makes us right with him"

#### Romans 8:34

##### Who is the one who condemns?

"No one will condemn us!"

##### who is at the right hand of God

"who is at the place of honor beside God"

#### Romans 8:35

##### Who will separate us from the love of Christ?

"No one will ever separate us from the love of Christ!" or "Nothing will ever separate us from the love of Christ!"

##### Tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or hunger, or nakedness, or danger, or sword?

"Even if people cause us trouble, hurt us, take away our clothes and food, or kill us, they cannot separate us from the love of Christ."

##### Tribulation, or distress

These words both mean the same thing.

#### Romans 8:36

##### For your benefit

"For you"

##### we are killed all day long

"our enemies continually seek to kill us"

##### We were considered as sheep for the slaughter

"Our lives have no more value to them than the sheep they kill"

#### Romans 8:37

##### we are more than conquerors

"we have complete victory"

##### through the one who loved us

"because of Jesus, who loved us so much he was willing to die for us"

#### Romans 8:38

##### I have been convinced

"I am convinced"

##### governments

Possible meanings are 1) demons or 2) human kings and rulers.

##### nor powers

Possible meanings are 1) spiritual beings with power or 2) human beings with power.

Chapter 9

1I tell the truth in Christ. I do not lie, and my conscience bears witness with me in the Holy Spirit2that for me there is great sorrow and unceasing pain in my heart.3For I could wish that I myself would be cursed and set apart from Christ for the sake of my brothers, my kinsmen according to the flesh.4They are Israelites. They have adoption, the glory, the covenants, the gift of the law, the ministry in the temple, and the promises.5Theirs are the patriarchs from whom Christ has come with respect to the flesh—he who is God over all. May he be praised forever. Amen.

6But it is not as though the word of God has failed. For it is not everyone in Israel who truly belongs to Israel.7Neither are all Abraham's descendants truly his children. But "It is through Isaac that your descendants will be called."8That is, the children of the flesh are not the children of God. But the children of the promise are regarded as descendants.9For this is the word of promise: "At this time I will come, and a son will be given to Sarah."10Not only this, but after Rebekah also had conceived by one man, our father Isaac—11for the children were not yet born and had not yet done anything good or bad, so that the purpose of God according to choice might stand,12not because of actions, but because of him who calls—it was said to her, "The older will serve the younger."13It is just as had been written: "Jacob I loved, but Esau I hated."

14What then will we say? Is there unrighteousness with God? May it never be.15For he says to Moses,   
  
"I will have mercy on whom I will have mercy, and I will have compassion on whom I will have compassion."

16So then, it is not because of him who wills, nor because of him who runs, but because of God, who shows mercy.17For the scripture says to Pharaoh, "For this very purpose I raised you up, so that I might demonstrate my power in you, and so that my name might be proclaimed in all the earth."18So then, God has mercy on whom he wishes, and whom he wishes, he makes stubborn.

19You will say then to me, "Why does he still find fault? For who has ever withstood his will?"20On the contrary, man, who are you who answers against God? Will what has been molded say to the one who molds it, "Why did you make me this way?"21Does the potter not have the right over the clay to make from the same lump a container for honorable use, and another container for dishonorable use?22What if God, who is willing to show his wrath and to make his power known, endured with much patience containers of wrath prepared for destruction?23What if he did this in order that he might make known the riches of his glory upon containers of mercy, which he had previously prepared for glory?24What if he did this also for us, whom he also called, not only from among the Jews, but also from among the Gentiles?25As he says also in Hosea:  
  
"I will call them 'my people' who were not my people,and her 'beloved' who was not beloved.26Then it will be that where it was said to them, 'You are not my people,'there they will be called 'sons of the living God.'"

27Isaiah cries out concerning Israel,  
  
"Though the number of the sons of Israel were as the sand of the sea,it will be a remnant that will be saved,28for the Lord will execute his word on the earth completely and without delay."

29As Isaiah had said previously,  
  
"If the Lord of hosts had not left us descendants,we would be like Sodom,and we would have become like Gomorrah."

30What will we say then? That the Gentiles, who were not pursuing righteousness, laid hold of righteousness, the righteousness by faith.31But Israel, who did pursue a law of righteousness, did not arrive at that law.32Why not? Because they did not pursue it by faith, but as if by works. They stumbled over the stone of stumbling,33as it has been written,  
  
"Look, I am laying in Zion a stone of stumblingand a rock of offense.He who believes in it will not be ashamed."

#### Romans 9:1

##### my conscience bears witness with me in the Holy Spirit

"the Holy Spirit controls my conscience and confirms what I say"

#### Romans 9:2

##### that for me there is great sorrow and unceasing pain in my heart

"that I grieve very greatly and deeply"

##### great sorrow and unceasing pain

Paul uses these two expressions together to emphasize how great his emotions are.

#### Romans 9:3

##### For I could wish that I myself would be cursed and set apart from Christ for the sake of my brothers, my kinsmen according to the flesh

"I personally would be willing to let God curse me and keep me apart from Christ forever if that would help my fellow Israelites, my own people group, to believe in Christ"

#### Romans 9:4

##### They are Israelites

"They, like me, are Israelites. God chose them to be Jacob's descendants"

##### They have adoption, the glory

"They have God as their father, and they have the glory"

#### Romans 9:6

##### But it is not as though the word of God has failed

"We should know that God has kept his promises"

##### For it is not everyone in Israel who truly belongs to Israel

God did not make his promises to all the physical descendants of Israel (or Jacob), but to his spiritual descendants, that is, those who trust in Jesus.

#### Romans 9:7

##### Neither are all Abraham's descendants truly his children

"Nor are they all children of God just because they are Abraham's descendants"

#### Romans 9:8

##### the children of the flesh are not

"not all of Abraham's descendants are"

##### children of God

This refers to people who are spiritual descendants, those who have faith in Jesus.

##### children of the promise

This refers to people who will inherit the promises that God gave to Abraham.

#### Romans 9:9

##### this is the word of promise

"these are the words God used when he made the promise"

##### a son will be given to Sarah

"I will give Sarah a son"

#### Romans 9:10

##### our father

Paul refers to Isaac as "our father" because Isaac was the ancestor of Paul and of the Jewish believers in Rome.

##### had conceived

"had become pregnant"

#### Romans 9:11

##### for the children were not yet born and had not yet done anything good or bad

"before the children were born and before they had done anything, whether good or bad"

##### so that the purpose of God according to choice might stand

"so that what God wants to happen according to His choice will happen"

#### Romans 9:12

##### because of him

because of God

##### it was said to her, "The older will serve the younger."

"God said to Rebekah, 'The older son will serve the younger son'"

#### Romans 9:13

##### Jacob I loved, but Esau I hated

God loved Jacob much more than he loved Esau. He did not literally hate Esau.

#### Romans 9:14

##### What then will we say?

Paul is using the question to get the attention of his readers.

##### Is there unrighteousness with God?

"Is God unrighteous?" or "Is God unjust?"

##### May it never be

"That is not possible!" or "Certainly not!" This expression strongly denies that this could happen. You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here.

#### Romans 9:15

##### For he says to Moses

"For God said to Moses". (see Exodus 33:19)

#### Romans 9:16

##### it is not because of him who wills, nor because of him who runs

"it is not because of what people want or because they try hard"

##### nor because of him who runs

Paul speaks of a person who does good things in order to gain God's favor as if that person were running a race.

#### Romans 9:17

##### For the scripture says

"The scripture records that God said"

##### I ... my

God is referring to himself.

##### I raised you up

"I made you the powerful man that you are"

##### so that my name might be proclaimed

"that people might proclaim my name"

##### my name

"how great I am" or "who I am"

##### in all the earth

"wherever there are people"

#### Romans 9:18

##### whom he wishes, he makes stubborn

"God makes stubborn whomever he wishes to make stubborn."

#### Romans 9:19

##### You will say then to me

Paul is talking to the critics of his teaching as though he were only talking to one person. You may need to use the plural here.

##### Why does he still find fault? For who has ever withstood his will?

"He should not find fault with us. No one has ever been able to withstand his will."

##### he ... his

The words "he" and "his" here refer to God.

##### has ... withstood his will

"has ... stopped him from doing what he wanted to do"

#### Romans 9:20

##### Will what has been molded say to the one who molds it, "Why ... way?"

"What a person has molded should never say to the one who molds it, 'Why ... way?'"

##### Why did you make me this way?

"You should not have made me this way!"

#### Romans 9:21

##### Does the potter not have the right ... for dishonorable use?

"The potter certainlly has the right ... for dishonorable use."

#### Romans 9:22

##### containers of wrath prepared for destruction

"people to whom he would show wrath and whom he will certainly destroy"

#### Romans 9:23

##### he ... his

The words "he" and "his" here refer to God.

##### containers of mercy, which

"those to whom he would show mercy, whom"

##### the riches of his glory upon

"his glory, which is of great value, upon"

##### which he had previously prepared for glory

"whom he prepared ahead of time in order that they might live with him"

#### Romans 9:24

##### called

Here "called" means God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.

#### Romans 9:25

##### As he says also in Hosea

"As God says also in the book that Hosea the prophet wrote". (see Hosea 2:23)

##### I will call them 'my people' who were not my people

"I will choose those who were not my people to be my people"

##### her 'beloved' who was not beloved

"I will choose her whom I did not love to be one whom I love"

#### Romans 9:26

##### sons of the living God

"children of the true God". (see Hosea 1:10)

#### Romans 9:27

##### cries out

"calls out"

##### as the sand of the sea

"too many to count". (see Isaiah 10:22)

#### Romans 9:28

##### the Lord will execute his word on the earth

"the Lord will punish people on the earth as he has said he will". (see Isaiah 10:23)

#### Romans 9:29

##### us ... we

Here the words "us" and "we" refer to Isaiah and those to whom he spoke.

##### we would be like Sodom, and we would have become like Gomorrah

"God would have destroyed all of us as he destroyed the people in the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah". (see Isaiah 1:9-10 and Isaiah 13:19)

#### Romans 9:30

##### That the Gentiles

"We will say that the Gentiles"

##### who were not pursuing righteousness

"who were not trying to get righteousness" or "who were not trying to be righteous"

##### righteousness, the righteousness by faith

"righteousness because God made them right with him when they trusted in Christ"

#### Romans 9:31

##### who did pursue a law of righteousness

"who tried to be righteous by obeying a law"

##### did not arrive at that law

"could not keep that law"

#### Romans 9:32

##### Why not? Because they

"Why could they not attain righteousness? Because they"

##### by works

"by keeping the Law"

#### Romans 9:33

##### as it has been written

"as Isaiah the prophet wrote". (see Isaiah 8:14 and Isaiah 28:16)

##### in Zion

"in Israel"

##### believes in it

"believes in him."

Chapter 10

1Brothers, my heart's desire and my plea to God is for them, for their salvation.2For I testify about them that they have a zeal for God, but not according to knowledge.3For, failing to understand the righteousness that comes from God, and seeking to establish their own righteousness, they did not submit to God's righteousness.4For Christ is the fulfillment of the law for righteousness for everyone who believes.5For Moses writes about the righteousness that comes from the law: "The man who does these things will live by them."6But the righteousness that comes from faith says this: "Do not say in your heart, 'Who will ascend into heaven?'" (that is, to bring Christ down);7"and do not say, 'Who will descend into the abyss?'" (that is, to bring Christ up from the dead).8But what does it say? "The word is near you, in your mouth and in your heart." That is the word of faith, which we proclaim.9For if with your mouth you confess Jesus as Lord, and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved.10For with the heart one believes and has righteousness, and with the mouth one confesses and is saved.11For scripture says, "Everyone who believes on him will not be put to shame."12For there is no difference between Jew and Greek. For the same Lord is Lord of all, and he is rich to all who call upon him.13For everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved.14How then can they call on him in whom they have not believed? How can they believe in him of whom they have not heard? How can they hear without a preacher?15Then how can they preach, unless they are sent?—As it is written, "How beautiful are the feet of those who proclaim good news!"

16But not all of them obeyed the good news. For Isaiah says, "Lord, who has believed our report?"17So faith comes from hearing, and hearing by the word of Christ.18But I say, "Did they not hear?" Yes, most certainly.  
  
"Their sound has gone out into all the earth,and their words to the ends of the world."

19Moreover, I say, "Did Israel not know?" First Moses says,  
  
"I will provoke you to jealousy by what is not a nation.By means of a nation without understanding, I will stir you up to anger."

20Then Isaiah was very bold when he says,  
  
"I was found by those who did not seek me.I appeared to those who did not ask for me."

21But to Israel he says,   
  
"All the day long I reached out my hands to a disobedient and stubborn people."

#### Romans 10:1

##### my heart's desire

"my greatest desire"

##### is for them, for their salvation

"is that God will save the Jews"

#### Romans 10:2

##### I testify about them

"I declare truthfully about them"

#### Romans 10:3

##### For, failing to understand the righteousness that comes from God

"For because they did not know how God puts people right with himself"

##### they did not submit to God’s righteousness.

"they did not accept God's way of putting people right with himself"

#### Romans 10:4

##### For Christ is the fulfillment of the law

"For Christ completely fulfilled the law"

##### law for righteousness for everyone who believes

"law, and he makes everyone who trusts in him right before God"

#### Romans 10:5

##### the righteousness that comes from the law

"how the law makes a person right before God"

##### "The man who does these things will live by them."

"The person who perfectly obeys the law will live because the law will make him right before God"

##### will live

The words "will live" can refer to 1) eternal life or 2) mortal life in fellowship with God.

#### Romans 10:6

##### But the righteousness that comes from faith says this

"But Moses writes this about how faith makes a person right before God". (see Deuteronomy 30:12-14)

##### Do not say in your heart

"Do not say to yourself"

##### Who will ascend into heaven?

"No one is able to go up to heaven"

##### that is, to bring Christ down

"in order that they might have Christ come down to earth"

#### Romans 10:7

##### Who will descend into the abyss?

"No person can go down and enter the place where the spirits of dead persons are."

##### the dead

All those who have died. To be brought up from among them is to become alive again.

#### Romans 10:8

##### But what does it say?

"But this is what Moses says". (see Deuteronomy 30:14)

##### The word is near you, in your mouth and in your heart

"You have heard the message. You know how to speak it, and you know what it means"

##### the word of faith

"God's message that tells us that we must believe in him"

#### Romans 10:9

##### if with your mouth you confess Jesus as Lord

"if you confess that Jesus is Lord"

##### believe in your heart

"believe in your mind" or "truly believe"

##### raised him from the dead

"caused him to live again"

##### you will be saved

"God will save you"

#### Romans 10:10

##### For with the heart one believes and has righteousness, and with the mouth one confesses and is saved

"For it is with the mind that a person trusts and is right before God, and it is with the mouth that a person confesses so that God saves him"

#### Romans 10:11

##### For scripture says

"For Isaiah wrote in the scripture". (see Isaiah 28:16)

#### Romans 10:13

##### For everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved

"The Lord will save everyone who trusts in him"

#### Romans 10:14

##### How then can they call on him in whom they have not believed?

"Those who do not believe in God cannot call on him!"

##### How can they believe in him of whom they have not heard?

"And they cannot believe in him if they have not heard his message!" or "And they cannot believe in him if they have not heard the message about him!"

##### believe in

trust and desire to obey

##### How can they hear without a preacher?

"And they cannot hear the message if someone does not tell them!"

#### Romans 10:15

##### How beautiful are the feet of those who proclaim good news

"How beautiful are even the feet of those who proclaim good news" or "It is wonderful when messengers go and tell others the good news". (see Isaiah 52:7 and Nahum 1:15)

#### Romans 10:16

##### not all of them obeyed

Here "they" refers to the Jews. "not all of the Jews obeyed"

##### Lord, who has believed our report?

"Lord, so many of them do not believe our message!". (see Isaiah 53:1)

#### Romans 10:17

##### So faith comes from hearing

"So a person believes in Christ by hearing the message about Christ"

##### and hearing by the word of Christ

"and a person hears the message by someone preaching the message about Christ"

#### Romans 10:18

##### But I say, "Did they not hear?" Yes, most certainly

"But, I say the Jews certainly have heard the message about Christ"

##### Their sound has gone out into all the earth, and their words to the ends of the world.

"As the Scriptures record, 'The sun, moon, and the stars are proof of God's power and glory, and everyone in the world sees them and knows the truth about God.'". (see Psalm 19:4)

#### Romans 10:19

##### Moreover, I say, "Did Israel not know?"

"Again I tell you the people of Israel did know the message."

##### First Moses says, "I will provoke you ... I will stir you up

"First Moses says that God will provoke you ... God will stir you up". (see Deuteronomy 32:21)

##### by what is not a nation

"by those you do not consider to be a real nation" or "by people who do not belong to any nation"

##### By means of a nation without understanding

"By a nation with people who do not know me or my commands"

##### I will stir you up to anger

"I will cause you to become angry"

#### Romans 10:20

##### I was found by those who did not seek me

"Even though the Gentile people will not look for me, they will find me". (see Isaiah 65:1)

##### I appeared

"I made myself known"

##### he says

"He" refers to God, who is speaking through Isaiah.

#### Romans 10:21

##### All the day long I

This phrase is used to emphasize God's continual effort. "I continually"

##### I reached out my hands to a disobedient and stubborn people

"I tried to welcome you and to help you, but you refused my help and continued to disobey". (see Isaiah 65:2)

Chapter 11

1I say then, did God reject his people? May it never be. For I also am an Israelite, a descendant of Abraham, of the tribe of Benjamin.2God did not reject his people, whom he foreknew. Do you not know what the scripture says about Elijah, how he pleaded with God against Israel?3"Lord, they have killed your prophets, they have broken down your altars. I alone am left, and they are seeking my life."4But what does God's answer say to him? "I have reserved for myself seven thousand men who have not bent the knee to Baal."5Even so then, at this present time also there is a remnant because of the choice of grace.6But if it is by grace, it is no longer based on works. Otherwise grace would no longer be grace. [1](#footnote-target-1)7What then? The thing that Israel was seeking, it did not obtain, but the chosen obtained it, and the rest were hardened.8It is just as it is written:   
  
"God has given them a spirit of dullness, eyes so that they should not see, and ears so that they should not hear, to this very day."

9Then David says,  
  
"Let their table become a snare and a trap,a stumbling block and a retribution for them.10Let their eyes be darkened so that they may not see,and bend their backs continually."

11I say then, "Did they stumble so as to fall?" May it never be. Instead, by their trespass, salvation has come to the Gentiles, in order to provoke them to jealousy.12Now if their trespass is the riches of the world, and if their loss is the riches of the Gentiles, how much greater will their fulfillment be?13But now I am speaking to you Gentiles, and as long as I am an apostle to the Gentiles, I take pride in my ministry.14Perhaps I will provoke to jealousy those who are of my own flesh. Perhaps we will save some of them.15For if their rejection means the reconciliation of the world, what will their acceptance be but life from the dead?16If the firstfruits are holy, so is the lump of dough. If the root is holy, so are the branches.17But if some of the branches were broken off, if you, a wild olive branch, were grafted in among them, and if you shared with them in the rich root of the olive tree,18do not boast over the branches. But if you do boast, it is not you who supports the root, but the root that supports you.19You will say then, "Branches were broken off so that I might be grafted in."20That is true. Because of their unbelief they were broken off, but you stand firm because of your faith. Do not be arrogant in your thoughts, but fear.21For if God did not spare the natural branches, neither will he spare you.22Look at, then, the kind actions and the severity of God: severity came on the Jews who fell, but God's kindness comes on you, if you continue in his kindness. Otherwise you also will be cut off.23And even they, if they do not continue in their unbelief, will be grafted in. For God is able to graft them in again.24For if you were cut out of what is by nature a wild olive tree, and contrary to nature were grafted into a good olive tree, how much more will these, the natural branches, be grafted back into their own olive tree?

25For I do not want you to be uninformed, brothers, of this mystery, so that you may not be wise in your own thinking: A partial hardening has come upon Israel until the full number of the Gentiles comes in.26Thus all Israel will be saved, just as it is written:  
  
"Out of Zion will come the Deliverer.He will remove ungodliness from Jacob,27and this will be my covenant with them,when I will take away their sins."

28As far as the gospel is concerned, they are enemies for your sake. But as far as election is concerned, they are beloved because of the patriarchs.29For the gifts and the call of God are irrevocable.30For just as you were formerly disobedient to God, now you have received mercy because of their disobedience.31In the same way, now these Jews have been disobedient. The result was that by the mercy shown to you they may also now receive mercy.32For God has shut up all into disobedience in order that he might show mercy on all.  
  
33Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering!34"For who has known the mind of the Lordor who has become his advisor?35Or who has first given anything to God,that God must repay him?"

36For from him and through him and to him are all things. To him be the glory forever. Amen.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some old copies read But if it is by works, then it is no longer grace; otherwise work is no longer work .

#### Romans 11:1

##### I say then

"I, Paul, say then"

##### did God reject his people?

Paul asks this question so that he can answer the questions of other Jews who are upset that God has included the Gentiles among his people, while the hearts of the Jewish people have been hardened.

##### May it never be.

"That is not possible!" or "Certainly not!" This expression strongly denies that this could happen. You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here.

##### tribe of Benjamin

This refers to the tribe descended from Benjamin, one of the 12 tribes into which God divided the people of Israel.

#### Romans 11:2

##### whom he foreknew

"whom he knew ahead of time"

##### Do you not know what the scripture says about Elijah, how he pleaded with God against Israel?

"Surely you know what the Scriptures record about when Elijah pleaded with God against Israel."

#### Romans 11:3

##### they have killed

"They" refers to the people of Israel.

##### I alone am left

The pronoun "I" here refers to Elijah.

##### seeking my life

"desiring to kill me"

#### Romans 11:4

##### But what does God's answer say to him?

"But this is God's answer to him:"

#### Romans 11:5

##### remnant

This refers to a small part of people whom God chose to receive his grace.

#### Romans 11:6

##### But if it is by grace

"But since God's mercy works by grace"

#### Romans 11:7

##### What then?

"This is what we need to remember"

#### Romans 11:8

##### God has given them a spirit of dullness, eyes so that they should not see, and ears so that they should not hear

They are not able to hear or receive spiritual truth. (see Deuteronomy 29:4)

##### spirit of

Here this means "having the characteristics of," such as the "spirit of wisdom."

##### eyes so that they should not see

The concept of seeing with one's eyes was considered to be equivalent to gaining understanding.

##### ears so that they should not hear

The concept of hearing with the ears was considered to be equivalent to obedience.

#### Romans 11:9

##### Let their table become a snare and a trap

"Please, God, make their feasts like a trap that catches them". (see Psalm 69:22)

##### a stumbling block

"something that tempts them to sin"

##### a retribution for them

"something that allows you to take revenge on them"

#### Romans 11:10

##### bend their backs continually

"make them suffer like people carrying heavy loads". (see Psalm 69:23). This refers to forcing slaves to carry heavy loads on their backs and making them suffer.

#### Romans 11:11

##### Connecting Statement:

With Israel as a nation rejecting God, Paul warns the Gentiles to be careful they do not make the same mistake.

##### Did they stumble so as to fall?

"Has God rejected them forever because they sinned?". Paul uses this question to introduce the next thing he wants to say. If your language uses a different way to introduce new topics, you can use it here. Here the words "stumble" and "fall" refer to sinning and having God reject the sinner.

##### May it never be.

"That is not possible!" or "Certainly not!" This expression strongly denies that this could happen. You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here. See how you translated this in Romans 9:14.

##### provoke ... to jealousy

See how you translated this phrase in Romans 10:19.

#### Romans 11:12

##### if their trespass is the riches of the world, and if their loss is the riches of the Gentiles

"when the Jews trespassed, the result was that God abundantly blessed the non-Jews"

##### how much greater will their fulfillment be?

"how much better will it be for the non-Jews when all the Jews believe in Jesus?" or "how much better will it be for the non-Jews when God fully blesses the Jews?"

#### Romans 11:14

##### those who are of my own flesh

"my fellow Jews."

##### Perhaps we will save some of them

"Perhaps some will believe and therefore God will save them"

#### Romans 11:15

##### For if their rejection means the reconciliation of the world

"For if because God rejected them, he will reconcile the rest of the world to himself"

##### their rejection

The pronoun "their" refers to Jewish unbelievers.

##### what will their acceptance be but life from the dead?

"how will it be when God accepts them? It will be like they have come back to life from among the dead!" or "then when God accepts them, it will be like they have died and become alive again!"

#### Romans 11:16

##### If the firstfruits are holy, so is the lump of dough

"If Abraham is counted as the first of what has been offered to God, all of our ancestors who followed should also be counted as God's possession"

##### firstfruits

The people always dedicated to God the first crops that they harvested. Here "firstfruits" stands for the first people to believe in Christ.

##### If the root is holy, so are the branches

Paul is speaking of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, the Israelites' ancestors, as if they were the root of a tree, and the Israelites, who are descendants of those men, as if they were the tree's "branches."

#### Romans 11:17

##### But if some of the branches were broken off

"But if someone broke off some of the branches"

##### if you, a wild olive branch, were grafted in among them

"if God grafted you, a wild olive branch, among them"

##### the rich root of the olive tree

Here "the rich root" is a metaphor that refers to the promises of God.

#### Romans 11:18

##### do not boast over the branches

"do not say you are better than the Jewish people God has rejected"

##### it is not you who supports the root, but the root that supports you

Paul implies that the Gentile believers are branches. God saves them only because of the covenant promises that he made to the Jews.

#### Romans 11:19

##### Branches were broken off

"God broke branches off"

##### I might be grafted in

"he might attach me in"

#### Romans 11:20

##### their ... they

The pronouns "their" and "they" refer to the Jewish people who did not believe.

##### but you stand firm because of your faith

"but you remain because of your faith"

##### be arrogant in your thoughts

"think that you are better than you are" or "be proud"

#### Romans 11:21

##### For if God did not spare the natural branches, neither will he spare you

"Since God did not spare those unbelieving Jews, who grew up like a tree's natural branches that came from the root, then know that if you do not believe, he will not spare you either"

#### Romans 11:22

##### the kind actions and the severity of God

Paul is reminding the Gentile believers that although God may act very kindly toward them, he will not hesitate to judge and punish them.

##### severity came on the Jews who fell ... God's kindness comes on you

"God dealt harshly with the Jews who fell ... God acts kindly toward you"

##### the Jews who fell

"the Jews who have refused to trust in Christ"

##### if you continue in his kindness

"if you continue doing what is right so that he continues being kind to you"

##### Otherwise you also will be cut off

"Otherwise God will also reject you"

#### Romans 11:23

##### if they do not continue in their unbelief

"if they start believing"

##### will be grafted in

"God will graft back in"

##### graft

This is a common process in which the end of a live branch of one tree is inserted into another tree so that the new branch will continue to grow in that tree.

#### Romans 11:24

##### For if you were cut out of what is by nature a wild olive tree, and ... grafted into a good olive tree, how much more will these, the natural branches, be grafted back into their own olive tree?

"For if God had cut you out of what is by nature a wild olive tree, and contrary to nature had grafted you into a good olive tree, how much more will he graft these Jews, who are the natural branches, into their own olive tree?"

##### how much more will these, the natural branches, be grafted back into their own olive tree?

"then these Jews, who are the natural branches, will certainly be grafted back into their own olive tree."

##### branches

Paul is speaking of the Jews and Gentiles as if they were branches. The "natural branches" represent the Jews, and the "grafted branches" represent the Gentile believers.

#### Romans 11:25

##### I do not want you to be uninformed

"I very much want you to be informed". "I" refers to Paul.

##### you ... you ... your

The pronouns "you" and "your" refer to the Gentile believers.

##### so that you may not be wise in your own thinking

"so that you will not think you are wiser than you are"

##### A partial hardening has come upon Israel

"Many people of Israel remain stubborn"

##### until the full number of the Gentiles

"until the number of Gentiles determined by God"

##### comes in

"is saved" or "believes in Christ"

#### Romans 11:26

##### Thus all Israel will be saved

"Thus God will save all Israel"

##### just as it is written

"just as the scriptures record" (see Isaiah 59:20)

##### Out of Zion

"From where God is among the Jews"

##### the Deliverer

"the one who brings his people to safety"

##### from Jacob

"from the Israelite people"

#### Romans 11:27

##### I will take away their sins

"I will remove the burden of their sins" (see Isaiah 59:21)

#### Romans 11:28

##### As far as the gospel is concerned

"Because the Jews rejected the gospel"

##### they are enemies for your sake

"God has treated them as enemies in order that you also might hear the gospel"

##### as far as election is concerned

"because God has elected the Jews" or "because God has chosen the Jews"

##### they are beloved because of the patriarchs

"God still loves them because of what he promised to do for their ancestors"

#### Romans 11:29

##### For the gifts and the call of God are irrevocable

"For God will never change his mind about what he has promised to give them, and about how he has called them to be his people"

##### are irrevocable

"can never be taken back"

#### Romans 11:30

##### you were formerly disobedient to God

"you did not obey God in the past"

##### you have received mercy because of their disobedience

"because the Jews have rejected Jesus, you have received blessings that you did not deserve"

#### Romans 11:32

##### God has shut up all into disobedience

"God has made prisoners of those who disobey him. Now they cannot stop disobeying God"

#### Romans 11:33

##### Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God

"How amazing are the many benefits of both God's wisdom and knowledge"

##### How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering

"We are completely unable to understand the things that he has decided and to find out the ways in which he acts toward us" (see Job 5:9, 11:7 and Job 37:23)

#### Romans 11:34

##### For who has known the mind of the Lord or who has become his advisor?

"No one has ever known the mind of the Lord, and no one has become his advisor." (see Isaiah 40:13, Job 15:8 and Job 21:22)

##### the mind of the Lord

"all that the Lord knows"

#### Romans 11:35

##### Or who has first given anything to God, that God must repay him?"

"No one has ever given anything to God that he did not first receive from God" (see Job 41:11)

#### Romans 11:36

##### To him be the glory forever

"May all people honor him forever"

Chapter 12

1I urge you therefore, brothers, by the mercies of God, to present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable to God. This is your reasonable service.2Do not be conformed to this world, but be transformed by the renewal of your mind. Do this so that you can test and approve what is the good, acceptable, and perfect will of God.

3For by the grace that was given to me I say to everyone among you: Do not think of yourself more highly than you ought, but rather, think with sober judgment, each according to the measure of faith that God has given you.4For we have many members in one body, but not all the members have the same function.5In the same way, we who are many are one body in Christ, and are individually members of each other.6We have different gifts according to the grace that was given to us. If one's gift is prophecy, let it be done according to the proportion of his faith.7If one's gift is service, let him serve. If one has the gift of teaching, let him teach.8If one's gift is encouragement, let him encourage. If one's gift is giving, let him do it generously. If one's gift is leading, let it be done with diligence. If one's gift is in showing mercy, let it be done with cheerfulness.

9Let love be without hypocrisy. Abhor what is evil; hold on to that which is good.10Concerning love of the brothers, be affectionate to one another. Concerning honor, respect one another.11Concerning diligence, do not be hesitant. Concerning the spirit, be eager. Concerning the Lord, serve him.12Rejoice in hope, endure tribulation, be faithful in prayer.13Share in the needs of God's holy people. Find many ways to show hospitality.14Bless those who persecute you; bless and do not curse.15Rejoice with those who rejoice; weep with those who weep.16Be of the same mind toward one another. Do not think in proud ways, but accept lowly people. Do not be wise in your own thoughts.17Repay no one evil for evil. Do good things in the sight of all people.18If possible, as far as it depends on you, live at peace with all people.19Do not avenge yourselves, beloved, but give way to the wrath of God. For it is written, "'Vengeance belongs to me; I will repay,' says the Lord."  
  
20But "if your enemy is hungry, feed him.If he is thirsty, give him a drink.For if you do this, you will heap coals of fire on his head."

21Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome evil with good.

#### Romans 12:1

##### I urge you therefore, brothers, by the mercies of God, to present

"Fellow believers, because of the great mercy that God has given you I very much want you to present"

##### to present your bodies a living sacrifice

"to offer yourselves completely to God while you are alive as if you were a dead sacrifice on a temple altar"

##### holy, acceptable to God

"a sacrifice that you give to God alone and that pleases him" or "acceptable to God because it is morally pure"

##### This is your reasonable service

"This is the right way to worship God"

#### Romans 12:2

##### Do not be conformed to this world

"Do not behave as this world behaves"

##### this world

This refers to unbelievers who live in the world.

##### but be transformed by the renewal of your mind

"but let God change the way you think and behave"

#### Romans 12:3

##### by the grace that was given to me I say

"because God freely chose me to be an apostle, I can say"

##### Do not think of yourself more highly than you ought

"Do not think you are better than other people"

##### rather, think with sober judgment

"instead, you should be wise in how you think about yourselves"

##### each according to the measure of faith that God has given you

"since God has given each of you different abilities because of your trust in him"

#### Romans 12:4

##### we have many members in one body

Paul refers to all the believers in Christ as if they were different parts of the human body. He does this to illustrate that although believers may serve Christ in different ways, each person belongs to Christ and serves in an important way.

##### members

Such parts of the body as eyes, ears, and hands.

#### Romans 12:5

##### are individually members of each other

"God has joined each believer together with all other believers"

#### Romans 12:6

##### We have different gifts according to the grace that was given to us

"God has freely given each of us different abilities to do things for him"

##### let it be done according to the proportion of his faith

"let him speak prophecies that do not go beyond the amount of faith God has given us" or "let him speak prophecies that agree with the teachings of our faith."

#### Romans 12:8

##### If one's gift is giving, let him do it

"If one has the gift of giving money or other goods to people in need, let him give"

#### Romans 12:9

##### Let love be without hypocrisy

"You must love people sincerely and truly"

##### love

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others.

#### Romans 12:10

##### Concerning love of the brothers, be affectionate

Here Paul begins a list of nine items, each of the form "Concerning ... be" to tell the believers what kind of people they should be. You may need to translate some of the items as "Concerning ... do." The list continues to Romans 12:13.

##### Concerning love of the brothers

"As for how you love your fellow believers"

##### love

In the original language a different word is used for "love" here than is used in 12:9. This word means brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

##### be affectionate

"show affection"

##### Concerning honor, respect one another

"Honor your fellow believers by respecting them"

#### Romans 12:11

##### Concerning diligence, do not be hesitant. Concerning the spirit, be eager. Concerning the Lord, serve him

"Do not be lazy in your duty, but be eager to follow the Spirit and to serve the Lord"

#### Romans 12:12

##### Rejoice in hope

"Rejoice because of what you confidently wait for" or "Rejoice as you confidently wait"

##### endure tribulation

"be patient when you suffer"

##### be faithful in prayer

"pray faithfully"

#### Romans 12:13

##### Share in the needs of God's holy people

"When fellow Christians are in trouble, help them with what they need". This is the last item that began in Romans 12:9.

##### Find many ways to show hospitality

"Always welcome Christians into your home when they need a place to stay"

#### Romans 12:16

##### Be of the same mind toward one another

"Live in unity with each other"

##### Do not think in proud ways

"Do not think that you are more important than others"

##### accept lowly people

"welcome people who do not seem important"

##### Do not be wise in your own thoughts

"Do not think of yourselves as having more wisdom than everyone else"

#### Romans 12:17

##### Repay no one evil for evil

"Do not do evil things to anyone who has done evil things to you"

##### Do good things in the sight of all people

"Do things that everyone considers to be good"

#### Romans 12:18

##### as far as it depends on you, live at peace with all people

"do whatever you can to live in peace with everyone"

#### Romans 12:19

##### give way to the wrath of God

"allow God to punish those who harm you"

##### For it is written

"For someone has written"

##### Vengeance belongs to me; I will repay

"I will certainly avenge you"

#### Romans 12:20

##### your enemy ... feed him ... give him a drink ... if you do this, you will heap

All forms of "you" and "your" are singular.

##### But "if your enemy is hungry ... his head."

"But the scripture also says, 'If your enemy is hungry ... his head.'" (See Proverbs 25:21)

##### feed him

"give him some food"

##### you will heap coals of fire on his head

"you will make the person who harmed you feel ashamed about how he has mistreated you"

#### Romans 12:21

##### Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome evil with good

"Do not let those who are evil defeat you, but defeat those who are evil by doing what is good"

##### Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome evil

These verbs are singular.

Chapter 13

1Let every soul be subject to higher authorities, for there is no authority unless it comes from God. The authorities that exist have been appointed by God.2Therefore he who rebels against that authority opposes the command of God; and those who oppose it will receive judgment on themselves.3For rulers are not a terror to those who do good deeds, but to those who do evil deeds. Do you desire to have no fear of the one in authority? Do what is good, and you will receive his praise.4For he is a servant of God to you for good. But if you do what is evil, be afraid; for he does not carry the sword for no reason. For he is a servant of God, an avenger for wrath on the one who does evil.5Therefore you must be subject, not only because of the wrath, but also because of conscience.6Because of this you pay taxes also. For authorities are servants of God, who attend to this very thing continually.7Pay to everyone what is owed to them: tax to whom tax is due, toll to whom toll is due, fear to whom fear is due, honor to whom honor is due.

8Owe no one anything, except to love one another. For he who loves his neighbor has fulfilled the law.9The commandments, "Do not commit adultery, do not murder, do not steal, do not covet," and if there is any other commandment it is summed up in this, "Love your neighbor as yourself."10Love does no harm to a neighbor. Therefore, love is the fulfillment of the law.

11Because of this, you know the time, that it is already the hour for you to awake out of sleep. For now our salvation is nearer than when we first believed.12The night has advanced, and the day is near. Let us therefore put aside the works of darkness, and let us put on the armor of light.13Let us walk appropriately, as in the day, not in drunken celebrations or drunkenness; and let us not walk in sexual immorality or in uncontrolled lust, and not in strife or jealousy.14But put on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make no provision for the flesh, to gratify its lusts.

#### Romans 13:1

##### Let every soul be subject to

"Everyone should obey"

##### higher authorities

"government officials". Some readers will find it difficult to understand what Paul teaches about obeying rulers, especially if they live where rulers persecute the church. Christians must obey, unless the rulers do not allow Christians to do something God explicitly commands them to do. There are times when a believer must submit to these rulers and suffer at their hands, understanding that this world is temporary and they will ultimately be with God forever.

##### for

because

##### there is no authority unless it comes from God

"all authority comes from God"

##### The authorities that exist have been appointed by God

"And the people who are in authority are there because God put them there"

#### Romans 13:2

##### that authority

"the authority that God placed in power"

##### those who oppose it will receive judgment on themselves

"God will judge those who oppose government authority"

#### Romans 13:3

##### rulers are not a terror to those who do good deeds, but to those who do evil deeds

"rulers do not cause terror for those who do good deeds, but for those who do evil deeds"

##### Do you desire to have no fear of the one in authority?

"Let me tell you how you can be unafraid of the ruler."

##### you will receive his praise

"the one in authority will say good things about you"

#### Romans 13:4

##### he does not carry the sword for no reason

"he has the power to punish people, and he will punish people"

##### carry the sword

Roman governors carried a short sword as a symbol of their authority.

##### an avenger for wrath on the one who does evil

"a person who punishes, on God's behalf, those who do evil"

#### Romans 13:5

##### not only because of the wrath, but also because of conscience

"not only so the government will not punish you, but also so you will have a clear conscience before God"

#### Romans 13:6

##### Because of this

"Because the government punishes evildoers"

##### you pay

Paul is addressing the believers here, so this is plural.

##### For authorities

"This is why you should pay taxes: authorities"

##### attend to

"administer" or "work on"

#### Romans 13:7

##### Pay to everyone

Paul is addressing the believers here, so this is plural.

##### tax to whom tax is due, toll to whom toll is due, fear to whom fear is due, honor to whom honor is due

"pay tax to whom tax is due, pay toll to whom toll is due, pay fear to whom fear is due, and pay honor to him to whom honor is due"

##### fear to whom fear is due, honor to whom honor is due

"fear those who deserve to be feared, and honor those who deserved to be honored" or "respect those whom you ought to respect, and honor those whom you ought to honor"

##### toll

This is a kind of tax.

#### Romans 13:8

##### Owe no one anything, except to love one another

"Pay all you owe to everyone, and love one another"

##### Owe

This applies to all the Roman Christians.

##### anything, except to love one another

"anything, but remember that God has given you the duty to love one another"

##### love

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others.

#### Romans 13:9

##### covet

To covet is to desire to have or possess something that another person possesses.

#### Romans 13:10

##### Love does no harm to a neighbor

"People who love their neighbors do not harm them"

#### Romans 13:11

##### you know the time, that it is already the hour for you to awake out of sleep

Paul says the Roman believers need to change their behavior as if they needed to wake up from being asleep.

##### hour

"time"

#### Romans 13:12

##### The night has advanced

"The sinful time is almost over" or "It is as though the night is almost finished"

##### the day is near

"the time of righteousness will begin soon" or "it is as though it will soon be day"

##### Let us therefore put aside the works of darkness

"Let us therefore stop doing the evil things that people do in the dark"

##### let us put on the armor of light

"let us start doing what is right. Doing this will protect us from what is evil, like armor protects a solider"

#### Romans 13:13

##### Let us

Paul includes his readers and other believers with himself.

##### Let us walk appropriately, as in the day

"Let us walk in a visible way knowing, that everyone can see us"

##### sexual immorality or in uncontrolled lust

"sexually immoral acts"

##### strife

This refers to plotting against and arguing with other people.

##### jealousy

This refers to negative feelings against another person's success or advantage over others.

#### Romans 13:14

##### put on the Lord Jesus Christ

Paul speaks of accepting the moral nature of Christ as if he were our outer clothing that people can see.

##### put on

If your language has a plural form for commands, use it here.

##### make no provision for the flesh

"do not allow your old evil heart any opportunity at all for doing wicked things"

Chapter 14

1Receive anyone who is weak in faith, without giving judgment about arguments.2One person has faith to eat anything, another who is weak eats only vegetables.3May the one who eats everything not despise the one who does not; and may the one who does not eat everything not judge the other who eats everything. For God has accepted him.4Who are you, you who judge a servant belonging to someone else? It is before his own master that he stands or falls. But he will be made to stand, for the Lord is able to make him stand.5One person values one day above another. Another has concluded that every day is equal. Let each person be convinced in his own mind.6He who observes the day, observes it for the Lord; and he who eats, eats for the Lord, for he gives thanks to God. He who does not eat, refrains from eating for the Lord; he also gives thanks to God.7For none of us lives for himself, and none dies for himself.8For if we live, we live for the Lord, and if we die, we die for the Lord. Then whether we live or die, we are the Lord's.9For to this purpose Christ died and lived again, that he might be Lord of both the dead and those who are living.10But you, why do you judge your brother? And you, why do you despise your brother? For we will all stand before the judgment seat of God.11For it is written,  
  
"As I live," says the Lord,"to me every knee will bend,and every tongue will confess to God."

12So then, each one of us will give an account of himself to God.

13Therefore, let us no longer judge one another, but instead decide this, that no one will place a stumbling block or a snare for his brother.14I know and am persuaded in the Lord Jesus that nothing is unclean by itself. Only for him who considers anything to be unclean, for him it is unclean.15If because of food your brother is hurt, you are no longer walking in love. Do not destroy with your food one for whom Christ died.16So do not allow what you consider to be good to be spoken of as evil.17For the kingdom of God is not about food and drink, but about righteousness, peace, and joy in the Holy Spirit.18For the one who serves Christ in this way is acceptable to God and approved by people.19So then, let us pursue the things of peace and the things that build up one another.20Do not destroy the work of God on account of food. All things are clean, but it is wrong for a man to eat anything that causes someone to stumble.21It is good not to eat meat, nor to drink wine, nor to do anything over which your brother stumbles.22The faith you have, keep between yourself and God. Blessed is the one who does not condemn himself by what he approves.23He who doubts is condemned if he eats, because it is not from faith. And whatever is not from faith is sin.

#### Romans 14:1

##### weak in faith

This refers to those who felt guilty over eating and drinking certain things. Paul teaches that Christians can have real faith and at the same time be "weak in faith" in a given situation. describing Christians whose faith is immature.

##### without giving judgment about arguments

"and do not condemn them for their opinions"

#### Romans 14:2

##### One person has faith to eat anything

Here "faith" refers to doing what a person believes God is telling him to do.

##### another who is weak eats only vegetables

This describes a person who believes God does not want him to eat meat.

#### Romans 14:4

##### Who are you, you who judge a servant belonging to someone else?

"You are not God, and you are not allowed to judge one of his servants!"

##### you, you

The form of "you" here is singular.

##### It is before his own master that he stands or falls

"Only the master can decide if he will accept the servant or not"

##### But he will be made to stand, for the Lord is able to make him stand

"But the Lord will accept him because he is able to make the servant acceptable"

#### Romans 14:5

##### One person values one day above another. Another has concluded that every day is equal

"One person thinks one day is more important than some of the others, but another person thinks that all days are the same"

##### Let each person be convinced in his own mind

"Let each person be sure what he is doing is to honor the Lord"

#### Romans 14:6

##### He who observes the day, observes it for the Lord

"Whoever treats a day as special does so to honor the Lord" or "The person who worships on a certain day does it to honor the Lord"

##### he who eats

"the person who eats every kind of food"

##### eats for the Lord

"eats to honor the Lord"

##### He who does not eat

"The person who does not eat certain kinds of food"

##### refrains from eating for the Lord

"refrains from eating certain foods in order to honor the Lord"

#### Romans 14:7

##### For none of us lives for himself

"None of us should live merely to please himself"

##### none of us

Paul is including his readers, so this is inclusive.

##### none dies for himself

"None of us should die merely to please himself"

#### Romans 14:10

##### why do you judge your brother? And you, why do you despise your brother?

"it is wrong for you to judge a fellow believer, and it is wrong for you to despise a fellow believer!" or "stop judging and despising a fellow believer!"

##### For we will all stand before the judgment seat of God

"For God will judge us all". The judgment seat of God or Christ represents a time when all people, including Christians, will be held accountable for the way they lived their lives.

#### Romans 14:11

##### For it is written, "As

"For someone has written in the Scriptures: 'As". (see Isaiah 45:23)

##### As I live

"You can be certain that this is true"

##### to me every knee will bend, and every tongue will confess to God

"every person will bow and give praise to me"

#### Romans 14:12

##### will give an account of himself to God

"will have to explain his actions to God"

#### Romans 14:13

##### but instead decide this, that no one will place a stumbling block or a snare for his brother

"but instead make it your goal not to do or say anything that might cause a fellow believer to sin"

#### Romans 14:14

##### I know and am persuaded in the Lord Jesus

"I am certain because of my relationship with the Lord Jesus"

##### nothing is unclean by itself

"everything by itself is clean"

##### by itself

"by its nature" or "because of what it is"

##### Only for him who considers anything to be unclean, for him it is unclean

"But if a person thinks something is unclean, then for that person it is unclean and he should stay away from it"

#### Romans 14:15

##### If because of food your brother is hurt

"If you hurt your fellow believer's faith over the matter of food." Here the word "your" refers to those who are strong in faith and "brother" refers to one who is weak in faith.

##### you are no longer walking in love

"then you are no longer showing love"

#### Romans 14:16

##### So do not allow what you consider to be good to be spoken of as evil

"If someone thinks that something is evil, do not do it, even if you consider it to be good"

#### Romans 14:17

##### For the kingdom of God is not about food and drink, but about righteousness, peace, and joy in the Holy Spirit

"For God did not set up his kingdom so that he could rule over what we eat and drink. He set up his kingdom so we could have a right relationship with him, and so he could give us peace and joy"

#### Romans 14:18

##### approved by people

"people will approve of him" or "people will respect him"

#### Romans 14:19

##### let us pursue the things of peace and the things that build up one another

"let us seek to live peacefully together and help one another grow stronger in faith"

#### Romans 14:20

##### Do not destroy the work of God on account of food

"Do not undo what God has done for a fellow believer just because you want to eat a certain kind of food"

##### but it is wrong for a man to eat anything that causes someone to stumble

"but it would be a sin for someone to eat food that another brother thinks is wrong to eat, if by eating this causes the weaker brother to do something that is against his conscience". Many religions in the ancient Near East restricted what was eaten. Christians have freedom to eat what they want. But they need to use this freedom wisely, in a way that honors the Lord and does not cause others to sin

#### Romans 14:21

##### It is good not to eat meat, nor to drink wine, nor to do anything over which your brother stumbles

"It is good not to eat meat or drink wine or to do anything else that might cause a fellow believer to sin"

#### Romans 14:22

##### The faith you have

This refers back to the beliefs about food and drink.

##### you ... yourself

singular. Because Paul is addressing the believers, you may have to translate this using plural.

##### Blessed is the one who does not condemn himself by what he approves

"Blessed are those who do not feel guilty for what they decide to do"

#### Romans 14:23

##### He who doubts is condemned if he eats

"God will say that a person does wrong if he is not sure if it is right to eat a certain food, but he eats it anyway" or "A person who is not sure if it is right to eat a certain food, but then eats it anyway, will have a troubled conscience"

##### because it is not from faith

"and God will say that he is wrong because he is eating something he believes God does not want him to eat"

##### whatever is not from faith is sin

"you are sinning if you do something that you do not believe God wants you to do"

Chapter 15

1Now we who are strong ought to bear the weaknesses of the weak, and ought not to please ourselves.2Let each one of us please his neighbor for that which is good, in order to build him up.3For even Christ did not please himself. Instead, it was just as it is written, "The insults of those who insulted you fell on me."4For whatever was previously written was written for our instruction in order that through patience and through encouragement of the scriptures we would have hope.5Now may the God of patience and of encouragement grant you to be of the same mind with each other according to Christ Jesus.6May he do this in order that with one mind you may glorify with one mouth the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ.

7Therefore receive one another, even as Christ also received you, to the glory of God.8For I say that Christ has been made a servant of the circumcision on behalf of God's truth, in order to confirm the promises given to the patriarchs,9and for the Gentiles to glorify God for his mercy. As it is written,  
  
"Therefore I will give praise to you among the Gentilesand sing praise to your name."

10Again it says,  
  
"Rejoice, you Gentiles, with his people."

11And again,  
  
"Praise the Lord, all you Gentiles;let all the peoples praise him."

12Again, Isaiah says,  
  
"The root of Jesse will come, the one who rises to rule over the Gentiles; in him the Gentiles will have hope."

13Now may the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace in believing, so that by the power of the Holy Spirit you may abound in hope.

14I myself am also convinced about you, my brothers. I am convinced that also you yourselves are full of goodness, filled with all knowledge. I am convinced that you are also able to instruct one another.15But I am writing more boldly to you about some things in order to remind you again, because of the grace given me by God.16This grace was that I should be a servant of Christ Jesus sent to the Gentiles, to offer as a priest the gospel of God, so that the offering of the Gentiles might become acceptable, sanctified by the Holy Spirit.17In Christ Jesus I have reason to boast of my service for God.18For I will not dare to speak of anything except what Christ has accomplished through me for the obedience of the Gentiles. These are things done by word and action,19by the power of signs and wonders, and by the power of the Spirit of God. This was so that from Jerusalem, and round about as far as Illyricum, I might fully carry out the gospel of Christ.20In this way, my desire has been to proclaim the gospel, but not where Christ is known by name, in order that I might not build upon another man's foundation.21It is as it is written:  
  
"Those to whom no report of him came will see him,and those who have not heard will understand."

22Therefore I was also hindered many times from coming to you.23But now, I no longer have any place in these regions, and I have been longing for many years to come to you.24I hope to see you when I pass through there on my way to Spain, and to be helped by you on my journey there, once I have enjoyed your company for a while.25But now I am going to Jerusalem, serving God's holy people.26For it was the good pleasure of Macedonia and Achaia to make a certain contribution to the poor among God's holy people who are in Jerusalem.27Yes, it was their good pleasure, and they owe it to them. For if the Gentiles have shared in their spiritual things, they owe it to the Jews to minister to them with their material things.28Therefore, when I have completed this task and have made sure that they receive all that was collected, I will go to Spain and visit you on the way.29I know that when I come to you I will come in the fullness of the blessing of Christ.

30Now I urge you, brothers, by our Lord Jesus Christ, and by the love of the Spirit, that you strive together with me in your prayers to God for me.31Pray that I may be rescued from those who are disobedient in Judea, and that my service for Jerusalem may be acceptable to God's holy people.32Pray that I may come to you in joy through the will of God, and that I may, together with you, find rest.33May the God of peace be with you all. Amen.

#### Romans 15:1

##### we who are strong

"we who are strong in faith"

##### we

This refers to Paul, his readers, and other believers.

##### the weak

"those who are weak in faith"

#### Romans 15:2

##### to build him up

"to strengthen his faith"

#### Romans 15:3

##### it was just as it is written

"the Messiah said to God in the scriptures". (Psalm 69:9)

##### The insults of those who insulted you fell on me

Those who blasphemed God insulted Christ, so those who slandered Christ were blaspheming God.

#### Romans 15:4

##### For whatever was previously written was written for our instruction

"For in times past, the prophets wrote everything in the Scriptures to teach us". (Psalm 102:18 and Habakkuk 2:2)

##### in order that through patience and through encouragement of the scriptures

"in order that by enduring and by being encouraged by the scriptures" or "in order that as we endure and as the scriptures encourage us"

##### we would have hope

"we would confidently expect that God will do what he has promised"

#### Romans 15:5

##### may ... God ... grant

"I pray that ... God ... will grant"

##### to be of the same mind with each other

"to be in agreement with each other"

#### Romans 15:6

##### with one mind you may glorify with one mouth

"you may be united when you praise"

##### with one mind

This phrase speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Romans 15:7

##### receive one another ... received you

"accept one another ... accepted you"

#### Romans 15:8

##### Christ has been made a servant of the circumcision

"Jesus Christ has become a servant of the Jews"

##### in order to confirm the promises

This is one of the two purposes for which Christ became a servant of the circumcision.

##### the promises given to the patriarchs

"the promises that God gave to the ancestors of the Jews"

#### Romans 15:9

##### and for the Gentiles to glorify God for his mercy

"and in order that the Gentiles might glorify God for his mercy"

##### As it is written

"As someone has written in the Scriptures". (2 Samuel 22:50 and Psalm 18:49)

##### sing praise to your name

"sing praise to you"

#### Romans 15:10

##### Again it says

"Again the scripture says". (Deuteronomy 32:43 and Isaiah 66:10)

##### with his people

"with the people of God"

#### Romans 15:11

##### praise him

"praise the Lord". (see Psalm 117:1)

#### Romans 15:12

##### root of Jesse

"descendant of Jesse". (see Isaiah 11:10)

##### in him the Gentiles will have hope

"the Gentiles will trust in him" or "the Gentiles will confidently wait for him to fulfill his promises"

#### Romans 15:13

##### the God of hope

"the God who causes us to confidently wait for him to fulfill his promises"

##### fill you with all joy and peace

"cause you to have great joy and peace"

##### in believing

"as you believe in him"

#### Romans 15:14

##### I myself am also convinced about you, my brothers

"I myself am completely sure that you yourselves have acted toward fellow believers in a completely good way"

##### filled with all knowledge

"filled with sufficient knowledge to follow God"

#### Romans 15:15

##### the grace given me by God

"the grace that God gave me"

#### Romans 15:16

##### the offering of the Gentiles might become acceptable

"the Gentiles might be like an offering that pleases God"

##### sanctified by the Holy Spirit

"which the Holy Spirit made holy"

#### Romans 15:18

##### I will not dare to speak of anything except what Christ has accomplished

"I will dare to speak only of what Christ has accomplished"

##### for the obedience of the Gentiles

"so that the Gentiles will obey God"

##### These are things done by word and action

"These are things that Christ has accomplished through what I have said and done"

#### Romans 15:19

##### signs and wonders

These two words refer to various kinds of miracles.

##### so that from Jerusalem, and round about as far as Illyricum

This is from the city of Jerusalem as far as the province of Illyricum, a region close to Italy.

#### Romans 15:20

##### In this way, my desire has been to proclaim the gospel, but not where Christ is known by name

"And so, my desire has been to preach the good news in places where people have never heard of Christ"

##### in order that I might not build upon another man's foundation

"in order that I might not be simply continuing the work that someone else already started. I do not want to be like a man who builds a house on someone else's foundation"

#### Romans 15:21

##### It is as it is written

"What is happening is like what Isaiah wrote in the scriptures". (Isaiah 52:15)

##### Those to whom no report of him came

"Those whom no one had told the news about him"

#### Romans 15:22

##### I was also hindered

"people also hindered me"

#### Romans 15:23

##### I no longer have any place in these regions

"there are no more places in these regions where people have not heard about Christ"

#### Romans 15:24

##### I hope to see you

"I want to see you" or "I plan to see you"

##### Spain

This is a roman province west of Rome that Paul desired to visit.

##### to be helped by you on my journey

"that you will help me on my journey"

##### have enjoyed your company

"have enjoyed spending some time with you" or "have enjoyed visiting you"

#### Romans 15:25

##### serving God's holy people

"bringing aid to God's holy people"

#### Romans 15:26

##### it was the good pleasure of Macedonia and Achaia

"the believers in the provinces of Macedonia and Achaia were happy"

#### Romans 15:27

##### Yes, it was their good pleasure

"The believers in Macedonia and Achaia were pleased to do it"

##### and they owe it to them

"and the people of Macedonia and Achaia owe it to God's people in Jerusalem"

##### if the Gentiles have shared in their spiritual things

"since the Gentiles have shared in the spiritual things of the Jerusalem believers"

##### minister to them

The word "minister" here means to serve in a formal way, much like the priests offered sacrifices in the temple.

##### with their material things

"by giving them material things"

#### Romans 15:28

##### and have made sure that they receive all that was collected

"and have safely delivered this offering to them"

#### Romans 15:29

##### I know that when I come to you I will come in the fullness of the blessing of Christ

"And I know that when I visit you, Christ will abundantly bless us"

#### Romans 15:30

##### I urge you

"I encourage you"

##### brothers

"Fellow believers".

##### you strive

"you work hard"

#### Romans 15:31

##### I may be rescued from those who are disobedient

"God may rescue me from those who are disobedient"

##### that my service for Jerusalem may be acceptable to God's holy people

"pray that the believers in Jerusalem will be glad to receive the money that I am bringing them"

#### Romans 15:33

##### May the God of peace

"I pray that God, who causes all of us to have inner peace, will"

Chapter 16

1I commend to you Phoebe our sister, who is a servant of the church that is in Cenchreae,2in order that you may receive her in the Lord. Do this in a manner worthy of God's holy people, and provide her with whatever help she may need from you, for she has been a great help to many and to myself as well.

3Greet Priscilla and Aquila, my fellow workers in Christ Jesus,4who for my life risked their own lives. I give thanks to them, and not only I, but also all the churches of the Gentiles.

5Greet the church that is in their house. Greet Epaenetus my beloved, who is the firstfruit of Asia to Christ.

6Greet Mary, who has labored hard for you.

7Greet Andronicus and Junia, my kinsmen and fellow prisoners. They are well known among the apostles, and they were in Christ before me.

8Greet Ampliatus, my beloved in the Lord.

9Greet Urbanus, our fellow worker in Christ, and Stachys, my beloved.

10Greet Apelles, the approved in Christ. Greet those who are of the household of Aristobulus.

11Greet Herodion, my kinsman. Greet those of the household of Narcissus who are in the Lord.

12Greet Tryphaena and Tryphosa, laborers in the Lord. Greet Persis the beloved, who has labored much in the Lord.

13Greet Rufus, chosen in the Lord, and his mother and mine.

14Greet Asyncritus, Phlegon, Hermes, Patrobas, Hermas, and the brothers who are with them.

15Greet Philologus and Julia, Nereus and his sister, and Olympas, and all God's holy people who are with them.

16Greet one another with a holy kiss. All the churches of Christ greet you.

17Now I urge you, brothers, to watch out for those who cause divisions and stumbling contrary to the teaching that you have learned. Turn away from them.18For people such as these do not serve our Lord Christ, but their own stomach. By their smooth and flattering speech they deceive the hearts of the innocent.19For your example of obedience reaches everyone. I rejoice, therefore, over you, but I want you to be wise as to that which is good, and innocent to that which is evil.20The God of peace will soon crush Satan under your feet.

The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you.

21Timothy, my fellow worker, greets you, and Lucius, Jason, and Sosipater, my kinsmen.22I, Tertius, who write this epistle down, greet you in the Lord.23Gaius, the host for me and for the whole church, greets you. Erastus, the treasurer of the city, greets you, with Quartus the brother.24[1](#footnote-target-1)25Now to him who is able to make you strong according to my gospel and the preaching of Jesus Christ,according to the revelation of the mystery that had been kept secret for long ages26but now has been revealed and made known through the prophetic writings to all nations,by the command of the eternal God, to bring about the obedience of faith—27to the only wise God, through Jesus Christ, be glory forever. Amen.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have this phrase: May the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you all. Amen . So verese 24 is not included in the ULB.

#### Romans 16:1

##### I commend to you Phoebe

"I want you to respect Phoebe".

##### our sister

"our sister in Christ"

##### Cenchreae

This was a town in Greece.

#### Romans 16:2

##### receive her in the Lord

"welcome her because we all belong to the Lord"

##### in a manner worthy of God's holy people

"in the way that believers should welcome other believers"

##### provide her with whatever help she may need from you

"help her by giving her whatever she needs"

##### has been a great help to many and to myself as well

"has supported many people, and she has also supported me"

#### Romans 16:3

##### Priscilla and Aquila

Priscilla was the wife of Aquila.

##### my fellow workers in Christ Jesus

"who work with me to tell people about Christ Jesus"

#### Romans 16:5

##### Greet the church that is in their house

"Greet the believers who meet in their house to worship"

##### firstfruit of Asia to Christ

"first person in Asia to believe in Jesus". Epaenetus is the name of a man.

#### Romans 16:7

##### Andronicus

This is a man's name.

##### Junia

Some versions have "Junias," which would be a man's name. "Junia" is a woman's name.

##### They are well known among the apostles

"The apostles know them very well"

#### Romans 16:8

##### Ampliatus

This is a man's name.

##### my beloved in the Lord

"my dear friend and fellow believer"

#### Romans 16:9

##### Urbanus ... Stachys

These are the names of men.

#### Romans 16:10

##### Apelles ... Aristobulus

These are the names of men.

##### the approved in Christ

"whom Christ has approved"

#### Romans 16:11

##### Herodion ... Narcissus

These are the names of men.

##### who are in the Lord

"who are believers" or "who belong to the Lord"

#### Romans 16:12

##### Tryphaena ... Tryphosa ... Persis

These are women's names.

#### Romans 16:13

##### Rufus

This is a man's name.

##### chosen in the Lord

"whom the Lord has chosen"

##### his mother and mine

"his mother, whom I also think of as my mother"

#### Romans 16:14

##### Asyncritus ... Phlegon ... Hermes ... Patrobas ... Hermas

These are men's names.

##### brothers

"fellow believers"

#### Romans 16:15

##### Philologus ... Nereus ... Olympas

These are men's names.

##### Julia

The name of a woman. Julia was probably the wife of Philologus.

#### Romans 16:16

##### a holy kiss

an expression of affection for fellow believers

##### All the churches of Christ greet you

"The believers in all the churches in this area send their greetings to you"

#### Romans 16:17

##### who cause divisions and stumbling

"who cause believers to argue with one another and to stop having faith in God"

##### contrary to the teaching that you have learned

"teaching things that do not agree with the truth you have already learned"

##### Turn away from them

"Do not listen to them"

#### Romans 16:18

##### Christ, but their own stomach

"Christ. Rather, they only want to satisfy their own selfish desires"

##### By their smooth and flattering speech

"By saying things that seem to be good and true"

##### they deceive the hearts of the innocent

"they deceive the innocent believers"

##### innocent

"those who innocently trust them"

#### Romans 16:19

##### For your example of obedience reaches everyone

"For everyone has heard how you obey Jesus"

##### innocent to that which is evil

"not involved in doing evil things"

#### Romans 16:20

##### The God of peace will soon crush Satan under your feet

"Soon God will give you peace and complete victory over Satan"

#### Romans 16:21

##### Lucius, Jason, and Sosipater

These are men's names.

#### Romans 16:22

##### Tertius, who write this epistle down

Tertius is the man who wrote down what Paul spoke.

##### greet you in the Lord

"greet you as a fellow believer"

#### Romans 16:23

##### Gaius ... Erastus ... Quartus

These are men's names.

##### the host

This refers to Gaius, the person in whose house Paul and his fellow believers gathered for worship.

##### the treasurer

This is a person who takes care of the money for a group.

#### Romans 16:25

##### to make you strong

"to make your faith strong"

##### according to my gospel and the preaching of Jesus Christ

"by the good news that I have preached about Jesus Christ"

##### according to the revelation of the mystery that had been kept secret for long ages

"because God has revealed to us believers the secret that he was keeping for long ages"

##### for long ages

since the beginning of time

#### Romans 16:26

##### but now has been revealed and made known through the prophetic writings to all nations, by the command of the eternal God

"but the eternal God has now made known to all the nations through the prophetic writings"

##### to bring about the obedience of faith

"so that all nations will obey God because they trust in him"

#### Romans 16:27

##### to the only wise God ... be glory forever. Amen

"Because of what Jesus Christ has done for us, we will praise forever the one who alone is God and who alone is wise. Amen"

## 1 Corinthians

Chapter 1

1Paul, called by Christ Jesus to be an apostle by the will of God, and Sosthenes our brother,

2to the church of God at Corinth, those who have been sanctified in Christ Jesus and called to be holy people, together with all those in every place who call on the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, who is their Lord and ours:

3May grace and peace be to you from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

4I always give thanks to my God for you because of the grace of God that Christ Jesus gave to you.5He has made you rich in every way, in all speech and with all knowledge,6just as the testimony about Christ has been confirmed as true among you.7Therefore you lack no spiritual gift as you eagerly wait for the revelation of our Lord Jesus Christ.8He will also strengthen you to the end, so that you will be blameless on the day of our Lord Jesus Christ.9God is faithful, who called you into the fellowship of his Son, Jesus Christ our Lord.

10Now I urge you, brothers, through the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that you all agree, and that there be no divisions among you. I urge that you be joined together with the same mind and by the same purpose.11For I have been informed concerning you, my brothers, by Chloe's people that there are factions among you.12I mean this: Each one of you says, "I am with Paul," or "I am with Apollos," or "I am with Cephas," or "I am with Christ."13Is Christ divided? Was Paul crucified for you? Were you baptized into the name of Paul?14I thank God that I baptized none of you, except Crispus and Gaius.15This was so that no one would say that you were baptized into my name.16(I also baptized the household of Stephanas. Beyond that, I do not know if I baptized any others.)17For Christ did not send me to baptize but to preach the gospel—not with clever speech, in order that the cross of Christ would not be emptied of its power.

18For the message about the cross is foolishness to those who are perishing. But among those who are being saved, it is the power of God.19For it is written,  
  
"I will destroy the wisdom of the wise.I will set aside the understanding of the intelligent."

20Where is the wise person? Where is the scholar? Where is the debater of this world? Has not God turned the wisdom of the world into foolishness?21Since the world in its wisdom did not know God, God was pleased to save those who believe through the foolishness of preaching.22For Jews ask for miraculous signs and Greeks seek wisdom.23But we preach Christ crucified, a stumbling block to Jews and foolishness to Gentiles.24But to those whom God has called, both Jews and Greeks, we preach Christ as the power and the wisdom of God.25For the foolishness of God is wiser than people, and the weakness of God is stronger than people.

26Look at your calling, brothers. Not many of you were wise according to the flesh. Not many of you were powerful. Not many of you were of noble birth.27But God chose the foolish things of the world to shame the wise. God chose what is weak in the world to shame what is strong.28God chose what is low and despised in the world. He even chose things that are regarded as nothing, to bring to nothing things that are held as valuable.29He did this so that no flesh would have a reason to boast before him.30Because of what God did, now you are in Christ Jesus, who became for us wisdom from God. He became our righteousness, holiness, and redemption.31As a result, as it is written, "Let the one who boasts, boast in the Lord."

#### 1 Corinthians 1:1

##### Paul

"I, Paul"

##### Sosthenes our brother

"Sosthenes, the brother you and I know"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:2

##### to the church of God at Corinth

"am writing this letter to you in Corinth who believe in God"

##### those who have been sanctified in Christ Jesus

"to those whom Christ Jesus has set apart for God"

##### called to be holy people

"whom God has called to be holy people"

##### together with all those in every place who call on the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

this phrase tells who else is called to be holy, or this phrase tells who else this letter is written to

##### who call on the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

"who call on the Lord Jesus Christ"

##### their Lord and ours

The word "ours" includes Paul's audience. Jesus is the Lord of Paul and the Corinthians and all the churches.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:3

##### General Information:

Paul and Sosthenes wrote this letter to the Christians. Such words as "you" and "your" refer to Paul's audience and so are plural.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:4

##### because of the grace of God that Christ Jesus gave to you

"because Christ Jesus has made it possible for God to be kind to you"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:5

##### He has made you rich

"Christ has made you rich" or "God has made you rich."

##### made you rich in every way

"made you rich with all kinds of spiritual blessings"

##### in all speech...all knowledge

God has enabled you to understand and tell others about God's message in many ways.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:6

##### the testimony about Christ has been confirmed as true among you

"you saw for yourselves that what we had said about Christ was true"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:7

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true,"

##### you lack no spiritual gift

"you have every spiritual gift"

##### the revelation of our Lord Jesus Christ

"the time when God will reveal the Lord Jesus Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:9

##### God is faithful, who called ... our Lord

"God, who called ... our Lord, will do everything he has said he will do"

##### his Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:10

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### through the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

"by means of our Lord Jesus Christ"

##### that you all agree

"that you live in harmony with one another". Paul reminds the Corinthian believers that they are to live in unity with each other and that the message of the cross of Christ, not baptism by people, is what saves.

##### that there be no divisions among you

"that you do not divide into separate groups among yourselves"

##### be joined together with the same mind and by the same purpose

"live in unity, agree with other, and work together to accomplish the same things"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:11

##### Chloe's people

This refers to family members, servants, and others who are part of the household of which Chloe, a woman, is the head.

##### there are factions among you

"you are in groups that quarrel one with another"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:13

##### Is Christ divided?

"Christ is certainly not divided!" or "There is only one Christ!"

##### Was Paul crucified for you?

"It certainly was not Paul whom they put to death on the cross for your salvation!"

##### Were you baptized into the name of Paul?

"It was not into the name of Paul that people baptized you!"

##### into the name of Paul

"by Paul's authority"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:14

##### I baptized none of you, except

"among you I baptized only"

##### Crispus and Gaius

Crispus was a synagogue ruler who became a Christian and Gaius traveled with the Apostle Paul.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:15

##### This was so that no one would say that you were baptized into my name

"For some of you might have claimed that I baptized you to make you my disciples"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:16

##### the household of Stephanas

This refers to the family members and slaves in the house where Stephanas, a man, was the head.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:17

##### Christ did not send me to baptize

This means that baptism was not the primary goal of Paul's ministry.

##### not with clever speech, in order that the cross of Christ would not be emptied of its power

"not with clever speech, because clever speech would empty the cross of its power"

##### in order that the cross of Christ would not be emptied of its power

"in order that people might recognize God's power to save them through Jesus's death on the cross" or "because clever speech would distract people from God's power as shown in the cross"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:18

##### the message about the cross

"the preaching about the crucifixion" or "the message of Christ's dying on the cross"

##### is foolishness

"is senseless" or "is silly"

##### to those who are perishing

"to those who are dying." This refers to dying in rebellion against God.

##### it is the power of God

"it is God working powerfully in us"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:19

##### I will set aside the understanding of the intelligent

"I will confuse intelligent people"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:20

##### Where is the wise person? Where is the scholar? Where is the debater of this world?

"Compared with the wisdom of the gospel, there are no wise people, no scholars, no debaters!"

##### the scholar

a person who is recognized as someone who has studied a great deal

##### the debater

a person who argues about what he knows or who is skilled in such arguments

##### Has not God turned the wisdom of the world into foolishness?

"God has shown that everything they call wisdom is really foolishness"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:21

##### those who believe

"all who believe the message" or "all who believe in Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:23

##### Christ crucified

"about Christ, who died on a cross"

##### a stumbling block

"not acceptable" or "very offensive". The message of salvation through the crucifixion of the Christ keeps Jews from believing in Jesus.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:24

##### to those whom God has called

"to the people God calls"

##### we preach Christ

"we teach about Christ" or "we tell all people about Christ"

##### we preach Christ as the power and the wisdom of God

"we preach that God acted powerfully and wisely by sending Christ to die for us"

##### the power ... of God

Another possible meaning is that Christ is powerful and it is through Christ that God saves us.

##### the wisdom of God

Another possible meaning is that God shows the content of his wisdom through Christ.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:25

##### the foolishness of God is wiser than people, and the weakness of God is stronger than people

"what seems to be the foolishness of God is wiser than people's wisdom, and what seems to be the weakness of God is stronger than the people's strength"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:26

##### Not many of you

"Very few of you"

##### wise according to the flesh

"wise according to human standards" or "what most people would call wise"

##### of noble birth

"special because your family is important"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:27

##### God chose ... wise. God chose ... strong

Paul emphasizes the difference between God's way of doing things and how people think God should do them.

##### God chose the foolish things of the world to shame the wise

"God chose to use the things that the world thinks are foolish to shame those whom the world thinks are wise"

##### God chose what is weak in the world to shame what is strong

"God chose to use things that the world thinks are weak to shame the things that the world thinks are strong"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:28

##### what is low and despised

"the things that are humble and hated"

##### things that are regarded as nothing

"that which people usually regard as without value"

##### nothing, to bring to nothing things that are held as valuable

"nothing. He did this so he could show that the things that are held as valuable are really worthless"

##### things that are held as valuable

"things that people think are worth money" or "things that people think are worth respect"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:29

##### He did this

"God did this"

##### no flesh

"no people"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:30

##### Because of what God did

This refers to the work of Christ on the cross.

##### us ... our

These words refer to Paul, those with him, and the Corinthians.

##### Christ Jesus, who became for us wisdom from God

"Christ Jesus, who has made clear to us how wise God is" or "Christ Jesus, who has given us God's wisdom."

#### 1 Corinthians 1:31

##### Let the one who boasts, boast in the Lord

"If a person boasts, he should boast about how great the Lord is."

Chapter 2

1When I came to you, brothers, I did not come with eloquence of speech or wisdom as I proclaimed hidden truths about God. [1](#footnote-target-1)2For I decided to know nothing when I was among you except Jesus Christ, and him crucified.3And I was with you in weakness and in fear and in much trembling.4And my message and my proclamation were not with persuasive words of wisdom, but with the demonstration of the Spirit and of power,5so that your faith might not be in the wisdom of humans, but in the power of God.

6Now we do speak wisdom among the mature, but not the wisdom of this world, or of the rulers of this age, who are passing away.7Instead, we speak God's wisdom in hidden truth, the hidden wisdom that God predestined before the ages for our glory.8None of the rulers of this age understood it, for if they had understood it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory.9But as it is written,  
  
"No eye has seen, no ear has heard,no human heart has imaginedwhat God has prepared for those who love him"—

10For God has revealed these things to us through the Spirit. For the Spirit searches everything out, even the deep things of God. [2](#footnote-target-2)11For who knows a person's thoughts except the spirit of the person in him? So also, no one knows the deep things of God except the Spirit of God.12But we did not receive the spirit of the world but the Spirit who is from God, so that we might know the things freely given to us by God.13We speak about these things in words not taught by human wisdom but by the Spirit, interpreting spiritual things to spiritual people.14The unspiritual person does not receive the things that belong to the Spirit of God, for they are foolishness to him. He cannot understand them because they are spiritually discerned.15The one who is spiritual judges all things, but he is not judged by others.  
  
16"For who can know the mind of the Lord, that he can instruct him?"  
  
 But we have the mind of Christ.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)A few important and ancient Greek copies read, as I proclaimed the testimony about God . [2](#footnote-caller-2)Some ancient Greek copies say But God . Howevever, following our Greek source, it reads,For God .

#### 1 Corinthians 2:1

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

#### 1 Corinthians 2:2

##### I decided to know nothing ... except Jesus Christ

"I decided to teach nothing ... except Jesus Christ"

##### to know nothing when I was among you except Jesus Christ

"when I was among you to know only Jesus Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:3

##### I was with you

"I was visiting with you"

##### in weakness

"physically weak" or "feeling like I could not do what I needed to do"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:4

##### my message and my proclamation were not with persuasive words of wisdom

"I did not speak and preach with persuasive words of wisdom"

##### persuasive words of wisdom

"wise and persuasive words"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:5

##### so that your faith might not be in the wisdom of humans

"so that you will not trust in human wisdom"

##### but in the power of God

"but your faith will be in the power of God"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:6

##### Now we do speak

Paul begins to explain that true wisdom is God's wisdom.

##### speak wisdom

"speak wise words" or "speak a wise message". Paul says the wisdom from the Holy Spirit is the only true wisdom.

##### the mature

"mature believers"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:7

##### before the ages

"before God created anything"

##### for our glory

"in order to ensure our future glory"

##### the hidden wisdom

This refers to truths that God had not yet revealed to people.

#### 1 Corinthians 2:8

##### the Lord of glory

"Jesus, the glorious Lord."

#### 1 Corinthians 2:9

##### No eye has seen, no ear has heard, no human heart has imagined

This refers to all parts of a person to emphasize that no man has ever been aware of the things that God has prepared.

##### what God has prepared for those who love him

The Lord has created in heaven wonderful surprises for those who love him.

#### 1 Corinthians 2:10

##### these things

the truths about Jesus and his death on the cross

##### the Spirit searches everything out

"the Spirit studies everything accurately" or "the Spirit investigates everything"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:11

##### For who knows a person's thoughts except the spirit of the person in him?

"No one knows what a person is thinking except that person's spirit"

##### spirit of the person

This refers to a person's inner being, his own spiritual nature.

##### no one knows the deep things of God except the Spirit of God

"only the Spirit of God knows the deep things of God"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:12

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" includes both Paul and his audience.

##### freely given to us by God

"that God freely gave to us"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:13

##### interpreting spiritual things to spiritual people

"interpreting spiritual things with spiritual words"

##### to spiritual people

Here "spiritual people" refers to those who are led by the Holy Spirit to obey God.

#### 1 Corinthians 2:14

##### unspiritual person

the non-Christian person, who has not received the Holy Spirit

##### because they are spiritually discerned

"because understanding these things requires the aid of the Spirit"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:15

##### The one who is spiritual

"The believer who has received the Spirit"

##### he is not judged by others

"others cannot judge him" or "no one can judge him"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:16

##### For who can know the mind of the Lord, that he can instruct him?

"No one can know the mind of the Lord, so no one can teach him anything he does not already know"

Chapter 3

1And I, brothers, could not speak to you as to spiritual people, but instead as to fleshly people, as to little children in Christ.2I fed you milk, not solid food, for you were not ready for it; and even now you are not yet ready.3For you are still fleshly. For where jealousy and strife exist among you, are you not living according to the flesh, and are you not walking by human standards?4For when one says, "I follow Paul," and another says, "I follow Apollos," are you not merely human beings?5Who then is Apollos? Who is Paul? Servants through whom you believed, just as the Lord gave tasks to each.6I planted and Apollos watered, but God gave the growth.7So then, neither he who plants nor he who waters is anything. But it is God who gives the growth.8Now he who plants and he who waters are one, and each will receive his own wages according to his own labor.9For we are God's fellow workers. You are God's garden, God's building.

10According to the grace of God that was given to me as a skilled master builder, I laid a foundation and another is building on it. But let each man be careful how he builds on it.11For no one can lay a foundation other than the one that has been laid, that is, Jesus Christ.12Now if anyone builds on the foundation with gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, or straw,13his work will be revealed, for the day will reveal it. For it will be revealed in fire. The fire will test the quality of what each one has done.14If anyone's work remains, he will receive a reward;15but if anyone's work is burned up, he will suffer loss, but he himself will be saved, as though escaping through fire.

16Do you not know that you are God's temple and that the Spirit of God lives in you?17If anyone destroys God's temple, God will destroy that person. For God's temple is holy, and so are you.

18Let no one deceive himself. If anyone among you thinks he is wise in this age, let him become a "fool" that he may become wise.19For the wisdom of this world is foolishness with God. For it is written,"He catches the wise in their craftiness."20And again,"The Lord knows that the reasoning of the wise is futile."21For this reason, let no one boast in men. All things are yours,22whether Paul, or Apollos, or Cephas, or the world, or life, or death, or things present, or things to come. All things are yours,23and you are Christ's, and Christ is God's.

#### 1 Corinthians 3:1

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### spiritual people

people who obey the Spirit

##### fleshly people

people who follow their own desires

##### as to little children in Christ

"as to very young believers in Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:2

##### I fed you milk, not solid food

Paul uses this image to mean that the Corinthians can only understand easy truths. They are not mature enough to understand greater truths.

##### you are not yet ready

"you still are not ready to understand the harder teachings about following Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:3

##### still fleshly

still behaving according to sinful or worldly desires

##### are you not living according to the flesh, and are you not walking by human standards?

"you should be ashamed because you are behaving according to your sinful desires and you are living according to human standards!"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:4

##### are you not merely human beings?

"you should be ashamed because you are living the same way that people who do not have the Spirit live."

#### 1 Corinthians 3:5

##### Who then is Apollos? Who is Paul?

"It is wrong to form groups to follow Apollos or Paul!"

##### Who is Paul?

"I am not important!" or "Who am I?"

##### Servants through whom you believed

"Paul and Apollos are servants of Christ, and you believed in Christ because we served him"

##### Servants through whom you believed, just as the Lord gave tasks to each

"We are servants through whom you believed, and to each of us the Lord gave different tasks"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:6

##### I planted

"When I preached God's word to you, I was like one who plants seeds in a garden"

##### Apollos watered

"and when Apollos continued to teach you God's word, he was like one who waters a garden"

##### but God gave the growth

"but God caused you to grow" or "but just as God causes plants to grow, he caused you to grow spiritually"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:7

##### it is God who gives the growth

"it is God who causes you to grow"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:8

##### he who plants and he who waters are one

Paul speaks of telling people the good news and teaching those who have accepted it as if they were planting and watering plants.

##### are one

"united in purpose" or "equal in importance"

##### wages

an amount of money that a worker receives for his work

#### 1 Corinthians 3:9

##### we

This refers to Paul and Apollos but not the Corinthian church.

##### God's fellow workers

Paul considers himself and Apollos as working together.

##### You are God's garden

"You are like a garden that belongs to God" or "You are like a garden that God makes grow"

##### God's building

"and you are like a building that belongs to God" or "and you are like a building that God is constructing"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:10

##### According to the grace of God that was given to me

"According to the task that God freely gave me to do"

##### I laid a foundation

Paul equates his teaching of faith and salvation in Jesus Christ to laying a foundation for a building.

##### another is building on it

Paul is referring to the person or people who are constructing the building above the foundation.

##### let each man

"let each person who serves God"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:11

##### no one can lay a foundation other than the one that has been laid

"no one can lay a foundation other than the one and only foundation".

#### 1 Corinthians 3:12

##### Now if anyone builds on the foundation with gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, or straw

"Whether a person builds with valuable materials that will last or with cheap materials that burn easily"

##### precious stones

"expensive stones"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:13

##### his work will be revealed

"God will show everyone what the builder has done"

##### for the day will reveal it

The "day" refers to the time when God will judge everyone. When God shows everyone what these teachers have done, it will be like the sun has come up to reveal what happened during the night.

##### For it will be revealed in fire. The fire will test the quality of what each one has done

"God will use fire to show the quality of his work"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:15

##### if anyone's work is burned up

"if the fire destroys anyone's work" or "if the judgement shows that a person's work has no value"

##### he will suffer loss

"he will lose his reward"

##### but he himself will be saved, as though escaping through fire

"but God will save him as though through fire". This shows the danger that such a person is in if his works have no value.

#### 1 Corinthians 3:16

##### Do you not know that you are God's temple and that the Spirit of God lives in you?

"You act as though you do not know that you are God's temple and the Spirit of God lives in you!". All instances of "you" are plural.

#### 1 Corinthians 3:18

##### Let no one deceive himself

Nobody should believe the lie that he himself is wise in this world.

##### in this age

according to the way people who do not believe decide what is wise

##### let him become a "fool"

"that person should be willing to have people who do not believe call him a fool"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:19

##### He catches the wise in their craftiness

God traps the people who think they are clever and uses their own schemes to trap them.

#### 1 Corinthians 3:20

##### The Lord knows that the reasoning of the wise is futile

"The Lord knows that what people who think they are wise plan to do is useless"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:23

##### you are Christ's, and Christ is God's

"you belong to Christ, and Christ belongs to God."

Chapter 4

1This is how a person should regard us, as servants of Christ and stewards of the hidden truths of God.2Now what is required of stewards is that they are found to be trustworthy.3But for me it is a very small thing that I should be judged by you or by any human court. For I do not even judge myself.4I am not aware of any charge being made against me, but that does not justify me. The one who judges me is the Lord.5Therefore do not pronounce judgment about anything before the time, before the Lord comes. He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. Then each one will receive his praise from God.

6Now, brothers, I applied these principles to myself and Apollos for your sakes, so that from us you might learn the meaning of the saying,"Do not go beyond what is written." This is so that none of you may be puffed up in favor of one against the other.7For who sees any difference between you and others? What do you have that you did not receive? If you have received it, why do you boast as if you did not receive it?8Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! Indeed, I wish you did reign, so that we could reign with you.9For I think God has put us apostles on display as the last in line, in a procession and like men sentenced to death. We have become a spectacle to the world—to angels, and to human beings.10We are fools for Christ's sake, but you are wise in Christ. We are weak, but you are strong. You are held in honor, but we are held in dishonor.11Up to this present hour we are hungry and thirsty, we are poorly clothed, we are beaten, and we are homeless.12We labor hard, working with our own hands. When we are slandered, we bless. When we are persecuted, we endure.13When we are slandered, we speak with kindness. We have become as the refuse of the world and the filthiest of all things, even till now.

14I do not write these things to shame you, but to warn you as my beloved children.15For even if you have ten thousand guardians in Christ, you do not have many fathers. For I became your father in Christ Jesus through the gospel.16So I urge you to be imitators of me.17That is why I sent you Timothy, my beloved and faithful child in the Lord. He will remind you of my ways in Christ, just as I teach them everywhere and in every church.18Now some of you have become puffed up, acting as though I were not coming to you.19But I will come to you soon, if the Lord wills. Then I will know not merely the words of these who are so puffed up, but I will see their power.20For the kingdom of God does not consist in words but in power.21What do you want? Should I come to you with a rod or with love and in a spirit of gentleness?

#### 1 Corinthians 4:2

##### of stewards is that they

"of us stewards is that we"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:3

##### it is a very small thing that I should be judged by you

Paul is comparing the difference between human judgment and God's judgment. God's judgment upon man is the most important.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:4

##### I am not aware of any charge being made against me

"I have not heard anyone accuse me of doing wrong"

##### that does not justify me

"that does not mean that God has declared me innocent"

##### The one who judges me is the Lord

"It is the Lord who will decide if I am innocent or guilty"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:5

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true,"

##### He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart

"Like a light that shines on things in darkness, God will show what people have secretly done and what they secretly planned"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:6

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### for your sakes

"for your welfare"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:7

##### between you ... do you have that you did not receive ... you have received ... do you boast ... you did not

Paul is speaking to the Corinthians as if they were one person, so all instances of "you" here are singular.

##### For who sees any difference between you and others?

"For there is no difference between you and others." or "For you are not superior to other people."

##### What do you have that you did not receive?

"Everything that you have is what you have received." or "God gave to you everything that you have!"

##### why do you boast as if you did not receive it?

"you should not boast as if you had not received it." or "you have no right to boast!"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:9

##### has put us apostles on display

God has displayed the apostles just like prisoners who are at the end of a Roman military parade and who are humiliated before their execution.

##### like men sentenced to death

God put the apostles on display like men who are about to be executed.

##### to the world—to angels, and to human beings

Possible meanings are 1) "the world" consists of both supernatural ("angels") and natural ("human beings") or 2) the list consists of three items: "to the world, to angels, and to human beings."

#### 1 Corinthians 4:10

##### We are fools ... in dishonor

Paul uses irony to shame the Corinthians so they will think about what he is saying.

##### You are held in honor

"People treat you Corinthians as though you were important people"

##### we are held in dishonor

"people shame us apostles"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:11

##### Up to this present hour

"Until now" or "Up to now"

##### we are beaten

"people beat us"

##### we are homeless

Although they have places to stay, they have no permanent home.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:12

##### When we are slandered, we bless

"When people slander us, we bless them" or "When people scorn us, we bless them"

##### When we are persecuted

"When people persecute us"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:13

##### When we are slandered

"When people slander us"

##### We have become as the refuse of the world

"People began to consider us—and they still consider us—to be the garbage of the world"

##### the refuse of the world

"the worst kind of garbage in the world"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:14

##### I do not write these things to shame you, but to warn you

"I do not intend to shame you, but I want to correct you"

##### my beloved children

Because Paul had led the Corinthians to Christ, they are like his spiritual children.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:15

##### ten thousand guardians

"very many guardians" or "a large crowd of guardians"

##### I became your father in Christ Jesus through the gospel

"it was because God joined you to Christ when I told you the good news that I was the one who became your father"

##### I became your father

Because Paul had led the Corinthians to Christ, he is like a father to them.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:17

##### my beloved and faithful child in the Lord

"whom I love and whom I teach about the Lord as if he were my own child."

#### 1 Corinthians 4:18

##### Now

Paul begins to rebuke the arrogant behavior of the Corinthian believers. All that they had, and all they were, was a gift from God.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:19

##### I will come to you soon

"I will visit you soon"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:21

##### What do you want?

"Tell me what you want to happen now."

##### Should I come to you with a rod or with love and in a spirit of gentleness?

"If you want, I can come to punish you, or I can come to show you how much I love you by being gentle with you."

##### of gentleness

"of kindness" or "of tenderness"

Chapter 5

1We heard a report that there is sexual immorality among you, a kind of immorality that is not even permitted among the pagans: A man has his father's wife.2You are puffed up! Should you not mourn instead, so that the one who did this deed might be removed from among you?3For even though I am absent in body, I am present in spirit. I have already passed judgment on the one who did this, just as though I were there.4When you are assembled in the name of our Lord Jesus and I am with you in spirit, and the power of our Lord Jesus is present,5deliver this man over to Satan for the destruction of the flesh, so that his spirit may be saved on the day of the Lord.6Your boasting is not good. Do you not know that a little yeast leavens the whole loaf?7Cleanse yourselves of the old yeast so that you may be a new batch of dough, unleavened, just as you really are. For Christ, our Passover lamb, has been sacrificed.8So let us then celebrate the festival, not with the old yeast, the yeast of bad behavior and wickedness. Instead, let us celebrate with the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth.

9I wrote to you in my letter not to associate with sexually immoral people.10In no way did I mean the immoral people of this world, or the greedy, or swindlers, or idolaters, since to stay away from them you would need to go out of the world.11But now I am writing to you not to associate with anyone who is called a brother but who is living in sexual immorality, or who is greedy, or is an idolater, or is verbally abusive, or is a drunkard, or a swindler. Do not even eat a meal with such a person.12For how am I involved with judging those who are outside the church? Instead, are you not to judge those who are inside the church?13But God judges those who are on the outside."Remove the evil person from among you."

#### 1 Corinthians 5:1

##### that is not even permitted among the pagans

"that not even the Gentiles permit". This chapter deals with sexual immorality of one church member. Paul now specifically states how the Corinthian believers are proud of their acceptance of that man and his sin.

##### A man has his father's wife

"A man among you is committing adultery with his father's wife"

##### father's wife

the wife of his father, but probably not his own mother

#### 1 Corinthians 5:2

##### Should you not mourn instead ... among you?

"You should mourn over this instead ... among you!"

##### the one who did this deed might be removed

"you can remove from among you the one who did this deed"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:3

##### I am present in spirit

"I care about you" or "I want to be with you"

##### I have already passed judgment on the one who did this

"I have decided what you should do with the one who did this" or "I have found the person who did this guilty"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:4

##### When you are assembled

"When you are together" or "When you meet together"

##### in the name of our Lord Jesus

"with the authority of our Lord Jesus" or "to worship our Lord Jesus"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:5

##### deliver this man over to Satan

"hand this man over to Satan by sending him away from the Christian community”

##### for the destruction of the flesh

"so that Satan may harm his body" or "so that his sinful nature will be destroyed" or "so that he will not continue to live according to his sinful nature"

##### so that his spirit may be saved on the day of the Lord

"so that God may save his spirit on the day of the Lord"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:6

##### Your boasting is not good

"Your boasting is bad"

##### Do you not know that a little yeast leavens the whole loaf?

In this case, one person who is sinning can harm the entire Christian community. So the whole passage means: Don't you know that a little evil will affect the whole congregation? So get rid of the evil so you can live purely. Christ has been sacrificed for us.

##### Do you not know that a little yeast ... loaf?

"You know that a little yeast ... loaf." or "A little yeast ... loaf."

#### 1 Corinthians 5:7

##### Cleanse yourselves of the old yeast so that you may be a new batch of dough, unleavened

Here "old yeast" refers to the sins that the people were committing. "Unleavened dough" is the type of bread that God told the Israelites was acceptable to eat when celebrating Passover. Paul is telling his audience to stop sinning so that they may be acceptable to God.

##### Christ, our Passover lamb, has been sacrificed

"the Lord has sacrificed Christ, our Passover lamb"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:8

##### not with the old yeast, the yeast of bad behavior and wickedness ... the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth

Here "yeast" refers to sin, and "unleavened bread" refers to behaviors acceptable to God.

#### 1 Corinthians 5:10

##### the immoral people of this world

This refers to unbelievers who have chosen to live immoral lives.

##### the greedy

"those who are greedy" or "those who are willing to be dishonest to get what others have"

##### swindlers

This means people who cheat to get others' property.

##### you would need to go out of the world

"you would need to avoid all people"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:11

##### anyone who is called

"anyone who calls himself"

##### brother

Here this means a fellow Christian, either a man or a woman.

#### 1 Corinthians 5:12

##### how am I involved with judging those who are outside the church?

"I am not the one who should judge people who do not belong to the church."

##### are you not to judge those who are inside the church?

"you should know that you are the ones who should judge those who are inside the church."

Chapter 6

1When one of you has a dispute against another, does he dare to bring a lawsuit before the unrighteous rather than before God's holy people?2Do you not know that God's holy people will judge the world? If then you will judge the world, are you not able to settle matters of little importance?3Do you not know that we will judge the angels? How much more, then, can we judge matters of this life?4If then you have to make judgments that pertain to daily life, why do you lay such cases as these before those who have no standing in the church?5I say this to your shame. Is there no one among you wise enough to settle a dispute between brothers?6But one brother brings a lawsuit against another brother—and this before unbelievers!7The fact that you have lawsuits with one another is already a defeat for you. Why not rather suffer the wrong? Why not rather allow yourselves to be cheated?8But you yourselves do wrong and you cheat, and you do this to your own brothers!9Do you not know that the unrighteous will not inherit the kingdom of God? Do not be deceived: neither the sexually immoral, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor men who submit to homosexual acts, nor men who perform homosexual acts, 10nor thieves, nor the greedy, nor drunkards, nor slanderers, nor swindlers will inherit the kingdom of God.11That is what some of you were like. But you have been cleansed, you have been sanctified, you have been justified in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and by the Spirit of our God.

12"Everything is lawful for me," but not everything is profitable. "Everything is lawful for me," but I will not be mastered by any of them.13"Food is for the stomach, and the stomach is for food," but God will do away with both of them. The body is not intended for sexual immorality. Instead, the body is for the Lord, and the Lord will provide for the body.14God both raised the Lord and will also raise us up by his power.15Do you not know that your bodies are members of Christ? Should I then take the members of Christ and join them to a prostitute? May it not be!16Do you not know that he who is joined to a prostitute becomes one body with her? As scripture says, "The two will become one flesh."17But he who is joined to the Lord becomes one spirit with him.18Run away from sexual immorality! Every other sin that a person commits is outside the body, but the sexually immoral person sins against his own body.19Do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit, who lives within you, whom you have from God? Do you not know that you are not your own?20For you were bought with a price. Therefore glorify God with your body and in your spirit, which belong to God.

#### 1 Corinthians 6:1

##### dispute

in this case a legal complaint, argument, or disagreement

##### does he dare ... holy people?

"it is wrong for him to dare ... holy people." or "he should fear God and not ... God's holy people."

##### to bring a lawsuit before the unrighteous rather than before God's holy people

Paul teaches that a Christian should not take another Christian to court before a non-Christian judge. Christians will judge the angels, so they should be able to solve problems among themselves. It is better to be cheated.

#### 1 Corinthians 6:2

##### Do you not know that God's holy people will judge the world?

"You act like you do not know that God's holy people will judge the world."

##### If then you will judge the world, are you not able to settle matters of little importance?

"You will judge the world in the future, so you should be able to settle this small matter now."

#### 1 Corinthians 6:3

##### judge matters of this life

"stop arguments about things that have to do with this life"

##### Do you not know that we will judge the angels?

"You know that we will judge the angels."

##### we

Paul includes himself and the Corinthians.

##### How much more, then, can we judge matters of this life?

"Because we know we will judge the angels, we can also be sure that God will enable us to judge matters in this life."

#### 1 Corinthians 6:4

##### If then you have to make judgments that pertain to daily life

"If you are called upon to make decisions about daily life" or "If you must settle matters that are important in this life"

##### do you lay such cases as these before those who have no standing in the church?

"you should not lay such cases as these before those who have no standing in the church."

#### 1 Corinthians 6:5

##### to your shame

"to your dishonor" or "to show how you have failed in this matter"

##### Is there no one among you wise enough to settle a dispute between brothers?

"You should be ashamed that you cannot find a wise believer to settle arguments between fellow believers"

##### dispute

argument or disagreement

#### 1 Corinthians 6:6

##### But one brother brings a lawsuit against another brother—and this before unbelievers

"It is bad that brothers have such bad disputes with each other that they go to court; it is even worse that those courts are run by unbelievers"

##### brother brings a lawsuit against another brother

Here "brother" means fellow Christian, including both men and women.

##### brings a lawsuit

asks the civil court to judge the matter

##### and this before unbelievers

"and the brothers have unbelieving judges make decisions for them" or "and unbelievers in the community see brothers disputing with one another"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:7

##### is already a defeat

"is already a failure"

##### Why not rather suffer the wrong? Why not rather allow yourselves to be cheated?

"It would be better to let others wrong you and cheat you than to take them to court."

#### 1 Corinthians 6:9

##### Do you not know that ... kingdom of God?

"You already know that ... kingdom of God."

##### inherit

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member.

##### inherit the kingdom of God

God will not judge them as righteous at the judgment, and they will not enter eternal life.

##### nor men who submit to homosexual acts, nor men who perform homosexual acts

Both of these phrases refer to men who have sex with other men.

#### 1 Corinthians 6:10

##### thieves

people who steal from others

##### the greedy

people who are willing to use evil means to take others' property

#### 1 Corinthians 6:11

##### you have been cleansed

"God has cleansed you"

##### you have been sanctified

"God has set you apart for himself"

##### you have been justified

"God has made you right with him"

##### in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ

"by the power and authority of our Lord Jesus Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:12

##### "Everything is lawful for me," but

"People say, 'I am allowed to do anything,' but" or "I am allowed to do anything, but"

##### but not everything is profitable

"but not everything is good for me"

##### I will not be mastered by any of them

"I will not allow these things to rule over me like a master"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:13

##### "Food is for the stomach, and the stomach is for food," but God will do away with both of them

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is correcting what some Corinthians might be thinking, "food is for the stomach, and the stomach is for food," by answering that God will do away with both the stomach and food or 2) Paul actually agrees that "food is for the stomach, and the stomach is for food,".

##### Food is for the stomach, and the stomach is for food

You should translate this literally as "stomach" and "food."

##### do away with

"destroy"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:14

##### raised the Lord

"caused the Lord to live again"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:15

##### Do you not know that your bodies are members of Christ?

"You should know that your bodies belong to Christ."

##### Should I then take the members of Christ and join them to a prostitute? May it not be!

"I am part of Christ. I will not take my body and join myself to a prostitute!" or "We are parts of Christ's body. We must not take our bodies and join ourselves to prostitutes!"

##### May it not be!

"That should never happen!" or "We must never do that!"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:16

##### Do you not know that ... her?

"I want to remind you that ... her."

##### he who is joined to a prostitute becomes one body with her

"when a man joins his body to the body of a prostitute, it is as if their bodies become one body"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:17

##### he who is joined to the Lord becomes one spirit with him

"when the Lord joins his spirit to the spirit of a person, it is as if their spirits become one spirit"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:18

##### Run away from

"Get away from"

##### immorality! Every other sin that a person commits is outside the body, but

"immorality! Some of you are saying, 'Every sin that a person commits is outside the body,' but I say that"

##### sin that a person commits

"evil deed that a person does"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:19

##### Do you not know ... God? Do you not know that you are not your own?

"I want to remind you ... God and that you are not your own."

##### your body

the body of each individual Christian is a temple of the Holy Spirit

##### temple of the Holy Spirit

The bodies of believers are like temples because the Holy Spirit lives within them and refers to the place where the Holy Spirit stays and is worshiped.

#### 1 Corinthians 6:20

##### For you were bought with a price

"God paid for your freedom"

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true,"

Chapter 7

1Now concerning the issues you wrote about: "It is good for a man not to touch a woman."2But because of temptations for many immoral acts, each man should have his own wife, and each woman should have her own husband.3The husband should fulfill his duty to have sexual relations with his wife, and in the same way the wife to her husband.4It is not the wife who has authority over her own body, it is the husband. In the same way, the husband does not have authority over his own body, but the wife does.5Do not deprive each other, except by mutual agreement and for a specific period of time. Do this so that you may devote yourselves to prayer. Then you should come together again, so that Satan may not tempt you because of your lack of self-control.

6But I say these things to you as a concession and not as a command.7I wish that everyone were as I am. But each one has his own gift from God. One has this kind of gift, and another that kind.8To the unmarried and to widows I say that it is good for them if they remain unmarried, as I am.9But if they cannot exercise self-control, they should marry. For it is better for them to marry than to burn with passion.10Now to the married I give this command—not I, but the Lord—the wife should not separate from her husband11(but if she does separate from her husband, she should remain unmarried or else be reconciled to her husband), and the husband should not divorce his wife.12But to the rest I say—I, not the Lord—that if any brother has a wife who is an unbeliever, and if she is content to live with him, he should not divorce her.13If a woman has an unbelieving husband, and if he is content to live with her, she should not divorce him.14For the unbelieving husband is set apart because of his wife, and the unbelieving wife is set apart because of the brother. Otherwise your children would be unclean, but actually they are set apart.15But if the unbeliever departs, let him go. In such cases, the brother or sister is not bound to their vows. God has called us to live in peace.16For how do you know, woman, whether you will save your husband? Or how do you know, man, whether you will save your wife?17However, as the Lord has given each one his portion, let each one walk as God has called him. This is my rule in all the churches.18Was anyone circumcised when he was called to believe? He should not try to appear uncircumcised. Was anyone uncircumcised when he was called to faith? He should not be circumcised.19For it is neither circumcision nor uncircumcision that matters. What matters is obeying the commandments of God.20Each one should remain in the calling he was in when God called him to believe.21Were you a slave when God called you? Do not be concerned about it. But if you can become free, take advantage of it.22For someone who is called by the Lord as a slave is the Lord's freeman. In the same way, the one who was free when he was called to believe is Christ's slave.23You have been bought with a price, so do not become slaves of men.24Brothers, in whatever situation he was in when he was called, let each one remain with God in that.

25Now concerning virgins, I have no commandment from the Lord. But I give my opinion as one who, by the Lord's mercy, is trustworthy.26Therefore, I think that because of the disaster that is coming, it is good for a man to remain as he is.27Are you bound to a wife? Do not seek a divorce. If you are free of a wife, do not seek a wife.28But if you do marry, you have not sinned, and if a virgin marries, she has not sinned. But those who do will have many kinds of fleshly trouble, and I want to spare you from this.29But this I say, brothers: The time is short. From now on, let those who have wives live as though they had none.30Those who weep should act as though they were not weeping, and those who rejoice as though they were not rejoicing, and those who buy as though they did not possess anything,31and those who use the world should not act as though they are using it to the full. For the world in its present form is coming to an end.32I would like you to be free from worries. The unmarried man is concerned about the things of the Lord, how to please him.33But the married man is concerned about the things of the world, how to please his wife—34he is divided. The unmarried woman or the virgin is concerned about the things of the Lord, how to be set apart in body and in spirit. But the married woman is concerned about the things of the world, how to please her husband.35I say this for your own benefit, and not to put any constraint on you. I say this for what is right, so that you may be devoted to the Lord without any distraction.36But if anyone thinks that he is not treating his virgin with respect—if she is beyond the age of marriage and it must be so—he should do what he wants. He is not sinning. They should marry.37But if he is standing firm in his heart, if he is not under pressure but can control his own will, and if he has decided in his own heart to do this, to keep his own a virgin, he will do well.38So the one who marries his virgin does well, and the one who chooses not to marry will do even better.39A woman is bound to her husband while he lives. But if her husband dies, she is free to marry anyone she wishes, but only in the Lord.40Yet in my judgment she would be happier if she lives as she is. And I think that I also have the Spirit of God.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:1

##### "It is good for a man not to touch a woman."

"you wrote, 'It is good for a man not to touch a woman.'" or "my answer is that yes, it is good for a man not to touch a woman."

##### It is good

"It is most helpful"

##### for a man

"a husband" or "a man" refers to any man.

##### not to touch a woman

"not to have sexual relations with his wife for a while." or "not to marry"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:2

##### But because

"That is true, but because"

##### But because of temptations for many immoral acts, each

"But because Satan tempts people to commit sexual sin, each" or "But we desire to commit sexual sin because of our sinful nature, so each"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:3

##### fulfill his duty to have sexual relations with his wife

"should give to his wife her sexual rights"

##### in the same way the wife to her husband

"in the same way, the wife should fulfill her duty to have sexual relations with her husband"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:5

##### Do not deprive each other, except by mutual agreement and for

"Only if you both agree to deprive each other should you do so, and even then only do so for"

##### so that you may devote yourselves to prayer

"in order to commit yourselves to a period of especially deep prayer"

##### come together again

"sleep together again"

##### because of your lack of self-control

"because after some days, your sexual desires will be harder to keep under control"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:6

##### I say these things to you as a concession and not as a command

Possible meanings are Paul is telling the Corinthians that he is allowing them, 1) to marry and sleep together or 2) to stop sleeping together for a time.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:7

##### were as I am

Either Paul had never married or his wife had died. It is unlikely that he had been through a divorce.

##### But each one has his own gift from God. One has this kind of gift, and another that kind

"But God enables people to do different things. He enables one person to do one thing and another person to do something different."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:8

##### the unmarried

"those who are not married"

##### to widows

"to women whose husbands have died"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:9

##### to burn with passion.

"to live with the constant desire to sleep with someone."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:10

##### should not separate from

"should not divorce". Paul says married Christians should not divorce. A Christian married to an unbeliever should not leave their husband or wife. If the unbelieving husband or wife leaves, this is not a sin.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:11

##### be reconciled to her husband

"she should make peace with her husband and return to him"

##### should not divorce

"should not separate from"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:12

##### content

"willing" or "satisfied"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:14

##### For the unbelieving husband is set apart because of his wife

"For God has set apart the unbelieving husband for himself because of his believing wife" or "God treats the unbelieving husband as he would treat a son for the sake of his believing wife”

##### the unbelieving wife is set apart because of the brother

"God has set apart the unbelieving wife for himself because of her husband who believes" or "God treats the unbelieving wife as he would treat a daughter for the sake of her husband who believes”

##### they are set apart

"God has set them apart for himself" or "God treats them as he would treat his own children"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:15

##### In such cases, the brother or sister is not bound to their vows

"In such cases, God does not require the believing spouse to continue to obey the marriage vow".

#### 1 Corinthians 7:16

##### do you know, woman ... you will save your husband ... do you know, man ... you will save your wife

Paul is speaking to the Corinthians as if they were one person, so all instances of "you" and "your" here are singular.

##### how do you know, woman, whether you will save your husband?

"you cannot know if you will save your unbelieving husband."

##### how do you know, man, whether you will save your wife?

"you cannot know if you will save your unbelieving wife."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:17

##### as the Lord has given each one his portion

"as the Lord has assigned each one his life"

##### each one

"each believer"

##### let each one walk as God has called him

"each one should live as he was when he became a Christian." or "each one should live as God has instructed him to" or "each one should follow God's commands as he lives his life"

##### This is my rule in all the churches

Paul was teaching believers in all the churches to act in this manner.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:18

##### Was anyone circumcised when he was called to believe? He

"If someone was already circumcised when God called him to believe, he". Paul was addressing the Jews.

##### Was anyone uncircumcised when he was called to faith? He

"If someone was uncircumcised when God called him to believe, he".

#### 1 Corinthians 7:20

##### remain in the calling

"live and work as you did"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:21

##### Were you ... called you? Do not be ... you can become

Paul is speak here as if all instances of "you" and the command "be" are singular.

##### Were you a slave when God called you? Do not be concerned

"To anyone who was a slave when God called you to believe, I say this: do not be concerned"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:22

##### the Lord's freeman

This freeman is forgiven by God and is free from Satan and sin.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:23

##### You have been bought with a price

"Christ bought you by dying for you"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:24

##### Brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### whatever situation he was in when he was called

"whether he was married or unmarried, slave or free, when he was called"

##### he was called

"God called him"

##### let each one remain

"each one should remain." That is, each one should remain as he was when he first believed in Christ.

##### with God

"as a person responsible to God"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:25

##### Now concerning virgins, I have no commandment from the Lord

"The Lord has not commanded me to say anything to people who have never married"

##### virgins

"people who have never married"

##### I give my opinion

"I tell you what I think"

##### as one who, by the Lord's mercy, is trustworthy

"because, by the Lord's mercy, I am trustworthy"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:27

##### Are you bound to a wife? Do not ...

"If you are married to a wife, do not". Here all instances of "you" and the command "do not seek" are singular.

##### Do not seek a divorce

"Do not try to divorce her"

##### do not seek a wife

"do not try to get married"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:28

##### fleshly trouble

"trouble in this life"

##### I want to spare you from this

"I want to help you not to have worldly trouble"

##### virgin

"someone who has never married"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:29

##### The time is short

"There is little time"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:31

##### those who use the world

"those who deal every day with unbelievers"

##### should not act as though they are using it to the full.

"should show by their actions that they have their hope in God."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:32

##### free from worries

"without needing to worry"

##### concerned about

"focused on"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:34

##### he is divided

"he is trying to please God and please his wife at the same time"

##### The unmarried woman or the virgin

Possible meanings are 1) "virgin" refers only to virgins, while "unmarried woman" could be a divorcée or any other unmarried non-virgin, or 2) "unmarried woman" explains what Paul means by "virgin."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:35

##### any constraint

any restriction

##### may be devoted to

"can concentrate on"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:36

##### not treating his virgin with respect

"not being kind to his virgin" or "not honoring his virgin"

##### his virgin

"the woman whom he promised to marry" or "his fiancée" or "his virgin daughter."

##### They should marry

"He should marry his fiancée" or "He should let his daughter get married."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:37

##### But if he is standing firm in his heart

"But if he has decided firmly in his own mind"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:38

##### So the one who marries his virgin does well, and the one who chooses not to marry will do even better

"So the one who allows his virgin daughter to marry does well, and the one who chooses not to have her marry will do even better."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:39

##### A woman is bound to her husband

"A woman is married to her husband" or "A woman is united with her husband"

##### while he lives

"for as long as he lives" or "until he dies"

##### in the Lord

"if the new husband is a believer"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:40

##### my judgment

"my understanding of God's word"

##### happier

more contented, more joyful

##### lives as she is

"remains unmarried."

Chapter 8

1Now concerning food sacrificed to idols: We know that we all have knowledge. Knowledge puffs up, but love builds up.2If anyone thinks he knows something, that person does not yet know as he should know.3But if anyone loves God, that person is known by him.4Therefore, concerning the eating of food sacrificed to idols: We know that an idol in this world is nothing and that there is no God but one.5For even if there were so-called gods, either in heaven or on earth (just as there are many "gods" and many "lords"),6yet for us there is only one God, the Father, from whom are all things and for whom we live, and one Lord Jesus Christ, through whom all things exist, and through whom we exist.

7However, this knowledge is not in everyone. Instead, some previously practiced idol worship, and they eat this food as if it were something sacrificed to an idol. Their conscience is thereby defiled because it is weak.8But food will not present us to God. We are not worse if we do not eat, nor better if we do eat it.9But take care that your freedom does not become a reason for someone who is weak in faith to stumble.10For suppose that someone sees you, who have knowledge, eating a meal in an idol's temple. Is not his weak conscience emboldened to eat what is offered to idols?11So because of your understanding about the true nature of idols, the weaker one, the brother for whom Christ died, is destroyed.12Thus, when you sin against your brothers and wound their weak consciences, you sin against Christ.13Therefore, if food causes my brother to stumble, I will never eat meat again, so that I may not cause my brother to fall.

#### 1 Corinthians 8:1

##### food sacrificed to idols

Gentile worshipers would offer grain, fish, fowl, or meat to their gods. The priest would burn a portion of it on the altar. Paul is speaking of the portion the priest would give back for the worshiper to eat or sell in the market.

##### Knowledge puffs up

"Knowledge makes people proud" or "People who think that they know a lot become proud"

##### but love builds up

"but when we love people, we build them up"

##### love builds up

"love strengthens people" or "when we love people, we strengthen them"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:2

##### thinks he knows something,

"believes he knows everything about something,"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:3

##### that person is known by him

"God knows that person"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:4

##### We know that an idol in this world is nothing and that there is no God but one

"We all know, as you yourselves like to say, that an idol in this world has no power and that there is no God but one". "We" here refers to all believers and includes Paul's audience.

#### 1 Corinthians 8:5

##### so-called gods,

"things that people call gods,"

##### many "gods" and many "lords"

Paul does not believe that many gods and many lords exist, but he recognizes that the pagans believe they do.

#### 1 Corinthians 8:6

##### yet for us there is only one God

"yet we know that there is only one God"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:7

##### everyone ... some

"all people ... some people who are now Christians". Paul is speaking here of "weak" brothers, people who cannot separate food sacrificed to idols from the worship of those idols.

##### defiled

ruined or harmed, especially as regards the person's relationship with God

#### 1 Corinthians 8:8

##### food will not present us to God

"food does not give us favor with God" or "the food we eat does not make God pleased with us"

##### We are not worse if we do not eat, nor better if we do eat it

"Some people might think that if we do not eat some things, God will love us less. But they are wrong. Those who think that God will love us more if we do eat those things are also wrong"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:9

##### someone who is weak

believers not strong in their faith (see verse 7)

#### 1 Corinthians 8:10

##### sees you, who have

Paul is speaking to the Corinthians as if they were one person, so these words are singular.

##### his ... conscience

what he understands to be right and wrong

##### emboldened to eat

"encouraged to eat"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:11

##### the weaker one ... is destroyed

The brother or sister who is not strong in his or her faith will sin.

#### 1 Corinthians 8:13

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true"

##### if food causes

"if by eating I cause" or "if I, because of what I eat, cause"

Chapter 9

1Am I not free? Am I not an apostle? Have I not seen Jesus our Lord? Are you not my work in the Lord?2If I am not an apostle to others, at least I am to you. For you are the seal of my apostleship in the Lord.3This is my defense to those who examine me:4Do we not have the right to eat and drink?5Do we not have the right to take along a wife who is a believer, as do the rest of the apostles, and the brothers of the Lord, and Cephas?6Or do only I and Barnabas not have the right to not work at a trade?7Who serves as a soldier at his own expense? Who plants a vineyard and does not eat its fruit? Or who shepherds a flock and does not drink milk from it?8Do I say these things based on human authority? Does not the law also say this?9For it is written in the law of Moses, "Do not put a muzzle on an ox when it is threshing the grain." Is it really the oxen that God cares about?10Is he not speaking about us? It was written for us, because the one who plows should plow in hope, and the one who threshes should thresh in the hope of sharing in the harvest.11If we sowed spiritual things among you, is it too much for us to reap physical things from you?12If others exercised this right from you, do we not have even more? But we did not claim this right. Instead we endured everything rather than be a hindrance to the gospel of Christ.13Do you not know that those who perform sacred duties get their food from the temple? Do you not know that those who serve at the altar share in what is offered on the altar?14In the same way, the Lord commanded that those who proclaim the gospel should get their living from the gospel.15But I have not claimed any of these rights. And I do not write this so something might be done for me. It would be better for me to die than—No one will make my boast empty!16For if I preach the gospel, I have no reason for boasting, because I must do this. And woe be to me if I do not preach the gospel!17For if I do this willingly, I have a reward. But if not willingly, I still have a stewardship that was entrusted to me.18What then is my reward? That when I preach, I may offer the gospel without charge and so not take full use of my right in the gospel.19For though I am free from all, I became a servant to all, in order that I might win more.20To the Jews I became like a Jew, in order to win Jews. To those under the law, I became like one under the law in order to win those under the law. I did this even though I myself was not under the law. [1](#footnote-target-1)21To those outside the law, I became like one outside the law, although I was not outside the law of God myself, but under the law of Christ. I did this so that I may win those outside the law.22To the weak I became weak, so that I may win the weak. I have become all things to all people, so that I may by all means save some.23I do all things for the gospel's sake, so that I may participate in its blessings.24Do you not know that in a race all the runners run the race, but that only one receives the prize? So run to win the prize.25Every athlete exercises self-control in all things. They do it to receive a wreath that is perishable, but we do it to receive one that is imperishable.26Therefore this is how I run, as not without purpose; this is how I box, not as one beating the air.27But I subdue my body and make it a slave, so that after I have preached to others, I myself may not be disqualified.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The ULB has: I did this even though I myself was not under the law . A few important and ancient Greek copies, with other ancient translations, leave this sentence out.

#### 1 Corinthians 9:1

##### Am I not free?

"I am a free person." Paul explains how he uses the liberty he has in Christ.

##### Am I not an apostle?

"I am an apostle."

##### Have I not seen Jesus our Lord?

"I have seen Jesus our Lord."

##### Are you not my work in the Lord?

"You believe in Christ because I have worked the way the Lord wants me to."

##### my work

"the result of the work that I have done"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:2

##### you are the seal of my apostleship in the Lord

"you are evidence I can use to prove that the Lord has chosen me to be an apostle"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:3

##### This is my defense ... me:

Possible meanings are 1) the words that follow are Paul's defense or 2) the words in verses 1 and 2 are Paul's defense.

#### 1 Corinthians 9:4

##### Do we not have the right to eat and drink?

"We have the right to receive food and drink from the churches."

##### we

Here "we" refers to Paul and Barnabas.

#### 1 Corinthians 9:5

##### Do we not have the right ... Cephas?

"We certainly have the right ... Cephas."

##### a wife who is a believer

"a believing wife" or "a Christian wife"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:6

##### Or do only I and Barnabas not have the right to not work at a trade?

"You seem to think that Barnabas and I are the only apostles who have no authority to not work at a trade"

##### not have the right to not work at a trade

"have to work at a trade" or "have to have another job"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:7

##### Who serves as a soldier at his own expense?

"We all know that no soldier has to buy his own supplies." or "We all know that every soldier receives his supplies from the government."

##### Who plants a vineyard and does not eat its fruit?

"We all know that the one who plants a vineyard will be allowed to eat its fruit."

##### Or who shepherds a flock and does not drink milk from it?

"We all know that those who shepherd flocks may drink milk from the flocks"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:8

##### Do I say these things based on human authority? Does not the law also say this?

"I am not saying these things based on human authority. The law also says this."

#### 1 Corinthians 9:9

##### Is it really the oxen that God cares about?

"God does not only care about the oxen."

#### 1 Corinthians 9:10

##### Is he not speaking about us?

"Instead, God was certainly speaking about us."

##### should plow in hope

"should plow, expecting to receive something for his work" or "should plow, expecting to share in the harvest"

##### should thresh in the hope of sharing in the harvest

"should thresh, expecting to share in the harvest"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:11

##### If we sowed spiritual things among you, is it too much for us to reap physical things from you?

"If we taught you about Christ and spiritual truths, is it too much for us to receive money from you for our work?

##### is it too much for us to reap physical things from you?

"then it should not be too much for us to reap physical things from you."

#### 1 Corinthians 9:12

##### If others exercised ... you, do we not have even more?

"Since others exercised ... you, then we have that right even more."

##### others

other workers of the gospel

##### be a hindrance to

"be a burden to" or "stop the spread of"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:13

##### Do you not know that those who perform sacred duties get their food from the temple?

"I want to remind you that those who perform sacred duties get their food from the temple."

##### perform sacred duties

"perform sacred duties in the temple" or "work in the temple"

##### Do you not know that those who serve at the altar share in what is offered on the altar?

"I want to remind you that those who serve at the altar get some of the foods and meat that people offer on the altar."

#### 1 Corinthians 9:14

##### get their living from the gospel

"receive their food and other things they need from those to whom they teach the good news," or "receive their food and other things they need because they work to tell the good news."

#### 1 Corinthians 9:15

##### these rights

"these things that I deserve"

##### so something might be done for me

"so you will do something for me"

##### It would be better for me to die than—No one will make my boast empty!

"I would rather die than to have someone deprive me of this boast."

##### make my boast empty

"take away this opportunity I have to boast" or "make it so I have nothing to boast about"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:16

##### I must do this.

"I must preach the gospel."

##### woe be to me if

"may I suffer misfortune if"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:17

##### if I do this willingly

"if I preach willingly" or "if I preach because I want to"

##### But if not willingly

"But if I do this even though I do not want to".

##### I still have a stewardship that was entrusted to me

"I still must complete this work that God entrusted to me" or "I still must do this work that God gave me to complete"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:18

##### What then is my reward?

"This is my reward."

##### That when I preach, I may offer the gospel without charge

"My reward for preaching is that I can preach the gospel without receiving payment"

##### so not take full use of my right in the gospel

"so not ask people to support me as I travel and preach"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:19

##### I am free from all

"Though I am not obligated to anyone"

##### I became a servant to all

"I became like a servant to all" or "I became willing to serve all"

##### win more

"help others trust in Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:20

##### I became like a Jew

"I acted like a Jew" or "I practiced Jewish customs". This passage is important because Paul "contextualizes" ministering the gospel (the gospel stays the same) to different audiences. The translator should take extra care to preserve aspects of this "contextualization".

##### I became like one under the law

"I became like one committed to following the demands of the Jewish leadership, accepting their understanding of the Jewish scriptures"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:21

##### To those outside the law, I became like one outside the law

"To Gentiles, who are not obligated to follow the law of Moses, I became like them"

##### although I was not outside the law of God myself, but under the law of Christ

"although I was not one of those who is not obligated to obey the law of God, but I was obligated to obey the law of Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:24

##### Do you not know that in a race all the runners run the race, but that only one receives the prize?

"Let me remind you that although all runners run the race, only one runner receives the prize."

##### run the race

As in a race, the Christian life and work require strict discipline on the part of the runner and the Christian.

#### 1 Corinthians 9:25

##### a wreath that is perishable ... one that is imperishable

Wreaths were given as prizes to athletes. Paul speaks of eternal life as if it were a wreath that would never dry up.

#### 1 Corinthians 9:26

##### run ... box

These both refer to living the Christian life and serving God by working as hard as one can to succeed.

##### run, as not without purpose

"run: with purpose"

##### box

to beat another person with the fists in a sporting contest

#### 1 Corinthians 9:27

##### I myself may not be disqualified

"the judge will not disqualify me" or "God will not say that I have failed to obey the rules"

Chapter 10

1I do not want you to be uninformed, brothers, that our fathers were all under the cloud and all passed through the sea.2All were baptized into Moses in the cloud and in the sea,3and all ate the same spiritual food.4All drank the same spiritual drink. For they drank from a spiritual rock that followed them, and that rock was Christ.5But God was not well pleased with most of them, and their corpses were scattered about in the wilderness.6Now these things were examples for us, so we would not be those who lust for evil things as they lusted.7Do not be idolaters, as some of them were. This is as it is written: "The people sat down to eat and drink, and rose up to play."8Let us not commit sexual immorality, as many of them did. In one day, twenty-three thousand people died because of it.9Neither let us put Christ to the test, as many of them tested him and were destroyed by snakes.10Also do not grumble, as many of them did and were destroyed by an angel of death.11Now these things happened to them as examples for us. They were written for our instruction—for us on whom the end of the ages has come.12Therefore let anyone who thinks he stands be careful that he does not fall.13No temptation has overtaken you that is not common to all humanity. Instead, God is faithful. He will not let you be tempted beyond your ability. With the temptation he will also provide the way of escape, so that you may be able to endure it.

14Therefore, my beloved ones, run away from idolatry.15I speak to you as people who have understanding, so you may judge what I say.16The cup of blessing that we bless, is it not a sharing in the blood of Christ? The bread that we break, is it not a sharing in the body of Christ?17Because there is one loaf of bread, we who are many are one body. We all take of one loaf of bread together.18Look at the Israel that is according to the flesh. Are not those who eat the sacrifices participants in the altar?19What am I saying then? That an idol is anything? Or that food sacrificed to an idol is anything?20But I say about the things they sacrifice, that they offer these things to demons and not to God. I do not want you to be participants with demons!21You cannot drink the cup of the Lord and the cup of demons. You cannot participate at the table of the Lord and the table of demons.22Or do we provoke the Lord to jealousy? Are we stronger than he is?

23"Everything is lawful," but not everything is profitable. "Everything is lawful," but not everything builds people up.24No one should seek his own good. Instead, each one should seek the good of his neighbor.25Eat everything sold in the market without asking questions of conscience.26For "the earth is the Lord's, and the fullness of it."27If an unbeliever invites you to eat a meal, and you wish to go, eat whatever is set before you without asking questions of conscience.28But if someone says to you, "This has been offered in sacrifice," then do not eat it, both for the sake of the one who informed you, and for the sake of conscience— [1](#footnote-target-1)29the conscience of the other man, I mean, and not yours. For why should my freedom be judged by another's conscience?30If I partake of the meal with gratitude, why am I being insulted for that for which I gave thanks?31Therefore, whether you eat or drink, or whatever you do, do all to the glory of God.32Be blameless both to Jews and to Greeks, and to the church of God.33In the same way I try to please all people in all things. I do not seek my benefit, but that of the many. I do this so that they may be saved.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient copies of the Greek text add, For the earth and everything in it belong to the Lord . But the best ancient copies of the Greek text do not have this. Many scholars see this addition as a duplication of verse 26.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:1

##### our fathers

"our ancestors". Paul is referring to the time of Moses in the book of Exodus when Israel fled through the Red Sea as the Egyptian army pursued them. Paul means that all Christians are spiritual descendants of Israel.

##### were all under the cloud

"were all led by God who was in the cloud"

##### passed through the sea

This sea is known by two names, the Red Sea and the Sea of Reeds.

##### passed through

"walked through" or "traveled through"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:2

##### All were baptized into Moses in the cloud and in the sea

"It was like all of them received baptism when they followed Moses across the sea as God led them in the cloud"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:3

##### all ate the same spiritual food

"All ate the same food that God supernaturally provided from heaven"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:4

##### drank the same spiritual drink ... spiritual rock

"drank the same water that God supernaturally caused to come out of the rock ... supernatural rock"

##### that rock was Christ

"it was Christ who worked through that rock"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:5

##### most of them

"most of the Israelite fathers" or "most of our ancestors"

##### their corpses were scattered about

"God scattered their dead bodies around" or "God killed them and scattered their bodies"

##### in the wilderness

the desert land between Egypt and Israel through which the Israelites wandered for 40 years

#### 1 Corinthians 10:7

##### idolaters

people who worship idols

##### sat down to eat and drink

"sat down to eat a meal"

##### play

Paul is quoting from Exodus 32:4,6 and 19. His readers would have understood the people were worshiping an idol by singing, dancing and engaging in sexual activities.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:8

##### In one day, twenty-three thousand people died

"God killed 23,000 people in one day"

##### because of it

"because they committed those unlawful sexual acts."

#### 1 Corinthians 10:9

##### as many of them tested him

"as many of them did"

##### tested him and were destroyed by snakes

"tested him. As a result, snakes destroyed them"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:10

##### did and were destroyed by an angel of death

"did. As a result, an angel of death destroyed them"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:11

##### these things happened to them

"God punished our ancestors"

##### examples for us

Here "us" refers to all believers.

##### the end of the ages

"the last days"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:12

##### does not fall

does not sin or reject God

#### 1 Corinthians 10:13

##### No temptation has overtaken you that is not common to all humanity

"The temptations that affect you are temptations that all people experience"

##### He will not let you be tempted beyond your ability

"He will only allow you to be tempted in ways that you are strong enough to resist"

##### will not let you be tempted

"will not allow anyone to tempt you"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:14

##### run away from idolatry

"do all you can to get away from worshiping idols"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:16

##### The cup of blessing

Paul is speaking of God's blessing like the cup used in the Lord's Supper, which represents the blood and body of Christ.

##### that we bless

"for which we thank God"

##### is it not a sharing in the blood of Christ?

"we share in the blood of Christ.". Paul is reminding the Corinthians that the cup of wine we share symbolically represents us sharing in the blood of Christ.

##### The bread that we break, is it not a sharing in the body of Christ?

"We share in the body of Christ when we share bread."

##### a sharing in

"taking part in" or "equally participating with others in"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:18

##### the Israel that is according to the flesh

"the natural Israel" or "the physical Israel" or "the people of Israel"

##### Are not those who eat the sacrifices participants in the altar?

"Those who eat the sacrifices share in the activities and the blessings of the altar."

#### 1 Corinthians 10:19

##### What am I saying then? That an idol is anything? Or that food sacrificed to an idol is anything?

"I am not saying that an idol is a real god or that food that has been sacrificed to idols has any power." or "What am I saying then? Am I saying that an idol is anything? Or am I saying that food sacrificed to an idol is anything?"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:20

##### the things they sacrifice

"the things that the Gentile pagans sacrifice"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:21

##### You cannot drink the cup of the Lord and the cup of demons

"You cannot be united to the Lord by drinking from his cup and also be united to demons by drinking from their cup"

##### You cannot drink the cup

"You cannot drink from the cup" or "You cannot drink the wine from the cup". This refers to the cup of wine that people drink from when celebrating the Lord's supper.

##### the cup of demons

This refers to anything people might drink during a meal dedicated to demons.

##### You cannot participate at the table of the Lord and the table of demons

"You cannot eat together at the table of the Lord and at the table of demons" or "You cannot join in eating to honor the Lord and join in eating to honor demons"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:22

##### Or do we provoke the Lord to jealousy?

"Surely you do not want to provoke the Lord to jealousy."

##### provoke

to anger or irritate

##### Are we stronger than he is?

"You are not stronger than he is."

#### 1 Corinthians 10:23

##### Everything is lawful

"People say, 'I am allowed to do anything'" or "I am allowed to do anything." See 1 Corinthians 6:12.

##### not everything is profitable

"some things are not profitable" or "some things do not help people"

##### not everything builds people up

"not everything strengthens people" or "some things do not strengthen people"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:25

##### Eat everything sold in the market

"You may eat anything sold in the market."

##### without asking questions of conscience

"without asking questions that could make the conscience feel guilty" or "without asking questions about whether it is sinful to eat it". Paul discusses meat offered to idols. If someone tells you it has been offered to idols, don't eat it for the sake of that person. Do not offend anyone but seek to save them instead.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:26

##### and the fullness of it

"and everything in it." By saying that everything on the earth belongs to the Lord; Paul shows that even meat at the market, that was offered to idols, belongs to the Lord. See Psalm 24:1 and Psalm 50:12.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:28

##### This has been offered in sacrifice

This was the part of the meat that the worshiper was allowed to bring home after killing an animal as a sacrifice to an idol.

##### for the sake of the one who informed you

"for the good of the one who informed you"

##### and for the sake of conscience

"and because of conscience" or "and in order not to cause concerns about whether or not it is sinful"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:29

##### For why should my freedom be judged by another's conscience?

"For another person's conscience should not judge my freedom."

##### my freedom

"my being free" or "what I do because I am free"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:30

##### If I partake of the meal with gratitude

"If I give thanks to God for the food when I share in the meal"

##### why am I being insulted for that for which I gave thanks?

"I should not be insulted for that for which I gave thanks." or "People should not insult me for eating food that I have thanked God for."

#### 1 Corinthians 10:32

##### Be blameless both to Jews and to Greeks, and to the church of God

"Make sure that neither Jews nor Greeks nor the church of God can accuse you of doing wrong"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:33

##### please all people

"make all people glad"

##### I do not seek my benefit, but that of the many

"I do not do things I desire for myself, but things that help as many people as possible."

Chapter 11  
1Be imitators of me, just as I am an imitator of Christ.

2Now I praise you because you remember me in everything. I praise you because you hold firmly to the traditions just as I delivered them to you.3Now I want you to understand that Christ is the head of every man, that a man is the head of a woman, and that God is the head of Christ.4Any man who prays or prophesies with his head covered dishonors his head.5But any woman who prays or prophesies with her head uncovered dishonors her head. For it is the same thing as if her head were shaved.6For if a woman will not cover her head, she should cut her hair short. If it is disgraceful for a woman to have her hair cut off or for her to shave her head, let her cover her head.7For a man should not have his head covered, since he is the image and glory of God. But the woman is the glory of the man.8For man was not made from woman. Instead, woman was made from man.9For neither was man created for woman. Instead, woman was created for man.10This is why the woman ought to have a symbol of authority on her head, because of the angels.11Nevertheless, in the Lord, the woman is not independent from the man, nor is the man independent from the woman.12For as the woman comes from the man, so does the man come from the woman. And all things come from God.13Judge for yourselves: Is it proper for a woman to pray to God with her head uncovered?14Does not even nature itself teach you that if a man has long hair, it is a dishonor for him?15Does not nature teach you that if a woman has long hair, it is her glory? For her hair has been given to her as a covering.16But if anyone wants to argue about this, we do not have any other practice, nor do the churches of God.

17But in the following instructions, I do not praise you. For when you come together, it is not for the better but for the worse.18For in the first place, I hear that when you come together in the church, there are divisions among you, and in part I believe it.19For there must also be factions among you, so that those who are approved may become evident among you.20For when you come together, it is not the Lord's Supper that you eat.21When you eat, each one eats his own food before the others have their meal. One is hungry, and another becomes drunk.22Do you not have houses to eat and to drink in? Do you despise the church of God and humiliate those who have nothing? What should I say to you? Should I praise you? I will not praise you for this!23For I received from the Lord what I also passed on to you, that the Lord Jesus, on the night when he was betrayed, took bread.24After he had given thanks, he broke it and said, "This is my body, which is for you. Do this to remember me."25In the same way he took the cup after supper, and he said, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood. Do this as often as you drink it, to remember me."26For every time you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.27Whoever, therefore, eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty of the body and the blood of the Lord.28Let a person examine himself first, and in this way let him eat of the bread and drink of the cup.29For he who eats and drinks without discerning the body eats and drinks judgment to himself.30That is why many among you are weak and ill, and some of you have fallen asleep.31But if we examine ourselves, we will not be judged.32But when we are judged by the Lord, we are disciplined, so that we may not be condemned along with the world.33Therefore, my brothers, when you come together to eat, wait for one another.34If anyone is hungry, let him eat at home, so that when you come together it will not be for judgment. And about the other things you wrote, I will give instructions when I come.

#### 1 Corinthians 11:2

##### you remember me in everything

"you think of me at all times" or "you always try act as I would want you to act"

##### you hold firmly

"you believe and practice"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:3

##### Now I want

"Because of this, I want"

##### is the head of

"has authority over". Paul uses "head" for authority in verse 3 and also to refer to a person's actual head in verse 4 and following. Since the verses are so close together, it is likely that Paul intentionally used "head" in this way.

##### a man is the head of a woman

"men are to have authority over women" or "the husband is to have authority over the wife"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:4

##### dishonors his head

"brings disgrace on himself" or "brings disgrace on Christ, who is his head."

#### 1 Corinthians 11:5

##### woman who prays ... dishonors her head

"woman who prays ... brings disgrace on herself" or "wife who prays ... brings disgrace on her husband."

##### with her head uncovered

That is, without the cloth that was worn on the top of the head and that covered the hair and shoulders.

#### 1 Corinthians 11:7

##### should not have his head covered

"must not cover his head" or "does not need to cover his head"

##### glory of the man

Just as man reflects God's greatness, the woman reflects the man's character.

#### 1 Corinthians 11:8

##### For man was not made from woman. Instead, woman was made from man

"God did not make the man from the woman. Instead, he made the woman from the man"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:9

##### For neither ... for man

The reader can see that the word "this" in "this is why ... the angels" clearly refers back to the words "the woman is the glory of the man" in 1 Corinthians 11:7. (Genesis 2:21-22).

#### 1 Corinthians 11:10

##### have a symbol of authority on her head

"to symbolize that she has man as her head".

#### 1 Corinthians 11:11

##### Nevertheless, in the Lord

"While what I have just said is all true, the most important thing is this: in the Lord"

##### in the Lord

"among Christians, who belong to the Lord" or "in the world as created by God."

##### the woman is not independent from the man, nor is the man independent from the woman

"the woman depends on the man, and the man depends on the woman"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:12

##### For as the woman comes from the man, so does the man come from the woman

The first woman, Eve, was made from the rib of the first man, Adam, and since then all men have been born by women.

##### all things come from God

"God created everyone and everything" or "God created all"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:13

##### Judge for yourselves

"Judge this issue according to the local customs and church practices you know"

##### Is it proper for a woman to pray to God with her head uncovered?

"To honor God as she prays to him, a woman should have a covering on her head."

#### 1 Corinthians 11:14

##### Does not even nature itself teach you ... for him?

"Nature itself even teaches you ... for him."

##### Does not even nature itself teach you ... for him?

"You know just from looking at the way people normally act ... for him."

#### 1 Corinthians 11:15

##### For her hair has been given to her

"For God created woman with hair"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:17

##### in the following instructions, I do not praise you. For when

"as I give you these instructions, there is something for which I cannot praise you: when"

##### the following instructions

"the instructions I am about to talk about"

##### it is not for the better but for the worse

"you do not help each other; instead, you harm each other"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:18

##### in the church

"as believers"

##### there are divisions among you

"you divide yourselves into opposing groups"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:19

##### For there must also be factions among you, so that those who are approved may become evident among you

"For you seem to want to have factions among you so that everyone will know whom you consider to be most important" or "For it is necessary for there to be factions among you so that you will know which people God has approved"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:20

##### come together

"gather together". Paul taught that the believers dishonored Christ's death if they participated in the Lord's Supper while they were sinning or while in broken relationships.

##### it is not the Lord's Supper that you eat

"you may believe you are eating the Lord's Supper, but you are not, because you do not treat it with respect"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:22

##### to eat and to drink in

"in which to gather for a meal"

##### despise

hate or treat with dishonor and disrespect

##### What should I say to you? Should I praise you?

"I can say nothing good about this. I cannot praise you."

#### 1 Corinthians 11:23

##### For I received from the Lord what I also passed on to you, that the Lord

"For it was from the Lord that I heard what I told you, and it was this: the Lord"

##### on the night when he was betrayed

"on the night that Judas Iscariot betrayed him"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:24

##### he broke it

"he pulled pieces from it"

##### This is my body

"The bread I am holding is my body"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:25

##### the cup

Possible meanings are that it was 1) the cup of wine that one would expect him to use or 2) the third or fourth of the four cups of wine that the Jews drank at the Passover meal. See Exodus 24:6 and 8.

##### Do this as often as you drink it, to remember me

"Drink from this cup, and as often as you drink from it, remember me"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:26

##### proclaim the Lord's death

teach about the crucifixion and resurrection

##### until he comes

"until Jesus comes back to the earth"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:27

##### eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord

"eats the bread of the Lord or drinks the cup of the Lord"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:28

##### examine

See how "test the quality" is translated in 1 Corinthians 3:13.

#### 1 Corinthians 11:29

##### without discerning the body

"and does not recognize that the church is the body of the Lord"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:30

##### and some of you have fallen asleep

"and some of you have died"

##### some of you

"some of the members of your group"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:31

##### we will not be judged

"God will not judge us"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:32

##### we are judged by the Lord, we are disciplined, so that we may not be condemned

"the Lord judges us, he disciplines us, so that he will not condemn us"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:33

##### wait for one another

"allow the others to arrive before beginning the meal"

#### 1 Corinthians 11:34

##### let him eat at home

"let him eat before attending this gathering"

##### it will not be for judgment

"it will not be an occasion for God to discipline you"

Chapter 12

1About spiritual gifts, brothers, I do not want you to be uninformed.2You know that when you were pagans, you were led astray to idols who could not speak, in whatever ways you were led by them.3Therefore I want you to know that no one who speaks by the Spirit of God can say, "Jesus is accursed." No one can say, "Jesus is Lord," except by the Holy Spirit.

4Now there are different gifts, but the same Spirit.5There are different ministries, but the same Lord;6and there are different kinds of work, but it is the same God who works all in all.7Now to each one is given the outward display of the Spirit for the benefit of all.8For to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom, and to another the word of knowledge by the same Spirit.9To another is given faith by the same Spirit, and to another gifts of healing by the one Spirit.10To another is given miraculous works, and to another prophecy. To another is given the ability to distinguish between spirits, to another various kinds of tongues, and to another the interpretation of tongues.11All these are the work of one and the same Spirit, giving the gifts to each one individually, as he chooses.

12For as the body is one and has many members and all are members of the same body, so it is with Christ.13For by one Spirit we were all baptized into one body, whether Jews or Greeks, whether slave or free, and all were made to drink of one Spirit.14For the body is not a single member, but many.15If the foot says, "Since I am not the hand, I am not part of the body," it is not any less a part of the body.16And if the ear says, "Because I am not an eye, I am not part of the body," it is not any less a part of the body.17If the whole body were an eye, where would the sense of hearing be? If the whole body were an ear, where would the sense of smell be?18But God has appointed each member, each one of them, into the body as he has desired.19If they were all the same member, where would the body be?20So now they are many members, but only one body.21The eye cannot say to the hand, "I have no need of you." Nor does the head say to the feet, "I have no need of you."22But the members of the body that appear to be weaker are essential,23and the parts of the body that we think are less honorable, we give them greater honor, and our unpresentable members have more dignity.24Now our presentable members have no such need. Rather, God has composed the body, giving greater honor to those members that lack it.25He did this so there may be no division within the body, but that the members should care for one another with the same affection.26So when one member suffers, all the members suffer together; or when one member is honored, all the members rejoice together.27Now you are the body of Christ and individually members of it.28And God has appointed in the church first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then those who do miracles, then gifts of healing, those who provide helps, those who do the work of administration, and those who have various kinds of tongues.29Are all of them apostles? Are all prophets? Are all teachers? Do all do miracles?30Do all of them have gifts of healing? Do all of them speak with tongues? Do all of them interpret tongues?31Zealously seek the greater gifts. And now I will show you a more excellent way.

#### 1 Corinthians 12:1

##### I do not want you to be uninformed

"I want you to be informed". Paul lets them know that God has given special gifts to believers that will help the body.

#### 1 Corinthians 12:2

##### you were led astray to idols who could not speak, in whatever ways you were led by them

"you were persuaded in some way to worship idols who cannot speak" or "you believed lies somehow and so you worshiped idols who cannot speak"

#### 1 Corinthians 12:3

##### no one who speaks by the Spirit of God can say

"no Christian who has the Spirit of God in him can say" or "no one who is prophesying by the power of the Spirit of God can say."

##### "Jesus is accursed"

"God will punish Jesus" or "God will make Jesus suffer"

##### No one can say, "Jesus is Lord," except by the Holy Spirit

"One can say, 'Jesus is Lord,' only by the Holy Spirit". This sentence probably means that no one can say that Jesus is Yahweh, God in the flesh, without the Holy Spirit's influence drawing them to accept this truth. If this statement is translated poorly, it can have unintended theological consequences.

##### by the Holy Spirit

"with the help of the Holy Spirit" or "by the power that the Holy Spirit gives him"

#### 1 Corinthians 12:6

##### works all in all

"makes active all the gifts in everyone who has received them" or "works all things in all people."

#### 1 Corinthians 12:7

##### to each one is given

"God gives to each one"

#### 1 Corinthians 12:8

##### to one is given by the Spirit the word

"by means of the Spirit God gives to one person the message"

##### the word of wisdom

"wise words"

##### the word of knowledge

"words that show knowledge"

#### 1 Corinthians 12:9

##### is given

"God gives"

##### to another gifts of healing by the one Spirit

"to another gifts of healing by the one Spirit are given"

#### 1 Corinthians 12:10

##### to another prophecy

"to another prophecy is given by the same Spirit"

##### to another various kinds of tongues

"to another the ability to speak different languages is given by the same Spirit"

##### to another the interpretation of tongues

"to another the ability to interpret what is said in other languages is given by the same Spirit"

#### 1 Corinthians 12:11

##### one and the same Spirit

God gives the gifts through the work of the one and only Holy Spirit.

#### 1 Corinthians 12:13

##### For by one Spirit we were all baptized

"For one Spirit baptized us" or "For in one Spirit we were all baptized".

##### all were made to drink of one Spirit

"God gave us all the same Spirit, which we share as people might share a drink"

#### 1 Corinthians 12:17

##### where would the sense of hearing be? ... where would the sense of smell be?

"you could not hear anything. ... you could not smell anything."

#### 1 Corinthians 12:19

##### the same member

"the same part of the body". Paul continues to talk of the variety of gifts. God gives different gifts to different believers, but Paul wants them to know that all believers are made into one body, which is called the body of Christ. For this reason believers should have unity.

##### where would the body be?

"there would be no body."

#### 1 Corinthians 12:21

##### I have no need of you

"I do not need you"

#### 1 Corinthians 12:23

##### less honorable

"less important"

##### our unpresentable members

This probably refers to the private parts of the body, which people keep covered. Some translations refer to those people that are "less presentable parts" (See New American Standard Bible) or the New Revised Standard Version which says "less respectable members". Context seems to indicate "people".

#### 1 Corinthians 12:25

##### there may be no division within the body, but

"the body may be unified, and"

#### 1 Corinthians 12:26

##### one member is honored

"someone gives honor to one member"

#### 1 Corinthians 12:28

##### first apostles

Possible meanings for "first" are 1) the first in the list or 2) the most important in the list.

##### those who provide helps

"those who provide help to other believers"

##### those who do the work of administration

"those who govern the church"

##### those who have various kinds of tongues

"those who have the ability to speak different languages"

#### 1 Corinthians 12:29

##### Are all of them apostles? Are all prophets? Are all teachers? Do all do miracles?

"Not all of them are apostles, are they? Not all are prophets, are they? Not all are teachers, are they? Not all do miracles, do they?" or "You and I all know that not all of them are apostles, not all are prophets, not all are teachers, and not all do powerful deeds."

#### 1 Corinthians 12:30

##### Do all of them have gifts of healing?

"Not all of them have gifts of healing."

##### Do all of them speak with tongues?

"Not all of them speak different languages."

##### Do all of them interpret tongues?

"Not all of them interpret what is said in other languages."

#### 1 Corinthians 12:31

##### Zealously seek the greater gifts.

"You must eagerly seek from God the gifts that best help the church." or "You are eagerly looking for gifts that you think are greater because you think they are more exciting to have."

Chapter 13

1Suppose that I speak with the tongues of men and of angels. But if I do not have love, I have become a noisy gong or a clanging cymbal.2Suppose that I have the gift of prophecy and understand all hidden truths and knowledge, and that I have all faith so as to remove mountains. But if I do not have love, I am nothing.3Suppose that I give all my possessions to feed the poor, and that I give my body to be burned. But if I do not have love, I gain nothing. [1](#footnote-target-1)4Love is patient and kind. Love is not jealous and does not boast. It is not puffed up5or rude. It does not seek its own. It is not provoked, nor does it keep a count of wrongs.6It does not rejoice in unrighteousness. Instead, it rejoices in the truth.7Love bears all things, believes all things, hopes all things, and endures all things.8Love never ends. If there are prophecies, they will pass away. If there are tongues, they will cease. If there is knowledge, it will pass away.9For we know in part and we prophesy in part.10But when the perfect comes, that which is incomplete will pass away.11When I was a child, I spoke like a child, I thought like a child, I reasoned like a child. When I became an adult, I put away childish things.12For now we see indirectly in a mirror, but then face to face. Now I know in part, but then I will know fully just as I have been fully known.13But now these three remain: faith, hope, and love. But the greatest of these is love.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Most important and ancient Greek copies, as well as ancient translations read, I give my body to be burned . There are a few important and ancient Greek copies, as well as ancient translations, that read, I give my body so that I might boast .

#### 1 Corinthians 13:1

##### the tongues of ... angels

Possible meaning is that Paul is exaggerating for the sake of effect and does not believe that people speak the language that angels use.

##### I have become a noisy gong or a clanging cymbal

I have become like instruments that make loud, annoying sounds

#### 1 Corinthians 13:3

##### I give my body to be burned

"I allow those who persecute me to burn me to death"

#### 1 Corinthians 13:4

##### Love is ... Love is not ... It is not

"Whoever loves is ... He is not ... He is not"

#### 1 Corinthians 13:5

##### It does not ... It is not ... does it keep

"He does not ... He does not ... does he keep"

##### seek its own

The word "seek" here means to desire and work for something.

##### It is not provoked

"It does not become angry easily." The person who loves controls his anger.

##### nor does it keep a count of wrongs

The person who loves others does not keep a record of the wrongs that people have done to him.

#### 1 Corinthians 13:6

##### It does not ... it rejoices

"He does not ... he rejoices"

##### does not rejoice in unrighteousness. Instead, it rejoices in the truth

"rejoices only in righteousness and truth"

#### 1 Corinthians 13:7

##### bears all things, believes all things, hopes all things, and endures all things

"always perseveres, always believes, always hopes, and always endures"

##### hopes all things

This means that whoever loves others always expects that what is good will happen.

#### 1 Corinthians 13:12

##### For now we see indirectly in a mirror

Mirrors were made of polished metal rather than glass and provided a dim, vague reflection.

##### now we see

"now we see Christ" or "now we see God."

##### but then face to face

"but then we will see face to face"

##### I will know fully

"I will know Christ fully"

##### just as I have been fully known

"just as Christ has known me fully"

#### 1 Corinthians 13:13

##### faith, hope, and love

"we must trust the Lord, be confident that he will do what he has promised, and love him and others"

Chapter 14

1Pursue love and be zealous for spiritual gifts, especially that you may prophesy.2For the one who speaks in a tongue does not speak to people but to God. For no one understands him because he speaks mysteries in the Spirit.3But the one who prophesies speaks to people to build them up, to exhort them, and to comfort them.4The one who speaks in a tongue builds up himself, but the one who prophesies builds up the church.5Now I wish that you all spoke in tongues. But even more than that, I wish that you would prophesy. The one who prophesies is greater than the one who speaks in tongues (unless someone interprets so that the church may receive edification).6But now, brothers, if I come to you speaking in tongues, how will I benefit you? I cannot, unless I speak to you with revelation, or knowledge, or prophecy, or teaching.7In the same way, when lifeless instruments are producing sounds—like the flute or the harp—if they do not produce different tones, how will anyone know what tune the flute or harp is playing?8For if the trumpet is played with an uncertain sound, how will anyone know when it is time to prepare for battle?9It is the same way for you with the tongue. If you utter speech that is not clear, how will what is said be understood? You will be speaking into the air.10There are doubtless many kinds of languages in the world, and none is without meaning.11But if I do not know the meaning of a language, I will be a foreigner to the speaker, and the speaker will be a foreigner to me.12So it is with you. Since you are eager for the manifestations of the Spirit, seek for the edification of the church so that you might abound.13So the one who speaks in a tongue should pray that he may interpret.14For if I pray in a tongue, my spirit prays, but my mind is unfruitful.15What am I to do? I will pray with my spirit, but I will also pray with my mind. I will sing with my spirit, and I will also sing with my mind.16Otherwise, if you bless God with the spirit, how will the outsider say "Amen" when you are giving thanks if he does not know what you are saying?17For you certainly give thanks well enough, but the other person is not built up.18I thank God that I speak in tongues more than all of you.19But in the church I would rather speak five words with my understanding so that I might instruct others, than ten thousand words in a tongue.

20Brothers, do not be children in your thinking. Rather, in regard to evil, be like infants. But in your thinking be mature.21In the law it is written,  
  
"By men of strange tongues and by the lips of strangersI will speak to this people.Even then they will not hear me,"says the Lord.

22So then, tongues are a sign, not to believers, but to unbelievers. But prophecy is for a sign, not for unbelievers, but for believers.23If, therefore, the whole church comes together and all speak in tongues, and outsiders and unbelievers come in, would they not say that you are insane?24But if you all were prophesying and an unbeliever or an outsider came in, he would be convicted by all he hears. He would be judged by all that is said.25The secrets of his heart would be revealed. As a result, he would fall on his face and worship God. He would declare that God is really among you.

26What is next then, brothers? When you come together, each one has a psalm, a teaching, a revelation, a tongue, or an interpretation. Do everything so that you build up the church.27If anyone speaks in a tongue, let there be two or at most three, and each one in turn, and then someone should interpret what is said.28But if there is no one to interpret, let each of them keep silent in the church. Let each one speak to himself alone and to God.29Let two or three prophets speak, and let the others listen with discernment to what is said.30But if there is a revelation to one who is sitting, let the first be silent.31For each of you can prophesy one by one so that each one may learn and all may be exhorted.32For the spirits of the prophets are subject to the prophets.33For God is not a God of confusion, but of peace.

This is the rule in all the churches of God's holy people.34The women should keep silent in the churches. For they are not permitted to speak. Instead, they should be in submission, as also the law says.35If there is anything they desire to learn, let them ask their husbands at home. For it is disgraceful for a woman to speak in the church.36Did the word of God come from you? Are you the only ones it has reached?

37If anyone thinks himself to be a prophet or spiritual, he should acknowledge that the things I write to you are a command of the Lord.38But if anyone does not recognize this, let him not be recognized.

39So then, brothers, earnestly desire to prophesy, and do not forbid anyone from speaking in tongues.40But let all things be done properly and in order.

#### 1 Corinthians 14:1

##### Pursue love

"Follow after love" or "Work hard to love people"

##### especially that you may prophesy

"and work especially hard to be able to prophesy"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:2

##### in the Spirit

Possible meanings are 1) the person speaks by the power of the Holy Spirit or 2) he speaks in his own spirit.

#### 1 Corinthians 14:3

##### to build them up

"to strengthen them"

##### to exhort them

"to encourage them"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:4

##### builds up himself

"strengthens himself"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:5

##### spoke in tongues

"had the ability to speak different languages"

##### The one who prophesies is greater

"The one who prophesies has a greater gift"

##### interprets

To listen to what someone says in one language and use another language to tell people what that person is saying.

##### the church may receive edification

"the people in the church may become stronger" or "the one who prophesies may help people know and love God better"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:6

##### how will I benefit you?

"I will not benefit you." or "I will not have done anything that helps you."

#### 1 Corinthians 14:7

##### they do not produce different tones

This refers to sounds of different pitch that make up the melody.

##### how will anyone know what tune the flute or harp is playing?

"no one will know what melody or song the flute or harp is playing."

#### 1 Corinthians 14:8

##### how will anyone know when it is time to prepare for battle?

"no one would know when it is time to prepare for battle."

#### 1 Corinthians 14:9

##### you with the tongue. If you utter speech

or "you. If with the tongue you utter speech"

##### with the tongue

The word "tongue"refers to the parts of the body which a person uses in order to speak.

##### If you utter speech that is not clear

"If you speak in a language that people do not know"

##### how will what is said be understood

"how will anyone understand what you have said"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:10

##### none is without meaning

"they all have meaning"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:12

##### for the manifestations of the Spirit

"to do things that show that the Spirit controls you"

##### seek for the edification of the church so that you might abound

"try to succeed greatly in making God's people more able to serve God so that things will go well with you"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:14

##### my mind is unfruitful

"I do not understand it in my mind" or "my mind does not benefit from the prayer, because I do not understand the words"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:15

##### What am I to do?

"This is what I will do."

##### pray with my spirit ... pray with my mind ... sing with my spirit ... sing with my mind

"with words that I understand"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:16

##### you bless God ... you are giving thanks ... you are saying

Paul is addressing everyone who prays only in the spirit, but not with the mind.

##### how will the outsider say "Amen" ... saying?

"the outsider will never be able to say 'Amen' ... saying."

##### the outsider

"another person" or "people who are new to your group."

##### say "Amen"

"agree"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:17

##### you certainly give

Paul is speaking to the Corinthians as if they were one person, so here the word "you" is singular.

##### the other person is not built up

"the other person is not strengthened" or "what you say does not strengthen any outsider who might hear you"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:19

##### than ten thousand words in a tongue

"10,000 words in a different language" or "a great many words in a different language"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:20

##### do not be children in your thinking

"do not think like children"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:21

##### In the law it is written,

"The prophet wrote these words in the law:". See Isaiah 28:11.

##### By men of strange tongues and by the lips of strangers

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are used together for emphasis.

#### 1 Corinthians 14:22

##### sign, not for unbelievers, but for believers

"sign only for believers"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:23

##### would they not say that you are insane?

"they would say that you are insane."

#### 1 Corinthians 14:24

##### he would be convicted by all he hears. He would be judged by all that is said

"he would realize that he is guilty of sin because he hears what you are saying"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:25

##### The secrets of his heart would be revealed

"God would reveal to him the secrets of his heart"

##### he would fall on his face and worship God

"He would bow down and worship God"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:26

##### What is next then, brothers?

"Because everything I have just told you is true, this is what you need to do, my fellow believers."

#### 1 Corinthians 14:27

##### speaks in a tongue

"speaks in a different language"

##### and each one in turn

"and they should speak one after another" or "and they should speak one at a time"

##### interpret what is said

"interpret what they said"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:29

##### Let two or three prophets speak

Possible meanings are 1) only two or three prophets speak at any one meeting or 2) only two or three prophets take turns.

##### to what is said

"to what they say"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:30

##### there is a revelation

"God reveals something" or "God speaks"

##### to one who is sitting

"to one of the people sitting there listening to the prophets"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:31

##### prophesy one by one

Only one person should prophesy at a time.

##### all may be exhorted

"you may exhort all"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:33

##### God is not a God of confusion

God does not create confusing situations by making people all speak at the same time.

#### 1 Corinthians 14:34

##### keep silent

Possible meanings are 1) be absolutely silent during the church service or 2) stop speaking when someone is prophesying or 3) stop speaking.

#### 1 Corinthians 14:36

##### Did the word of God come from you? Are you the only ones it has reached?

"God's message did not come from you in Corinth; you are not the only people who understand God's will."

#### 1 Corinthians 14:37

##### he should acknowledge

A true prophet or truly spiritual person will accept Paul's writings as coming from the Lord.

#### 1 Corinthians 14:38

##### if anyone does not recognize this, let him not be recognized

"if anyone ignores this, let him be ignored"

##### let him not be recognized

"you should not recognize him"

#### 1 Corinthians 14:39

##### do not forbid anyone from speaking in tongues

Paul makes it clear that speaking in tongues at a church gathering is permissible and acceptable.

#### 1 Corinthians 14:40

##### But let all things be done properly and in order

"But do all things properly and in order" or "But do everything in an orderly, appropriate way"

Chapter 15

1Now I want to make known to you, brothers, the gospel I proclaimed to you, which you received and on which you stand,2and by which you are being saved, if you hold firmly to the word I preached to you, unless you believed in vain.3For I delivered to you as of first importance what I also received, that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures,4that he was buried, and that he was raised on the third day according to the scriptures.5Christ appeared to Cephas, and then to the twelve;6then he appeared to more than five hundred brothers at once. Most of them are still alive, but some have fallen asleep.7Then he appeared to James, then to all the apostles.8Last of all, he appeared to me, as if to one born prematurely.9For I am the least of the apostles. I am unworthy to be called an apostle because I persecuted the church of God.10But by the grace of God I am what I am, and his grace in me was not in vain. Instead, I labored harder than all of them. Yet it was not I, but the grace of God that is with me.11Therefore whether it is I or they, so we preach and so you believed.

12Now if Christ is proclaimed as raised from the dead, how can some of you say there is no resurrection of the dead?13But if there is no resurrection of the dead, then not even Christ has been raised;14and if Christ has not been raised, then our preaching is in vain, and your faith also is in vain.15Also, we are found to be false witnesses about God, because we testified that God raised Christ from the dead. But he did not raise him, if indeed the dead are not raised.16For if the dead are not raised, not even Christ has been raised;17and if Christ has not been raised, your faith is in vain and you are still in your sins.18Then those who have fallen asleep in Christ have also perished.19If only in this life we hope in Christ, of all people we are most to be pitied.

20But now Christ has been raised from the dead as the firstfruits of those who sleep.21For since death came by a man, by a man also came the resurrection of the dead.22For as in Adam all die, so also in Christ all will be made alive.23But each in his own order: Christ, who is the firstfruits, and then those who belong to Christ will be made alive at his coming.24Then will be the end, when he will hand over the kingdom to God the Father, when he will abolish all rule and all authority and power.25For he must reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet.26The last enemy to be destroyed is death.27For "he has put everything under his feet." But when it says, "he has put everything," it is clear that this does not include the one who put everything in subjection under him.28When all things are subjected under him, then the Son himself will be subjected under the one who put all things into subjection under him, that God may be all in all.

29Or else what will those do who are baptized for the dead? If the dead are not raised at all, why are they baptized for them?30Why then are we in danger every hour?31I die every day! This is as sure as my boasting in you, which I have in Christ Jesus our Lord.32What do I gain, from a human point of view, if I fought with beasts at Ephesus, if the dead are not raised?  
  
"Let us eat and drink, for tomorrow we die."

33Be not deceived: "Bad company corrupts good morals."34Sober up! Live righteously! Do not keep sinning. For some of you have no knowledge of God. I say this to your shame.

35But someone will say, "How are the dead raised, and with what kind of body will they come?"36You fool! What you sow will not come to life unless it dies.37What you sow is not the body that will be, but a bare grain. It may become wheat or something else.38But God will give it a body as he chooses, and to each seed its own body.39Not all flesh is the same. Instead, there is one flesh for human beings, and another flesh for animals, and another flesh for birds, and another for fish.40There are also heavenly bodies and earthly bodies. But the glory of the heavenly body is one kind and the glory of the earthly is another.41There is one glory of the sun, and another glory of the moon, and another glory of the stars. For one star differs from another star in glory.42So also is the resurrection of the dead. What is sown is perishable, and what is raised is imperishable.43It is sown in dishonor; it is raised in glory. It is sown in weakness; it is raised in power.44It is sown a natural body; it is raised a spiritual body. If there is a natural body, there is also a spiritual body.45So also it is written, "The first man Adam became a living soul." The last Adam became a life-giving spirit.46But the spiritual did not come first but the natural, and then the spiritual.47The first man is of the earth, made of dust. The second man is from heaven.48Just as the one made from dust is, so also are those who are made of the dust, and as the man of heaven is, so also are those who are of heaven.49Just as we have borne the image of the man of dust, we will also bear the image of the man of heaven.

50Now this I say, brothers, that flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God. Neither does what is perishable inherit what is imperishable.51Look! I tell you a mystery: We will not all sleep, but we will all be changed.52We will be changed in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trumpet. For the trumpet will sound, and the dead will be raised imperishable, and we will be changed.53For this perishable body must put on what is imperishable, and this mortal body must put on immortality.54But when this perishable body has put on what is imperishable, and when this mortal body has put on immortality, then will come about the saying that is written, "Death is swallowed up in victory."  
  
55"Death, where is your victory?Death, where is your sting?"

56The sting of death is sin, and the power of sin is the law.57But thanks be to God, who gives us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ!58Therefore, my dear brothers, be steadfast and immovable. Always abound in the work of the Lord, because you know that your labor in the Lord is not in vain.

#### 1 Corinthians 15:1

##### make known to you, brothers, the gospel

Possible meanings are 1) Paul wants to remind them by making the gospel known again, "help you remember, brothers, the gospel" or 2) he wants to make sure they understand the gospel, "make clear to you, brothers, the gospel."

##### on which you stand

Paul is speaking of the Corinthians as if they were a house and the gospel as if it were the foundation on which the house was standing.

#### 1 Corinthians 15:2

##### you are being saved

"God will save you"

##### the word I preached to you

"the message I preached to you"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:3

##### as of first importance

Possible meanings are 1) as the most important of many things or 2) as the first in time of important things.

##### for our sins

"to pay for our sins" or "so that God could forgive our sins"

##### according to the scriptures

"just as the propets predicted in the scriptures." Here "scriptures" means the Old Testament.

#### 1 Corinthians 15:4

##### he was buried

"they buried him"

##### he was raised

"God raised him"

##### was raised

"was caused to live again"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:5

##### appeared to

"showed himself to"

##### and then to the twelve

"and then he appeared to the rest of the apostles"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:6

##### some have fallen asleep

"some have died"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:8

##### Last of all

"Finally, after he had appeared to the others"

##### Last of all, he appeared to me, as if to one born prematurely

"a baby born too early". Possible meanings: 1) a baby that is born unexpectedly early, in which case Paul means that he was unexpectedly called to be an apostle, or 2) a baby who is born early and is very small, in which case Paul means that he had not learned from Christ, or 3) a baby who is born dead, in which case Paul means that Christ appeared to him when he was spiritually dead.

#### 1 Corinthians 15:10

##### the grace of God I am what I am

God's grace or kindness has made Paul as he is now.

##### his grace in me was not in vain

"because he was kind to me, I was able to do much good work"

##### the grace of God that is with me

Possible meanings are 1) this is literally true, and God actually did the work and kindly used Paul as a tool or 2) Paul is saying that God was kind to let Paul do the work and to make Paul's work have good results.

#### 1 Corinthians 15:12

##### how can some of you say there is no resurrection of the dead?

"you should not be saying that there is no resurrection of the dead!"

##### raised

made alive again

#### 1 Corinthians 15:13

##### if there is no resurrection of the dead, then not even Christ has been raised

Paul knows that Christ has been raised and so infers that all who die will be resurrected. To say that there is no resurrection is to say that Christ has not been raised, but Paul has seen the resurrected Christ (1 Corinthians 15:8).

##### not even Christ has been raised

"God has not raised even Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:15

##### we are found to be false witnesses about God

Paul is arguing that if Christ did not rise from the dead, then they are lying about Christ's coming alive again.

##### we are found to be

"everyone will realize that we are"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:17

##### your faith is in vain and you are still in your sins

Their faith is based on Christ having risen from the dead, so if that did not happen, their faith will do them no good.

#### 1 Corinthians 15:19

##### If only in this life we hope in Christ

"If only in this life we can confidently expect Christ to help us" or "If we can trust in Christ to save us only in this life"

##### of all people we are most to be pitied

"people should feel sorry for us more than they do for anyone else"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:20

##### now Christ

"as it is, Christ" or "this is the truth: Christ"

##### Christ has been raised from the dead

"God has raised Christ from the dead"

##### dead as the firstfruits

"dead, like the first part of the harvest" or "dead; he is like the first part of the harvest"

##### those who sleep

"those who have died"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:21

##### death came by a man

"people die because of what one man did". See verse 22.

##### by a man also came the resurrection of the dead

"people are raised from the dead because of another man" or "people will live again because of what one man did"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:24

##### he will abolish all rule and all authority and power

"Christ will stop those people who rule, who have authority, and who have power, from doing what they are doing"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:25

##### For he must reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet

"For Christ must reign until God the Father has put all Christ's enemies under Christ's feet"

##### until he has put all his enemies under his feet

"until he has put all his enemies under his power"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:26

##### The last enemy to be destroyed is death

"The final enemy that Christ will destroy is death itself"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:27

##### he has put everything under his feet

"God the Father has put everything under Christ's feet" or "Christ has put everything under his own feet"

##### put everything under his feet

"put everything under his power"

##### this does not include the one who put everything in subjection under him

"this does not include God the Father, who put everything in subjection under the Son"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:28

##### all things are subjected under him

"God the Father has made all things subject to the Son"

##### the Son himself will be subjected

"the Son himself will become subject"

##### the Son himself

"Christ, that is, the Son himself,". This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### 1 Corinthians 15:29

##### Or else what will those do who are baptized for the dead?

"Otherwise it would be useless for Christians to receive baptism for the dead."

##### If the dead are not raised at all, why are they baptized for them?

Apparently people were being baptized for the dead. They did so because they believed the dead would be raised.

##### If the dead are not raised at all

"If God does not raise the dead at all"

##### are not raised

"are not caused to live again"

##### why are they baptized for them?

"there would be no reason for them to have people baptize them on behalf of dead people."

#### 1 Corinthians 15:30

##### Why then are we in danger every hour?

"If people will not rise from the dead, we gain nothing by being in danger every hour for teaching that people will rise."

#### 1 Corinthians 15:31

##### I die every day!

"Every day I am in danger of dying" or "Every day I risk my life!"

##### This is as sure as my boasting in you

"You can know that this is true, because you know about my boasting in you" or "You can know that this is true, because you know about how much I boast in you"

##### my boasting in you, which I have in Christ Jesus our Lord

"the way I tell other people how good you are, which I do because of what Christ Jesus our Lord has done for you"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:32

##### What do I gain ... if I fought with beasts at Ephesus ... not raised?

"I gained nothing ... by fighting with beasts at Ephesus ... not raised."

##### I fought with beasts at Ephesus

Possible meanings are 1) Paul was speaking figuratively about his arguments with learned pagans or other conflicts with people who wanted to kill him or 2) he was actually put into the arena to fight against dangerous animals.

##### Let us eat and drink, for tomorrow we die

Paul infers that it would be better for us to enjoy this life, for tomorrow our life will end without any further hope.

#### 1 Corinthians 15:33

##### Bad company corrupts good morals

If you live with bad people, you will act like them. Paul is quoting a common saying.

#### 1 Corinthians 15:34

##### Sober up

"You must think seriously about this"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:35

##### But someone will say, "How are the dead raised, and with what kind of body will they come?"

"But some will ask that they cannot imagine how God will raise the dead, and what kind of body God would give them in the resurrection."

##### with what kind of body will they come

That is, will it be a physical body or a spiritual body? What shape will the body have? What will the body be made of?

#### 1 Corinthians 15:36

##### You fool! What you sow

Both instances of "you" here are singular.

##### fool

"unthinking person." Paul is accusing them of not thinking carefully, He is not accusing them of moral error.

##### What you sow will not come to life unless it dies

A person has to die before God can resurrect him.

#### 1 Corinthians 15:37

##### What you sow is not the body that will be

Paul says that God will resurrect the dead body of the believer, but that body will not appear as it was.

#### 1 Corinthians 15:38

##### God will give it a body as he chooses

"God will decide what kind of body it will have"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:39

##### Not all flesh is the same ... there is one flesh ... another flesh

"Not all kinds of bodies are the same ... there is one kind of body ... another kind of body"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:40

##### the glory of the heavenly body is one kind and the glory of the earthly is another

"the glory that the bodies in the sky have is different from the glory that the bodies on the earth have"

##### glory

"brightness" or "radiance" or "beauty" or "splendor"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:42

##### What is sown ... what is raised

"What goes into the ground ... what comes out of the ground" or "What people bury ... what God causes to live again"

##### is perishable ... is imperishable

"can rot ... cannot rot"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:46

##### But the spiritual did not come first but the natural, and then the spiritual

"The natural being came first. The spiritual being is from God and came later."

##### natural

created by earthly processes, not yet connected to God

#### 1 Corinthians 15:47

##### The first man is of the earth, made of dust

God made the first man, Adam, from the dirt of the earth.

#### 1 Corinthians 15:48

##### the man of heaven

Jesus Christ

##### those who are of heaven

"those who belong to God"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:49

##### we have borne the image of the man of dust, we will also bear the image of the man of heaven

"we have been just like the man of dust, we will also be like Jesus Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:50

##### flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God. Neither does what is perishable inherit what is imperishable

"human beings who will surely die cannot inherit the permanent kingdom of God" or "weak human beings cannot inherit the kingdom of God. Neither can those who will certainly die inherit a kingdom that will last forever"

##### flesh and blood

Those who inhabit a body that is doomed to die.

##### is perishable ... is imperishable

"can rot ... cannot rot." See 1 Corinthians 15:42.

#### 1 Corinthians 15:51

##### We will not all sleep

"We will not all die"

##### we will all be changed

"God will change us all"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:52

##### We will be changed

"God will change us"

##### in the twinkling of an eye

It will happen as fast as it takes for a person to blink his or her eye.

##### at the last trumpet

"when the last trumpet sounds"

##### the dead will be raised

"God will raise the dead"

##### raised

"caused to live again"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:53

##### must put on

Paul is speaking of God making our bodies so they will never die again as if God were putting new clothes on us.

#### 1 Corinthians 15:54

##### when this perishable body has put on what is imperishable

"when this perishable body has become imperishable" or "when this body that can rot can no longer rot"

##### when this mortal body has put on immortality

"when this mortal body has become immortal" or "when this body that can die can no longer die"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:55

##### Death, where is your victory? Death, where is your sting?

"Death has no victory. Death has no sting."

#### 1 Corinthians 15:56

##### The sting of death is sin

It is through sin that we are destined to face death, that is, to die.

##### the power of sin is the law

God's law that was passed down by Moses defines sin and shows us how we sin before God.

#### 1 Corinthians 15:57

##### gives us the victory

"has defeated death for us"

#### 1 Corinthians 15:58

##### be steadfast and immovable

"be determined"

##### Always abound in the work of the Lord

"Always work for the Lord faithfully"

Chapter 16

1Now concerning the collection for God's holy people: as I instructed the churches of Galatia, so you are to do.2On the first day of the week, each of you is to put something aside and store it up as he may prosper. Do this so that there will be no collections when I come.3When I arrive, to whomever you approve, I will give letters of introduction to them and will send them with your gift to Jerusalem.4If it is appropriate for me to go also, they will go with me.5But I will come to you when I pass through Macedonia. For I will pass through Macedonia.6Perhaps I may stay with you or even spend the winter, so that you may help me on my way, wherever I go.7For I do not wish to see you now for only a passing visit. For I hope to spend more time with you, if the Lord permits.8But I will stay in Ephesus until Pentecost,9for a wide door has opened for me, and there are many adversaries.

10Now when Timothy comes, see that he is with you unafraid, for he is laboring at the work of the Lord, as I am doing.11Let no one despise him. Help him on his way in peace, so that he may come to me. For I am expecting him to come along with the brothers.12Now concerning our brother Apollos, I strongly encouraged him to visit you with the brothers. But it was not at all his will that he come now. However, he will come when the time is right.

13Be watchful, stand fast in the faith, act like men, be strong.14Let all that you do be done in love.

15You know the household of Stephanas, that they were the firstfruits of Achaia, and that they have devoted themselves to the service of God's holy people. Now I urge you, brothers,16to be in submission to such people and to everyone who helps in the work and labors with us.17I rejoice at the coming of Stephanas, Fortunatus, and Achaicus. They have made up for your absence.18For they have refreshed my spirit and yours. So then, acknowledge people like them.

19The churches of Asia send greetings to you. Aquila and Priscilla greet you in the Lord, with the church that is in their home.20All the brothers greet you. Greet one another with a holy kiss.

21I, Paul, write this with my own hand.22If anyone does not love the Lord, may he be accursed. Our Lord, come!23The grace of the Lord Jesus be with you.24My love be with you all in Christ Jesus. [1](#footnote-target-1)

[1](#footnote-caller-1)A few important and ancient Greek copies and some ancient translations have Amen at the end of verse 24. But many important ancient Greek copies, as well as many ancient translations, do not have Amen at the end.

#### 1 Corinthians 16:1

##### for God's holy people

Paul was collecting money from his churches for the poor Jewish Christians in Jerusalem and Judea.

#### 1 Corinthians 16:2

##### store it up

"keep it at home" or "leave it with the church"

##### as he may prosper

"according to how he prospers" or "according to how much he earns"

##### so that there will be no collections when I come

"so that you will not have to collect more money while I am with you"

#### 1 Corinthians 16:3

##### to whomever you approve, I will give letters of introduction to them and will send them

"to whomever you have approved by letter of introduction, I will send"

#### 1 Corinthians 16:6

##### you may help me on my way

To give Paul money or other things he needs so that he and his team could continue to travel.

#### 1 Corinthians 16:7

##### I hope to spend more time with you, if the Lord permits

"I expect to spend more time with you, if the Lord permits" or "I plan to spend more time with you, if the Lord permits"

#### 1 Corinthians 16:8

##### Pentecost

Paul would stay in Ephesus until this festival, which comes in May or June, 50 days after Passover. He would then travel through Macedonia, and later try to arrive in Corinth before winter started.

#### 1 Corinthians 16:9

##### a wide door has opened

Paul speaks of the opportunity God has given him to win people to the gospel as if it were a door that God had opened so he could walk through it.

#### 1 Corinthians 16:10

##### Now

Here Paul begins to talk about Timothy's visit to Corinth.

##### see that he is with you unafraid

"see that he has no cause to fear being with you"

#### 1 Corinthians 16:11

##### Let no one despise him

Because Timothy was much younger than Paul, sometimes he was not shown the respect he deserved.

#### 1 Corinthians 16:12

##### our brother Apollos

Here the word "our" refers to Paul and his readers, so it is inclusive.

#### 1 Corinthians 16:13

##### Be watchful, stand fast in the faith, act like men, be strong

Paul is describing what he wants the Corinthians to do as if he were giving four commands to soldiers in war.

##### Be watchful

"Be careful whom you trust" or "Watch out for danger"

##### stand fast in the faith

"keep strongly believing what we have taught you" or "keep strongly trusting in Christ"

##### act like men

"be responsible"

#### 1 Corinthians 16:14

##### Let all that you do be done in love

"Everything you do should show people that you love them"

#### 1 Corinthians 16:15

##### household of Stephanas

Stephanas was one of the first believers in the church at Corinth.

##### the firstfruits of Achaia

"the first people in Achaia to believe in Christ"

##### Achaia

This is the name of a province in Greece.

#### 1 Corinthians 16:17

##### Stephanas, Fortunatus, and Achaicus

These men were either some of the first Corinthian believers or church elders who were co-workers with Paul.

##### They have made up for your absence

"They made up for the fact that you were not here."

#### 1 Corinthians 16:18

##### For they have refreshed my spirit

Paul is saying he was encouraged by their visit.

##### acknowledge people like them

Paul wants the Corinthians to honor Stephanas, Fortunatus, Achaicus and others like them.

#### 1 Corinthians 16:21

##### I, Paul, write this with my own hand

Paul was making it clear that the instructions in this letter are from him, even though one of his co-laborers wrote what Paul was saying in the rest of the letter. Paul wrote this last part with his own hand.

#### 1 Corinthians 16:22

##### may he be accursed

"may God curse him." See 1 Corinthians 12:3.

## 2 Corinthians

Chapter 1

1Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the will of God, and Timothy our brother, to the church of God that is in Corinth, and to all God's holy people in the entire region of Achaia:

2May grace be to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

3May the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ be praised. He is the Father of mercies and the God of all comfort.4God comforts us in all our tribulation, so that we can comfort those who are in any tribulation. We comfort others with the same comfort that God used to comfort us.5For just as the sufferings of Christ abound for our sake, so also our comfort abounds through Christ.6But if we are afflicted, it is for your comfort and salvation; and if we are comforted, it is for your comfort. Your comfort is working effectively in your endurance of the same sufferings that we also suffer.7Our hope concerning you is unshaken, for we know that as you share the sufferings, you also share our comfort.8For we do not want you to be uninformed, brothers, about the tribulation we had in Asia. We were utterly burdened beyond our strength, so that we despaired even of life.9Indeed, we had the sentence of death on us. But that was to make us not put our trust in ourselves, but instead in God, who raises the dead.10He rescued us from such a deadly peril, and he will rescue us. On him we have set our hope that he will rescue us.11He will do this as you also help us by your prayer. Then many will give thanks on our behalf for the favor given to us through the prayers of many.

12Our boast is this: Our conscience testifies that we have conducted ourselves in the world with integrity and godly sincerity, not relying on fleshly wisdom but on the grace of God.13We write to you nothing that you cannot read and understand, and I hope that you will fully understand14as you have understood us in part, that you can boast of us on the day of our Lord Jesus, just as we will boast of you.

15Because I was confident about this, I wanted to come to you first, so that you might receive a second favor.16I was planning to visit you on my way to Macedonia. Then I wanted to visit you again on my trip from Macedonia, and then for you to send me on my way to Judea.17When I was thinking this way, was I hesitating? Do I plan things according to the flesh, so that I say "Yes, yes" and "No, no" at the same time?18But just as God is faithful, our word to you is not "Yes" and "No."19For the Son of God, Jesus Christ, whom Silvanus, Timothy, and I proclaimed among you, is not "Yes" and "No." Instead, he is always "Yes."20For all the promises of God are "Yes" in him. So also through him we say "Amen" to the glory of God.21Now it is God who confirms us with you in Christ, and he anointed us,22he set his seal on us, and he gave us the Spirit in our hearts as a guarantee of what is to come.

23But I call God as witness to my soul that the reason I did not come to Corinth was so that I might spare you.24This is not because we want to be lords over your faith. Instead, we are fellow laborers with you for your joy, as you stand firm in your faith.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:1

##### Paul ... to the church of God that is in Corinth

"I, Paul ... wrote this letter to you, the church of God that is in Corinth" In this book, the word "I" refers to Paul. Also, the word "you" is almost always plural and refers to the believers in Corinth. There are two exceptions to this: 6:2 and 12:9.

##### Timothy our brother

This indicates that both Paul and the Corinthians knew Timothy and considered him to be their spiritual brother.

##### Achaia

This is the name of a Roman province in the southern part of modern-day Greece.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:3

##### May the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ be praised

"May we always praise the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ". This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### the Father of mercies and the God of all comfort

Both phrases refer to God. Possible meanings are 1) that the words "mercies" and "all comfort" describe the character of "Father" and "God" or 2) that the words "Father" and "God" refer to one who is the source of "mercies" and "all comfort."

#### 2 Corinthians 1:5

##### For just as the sufferings of Christ abound for our sake

"For just as Christ suffered greatly for our sake"

##### the sufferings of Christ

Possible meanings are 1) that this refers to the suffering that Paul and Timothy experience because they preach the message about Christ or 2) that this refers to the suffering that Christ experienced on their behalf.

##### our comfort abounds

Comfort is a major theme of this chapter. The Holy Spirit comforts Christians. The Corinthians probably were afflicted.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:6

##### But if we are afflicted

"But if people afflict us"

##### if we are comforted

"if God comforts us"

##### Your comfort is working effectively

"You experience effective comfort"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:7

##### Our hope concerning you is unshaken

"Our hope concerning you is strong" or "We have not stopped having hope for you" or "We continue to confidently expect good for you"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:8

##### we do not want you to be uninformed

"we want you to know"

##### We were utterly burdened beyond our strength

"We felt so overwhelmed beyond our strength" or "The troubles we had caused us so much more stress than we could handle"

##### we despaired even of life

"we could not see any way we could stay alive" or "we were sure we would die"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:9

##### we had the sentence of death on us

"we were in despair like someone who is condemned to die"

##### but instead in God

"but instead to put our trust in God"

##### who raises the dead

"who causes the dead to live again"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:10

##### He rescued us from such a deadly peril

"He saved us from such a dangerous situation where we could have died"

##### On him we have set our hope that he will rescue us

"We trust in him to rescue us" or "We confidently expect that he will rescue us"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:11

##### He will do this as you also help us

"God will rescue us from danger as you, the people of the church of Corinth, also help us"

##### the favor given to us

"the favor that God has given to us"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:12

##### Our boast is this

"with integrity and godly sincerity,"

##### Our conscience testifies

"We know by our conscience"

##### not relying on fleshly wisdom but on the grace of God

"not relying on human wisdom but on the grace of God"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:13

##### We write to you nothing that you cannot read and understand

"Everything we write to you is something you can read and understand" or "You can read and understand everything we write to you"

##### I hope that you will fully understand

"I expect that you will fully understand" or "I trust you will fully understand"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:14

##### you can boast

The word "boast" here is used in the positive sense of feeling great satisfaction and joy in something.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:15

##### Because I was confident about this

Paul explains his sincere expectation with pure motives to come see the believers in Corinth after his first letter. People were criticizing Paul and saying he was not sincere. He refutes them by explaining his motives for what he was doing.

##### so that you might receive a second favor

"so that you might benefit from me visiting you twice"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:17

##### was I hesitating?

"I was not hesitating." or "I was confident in my decision."

##### Do I plan things according to the flesh ... at the same time?

"I do not plan things according to the flesh ... at the same time"

##### the flesh

"human standards" or "the way most people act"

##### Do I plan things ... so that I say "Yes, yes" and "No, no" at the same time?

"I do not plan things ... so that I say 'Yes, I will certainly visit' and 'No, I will definitely not visit' at the same time!"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:18

##### our word to you

"what we say to you"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:19

##### For the Son of God ... is not "Yes" and "No." Instead, he is always "Yes."

"For the Son of God ... does not say 'Yes' and 'No' concerning God's promises. Instead, he always says 'Yes.'"

##### the Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:20

##### all the promises of God are "Yes" in him

"all the promises of God are guaranteed in Jesus Christ"

##### "Yes" in him ... through him we say

The word "him" refers to Jesus Christ.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:21

##### God who confirms us with you

"God who confirms our relationship with each other because we are in Christ" or "God who confirms both our and your relationship with Christ".

##### he anointed us

"he sent us to preach the gospel" or "he chose us to be his people".

#### 2 Corinthians 1:22

##### he set his seal on us

"he has put his mark of ownership on us" or "he has shown that we belong to him"

##### gave us the Spirit in our hearts

"gave us the Spirit to live within each of us"

##### the Spirit ... as a guarantee

The Holy Spirit is a personal guarantee that this will happen.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:23

##### as witness to my soul

"as witness for me" or "to testify for me"

##### so that I might spare you

"so that I might not cause you more suffering"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:24

##### be lords over your faith

"control what your faith should be" or "control what you believe"

##### we are fellow laborers with you for your joy

"we are working with you so that you may have joy"

##### stand firm in your faith

"remain firm in your faith"

Chapter 2

1So I decided for my own part that I would not again come to you in sorrow.2If I caused you sorrow, who could make me glad but the very one who was made sorrowful by me?3I wrote as I did in order that, when I came to you, I might not be hurt by those who should have made me rejoice. I have confidence about all of you that my joy is the same joy you all have.4For I wrote to you from great tribulation, with anguish of heart, and with many tears. I did not write you so that you would be made sorrowful. Instead, I wanted you to know the depth of the love that I have for you.

5If anyone has caused sorrow, he has caused sorrow not only to me, but in some measure—not to burden you—to all of you.6This punishment of that person by the majority is enough.7So now rather than punish him, you should forgive and comfort him. Do this so that he is not overwhelmed by too much sorrow.8So I exhort you to confirm your love for him.9This was the reason I wrote, so that I might test you and know whether you are obedient in everything.10If you forgive anyone, I forgive that person as well. What I have forgiven—if I have forgiven anything—it is forgiven for your sake in the presence of Christ.11This is so that Satan will not trick us. For we are not ignorant of his schemes.

12A door was opened to me by the Lord when I came to the city of Troas to preach the gospel of Christ there.13I had no relief in my spirit because I did not find my brother Titus there. So I left them and went on to Macedonia.

14But may thanks be to God, who in Christ always leads us in triumph. Through us he reveals the sweet aroma of the knowledge of him everywhere.15For we are to God the sweet aroma of Christ, both among those who are saved and among those who are perishing.16To the people who are perishing, it is an aroma from death to death. To the ones being saved, it is an aroma from life to life. Who is worthy of these things?17For we are not like so many people who sell the word of God for profit. Instead, with purity of motives, we speak in Christ, as we are sent from God, in the sight of God.

#### 2 Corinthians 2:1

##### I decided for my own part

"I made the decision"

##### in sorrow

"in a way that would cause you great sadness" or "while I am sorrowful"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:2

##### If I caused you sorrow, who could make me glad but the very one who was made sorrowful by me?

"If I caused you sorrow, the only ones who could make me glad would be the very one whom I had hurt."

#### 2 Corinthians 2:3

##### I wrote as I did

"I wrote as I did in my previous letter". Some scholars believe this refers to the letter known as First Corinthians. Other scholars believe this refers to a letter Paul wrote after the letter known as First Corinthians and before this letter.

##### I might not be hurt by those who should have made me rejoice

"those who should have made me rejoice might not hurt me"

##### my joy is the same joy you all have

"what gives me joy is what gives you joy, too"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:4

##### from great tribulation

Here the word "tribulation" refers to emotional pain.

##### with anguish of heart

"with extreme sorrow"

##### with many tears

"with much crying"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:5

##### not to burden you

"not to say this too harshly" or "not to exaggerate"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:6

##### This punishment of that person by the majority is enough

"The way that the majority has punished that person is sufficient"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:7

##### he is not overwhelmed by too much sorrow

"too much sorrow does not overwhelm him"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:8

##### confirm your love for him

"show him that you truly love him"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:9

##### you are obedient in everything

"you are obedient to God in everything" or "you are obedient in everything that I have taught you"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:10

##### it is forgiven for your sake

"I have forgiven it for your sake"

##### forgiven for your sake

"forgiven out of my love for you" or "forgiven for your benefit"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:11

##### For we are not ignorant of his schemes

"For we know his schemes well"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:12

##### A door was opened to me by the Lord ... to preach the gospel

"The Lord opened a door to me ... to preach the gospel" or "The Lord gave me the opportunity ... to preach the gospel"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:13

##### I had no relief in my spirit

"I was worried"

##### my brother Titus

Paul speaks of Titus as his spiritual brother.

##### So I left them

"So I left the people of Troas"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:14

##### God, who in Christ always leads us in triumph

"God, who leads us as prisoners in Christ's victory parade" or "God, who leads us as victorious soldiers in Christ's triumphal parade"

##### Through us he reveals the sweet aroma of the knowledge of him everywhere

"He causes the knowledge of Christ to spread to everyone who hears us, just as the sweet smell of burning incense spreads to everyone near it"

##### everywhere

"everywhere we go"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:15

##### we are to God the sweet aroma of Christ

Paul speaks of his ministry as if it were an offering or incense that was being burned, creating a pleasant smell to God.

##### the sweet aroma of Christ

"the sweet aroma which is the knowledge of Christ" or "the sweet aroma that Christ offers".

##### those who are saved

"those whom God has saved"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:16

##### it is an aroma

"the knowledge of Christ is an aroma."

##### an aroma from death to death

Possible meanings are 1) that the word "death" is repeated for emphasis and the phrase means "an aroma that causes death" or 2) "an aroma of death that causes people to die"

##### the ones being saved

"the ones whom God is saving"

##### aroma from life to life

"an aroma that gives life" or "an aroma of life that gives people life"

##### Who is worthy of these things?

'Who is worthy to spread the knowledge of Christ?" or "It is amazing that anyone is worthy of these things!"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:17

##### who sell the word of God

"who sell God's message"

##### purity of motives

"pure motives"

##### we speak in Christ

"we speak as people who are joined to Christ" or "we speak with the authority of Christ"

##### as we are sent from God

"as people whom God has sent"

##### in the sight of God

"speaking in the presence of God"

Chapter 3

1Are we beginning to praise ourselves again? We do not need letters of recommendation to you or from you, like some people, do we?2You yourselves are our letter of recommendation, written on our hearts, known and read by all people.3You show that you are a letter from Christ, the result of our ministry. It was written not with ink but by the Spirit of the living God. It was not written on tablets of stone, but on tablets of human hearts.4And this is the confidence that we have through Christ before God.5We are not competent in ourselves to claim anything as coming from us. Rather, our competence is from God.6It is God who made us able to be servants of a new covenant. This is a covenant not of the letter but of the Spirit. For the letter kills, but the Spirit gives life.7Now the ministry of death—engraved in letters on stones—came in such glory that the sons of Israel could not look directly at Moses' face. This is because of the glory of his face, a glory that was fading.8How much more glorious will the ministry of the Spirit be?9For if the ministry of condemnation had glory, how much more does the ministry of righteousness abound in glory!10For indeed, that which was once made glorious is no longer glorious in this respect, because of the glory that exceeds it.11For if that which was passing away had glory, how much more will what is permanent have glory!

12Since we have such a hope, we are very bold.13We are not like Moses, who put a veil over his face so that the sons of Israel were not able to look directly at the ending of a glory that was passing away.14But their minds were hardened. For to this day, when they read the old covenant, that same veil remains. It has not been removed, because only in Christ is it taken away.15But even today, whenever Moses is read, a veil covers their hearts.16But when a person turns to the Lord, the veil is taken away.17Now the Lord is the Spirit. Where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is freedom.18Now all of us, with unveiled faces, see the glory of the Lord. We are being transformed into the same glorious likeness from one degree of glory into another, just as from the Lord, who is the Spirit.

#### 2 Corinthians 3:1

##### Are we beginning to praise ourselves again?

"We are not beginning to praise ourselves again."

##### We do not need letters of recommendation to you or from you, like some people, do we?

"We certainly do not need letters of recommendation to you or from you, like some people do."

##### letters of recommendation

This is a letter that a person writes to introduce and give their approval of someone else.

#### 2 Corinthians 3:2

##### You yourselves are our letter of recommendation

"You yourselves are like our letter of recommendation"

##### written on our hearts

"which Christ has written on our hearts". Possible meanings are 1) Paul and his coworkers are sure about the Corinthians being their letter of recommendation or 2) Paul and his coworkers care very deeply for the Corinthians.

##### known and read by all people

"that all people can know and read"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:3

##### you are a letter from Christ

"you are a letter that Christ has written"

##### the result of our ministry

"delivered by us.". Because of the work Paul and his companions had done, the world could look at the Corinthians and see how Christ blesses people in this life.

##### It was written not with ink ... on tablets of human hearts

Paul clarifies that the Corinthians are like a spiritual letter, not like a letter that humans write with physical objects.

##### It was written not with ink but by the Spirit of the living God

"It was written not with ink but it was written by the Spirit of the living God" or "It is not a letter that people wrote with ink but a letter that the Spirit of the living God wrote"

##### It was not written on tablets of stone, but on tablets of human hearts

"It is not a letter that people engraved on stone tablets but a letter that the Spirit of the living God wrote on tablets of human hearts"

##### tablets of human hearts

Paul alludes to God giving the Ten Commandments on stone tablets. This represents the law of Moses in Exodus 24:12.

#### 2 Corinthians 3:5

##### competent in ourselves

"qualified in ourselves" or "sufficient in ourselves"

##### to claim anything as coming from us

"to claim that anything we have done in ministry comes from our own efforts"

##### our competence is from God

"God gives us our sufficiency"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:6

##### a covenant not of the letter

"a covenant not based on commands that men have written"

##### but of the Spirit

"but a covenant of the Spirit" or "but a covenant based on what the Spirit does"

##### the letter kills

"the written law leads to death"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:7

##### Now the ministry of death ... came in such glory

Paul contrasts the fading glory of the old covenant with the superiority and freedom of the new covenant. He contrasts the veil of Moses with the clarity of present revelation.

##### the ministry of death

"the ministry that causes people to die because it is based on the law"

##### engraved in letters on stones

"that God carved in letters on stone"

##### in such glory

"in so much glory"

##### This is because

"They could not look because"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:8

##### How much more glorious will the ministry of the Spirit be?

"So the service that the Spirit does must be even more glorious."

##### the ministry of the Spirit

"the ministry that gives life because it is based on the Spirit"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:9

##### the ministry of condemnation

"the ministry that condemns people because it is based on the law"

##### how much more does the ministry of righteousness abound in glory!

"then the ministry of righteousness must abound in so much more glory!"

##### the ministry of righteousness abound in glory

Paul means that "the ministry of righteousness" is far more glorious than the law, which also had glory.

##### the ministry of righteousness

"the ministry that makes people righteous because it is based on the Spirit"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:10

##### that which was once made glorious is no longer glorious ... because of the glory that exceeds it

The Old Testament law no longer appears glorious when compared with the new covenant, which is much more glorious.

##### that which was once made glorious

"the law which God once made glorious"

##### in this respect

"in this way"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:11

##### that which was passing away

"that which was becoming useless"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:12

##### Since we have such a hope

"Since we confidently expect this" or "Since we confidently wait to receive this glory"

##### such a hope

"such confidence"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:13

##### the ending of a glory that was passing away

"the glory on Moses's face as it faded away completely". (Exodus 34:33-35).

#### 2 Corinthians 3:14

##### But their minds were hardened

"But the Israelites could not understand what they saw"

##### For to this day

to the time at which Paul was writing to the Corinthians

##### when they read the old covenant, that same veil remains

"when they hear someone read the old covenant" Just as the Israelites could not see the glory on Moses's face because he covered his face with a veil, there is a spiritual veil that prevents people from understanding when they read the old covenant.

##### It has not been removed, because only in Christ is it taken away

"No one removes the veil, because only in Christ does God remove it"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:15

##### But even today

This phrase refers to the time at which Paul was writing to the Corinthians.

##### whenever Moses is read

"whenever someone reads the Mosaic law"

##### a veil covers their hearts

"they are unable to understand what they are hearing"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:16

##### when a person turns to the Lord

"when a person starts to worship the Lord" or "when a person starts to trust in the Lord"

##### the veil is taken away

"God lifts the veil away" or "God gives them the ability to understand"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:18

##### Now all of us

Here the word "us" refers to all believers, including Paul and the Corinthians.

##### with unveiled faces, see the glory of the Lord

Unlike the Israelites who could not see God's glory reflected on Moses's face because he had covered it with a veil, there is nothing to prevent believers from seeing and understanding God's glory.

##### We are being transformed into the same glorious likeness

"The Lord is transforming us into his same glorious likeness"

##### from one degree of glory into another

"from one amount of glory to another amount of glory." This means that the Spirit is constantly increasing the glory of believers.

##### just as from the Lord

"just as this comes from the Lord"

Chapter 4

1Therefore, because we have this ministry, and just as we have received mercy, we do not become discouraged.2Instead, we have rejected secret and shameful ways. We do not walk in craftiness, and we do not mishandle the word of God, but by presenting the truth, we recommend ourselves to everyone's conscience in the sight of God.3But if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled only to those who are perishing.4In their case, the god of this world has blinded their unbelieving minds. As a result, they are not able to see the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God.5For we do not proclaim ourselves, but Christ Jesus as Lord, and ourselves as your servants for Jesus' sake.6For God is the one who said, "Light will shine out of darkness." He has shone in our hearts, to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the presence of Jesus Christ.

7But we have this treasure in jars of clay, so that it is clear that the exceedingly great power belongs to God and not to us.8We are afflicted in every way, but not overwhelmed. We are perplexed but not filled with despair.9We are persecuted but not abandoned; struck down but not destroyed;10always carrying around in our body the death of Jesus, so that the life of Jesus may also be revealed in our body.11For we who are alive are always being given over to death for Jesus' sake, so that the life of Jesus may be revealed in our mortal flesh.12So death is at work in us, but life is at work in you.13But we have the same spirit of faith according to that which was written: "I believed, and so I spoke." We also believe, and so we also speak,14because we know that the one who raised the Lord Jesus will also raise us with Jesus and bring us with you into his presence.15For everything is for your sake, so that the grace that is reaching more and more people may cause thanksgiving to increase to the glory of God.

16So we do not become discouraged. Even though outwardly we are wasting away, inwardly we are being renewed day by day.17For this momentary, light affliction is producing for us an eternal burden of glory that exceeds all measurement.18For we are not watching for things that are seen, but for things that are unseen. The things that we can see are temporary, but the things that are unseen are eternal.

#### 2 Corinthians 4:1

##### we have this ministry

Here the word "we" refers to Paul and his coworker, but not to the Corinthians. Paul writes that he is honest in his ministry by preaching Christ, not praising himself.

##### and just as we have received mercy

"because God has shown us mercy"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:2

##### we have rejected secret and shameful ways

This means that Paul and his coworkers refuse to do "secret and shameful" things.

##### secret and shameful ways

"the things that people do secretly because they cause shame"

##### walk in craftiness

"live by deceiving people"

##### we do not mishandle the word of God

"we handle God's message correctly" or "we use the word of God properly"

##### we recommend ourselves to everyone's conscience

This means that they provide enough evidence for each person who hears them to decide whether they are right or wrong.

##### in the sight of God

"before God" or "with God as witness"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:3

##### But if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled only to those who are perishing

See 2 Corinthians 3:14. There Paul explained that there is a spiritual veil that prevents people from understanding when they read the old covenant. In the same way, people are not able to understand the gospel.

##### if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled

"if a veil covers our gospel, that veil covers it"

##### our gospel

"the gospel that we preach"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:4

##### the god of this world has blinded their unbelieving minds

"the god of this world has prevented unbelievers from understanding"

##### the god of this world

"the god who rules this world." This phrase refers to Satan.

##### they are not able to see the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ

This means that they are unable to understand "the gospel of the glory of Christ"

##### the light of the gospel

"the light that comes from the gospel"

##### the gospel of the glory of Christ

"the gospel about Christ's glory"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:5

##### but Christ Jesus as Lord, and ourselves as your servants

"but we proclaim Christ Jesus as Lord, and we proclaim ourselves as your servants"

##### for Jesus' sake

"because of Jesus"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:6

##### Light will shine out of darkness

Paul refers to God creating light, as described in Genesis 1:3.

##### He has shone ... to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God

"He has shone ... to enable us to understand the glory of God"

##### in our hearts

"in our minds"

##### the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the presence

"the light, which is the knowledge of the glory of God, in the presence"

##### the glory of God in the presence of Jesus Christ

"the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ." Just as God's glory shone upon Moses's face, it also shines upon Jesus's face. This means that when Paul preaches the gospel, people are able to see and understand the message about God's glory.

#### 2 Corinthians 4:7

##### But we have

Here the word "we" refers to Paul and his coworkers, but not to the Corinthians.

##### we have this treasure in jars of clay

This emphasizes that they are of little value compared to the worth of the gospel that they preach.

##### so that it is clear

"so that people clearly know"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:8

##### We are afflicted in every way

"People afflict us in every way"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:9

##### We are persecuted but not abandoned

"People persecute us, but God does not abandon us" or "People persecute us, but God does not stop caring for us"

##### abandoned; struck down but not destroyed

"abandoned. People strike us down but do not destroy us"

##### struck down

"hurt badly"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:10

##### always carrying around in our body the death of Jesus

"often in danger of dying, as Jesus died" or "always suffering in such a way that we experience the death of Jesus"

##### the life of Jesus may also be revealed in our body

"people can see that we will live in bodies again because Jesus is alive" or "we can show other people in our bodies the spiritual life that Jesus gives."

#### 2 Corinthians 4:11

##### we who are alive are always being given over to death for Jesus' sake

"God is always leading those of us who are alive to face death because we are joined to Jesus" or "People are always causing us who are alive to be in danger of dying because we are joined to Jesus"

##### so that the life of Jesus may be revealed in our mortal flesh

"so that God may reveal the life of Jesus in our mortal flesh"

##### the life of Jesus may be revealed

"God may reveal that Jesus is alive" or "God may reveal the life that Jesus gives to his people"

##### our mortal flesh

Paul is referring to our physical bodies, which will die someday.

#### 2 Corinthians 4:12

##### death is at work in us, but life is at work in you

This means that they are always in danger of physical death so that the Corinthians can have spiritual life.

#### 2 Corinthians 4:13

##### the same spirit of faith

"the same attitude of faith."

##### according to that which was written

"as the one who wrote these words"

##### I believed, and so I spoke

This is a quote from Psalm 116:10.

#### 2 Corinthians 4:14

##### that the one who raised the Lord Jesus will

"God, who raised the Lord Jesus, will"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:15

##### For everything is for your sake

Here the word "everything" refers to all of the sufferings that Paul has described in previous verses.

##### the grace that is reaching more and more people may cause thanksgiving to increase to the glory of God

"God may show his grace to many people, causing more and more people to give thanks, to the glory of God"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:16

##### So we do not become discouraged

"So we remain confident"

##### outwardly we are wasting away

"our physical bodies are getting weak and dying"

##### inwardly we are being renewed day by day

"our spiritual beings are being strengthened day by day" or "God is renewing our inward being more each day"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:17

##### this momentary, light affliction is producing for us an eternal burden of glory

Paul speaks of his sufferings and the glory that God will give him as if they were objects that can be weighed.

##### that exceeds all measurement

"that no one can measure"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:18

##### things that are seen ... things that are unseen ... things that are unseen

"things that we can see ... things that we cannot see ... things that we cannot see"

##### but for things that are unseen

"but we are watching for things that are unseen"

Chapter 5

1We know that if our earthly house—the tent—is destroyed, we have a building from God. It is a house not made by human hands, but an eternal house, in heaven.2For in this tent we groan, longing to be clothed with our heavenly residence.3We long for this because by putting it on we will not be found to be naked.4For indeed while we are in this tent, we groan, being burdened. We do not want to be unclothed. Instead, we want to be clothed, so that what is mortal may be swallowed up by life.5The one who prepared us for this very thing is God, who gave us the Spirit as a guarantee of what is to come.6Therefore always be confident, knowing that while we are at home in the body, we are away from the Lord.7For we walk by faith, not by sight.8So we have confidence. We would prefer to be away from the body and at home with the Lord.9So we make it our goal, whether we are at home or away, to please him.10For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, so that each one may receive what is due for the things done in the body, whether for good or for bad.

11Therefore, knowing the fear of the Lord, we persuade people. What we are is clearly seen by God, and I hope that it is also clear to your conscience.12We are not commending ourselves to you again, but we are giving you a reason to be proud of us, so you may have an answer for those who boast about appearances but not about what is in the heart.13For if we are out of our minds, it is for God; and if we are in our right minds, it is for your sake.14For the love of Christ controls us, because we have concluded this: That one person died for all, and that therefore all have died.15He died for all, so that those who live should no longer live for themselves but for him who for their sake died and was raised.16For this reason, from now on we do not regard anyone according to the flesh, even though we once regarded Christ according to the flesh. But now we no longer regard him that way.17Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation. The old things have passed away. See, they have become new.18All these things are from God. He reconciled us to himself through Christ and has given us the ministry of reconciliation.19That is, in Christ God is reconciling the world to himself, not counting their trespasses against them. He is entrusting to us the message of reconciliation.

20So we are appointed as representatives of Christ, as though God were making his appeal through us. We plead with you, for the sake of Christ: "Be reconciled to God!"21He made him who knew no sin to become sin for us, so that we might become the righteousness of God in him.

#### 2 Corinthians 5:1

##### if our earthly house—the tent—is destroyed, we have a building from God

"if people destroy our earthly house—the tent—we have" or "if people kill our bodies, we have". Paul emphasizes that the Christian's circumstances in this world are temporary. It gives hope to those who are suffering.

##### if our earthly house—the tent—is destroyed

"if the tent that is our home on earth is destroyed"

##### It is a house not made by human hands

"It is a house that humans did not make"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:2

##### in this tent we groan

Here "this tent" means the same thing as "the earthly dwelling that we live in".

##### longing to be clothed with our heavenly residence

"the place God will give us to live in." Because of this, Paul is not afraid of being killed for preaching the gospel.

#### 2 Corinthians 5:3

##### by putting it on

"by putting on our heavenly dwelling"

##### we will not be found to be naked

"we will not be naked" or "God will not find us naked"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:4

##### while we are in this tent

Paul speaks of the physical body as if it were a "tent", which refers to "the earthly dwelling that we live in."

##### being burdened

Paul refers to the difficulties that the physical body experiences as if they were heavy objects that are difficult to carry.

##### We do not want to be unclothed ... we want to be clothed

Here "to be unclothed" refers to the death of the physical body; "to be clothed" refers to the resurrection body that God will give.

##### to be unclothed

"to be without clothes" or "to be naked"

##### so that what is mortal may be swallowed up by life

"so that life may swallow up what is mortal". The physical body that will die will be replaced by a resurrection body that will live forever.

#### 2 Corinthians 5:5

##### who gave us the Spirit as a guarantee of what is to come

The Spirit is spoken of as if he were a down payment toward eternal life. See 2 Corinthians 1:22.

#### 2 Corinthians 5:6

##### while we are at home in the body

"while we are living in this earthly body"

##### we are away from the Lord

"we are not in heaven with the Lord"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:7

##### we walk by faith, not by sight

"we live according to faith, not according to what we see"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:8

##### We would prefer to be away from the body and at home with the Lord

"We would prefer to be away from the physical body and at home with the Lord in heaven, than to remain in the body and away from the Lord"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:9

##### whether we are at home or away

"whether we are at home in the body or away from it" or "whether we are at home with the Lord or away from him."

##### to please him

"to please the Lord"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:10

##### we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ

"we all must stand in the presence of Christ to be judged" or "Christ will judge all of us"

##### each one may receive what is due

"each person may receive what he deserves"

##### the things done in the body

"the things he has done in the physical body"

##### whether for good or for bad

"whether those things were good or bad"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:11

##### knowing the fear of the Lord

"knowing what it means to fear the Lord"

##### we persuade people

"we persuade people of the truth of the gospel" or "we persuade people that we are legitimate apostles."

##### What we are is clearly seen by God

"God clearly sees what kind of people we are"

##### I hope that it is also clear to your conscience

"I expect that it is also clear to your conscience" or "I trust that that you are also convinced of it"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:12

##### We are not commending ourselves to you again

"We are not recommending ourselves to you again" or "We are not trying to show you again that we are worthy"

##### so you may have an answer for those

"so you may have something to say to those"

##### those who boast about appearances but not about what is in the heart

"those who praise their own actions, but do not care about what they really are in their inner being"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:13

##### if we are out of our minds ... if we are in our right minds

"if people think we are crazy ... if people think we are sane"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:14

##### the love of Christ

"our love for Christ" or "Christ's love for us".

##### died for all

"died for all people"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:15

##### him who for their sake died and was raised

"Christ, who died for their sake and whom God raised"

##### for their sake

Possible meanings are 1) these words refer only to "died" or 2) these words refer to both "died" and "was raised".

#### 2 Corinthians 5:16

##### For this reason

This refers to what Paul has just said about living for Christ instead of living for self.

##### regard anyone

"judge anyone" or "think about anyone"

##### the flesh

"human standards" or "the way most people do"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:17

##### he is a new creation

"he is a new person". Paul speaks of the person who believes in Christ as if that person were a new person that God had created. The old and new creation probably refer to how Paul illustrates the old and new self.

##### The old things have passed away

Here "the old things" refers to the things that characterized a person before he trusted in Christ.

#### 2 Corinthians 5:18

##### All these things are from God

"God has done all these things."

##### the ministry of reconciliation

"the ministry of reconciling people to him"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:19

##### That is, in Christ

"This means that in Christ"

##### in Christ God is reconciling the world to himself

"in Christ, God is reconciling mankind to himself"

##### He is entrusting to us the message of reconciliation

God has given Paul the responsibility to spread the message that God is reconciling people to himself.

##### the message of reconciliation

"the message about reconciliation"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:20

##### we are appointed as representatives of Christ

"God has appointed us as those who speak for Christ"

##### Be reconciled to God

"Let God reconcile you to himself"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:21

##### him who knew no sin to become sin for us

"Christ never sinned, but God made him to become sin for us”

##### to become sin for us

"to become the sacrifice for which God will forgive our sins"

##### us, so that

"us. He did this so that"

##### so that we might become the righteousness of God in him

"so that through Christ we might have the righteousness that God requires"

Chapter 6

1Working together with him, we also urge you not to receive the grace of God in vain.2For he says,  
  
"In a favorable time I paid attention to you,and in the day of salvation I helped you."  
  
 Look, now is the favorable time. Look, now is the day of salvation.3We do not place a stumbling block in front of anyone, for we do not wish our ministry to be discredited.4Instead, in every way we commend ourselves as God's servants in much endurance, in affliction, in distress, in hardship,5in beatings, in imprisonments, in riots, in hard labor, in sleepless nights, in hunger,6in purity, in knowledge, in patience, in kindness, in the Holy Spirit, in sincere love,7in the word of truth, in the power of God; with the armor of righteousness for the right hand and the left.8We are God's servants in glory and dishonor, in slander and praise; regarded as deceivers and yet truthful;9as unknown, yet well known; as dying, yet, look—we live; as being disciplined, yet not killed;10as sorrowful, yet rejoicing; as poor, yet many are enriched; as having nothing, yet possessing all things.

11We have spoken the whole truth to you, Corinthians, and our heart is wide open.12You are not restrained by us, but you are restrained in your own hearts.13Now in fair exchange—I speak as to children—open yourselves wide also.14Do not be yoked together with unbelievers. For what association does righteousness have with lawlessness? For what fellowship does light have with darkness?15What agreement can Christ have with Belial? Or what share does a believer have together with an unbeliever?16And what agreement is there between the temple of God and idols? For we are the temple of the living God, just as God said:  
  
"I will dwell among them and walk among them.I will be their God,and they will be my people."

17Therefore,  
  
"Come out from among them,and be set apart," says the Lord."Touch no unclean thing,and I will welcome you.18I will be a Father to you,and you will be my sons and daughters,"says the Lord Almighty.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:1

##### Working together with him

"Working together with God"

##### we also urge you not to receive the grace of God in vain

"we beg you to make use of the grace that you have received from God"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:2

##### For he says

"For God says in scripture". This introduces a quotation from Isaiah 49:8.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:3

##### We do not place a stumbling block in front of anyone

"We do not want to do anything that will prevent people from believing our message"

##### we do not wish our ministry to be discredited

"we do not want anyone to be able to speak badly about our ministry"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:4

##### in every way we commend ourselves as God's servants

"Because we are God's servants we recommend ourselves to you in every way" or "in every way we show that we are God's servants". Paul likely uses the pronoun "we" to represent at least Timothy and himself. It may also include other people.

##### in much endurance, in affliction, in distress, in hardship

Paul mentions various difficult situations in which they commend themselves as God's servants.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:5

##### in beatings, in imprisonments, in riots, in hard labor, in sleepless nights, in hunger

Paul describes some of the difficult circumstances in which he and his companions served God.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:6

##### in purity ... in sincere love

Paul lists moral virtues that they maintained in difficult situations, commending themselves as God's servants.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:7

##### in the word of truth

"by speaking God's message about truth" or "by speaking God's true message"

##### in the power of God

"by showing God's power to people"

##### with the armor of righteousness for the right hand and the left

Paul speaks of their righteousness as if it were weapons that they use to fight spiritual battles.

##### the armor of righteousness

"righteousness as our armor" or "righteousness as our weapons"

##### for the right hand and the left

Possible meanings are 1) that there is a weapon in one hand and a shield in the other or 2) that they are completely equipped for battle, able to fend off attacks from any direction.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:8

##### regarded as deceivers

"people regard us as deceivers" or "people say that we are liars"

##### and yet truthful

"but we are truthful"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:9

##### as if we were unknown, yet we are well known

"as if people did not know us, and yet people know us well"

##### as if we were being punished for our actions, yet we are not killed

"as if people were punishing us for our actions, yet they have not killed us"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:11

##### spoken the whole truth to you

"spoken honestly to you"

##### our heart is wide open

"we love you very much"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:12

##### You are not restrained by us

"We have not restrained you" or "We have not given you any reason to stop loving us".

##### you are restrained in your own hearts

"your own hearts are restraining you" or "you have stopped loving us for your own reasons"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:13

##### open yourselves wide also

"love us back" or "love us much as we have loved you"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:14

##### Do not be yoked together with unbelievers

"Only be yoked together with believers"

##### be yoked together with unbelievers

"team up with" or "have a close relationship with". Paul speaks of working together toward a common purpose as if it were two animals tied together to pull a plow or cart.

##### For what association does righteousness have with lawlessness?

"For righteousness can have no association with lawlessness."

##### For what fellowship does light have with darkness?

"Light can have no fellowship with darkness.". The words "light" and "darkness" refer to the moral and spiritual qualities of believers and unbelievers.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:15

##### What agreement can Christ have with Belial?

"There is no agreement between Christ and the devil."

##### Or what share does a believer have together with an unbeliever?

"A believer shares nothing in common with an unbeliever."

#### 2 Corinthians 6:16

##### And what agreement is there between the temple of God and idols?

"There is no agreement between the temple of God and idols." See Exodus 25:8 and 29:45, Leviticus 26:12, Jeremiah 31:1 and Ezekiel 37:27.

##### we are the temple of the living God

"we are like a temple where the living God dwells"

##### I will dwell among them and walk among them.

"I will be with them and help them"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:17

##### be set apart

"set yourselves apart" or "allow me to set you apart"

##### Touch no unclean thing

"Touch only things that are clean" or "Stay away from things that are unclean"

Chapter 7

1Beloved, since we have these promises, let us cleanse ourselves of all defilement of flesh and spirit. Let us perfect holiness in the fear of God.

2Make room for us! We have not wronged anyone. We have not corrupted anyone or taken advantage of anyone.3It is not to condemn you that I say this. For I have already said that you are in our hearts, for us to die together and to live together.4I have great confidence in you, and great is my boast about you. I am filled with comfort. I overflow with joy even in all our tribulation.

5When we came to Macedonia, our bodies had no rest. Instead, we were troubled in every way by conflicts on the outside and fears on the inside.6But God, who comforts the lowly, comforted us by the arrival of Titus.7It was not only by his arrival that God comforted us. It was also by the comfort that Titus had received from you. He told us of your great affection, your sorrow, and your zeal for me. So I rejoiced even more.8Even though my letter made you sorrowful, I do not regret it. But I did regret it when I saw that my letter made you sorrowful, though only for a little while.9Now I rejoice, not because you were sorrowful, but because your sorrow brought you to repentance. You experienced a godly sorrow, so you suffered no loss because of us.10For godly sorrow brings about repentance that accomplishes salvation without regret. Worldly sorrow, however, brings about death.11See what great diligence this godly sorrow produced in you. How great was the determination in you to prove you were innocent. How great was your indignation, your fear, your longing, your zeal, and your desire to see that justice should be done! In everything you have proved yourselves to be innocent in this matter.12Although I wrote to you, I did not write for the sake of the wrongdoer, nor for the one who suffered the wrong, but so that your earnestness toward us should be made known to you in the sight of God.13It is by this that we are encouraged.

In addition to our own comfort, we also rejoiced even more because of Titus' joy, because his spirit was refreshed by all of you.14For if I boasted to him about you, I was not put to shame. On the contrary, just as everything we said to you was true, our boasting about you to Titus proved to be true.15His affection for you is even greater as he remembers the obedience of all of you, how you welcomed him with fear and trembling.16I rejoice because I have complete confidence in you.

#### 2 Corinthians 7:1

##### Beloved

"You whom I love" or "Dear friends"

##### let us cleanse ourselves of all defilement of flesh and spirit

Here Paul is saying to stay away from any form of sin that would affect one's relationship with God.

##### of all defilement of flesh and spirit

"of all things in our body and spirit that make us unacceptable to God"

##### Let us perfect holiness

"Let us do all we can to be perfectly holy"

##### in the fear of God

"out of deep respect for God" or "because we fear God"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:2

##### Make room for us

"Make room for us in your hearts" or "Love us and accept us"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:3

##### It is not to condemn you that I say this

"I do not say this to accuse you of having done wrong." The word "this" refers to what Paul just said about not having wronged anyone.

##### you are in our hearts

"you are very dear to us"

##### for us to die together and to live together

"whether we live or whether we die"

##### for us to die

"us" includes the Corinthian believers.

#### 2 Corinthians 7:4

##### great is my boast about you

"I am very proud of you"

##### I am filled with comfort

"You fill me with comfort"

##### I overflow with joy

"I am extremely joyful"

##### even in all our tribulation

"even though we suffer greatly"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:5

##### When we came to Macedonia

Here the word "we" refers to Paul and Timothy but not to the Corinthians or Titus.

##### our bodies had no rest

"we had no rest" or "we were very tired"

##### we were troubled in every way

"we experienced trouble in every way"

##### by conflicts on the outside and fears on the inside

"by conflicts with other people and by fears within ourselves". Possible meanings for "outside" are 1) "outside of our bodies" or 2) "outside of the church." The word "inside" refers to their inward emotions.

#### 2 Corinthians 7:7

##### by the comfort that Titus had received from you

"by learning about the comfort that Titus had received from you"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:8

##### when I saw that my letter

"when I learned that my letter". Paul praises them for their godly sorrow, their zeal to do right, and the joy that it brought him and Titus.

#### 2 Corinthians 7:9

##### not because you were sorrowful

"not because what I said in my letter made you sorrowful"

##### sorrowful ... sorrow ... sorrow

or "distressed ... distress ... distress"

##### so you suffered no loss because of us

"so that we did not harm you in any way"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:10

##### For godly sorrow brings about repentance that accomplishes salvation

"For godly sorrow produces repentance, and repentance leads to salvation"

##### without regret

Possible meanings are 1) Paul has no regret that he caused them sorrow because that sorrow led to their repentance and salvation or 2) the Corinthians will not regret experiencing sorrow because it led to their repentance and salvation.

##### Worldly sorrow, however, brings about death

"Worldly sorrow, however, leads to spiritual death"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:11

##### See what great diligence

"Look and see for yourselves what great diligence"

##### How great was the determination in you to prove you were innocent.

"Your determination to prove you were innocent was very great!"

##### your indignation

"your anger"

##### that justice should be done

"that someone should carry out justice"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:12

##### the wrongdoer

"the one who did wrong"

##### your earnestness toward us should be made known to you in the sight of God

"so that you would know in the sight of God your earnestness toward us"

##### earnestness

sincere, serious desire for what is good

##### in the sight of God

"before God" or "with God as witness"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:13

##### It is by this that we are encouraged

"This is what encourages us"

##### his spirit was refreshed by all of you

"all of you refreshed his spirit" or "all of you made him stop worrying"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:14

##### For if I boasted to him about you

"For although I boasted to him about you"

##### I was not put to shame

"you did not disappoint me"

##### our boasting about you to Titus proved to be true

"you proved that our boasting about you to Titus was true"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:15

##### the obedience of all of you

"how all of you obeyed"

##### you welcomed him with fear and trembling

"you welcomed him with great reverence"

##### with fear and trembling

"with great reverence for Titus"

Chapter 8

1We want you to know, brothers, about the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia.2During a great test of tribulation, the abundance of their joy and the extremity of their poverty have produced great riches of generosity.3For I testify that they gave as much as they were able, and even beyond what they were able, and of their own free will4they begged us with much earnestness for the privilege of sharing in this service to God's holy people.5This did not happen as we had hoped, but they first gave themselves to the Lord and then to us by the will of God.6So we urged Titus, who had already begun this task, to complete among you this act of grace.7But you abound in everything—in faith, in speech, in knowledge, in all diligence, and in your love for us. So also make sure that you excel in this act of grace. [1](#footnote-target-1)8I say this not as a command but to test the sincerity of your love by comparing it to the eagerness of other people.9For you know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ. Even though he was rich, for your sakes he became poor, so that through his poverty you might become rich.10In this matter I will give you advice that will help you. One year ago, you not only started to do something, but you desired to do it.11Now finish it. Just as there was an eagerness and desire to do it then, may you also bring it to completion, as much as you can.12For if you are eager to do this deed, it is a good and acceptable thing. It must be based on what a person has, not on what he does not have.13For this is not to cause relief for others and tribulation for you, but for fairness.14Your abundance at the present time will supply what they need. This is also so that their abundance may supply your need, and so that there may be fairness.15It is as it is written:"The one with much did not have anything left over,and the one who had little did not have any lack."

16But thanks be to God, who put into Titus' heart the same earnest care that I have for you.17For he not only accepted our appeal, but he was also very earnest about it. He came to you of his own free will.18We have sent with him the brother who is praised among all of the churches for his work in proclaiming the gospel.19Not only this, but he also was chosen by the churches to be our traveling companion with this act of grace, which is being administered by us for the glory of the Lord himself and our good will.20We are avoiding the possibility that anyone should complain about this act of generosity that we are carrying out.21We take care to do what is good, not only before the Lord, but also before people.22We are also sending another brother with them. We have tested him in many ways and found him diligent for many tasks. He is even more eager now because of the great confidence he has in you.23As for Titus, he is my partner and fellow worker for you. As for our brothers, they are messengers from the churches. They are a glory to Christ.24So show them the proof of your love, and show to the churches the reason for our boasting about you.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)There is evidence that corrections were made to verse 7 by later copyists who were referring to other ancient texts. Most modern translations follow those corrections, and they now read, and in your love for us . But there are some important and ancient Greek copies that read, and in our love for you .

#### 2 Corinthians 8:1

##### the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia

"the grace that God has given to the churches of Macedonia"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:2

##### the abundance of their joy and the extremity of their poverty ... riches of generosity

"because of the people's great joy and extreme poverty, they have become very generous"

##### extremity of their poverty ... riches of generosity

Paul sends Titus and two other believers to Corinth to encourage the Corinthians to give generously. Paul and the others will carry the money to Jerusalem.

##### great riches of generosity

"a very great generosity."

#### 2 Corinthians 8:3

##### of their own free will

"voluntarily"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:4

##### this service to God's holy people

"this ministry of providing for the believers in Jerusalem"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:5

##### This did not happen as we had hoped

"This did not happen merely as we had thought it might" or "But even more than we had expected"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:6

##### who had already begun this task

"who had encouraged your giving in the first place"

##### to complete among you this act of grace

"to encourage you to finish collecting and giving your generous gift"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:7

##### make sure that you excel in this act of grace

"make sure that you are very generous in your giving"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:8

##### by comparing it to the eagerness of other people

Paul is encouraging the Corinthians to give generously by comparing their generosity with the generosity of the Macedonian churches.

#### 2 Corinthians 8:9

##### the grace of our Lord

In this context, the word "grace" emphasizes the generosity with which Jesus had blessed the Corinthians.

##### Even though he was rich, for your sakes he became poor

Paul speaks of Jesus before his incarnation as being rich, and of his becoming human as becoming poor.

##### through his poverty you might become rich

Paul speaks of the Corinthians becoming spiritually rich as a result of Jesus becoming human.

#### 2 Corinthians 8:11

##### there was an eagerness and desire to do it

"you were eager and desired to do it"

##### bring it to completion

"finish it"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:12

##### a good and acceptable thing

"a very good thing"

##### It must be based on what a person has

"Giving must be based on what a person has"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:13

##### For this is not to cause relief for others and tribulation for you

"We are not asking you to give money to relieve others and make yourselves suffer"

##### but for fairness

"but so that there might be equality between others and you."

#### 2 Corinthians 8:14

##### This is also so that their abundance may supply your need

"This is also so that in the future their abundance may supply your need"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:15

##### as it is written

"as Moses wrote". Here Paul quotes from Exodus 16:18.

##### did not have any lack

"had all he needed"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:16

##### who put into Titus' heart the same earnest care that I have for you

"who made Titus care for you as much as I do"

##### same earnest care

"same deep concern"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:17

##### For he not only accepted our appeal

"For he not only agreed to our request that he help you with the collection"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:18

##### with him

"with Titus"

##### the brother who is praised among all of the churches

"the brother whom believers among all of the churches praise"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:19

##### Not only this

"Not only do believers among all of the churches praise him"

##### he also was chosen by the churches

"the churches also chose him"

##### our traveling companion with this act of grace

"to travel with us as we carry out this act of generosity."

##### which is being administered by us

"which we are taking care of"

##### for the glory of the Lord himself and our good will

"so that people will praise the Lord and so that they will see how eager we are to help"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:20

##### about this act of generosity that we are carrying out

"concerning the way we are handling this generous gift"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:21

##### We take care to do what is good, not only before the Lord, ... before people.

"We are careful to do not only what the Lord thinks is good but also what people think is good"

##### before the Lord ... before people

"in the Lord's opinion ... in people's opinion"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:22

##### with them

The word "them" refers to Titus and the previously mentioned brother.

#### 2 Corinthians 8:23

##### he is my partner and fellow worker for you

"he is my partner, who works with me to help you"

##### they are messengers from the churches

"the churches have sent them as their messengers"

##### They are a glory to Christ

"They will cause people to honor Christ"

Chapter 9

1Concerning the service for God's holy people, it is not necessary for me to write to you.2I know about your desire, which I boasted about to the people of Macedonia. I told them that Achaia has been getting ready since last year. Your eagerness has motivated most of them to action.3Now I have sent the brothers so that our boasting about you may not be futile, and so that you would be ready, as I said you would be.4Otherwise, if any Macedonians come with me and find you unprepared, we would be ashamed—I say nothing about you—for being so confident in you.5So I thought it was necessary to urge the brothers to come to you and to make arrangements in advance for the gift you have promised. This is so that it might be ready as a blessing, and not as something extorted.

6The point is this: The one who sows sparingly will also reap sparingly, and the one who sows for the purpose of a blessing will also reap a blessing.7Let each one give as he has planned in his heart, not reluctantly or under compulsion, for God loves a cheerful giver.8And God is able to make all grace overflow for you, so that always, in all things, you may have all you need. This will be so that you may multiply every good deed.9It is as it is written:  
  
"He has distributed his riches and given them to the poor.His righteousness lasts forever."

10He who supplies seed to the farmer who sows and bread for food will also supply and multiply your seed for sowing. He will increase the harvest of your righteousness.11You will be enriched in every way so you can be generous. This will bring about thanksgiving to God through us.12For carrying out this service not only meets the needs of God's holy people, but it also is overflowing into many acts of thanksgiving to God.13Because of your being tested and proved by this service, you will also glorify God by obedience to your confession of the gospel of Christ. You will also glorify God by the generosity of your contribution to them and to everyone.14They long for you, and they are praying for you. They do this because of the very great grace of God that is on you.15May thanks be to God for his inexpressible gift!

#### 2 Corinthians 9:1

##### the service for God's holy people

"the ministry for the believers in Jerusalem" He wants to make sure that the collection of their offering for the needy believers in Jerusalem takes place before he comes, so it does not seem like he is taking advantage of them.

#### 2 Corinthians 9:2

##### Achaia has been getting ready

"the people of Achaia have been preparing". Paul is talking about a Roman province located in southern Greece where Corinth is located.

#### 2 Corinthians 9:3

##### the brothers

This refers to Titus and the two men who accompany him.

##### our boasting about you may not be futile

Paul does not want people to think the things he had boasted about the Corinthians were false.

#### 2 Corinthians 9:4

##### find you unprepared

"find you unprepared to give"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:5

##### the brothers to come to you

"the brothers to go to you"

##### not as something extorted

"not as something that you gave us because we forced you to give it to us"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:6

##### the one who sows ... reap a blessing

As a farmer's harvest is based on how much he sows, so will God's blessings be little or much, based on how generously the Corinthians give.

#### 2 Corinthians 9:7

##### give as he has planned in his heart

"give as he has determined"

##### not reluctantly or under compulsion

"not because he feels guilty or because someone is forcing him to give"

##### for God loves a cheerful giver

God wants people to give gladly to help provide for fellow believers.

#### 2 Corinthians 9:8

##### God is able to make all grace overflow for you

"God is able to give you very much"

##### grace

This refers here to the earthly blessings that a Christian needs.

##### so that you may multiply every good deed

"so that you may be able to do more and more good deeds"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:9

##### It is as it is written

"This is just as it is written" or "This is just as the writer wrote"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:10

##### He who supplies

"God who supplies"

##### bread for food

"food to eat"

##### will also supply and multiply your seed for sowing

"will also supply and multiply your possessions so that you can sow them by giving them to others"

##### He will increase the harvest of your righteousness

"God will bless you even more for your righteousness"

##### the harvest of your righteousness

"the harvest that comes from your righteous actions."

#### 2 Corinthians 9:11

##### You will be enriched

"God will enrich you"

##### This will bring about thanksgiving to God through us

"Because of your generosity, those who receive the gifts we bring them will thank God" or "When we give your gifts to those who need them, they will give thanks to God"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:12

##### For carrying out this service

"For our carrying out this service for the believers in Jerusalem"

##### but it also is overflowing into many acts of thanksgiving to God

"It also causes people to do many deeds for which people will thank God"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:13

##### Because of your being tested and proved by this service

"Because this service has tested and proven you"

##### you will also glorify God by obedience ... by the generosity ... them and to everyone

Paul says that the Corinthians will glorify God both by being faithful to Jesus and by giving generously to other believers who have need.

##### the generosity of your contribution

"what you have contributed generously".

#### 2 Corinthians 9:15

##### for his inexpressible gift

Possible meanings are 1) that this gift refers to "the very great grace" that God has given to the Corinthians or 2) that this gift refers to Jesus Christ, whom God gave to all believers.

Chapter 10

1I, Paul, myself urge you, by the humility and gentleness of Christ. I am meek when I am in your presence, but I am bold toward you when I am away.2I beg of you that, when I am present with you, I will not need to be bold with the confidence that I think I will need to be bold when I oppose those who think that we are walking according to the flesh.3For even though we walk in the flesh, we do not make war according to the flesh.4For the weapons we fight with are not fleshly. Rather, they have divine power to destroy strongholds. They bring misleading arguments to nothing.5We also destroy every high thing that rises up against the knowledge of God. We take every thought captive into obedience to Christ.6And we are getting ready to punish every act of disobedience, as soon as your obedience is complete.7Look at what is clearly in front of you. If anyone is convinced that he is Christ's, let him remind himself that just as he is Christ's, so also are we.8For even if I boast a little too much about our authority, which the Lord gave for us to build you up and not to destroy you, I will not be ashamed.9I do not want it to appear that I am terrifying you by my letters.10For some people say, "His letters are serious and powerful, but his bodily presence is weak. His words are not worth listening to."11Let such people be aware that what we are in the words of our letters when we are absent is what we will be in our actions when we are there.12We are not so bold as to group ourselves or compare ourselves with those who praise themselves. But when they measure themselves by one another and compare themselves with each other, they have no insight.13We, however, will not boast beyond limits. Instead, we will do so only within the limits of what God has assigned to us, limits that reach even as far as you.14For we are not overextending ourselves as though we did not reach you. We were the first to reach as far as you with the gospel of Christ.15We have not boasted beyond limits about the labors of others. Rather, our hope is that as your faith continues to grow, our work among you will greatly expand,16so that we may preach the gospel even in regions beyond you, without boasting of work already done in another's area.17"But let the one who boasts, boast in the Lord."18For it is not the one who recommends himself who is approved, but the one whom the Lord recommends.

#### 2 Corinthians 10:1

##### by the humility and gentleness of Christ

"by Christ, who is humble and gentle"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:2

##### we are walking

"we are acting"

##### according to the flesh

"the way sinful people do". Paul appears to be teaching that we will continue to sin.

#### 2 Corinthians 10:3

##### we walk in the flesh

"we live our lives in physical bodies"

##### the flesh

"the way most people do"

##### we do not make war

Paul speaks of his trying to persuade the Corinthians to believe him and not the false teachers.

##### make war according to the flesh

"fight against our enemies using physical weapons" or "make war in sinful ways"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:4

##### the weapons we fight with ... bring misleading arguments to nothing

"the weapons we fight with ... show people that what our enemies say is completely wrong"

##### are not fleshly

"are not physical" or "are not sinful"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:5

##### every high thing that rises up

"every false argument that proud people think of to protect themselves"

##### every high thing

"everything that proud people do"

##### rises up against the knowledge of God

"people use so they will not have to know who God is"

##### We take every thought captive into obedience to Christ

"We show how all the false ideas those people have are wrong and teach the people to obey Christ"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:6

##### punish every act of disobedience

"punish every one of you who disobeys us"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:7

##### Look at what is clearly in front of you.

"Are you looking at what is clearly in front of you?" or "You seem unable to see what is clearly in front of you."

##### let him remind himself

"he needs to remember"

##### that just as he is Christ's, so also are we

"that we belong to Christ just as much as he does"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:8

##### to build you up and not to destroy you

"to help you become better followers of Christ and not to discourage you so you stop following him"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:9

##### I am terrifying you

"I am trying to frighten you"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:10

##### serious and powerful

"demanding and forceful"

##### his bodily presence is weak

"when he is here physically, he is not impressive"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:11

##### Let such people be aware

"I want such people to be aware"

##### what we are in the words of our letters when we are absent is ... our actions when we are there

"we will do the same things when we are there with you that we have written about in our letters while we have been away"

##### we ... our

All instances of these words refer to Paul's ministry team but not the Corinthians.

#### 2 Corinthians 10:12

##### We are not so bold as to group ourselves ... praise themselves

"Bold people would group themselves ... praise themselves, but we are not that bold, so we do not."

##### to group ourselves or compare ourselves with those

"to say we are as good as those"

##### they measure themselves by one another

"they look at each other and try to see who is better"

##### have no insight

"show everyone that they do not know anything"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:13

##### will not boast beyond limits. Instead

"will not boast about things over which we have no authority. Instead" or "will boast only about things over which we have authority. And"

##### within the limits of what God

"about things under the authority that God"

##### limits that reach even as far as you

"and you are within the border of our authority"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:14

##### we are not overextending ourselves

"we are not claiming to have more authority than we do,"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:15

##### We have not boasted beyond limits about the labors of others

"We have not boasted about the work of other people, as if it were our work"

##### our hope is that

"we desire that" or "we trust that"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:16

##### another's area

"an area God has assigned to someone else"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:17

##### boast in the Lord

"boast about what the Lord has done"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:18

##### recommends himself

This means that he provides enough evidence for each person to decide whether he is right or wrong.

##### who is approved

"whom the Lord approves"

##### but the one whom the Lord recommends

"but it is the one whom the Lord recommends who is approved"

Chapter 11

1I wish that you could put up with me in some foolishness. But you are indeed putting up with me!2For I am jealous about you. I have a godly jealousy for you, since I promised you in marriage to one husband. I promised to present you as a pure virgin to Christ.3But I am afraid that somehow, as the serpent deceived Eve by his craftiness, your thoughts might be led astray, away from a sincere and pure devotion to Christ.4For suppose that someone comes and proclaims another Jesus than the one we preached. Or suppose that you receive a different spirit than what you received. Or suppose that you receive a different gospel than the one you received. You put up with these things well enough!5For I think that I am not in the least inferior to those so-called super-apostles.6But even if I am untrained in speech, I am not untrained in knowledge. In every way and in all things we have made this known to you.7Did I sin by humbling myself so you might be exalted? For I freely preached the gospel of God to you.8I robbed other churches by accepting support from them so that I could serve you.9When I was with you and I was in need, I did not burden anyone. For my needs were met by the brothers who came from Macedonia. In everything I have kept myself from being a burden to you, and I will continue to do that.10As the truth of Christ is in me, this boasting of mine will not be silenced in the parts of Achaia.11Why? Because I do not love you? God knows.12And what I do I will keep doing, so that I may cut off the opportunity of those who want an opportunity to be found to be like us in the things they boast about.13For such people are false apostles and deceitful workers. They disguise themselves as apostles of Christ.14And this is no surprise, for even Satan disguises himself as an angel of light.15It is no great surprise if his servants also disguise themselves as servants of righteousness. Their fate will be what their deeds deserve.

16I say again: Let no one think I am a fool. But if you do, receive me as a fool so I may boast a little.17What I am saying with this boastful confidence—I am not talking the way the Lord would—I am saying as a fool.18Since many people boast according to the flesh, I will also boast.19For you gladly put up with fools. You are wise yourselves!20For you put up with someone if he enslaves you, if he devours you, if he takes advantage of you, if he exalts himself, or if he slaps you in the face.21I will say to our shame that we were too weak to do that. Yet if anyone is bold—I am speaking like a fool—I too will be bold.22Are they Hebrews? So am I. Are they Israelites? So am I. Are they descendants of Abraham? So am I.23Are they servants of Christ? (I speak as though I were insane.) I am more: in harder labor, in more prisons, in beatings beyond measure, in facing many deadly dangers.24From Jews I received five times the "forty lashes minus one."25Three times I was beaten with rods. Once I was stoned. Three times I was shipwrecked. I have spent a night and a day on the open sea.26I have been on frequent journeys, in danger from rivers, in danger from robbers, in danger from my own people, in danger from the Gentiles, in danger in the city, in danger in the wilderness, in danger at sea, in danger from false brothers.27I have served in labor and toil, in many sleepless nights, in hunger and thirst, often in fasting, in cold and nakedness.28Apart from everything else, there is the daily pressure of my concern for all the churches.29Who is weak, and I am not weak? Who has been caused to stumble, and I do not burn?30If I must boast, I will boast about what shows my weaknesses.31The God and Father of the Lord Jesus, the one who is blessed forever, knows that I am not lying!

32At Damascus, the governor under King Aretas was guarding the city of Damascus to arrest me.33But I was lowered in a basket through a window in the wall, and I escaped from his hands.

#### 2 Corinthians 11:1

##### put up with me in some foolishness

"allow me to act like a fool"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:2

##### jealous ... jealousy

These words speak of a good, strong desire that the Corinthians be faithful to Christ, and that no one should persuade them to leave him.

##### I promised you in marriage to one husband. I promised to present you as a pure virgin to Christ

"I was like a father who promised to present his daughter to one husband. I promised to keep you as a pure virgin so I could give you to Christ". Wedding practices change depending on the cultural background. But the idea of helping to present someone as a grown and holy child is explicitly pictured here.

#### 2 Corinthians 11:3

##### But I am afraid that somehow, as the serpent deceived Eve by his craftiness, your thoughts might be led astray ... devotion to Christ

"But I am afraid that somehow your thoughts might be led astray from a sincere and pure devotion to Christ just as the serpent deceived Eve by his craftiness"

##### your thoughts might be led astray, away from

"someone might cause you to believe lies and not keep"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:4

##### For suppose that ... preached. Or suppose that ... received. Or suppose that ... received. You put

"For when ... preached, or when ... received, or when ... received, you put"

##### a different spirit than what you received. Or suppose that you receive a different gospel than the one you received

"a different spirit than the Holy Spirit, or a different gospel than you received from us"

##### put up with these things

"deal with these things." See how these words were translated in 2 Corinthians 11:1.

#### 2 Corinthians 11:5

##### those so-called super-apostles

"those teachers whom some think are better than anyone else"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:6

##### I am not untrained in knowledge

"I am trained to know what they know"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:7

##### Did I sin by humbling myself so you might be exalted?

"I think we agree that I did not sin by humbling myself so you might be exalted"

##### freely preached the gospel of God to you

"preached the gospel of God to you without expecting anything from you in return"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:8

##### I robbed other churches

"It was as if I robbed other churches"

##### I could serve you

"I could serve you at no cost"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:9

##### In everything I have kept myself from being a burden to you

"I have done all I can to make sure you do not have to spend money so that I can be with you"

##### the brothers who came

These "brothers" were probably all male.

##### I will continue to do that

"I never will be a burden to you"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:10

##### As the truth of Christ is in me, this

"As surely as you know that I truly know and proclaim the truth about Christ, you can know that what I am about to say is true. This"

##### this boasting of mine will not be silenced

"no one will be able to make me stop boasting and stay silent". See 2 Corinthians 11:7.

##### parts of Achaia

"regions of Achaia."

#### 2 Corinthians 11:11

##### Why? Because I do not love you?

"Is it because I do not love you that I do not want to be a burden to you?" or "I will continue to keep you from paying for my needs because this shows others that I love you"

##### God knows

"God knows I love you"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:12

##### so that I may cut off the opportunity of those who want an opportunity to be found to be like us in the things they boast about

"so that they have no reason to boast that they are doing the same work that we are doing"

##### to be found to be like us

"to appear to be doing the same work we are doing"

##### us in the things they boast about

"us, as they are boasting that they are"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:13

##### For such people

"I do what I do because of people like them"

##### deceitful workers

"dishonest workers"

##### disguise themselves as apostles

"are not apostles, but they try to make themselves look like apostles"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:14

##### this is no surprise

"we should expect this"

##### Satan disguises himself as an angel of light

"Satan is not an angel of light, but he tries to make himself look like an angel of light"

##### an angel of light

"an angel of righteousness"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:15

##### It is no great surprise if

"We should certainly expect that"

##### his servants also disguise themselves as servants of righteousness

"his servants are not servants of righteousness, but they try to make themselves look like servants of righteousness"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:16

##### receive me as a fool so I may boast a little

"receive me as you would receive a fool: let me talk, and consider my boasting the words of a fool"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:18

##### many people boast according to the flesh

These people "boast" in the bad sense of claiming to be better people than they really are.

##### according to the flesh

"about their own human achievements"

##### I will also boast

See how you translated "boasting" in 2 Corinthians 1:12.

#### 2 Corinthians 11:19

##### put up with fools

"accept fools."

##### You are wise yourselves!

"You think you are wise, but you are not!"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:20

##### enslaves you

"makes you follow rules he has thought of"

##### he devours you

"he takes all your property"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:21

##### I will say to our shame that we were too weak to do that

"I shamefully admit that we were not bold enough to treat you like that." or "I am not ashamed to say that we had the power to harm you, but we treated you well"

##### Yet if anyone is bold ... I too will be bold

"Whatever anyone boasts about ... I will dare to boast about it also."

#### 2 Corinthians 11:22

##### Are they Hebrews? ... Are they Israelites? ... Are they descendants of Abraham?

"They want you to think they are important and to believe what they say because they are Hebrews and Israelites and descendants of Abraham. Well, so am I."

#### 2 Corinthians 11:23

##### Are they servants of Christ? (I speak as though I were insane.) I am more

"They say they are servants of Christ—I speak as though I were insane—but I am more"

##### as though I were insane

"as though I were unable to think well"

##### I am more

"I am more a servant of Christ than they are"

##### in harder labor

"I have worked harder than they have"

##### in more prisons

"I have been in prison more often"

##### in beatings beyond measure, in facing

"I have been beaten too many times to bother counting, and I have faced"

##### in facing many deadly dangers

"and I have almost died many times"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:24

##### forty lashes minus one

In Jewish law the most they were allowed to whip a person at one time was forty lashes. So they commonly whipped a person thirty-nine times so that they would not be guilty of whipping someone too many times.

#### 2 Corinthians 11:25

##### I was beaten with rods

"people beat me with wooden rods"

##### I was stoned

"people threw stones at me until they thought I was dead"

##### I have spent a night and a day on the open sea

Paul was referring to floating in the water after the ship he was on sank.

#### 2 Corinthians 11:26

##### in danger from false brothers

"and in danger from people who claimed to be brothers in Christ, but who betrayed us"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:27

##### I have served in labor

The words "I have served" have been added to shorten the sentence that begins in 2 Corinthians 11:24. You can end 2 Corinthians 11:26 with a comma and begin this verse with the words "in labor."

##### labor and toil

"extremely hard work"

##### nakedness

"without enough clothing to keep me warm"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:28

##### there is the daily pressure of my concern for all the churches

"I am so concerned everyday for all the churches that I feel like I have a heavy object weighing me down"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:29

##### Who is weak, and I am not weak?

"Whenever anyone is weak, I feel that weakness also." or "I am weak whenever anyone else is weak."

##### Who has been caused to stumble, and I do not burn?

"Whenever anyone causes a brother to sin, I am angry."

##### has been caused to stumble

"has been led to sin"

##### I do not burn

"I am not angry about it"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:30

##### what shows my weaknesses

"what shows how weak I am"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:31

##### I am not lying

"I am telling the absolute truth"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:32

##### the governor under King Aretas was guarding the city

"the governor King Aretas had appointed told men to guard the city"

##### to arrest me

"so that they might catch and arrest me"

#### 2 Corinthians 11:33

##### I was lowered in a basket

"some people put me in a basket and lowered me to the ground"

##### from his hands

"from the governor"

Chapter 12

1I must boast, even if it is unprofitable. But I will go on to visions and revelations from the Lord.2I know a man in Christ who fourteen years ago—whether in the body or out of the body, I do not know, God knows—was caught up into the third heaven.3And I know that this man—whether in the body, or out of the body, I do not know, God knows—4was caught up into paradise and heard inexpressible words that people are not permitted to speak.5On behalf of such a person I will boast. But on behalf of myself I will not boast, except about my weaknesses.6If I should choose to boast, I will not be a fool, because I would be speaking the truth. But I will keep from boasting, so that no one will think more of me than what he sees in me or hears from me.7To keep me from exalting myself because of the surpassing greatness of the revelations, a thorn in the flesh was given to me, a messenger from Satan to afflict me—so I would not exalt myself.8Three times I pleaded with the Lord about this, for him to take it away from me.9But he said to me, "My grace is enough for you, for power is made perfect in weakness." So I would much rather boast about my weakness, so that the power of Christ might reside on me.10Therefore I am content for Christ's sake in weaknesses, in insults, in troubles, in persecutions and distressing situations. For whenever I am weak, then I am strong.

11I have become a fool! You forced me to this, for I should have been praised by you. For I was not at all inferior to the so-called super-apostles, even though I am nothing.12The true signs of an apostle were performed among you with all perseverance, signs and wonders and miracles.13For how were you less important than the rest of the churches, except that I was not a burden to you? Forgive me for this wrong!

14Look! I am ready to come to you a third time. I will not be a burden to you, for I do not seek what is yours. I want you. For children should not save up for the parents. Instead, the parents should save up for the children.15I will most gladly spend and be spent for your souls. If I love you more, am I to be loved less?16But as it is, I did not burden you. But since I am so crafty, I am the one who caught you by deceit.17Did I take advantage of you by anyone I sent to you?18I urged Titus to go to you, and I sent the other brother with him. Did Titus take advantage of you? Did we not walk in the same spirit? Did we not walk in the same steps?

19Do you think all of this time we have been defending ourselves to you? It is in the sight of God that we speak in Christ, and all for your strengthening, beloved.20For I fear that when I come, I may not find you as I wish. I fear that you might not find me as you wish. I fear that there may be quarreling, jealousy, outbursts of anger, rivalries, slander, gossip, arrogance, and disorder.21I fear that when I come back, my God might humble me before you. I fear that I might be grieved by many of those who have sinned before now and who did not repent of the uncleanness and sexual immorality and lustful indulgence that they practiced.

#### 2 Corinthians 12:1

##### even if it is unprofitable

"even if boasting does not do any good"

##### I will go on to

"I will continue talking, but now about"

##### visions and revelations from the Lord

"secret things that the Lord has let me see with my eyes and other secrets that he has told me about"

#### 2 Corinthians 12:2

##### I know a man in Christ

Paul is actually speaking of himself as if he were speaking of someone else, so this should be translated literally if possible. Paul defends his authority by telling about a wonderful vision of heaven. Although he speaks in the third person in verses 2-5, verse 7 indicates that he was that person experiencing the vision. It was so great a vision that God gave him a physical handicap to keep him humble.

##### whether in the body or out of the body, I do not know

"I do not know if this man was in his physical body or in his spiritual body"

##### the third heaven

Many scholars believe the "third" heaven is the dwelling place of God. This is because Scripture also uses "heaven" to refer to the sky (the "first" heaven) and the universe (the "second" heaven).

#### 2 Corinthians 12:4

##### was caught up into paradise and heard inexpressible words

"was a man whom God took into paradise and who heard things" or "was a man whom an angel took into paradise and who heard inexpressible words."or "was a man who entered into paradise and heard inexpressible words".

##### caught up

suddenly and forcefully held and taken

##### paradise

Possible meanings are 1) heaven or 2) the third heaven or 3) a special place in heaven.

##### inexpressible words

Possible meanings of "inexpressible" are that 1) Paul means something other than "it is unlawful for people to speak" these words, and so people are unable to communicate the ideas expressed in the words or 2) Paul means the same thing as "it is unlawful for people to speak" these words, emphasizing that God does not permit people to speak the words.

#### 2 Corinthians 12:5

##### of such a person

"of that person"

##### I will not boast, except about my weaknesses

"I will boast only of my weaknesses"

#### 2 Corinthians 12:6

##### no one will think more of me than what he sees in me or hears from me

"no one will give me more credit than what he sees in me or hears from me"

#### 2 Corinthians 12:7

##### because of the surpassing greatness of the revelations

"because those revelations were so much greater than anything anyone else had ever seen"

##### a thorn in the flesh was given to me

"God gave me a thorn in the flesh" or "God allowed me to have a thorn in the flesh"

##### a thorn in the flesh

"an affliction" or "a physical problem". Here Paul's physical problems are compared to a thorn piercing his flesh.

##### a messenger from Satan

"a servant of Satan"

#### 2 Corinthians 12:8

##### Three times

Paul put these words at the beginning of the sentence to emphasize that he had prayed many times about his "thorn" (2 Corinthians 12:7).

##### Lord about this

"Lord about this thorn in the flesh," or "Lord about this affliction"

#### 2 Corinthians 12:9

##### My grace is enough for you

"I will be kind to you, and that is all you need"

##### for power is made perfect in weakness

"for my power works best when you are weak"

##### the power of Christ might reside on me

"people might see that I have the power of Christ" or "I might truly have the power of Christ". Paul speaks of Christ's power as if it were a tent built over him.

#### 2 Corinthians 12:10

##### I am content for Christ's sake in weaknesses ... situations

"I am content in weakness ... situations if these things come because I belong to Christ" or "I am content in weakness ... if these things cause more people to know Christ."

##### in weaknesses

"when I am weak"

##### in insults

"when people try to make me angry by saying that I am a bad person"

##### in troubles

"when I am suffering"

##### distressing situations

"when there is trouble"

##### For whenever I am weak, then I am strong

Paul is saying that when he is no longer strong enough to do what needs to be done, Christ, who is more powerful than Paul could ever be, will work through Paul to do what needs to be done.

#### 2 Corinthians 12:11

##### I have become a fool

"I am acting like a fool". Paul reminds the believers in Corinth of the true signs of an apostle and of his humility while before them.

##### You forced me to this

"You forced me to talk this way"

##### I should have been praised by you

"it is praise that you should have given me"

##### praised

"commended"

##### For I was not at all inferior to

"For I am just as good as"

##### super-apostles

"those teachers whom some think are better than anyone else" (2 Corinthians 11:5).

#### 2 Corinthians 12:12

##### The true signs of an apostle were performed

"It is the true signs of an apostle that I performed"

##### signs ... signs

Use the same word both times.

##### with all perseverance

"with as much perseverance as we had" or "with great perseverance"

##### signs and wonders and miracles

These are the "true signs of an apostle" that Paul performed "with complete perseverance."

#### 2 Corinthians 12:13

##### how were you less important than the rest of the churches, except that ... you?

"I treated you the same way I treated all the other churches, except that ... you."

##### I was not a burden to you

"I did not ask you for money or other things I needed"

##### Forgive me for this wrong!

not asking them for money and other things he needed

#### 2 Corinthians 12:14

##### I want you

"What I want is that you love and accept me"

#### 2 Corinthians 12:15

##### I will most gladly spend and be spent

"I will gladly do any work and gladly allow God to permit people to kill me"

##### for your souls

"for you" or "so you will live well"

##### If I love you more, am I to be loved less?

"If I love you so much, you should not love me so little." or "If I love you so much, you should love me more than you do."

##### more

It is not clear what it is that Paul's love is "more" than. It is probably best to use "very much" or "so much" that can be compared to "so little" later in the sentence.

#### 2 Corinthians 12:16

##### But since I am so crafty, I am the one who caught you by deceit

"But others think I was deceptive and used trickery"

#### 2 Corinthians 12:17

##### Did I take advantage of you by anyone I sent to you?

"No one that I sent to you has taken advantage of you!"

#### 2 Corinthians 12:18

##### Did Titus take advantage of you?

"Titus did not take advantage of you."

##### Did we not walk in the same spirit?

"We all lived in obedience to the same Spirit"

##### Did we not walk in the same steps?

"We all did things the same way."

#### 2 Corinthians 12:19

##### Do you think all of this time we have been defending ourselves to you?

"Perhaps you think that all of this time we have been defending ourselves to you."

##### in the sight of God

"before God" or "with God as witness" or "in the presence of God"

##### and all for your strengthening

"and we do all this in order to strengthen you" or "and we do all this so that you may know God and obey him better"

#### 2 Corinthians 12:20

##### I may not find you as I wish

"I may not like what I find" or "I may not like what I see you doing"

##### you might not find me as you wish

"you might not like what you see in me"

##### there may be quarreling, jealousy, outbursts of anger, rivalries, slander, gossip, arrogance, and disorder

"some of you will be arguing with us, jealous of us, suddenly becoming very angry with us, trying to take our places as leaders, speaking falsely about us, telling about our private lives, being proud, and opposing us as we try to lead you" or "some of you will be arguing with each other, jealous of each other, suddenly becoming very angry with each other, quarreling with each other over who will be the leader, speaking falsely about each other, telling about each other's private lives, being proud, and opposing those whom God has chosen to lead you"

#### 2 Corinthians 12:21

##### I might be grieved by many of those who have sinned before now and who did not repent ... that they practiced

"I will grieve because many of you have sinned before now and have not repented ... that you have practiced"

##### did not repent of the uncleanness and sexual immorality and lustful indulgence

"did not stop committing the sexual sins that they practiced"

##### of the uncleanness

"of secretly thinking about and desiring things that do not please God"

##### of the ... sexual immorality

"of doing sexually immoral deeds"

##### of the ... lustful indulgence

"of ... doing things that satisfy immoral sexual desire"

Chapter 13

1This is the third time that I am coming to you. "Every matter must be established by the mouth of two or three witnesses."2I have already said to those who sinned before and to all the rest when I was there the second time, and I say it again: When I come again, I will not spare them.3I tell you this because you are looking for proof that Christ is speaking through me. He is not weak toward you. Rather, he is powerful in you.4For he was crucified in weakness, but he is alive by God's power. For we also are weak in him, but we will live with him by the power of God among you.5Examine yourselves, to see if you are in the faith. Test yourselves. Do you not realize this about yourselves, that Jesus Christ is in you?—unless, of course, you have failed the test.6And I hope that you will recognize that we have not failed the test.7Now we pray to God that you may not do any wrong. I do not pray this so that we may appear to have passed the test. Rather, I pray that you may do what is proper, although we may seem to have failed the test.8For we are not able to do anything against the truth, but only for the truth.9For we rejoice when we are weak and you are strong. We also pray that you may be made complete.10I write these things while I am away from you so, that when I am with you I do not have to deal harshly with you in the use of my authority—which the Lord gave to me so that I may build you up, and not tear you down.

11Finally, brothers, rejoice! Work for restoration, be encouraged, think alike, live in peace. And the God of love and peace will be with you.12Greet each other with a holy kiss. All God's holy people greet you. [1](#footnote-target-1)

13The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, the love of God, and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with all of you. [2](#footnote-target-2)

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some copies number this sentence as verse 13. [2](#footnote-caller-2)Some translations number this sentence as verse 14.

#### 2 Corinthians 13:1

##### Every matter must be established by the mouth of two or three witnesses

"Believe that someone has done something wrong only after two or three people have given the same testimony"

#### 2 Corinthians 13:4

##### he was crucified

"they crucified him"

##### but we will live with him by the power of God

God gives us the power and ability to live life in and with him.

#### 2 Corinthians 13:5

##### Jesus Christ is in you

Possible meanings are 1) living inside each individual or 2) "among you,". The most important member of the group.

##### you have failed the test

"you have examined and tested yourself and found that you are not in the faith and Jesus Christ is not in you"

#### 2 Corinthians 13:6

##### I hope that

"I trust that"

#### 2 Corinthians 13:7

##### that you may not do any wrong

"that you will not sin at all" or "that you will not refuse to listen to us when we correct you."

##### to have passed the test

"to be great teachers and live the truth."

#### 2 Corinthians 13:8

##### we are not able to do anything against the truth

"we are not able to keep people from learning the truth"

##### truth, but only for the truth

"truth; everything we do will enable people to learn the truth"

#### 2 Corinthians 13:9

##### may be made complete

"may become spiritually mature"

#### 2 Corinthians 13:10

##### so that I may build you up, and not tear you down

"to help you become better followers of Christ and not to discourage you so you stop following him"

#### 2 Corinthians 13:11

##### Work for restoration

"Work toward maturity"

##### think alike

"agree with one another" or "live in harmony with one another"

#### 2 Corinthians 13:12

##### with a holy kiss

"with Christian love"

##### God's holy people

"those whom God has set apart for himself"

## Galatians

Chapter 1

1Paul, an apostle—not an apostle from men nor by human agency, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father, who raised him from the dead—2and all the brothers with me, to the churches of Galatia:

3Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ,4who gave himself for our sins so that he might deliver us from this present evil age, according to the will of our God and Father:5to him be the glory forever and ever. Amen.

6I am amazed that you are turning away so quickly from him who called you by the grace of Christ. I am amazed that you are turning to a different gospel,7not that there is another gospel, but there are some men who cause you trouble and want to distort the gospel of Christ.8But even if we or an angel from heaven should proclaim to you a gospel other than the one we proclaimed to you, let him be cursed.9As we have said before, so now I say again, "If someone proclaims to you a gospel other than the one you received, let him be cursed."10For am I now seeking the favor of men or of God? Am I seeking to please men? If I am still trying to please men, I am not a servant of Christ.

11For I want you to know, brothers, that the gospel I proclaimed is not man's gospel.12I did not receive it from any man, nor was I taught it. Instead, it was by revelation of Jesus Christ to me.13You have heard about my former life in Judaism, how I was persecuting the church of God beyond measure and that I was trying to destroy it.14I advanced in Judaism beyond many of those who were my own age, from out of my own people. That is how extremely zealous I was for the traditions of my fathers.15But when God, who had set me apart from my mother's womb, and who called me through his grace, was pleased16to reveal his Son in me, so that I might preach him among the Gentiles, I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood.17I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. Instead, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus.

18Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to get to know Cephas and I stayed with him fifteen days.19But I saw none of the other apostles except James, the Lord's brother.20In what I write to you, I assure you before God that I am not lying.21Then I went to the regions of Syria and Cilicia.22I was still not known by face to the churches of Judea that are in Christ.23They only heard it being said, "The man who once persecuted us is now proclaiming as good news the faith he once tried to destroy."24So they glorified God because of me.

#### Galatians 1:1

##### General Information:

Paul, an apostle, writes this letter to the churches in the area of Galatia. Unless noted otherwise, all instances of "you" and "your" in this letter refer to the Galatians.

##### who raised him

"who caused him to live again"

#### Galatians 1:2

##### brothers

"brothers and sisters". Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

#### Galatians 1:3

##### God our Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Galatians 1:4

##### for our sins

"to take the punishment we deserved because of our sins"

##### that he might deliver us from this present evil age

"that he might rescue us from the evil powers at work in the world today"

##### our God and Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Galatians 1:6

##### I am amazed

"I am surprised" or "I am shocked."

##### you are turning away so quickly from him

"you are so quickly starting to doubt him". Here "turning away ... from him" means to doubt or to stop trusting God.

##### him who called you

"God, who called you." This means God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to serve him, and to proclaim his message of salvation through Jesus.

##### by the grace of Christ

"because of Christ's grace" or "because of Christ's gracious sacrifice"

##### you are turning to a different gospel

"you are instead starting to believe a different gospel"

#### Galatians 1:7

##### some men

"some people"

#### Galatians 1:8

##### But even if we or an angel from heaven should proclaim ... let him be cursed

"But even if we or an angel from heaven were to preach ... let him be cursed". Paul said this to show how strongly he felt about anyone who might proclaim a gospel other than the one he had proclaimed.

##### But even if we or an angel from heaven should proclaim

The word "even" shows that Paul did not believe that he or an angel from heaven would ever proclaim a different gospel.

##### other than the one

"different from the gospel" or "different from the message"

##### let him be cursed

"let him be condemned" or "God should punish that person forever."

#### Galatians 1:10

##### For am I now seeking the favor of men or of God? Am I seeking to please men?

"I do not seek the favor of men. I seek the favor of God. I am not seeking to please men."

##### If I am still trying to please men, I am not a servant of Christ

"If I were still trying to please men, then I would not be a servant of Christ"

#### Galatians 1:11

##### the gospel I proclaimed to you is not man's gospel

“the gospel I preached is not a gospel that humans invented” or “the gospel I taught did not come from people”

#### Galatians 1:12

##### it was by revelation of Jesus Christ to me

"Jesus Christ himself revealed the gospel to me" or "Jesus Christ showed me the gospel"

#### Galatians 1:13

##### former life

"behavior at one time" or "prior life"

#### Galatians 1:14

##### I advanced in Judaism beyond many

"I practiced Judaism better than many" or "I followed the Jewish religion better than many

##### my fathers

"my ancestors"

#### Galatians 1:15

##### and who called me through his grace

"and who called me to serve him because he is gracious" or "and who called me by means of his grace."

#### Galatians 1:16

##### to reveal his Son in me

"to allow me to know his Son" or "to show the world through me that Jesus is God's Son."

##### his Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### so that I might preach him

"so that I might preach about him" or "so that I might proclaim the good news about God's Son"

##### I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood

"I did not immediately ask people to help me understand the message"

#### Galatians 1:17

##### I did not go up to Jerusalem

"I did not go to Jerusalem." Jerusalem was in a region of high hills.

#### Galatians 1:19

##### I saw none of the other apostles except James

"the only other apostle I saw was James"

#### Galatians 1:20

##### In what I write to you, I assure you before God that I am not lying

"I tell you in God's presence that I am not lying in what I write to you". Paul knows that God hears what he says and will judge him if he does not tell the truth.

#### Galatians 1:22

##### I was still not known by face to the churches of Judea that are in Christ

"The churches of Judea that are in Christ still had not met me" or "The people of the Judean churches in Christ did not know me personally yet"

#### Galatians 1:23

##### They only heard it being said

"They only heard others saying about me"

Chapter 2

1Then after fourteen years I went up again to Jerusalem with Barnabas, taking Titus along with me.2I went up because of a revelation and set before them the gospel that I preach among the Gentiles. I spoke privately to those who seemed to be important, in order to make sure that I was not running—or had not run—in vain.3But not even Titus, who was with me and who was a Greek, was forced to be circumcised.4The false brothers came in secretly to spy on the liberty we have in Christ Jesus. They desired to enslave us,5but we did not yield in submission to them for a moment, so that the truth of the gospel would remain with you.6But those who seemed to be important (whatever they were does not matter to me; God shows no partiality)—those, I say, who seemed important added nothing to me.7On the contrary, they saw that I had been entrusted with the gospel to those who are uncircumcised, just as Peter had been entrusted with the gospel to those who are circumcised.8For God, who worked in Peter for the apostleship to those who are circumcised, also worked in me to the Gentiles.9When James, Cephas, and John, who had a reputation as pillars, recognized the grace that had been given to me, they gave the right hand of fellowship to Barnabas and me. They agreed that we should go to the Gentiles and they should go to the circumcised.10They requested only that we remember the poor, the very thing that I was eager to do.

11But when Cephas came to Antioch, I opposed him to his face because he stood condemned.12Before certain men came from James, Cephas was eating with the Gentiles. But when these men came, he stopped and kept away from the Gentiles. He was afraid of those who were demanding circumcision.13Also the rest of the Jews joined in this hypocrisy. Even Barnabas was led astray with them by their hypocrisy.14But when I saw that their behavior was not following the truth of the gospel, I said to Cephas in front of all of them, "If you are a Jew but are living like a Gentile and not like a Jew, how can you force the Gentiles to live like Jews?"15We ourselves are Jews by birth and not Gentile sinners;16yet we know that no person is justified by the works of the law but through faith in Christ Jesus. So we also have believed in Christ Jesus so that we might be justified by faith in Christ and not by the works of the law. For by the works of the law no flesh will be justified.17But if, while we seek to be justified in Christ, we too were found to be sinners, is Christ then a minister of sin? Absolutely not!18For if I rebuild those things I once destroyed, I prove myself to be a transgressor.19For through the law I died to the law, so that I might live for God. I have been crucified with Christ. [1](#footnote-target-1)20It is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me. The life I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave himself for me.21I do not set aside the grace of God, for if righteousness could be gained through the law, then Christ died for nothing!

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some translations include this sentence with verse 20.

#### Galatians 2:2

##### and set before them the gospel that I preach among the Gentiles

"and told them the gospel that I preach to the Gentiles"

##### I was not running—or had not run—in vain

"I was not working—or had not worked—for nothing" or "my efforts were not useless"

#### Galatians 2:3

##### to be circumcised

"to have someone circumcise him"

#### Galatians 2:4

##### The false brothers came in secretly

"People who pretended to be Christians came among us"

##### to spy on the liberty we have in Christ Jesus

"to secretly watch how we live in freedom because of Christ Jesus"

##### to enslave us

"to make us slaves" or "to make us live like slaves to the law"

#### Galatians 2:5

##### we did not yield in submission to them

"we did not surrender to them"

#### Galatians 2:6

##### added nothing to me

"added nothing to what I teach" or "did not tell me to add anything to what I teach"

#### Galatians 2:7

##### On the contrary

"Instead" or "Rather"

##### I had been entrusted with the gospel to those

"I had been given the responsibility of preaching the gospel to those"

#### Galatians 2:8

##### God, who worked in Peter for the apostleship

"God, who made Peter effective as an apostle"

##### also worked in me to the Gentiles

"also made me effective as an apostle to the Gentiles"

#### Galatians 2:9

##### who had a reputation as pillars

"who were known to be important leaders of the church". Pillars are posts that support a building. Here it refers to important leaders.

##### recognized the grace that had been given to me

"recognized the grace that God had given to me"

##### gave the right hand of fellowship to Barnabas and me

"welcomed Barnabas and me as fellow workers" or "welcomed Barnabas and me with honor". Grasping and shaking the right hand was a symbol of fellowship.

#### Galatians 2:10

##### remember the poor

"remember to help those who are poor"

#### Galatians 2:11

##### I opposed him to his face

"I confronted him in person" or "I challenged his actions in person"

#### Galatians 2:12

##### he stopped

"he stopped eating with them"

##### those who were demanding circumcision

"those who required that men be circumcised”

#### Galatians 2:13

##### the rest of the Jews joined in this hypocrisy

"the rest of the Jews became hypocrites like Peter." When people from the circumcision group came, they pretended that they did not eat with Gentiles.

##### Even Barnabas was led astray with them by their hypocrisy

"Even Barnabas was persuaded to do wrong because of their hypocrisy"

#### Galatians 2:14

##### their behavior was not following the truth of the gospel

"they were not living according to the truth of the gospel"

##### how can you force the Gentiles to live like Jews?

"you are wrong to force the Gentiles to live like Jews." The word "you" refers to Peter.

#### Galatians 2:15

##### not Gentile sinners

"not sinful Gentiles"

#### Galatians 2:16

##### no flesh will be justified

"no person will be justified" or "people will not be justified"

#### Galatians 2:17

##### to be justified in Christ

"to be justified by our union with Christ" or "to be justified by Christ"

##### we too were found to be sinners

"we see that we too are sinners"

##### Absolutely not!

"Of course, that is not true!"

#### Galatians 2:20

##### the Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Galatians 2:21

##### I do not set aside the grace of God

"I do not reject the grace of God" or "I do not consider God's grace to be worthless"

##### if righteousness could be gained through the law,

"if people could become righteous by obeying the law"

##### then Christ died for nothing

"then Christ would have accomplished nothing by dying"

Chapter 3

1Foolish Galatians! Who has put a spell on you? It was before your eyes that Jesus Christ was publicly displayed as crucified.2This is the only thing I want to learn from you: Did you receive the Spirit by the works of the law or by the hearing of faith?3Are you so foolish? Having begun by the Spirit, are you now going to be perfected by the flesh?4Have you suffered so many things for nothing—if indeed it was for nothing?5Does he who gives the Spirit to you and works miracles among you do so by the works of the law or by the hearing of faith?6Just as Abraham "believed God and it was credited to him as righteousness,"7in the same way, understand, then, that those of faith are the children of Abraham.8The scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the Gentiles by faith, preached the gospel beforehand to Abraham, saying, "In you all the nations will be blessed."9So then, those of faith are blessed along with Abraham, the man of faith.10All who rely on the works of the law are under a curse; and so it is written, "Cursed is everyone who does not abide by all the things written in the book of the law, and do them."11Now it is clear that no one is justified before God by the law, because "the righteous will live by faith."12But the law is not of faith; rather, "The person who does the works of the law must live by them."13Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us—for it is written, "Cursed is everyone who hangs on a tree"—14so that the blessing of Abraham might come to the Gentiles in Christ Jesus, so that by faith we might receive the promise of the Spirit.

15Brothers, let me speak in human terms. Once a man-made contract is established by law, no one can set it aside or add to it.16Now the promises were spoken to Abraham and to his descendant. It does not say, "to descendants," referring to many, but instead to only one, "and to your descendant," who is Christ.17Now what I am saying is this: The law, which came 430 years afterward, does not set aside the covenant previously established by God, to nullify the promise.18For if the inheritance comes by the law, then it no longer comes by promise. But God freely gave it to Abraham by a promise.19What, then, was the purpose of the law? It was added because of transgressions until the descendant of Abraham would come to whom the promise had been made. The law was ordained through angels by the hand of an intermediary.20Now an intermediary implies more than one person. But God is one.21So is the law against the promises of God? Absolutely not! For if a law had been given that could give life, then righteousness would certainly have come by the law.22But the scripture imprisoned everything under sin so that the promise by faith in Jesus Christ might be given to those who believe.

23Now before faith came, we were held captive under the law, imprisoned until faith should be revealed.24So then the law became our guardian until Christ came, so that we might be justified by faith.25But now that faith has come, we are no longer under a guardian.26For you are all sons of God through faith in Christ Jesus.27For as many of you who were baptized into Christ have clothed yourselves with Christ.28There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is neither male nor female, for you are all one in Christ Jesus.29Then if you are Christ's, you are Abraham's descendants, and heirs according to promise.

#### Galatians 3:1

##### Who has put a spell on you?

"You behave as if someone has put a spell on you!"

##### has put a spell on you

"has done magic on you" or "has done witchcraft on you"

##### It was before your eyes that Jesus Christ was publicly displayed as crucified

"You yourselves heard the clear teaching about Jesus being crucified"

#### Galatians 3:2

##### by the works of the law or by the hearing of faith

"by obeying the law or by believing what you heard"

#### Galatians 3:3

##### Are you so foolish?

"Do not be so foolish!"

##### by the flesh

"by yourself" or "by your own effort" or "by your own work"

#### Galatians 3:4

##### Have you suffered so many things for nothing—if indeed it was for nothing?

"You have suffered so many things: Do not let it be for nothing!" or "You suffered so many things from those who opposed your faith in Christ. If you now think that righteousness comes by obeying the law, then your suffering was for nothing!"

##### for nothing

"without benefit to you"

#### Galatians 3:5

##### Does he ... do so by the works of the law or by the hearing of faith?

"He ... does not do it by the works of the law; he does it by the hearing of faith."

##### by the works of the law

"because you obey the law"

##### by the hearing of faith

"because you hear with faith" or "because you believe what you heard"

#### Galatians 3:6

##### it was credited to him as righteousness

"and God counted Abraham’s faith as righteousness” or “and because of that, God called him righteous"

#### Galatians 3:7

##### those of faith

"those who believe"

##### are the children of Abraham

"are Abraham's descendants" or "are considered to be Abraham's true descendants"

#### Galatians 3:8

##### The scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the Gentiles by faith, preached the gospel

"In the scripture, God showed that he would justify the Gentiles by faith, and he presented the gospel"

##### In you

"Because of you" or "Through you." The word "you" refers to Abraham.

#### Galatians 3:9

##### the man of faith

"the man who believed" or "the man who was faithful."

#### Galatians 3:10

##### All who rely on ... the law are under a curse

"Those who rely on ... the law are cursed" or "God will punish those who rely on ... the law"

##### the works of the law

"obeying the law"

#### Galatians 3:11

##### no one is justified before God by the law

"no one is justified before God by obeying the law" or "God does not justify anyone for their obedience to the law"

##### the righteous will live by faith

"righteous people will live by faith"

#### Galatians 3:12

##### must live by them

"must obey them all" or "will be judged by his ability to do what the law demands."

#### Galatians 3:13

##### from the curse of the law

"from being cursed because of the law" or "from being cursed for not obeying the law"

##### by becoming a curse for us

"by being cursed for us"

#### Galatians 3:14

##### so that the blessing of Abraham might come to the Gentiles in Christ Jesus

"so that through Christ Jesus, the blessing that God gave to Abraham might come to the Gentiles"

##### so that by faith we might receive the promise of the Spirit

"so that by believing we might receive the Spirit whom God promised"

#### Galatians 3:15

##### Brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

##### let me speak in human terms

"let me speak of things most people understand"

#### Galatians 3:16

##### to your descendant

The word "your" refers to Abraham.

#### Galatians 3:17

##### The law, which came 430 years afterward, does not set aside the covenant previously established by God

"When God gave the law 430 years later, he did not set aside the covenant that he had previously established"

##### set aside

"cancel"

##### to nullify the promise

"to make the promise worthless" or "to make things as if the promise had never been made"

#### Galatians 3:18

##### For if the inheritance comes by the law, then it no longer comes by promise

"If people could receive the inheritance by obeying the law, then it would no longer be true that people receive the inheritance by believing God's promise"

##### the inheritance

"what God gives to his children"

#### Galatians 3:19

##### What, then, was the purpose of the law?

"You might wonder then what the purpose of the law was. I will tell you."

##### It was added

"God added it" or "God added the law"

##### The law was ordained through angels

"God ordained the law through angels" or "God gave the law through angels"

##### by the hand of an intermediary

"by an intermediary" or "by his representative"

#### Galatians 3:20

##### Now an intermediary implies more than one person

“Now if we say that there was an intermediary, that means that there must have been more than one person.”

##### But God is one

Paul seems to be saying that the promise is superior to the law since God made the promise alone, without an intermediary.

#### Galatians 3:21

##### against the promises

"opposed to the promises" or "in conflict with the promises"

##### if a law had been given that could give life

"if God had given a law that enabled those who kept it to live"

##### righteousness would certainly have come by the law

"people could have become righteous by obeying that law"

#### Galatians 3:22

##### the scripture imprisoned everything under sin

“the scripture says that everyone is controlled by sin”

##### the promise by faith in Jesus Christ

what God promised to those who have faith in Jesus Christ”

#### Galatians 3:23

##### we were held captive under the law, imprisoned

"the law held us captive in prison" or "we were like prisoners, guarded by the law

##### until faith should be revealed

"until God would reveal faith" or "until God would show that he justifies those who trust in Christ"

#### Galatians 3:24

##### guardian

A guardian was someone who watched over a child and enforced the parents’ rules so that the child would obey them.

##### so that we might be justified

"so that God would declare us to be righteous"

#### Galatians 3:27

##### For as many of you who were baptized into Christ

"For all of you who were baptized into Christ"

##### have clothed yourselves with Christ

"have put Christ on you like a garment." or "have become like Christ." or "have become united with Christ.”

#### Galatians 3:28

##### There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is neither male nor female

"God sees no difference between Jew and Greek, slave and free, male and female"

#### Galatians 3:29

##### and heirs according to the promise

"and those who will receive what God has promised" or "and you will receive what God has promised"

Chapter 4

1I am saying that the heir, for whatever time he is a child, is no different from a slave, though he is owner of the entire estate.2But he is under guardians and managers until the date set by his father.3So also, when we were children, we were enslaved to the elemental principles of the world.4But when the fullness of time had come, God sent out his Son, born of a woman, born under the law5so that he might redeem those under the law, so that we might receive adoption as sons.6And because you are sons, God has sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, who cries out, "Abba, Father."7So you are no longer a slave, but a son, and if a son, then you are also an heir through God.

8But at that time, when you did not know God, you were made to be slaves to those who are, by their natural powers, not gods at all.9But now that you have come to know God, or rather that you are known by God, how is it that you are turning back to the weak and worthless elemental principles? Do you want to be enslaved all over again?10You observe days and new moons and seasons and years!11I am afraid for you that somehow my labor with you may have been for nothing.

12I beg you, brothers, become like me, for I also have become like you. You did me no wrong.13But you know that it was because of a disease of the flesh that I proclaimed the gospel to you the first time,14and though my physical condition put you to the test, you did not despise or reject me. Instead, you welcomed me as if I were an angel of God, as if I were Christ Jesus himself.15Where then is your blessing now? For I testify to you that, if it were possible, you would have torn out your own eyes and given them to me.16So then, have I become your enemy because I am telling you the truth?17They are zealous to win you over, but for no good purpose. They want to shut you out so you may be zealous for them.18It is always good to be zealous for a good purpose, and not only when I am present with you.19My little children, again I am suffering the pains of childbirth for you until Christ is formed in you.20I wish I could be present with you now and change my tone, because I am perplexed about you.

21Tell me, you who desire to be under the law, do you not listen to the law?22For it is written that Abraham had two sons, one by the slave girl and one by the free woman.23One was born by the slave girl according to the flesh, but the other was born by the free woman through promise.24These things may be interpreted as an allegory, for these women represent two covenants. One of them is from Mount Sinai and she bears children into slavery. This is Hagar.25Now Hagar represents Mount Sinai in Arabia; and she represents the present Jerusalem, for she is in slavery with her children.26But the Jerusalem that is above is free, and she is our mother.27For it is written,"Rejoice, you barren one who does not give birth;cry out and shout for joy, you who are not suffering the pains of childbirth;because the children of the desolate woman are more numerousthan those of the woman who has a husband."

28But you, brothers, like Isaac, are children of promise.29At that time the one who was born according to the flesh persecuted the one born according to the Spirit. It is the same now.30But what does the scripture say? "Send away the slave girl and her son. For the son of the slave girl will not share in the inheritance with the son of the free woman."31Therefore, brothers, we are not children of a slave girl, but of the free woman.

#### Galatians 4:1

##### no different from

"the same as"

#### Galatians 4:2

##### guardians

people who have legal responsibility for children

##### managers

people whom others trust to control what is valuable, in this case children

#### Galatians 4:3

##### General Information:

The word "we" here refers to all Christians, including the people to whom Paul was writing.

##### when we were children

"when we were like children"

##### we were enslaved to the elemental principles of the world

"we were like slaves to the elemental principles of the world" or "we obeyed the elemental principles of the world as if we were slaves"

##### the elemental principles of the world

These words could refer to 1) the laws or moral principles of the world, or 2) spiritual powers that some people thought control what happens on earth.

#### Galatians 4:4

##### his Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Galatians 4:5

##### redeem

"might buy freedom for" or "might set free"

#### Galatians 4:6

##### you are sons

"you are his children". In Paul's culture, inheritance usually passed to male children. He was not excluding female children here.

##### who cries

The Spirit is the one who cries.

##### Abba

This is the way a young child would address his father in Paul's home language, but not in the language of the Galatian readers. To keep the sense of a foreign language, translate this as a word that sounds as much like "Abba" as your language allows.

#### Galatians 4:7

##### you are also an heir through God

"you also will receive what God promised to give to his children"

#### Galatians 4:8

##### those who are

"those things that are" or "those spirits who are"

#### Galatians 4:9

##### how is it that you are turning back to ... principles?

"why are you paying attention again to ... principles?" or "you should not be concerned again with ... principles."

##### Do you want to be enslaved all over again?

"It seems that you want to be slaves again." or "You behave as though you wanted to be like slaves again."

#### Galatians 4:10

##### You observe days and new moons and seasons and years

"You carefully celebrate days and new moons and seasons and years"

#### Galatians 4:11

##### may have been for nothing

"may have been useless"

#### Galatians 4:12

##### beg

Here this means to ask or urge strongly. In this sentence, it does not mean to ask for food or money.

##### brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

##### You did me no wrong

"You did not do anything wrong to me" or "You treated me well"

#### Galatians 4:13

##### disease of the flesh

"disease of the body"

#### Galatians 4:14

##### and though my physical condition put you to the test

"and though my illness was difficult for you"

##### you did not despise or reject me

"you did not treat me as worthless or turn me away"

#### Galatians 4:17

##### They are zealous to win you over

"They are eager to convince you to join them"

##### to shut you out

"to keep you away from us" or "to make you stop being loyal to us"

##### zealous for them

"eager to do what they want"

#### Galatians 4:19

##### My little children

"My dear friends"

##### I am suffering the pains of childbirth for you until Christ is formed in you

"I am in pain as though I were a woman having to give birth to you, and I will continue to be in pain until Christ truly controls you"

#### Galatians 4:20

##### change my tone

"change the way I sound" or "change the way I am speaking to you" or "speak to you differently"

#### Galatians 4:21

##### Tell me, you who ... law, do you not listen to the law?

"You who ... law, you need to learn what the law really says." or "You who ... law, let me tell you what the law really says."

#### Galatians 4:24

##### These things may be interpreted as an allegory

"This story of the women and their sons is like a picture of what I will tell you now"

##### an allegory

An "allegory" is a story in which the people and things in it represent other things.

##### One of them is from Mount Sinai

"One of the covenants is from Mount Sinai." Mount Sinai is where God gave made a covenant with the people of Israel and gave the the law.

##### she bears children into slavery

"the children she gives birth to become slaves"

#### Galatians 4:25

##### she represents

"she is a picture of"

##### she is in slavery with her children

"she and her children are slaves"

#### Galatians 4:26

##### is free

"is not a slave"

#### Galatians 4:27

##### Rejoice

"Be glad"

##### you barren one

"you infertile woman" or "you childless woman"

#### Galatians 4:28

##### children of promise

"children born because of God's promise"

#### Galatians 4:29

##### the one who was born according to the flesh

"the one who was born by means of human action" or "the one who was born because of what people did"

##### the one born according to the Spirit

"the one who was born because of what the Spirit did"

#### Galatians 4:31

##### we are not children of a slave girl, but of the free woman

"we are not children of a slave girl. We are children of the free woman"

Chapter 5

1For freedom Christ has set us free. Stand firm, therefore, and do not again be subject to a yoke of slavery.

2Look, I, Paul, say to you that if you let yourselves be circumcised, Christ will not benefit you in any way.3I testify again to every man who lets himself be circumcised that he is obligated to obey the whole law.4You are cut off from Christ, you who would be justified by the law; you no longer experience grace.5For through the Spirit, by faith, we eagerly wait for the hope of righteousness.6In Christ Jesus neither circumcision nor uncircumcision has value, but only faith working through love.7You were running well. Who prevented you from obeying the truth?8This persuasion does not come from him who calls you!9A little yeast leavens the whole batch of dough.10I have confidence in the Lord that you will think nothing different. The one who is troubling you will suffer the judgment, whoever he is.11Brothers, if I still proclaim circumcision, why am I still being persecuted? In that case the stumbling block of the cross has been removed.12As for those who are disturbing you, I wish they would cut themselves off!

13For you were called to freedom, brothers. But do not use your freedom as an opportunity for the flesh; rather, through love serve one another.14For the whole law is fulfilled in one word: "You must love your neighbor as yourself."15But if you bite and devour one another, watch out that you are not consumed by one another.

16But I say, walk by the Spirit and you will not carry out the desires of the flesh.17For the desires of the flesh are against the Spirit, and the desires of the Spirit are against the flesh. For these oppose each other, so that you cannot do the things you want.18But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the law.19Now the works of the flesh are evident: sexual immorality, impurity, sensuality,20idolatry, sorcery, hostilities, strife, jealousy, outbursts of anger, rivalry, dissension, divisions,21envy, drunkenness, drunken celebrations, and things like these. I warn you, as I warned you before, that those who practice such things will not inherit the kingdom of God.22But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faith,23gentleness, and self-control; against such things there is no law.24Those who belong to Christ Jesus have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires.

25If we live by the Spirit, let us also walk by the Spirit.26Let us not become boastful, provoking one another, envying one another.

#### Galatians 5:1

##### For freedom Christ has set us free

"Christ has set us free from the old covenant so that we might be free"

##### Stand firm

"be strong" or "Be determined to stay free"

##### do not again be subject to a yoke of slavery

"do not become slaves again" or "do not become slaves again to the law"

#### Galatians 5:2

##### if you let yourselves be circumcised

"if you become circumcised" or "if you get circumcised in order to become righteous"

#### Galatians 5:3

##### he is obligated to obey

"he must obey"

#### Galatians 5:4

##### You are cut off from Christ

"You are no longer united with Christ" or "You have ended your relationship with Christ"

##### you who would be justified by the law

"you who want to become right with God by obeying the law" or "you who want to obey the law so that God will say that you are righteous "

##### you no longer experience grace

"you have rejected God's kindness"

#### Galatians 5:5

##### the hope of righteousness

"the righteousness that we confidently expect to receive"

#### Galatians 5:6

##### neither circumcision nor uncircumcision has value

"neither circumcision nor uncircumcision benefits anyone" or "it does not matter whether a person is circumcised or not"

##### neither ... has value, but only faith working through love

"neither ... has value; rather, God is concerned with our faith in him, which we show by loving others"

#### Galatians 5:7

##### You were running well

"You were making good progress" or "You were following Christ well" or "you were trusting Christ well"

#### Galatians 5:8

##### This persuasion

"This influence" or "Their teaching"

##### him who calls you

"God, the one who invites you to be his people"

#### Galatians 5:9

##### A little yeast leavens the whole batch of dough

In this case, a few people who teach something false can harm an entire Christian community.

#### Galatians 5:10

##### you will think nothing different

"you will not believe anything different from what I am telling you"

##### The one who is troubling you will suffer the judgment

"God will punish the one who is troubling you"

##### is troubling you

"is causing you to be uncertain about what is truth"

#### Galatians 5:11

##### Brothers, if I still proclaim circumcision, why am I still being persecuted?

"Brothers, you can see that I am not proclaiming circumcision because I am still being persecuted."

##### Brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

##### if I still proclaim circumcision

"if I still proclaim that men have to be circumcised"

##### why am I still being persecuted

"why are the Jews still persecuting me?"

##### In that case

"If I were still proclaiming circumcision"

##### the stumbling block of the cross has been removed

"the cross would no longer cause people to stumble" or "the cross would no longer offend people" or "the cross would no longer lead people to reject the truth"

##### the cross

"the message about the cross". Here "the cross" refers to the teaching that Jesus died on the cross and is alive again and that God saves people who believe in Christ.

#### Galatians 5:12

##### would cut themselves off

"would castrate themselves" or "would cut off their male organs"

#### Galatians 5:13

##### you were called to freedom

"Christ has called you to freedom"

##### an opportunity for the flesh

"an opportunity for you to behave according to your sinful nature"

#### Galatians 5:14

##### the whole law is fulfilled in one word

"A person can state the whole law with this one commandment" or "a person obeys the whole law if he obeys this one commandment"

#### Galatians 5:16

##### walk by the Spirit

"conduct your life in the power of the Holy Spirit" or "live your life by depending on the Spirit"

##### you will not carry out the desires of the flesh

"you will not do what your sinful nature desires" or "you will not do the sinful things that you want to do"

#### Galatians 5:18

##### not under the law

"not obligated to obey the law of Moses"

#### Galatians 5:19

##### the works of the flesh

"the things people do because of their sinful nature" or "the things people do because they are sinful"

#### Galatians 5:21

##### will not inherit the kingdom of God

"will not receive the kingdom of God" or “will not belong to the kingdom of God”

#### Galatians 5:22

##### the fruit of the Spirit is love ... faith

"what the Spirit produces is love ... faith" or "the Spirit produces in God's people love ... faith"

#### Galatians 5:24

##### have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires

"have crucified their sinful nature with its passions and desires" or "refuse to live according the sinful nature with its passions and desires, as if they killed them on a cross"

##### the flesh with its passions and desires

"their sinful nature and the things they strongly want to do because of it"

#### Galatians 5:25

##### If we live by the Spirit

"Since God's Spirit has caused us to be alive"

##### walk by the Spirit

"let us also follow the Spirit" or "Let us also allow God's Spirit to guide us"

#### Galatians 5:26

##### let us also walk by the Spirit

"we should also walk by the Spirit." See how you translated "walk by the Spirit" in 5 :16

Chapter 6

1Brothers, if someone is caught in any trespass, you who are spiritual should restore him in a spirit of gentleness. Be concerned about yourself, so you also may not be tempted.2Carry one another's burdens, and so fulfill the law of Christ.3For if anyone thinks he is something when he is nothing, he deceives himself.4Each one should examine his own work, and then his reason to boast will be in himself alone and not in someone else.5For each one will carry his own burden.

6The one who is taught the word must share all good things with the one who teaches.7Do not be deceived. God is not mocked, for whatever a man plants, that he will also reap.8For he who plants seed to his own flesh, from the flesh will reap destruction. The one who plants seed to the Spirit, from the Spirit will reap eternal life.9Let us not become weary in doing good, for at the right time we will reap a harvest, if we do not give up.10So then, as we have the opportunity, let us do good to all people, especially to those who belong to the household of faith.

11See what large letters I write to you with my own hand.12Those who want to make a good impression in the flesh are trying to compel you to be circumcised. They do this only to avoid being persecuted for the cross of Christ.13For not even those who circumcised themselves keep the law, but they want you to be circumcised so that they may boast about your flesh.14But may I never boast except in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, through which the world has been crucified to me, and I to the world.15For neither circumcision counts for anything nor uncircumcision, but what counts is a new creation.16To all who walk according to this standard, peace and mercy be upon them, even upon the Israel of God.

17From now on let no one trouble me, for I carry on my body the marks of Jesus.

18The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit, brothers. Amen.

#### Galatians 6:1

##### Brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

##### if someone

"if anyone among you"

##### if someone is caught in any trespass

"if someone gives in and sins" or "if someone is discovered in an act of sin"

##### you who are spiritual

"those of you who are guided by the Spirit"

##### should restore him

"should correct him" or "should exhort him to return to a correct relationship with God"

##### in a spirit of gentleness

"with an attitude of gentleness" or "gently" or "in a kind way"

##### so you also may not be tempted

"so that nothing will tempt you also to sin"

#### Galatians 6:3

##### he is something

"he is someone important" or "he is better than others"

##### he is nothing

"he is not important" or "he is not better than others"

#### Galatians 6:4

##### his reason to boast

"his reason to be glad" or "his reason to be pleased"

##### will be in himself alone and not in someone else

"will be because of what he has done and not because of how he compares himself to someone else" or "will be because of what he has done and not because he is better than someone else"

#### Galatians 6:5

##### each one will carry his own burden

"each person will be responsible for his own work only" or "each person will be judged by his own work only"

#### Galatians 6:6

##### The one who is taught the word

"The person who hears the message" or "Whoever hears the teaching about God"

#### Galatians 6:7

##### for whatever a man plants, that he will also reap

"for whatever a person plants, that is what he will harvest" or "people reap the same thing as what they plant."

#### Galatians 6:8

##### plants seed to his own flesh

"plants seed to satisfy his sinful nature" or "does the things he wants to do because of his sinful nature"

##### from the flesh will reap destruction

"will be destroyed by his sinful nature"

##### plants seed to the Spirit

"plants seed to please the Spirit" or "does the things God's Spirit wants"

##### from the Spirit will reap eternal life

"will receive eternal life as a reward from God's Spirit"

#### Galatians 6:9

##### Let us not become weary

"Let us not grow tired" or "We must not get discouraged"

##### if we do not give up

"if we do not quit"

#### Galatians 6:10

##### those who belong to the household of faith

"those who are members of God's family through faith in Christ"

#### Galatians 6:12

##### to make a good impression

"to cause others to think well of them" or "to cause others to think that they are good people"

##### in the flesh

"with visible evidence" or "by their own efforts"

##### to compel you to be circumcised

"to force you to be circumcised." See how you translated "circumcised" in 2:3.

##### only to avoid being persecuted for the cross of Christ

"only so that the Jews will not persecute them"

##### for the cross of Christ

"for saying that the cross of Christ alone is what saves people" or "for believing that God forgives people's sins because Christ died on the cross"

#### Galatians 6:13

##### so that they may boast about your flesh

"so that they may be proud about what was done to your body" or "so that they may boast that you were circumcised"

#### Galatians 6:14

##### But may I never boast except in the cross

"I do not ever want to boast in anything other than the cross" or "May I boast only in the cross"

##### the world has been crucified to me

"the world has died to me" or "I think of the things of the world as dead"

##### and I to the world

"and I have been crucified to the world" or "and the people of the world thinks of me as dead"

#### Galatians 6:15

##### neither circumcision counts for anything nor uncircumcision

"neither circumcision nor uncircumcision is important to God" or "it does not matter whether a person is circumcised or not circumcised"

##### what counts is a new creation

"what counts is becoming a new creation" or "what matters is that people becomes new creatures"

#### Galatians 6:16

##### walk according to this standard

"live according to this rule" or "follow this teaching"

##### peace and mercy be upon them, even upon the Israel of God

"may God give peace and mercy to them, who are the Israel of God" or "may God give peace and mercy to them and to the Israel of God."

#### Galatians 6:17

##### for I carry on my body the marks of Jesus

"for the scars on my body show that I serve Jesus.". These marks were scars from people who beat and whipped Paul because they did not like him teaching about Jesus.

#### Galatians 6:18

##### The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit

"May our Lord Jesus Christ be kind to you"

## Ephesians

Chapter 1

1Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus through the will of God, to God's holy people in Ephesus, who are faithful in Christ Jesus: [1](#footnote-target-1)

2Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

3May the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ be praised, who has blessed us with every spiritual blessing in the heavenly places in Christ.4God chose us in him from the foundation of the world, that we may be holy and blameless in his sight in love.5God predestined us [2](#footnote-target-2) for adoption as sons through Jesus Christ, according to the good pleasure of his will.6Our adoption results in the praise of his glorious grace that he has freely given us in the One he loves.7In Jesus Christ we have redemption through his blood and the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of his grace.8He multiplied this grace to us with all wisdom and understanding.9God made known to us the mystery of his will, according to what pleased him, and which he demonstrated in Christ,10with a view to a plan for the fullness of time, to bring all things together—all things in heaven and on earth—under one head, even Christ.11In Christ we were given an inheritance, having been predestined according to the plan of him who works out everything according to the purpose of his will.12God appointed us as heirs so that we, who are the first to hope in Christ, would be for the praise of his glory.13In Christ, you also—when you had heard the word of truth—the gospel of your salvation, believed in him and were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit,14who is the guarantee of our inheritance until the redemption of the possession, to the praise of his glory.

15For this reason, ever since I heard about your faith in the Lord Jesus and your love for all God's holy people,16I have not stopped thanking God for you as I mention you in my prayers.17I pray that the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, will give to you a spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him.18I pray that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened, that you may know the hope to which he has called you and the riches of his glorious inheritance among all God's holy people.19In my prayers I ask that you may know the incomparable greatness of his power toward us who believe, according to the working of the strength of his might.20This is the same power that he worked in Christ when he raised him from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly places.21He seated Christ far above all rule and authority and power and dominion, and every name that is named. Christ will rule, not only in this age, but also in the age to come.22God subjected all things under Christ's feet and gave him to the church as head over all things.23The church is his body, the fullness of him who fills all in all.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies do not have in Ephesus, but this letter may have been circulated throughout this region to several churches, not just to the church in Ephesus. [2](#footnote-caller-2)Some interpreters place the last phrase of Ephesians 1:4. in love , with verse 5 so that it reads, In love God predestined us .

#### Ephesians 1:1

##### Paul, an apostle ... to God's holy people in Ephesus

"I, Paul, an apostle ... write this letter to you, God's holy people Ephesus". Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter and its intended audience. Except where noted, all instances of "you" and "your" refers to the Ephesian believers, as well as all believers and so are plural.

##### who are faithful in Christ Jesus

"In Christ Jesus" expresses the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in Him.

#### Ephesians 1:3

##### May the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ be praised

"Let us praise the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ". These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### who has blessed us

"for God has blessed us"

##### every spiritual blessing

"every blessing coming from the Spirit of God"

##### in the heavenly places

"in the supernatural world." The word "heavenly" refers to the place where God is.

##### in Christ

"through Christ" or "through what Christ has done" or "by uniting us with Christ" or "because we are united with Christ"

#### Ephesians 1:4

##### from the foundation of the world

"from the time he created the world"

##### holy and blameless

Paul uses two similar words to emphasize moral goodness.

#### Ephesians 1:5

##### God predestined us for adoption

"God planned long ago to adopt us". The word "us" refers to Paul, the Ephesian church, and all believers in Christ.

##### God predestined us

"God chose us ahead of time" or "God chose us long ago"

##### for adoption as sons

"to be adopted as his children". Here "adoption" refers to becoming part of God's family and the word "sons" refers to males and females.

##### through Jesus Christ

God brought believers into his family by the work of Jesus Christ.

##### his will

"God's will"

#### Ephesians 1:6

##### he has freely given us in the One he loves

"he has kindly given to us by means of the One he loves". The words "his" and "he" refer to God.

##### the One he loves

"the One he loves, Jesus Christ" or "his Son, whom he loves"

#### Ephesians 1:7

##### riches of his grace

"greatness of God's grace" or "abundance of God's grace"

#### Ephesians 1:8

##### He multiplied this grace to us

"He gave us this great amount of grace" or "He was extremely kind to us"

##### with all wisdom and understanding

"because he has all wisdom and understanding" or "so that we might have great wisdom and understanding"

#### Ephesians 1:9

##### according to what pleased him

"because he wanted to make it known to us" or "which was what he wanted".

##### which he demonstrated in Christ

"he demonstrated this purpose in Christ"

##### in Christ

"by means of Christ"

#### Ephesians 1:10

##### with a view to a plan

"He did this with a view to a plan" or "He did this, thinking about a plan". A new sentence can be started here. If you start a new sentence here, you will need to end 1:9 with a period instead of a comma.

##### for the fullness of time

"for the time that he has appointed"

#### Ephesians 1:11

##### we were given an inheritance, having been predestined according to the plan of him who works

"God gave us an inheritance, having predestined us according to his plan. For he works"

#### Ephesians 1:12

##### so that we, ... Christ, would be for the praise of his glory.

"we, ... Christ, would live in a way that brings glory to God." or "people would praise God because of the glorious grace he showed us who ... Christ." or "so that we, ... Christ, would praise him for his glory as long as we live.". The pronoun "we" refers to Paul and the other Jewish believers, not to the Ephesian believers.

##### the first to hope in Christ

"the first to trust in Christ"

#### Ephesians 1:13

##### the word of truth

"the message about the truth" or "the true message." Paul has been speaking in the previous two verses about himself and the other Jewish believers, but now he begins speaking about the Ephesian believers.

##### were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit

"God has sealed you with the Holy Spirit that he promised". Wax was placed on a letter and stamped with a symbol representing the person who wrote the letter. Paul uses this custom as a picture to show how God has used the Holy Spirit to assure us that we belong to him.

#### Ephesians 1:14

##### the guarantee of our inheritance

"the guarantee that we will receive what God has promised"

##### the redemption of the possession

"God redeems us as his own people" or "we take possession of our inheritance"

#### Ephesians 1:16

##### I have not stopped thanking God

"I continue to thank God". Paul prays for the Ephesian believers and praises God for the power that believers have through Christ.

#### Ephesians 1:18

##### that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened

"that you may gain understanding and be enlightened" or "that God may enlighten your heart" or "that God may enlighten your understanding"

##### may be enlightened

"may be made to see"

##### the hope to which he has called you

"what he has called you to confidently expect" or "what he has called you to confidently wait for"

##### to which he has called you

to which he has invited you

##### the riches of his glorious inheritance among all God's holy people

"the riches of all the glorious things he has promised to give to all God's holy people"

##### all God's holy people

"all those whom he has set apart for himself" or "all those who belong completely to him"

#### Ephesians 1:19

##### the incomparable greatness of his power

God's power is far beyond all other power.

##### toward us who believe

"for us who believe"

##### the working of the strength of his might

"the strength of his might that is at work for us"

##### the strength of his might

"his very great strength"

#### Ephesians 1:20

##### raised him

"made him alive again"

##### when he raised him from the dead

"when he brought him back to life" or "when he caused him to be alive again"

##### seated him at his right hand in the heavenly places

"gave him all authority to rule from heaven" or "seated him in the place of honor and authority beside him". The person who sits "at the right hand" of a king sits at his right side and rules with all the authority of the king.

#### Ephesians 1:21

##### far above all rule and authority and power and dominion

"far above all types of supernatural beings". Rulers, authorities, dominions, and powers are different terms for the ranks of supernatural beings, both angelic and demonic.

##### every name that is named

"every name that man gives" or "every name that God gives"

##### name

Possible meanings are 1) title or 2) position of authority.

##### in this age

"at this time"

##### in the age to come

"in the future"

#### Ephesians 1:22

##### subjected all things under Christ's feet

"put all things under Christ's power" or "made all things subject to Christ"

##### head over all things

"ruler over all things"

#### Ephesians 1:23

##### The church is his body

"It is as though the church is his body" or "The church is like a body". Just as with a human body, the head (verse 22) rules all things pertaining to its body, so Christ is the head of the church body.

##### his body, the fullness of him who fills all in all

Possible meanings are 1) the body is the fullness of Christ. This means Christ fills or gives to the church everything that he has to give or 2) "the fullness" refers back to "him," that is, Christ in 1:22, and "him" in 1:23 refers to God the Father. This means the full deity of the Father dwells within Christ or 3) the body is the completion of Christ. This means that Christ as the "head" is completed by the church, which is "his body,".

Chapter 2

1And as for you, you were dead in your trespasses and sins,2in which you once walked, according to the ways of this world. You were living according to the ruler of the authorities of the air, the spirit that is working in the sons of disobedience.3Once we all lived among these people, fulfilling the evil desires of our flesh, and carrying out the desires of the flesh and of the mind. We were by nature children of wrath, like the rest of humanity.4But God is rich in mercy because of his great love with which he loved us.5While we were dead in trespasses, he made us alive together in Christ—by grace you have been saved.6God raised us up together with Christ, and God made us sit together in the heavenly places in Christ Jesus,7so that in the ages to come he might show to us the immeasurably great riches of his grace expressed in his kindness toward us in Christ Jesus.8For by grace you have been saved through faith, and this did not come from you; it is the gift of God,9not from works, so that no one may boast.10For we are God's workmanship, created in Christ Jesus to do good deeds that God planned long ago for us, so that we would walk in them.

11Therefore, remember that once you were Gentiles in the flesh. You are called "uncircumcision" by what is called the "circumcision" in the flesh made by human hands.12For at that time you were separated from Christ, foreigners to citizenship in Israel, strangers to the covenants of the promise, having no hope and without God in the world.13But now in Christ Jesus you who once were far away from God have been brought near by the blood of Christ.14For he himself is our peace, because he made us both one. By his flesh he broke down the dividing wall of hostility.15He set aside the law with its commands and ordinances so that he might create in himself one new man out of two, so making peace.16Christ reconciles both peoples into one body to God through the cross, putting to death the hostility.17Jesus came and proclaimed the good news of peace to you who were far away and peace to those who were near.18For through Jesus we both have access in one Spirit to the Father.19So then, now you Gentiles are no longer foreigners and strangers. Rather, you are fellow citizens with God's holy people and members of the household of God.20You have been built on the foundation of the apostles and prophets, and Christ Jesus himself is the cornerstone.21In him the whole building fits together and grows as a holy temple in the Lord.22It is in him that you also are being built together as a dwelling place for God in the Spirit.

#### Ephesians 2:1

##### you were dead in your trespasses and sins

This speaks of sinful people being unable to obey God as if they were people who were physically dead.

##### in your trespasses and sins

"because you had trespassed and sinned"

#### Ephesians 2:2

##### in which you once walked

"because you used to live that way". To say that they "walked in" their trespasses and sins is to say that they often trespassed and sinned.

##### according to the ways of this world

"according to the values of people living in the world" or "following the principles of this present world"

##### according to the ruler of the authorities of the air

"doing what the ruler of the authorities of the air wants them to do." These words expand upon "according to the age of this world." The "ruler of the authorities of the air" is the devil or Satan.

##### the spirit that is working in the sons of disobedience

This is another way of speaking of the devil or Satan.

#### Ephesians 2:3

##### the desires of the flesh and of the mind

The words "flesh" and "mind" represent the entire person.

##### flesh

"body"

##### children of wrath

people with whom God is angry

#### Ephesians 2:4

##### God is rich in mercy

"God is abundant in mercy" or "God is very kind to us"

##### because of his great love with which he loved us

"because he loves us very much"

#### Ephesians 2:5

##### by grace you have been saved

"God saved us because of his great kindness toward us"

#### Ephesians 2:6

##### God raised us up together with Christ

"God has given us new life because we belong to Christ" or "We can be sure that God will give us life as he has caused Christ to come alive again"

##### in the heavenly places

"in the supernatural world." The word "heavenly" refers to the place where God is.

##### in Christ Jesus

"In Christ Jesus" expresses the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

#### Ephesians 2:7

##### in the ages to come

"in the future"

#### Ephesians 2:8

##### For by grace you have been saved through faith

"God saved you by grace because of your faith in him". God's kindness to us is the reason he made it possible for us to be saved from judgment if we simply trust in Jesus for forgiveness of our sins.

##### this did not

The word "this" refers back to "by grace you have been saved by faith."

#### Ephesians 2:9

##### not from works, so that no one may boast

"Salvation does not come from works, so that no one may boast" or "God does not save a person because of what that person does, so no one can boast and say that he earned his salvation"

#### Ephesians 2:10

##### we would walk in them

"we would always and continually do those good deeds"

#### Ephesians 2:11

##### Gentiles in the flesh

This refers to people who were not born Jewish. Paul reminds these believers that God has now made Gentiles and Jews into one body through Christ and his cross.

##### uncircumcision

"uncircumcised pagans". Non-Jewish people were not circumcised as babies and thus the Jews considered them people who do not follow any of God's laws.

##### circumcision

"circumcised people". This was another term for Jewish people because all male infants were circumcised.

##### what is called the "circumcision" in the flesh made by human hands

"Jews, who are circumcised by humans" or "Jews, who circumcise the physical body"

##### by what is called

"by what people call" or "by those whom people call"

#### Ephesians 2:12

##### separated from Christ

"not knowing Christ" or "not belonging to Christ"

##### foreigners to citizenship in Israel

"foreigners, not citizens of Israel"

##### strangers to the covenants of the promise

"not belonging to those with whom God made the covenants of the promise". Paul speaks to the Gentile believers as if they had been foreigners, kept out of the land of God's covenant and promise.

##### having no hope

"not hoping in God" or "not confidently waiting for eternal life with God". They had no reason to confidently expect anything good to happen. Specifically, they had no hope that God would save them and give them eternal life with him.

#### Ephesians 2:13

##### you who once were far away from God have been brought near by the blood of Christ

"you who once did not belong to God now belong to God because of the blood of Christ". Not belonging to God due to sin is spoken of as being far away from God. Belonging to God because of the blood of Christ is spoken of as being brought near to God.

##### by the blood of Christ

"when Christ died for us"

#### Ephesians 2:14

##### he himself is our peace

"he is the one who enables us to live in peace with each other". This emphasizes that Jesus alone is the reason that Jews and Gentiles can worship God as one peaceful community.

##### he made us both one

"he made the Jews and Gentiles one"

##### By his flesh

"By the death of his body on the cross" or "By dying on the cross" or "By his actions as a mortal man"

##### he broke down the dividing wall of hostility

"he made it possible for Jews and Gentiles not to be hostile to each other anymore". Paul is speaking of Jews and Gentiles being hostile to each other and unable to worship God together as if they were on different sides of a wall. Because Jesus died, Gentiles as well as Jews can now worship God.

#### Ephesians 2:15

##### He set aside the law with its commands and ordinances

Jesus's blood satisfied the law of Moses so that both the Jews and Gentiles can live at peace in God.

##### one new man

a single new people, the people of redeemed humanity.

##### in himself

It is union with Christ that makes reconciliation possible between Jews and Gentiles.

#### Ephesians 2:16

##### Christ reconciles both peoples

"Christ brings the Jews and the Gentiles together in peace"

##### through the cross

"by means of Christ's death on the cross"

##### putting to death the hostility

"stopping them from hating one another". By dying on the cross Jesus eliminated the reason for Jews and Gentiles to be hostile toward each other. Neither are now required to live according to the law of Moses.

#### Ephesians 2:17

##### proclaimed the good news of peace

"proclaimed the good news that tells that God and people can be at peace with each other" or "proclaimed the good news that is itself the way that people can be at peace with each other". Paul tells the Ephesian believers that present Gentile believers are also now made one with the Jewish apostles and prophets; they are a temple for God in the Spirit.

##### you who were far away

This refers to the Gentiles or non-Jews.

##### those who were near

This refers to the Jews.

#### Ephesians 2:18

##### For through Jesus we both have access

Here "we both" refers the believing Jews (including Paul) and the believing non-Jews.

##### in one Spirit

All believers, both Jewish and Gentile, are given the right to enter into the presence of God the Father by the same Holy Spirit.

#### Ephesians 2:19

##### foreigners and strangers ... fellow citizens ... and members of the household

Paul is contrasting "foreigners and strangers" with "fellow citizens ... and members." The word "citizens" refers to having political rights, so here "foreigners" probably refers to people living in a country not their own and having no political rights. The word "members" refers to being part of a family.

#### Ephesians 2:20

##### You have been built on the foundation

Paul speaks of God's people as if they were a building. Christ is the cornerstone, the apostles are the foundation, and the believers are the structure.

##### You have been built

"God has built you"

#### Ephesians 2:21

##### the whole building fits together and grows as a holy temple

Paul continues to speak of Christ's family as if it were a building. In the same way a builder fits stones together while building, so Christ is fitting us together.

##### In him ... in the Lord

"In Christ ... in the Lord Jesus". These words express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

#### Ephesians 2:22

##### you also are being built together as a dwelling place for God in the Spirit

This describes how believers are being put together to become a place where God will permanently live through the power of the Holy Spirit.

##### you also are being built together

"God is also building you together"

Chapter 3

1For this reason I, Paul, the prisoner of Christ Jesus for you Gentiles—2I assume that you have heard of the stewardship of the grace of God that was given to me for you.3The mystery was made known to me by revelation, as I have written briefly.4When you read about this, you will be able to understand my insight into this mystery about Christ.5In other generations this mystery was not made known to the sons of men. But now it has been revealed by the Spirit to his holy apostles and prophets.6This hidden truth is that the Gentiles are fellow heirs, and fellow members of the body, and they share the promise in Christ Jesus through the gospel.

7For I became a servant of this gospel by the gift of God's grace given to me through the working of his power.8To me—although I am the least of all God's holy people—this grace was given, to preach to the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ9and to bring to light for everyone the plan—the mystery hidden for ages in God, who created all things.10This plan was made known through the church so the rulers and authorities in the heavenly places would come to know the many-sided nature of the wisdom of God.11This happened according to the eternal plan that he accomplished in Christ Jesus our Lord.12For in Christ we have boldness and access with confidence because of our faith in him.13Therefore, I ask you not to be discouraged because of my tribulations for you, which is your glory.

14For this reason I bend my knees to the Father,15from whom every family in heaven and on earth is named.16I pray that he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with power through his Spirit, who is in your inner person.17I pray that Christ may live in your hearts through faith and that you may be rooted and founded in his love,18in order that you might be able to understand, along with all God's holy people, what is the width, the length, the height, and the depth,19and to know the love of Christ, which goes beyond knowledge, so that you may be filled with all the fullness of God.

20Now to him who is able to do far beyond all that we ask or think, according to his power that works in us,21to him be glory in the church and in Christ Jesus to all generations forever and ever. Amen.

#### Ephesians 3:1

##### For this reason

"Because God has made you Gentiles members of his household". This refers to chapter 2.

##### the prisoner of Christ Jesus

"the prisoner for Christ Jesus" or "the prisoner for preaching about Christ Jesus"

#### Ephesians 3:2

##### the stewardship of the grace of God that was given to me for you

"the responsibility that God gave me to bring his grace to you"

#### Ephesians 3:3

##### The mystery was made known to me by revelation

"I learned about the mystery by revelation" or "God revealed the mystery to me". Paul refers to the church as a "mystery". The role of the church in the plans of God was once not known but God has now revealed it. Part of this mystery involves the Gentiles having equal standing with the Jews in the plans of God.

##### The mystery

"God's secret plan" or "The hidden truth"

##### as I have written briefly

Paul refers to another letter he had written to these people.

#### Ephesians 3:5

##### In other generations this mystery was not made known to the sons of men

"God did not make this truth known to people in the past"

##### But now it has been revealed by the Spirit

"But now the Spirit has made it known"

##### his holy apostles and prophets

"the apostles and prophets whom God set apart to do this work"

#### Ephesians 3:6

##### the Gentiles are fellow heirs ... through the gospel

This is the hidden truth Paul began to explain in the previous verse. The Gentiles who receive Christ also receive the same things as the Jewish believers.

##### fellow members of the body

The church is often referred to as the body of Christ.

##### through the gospel

Possible meanings are 1) because of the gospel the Gentiles are fellow sharers in the promise or 2) because of the gospel the Gentiles are fellow heirs and members of the body and fellow sharers in the promise.

#### Ephesians 3:8

##### unsearchable

unable to be completely known

##### riches of Christ

Paul speaks of the truth about Christ and the blessings he brings as if they were material wealth.

#### Ephesians 3:9

##### the mystery hidden for ages in God, who created all things

"God, who created all things, kept this plan hidden for long ages in the past"

#### Ephesians 3:10

##### This plan was made known through the church

"God made this plan known by means of the church"

##### rulers and authorities

Paul uses these words together to emphasize that every spiritual being will know God's wisdom.

##### in the heavenly places

"in the supernatural world." The word "heavenly" refers to the place where God is.

##### the many-sided nature of the wisdom of God

"the great and complex wisdom of God"

#### Ephesians 3:11

##### according to the eternal plan

"in keeping with the eternal plan"

#### Ephesians 3:12

##### we have boldness

"we are without fear" or "we have courage"

##### access with confidence

"access into God's presence with certainty" or "freedom to enter into God's presence with assurance"

#### Ephesians 3:13

##### for you, which is your glory

"for you. This is for your benefit" or "for you. You should be proud of this". The Christians in Ephesus should be proud of that Paul is suffering in prison.

#### Ephesians 3:14

##### For this reason

"Because God has done all this for you"

##### I bend my knees to the Father

"I bow down in prayer to the Father" or "I humbly pray to the Father". Bowed knees are a picture of the whole person in an attitude of prayer.

#### Ephesians 3:15

##### from whom every family in heaven and on earth is named

"who created and named every family in heaven and on earth"

#### Ephesians 3:16

##### I pray that he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with power

"I pray that God, because he is so great and powerful, would allow you to become strong with his power."

##### would grant

"would cause"

##### in your inner person

"in your heart" or "in your soul"

#### Ephesians 3:17

##### I pray that Christ may live in your hearts through faith and that you may be rooted and founded in his love

This is the second item which Paul prays that God will "grant" the Ephesians. The first is that they would "be strengthened" (Ephesians 3:16).

##### that Christ may live in your hearts through faith

"that Christ may live within you because you trust in him"

##### you may be rooted and founded in his love

"that you will be like a firmly rooted tree and a building built on stone because of his love"

#### Ephesians 3:18

##### that you might be able to understand

This is the first item which Paul says will be the result of the Christians being rooted and grounded in Christ's love. (Ephesians 3:17)

##### all God's holy people

"all believers in Christ"

##### the width, the length, the height, and the depth

"how very wise God is" or "how much Christ loves us"

#### Ephesians 3:19

##### to know the love of Christ, which goes beyond knowledge

This is the second item which Paul says will be the result of the Christians being rooted and grounded in Christ's love. (Ephesians 3:17)

##### that you may be filled with all the fullness of God

This is the third item for which Paul bends his knees and prays (Ephesians 3:14). The first is that they would "be strengthened" (Ephesians 3:16) and the second is that they "can understand" (Ephesians 3:18).

#### Ephesians 3:20

##### General Information:

The words "we" and "us" in this book continue to include Paul and all believers.

##### Now to him who

"Now to God, who". Paul concludes his prayer with a blessing.

##### to do far beyond all that we ask or think

"to do things that are much greater than all that we ask him for or think about"

Chapter 4

1I, therefore, as the prisoner for the Lord, urge you to walk worthily of the calling by which you were called.2I urge you to live with great humility and gentleness and patience, bearing with one another in love.3Do your best to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace.4There is one body and one Spirit, just as also you were called in one hope of your calling.5And there is one Lord, one faith, one baptism,6and one God and Father of all, who is over all and through all and in all.7To each one of us grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ.8It is as scripture says:"When he ascended on high,he led the captives into captivity,and he gave gifts to the people."

9What is the meaning of "he ascended," except that he also descended into the lower regions of the earth?10He who descended is the same person who also ascended far above all the heavens, that he might fill all things.11Christ gave some to be apostles, some as prophets, some as evangelists, and some as pastors and teachers12to equip God's holy people for the work of service, for the building up of the body of Christ,13until we all reach the unity of faith and knowledge of the Son of God, so that we become mature and reach the measure of the fullness of Christ.14Christ builds us up so that we should no longer be children who are tossed back and forth by the waves, carried away by every wind of doctrine and by the trickery of people in their deceitful schemes.15Instead, speaking the truth in love, we are to grow up in every way into him who is the head, that is, Christ.16Christ builds the whole body, and it is joined and held together by every supporting ligament, and when each part works together, that makes the body grow so that it builds itself up in love.

17Therefore, I say and insist on this in the Lord, that you must no longer walk as the Gentiles walk, in the futility of their minds.18They are darkened in their understanding, alienated from the life of God because of the ignorance that is in them, because of the hardness of their hearts.19They have become shameless and have committed themselves to sensuality, and they practice every kind of uncleanness with greed.20But that is not how you learned about Christ.21I assume that you have heard about him, and that you were taught in him, as the truth is in Jesus.22You were taught to put off what belongs to your former manner of life, to put off the old man. It is the old man that is corrupt because of its deceitful desires.23You were taught to be renewed in the spirit of your minds,24and to put on the new man that is created in the image of God—in true righteousness and holiness.

25Therefore, get rid of lies, and let each one of you speak truth with his neighbor, because we are members of one another.26Be angry and do not sin. Do not let the sun go down on your anger.27Do not give an opportunity to the devil.28The one who had been stealing must steal no longer. Instead, he must labor, working at what is good with his hands, so that he may have something to share with those who are in need.29Do not let any harmful talk come out of your mouth. Use only words that are good for the edification of those who need it, so that your words give grace to the hearers.30And do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God, for it is by him that you were sealed for the day of redemption.31Put away all bitterness, rage, anger, quarreling, and insults, along with every kind of evil.32Be kind to each other, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, just as God in Christ forgave you.

#### Ephesians 4:1

##### as the prisoner for the Lord

"as someone who is in prison because of his choice to serve the Lord"

##### walk worthily of the calling

Walking is a common way to express the idea of living one's life.

#### Ephesians 4:2

##### to live with great humility and gentleness and patience

"to always be very humble, gentle, and patient"

#### Ephesians 4:3

##### to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace

"to live peacefully with one another and remain united, as the Spirit made possible". Here Paul speaks of "peace" as if it were a bond that ties people together. Paul considers it very important that the church is united and this is a major chapter theme.

#### Ephesians 4:4

##### one body

The church is often referred to as the body of Christ.

##### one Spirit

"one Holy Spirit"

##### you were called in one hope of your calling

"God invited you to one hope when he invited you" or "God chose you to hope for one thing when he chose you"

##### one hope

"one thing to confidently wait for"

#### Ephesians 4:6

##### Father of all ... over all ... through all ... and in all

The word "all" means "everything."

#### Ephesians 4:7

##### To each one of us grace has been given

"God gave a spiritual gift to each believer" or "a spiritual gift has been given". Spiritual gifts are specific supernatural abilities that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians when they come to believe in Jesus. These spiritual gifts were foundational to developing the church. This is only some of the spiritual gifts.

##### according to the measure of the gift of Christ

"according to the amount that Christ has given us"

#### Ephesians 4:8

##### When he ascended on high

"When he went up to the very high place" (Psalm 68:18)

#### Ephesians 4:9

##### he ascended

"he went up"

##### he also descended

"he also came down"

##### into the lower regions of the earth

"into the lowest place on earth" or "into the lower regions, the earth"

#### Ephesians 4:10

##### that he might fill all things

"so that he might satisfy everywhere in his power"

#### Ephesians 4:12

##### to equip God's holy people

"to prepare the people he has set apart" or "to provide the believers with what they need"

##### for the work of service

"so they can serve others"

##### for the building up of the body of Christ

"improvement" or "strengthening". Paul is speaking of people who grow spiritually as if they were doing exercises to increase the strength of their physical bodies.

##### body of Christ

The "body of Christ" refers to all of the individual members of Christ's Church.

#### Ephesians 4:13

##### reach the unity of faith

"become united together in faith"

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### become mature

"become mature believers"

##### mature

"fully developed" or "grown up"

#### Ephesians 4:14

##### be children

"be like children"

##### tossed back and forth ... carried away by every wind of doctrine

This speaks of a believer who has not become mature and follows wrong teaching as if that believer were a boat that the wind is blowing in different directions on the water.

##### by the trickery of people in their deceitful schemes

"by crafty people who trick believers with clever lies"

#### Ephesians 4:15

##### into him who is the head

Paul uses the human body to describe how Christ causes believers to work together in harmony as the head of a body causes the body parts to work together to grow healthy.

#### Ephesians 4:16

##### by every supporting ligament

A "ligament" is a strong band that connects bones or holds organs in place in the body.

#### Ephesians 4:17

##### Therefore, I say and insist on this in the Lord

"Because what I have just said, I will say something more to strongly encourage you because we all belong to the Lord"

##### that you must no longer walk as the Gentiles walk, in the futility of their minds

"stop living the way the Gentiles live, with their worthless thoughts"

#### Ephesians 4:18

##### They are darkened in their understanding, alienated from the life of God

"They do not understand what is true, and they do not have the life that God gives to people"

##### because of the ignorance that is in them

"because they refuse to learn what is true"

##### because of the hardness of their hearts

"because they are stubborn" or "because they refuse to listen to God"

#### Ephesians 4:19

##### have committed themselves to sensuality

"only want to satisfy their physical desires"

##### they practice every kind of uncleanness with greed

"they are continually practicing every kind of sinful act"

#### Ephesians 4:20

##### But that is not how you learned about Christ

"But what you learned about Christ was not like that"

#### Ephesians 4:21

##### I assume that you have heard ... and that you were taught

Paul knows that the Ephesians have heard and been taught.

##### you were taught in him

"Jesus's people have taught you" or "someone has taught you because you are Jesus's people".

##### as the truth is in Jesus

"as everything about Jesus is true"

#### Ephesians 4:22

##### to put off what belongs to your former manner of life

"to stop living according to your former manner of life"

##### to put off the old man

"to stop living as your former self did". The term "old man" probably refers to the sinful nature with which a person is born. The "new man" is the new nature or new life that God gives a person when they come to believe in Christ.

##### that is corrupt because of its deceitful desires

Paul speaks of the sinful human nature as if it were a dead body falling apart in its grave.

#### Ephesians 4:23

##### to be renewed in the spirit of your minds

"to allow God to change your attitudes and thoughts"

#### Ephesians 4:24

##### in true righteousness and holiness

"truly righteous and holy"

#### Ephesians 4:25

##### get rid of lies

"stop telling lies"

##### we are members of one another

"we are members of God's family"

#### Ephesians 4:26

##### Be angry and do not sin

"You may get angry, but do not sin" or "If you become angry, do not sin"

##### Do not let the sun go down on your anger

"Do not let the sun set while you are still angry with someone"

#### Ephesians 4:27

##### Do not give an opportunity to the devil

"Do not give the devil an opportunity to lead you into sin"

#### Ephesians 4:29

##### harmful talk

This refers to any speech that is cruel or rude.

##### for the edification of those

"for encouraging those" or "for strengthening those"

##### give grace to the hearers

"help those who hear you"

#### Ephesians 4:30

##### do not grieve

"do not distress" or "do not upset"

##### for it is by him that you were sealed for the day of redemption

"for he is the seal that assures you that God will redeem you on the day of redemption" or "for he is the one who assures you that God will redeem you on the day when God will free his people from sin"

#### Ephesians 4:31

##### Put away all bitterness, rage, anger

"You must not allow these things to be part of your life: bitterness, rage, anger"

##### rage

intense anger

#### Ephesians 4:32

##### Be kind

"Instead, be kind"

##### tenderhearted

"gentle and compassionate towards others"

Chapter 5

1Therefore, be imitators of God, as beloved children.2And walk in love, as also Christ loved us and gave himself up for us, a fragrant offering and sacrifice to God.

3But sexual immorality or any kind of uncleanness or of greed must not even be named among you, for these are improper for God's holy people.4Let there be no filthiness, no foolish talk, and no crude jokes—all of which are improper. Instead, there should be thanksgiving.5For you know and are certain that no sexually immoral, impure, or greedy person—that is, an idolater—has any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and God.6Let no one deceive you with empty words, for because of these things the wrath of God is coming upon the sons of disobedience.7Therefore, do not join in with them.8For you were once darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Walk as children of light9(for the fruit of the light consists in all goodness, righteousness, and truth),10and test and approve what is pleasing to the Lord.11Do not associate with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather expose them.12For it is disgraceful even to mention the things they do in secret.13But when anything is exposed by the light, it becomes visible.14For anything that becomes visible is light. Therefore it says,"Awake, you sleeper,and arise from the dead,and Christ will shine on you."

15Look carefully how you walk—not as unwise but as wise.16Redeem the time because the days are evil.17Therefore, do not be foolish, but understand what the will of the Lord is.18And do not get drunk with wine, for that leads to reckless behavior. Instead, be filled with the Holy Spirit,19speaking to each other in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody to the Lord with all your heart,20always giving thanks for everything, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ to God the Father,21being subject to one another in reverence for Christ.

22Wives, submit to your husbands, as to the Lord.23For the husband is the head of the wife as Christ also is the head of the church, himself the Savior of the body.24But as the church is subject to Christ, so also wives to their husbands in everything.25Husbands, love your wives, as Christ loved the church and gave himself up for her26so that he might sanctify her, having cleansed her by the washing of water with the word,27so that he might present the church to himself as glorious, without stain or wrinkle or any such thing, but holy and blameless.28In the same way husbands ought to love their own wives as their own bodies. He who loves his own wife loves himself.29For no one ever hated his own flesh, but nourishes and treats it with care, just as Christ nourishes and treats the church with care,30because we are members of his body.31"For this reason a man will leave his father and mother and will be joined to his wife, and the two will become one flesh."32This hidden truth is great—but I am speaking about Christ and the church.33Nevertheless, each of you also must love his own wife as himself, and the wife must respect her husband.

#### Ephesians 5:1

##### Therefore be imitators of God

"Therefore you should do what God does,"

##### as beloved children

"because you are his children and he loves you dearly"

#### Ephesians 5:2

##### walk in love

"live a life of love"

##### a fragrant offering and sacrifice to God

"like a sweet-smelling offering and sacrifice to God"

#### Ephesians 5:3

##### But sexual immorality or any kind ... must not even be named among you

"Do not do anything that would let anyone think that you are are guilty of sexual immorality or any sinful act or greed"

#### Ephesians 5:4

##### Instead there should be thanksgiving

"Instead you should thank God"

#### Ephesians 5:6

##### empty words

words that have no truth to them

#### Ephesians 5:8

##### For you were once darkness

Just as one cannot see in the dark, so people who love to sin lack spiritual understanding.

##### but now you are light in the Lord

Just as one can see in the light, so people whom God has saved understand how to please God.

##### Walk as children of light

"Live as people who understand what the Lord wants them to do"

#### Ephesians 5:9

##### the fruit of the light consists in all goodness, righteousness, and truth

"the result of living in the light is good work, right living, and truthful behavior"

#### Ephesians 5:11

##### Do not associate with the unfruitful works of darkness

"Do not do useless, sinful things with unbelievers". In this chapter Paul teaches how God's people should live. He uses the image of darkness to represent sin and the image of light to represent righteousness.

##### unfruitful works

actions that do nothing good, useful, or profitable. Paul is comparing evil actions to an unhealthy tree that produces nothing good.

##### expose them

"bring them out into the light" or "show and tell people how wrong these actions are"

#### Ephesians 5:13

##### when anything is exposed by the light

"when the light shines on something"

#### Ephesians 5:14

##### anything that becomes visible is light

"people can clearly see everything that comes into the light." The Bible often speaks of God's truth as if it were light that could reveal the character of something.

##### Awake, you sleeper, and arise from the dead

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is addressing unbelievers who need to wake up from being dead spiritually just as a person who has died must come alive again in order to respond, or 2) Paul is addressing the Ephesian believers and using death as a metaphor for their spiritual weakness. (Isaiah 26:19, 51:17 and 52:1)

##### the dead

This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To arise from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

##### you sleeper ... shine on you

These instances of "you" refer to the "sleeper" and are singular.

##### Christ will shine on you

Christ will enable an unbeliever to understand how evil his deeds are and how Christ will forgive him and give him new life, just as light shows what is being hid by darkness.

#### Ephesians 5:15

##### Look carefully how you walk—not as unwise but as wise

"Therefore you must be careful to live as a wise person rather than a foolish person"

#### Ephesians 5:16

##### Redeem the time

"Use time wisely" or "Put time to its best use"

##### because the days are evil

"because the people around you are doing all kinds of evil things"

#### Ephesians 5:18

##### And do not get drunk with wine

"You should not get drunk from drinking wine"

##### Instead, be filled with the Holy Spirit

"Instead, you should be controlled with the Holy Spirit"

#### Ephesians 5:19

##### psalms and hymns and spiritual songs

Possible meanings are 1) "all sorts of songs to praise God" or 2) Paul is listing specific forms of music.

##### psalms

These are probably songs from the Old Testament book of Psalms that Christians sang.

##### hymns

These are songs of praise and worship that may have been written specifically for Christians to sing.

##### spiritual songs

Possible meaning is that these are songs that the Holy Spirit inspires a person to sing right at that moment.

##### with all your heart

"enthusiastically"

#### Ephesians 5:20

##### in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

"as people who belong to our Lord Jesus Christ"

#### Ephesians 5:23

##### the head of the wife ... the head of the church

The word "head" represents the leader. Scholars are divided over how to understand this passage in its historical and cultural context. Some scholars believe men and women are perfectly equal in all things. Other scholars believe God created men and women to serve in distinctly different roles in marriage and the church. Translators should be careful not to let how they understand this issue affect how they translate this passage.

#### Ephesians 5:24

##### Christ, so also wives to their husbands

"Christ. In the same way, wives also must be subject to their husbands"

#### Ephesians 5:25

##### love your wives

"unselfishly serve your wives"

##### gave himself up

"allowed people to kill him"

##### for her

"for us"

#### Ephesians 5:26

##### sanctify her ... cleansed her

"sanctified us ... cleansed us"

##### having cleansed her by the washing of water with the word

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is referring to God making Christ's people clean by God's word and through water baptism in Christ or 2) Paul speaks of God making us spiritually clean from our sins by the message as if God were making our bodies clean by washing them with water.

#### Ephesians 5:27

##### without stain or wrinkle

Paul speaks of the church as though it were a garment that is clean and in good condition and to emphasize the church's purity.

##### holy and blameless

The word "blameless" means basically the same thing as "holy."

#### Ephesians 5:28

##### as their own bodies

"as husbands love their own bodies"

#### Ephesians 5:29

##### his own flesh

"his own body"

##### but nourishes

"but feeds"

#### Ephesians 5:30

##### we are members of his body

Here Paul speaks of the close union of believers with Christ as if they were part of his own body, for which he would naturally care.

#### Ephesians 5:31

##### For this reason

The words "his" and "himself" refer to a male believer who marries. (Genesis 2:24)

Chapter 6

1Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is proper.2"Honor your father and mother" (which is the first commandment with promise),3"so that it may be well with you and you may live long on the earth."4Fathers, do not provoke your children to anger. Instead, raise them in the discipline and instruction of the Lord.

5Slaves, be obedient to your masters according to the flesh with deep respect and trembling, in the honesty of your heart. Be obedient to them as you would be obedient to Christ.6Be obedient not only when your masters are watching, in order to please them. Instead, be obedient as slaves of Christ, who do the will of God from your heart.7Serve with all your heart, as though you were serving the Lord and not people,8because we know that for whatever good deed each person does, he will receive a reward from the Lord, whether he is slave or free.

9Masters, treat your slaves in the same way. Do not threaten them. You know that he who is both their Master and yours is in heaven, and there is no partiality with him.

10Finally, be strong in the Lord and in the strength of his might.11Put on the whole armor of God, so that you may be able to stand against the scheming plans of the devil.12For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the powers over this present darkness, against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly places.13Therefore put on the whole armor of God, so that you may be able to stand in the evil day, and after you have done everything, to stand firm.14Stand firm then, with the belt of truth buckled around your waist, and having put on the breastplate of righteousness,15and with your feet fitted with the readiness that comes from the gospel of peace.16In all circumstances take up the shield of faith, by which you will be able to put out all the flaming arrows of the evil one.17And take the helmet of salvation and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God.18With every prayer and request, pray at all times in the Spirit. To this end, always be watching with all perseverance as you offer prayers for all God's holy people.19And pray for me, that a message might be given to me when I open my mouth. Pray that I might make known with boldness the hidden truth about the gospel.20It is for the gospel that I am an ambassador who is kept in chains, so that I may declare it boldly, as I ought to speak.

21Tychicus, the beloved brother and faithful servant in the Lord, will make everything known to you, so that you may know how I am doing.22I have sent him to you for this very purpose, so that you may know how we are, and so that he may encourage your hearts.

23Peace be to the brothers, and love with faith from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.24Grace be to all those who love our Lord Jesus Christ with an incorruptible love.

#### Ephesians 6:1

##### Children, obey your parents in the Lord

"Children, as followers of the Lord, obey your parents"

#### Ephesians 6:2

##### Honor your father and mother

Here Paul quotes Moses from Exodus 20:12 and Deuteronomy 5:16. Moses was talking to the people of Israel as though they were one person, so "your" is singular. You may need to translate it as plural.

#### Ephesians 6:4

##### do not provoke your children to anger

"do not cause your children to be angry"

##### raise them in the discipline and instruction of the Lord

"teach them to become adults by making sure that they know and do what the Lord wants them to do"

#### Ephesians 6:5

##### be obedient to

"obey." This is a command. Paul does not write in this chapter about whether slavery is good or bad. Paul teaches about working to please God whether as a slave or as a master. What Paul teaches here about slavery would have been surprising. In his time, masters were not expected to treat their slaves with respect and not threaten them.

##### your masters according to the flesh

"your human masters"

##### deep respect and trembling

The phrase "deep respect and trembling" uses two similar ideas to emphasize the importance of slaves honoring their masters.

##### and trembling

"and fear"

##### in the honesty of your heart

"with sincerity"

#### Ephesians 6:6

##### as slaves of Christ

Serve your earthly master as though your earthly master were Christ himself.

##### from your heart

"with sincerity" or "enthusiastically"

#### Ephesians 6:7

##### Serve with all your heart

"Serve with all of your being" or "Be completely dedicated when you serve"

#### Ephesians 6:9

##### treat your slaves in the same way

"you also must treat your slaves well" or "just as slaves must do good to their masters, you also must do good to your slaves" (Ephesians 6:5).

##### You know that he who is both their Master and yours is in heaven

"You know that Christ is the Master of both slaves and their masters, and that he is in heaven"

##### there is no partiality with him

"he judges everyone the same way"

#### Ephesians 6:10

##### the strength of his might

"his great power."

#### Ephesians 6:11

##### Put on the whole armor of God, so ... to stand against the scheming plans of the devil

Christians should use all the resources God gives to stand firmly against the devil just as a soldier puts on armor to protect himself from enemy attacks.

##### the scheming plans

"the tricky plans"

#### Ephesians 6:12

##### flesh and blood

This expression refers to people, not spirits who do not have human bodies.

##### against the powers over this present darkness

"against the powerful spiritual beings that rule over people during this present evil time"

#### Ephesians 6:13

##### so that you may be able to stand ... to stand firm

"so that you may be able to resist evil ... to remain strong"

##### in the evil day

"at the evil time" or "when people do evil deeds"

#### Ephesians 6:14

##### Stand firm

"Resist evil"

##### the belt of truth

Truth holds everything together for a believer just as a belt holds the clothing of a soldier together.

##### truth ... righteousness

We are to know the truth and act in ways that please God.

##### the breastplate of righteousness

Possible meanings are 1) the gift of righteousness covers a believer's heart just as a breastplate protects the chest of a soldier or 2) our living as God wants us gives us a clear conscience that protects our hearts the way a breastplate protects a soldier's chest.

#### Ephesians 6:15

##### and with your feet fitted with the readiness that comes from the gospel of peace

Just as a soldier wears shoes to give him solid footing, the believer must have solid knowledge of the gospel of peace in order to be ready to proclaim it.

#### Ephesians 6:16

##### In all circumstances take up the shield of faith

The believer must use the faith that God gives for protection when the devil attacks just as a soldier uses a shield to protect him from enemy attacks.

##### the flaming arrows of the evil one

The attacks of the devil against a believer are like flaming arrows shot at a soldier by an enemy.

#### Ephesians 6:17

##### take the helmet of salvation

Salvation given by God protects the believer's mind just as a helmet protects the head of a soldier.

##### the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God

The writer speaks of God's instructions to his people as if they were a sword that his people could use to fight an enemy,

#### Ephesians 6:18

##### With every prayer and request, pray at all times in the Spirit

"Pray at all times in the Spirit as you pray and make specific requests"

##### To this end

"For this reason"

##### be watching with all perseverance as you offer prayers for all God's holy people

"be watching, and even when it is difficult, keep praying for all the believers"

#### Ephesians 6:19

##### that a message might be given to me

"that God might give me the word" or "God might give me the message"

##### when I open my mouth. Pray that I might make known with boldness

"when I speak. Pray that I boldly explain"

#### Ephesians 6:20

##### It is for the gospel that I am an ambassador who is kept in chains

"I am now in prison because I am a representative of the gospel"

##### so that I may declare it boldly, as I ought to speak

"so pray that whenever I teach the gospel, I will speak it as boldly as I should"

#### Ephesians 6:21

##### Tychicus

Tychicus was one of several men who served with Paul.

##### the beloved brother

"my beloved brother"

##### make everything known

"will tell you everything about me"

#### Ephesians 6:22

##### so that he may encourage your hearts

"so that he may encourage you"

#### Ephesians 6:23

##### Peace to the brothers

Paul closes his letter to the Ephesian believers with a blessing of peace and grace on all believers who love Christ.

## Philippians

Chapter 1

1Paul and Timothy, servants of Christ Jesus, to all God's holy people in Christ Jesus who are at Philippi, with the overseers and deacons:

2May grace be to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

3I thank my God every time I remember you,4always, in every prayer of mine for all of you, making my prayer with joy5because of your partnership in the gospel from the first day until now.6I am confident of this very thing, that he who began a good work in you will continue to complete it until the day of Christ Jesus.7It is proper for me to feel this way about all of you because I have you in my heart. You all have been my partners in grace both in my imprisonment and in my defense and confirmation of the gospel.8For God is my witness, how I long for all of you with the compassion of Christ Jesus.9So this is my prayer: that your love may abound more and more in knowledge and all understanding10so that you may approve what is excellent, and so you may be sincere and blameless until the day of Christ,11filled with the fruit of righteousness that comes through Jesus Christ to the glory and praise of God.

12Now I want you to know, brothers, that what has happened to me has really served to advance the gospel.13As a result, my chains in Christ came to light throughout the whole palace guard and to everyone else.14Most of the brothers have far more confidence in the Lord because of my chains, and they have courage to fearlessly speak the word.15Some indeed even proclaim Christ out of envy and strife, and also others out of good will.16The latter do it out of love, knowing that I am put here for the defense of the gospel.17But the former proclaim Christ out of selfish ambition, not sincerely. They think they will cause me distress while I am in chains.18What then? Only that in every way—whether from false motives or from true—Christ is proclaimed, and in this I rejoice. Yes, and I will rejoice,19for I know that this will result in my deliverance through your prayers and the help of the Spirit of Jesus Christ.20It is my eager expectation and hope that I will in no way be ashamed, but with all boldness, now as always, Christ will be exalted in my body, whether by life or by death.21For to me to live is Christ and to die is gain.22But if I am to live in the flesh, that means fruitful labor for me. Yet which to choose? I do not know.23For I am hard pressed between the two. My desire is to depart and be with Christ, which is far better,24yet to remain in the flesh is more necessary for your sake.25Being convinced of this, I know that I will remain and continue with you all, for your progress and joy in the faith,26so that in me you may have increasing reasons to boast in Christ Jesus when I come to you again.27Only conduct yourselves in a manner worthy of the gospel of Christ, so that whether I come to see you or am absent, I may hear about you, that you are standing firm in one spirit, with one mind striving together for the faith of the gospel.28Do not be frightened in any respect by those who are your opponents. This is a sign to them of their destruction, but of your salvation—and this from God.29For it has been freely given to you for the sake of Christ not only to believe in him, but also to suffer for his sake,30having the same conflict which you saw in me, and now you hear in me.

#### Philippians 1:1

##### Paul and Timothy, servants of Christ Jesus

Paul and Timothy wrote this letter to the church at Philippi. Because Paul writes later in the letter saying "I," it is generally assumed that he is the author and that Timothy, who is with him, writes as Paul speaks. All instances of "you" and "your" in the letter refer to the believers in the Philippian church and are plural. The word "our" probably refers to all believers in Christ, including Paul, Timothy, and the Philippian believers.

##### all God's holy people in Christ Jesus

"all God's people in Christ Jesus" or "all those who belong to God because they are united with Christ"

##### the overseers and deacons

"the leaders of the church"

#### Philippians 1:3

##### every time I remember you

"every time I think of you"

#### Philippians 1:5

##### because of your partnership in the gospel

"because you are helping me proclaim the gospel"

#### Philippians 1:6

##### I am confident

"I am sure"

##### he who began ... you

"God, who began ... you"

#### Philippians 1:7

##### It is proper for me

"It is right for me"

##### I have you in my heart

"I love you very much"

##### have been my partners in grace

"have been partakers of grace with me" or "have shared in grace with me"

#### Philippians 1:8

##### God is my witness,

"God knows" or "God understands"

##### with the compassion of Christ Jesus

"and I love you as Christ Jesus dearly loves us all"

#### Philippians 1:9

##### may abound

"may increase". Paul prays for the believers in Philippi and talks about the joy there is in suffering for the Lord.

##### in knowledge and all understanding

"as you learn and understand more about what pleases God"

#### Philippians 1:10

##### approve

"test and choose"

##### what is excellent

"what is most pleasing to God"

##### sincere and blameless

"completely blameless"

#### Philippians 1:11

##### filled with the fruit of righteousness that comes through Jesus Christ

"habitually doing what is righteous because Jesus Christ enables you"

##### to the glory and praise of God

"Then other people will see how you honor God" or "Then people will praise and give honor to God because of the good things they see you do." These alternate translations would require a new sentence.

#### Philippians 1:12

##### brothers

This means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### what has happened to me

"what I suffered because I was put into prison for preaching about Jesus". Paul says that two things have happened: many people inside and outside the palace have found out why he is in prison, and other Christians are no longer afraid to proclaim the good news.

##### has really served to advance the gospel

"has caused more people to hear the gospel"

#### Philippians 1:13

##### my chains in Christ came to light

"It became known that I am in prison for the sake of Christ"

##### my chains in Christ came to light throughout the whole palace guard and to everyone else

"the palace guards and many other people in Rome know that I am in chains for the sake of Christ"

##### my chains in Christ

"my chains for the sake of Christ" or "my chains because I teach people about Christ"

##### palace guard

This was a group of soldiers that helped protect the Roman emperor.

#### Philippians 1:14

##### Most of the brothers have far more confidence in the Lord

"Most of the brothers in the Lord have far more confidence."

##### fearlessly speak the word

"fearlessly speak God's message"

#### Philippians 1:15

##### Some indeed even proclaim Christ

"Some people preach the good news about Christ"

##### out of envy and strife

"because they do not want people listening to me, and they want to cause trouble"

##### and also others out of good will

"but other people do it because they are kind and they want to help"

#### Philippians 1:16

##### The latter

"Those who proclaim Christ out of good will"

##### I am put here for the defense of the gospel

"God chose me to defend the gospel" or "I am in prison because I defend the gospel."

##### for the defense of the gospel

"to teach everyone that the message of Jesus is true"

#### Philippians 1:17

##### But the former

"But the ones who proclaim Christ out of envy and strife"

##### while I am in chains

"while I am imprisoned" or "while I am in prison"

#### Philippians 1:18

##### What then?

"What then shall I think about this?"

##### Only that in every way—whether from false motives or from true—Christ is proclaimed

"As long as people preach about Christ, it does not matter if they do it for good reasons or for bad reasons"

##### in this I rejoice

"I am happy because people are preaching about Jesus"

##### I will rejoice

"I will celebrate" or "I will be glad"

#### Philippians 1:19

##### this will result in my deliverance

"because people proclaim Christ, God will deliver me"

##### in my deliverance

"in my being brought to a safe place" or "in God bringing me to a safe place"

##### through your prayers and the help of the Spirit of Jesus Christ

"because you are praying and the Spirit of Jesus Christ is helping me"

##### Spirit of Jesus Christ

"Holy Spirit"

#### Philippians 1:20

##### It is my eager expectation and hope

"I eagerly and confidently hope"

##### with all boldness

"because I act with all boldness" or "after I have acted boldly"

##### Christ will be exalted in my body

"I will honor Christ no matter what happens to my body" or "people will praise Christ no matter what I do or what others do to me"

##### whether by life or by death

"whether I live or die" or "if I go on living or if I die"

#### Philippians 1:21

##### For to me

These words indicate that this is Paul's personal experience.

##### to live is Christ

"to go on living is an opportunity to please Christ"

##### to die is gain

Possible meanings for "gain" are 1) Paul's death will help spread the message of the gospel or 2) Paul will be in a better situation.

#### Philippians 1:22

##### But if I am to live in the flesh

"But if I am to remain alive in my body"

##### that means fruitful labor for me

"that means I will be able to do work that produces good results"

##### Yet which to choose?

"But which should I choose?"

#### Philippians 1:23

##### For I am hard pressed between the two

"I am under tension. I do not know if I should choose to live or to die"

##### My desire is to depart and be with Christ

"I would like to die because I would go to be with Christ"

#### Philippians 1:25

##### Being convinced of this

"Since I am sure that it is better for you that I stay alive"

##### I know that I will remain

"I know that I will continue to live"

#### Philippians 1:26

##### so that in me

"so that because of what I do"

#### Philippians 1:27

##### that you are standing firm in one spirit, with one mind striving together for the faith of the gospel

The phrases "standing firm in one spirit" and "with one mind striving together" emphasize the importance of unity.

##### with one mind striving together

"agreeing with one another and working hard together"

##### for the faith of the gospel

"to spread the faith that is based on the gospel" or "to believe and live as the gospel teaches us"

#### Philippians 1:28

##### Do not be frightened in any respect

This is a command to the Philippian believers. If your language has a plural command form, use it here.

##### This is a sign to them of their destruction, but of your salvation—and this from God

"Your courage will show them that God will destroy them. It will also show you that God will save you"

##### and this from God

"and this is from God." Possible meanings are: 1) the believers' courage or 2) the sign or 3) destruction and salvation.

#### Philippians 1:30

##### having the same conflict which you saw in me, and now you hear in me

"suffering in the same way that you saw me suffer, and that you hear I am still suffering"

Chapter 2

1If there is any encouragement in Christ, if there is any comfort provided by love, if there is any fellowship in the Spirit, if there are any tender mercies and compassions,2then make my joy full by being of the same mind, having the same love, being united in spirit, and having one purpose.3Do nothing out of ambition or empty conceit. Instead, with humility consider others better than yourselves.4Let each of you look out not only for his own interests, but also for the interests of others.5Have this mind in yourselves which also was in Christ Jesus,  
  
6who, though he existed in the form of God,did not consider his equality with God as something to hold on to.7Rather, he emptied himself,taking the form of a servant,and he was born in the likeness of men.And being found in the form of a man,8he humbled himself and became obedient to the point of death,even death on a cross!9Therefore also God highly exalted himand gave him the name that is above every name,10so that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow,in heaven and on earth and under the earth,11and every tongue confess that Jesus Christ is Lord,to the glory of God the Father.

12So then, my beloved, as you always obey, not only in my presence but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling.13For it is God who is working in you both to will and to work for his good pleasure.14Do all things without complaining or arguing15so that you may become blameless and pure, children of God without blemish in the middle of a crooked and depraved generation, in which you shine as lights in the world.16Hold on to the word of life so that on the day of Christ I may boast that I did not run in vain or labor in vain.17But even if I am being poured out as an offering on the sacrifice and service of your faith, I am glad and rejoice with you all.18In the same manner, you also should be glad and rejoice with me.

19But I hope in the Lord Jesus to send Timothy to you soon, so that I may also be encouraged when I know the things about you.20For I have no one else like him, who is truly concerned for you.21For they all seek their own interests, not the things of Jesus Christ.22But you know his proven worth, because as a son with his father, so he served with me in the gospel.23So I hope to send him as soon as I see how things will go with me.24But I am confident in the Lord that I myself will also come soon.25But I think it is necessary to send Epaphroditus back to you. He is my brother and fellow worker and fellow soldier, and your messenger and servant for my needs.26For he was very distressed, and he longed to be with you all, because you heard that he was sick.27For indeed he was so sick that he almost died. But God had mercy on him, and not on him only, but also on me, so that I might not have sorrow upon sorrow.28So it is all the more eagerly that I am sending him, so that when you see him again you may rejoice, and I can have less sorrow.29Therefore, welcome him in the Lord with all joy. Honor people like him.30For it was for the work of Christ that he came near death. He risked his life so that he could bring to completion what was lacking in your service to me.

#### Philippians 2:1

##### If there is any encouragement in Christ

"If Christ has encouraged you" or "If you are encouraged because of Christ"

##### if there is any comfort provided by love

"if his love for you has comforted you in any way"

##### if there is any fellowship in the Spirit

"if you have fellowship with the Spirit"

##### if there are any tender mercies and compassions

"if you have experienced many of God's acts of tender mercy and compassion"

#### Philippians 2:2

##### make my joy full

"cause me to rejoice greatly"

#### Philippians 2:3

##### Do nothing out of ambition or empty conceit

"Do not serve yourselves out of selfish ambition or think of yourselves as better than others"

#### Philippians 2:4

##### Let each of you look out not only for his own interests, but also for the interests of others

"Do not care only about what you need and desire, but also about what others need and desire"

#### Philippians 2:5

##### Have this mind in yourselves which also was in Christ Jesus

"Think about one another the way Christ Jesus thought of people"

#### Philippians 2:6

##### he existed in the form of God

"everything that is true of God was true of him"

##### did not consider his equality with God as something to hold on to

"did not think that he had to have the same status as God". Holding onto equality with God represents demanding that he continue to be honored as God is honored. Christ did not do that. Though he did not cease to be God, he ceased to act as God.

#### Philippians 2:7

##### he emptied himself

Paul speaks of Christ as if he were a container in order to say that Christ refused to act with his divine powers during his ministry on earth.

##### he was born in the likeness of men

"he was born a human being"

#### Philippians 2:8

##### became obedient to the point of death

Possible meanings of "to the point of death" are 1) Christ went all the way to death or 2) Christ was obedient even until the time that he died.

##### death, even death on a cross

"death, that is, death on a cross”

#### Philippians 2:9

##### the name that is above every name

"the rank that is above any other rank" or "the honor that is above any other honor"

#### Philippians 2:10

##### at the name of Jesus every knee should bow

"at the name of Jesus everyone will bow to worship him"

##### under the earth

Possible meanings are 1) the place where people go when they die or 2) the place where demons dwell.

#### Philippians 2:11

##### every tongue

"every person" or "every being"

##### to the glory of God the Father

"with the result that they will praise God the Father"

#### Philippians 2:12

##### my beloved

"my dear fellow believers"

##### in my presence

"when I am there with you"

##### in my absence

"when I am not there with you"

##### work out your own salvation

"work in a way that is appropriate because you have been saved" or "work hard to do the good things that show that God has saved you"

##### salvation with fear and trembling

"salvation with deep reverence”

#### Philippians 2:13

##### both to will and to work for his good pleasure

"so that you will want to do what pleases him and will be able to do what pleases him"

#### Philippians 2:15

##### blameless and pure

"completely innocent"

##### in the middle of a crooked and depraved generation

"among very sinful people"

##### in which you shine as lights in the world

"among whom your righteous lives are like lights in the world"

#### Philippians 2:16

##### Hold on to the word of life

"Continue to firmly believe the word of life"

##### the word of life

"the message that brings life" or "the message that shows how to live the way God wants you to"

##### on the day of Christ

"when Christ returns"

##### I did not run in vain or labor in vain

"I did not work so hard for nothing"

##### run

The scriptures often use the image of walking to represent conducting one's life. Running is living life intensely.

#### Philippians 2:17

##### But even if I am being poured out as an offering on the sacrifice and service of your faith, I am glad and rejoice with you all

"But, even if the Romans kill me and it is as if my blood pours out as an offering, I will be glad and rejoice with you all if my death will make your faith and obedience more pleasing to God"

#### Philippians 2:19

##### But I hope in the Lord Jesus to send Timothy to you soon

"But if it is the will of the Lord Jesus, I expect to send Timothy to you soon"

#### Philippians 2:20

##### For I have no one else like him, who

"No one else here loves you as much as he does: he"

#### Philippians 2:21

##### For they all

This refers to a group of people Paul does not feel he can trust to send to Philippi. Paul is expressing his displeasure with those who should have been able to go but Paul does not trust them to fulfill their mission.

#### Philippians 2:22

##### as a son with his father, so he served with me

Fathers and sons love each other and work together. Timothy was not really Paul's son, but he worked with Paul as a son works with his father.

##### in the gospel

"in telling people about the gospel"

#### Philippians 2:23

##### I hope to send him as soon as I see how things will go with me

"I hope to send him immediately after I see how things will go with me"

##### I hope to send him

"I plan to send him" or "I expect to send him"

##### I see how things will go with me

"I find out what happens concerning me" or "I learn what will happen to me"

#### Philippians 2:24

##### I am confident in the Lord that I myself will also come soon

"I am sure, if it is the Lord's will, that I will also come soon"

#### Philippians 2:25

##### Epaphroditus

This is the name of a man sent by the Philippian church to minister to Paul in prison.

##### fellow worker and fellow soldier

"fellow believer who works and struggles along with us". Here Paul is speaking of Epaphroditus as if he were a soldier. He means that Epaphroditus is trained and is dedicated to serving God, no matter how great the hardship he must suffer.

##### your messenger and servant for my needs

"who brings your messages to me and helps me when I am in need"

#### Philippians 2:26

##### he was very distressed, and he longed to be with you all

"he was very worried and wanted to be with you all"

#### Philippians 2:27

##### sorrow upon sorrow

"the sorrow of losing him added to the sorrow I already have from being in prison"

#### Philippians 2:28

##### I can have less sorrow

"I will not be as sad as I have been"

#### Philippians 2:29

##### welcome him

"gladly receive Epaphroditus"

##### in the Lord with all joy

"with the great joy we have because the Lord Jesus loves us"

#### Philippians 2:30

##### he came near death

"he almost died." Paul speaks of dying as if death were a place that people could go to.

##### so that he could bring to completion what was lacking in your service to me

"so that he could complete what you could not do in serving me"

Chapter 3

1Finally, my brothers, rejoice in the Lord. For me to write these same things again to you is no trouble for me, and it keeps you safe.2Watch out for the dogs. Watch out for those evil workers. Watch out for the mutilation.3For it is we who are the circumcision—the ones who worship by the Spirit of God, and take pride in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh.4Even so, I myself could have confidence in the flesh. If anyone thinks he has confidence in the flesh, I could have even more.5I was circumcised on the eighth day, of the people of Israel, of the tribe of Benjamin, a Hebrew of Hebrews; with regard to the law, a Pharisee.6As for zeal, I persecuted the church; as for righteousness under the law, I was blameless.7But whatever things were a profit for me, I have considered them as loss because of Christ.8In fact, now I count all things to be loss because of the surpassing value of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord. For him I have given up all things—and I consider them rubbish—so that I may gain Christ9and be found in him, not having a righteousness of my own from the law, but that which is through faith in Christ—the righteousness from God that is by faith.10So now I want to know him and the power of his resurrection and the fellowship of his sufferings, becoming like him in his death,11so somehow I may experience the resurrection from the dead.12Not that I have already obtained these things, or am already perfect, but I press on to take hold of that for which I was taken hold of by Christ Jesus.13Brothers, I do not think that I myself have yet taken hold of it. But one thing I do: Forgetting what is behind and straining forward to what is ahead,14I press on toward the goal with a view to the prize of the upward call of God in Christ Jesus.15All of us who are mature, let us think this way; and if you think differently about anything, God will also reveal that to you.16Nevertheless, let us live up to what we have already attained.

17Be imitators of me, brothers. Closely watch those who are walking by the example that you have in us.18Many are walking—those about whom I have often told you, and now I am telling you with tears—as enemies of the cross of Christ.19Their end is destruction. For their god is their stomach, and their glory is in their shame. They think about earthly things.20But our citizenship is in heaven, from where we also wait for a Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ.21He will transform our lowly bodies into bodies formed like his glorious body, formed by the might of his power to subject all things to himself.

#### Philippians 3:1

##### Finally, my brothers

"Now moving along, my brothers" or "Concerning other matters, my brothers"

##### brothers

This means fellow Christians, including both men and women, because all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.

##### rejoice in the Lord

"be happy because of all the Lord has done"

##### For me to write these same things again to you is no trouble for me

"It is no trouble for me to write these things again to you"

##### and it keeps you safe

"doing this keeps you safe because these teachings will protect you from those who teach what is not true"

#### Philippians 3:2

##### Watch out for

"Beware of" or "Be on guard against"

##### the dogs ... those evil workers ... the mutilation

These are three different ways of describing the same group of false teachers and Paul is using strong expressions to show how he feel about these Jewish teachers who claim to be Christians.

##### dogs

The word "dogs" was used by the Jews to refer to those who were not Jews. They were considered unclean. Paul speaks of the false teachers as though they were dogs, to insult them. If you have a different animal in your culture that is considered unclean or whose name is used as an insult, you could use this animal instead.

##### the mutilation

"those who mutilate the body". This exaggeration plays on the idea of circumcision. Paul speaks of those who wanted to trim off the foreskin as if they were totally mutilating the body.

#### Philippians 3:3

##### For it is we who are

Paul uses "we" to refer to himself and all true believers in Christ, including the Philippian believers.

##### the circumcision

"the truly circumcised ones" or "truly God's people". Paul continues warning the Philippians against people who say that Christians have to obey the Jewish ceremonial law. Paul uses this phrase to refer to believers in Christ who are not physically circumcised but are spiritually circumcised, which means they have received the Holy Spirit through faith.

##### have no confidence in the flesh

"do not trust in anything about ourselves to make us right with God". To have no confidence in the flesh means to understand that those things cannot make a person right with God.

#### Philippians 3:4

##### Even so, I myself could have confidence in the flesh. If anyone thinks he has confidence in the flesh, I could have even more

"However, I could trust in something about myself to make me right with God. If anyone thinks he can trust in anything about himself, I could trust in myself even more". To have confidence in the flesh means to believe that those things can make a person right with God.

##### I myself

"certainly I"

#### Philippians 3:5

##### I was circumcised

"A priest circumcised me"

##### on the eighth day

"seven days after I was born"

##### a Hebrew of Hebrews

"a Hebrew son with Hebrew parents" or "the purest Hebrew".

##### with regard to the law, a Pharisee

"as a Pharisee, I was committed to obeying all of the law"

#### Philippians 3:6

##### As for zeal, I persecuted the church

"I had so much zeal for God that I attacked Christians" or "Because I wanted so much to honor God, I persecuted the church"

##### as for righteousness under the law, I was blameless

"I was so righteous by obeying the law that I was blameless"

#### Philippians 3:7

##### whatever things were a profit for me

"anything that other Jews praised me for". Paul is referring here to the praise he received for being an eager Pharisee. He speaks of this praise as if he had viewed it in the past as a businessman's profit.

##### profit ... loss

If many people in your culture do not understand formal business terms, you could translate these terms as "things that made my life better" and "things that made my life worse".

##### I have considered them as loss

Paul speaks of that praise as if he were now viewing it as a business loss instead of a profit. In other words, Paul says that all his religious acts of righteousness are worthless before Christ.

#### Philippians 3:8

##### In fact

"Really" or "Truly"

##### now I count

"now that I have trusted in Christ, I count"

##### I count all things to be loss

"I consider everything to be worthless"

##### because of the surpassing value of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord

"because knowing Christ Jesus my Lord is worth so much more"

##### so that I may gain Christ

"so that I may have only Christ"

#### Philippians 3:9

##### be found in him

"be truly united with Christ"

##### not having a righteousness of my own from the law

Paul knows that he cannot become righteous by obeying the law.

##### but that which is through faith in Christ

"but having the righteousness that comes by believing in Christ". The word "that" refers to righteousness. Paul knows that he can become righteous only by believing in Christ.

#### Philippians 3:10

##### the power of his resurrection

"his power that gives us life"

##### the fellowship of his sufferings

"what it is like to suffer as he suffered" or "what it is like to participate in suffering with him"

##### becoming like him in his death

Possible meanings are 1) Paul wants to be like Christ by dying as Christ died or 2) Paul wants his desire to sin to become as dead as Jesus was before he was raised.

#### Philippians 3:11

##### so somehow I may experience the resurrection from the dead

"so that no matter what happens to me now, I will come back to life after I die"

#### Philippians 3:12

##### obtained these things

These include knowing Christ, knowing the power of his resurrection, sharing in Christ's suffering, and being united with Christ in his death and resurrection. Paul urges the believers at Philippi to follow his present example because of heaven and the new bodies that wait for believers. He speaks, knowing that God will allow him to live forever in heaven, as if he were a runner racing for the finish line.

##### or am already perfect

"so I am not yet perfect" or "so I am not yet mature"

##### but I press on

"but I keep trying"

##### to take hold of that for which I was taken hold of by Christ Jesus

"to receive these things for which Jesus claimed me as his own". Receiving spiritual things from Christ is spoken of as if Paul could grasp them with his hands, and Jesus choosing Paul to belong to him is spoken of as if Jesus grasped Paul with his hands.

#### Philippians 3:13

##### I myself have yet taken hold of it

"all these things belong to me yet"

##### Forgetting what is behind and straining forward to what is ahead,

"I do not care what I have done in the past; I only work as hard as I can on what is ahead.". Like a runner in a race is no longer concerned about what is completed but on what is ahead; Paul speaks of setting aside his religious works of righteousness and only focusing on the race of life that Christ has set before him to complete.

#### Philippians 3:14

##### I press on toward the goal with a view to the prize of the upward call of God in Christ Jesus

"I do all I can to be like Christ, like a runner racing to the finish line, so that I may belong to him, and God may call me to himself after I die"

##### the upward call

Possible meanings are that Paul speaks as if God were to call Paul to ascend 1) to heaven as Jesus did or 2) meeting God face to face and receiving eternal life.

#### Philippians 3:15

##### All of us who are mature, let us think this way

"I encourage all of us believers who are strong in the faith to think the same way"

##### God will also reveal that to you

"God will also make it clear to you" or "God will make sure you know it"

#### Philippians 3:16

##### Nevertheless, let us live up to what we have already attained.

"However, let us keep living by the same standard we have achieved."

##### Nevertheless

"No matter what else is true"

#### Philippians 3:17

##### Be imitators of me

"Do what I do" or "Live as I live"

##### those who are walking by the example that you have in us

"those who already are living as we live" or "those who already are doing what we do"

#### Philippians 3:18

##### Many are walking

"Many are conducting their lives"

##### those about whom I have often told you, and now I am telling you with tears

Paul interrupts his main thought with these words that describe the "many." You can move them to the beginning or end of the verse if you need to.

##### I have often told you

"I have told you many times"

##### am telling you with tears

"am telling you with great sadness"

##### as enemies of the cross of Christ

"in a way that shows they are actually against Jesus, who was willing to suffer and die on a cross". Here "the cross of Christ" refers to Christ's suffering and death. The enemies are those who say they believe in Jesus but are not willing to suffer or die like Jesus did.

#### Philippians 3:19

##### Their end is destruction

"Someday God will destroy them."

##### their god is their stomach

"they desire food and other physical pleasures more than they desire to obey God"

##### their glory is in their shame

"they are proud of the things that should cause them shame"

##### They think about earthly things

"All they think about is what will please themselves rather than what will please God"

#### Philippians 3:20

##### our citizenship is in heaven

"we are citizens of heaven" or "our homeland is heaven" or "our true home is heaven." By Paul's use of "our" and "we", he includes himself and the believers in Philippi.

#### Philippians 3:21

##### He will transform our lowly bodies

"He will change our weak, earthly bodies"

##### into bodies formed like his glorious body

"into bodies like his glorious body"

##### body, formed by the might of his power to subject all things to himself

"body. He will change our bodies with the same power he uses to control all things"

Chapter 4

1Therefore, my beloved brothers whom I long for, my joy and crown, in this way stand firm in the Lord, beloved friends.

2I am pleading with Euodia, and I am pleading with Syntyche, be of the same mind in the Lord.3Yes, I ask you, my true companion, to help these women who labored with me in spreading the gospel, along with Clement and the rest of my fellow workers, whose names are in the Book of Life.

4Rejoice in the Lord always. Again I will say, rejoice.5Let your gentleness be known to all people. The Lord is near.6Do not be anxious about anything. Instead, in everything by prayer and earnest appeal with thanksgiving, let your requests be known to God,7and the peace of God, which surpasses all understanding, will guard your hearts and your thoughts in Christ Jesus.

8Finally, brothers, whatever things are true, whatever things are honorable, whatever things are just, whatever things are pure, whatever things are lovely, whatever things are of good report, if there is anything excellent, if there is anything to be praised, think about these things.9The things that you have learned and received and heard and seen in me, do these things, and the God of peace will be with you.

10I greatly rejoice in the Lord because now at last you have renewed your concern for me. You had indeed been concerned for me before, but there was no opportunity for you to help.11I am not saying this because I am in need. For I have learned to be content in all circumstances.12I know what it is to be poor, and I also know what it is to have plenty. In every way and in all things I have learned the secret of how to be well fed or to be hungry, and how to have an abundance or to be in need.13I can do all things through him who strengthens me.14However, you did well to share with me in my difficulties.15You Philippians know that in the beginning of the gospel, when I left Macedonia, no church supported me in the matter of giving and receiving except you alone.16Even when I was in Thessalonica, you sent help for my needs more than once.17It is not that I seek the gift. Instead, I seek the fruit that increases to your credit.18I have received everything in full, and even more. I have been well supplied now that I have received from Epaphroditus the things you sent. They are a sweet-smelling aroma, a sacrifice acceptable and pleasing to God.19My God will meet all your needs according to his riches in glory in Christ Jesus.20Now to our God and Father be the glory forever and ever. Amen.

21Greet all God's holy people in Christ Jesus. The brothers who are with me greet you.22All God's holy people who are here greet you, especially those of Caesar's household.

23The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit. [1](#footnote-target-1)

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient and important Greek copies add Amen , and there are some ancient Greek copies that have that word at the end of every New Testament book. There are also many important and ancient Greek copies that do not have the final Amen .

#### Philippians 4:1

##### Therefore, my beloved brothers whom I long for

"So, my fellow believers whom I love and greatly desire to see"

##### my joy and crown

"You give me joy because you have believed in Jesus, and you are my reward and honor for my work". Paul uses the word "joy" to mean that the Philippian church is the cause of his happiness and the word "crown" means the Philippian church brought honor to Paul before God.

##### in this way stand firm in the Lord, beloved friends

"continue living for the Lord in the way that I have taught you, dear friends"

#### Philippians 4:2

##### I am pleading with Euodia, and I am pleading with Syntyche

"I beg Euodia, and I beg Syntyche". These are women who were believers and helped Paul in the church at Philippi. Apparently these two women disagreed with each other. Paul was encouraging them to agree.

##### be of the same mind in the Lord

"agree with each other because you both believe in the same Lord"

#### Philippians 4:3

##### Yes, I ask you, my true companion

Here "you" refers to the "true fellow worker" and is singular. Paul does not say the name of the person. He calls him that to show he worked with Paul to spread the gospel.

##### along with Clement

Clement was a man who was a believer and worker in the church at Philippi.

##### whose names are in the Book of Life

"whose names God has written in the Book of Life"

#### Philippians 4:4

##### Rejoice in the Lord

"Be happy because of all the Lord has done."

#### Philippians 4:5

##### The Lord is near

Possible meanings are 1) The Lord Jesus is near to the believers in spirit or 2) the day the Lord Jesus will return to the earth is near.

#### Philippians 4:6

##### in everything by prayer and earnest appeal with thanksgiving, let your requests be known to God

"whatever happens to you, ask God for everything you need with prayer and thanks"

#### Philippians 4:7

##### the peace of God

"the peace that God gives"

##### which surpasses all understanding

"which is more than we can understand"

##### will guard your hearts and your thoughts in Christ

"will be like a soldier and guard your emotions and thoughts in Christ"

##### your thoughts

The word translated "thoughts" can also be translated "minds," referring to the part of the person that thinks.

#### Philippians 4:8

##### whatever things are lovely

"whatever things are pleasing"

##### whatever things are of good report

"whatever things people admire" or "whatever things people respect"

##### if there is anything excellent

"if they are morally good"

##### if there is anything to be praised

"and if they are things that people praise"

#### Philippians 4:9

##### that you have learned and received and heard and seen in me

"that I have taught and shown you"

#### Philippians 4:11

##### to be content

"to be satisfied" or "to be happy"

##### in all circumstances

"no matter what my situation is"

#### Philippians 4:12

##### I know what it is to be poor ... to have plenty

Paul knows how to live happily having either no possessions or many possessions.

##### how to be well fed or to be hungry, and how to have an abundance or to be in need

Paul uses these two phrases to emphasize that he has learned how to be content in any situation.

#### Philippians 4:13

##### I can do all things through him who strengthens me

"I can do all things because Christ gives me strength"

#### Philippians 4:14

##### in my difficulties

"when things became difficult"

#### Philippians 4:15

##### the beginning of the gospel

"as I began to preach the gospel"

##### no church supported me in the matter of giving and receiving except you alone

"the only church that supported me in the matter of giving and receiving was you" or "you were the only church that sent me money or helped me"

#### Philippians 4:17

##### It is not that I seek the gift

"My reason for writing this is not that I want you to give me more"

##### I seek the fruit that increases to your credit

"Rather I want God to bless you more because of the good deeds that you do"

#### Philippians 4:18

##### even more

"even more than necessary"

##### They are a sweet-smelling aroma, a sacrifice acceptable and pleasing to God

"I assure you these gifts are very pleasing to God, like an acceptable sacrifice". Paul speaks of the gift from the Philippian church as if it were a sacrifice offered to God on an altar. Paul implies that the church's gift is very pleasing to God, like the sacrifices that the priests burned, which had a smell that pleased God.

#### Philippians 4:19

##### will meet all your needs

This phrase translates the same word that is translated "have been well supplied" in verse 18.

##### according to his riches in glory in Christ Jesus

"from his glorious riches that he gives through Christ Jesus"

#### Philippians 4:21

##### The brothers

This refers to those people who were either ministering with or to Paul.

##### all God's holy people

"every holy person"

#### Philippians 4:22

##### especially those of Caesar's household

"especially the fellow believers who work in the palace of Caesar"

#### Philippians 4:23

##### with your spirit

"with you"

## Colossians

Chapter 1

1Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus through the will of God, and Timothy our brother,

2to God's holy people and faithful brothers in Christ who are at Colossae: May grace be to you, and peace from God our Father. [1](#footnote-target-1)

3We give thanks to God, the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, and we always pray for you.4We have heard of your faith in Christ Jesus and of the love that you have for all God's holy people,5because of the hope reserved for you in heaven, which you heard about in the word of truth, the gospel 6which has come to you. In the same way, this gospel is bearing fruit and is growing in all the world—just as it has been doing among you since the day you heard it and understood the grace of God in truth.7This is the gospel as you learned it from Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, who is a faithful servant of Christ on our behalf. [2](#footnote-target-2)8Epaphras has made known to us your love in the Spirit.

9Because of this love, from the day we heard this we have not stopped praying for you. We pray that you will be filled with the knowledge of his will in all wisdom and spiritual understanding,10so that you will walk in a manner that is worthy of the Lord and that pleases him in every way: by bearing fruit in every good work and growing in the knowledge of God;11by being strengthened with all power, according to his glorious might, so that you may have great endurance and patience; and by joyfully12giving thanks to the Father, who made you able [3](#footnote-target-3) to have a share in the inheritance of God's holy people in light.13He has rescued us from the dominion of darkness and transferred us to the kingdom of his beloved Son,14in whom we have redemption, the forgiveness of sins. [4](#footnote-target-4)15He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation.16For in him all things were created: those in the heavens and those on the earth, the visible and the invisible things. Whether thrones or dominions or governments or authorities, all things were created through him and for him.17He himself is before all things, and in him all things hold together.18He is the head of the body, the church. He is the beginning, the firstborn from among the dead, so he has first place among all things.19For God was pleased to have all his fullness dwell in the Son,20and through the Son to reconcile all things to himself, having made peace through the blood of his cross, whether things on earth or things in heaven.21At one time you also were alienated and hostile in mind and in evil deeds.22But now he has reconciled you by his physical body through death to present you holy, blameless, and above accusation before him,23if indeed you continue in the faith, established and firm, not moved away from the hope of the gospel that you heard, which was proclaimed to every person created under heaven. This is the gospel of which I, Paul, became a servant.

24Now I rejoice in my sufferings for you, and I fill up in my flesh what is lacking of the afflictions of Christ for the sake of his body, which is the church.25It is of this church that I am a servant, according to the stewardship from God that was given to me for you, to fulfill the word of God.26This is the mystery that was hidden for ages and for generations but now has been revealed to God's holy people.27It is to them that God wanted to make known the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles, which is Christ in you, the hope of glory.28We proclaim him, warning every person and teaching every person with all wisdom, so that we may present every person mature in Christ.29For this I labor and strive according to his energy that is at work in me in power.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies add and the Lord Jesus Christ . [2](#footnote-caller-2)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, on your behalf . [3](#footnote-caller-3)Some ancient Greek copies read who made us able . [4](#footnote-caller-4)Some ancient Greek copies read, in whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins ; it may be a reference to Ephesians 1:7.

#### Colossians 1:1

##### an apostle of Christ Jesus through the will of God

"whom God chose to be an apostle of Christ Jesus". Though this letter is from Paul and Timothy to the Colossian believers, Paul makes it clear that he is the writer. Most likely Timothy was with him and wrote the words down as Paul spoke. Throughout this letter the words "we," "our," and "ours" include the Colossians unless noted otherwise. The words "you," "your," and "yours" refer to the Colossian believers and so are plural unless noted otherwise.

#### Colossians 1:3

##### We give ... our Lord ... we always

These words do not include the Colossians.

#### Colossians 1:4

##### We have heard

Paul is excluding his audience.

##### your faith in Christ Jesus

"your belief in Christ Jesus"

#### Colossians 1:5

##### because of the hope reserved for you in heaven

"because you are confident that God, who is in heaven, will do the many good things that he has promised you". Here "hope" stands for what the believer can confidently expect, that is, the things that God has promised to do for all believers.

##### the word of truth, the gospel

"the message about the truth, the gospel" or "the true message, the gospel."

#### Colossians 1:6

##### this gospel is bearing fruit and is growing

"This gospel is having good results, more and more" or "This gospel is having increasing results"

##### in all the world

"throughout the world"

##### the grace of God in truth

"the true grace of God"

#### Colossians 1:7

##### our beloved ... our behalf

The word "our" does not include the Colossians.

##### gospel as you learned it from Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, who

"gospel. It is exactly what Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, taught you. He"

##### Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, who is a faithful servant of Christ on our behalf

Here "on our behalf" means that Epaphras was doing work for Christ that Paul himself would have done if he were not in prison.

##### Epaphras

the man who preached the gospel to the people in Colossae

#### Colossians 1:8

##### to us

The word "us" does not include the Colossians.

##### your love in the Spirit

"how the Holy Spirit has enabled you to love believers".

#### Colossians 1:9

##### Because of this love

"Because the Holy Spirit has enabled you to love other believers"

##### we heard ... we have not stopped ... We pray

The word "we" does not include the Colossians.

##### from the day we heard this

"from the day Epaphras told us these things"

##### that you will be filled with the knowledge of his will

"that God will fill you with what you need to know so that you can do his will"

##### in all wisdom and spiritual understanding

"so that the Holy Spirit will make you wise and able to understand what God wants you to do"

#### Colossians 1:10

##### that you will walk in a manner that is worthy of the Lord and that pleases him

"that you will live as God expects you to and so please him"

##### by bearing fruit in every good work and growing

"by making sure that all of your good works please God and people and growing". Paul is speaking of the Colossian believers as if they were trees or plants that grow and bear fruit.

##### growing in the knowledge of God

"always learning more about God"

#### Colossians 1:12

##### made you able to have a share

"allowed you to share"

##### made you able

Here Paul is focusing on his readers as receivers of God's blessings. But he does not mean that he himself has no share in those blessings.

##### inheritance

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member.

##### in light

"in the glory of his presence". This idea is opposite to the idea of the dominion of darkness in the next verse.

#### Colossians 1:13

##### He has rescued us

"God has rescued us"

##### the dominion of darkness

"the evil forces that controlled us"

##### his beloved Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Colossians 1:15

##### He is the image of the invisible God

"His Son is the image of the invisible God." By knowing the Son, we learn what God the Father is like. This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### the firstborn of all creation

"God's Son, the most important one over all creation". The expression "firstborn" does not refer to when Jesus was born. Instead, it refers to his position as the eternal Son of God the Father. This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### of all creation

"over all that God created"

#### Colossians 1:16

##### For in him all things were created

"For in Jesus God created all things"

##### all things were created through him and for him

"God created all things through Jesus and for Jesus"

#### Colossians 1:17

##### He himself is before all things

"It is Jesus who existed before all things"

##### in him all things hold together

"Jesus holds everything together"

#### Colossians 1:18

##### He is the head

"Jesus Christ, the Son of God, is the head". It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### He is the head of the body, the church

Paul speaks of Jesus's position over the church as if he were the head on the human body. As the head rules the body, so does Jesus rule the church.

##### the beginning

"the originating authority."

##### firstborn from among the dead

Jesus is the first person to die and come back to life, never to die again.

#### Colossians 1:20

##### through the blood of his cross

"by means of the blood Jesus shed on the cross"

##### the blood of his cross

Here "blood" stands for the death of Christ on the cross.

##### whether things on earth or things in heaven

This phrase explains what "all things" means. Some languages might prefer to put it closer to "all things."

#### Colossians 1:21

##### At one time you also

"There was a time when you Colossian believers also"

##### were alienated

were no longer living in loving relationship with God

#### Colossians 1:22

##### blameless, and above accusation

"holy and perfect". Paul uses these two concepts to emphasize the idea of perfection.

##### before him

"in God's view" or "in God's mind"

#### Colossians 1:23

##### not moved away from the hope of the gospel that you heard

"continuing in the hope of the gospel that you heard" or "continuing to confidently expect what is promised in the gospel".

##### which was proclaimed

"which believers proclaimed"

##### to every person created under heaven

"to every person in the world". God created everyone.

##### the gospel of which I, Paul, became a servant

"the gospel that I, Paul, serve God by proclaiming". Paul was a servant of God.

#### Colossians 1:24

##### I fill up in my flesh what is lacking of the afflictions of Christ

Paul may be acknowledging here that there is much suffering that he and all other Christians must endure before Christ comes again, and that Christ in a spiritual sense joins with them in experiencing these hardships. Paul certainly does not mean that Christ's sufferings alone were not enough to provide salvation for the believers.

##### I fill up in my flesh

Paul speaks of his body as if it were a container that could hold suffering.

##### for the sake of his body, which is the church

Paul often speaks of the church, the group of all Christian believers, as if it were Christ's body.

#### Colossians 1:25

##### to fulfill the word of God

"to be obedient to what God has instructed". This means to bring about the purpose of God's gospel message, which is that it be preached and believed.

#### Colossians 1:26

##### This is the mystery that was hidden

"This is the mystery that God had hidden"

##### for ages and for generations

The words "ages" and "generations" refer to the time period from the creation of the world until the time when the gospel was preached.

##### now has been revealed to God's holy people

"now God has revealed it to his holy people"

#### Colossians 1:27

##### the riches of the glory of this mystery

"the greatness of the glory of this mystery". Paul speaks as if it were a treasure of material wealth.

##### which is Christ in you

"which is that Christ is in you" or "which is that Christ is united to you". This is one of Paul's ways of expressing the union of the believers with Christ.

##### the hope of glory

"so you can confidently expect to share in God's glory" or "so you can confidently wait for God's glory".

#### Colossians 1:28

##### We proclaim ... we may present

These instances of "we" include Paul and his companions but do not include the Colossians.

##### so that we may present every person

"so that we may present to God every person"

Chapter 2

1For I want you to know how great a struggle I have had for you, for those at Laodicea, and for as many as have not seen my face in the flesh.2I work so that their hearts may be encouraged by being brought together in love and into all the riches of full assurance of understanding, into the knowledge of the mystery of God, that is, Christ.3In him all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge are hidden.4I say this so that no one may trick you with persuasive speech.5Although I am not with you in the flesh, yet I am with you in spirit. I rejoice to see your good order and the strength of your faith in Christ.

6As you received Christ Jesus the Lord, walk in him.7Be rooted in him, be built on him, be established in faith just as you were taught, and abound in thanksgiving.

8See that no one captures you through philosophy and empty deceit, according to the tradition of men, conforming to the elemental spirits of the world, and not conforming to Christ.9For in him all the fullness of God lives in bodily form.10You have been filled in him, who is the head over every ruler and authority.11In him you were also circumcised with a circumcision not done by humans in the removal of the body of flesh, but in the circumcision of Christ.12You were buried with him in baptism, and in him you were raised up through faith in the power of God, who raised him from the dead.13When you were dead in your trespasses and in the uncircumcision of your flesh, he made you alive together with him and forgave us all of our trespasses. [1](#footnote-target-1)14He blotted out the written record of debts that was hostile to us with its regulations. He took it away by nailing it to the cross.15He disarmed the rulers and authorities and made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them by the cross.

16So then, let no one judge you in eating or in drinking, or about a festival or a new moon, or about Sabbath days.17These are a shadow of the things to come, but the substance is Christ.18Let no one who wants humility and the worship of angels judge you out of your prize. Such a person enters into the things he has seen and becomes puffed up for no reason by his fleshly thinking.19He does not hold on to the head. It is from the head that the whole body throughout its joints and ligaments is supplied and held together; it grows with the growth given by God.

20If you died together with Christ to the elemental spirits of the world, why do you live as obligated to the world:21"Do not handle, nor taste, nor touch"?22All these things will perish with use, according to the commandments and teachings of men.23These rules have the appearance of wisdom, with their self-made religion and humility and severe treatment of the body. But they have no value against the indulgence of the flesh.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient Greek copies read, and forgave you all of your trespasses .

#### Colossians 2:1

##### how great a struggle I have had for you

Paul has exerted much effort in developing their purity and their understanding of the gospel and continues to encourage the believers in Colossae and Laodicea to understand that Christ is God and that he lives in believers.

##### Laodicea

This was a city very close to Colossae where there was another church for which Paul was praying.

##### as many as have not seen my face in the flesh

"all those who have never seen me personally" or "all those whom I have never met face to face"

#### Colossians 2:2

##### so that their hearts

"so that their hearts and yours"

##### brought together

This means brought together in a close relationship.

##### all the riches of full assurance of understanding

Paul speaks of a person who is completely sure that the good news is true as though that person were rich in physical things.

##### the mystery of God

This is knowledge that can be revealed only by God.

##### that is, Christ

Jesus Christ is the mystery revealed by God.

#### Colossians 2:3

##### In him all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge are hidden

"God has hidden all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge in Christ". Only Christ can reveal God's true wisdom and knowledge.

##### the treasures of wisdom and knowledge

"the very precious wisdom and knowledge". Paul speaks as if they were material wealth.

#### Colossians 2:4

##### trick

To cause someone to believe something that is not true, so he acts on that belief, and suffers harm as a result.

##### persuasive speech

speech that will make people change what they believe

#### Colossians 2:5

##### not with you in the flesh

"not physically present with you"

##### I am with you in spirit

"I continually think about you"

##### good order

the proper way of doing things

##### the strength of your faith

"how nothing and no one can cause you to stop believing"

#### Colossians 2:6

##### walk in him

"live so that people can see that you belong to Christ". Walking on a path refers to how a person lives his life. The words "in him" refer to being in close relationship with Christ.

#### Colossians 2:7

##### Be rooted ... be built ... be established ... abound

These words explain what it means to "walk in him." Paul speaks of a person with true faith in Christ as if that person were a tree growing in solid ground with deep roots.

##### be built on him

Paul speaks of a person with true faith in Christ as if that person were a building that has a strong foundation.

##### be established in faith

"trust in Jesus for everything"

##### just as you were taught

"just as you learned" or "just as they taught you"

##### abound in thanksgiving

"be very thankful to God"

#### Colossians 2:8

##### See that

"Make sure that"

##### captures you

Paul speaks of the way a person can believe false teachings as if someone had physically caught and held that person by force.

##### philosophy

religious doctrines and beliefs that are not from God's word but are based on man's thoughts about God and life

##### empty deceit

Paul speaks of false ideas that produce nothing as though they are containers with nothing in them.

##### the tradition of men ... the elemental spirits of the world

The "tradition of men" may refer to Jewish traditions, while "the elemental spirits of the world" refers to pagan (Gentile) belief systems. Both of these are worthless.

##### the elemental spirits of the world

Possible meanings are 1) spiritual powers that some people thought control what happens on earth, or 2) the laws or moral principles of the world.

#### Colossians 2:9

##### in him all the fullness of God lives in bodily form

"God's total nature lives in physical form in Christ"

#### Colossians 2:10

##### You have been filled in him

"You are made complete in Christ"

##### who is the head over every ruler and authority

Christ is the ruler over every other ruler

#### Colossians 2:11

##### In him you were also circumcised

"When you joined the church in baptism, God circumcised you"

##### a circumcision not done by humans

Paul says that God has made Christian believers acceptable to himself in a way that reminded him of circumcision, the ceremony through which Hebrew male babies were added to the community of Israel.

#### Colossians 2:12

##### You were buried with him in baptism

"God buried you with Christ when you joined the church in baptism"

##### in him you were raised up

"because you have joined yourself to Christ, God raised you up". Paul speaks of the new spiritual life of believers that God made possible by making Christ come alive again.

##### you were raised up

"God caused you to live again"

#### Colossians 2:13

##### When you were dead ... he made you alive

"When you Colossian believers were unable to respond to God". Paul speaks of unresponsiveness to God as if it were death, while he also speaks of coming into new spiritual life as if it were coming back to life physically.

##### dead in your trespasses and in the uncircumcision of your flesh

You were dead on two accounts: 1) you were spiritually dead, living a life of sin against Christ and 2) you were not circumcised according to the law of Moses.

##### forgave us all of our trespasses

"he forgave us, both us Jews and you Gentiles, of all our trespasses"

#### Colossians 2:14

##### He blotted out the written record of debts that was hostile to us

Paul speaks of God forgiving our sins as if God were forgiving a debt that we owe him.

##### blotted out the written record

When someone blots out words, they cover the words with ink so that no one can read them.

##### that was hostile to us

"that was opposed to us"

#### Colossians 2:15

##### made a public spectacle of them

In Roman times, it was common practice for the Roman armies to have a victory parade when they returned home, displaying all the prisoners they had captured and goods they had obtained. God was victorious over the evil powers and authorities.

##### by the cross

Here "the cross" stands for Christ's death on the cross.

#### Colossians 2:16

##### in eating or in drinking

"for what you eat or what you drink". The law of Moses included what one could eat and drink.

##### about a festival or a new moon, or about Sabbath days

"for the way you celebrate festivals or new moons or the Sabbath". The law of Moses specified the days to celebrate, to worship, and to offer sacrifice.

#### Colossians 2:17

##### These are a shadow of the things to come, but the substance is Christ

"These are like a shadow of what would happen, but the reality is Christ" or "These are like a shadow of the savior who would come, but the savior is Christ". A shadow shows the shape of an object, but it is not the object itself. In a similar way, the festivals, celebrations, and Sabbaths show us something about how God would save people, but those things do not save people. The savior is Christ.

#### Colossians 2:18

##### Let no one ... judge you out of your prize

"Let no one ... disqualify you from winning a prize". Here Paul refers to false teachers as if they were corrupt judges at an athletic contest who would unjustly disqualify the believers from winning the prizes they deserve, and he speaks of Christ saving a person as if Christ were giving a prize to the winner.

##### who wants humility

"who wants you to do things to show that you are humble"

##### enters into the things he has seen

Here Paul speaks about people who claim to have dreams and visions from God and who talk proudly about them.

##### becomes puffed up for no reason by his fleshly thinking

"puffs himself up for no reason by means of the sinful thoughts he naturally thinks".

#### Colossians 2:19

##### He does not hold on to the head

"He does not firmly grasp Christ, who is like the head of a body" or "He does not cling to Christ, who is like the head of a body"

##### It is from the head that the whole body throughout its joints and ligaments is supplied and held together

"It is from the head that God supplies the whole body throughout its joints and ligaments and holds it together"

#### Colossians 2:20

##### If you died together with Christ to the elemental spirits of the world

A believer is spiritually united with Christ. As Christ died, the believer has died to the elemental spirits of the world. The believer is no longer controlled by them.

##### the elemental spirits of the world

Possible meanings are 1) spiritual powers that some people thought control what happens on earth, or 2) the laws or moral principles of the world.

##### live as obligated to the world

"think you must obey the desires of the world"

##### the world

the thoughts, desires, and assumptions of the sinful majority of the world's people

#### Colossians 2:21

##### "Do not handle, nor taste, nor touch"

"why do you believe them when they say, 'Do not handle, nor taste, nor touch'?"

#### Colossians 2:23

##### These rules have the appearance of wisdom, ... humility and severe treatment of the body

"These rules seem wise to unbelieving people because they allow those who follow them to appear humble because they hurt their own bodies"

##### have no value against the indulgence of the flesh

"do not help you stop following your human desires"

Chapter 3

1If then God has raised you with Christ, seek the things above, where Christ is sitting at the right hand of God.2Think about the things above, not about the things on earth.3For you have died, and your life is hidden with Christ in God.4When Christ appears, who is your life, then you will also appear with him in glory. [1](#footnote-target-1)

5Put to death, then, the members that are on earth—sexual immorality, uncleanness, passion, evil desire, and greed, which is idolatry.6It is for these things that the wrath of God is coming on the sons of disobedience. [2](#footnote-target-2)7It is in these things that you also once walked when you lived in them.8But now you must get rid of all these things—wrath, anger, evil intentions, slander, and obscene speech from your mouth.9Do not lie to one another, since you have taken off the old man with its practices,10and you have put on the new man that is being made new in knowledge according to the image of the one who created it,11where there is no Greek or Jew, circumcision or uncircumcision, barbarian, Scythian, slave, freeman, but Christ is all, and is in all.

12Therefore, as God's chosen ones, holy and beloved, put on a heart of mercy, kindness, humility, gentleness, and patience.13Bear with one another. Be gracious to each other. If someone has a complaint against someone else, forgive in the same way that the Lord has forgiven you.14Above all these things, have love, which is the bond of perfection.15Let the peace of Christ rule in your hearts. It was for this peace that you were called in one body. And be thankful.16Let the word of Christ live in you richly, teaching and instructing one another with all wisdom, singing psalms and hymns and spiritual songs with thankfulness in your hearts to God.17Whatever you do, in word or in deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus. Give thanks to God the Father through him.

18Wives, submit to your husbands, as it is appropriate in the Lord.19Husbands, love your wives, and do not be bitter against them.20Children, obey your parents in all things, for this is pleasing in the Lord.21Fathers, do not provoke your children, so that they will not be discouraged.22Slaves, obey your masters according to the flesh in all things, not with eye-service, as people-pleasers, but with a sincere heart. Fear the Lord.23Whatever you do, work from the soul as to the Lord and not as to people.24You know that you will receive from the Lord the reward of the inheritance. It is the Lord Christ whom you serve.25For anyone who does unrighteousness will receive the penalty for the unrighteousness that he did, and there is no partiality.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient Greek copies and some ancient translations read, When Christ appears, who is our life, then you will also appear with him in glory . [2](#footnote-caller-2)Some ancient Greek copies read, It is for these things that the wrath of God is coming .

#### Colossians 3:1

##### God has raised you with Christ

"God has given you new life because you belong to Christ" or "you can be sure that God will give you life as he has caused Christ to come alive again"

##### things above

"things in heaven"

##### where Christ is sitting at the right hand of God

"where Christ is sitting in the place of honor at God's right side"

#### Colossians 3:3

##### For you have died

As Christ actually died, so God counts the Colossian believers as having died with Christ.

##### your life is hidden with Christ in God

"it is as though God has taken your life and concealed it with Christ in God's presence" or "only God knows what your true life really is, and he will reveal it when he reveals Christ"

#### Colossians 3:4

##### Christ appears ... you will also appear

"God reveals Christ ... he will also reveal you"

##### who is your life

Christ is the one who gives spiritual life to the believer.

#### Colossians 3:5

##### the members that are on earth

"the earthly parts of your nature" or "the parts of your nature that are worldly". The rest of the verse is a list of sinful "members" or behaviors.

##### uncleanness

"impure behavior"

##### passion

"lust" or "extremely strong desires"

##### greed, which is idolatry

"greed, which is the same thing as idolatry" or "do not be greedy because that is the same as worshiping idols"

#### Colossians 3:6

##### wrath of God

God's anger against those who do evil as shown by what he does to punish them.

##### the sons of disobedience

"people who disobey him"

#### Colossians 3:7

##### It is in these things that you also once walked

"These are the things you used to do"

##### when you lived in them

"when you practiced these things" or "when you lived among the people who disobey God"

#### Colossians 3:8

##### evil intentions

"desire to do wicked deeds"

##### slander

speech used to hurt others by saying untrue things about them

##### obscene speech

vulgar words that do not belong in polite conversation

##### from your mouth

"in your talk"

#### Colossians 3:9

##### you have taken off the old man with its practices

Here Paul is speaking of a Christian's rejecting his old sinful life as if it were an old garment that he takes off in order to put on a new garment. The old and new self mean the same as the old and new man. The term "old man" probably refers to the sinful nature with which a person is born. The "new man" is the new nature or new life that God gives a person after they come to believe in Christ.

#### Colossians 3:10

##### and you have put on the new man

see verse 9

##### the image

This refers to Jesus Christ.

#### Colossians 3:11

##### there is no Greek or Jew, circumcision or uncircumcision, barbarian, Scythian, slave, freeman

"race, religion, culture, and social status do not matter". These terms are examples of the categories of people that Paul says do not matter for God. God sees every person alike, not by race, religion, nationality, or social status.

##### barbarian

a foreigner who does not know local customs

##### Scythian

This is someone from the land of Scythia, which was outside the Roman Empire. Greeks and Romans used this word for someone who grew up in a place where everyone did wicked things all the time.

##### Christ is all, and is in all

"Christ is all important and lives in all his people"

#### Colossians 3:12

##### as God's chosen ones, holy and beloved

"as those whom God has chosen for himself, whom he desires to see live for him alone, and whom he loves"

##### put on a heart of mercy, kindness, humility, gentleness, and patience

"have a merciful, kind, humble, gentle, and patient heart" or "be merciful, kind, humble, gentle, and patient"

#### Colossians 3:13

##### Bear with one another

"Be patient with one another" or "Accept each other even when you disappoint each other"

##### Be gracious to each other

"Treat others better than they deserve to have you to treat them"

##### has a complaint against

"has a reason to complain against"

#### Colossians 3:14

##### have love, which is the bond of perfection

"love one another because doing so will unite you perfectly together"

#### Colossians 3:15

##### Let the peace of Christ rule in your hearts

"Do everything so that you can have peaceful relationships with each other" or "Allow God to give you peace in your heart".

##### in your hearts

"in your minds" or "inside of you"

#### Colossians 3:16

##### Let the word of Christ live in you richly

"Be obedient to the instructions of Christ" or "Always trust Christ's promises"

##### singing psalms and hymns and spiritual songs

"singing all sorts of songs to praise God."

##### psalms

These are probably songs from the Old Testament book of Psalms that Christians sang.

##### with thankfulness in your hearts

"with thankfulness in your minds" or "being thankful"

#### Colossians 3:17

##### in word or in deed

"in speaking or in acting"

##### in the name of the Lord Jesus

"to honor the Lord Jesus" or "so that others will know you belong to the Lord Jesus and will think well of him" or "as if the Lord Jesus himself were doing it"

##### through him

Possible meanings are 1) because he has done great deeds or 2) because he has made it possible for people to speak to God and so give him thanks.

#### Colossians 3:18

##### Wives, submit to

"Wives, obey"

##### it is appropriate

"it is proper" or "it is right"

#### Colossians 3:19

##### do not be bitter against

"do not be harsh with" or "do not be angry at"

#### Colossians 3:21

##### do not provoke your children

"do not needlessly make your children angry"

#### Colossians 3:22

##### obey your masters according to the flesh

"obey your human masters"

##### things, not with eye-service, as people-pleasers, but with a sincere heart

"things. Do not obey only when your master is watching, as though you need only to please people, but be sincere"

##### with a sincere heart

"with all honest intentions"

#### Colossians 3:23

##### as to the Lord

"as you would work for the Lord"

#### Colossians 3:24

##### the reward of the inheritance

"the inheritance as your reward"

##### inheritance

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member.

#### Colossians 3:25

##### anyone who does unrighteousness will receive the penalty

"God will punish anyone who does what is unrighteous"

##### who does unrighteousness

who actively does wrong of any kind

##### there is no partiality

"God does not favor anyone" or "God judges everyone by the same standard"

Chapter 4

1Masters, give to slaves what is right and fair, knowing you also have a Master in heaven.

2Continue steadfastly in prayer, staying alert in it in thanksgiving,3praying together for us also, that God would open a door to us for the word, to speak the mystery of Christ, for which also I have been in chains.4Pray that I may make it clear, as I ought to speak.5Walk in wisdom toward those outside, and redeem the time.6Let your words always be with grace. Let them be seasoned with salt, so that you may know how you should answer each person.

7As for all the things concerning me, Tychicus will make them known to you. He is a beloved brother, faithful servant, and fellow slave in the Lord.8I have sent him to you for this, that you might know the matters about us, and so that he may encourage your hearts. [1](#footnote-target-1)9I have sent him together with Onesimus, the faithful and beloved brother, who is one of you. They will make known to you everything that has happened here.

10Aristarchus, my fellow prisoner, greets you, as well as Mark, the cousin of Barnabas (about whom you received orders; if he comes to you, receive him),11and also Jesus who is called Justus. These alone of the circumcision are my fellow workers for the kingdom of God. They have been a comfort to me.12Epaphras greets you. He is one of you and a slave of Christ Jesus. He always strives for you in prayer, so that you may stand complete and fully assured in all the will of God.13For I can testify that he works hard for you, for those in Laodicea, and for those in Hierapolis.14Luke the beloved physician and Demas greet you.15Greet the brothers in Laodicea, and Nympha, and the church that is in her house.16When this letter has been read among you, have it read also in the church of the Laodiceans, and see that you also read the letter from Laodicea.17Say to Archippus, "Look to the ministry that you have received in the Lord, that you should fulfill it."

18This greeting is with my own hand—Paul. Remember my chains. May grace be with you.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)There are some important and ancient Greek copies, along with some ancient translations of the Greek, that read, I sent him to you for this, that he might know the matters about you, and that he may encourage your hearts .

#### Colossians 4:1

##### right and fair

These words are used to emphasize the things that are morally correct.

##### you also have a Master in heaven

"you also have a Master, who is God in heaven". Paul implies that God, as the Master in heaven, will give his servants what is right and fair, so this could be blessing for the earthly master who treats his servants kindly.

#### Colossians 4:2

##### Continue steadfastly in prayer

"Keep praying faithfully"

#### Colossians 4:3

##### God would open a door to us for the word

"God would provide opportunities for us to preach his message"

##### the mystery of Christ

This refers to the gospel of Jesus Christ, which was not understood before Christ came.

##### for which also I have been in chains

"It is for proclaiming the message of Jesus Christ that I am now in prison"

#### Colossians 4:4

##### Pray that I may make it clear

"Pray that I might be able to speak the message of Jesus Christ clearly"

#### Colossians 4:5

##### Walk in wisdom toward those outside

"Live in such a way that those who are not believers will see that you are wise"

##### redeem the time

"do the best things you can with your time" or "put the time to its best use". Time is spoken of as something that can be restored and used to serve God.

#### Colossians 4:6

##### Let your words always be with grace. Let them be seasoned with salt

"Let your conversation always be gracious and attractive"

##### so that you may know how you should answer

"so that you may know how to answer questions from anyone about Jesus Christ" or "so that you may be able to treat every person well"

#### Colossians 4:7

##### all the things concerning me

"everything that has been happening to me"

##### fellow slave

"fellow servant." Though Paul is a free man, he sees himself as a servant of Christ and sees Tychicus as a fellow servant.

#### Colossians 4:8

##### about us

These words do not include the Colossians.

##### may encourage your hearts

"may encourage you"

#### Colossians 4:9

##### the faithful and beloved brother

Paul calls Onesimus a fellow Christian and servant of Christ. He was a slave of Philemon in Colossae and had stolen money from Philemon and run away to Rome where he became a Christian through the ministry of Paul. Now Tychicus and Onesimus are the ones bringing Paul's letter to Colossae along with a letter from Paul to Philemon asking him to send Onesimus back to Paul.

##### They will make known

"Tychicus and Onesimus will make known"

##### everything that has happened here

Tradition says Paul was in Rome under house arrest or in prison at this time.

#### Colossians 4:10

##### Aristarchus

He was in prison with Paul in Ephesus when Paul wrote this letter.

##### if he comes

"if Mark comes"

#### Colossians 4:11

##### Jesus who is called Justus

This is a man who also worked with Paul.

##### These alone of the circumcision are my fellow workers for the kingdom of God

"These three men are the only Jewish believers working with me to proclaim God as king through Christ Jesus". Paul uses "circumcision" here to refer to Jews because, under the Old Testament law, all male Jews had to be circumcised.

##### These alone of the circumcision

"These men—Aristarchus, Mark, and Justus—alone of the circumcision"

#### Colossians 4:12

##### Epaphras

Epaphras was the man who had preached the good news to the people in Colossae.

##### one of you

"from your city" or "your fellow townsman"

##### a slave of Christ Jesus

"a committed disciple of Christ Jesus"

##### always strives for you in prayer

"earnestly prays for you"

##### you may stand complete and fully assured

"you may stand mature and confident"

#### Colossians 4:14

##### Demas

He was one of Paul's co-workers.

#### Colossians 4:15

##### brothers

This means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### in Laodicea

a city very close to Colossae where there was also a church. Hierapolis was also a town close to Colossae.

##### Nympha, and the church that is in her house

"Nympha and the group of believers that meets in her house"

#### Colossians 4:17

##### Say to Archippus, "Look to the ministry that you have received in the Lord, that you should fulfill it

Paul reminds Archippus of the task God had given him and that he, Archippus, was under obligation to the Lord to fulfill it.

#### Colossians 4:18

##### Remember my chains

"Remember me and pray for me while I am in prison". Paul closes his letter with a greeting written in his own handwriting.

##### May grace be with you

"I pray that our Lord Jesus Christ would continue to act graciously toward you all"

## 1 Thessalonians

Chapter 1

1Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy to the church of the Thessalonians in God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ: May grace and peace be to you. [1](#footnote-target-1)

2We always give thanks to God for all of you as we mention you continually in our prayers.3We remember before our God and Father your work of faith, labor of love, and patient endurance of hope in our Lord Jesus Christ.4Brothers loved by God, we know he has chosen you,5because our gospel came to you not in word only, but also in power, in the Holy Spirit, and in much assurance. In the same way, you also know what kind of men we were among you for your sake.6You became imitators of us and of the Lord when you received the word in much tribulation with joy from the Holy Spirit.7As a result, you became an example to all in Macedonia and Achaia who believe.8For from you the word of the Lord has rung out, and not only in Macedonia and Achaia, but your faith in God has gone out everywhere. Therefore we do not need to say anything about it.9For they themselves report concerning us what kind of reception we had among you, and how you turned to God from the idols to serve the living and true God,10and to wait for his Son from heaven, whom he raised from the dead—Jesus, who rescues us from the wrath to come.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, May grace and peace be to you from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ .

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:1

##### May grace and peace be to you

"May God be kind to you and give you peace"

##### peace be to you

The word "you" refers to the Thessalonian believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:2

##### We always give thanks to God

The words "we" and "us" refer to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy, unless otherwise noted. Here "always" suggests that when Paul prays to God, he consistently presents the Thessalonians to God in his prayers.

##### we mention you continually in our prayers

"we continually pray for you"

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:3

##### your work of faith, labor of love, and patient endurance of hope in our Lord Jesus Christ

"what you have done because you have faith in God, the hard work you have done because you love others, and how you always continued to hope in our Lord Jesus Christ"

##### patient endurance of hope in our Lord Jesus Christ

"continual trust in our Lord Jesus Christ"

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:4

##### Brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:5

##### not in word only

"not only in what we said"

##### but also in power, in the Holy Spirit

Possible meanings are 1) the Holy Spirit gave Paul and his companions the ability to preach the gospel powerfully or 2) the Holy Spirit made the preaching of the gospel have a powerful effect among the Thessalonian believers or 3) the Holy Spirit demonstrated the truth of the gospel preaching by means of miracles, signs, and wonders.

##### power, in the Holy Spirit, and in much assurance

"power and in the Holy Spirit, and God made you sure that it was true"

##### what kind of men

"how we conducted ourselves when"

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:6

##### received the word

"welcomed the message" or "accepted what we had to say"

##### in much tribulation

"during a time of great suffering" or "in much persecution"

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:7

##### Achaia

This is an ancient district in what is present-day Greece.

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:8

##### the word of the Lord has rung out

"the Lord's teachings have rung out"

##### has rung out

Here Paul speaks of the Christian witness as if it were a bell that was rung or a musical instrument that was being played.

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:9

##### For they themselves

Paul is referring to the churches that already existed in the surrounding regions, who have heard about the Thessalonian believers.

##### what kind of reception we had among you

"how warmly you welcomed us"

##### you turned to God from the idols to serve the living and true God

"you stopped worshiping idols and started serving the living and true God"

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:10

##### whom he raised from the dead

"whom God caused to live again so that he was no longer dead."

##### who rescues us

Here Paul includes the Thessalonian believers.

Chapter 2

1For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was not useless.2Rather, as you know, though we previously suffered and were shamefully treated at Philippi, we were bold in our God to speak to you the gospel of God in much struggling.3For our exhortation was not from error, nor from uncleanness, nor from deceit.4Instead, just as we have been approved by God to be trusted with the gospel, so we speak, not to please men, but God. He is the one who examines our hearts.5For we never came with words of flattery, as you know, nor with a pretext to cover up greed—God is our witness.6Nor did we seek glory from people, either from you or from others. 7We could have claimed privileges as apostles of Christ. [1](#footnote-target-1) Instead, we were as gentle among you as a mother comforting her own children. [2](#footnote-target-2)8In this way we had affection for you. We were pleased to share with you not only the gospel of God but also our own lives. For you had become very dear to us.9For you remember, brothers, our labor and toil. Night and day we were working so that we might not be a burden to any of you as we preached to you the gospel of God.10You are witnesses, and God also, how holy, righteous, and blameless was our behavior toward you who believe.11In the same way you know how we were with each one of you, as a father with his own children,12exhorting you and comforting you and urging you to walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into his own kingdom and glory.

13For this reason we also thank God constantly, that when you received God's message that you heard from us, you accepted it not as the word of man, but just as it truly is, the word of God, which is also at work in you who believe.14For you, brothers, became imitators of the churches of God that are in Judea in Christ Jesus. For you also suffered the same things from your own countrymen, as they did from the Jews15who killed both the Lord Jesus and the prophets, and who drove us out. They do not please God. Instead, they are hostile to all people.16They forbid us to speak to the Gentiles for them to be saved. The result is that they always fill up their sins to the limit. But wrath will overtake them in the end.

17But we, brothers, were separated from you for a short time, in person not in heart. We were especially eager, with great desire, to see your faces.18For we wished to come to you—indeed I, Paul, once and again—but Satan stopped us.19For what is our hope, or joy, or crown of pride in front of our Lord Jesus at his coming? Is it not you?20For you are our glory and joy.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Many copies include this sentence in verse 6. [2](#footnote-caller-2)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, Instead, we were like babies among you, as when a mother comforts her own children .

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:1

##### you yourselves

These words refer to the Thessalonian believers.

##### was not useless

"was very worthwhile"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:2

##### previously suffered and were shamefully treated

"were mistreated and insulted"

##### in much struggling

"while struggling under great opposition"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:3

##### was not from error, nor from uncleanness, nor from deceit

"was truthful, pure, and honest"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:4

##### approved by God to be trusted

Paul was tested and proven trustworthy by God.

##### we speak

Paul is referring to preaching the gospel message.

##### who examines our hearts

"who knows our desires and thoughts"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:5

##### we never came with words of flattery

"we never spoke to you with false praise"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:6

##### Nor did we seek glory from people

"And we did not try to make people praise us"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:7

##### as a mother comforting her own children

Just as a mother gently comforts her children, so Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy spoke gently.

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:8

##### In this way we had affection for you

"This is how we demonstrated our love for you"

##### We were pleased to share with you not only the gospel of God but also our own lives

"We were pleased not only to tell you the gospel of God but also to spend time with you and to help you"

##### you had become very dear to us

"we cared for you deeply"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:9

##### our labor and toil

"how hard we worked"

##### Night and day we were working so that we might not be a burden to any of you

"We worked hard to make our own living so you would not need to support us"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:11

##### as a father with his own children

Paul compares how he encouraged the Thessalonians to a father gently teaching his children how to behave.

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:12

##### exhorting you and comforting you and urging you

"strongly exhorted you"

##### into his own kingdom and glory

"into his own glorious kingdom"

##### to walk in a manner that is worthy of God

"to live so that people will think well of God"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:13

##### not as the word of man

"not a message that is made up by a man"

##### the word of God

"the message that comes from God"

##### which is also at work in you who believe

"which those of you who believe are listening to and beginning to obey"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:14

##### became imitators of the churches

"became like the churches"

##### from your own countrymen

"from other Thessalonians"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:16

##### They forbid us to speak

"They try to make us stop speaking"

##### wrath will overtake them in the end

This refers to God finally judging and punishing people for their sins.

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:17

##### in person not in heart

"in person, but we continued to think about you"

##### to see your faces

"to see you" or "to be with you"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:19

##### For what is our hope, or joy, or crown of pride in ... our Lord Jesus at his coming? Is it not you?

"For you are our hope, our joy, and our crown of pride in front of our Lord Jesus at his coming" or "For what is the reason that we can be hopeful or joyful? What is our crown of pride in front of our Lord Jesus at his coming? Is it not you?"

Chapter 3

1Therefore, when we could no longer bear it, we thought it was good to be left behind at Athens alone.2We sent Timothy, our brother and fellow worker for God in the gospel of Christ, to strengthen and comfort you regarding your faith, [1](#footnote-target-1)3so that no one would be shaken by these tribulations. For you yourselves know that for this we have been appointed.4Truly, when we were with you, we told you in advance that we were about to suffer affliction, and it happened just so, as you know.5For this reason, when I could no longer endure it, I sent that I might know about your faith. Perhaps the tempter had somehow tempted you, and our labor was in vain.6But Timothy came to us from you and brought us the good news of your faith and love. He told us that you always have good memories of us, and that you long to see us just as we also long to see you.7Because of this, brothers, we were comforted by you because of your faith, in all our distress and affliction.8For now we live, if you stand firm in the Lord.9For what thanks can we give to God for you, for all the joy that we have before our God over you?10Night and day we pray very hard that we may see your face and provide what is lacking in your faith.

11May our God and Father himself, and our Lord Jesus, direct our way to you.12May the Lord make you increase and abound in love one for another and toward all people, as we also do for you.13May he strengthen your hearts so that they will be blameless in holiness before our God and Father at the coming of our Lord Jesus with all his holy people.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, We sent Timothy, our brother and God's servant in the gospel of Christ .

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:1

##### we could no longer bear it

"we could no longer endure worrying about you"

##### good to be left behind at Athens alone

"good for Silvanus and me to stay behind in Athens". Athens was a city in the the Roman province of Achaia

##### it was good

"it was proper"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:3

##### no one would be shaken

"no one would be frightened away from trusting in Christ"

##### we have been appointed

"God has appointed us"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:4

##### Truly

"Moreover"

##### to suffer affliction

"to be mistreated by others"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:5

##### I could no longer endure it

"I could not continue to wait patiently"

##### I sent

"I sent Timothy"

##### our labor

"our hard work among you" or "our teaching among you"

##### in vain

"useless"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:6

##### came to us

The word "us" refers to Paul and Silvanus.

##### the good news of your faith

"a good report of your faith"

##### you always have good memories

When they think of Paul, they always have good thoughts about him.

##### you long to see us

"you desire to see us"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:7

##### because of your faith

"because of your faith in Christ"

##### in all our distress and affliction

"in all our distress caused by our afflictions"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:8

##### we live

"we are very encouraged"

##### if you stand firm in the Lord

"if you continue to trust in the Lord"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:9

##### For what thanks can we give to God for you, for all the joy that we have before our God over you?

"We cannot thank God enough for what he has done for you! We greatly rejoice over you when we pray to our God"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:10

##### very hard

"fervently"

##### see your face

"visit you"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:11

##### May our God

"We pray that our God"

##### direct our way to you

Paul speaks as if he wants God to show him and his companions the route to take to visit the Thessalonian Christians.The word "our" refers to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy but not the Thessalonian believers.

##### Father himself

Here "himself" refers back to "Father" for emphasis.

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:13

##### strengthen your hearts so that they will be

"strengthen you so that you will be"

##### at the coming of our Lord Jesus

"when Jesus comes back to earth"

##### with all his holy people

"with all those who belong to him"

Chapter 4

1Finally, brothers, we earnestly appeal to you and exhort you in the Lord Jesus. As you received instructions from us about how you must walk and please God, also in this way walk, so that you do so even more.2For you know what instructions we gave you through the Lord Jesus.3For this is the will of God, your sanctification, that you avoid sexual immorality,4that each of you knows how to possess his own vessel in holiness and honor,5not in the passion of lust (as the Gentiles who do not know God).6Let no man transgress and wrong his brother in this matter. For the Lord is an avenger in all these things, just as we forewarned you and testified.7For God did not call us to uncleanness, but to holiness.8Therefore, he who rejects this rejects not people, but God, who gives his Holy Spirit to you.

9Regarding brotherly love, you have no need for anyone to write to you, for you yourselves are taught by God to love one another.10Indeed, you do this for all the brothers who are in all Macedonia. But we exhort you, brothers, to do this even more.11We also exhort you to aspire to live quietly, take care of your own responsibilities, and labor with your hands, just as we commanded you,12so that you may walk properly before outsiders and not be in any need.

13We do not want you to be uninformed, brothers, about those who sleep, so that you do not grieve like the rest, who do not have hope.14For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so God will bring with Jesus those who have fallen asleep in him.15For this we say to you by the word of the Lord, that we who are alive, who are left at the coming of the Lord, will surely not go before those who have fallen asleep.16For the Lord himself will descend from heaven. He will come with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trumpet of God, and the dead in Christ will rise first.17Then we who are alive, who are left, will together with them be caught up in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air. In this way we will always be with the Lord.18Therefore, comfort one another with these words.

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:1

##### we earnestly appeal to you and exhort you

"we strongly exhort you". Paul uses these words to emphasize how strongly they exhort the believers.

##### you received instructions from us

"we taught you"

##### you must walk

"you ought to live”

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:2

##### through the Lord Jesus

Paul speaks of his instructions as if they were given by Jesus himself.

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:3

##### you avoid sexual immorality

"you stay away from sexually immoral acts"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:4

##### knows how to possess his own vessel

"know how to control his own body"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:5

##### in the passion of lust

"with wrongful sexual desire"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:6

##### no man

"no person"

##### transgress and wrong his brother

"do very wrong things to his brother" or "do what God had forbidden and wrong his brother”

##### the Lord is an avenger

"the Lord will punish the one who transgressed and will defend the one who was wronged"

##### forewarned you and testified

"told you beforehand and strongly warned against"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:7

##### God did not call us to uncleanness, but to holiness

"God called us to cleanness and holiness"

##### God did not call us

The word "us" refers to all believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:8

##### he who rejects this

"whoever ignores this teaching"

##### rejects not people, but God

Paul stresses that this teaching is not from man, but from God.

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:10

##### you do this for all the brothers who are in all Macedonia

"you show love to the believers throughout Macedonia"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:11

##### to aspire

"to try to"

##### live quietly

"live in a calm and orderly way". Paul uses the word "quietly" to describe living at peace and not causing strife.

##### take care of your own responsibilities

"do your own work" or "take care of the things that you are responsible for". This may also imply that we should not gossip and interfere in other people's concerns.

##### labor with your hands

"work at your own jobs to earn what you need to live"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:12

##### walk properly

"behave properly"

##### properly

in a way that shows respect to others and earns their respect

##### before outsiders

"in the sight of those who do not believe in Christ". Paul speaks of those who do not believe in Christ as if they are outside, in a place away from the believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:13

##### We do not want you to be uninformed

"We want you to be informed" or "We want you to know"

##### those who sleep

"those who have died"

##### so that you do not grieve like the rest

"because we do not want you to mourn like the rest"

##### like the rest, who do not have hope

"like people who do not have confidence in the future promise" or "like the people who are not sure that they will rise from the dead"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:14

##### rose again

"rose to live again"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:15

##### by the word of the Lord

"by means of understanding the teachings of the Lord"

##### at the coming of the Lord

"when the Lord returns"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:16

##### the Lord himself will descend

"the Lord himself will come down"

##### the archangel

"the chief angel"

##### the dead in Christ will rise first

"those who believe in Jesus Christ, but who have already died, will rise first"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:17

##### with them

The word "them" refers to the dead believers who were made alive again.

##### be caught up in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air

"meet the Lord Jesus in the sky"

Chapter 5

1Now concerning the times and seasons, brothers, you have no need that anything be written to you.2For you yourselves know perfectly well that the day of the Lord is coming like a thief in the night.3When they say, "Peace and safety," then sudden destruction will come on them. It will be like birth pains in a pregnant woman. They will in no way escape.4But you, brothers, are not in darkness so that the day would overtake you like a thief.5For you are all sons of the light and sons of the day. We are not sons of the night or the darkness.6So then, let us not sleep as the rest do. Instead, let us keep watch and be sober.7For those who sleep do so at night, and those who get drunk do so at night.8But since we belong to the day, we must stay sober and put on faith and love as a breastplate, and the hope of salvation for our helmet.9For God did not appoint us for wrath, but to obtain salvation through our Lord Jesus Christ,10who died for us so that, whether we are awake or asleep, we may live together with him.11Therefore comfort one another and build each other up, just as you are already doing.

12We earnestly appeal to you, brothers, to acknowledge those who labor among you and who rule over you in the Lord and who instruct you,13and to esteem them highly in love because of their work. Be at peace among yourselves.14We exhort you, brothers: Warn those who are lazy, encourage the discouraged, help the weak, and be patient toward all.15See that no one pays back evil for evil to anyone. Instead, pursue what is good for one another and for all.16Rejoice always.17Pray without ceasing.18In everything give thanks. For this is the will of God in Christ Jesus for you.19Do not quench the Spirit.20Do not despise prophecies.21Test all things. Hold firmly to what is good.22Keep away from every kind of evil.

23May the God of peace sanctify you completely. May your whole spirit, soul, and body be preserved blameless for the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.24Faithful is he who calls you, the one who will also do it.

25Brothers, pray also for us.

26Greet all the brothers with a holy kiss.27I command you by the Lord to have this letter read to all the brothers.

28The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:1

##### General Information:

The words "we" and "us" refer to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy, unless otherwise noted. Also, the word "you" is plural and refers to the believers at the church of Thessalonica

##### concerning the times and seasons

"the exact time that the Lord will return."

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:2

##### perfectly well

"accurately"

##### like a thief in the night

"unexpectedly". Just as one does not know which night a thief may come, we do not know when the day of the Lord will come.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:3

##### When they say

"When the people say"

##### then sudden destruction

"then unexpected destruction"

##### like birth pains in a pregnant woman

Just as a pregnant woman's birth pains come suddenly, the destruction will come, and people will not escape.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:4

##### are not in darkness

"you are not unknowing, like people who live in the dark"

##### so that the day would overtake you like a thief

The Lord will come on a day when believers will not expect him to come, but it will not "overtake" them—God will not destroy them on that day—because they will be ready for Jesus to return.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:5

##### For you are all sons of the light and sons of the day

"For you know the truth, like people who live in the light, like people during the day". Paul speaks of the truth as if it were light and day.

##### We are not sons of the night or the darkness

"We are not unknowing, like people who live in the darkness, like people at night"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:6

##### let us not sleep as the rest do

"let us not be like others who are not aware that Jesus is coming back"

##### keep watch and be sober

Paul describes spiritual awareness as the opposite of sleep and drunkenness.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:7

##### For those who sleep do so at night

Just as when people sleep, so the people of this world do not know that Christ will return.

##### those who get drunk do so at night

Paul is stating that it is at night when people become drunk, so when people are unaware of Christ's return they do not live a self-controlled life.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:8

##### we belong to the day

"we know the truth" or "we have received the light of truth”

##### we must stay sober

"let us exercise self-control”

##### put on faith and love as a breastplate

"protect ourselves with faith and love" or "protect ourselves by trusting Christ and loving him".

##### the hope of salvation for our helmet

"protect ourselves by being certain that Christ will save us”

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:10

##### whether we are awake or asleep

"whether we are alive or dead"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:11

##### build each other up

"encourage each other"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:12

##### to acknowledge those who labor

"to esteem and appreciate those who are involved in leading"

##### who rule over you in the Lord

This refers to people God appointed to serve as leaders of the local group of believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:16

##### Rejoice always

Paul is telling the believers to maintain a spiritual attitude of rejoicing in all things.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:18

##### In everything give thanks

Paul is exhorting the believers to express thankfulness in all things.

##### For this is the will of God

Paul is referring to the behavior he just mentioned as being God's will for the believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:19

##### Do not quench the Spirit

"Do not stop the Holy Spirit from working among you"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:20

##### Do not despise prophecies

"Do not hate anything the Holy Spirit tells someone"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:21

##### Test all things

"Make sure that all messages that seem to come from God truly come from him"

##### Hold firmly to what is good

Paul speaks of messages from the Holy Spirit as if they were objects that one could grasp in his hands.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:23

##### sanctify you completely

This refers to God making a person sinless and perfect in his sight.

##### May your whole spirit, soul, and body be preserved blameless

"May God make your whole life without sin" or "May God keep you completely blameless”

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:24

##### Faithful is he who calls you

"He is faithful who calls you"

##### the one who will also do it

"he will be helping you"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:27

##### I command you by the Lord to have this letter read

"With the authority of the Lord, I direct you to read this letter"

## 2 Thessalonians

Chapter 1

1Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy, to the church of the Thessalonians in God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ:

2Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

3We should always give thanks to God for you, brothers, as is appropriate, because your faith is growing more and more, and the love each of you has for one another increases.4So we ourselves boast about you in the churches of God for your patience and faith in all your persecutions, and in the tribulations that you are enduring.5This is evidence of God's righteous judgment, so that you will be considered worthy of the kingdom of God, for which you are also suffering.6For indeed, it is righteous for God to return affliction to those who afflict you,7and relief to you who are afflicted and to us as well, when the Lord Jesus is revealed from heaven with his mighty angels8in flaming fire, inflicting vengeance on those who do not know God and on those who do not obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus.9They will suffer the punishment of eternal destruction away from the presence of the Lord and from the glory of his power.10He will do this when he comes on that day to be glorified in his holy people and to be marveled at by all those who believed, because our testimony to you was believed.11Because of this we also pray continually for you, that our God may consider you worthy of your calling and with his power he may fulfill every good purpose and every work of faith.12We pray this so that the name of our Lord Jesus may be glorified in you, and you in him, according to the grace of our God and the Lord Jesus Christ.

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:1

##### General Information:

Paul is the author of this letter, but he includes Silvanus and Timothy as senders of the letter. The words "we" and "us" refer to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy, unless otherwise noted. Also, the word "you" is plural and refers to the believers at the church of Thessalonica.

##### Silvanus

This is the Latin form of "Silas." He is the same person listed in the book of Acts as Paul's fellow traveler.

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:2

##### Grace to you

Paul commonly uses this greeting in his letters.

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:3

##### We should always give thanks to God

"We should often give thanks to God". This emphasizes the greatness of what God is doing in the lives of the Thessalonian believers.

##### brothers

"brothers and sisters"

##### the love each of you has for one another increases

"you sincerely love one another"

##### one another

Here "one another" means fellow Christians.

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:4

##### we ourselves

Here "ourselves" is used to emphasize Paul's boasting.

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:5

##### you will be considered worthy of the kingdom of God

"God will consider you worthy to be part of his kingdom"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:6

##### it is righteous for God

"God is just"

##### for God to return affliction to those who afflict you

"for God to afflict those who afflict you"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:7

##### and relief to you

"and to relieve you". This continues the description of what God is right "to return" to people (verse 6).

##### relief to you

"for God to provide relief to you"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:8

##### in flaming fire, inflicting vengeance on ... do not know God and on those who

"punishing with blazing fire those who do not know God and those who"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:10

##### when he comes on that day

Here "that day" is the day when Jesus will return to the world.

##### to be glorified in his holy people and to be marveled at by all those who believed

"so that his people will glorify him and all those who believed will stand in awe of him"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:11

##### we also pray continually for you

"we also pray regularly for you"

##### calling

This refers to God appointing or choosing people to be his children and servants and to proclaim his message of salvation through Jesus.

##### fulfill every good purpose

"make you able to do good in every way that you desire"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:12

##### that the name of our Lord Jesus may be glorified in you

"that you may glorify the name of our Lord Jesus"

##### and you in him

"and Jesus will glorify you"

##### according to the grace of our God and the Lord Jesus Christ

"because God and the Lord Jesus Christ have given grace to you"

Chapter 2

1Now about the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ and our being gathered together to be with him, we earnestly appeal to you, brothers,2that you not be easily disturbed or troubled, either by a spirit or by a message, or by a letter that seems to be coming from us, to the effect that the day of the Lord has already come. 3Let no one deceive you in any way. For it will not come until after the falling away comes and the man of lawlessness is revealed, the son of destruction. [1](#footnote-target-1)4This is he who opposes and exalts himself against all that is called God or that is worshiped. As a result, he sits in the temple of God and exhibits himself as God.5Do you not remember that when I was with you I told you these things?6Now you know what restrains him, so that he will be revealed only at the right time.7For the mystery of lawlessness is already working, only there is someone who restrains him now until he is taken out of the way.8Then the lawless one will be revealed, whom the Lord Jesus will kill with the breath of his mouth and bring him to nothing by the revelation of his coming.9The coming of the lawless one will be due to the work of Satan with all power, signs, and false wonders,10and with every kind of evil that deceives those who are perishing, because they refused to love the truth and so be saved.11For this reason God is sending them a powerful delusion so that they will believe a lie12and so that they all may be condemned who did not believe the truth but instead took pleasure in unrighteousness.

13But we should always give thanks to God for you, brothers loved by the Lord, because God chose you as the firstfruits to be saved through the sanctification by the Spirit and belief in the truth. [2](#footnote-target-2)14He called you to this through our gospel, so that you might obtain the glory of our Lord Jesus Christ.15So then, brothers, stand firm and hold tightly to the traditions that you were taught, whether by word or by our letter.

16Now may our Lord Jesus Christ himself and God our Father, who loved us and gave us eternal comfort and good hope through grace,17comfort and strengthen your hearts in every good work and word.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, and the man of sin is revealed . [2](#footnote-caller-2)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, For God chose you from the first for salvation .

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:1

##### brothers

"brothers and sisters"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:2

##### that you not be easily disturbed or troubled, either by a spirit or by a message

"that no spirit or person easily disturb or trouble you, either by a message"

##### by a message, or by a letter that seems to be coming from us

"by spoken word or by written letter that pretends to be coming from us"

##### to the effect that

"saying that"

##### the day of the Lord

This refers to the time when Jesus will come back to the earth for all believers.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:3

##### it will not come

"the day of the Lord will not come"

##### the falling away

This refers to a future time when many people will turn away from God.

##### the man of lawlessness is revealed

"God reveals the man of lawlessness". This is the same as "son of destruction" and "lawless one" in this chapter. Paul associates him with Satan, who is actively working in the world.

##### the son of destruction

"the one who destroys everything he can". Paul speaks of destruction as a person who bore a son whose goal is to totally destroy everything.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:4

##### all that is called God or that is worshiped

"everything that people consider to be God or everything that people worship"

##### exhibits himself as God

"shows himself as God"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:5

##### Do you not remember ... these things?

"I am sure you remember ... these things"

##### these things

This refers to the return of Jesus, the day of the Lord, and the man of lawlessness.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:6

##### what restrains him

"what keeps him from doing what he wants to do"

##### he will be revealed only at the right time

"God will reveal the man of lawlessness when the time is right"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:7

##### mystery of lawlessness

This refers to a sacred secret that only God knows.

##### who restrains him

To restrain someone is to hold him back or to keep him from doing what he wants to do.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:8

##### Then the lawless one will be revealed

"Then God will allow the lawless one to show himself"

##### with the breath of his mouth

"by the power of his spoken word"

##### bring him to nothing by the revelation of his coming

When Jesus returns to earth and shows himself, he will defeat the lawless one.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:9

##### with all power, signs, and false wonders

"with all kinds of power, signs, and false wonders"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:10

##### with every kind of evil that deceives those who are perishing

This man who is given power by Satan will deceive everyone who does not believe in Jesus.

##### who are perishing

Here "perishing" has the concept of everlasting or eternal destruction.

##### they refused to love the truth

Here this speaks of these people as if someone had offered them a physical object, like good food, and they had refused to accept or receive it.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:11

##### For this reason

"Because the people do not love the truth"

##### God is sending them a powerful delusion so that they will believe a lie

"God is sending the man of lawlessness to delude them"

##### a powerful delusion

A lie that sounds so true that many people believe it.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:12

##### they all may be condemned

"God will judge all of them"

##### who did not believe the truth but instead took pleasure in unrighteousness

"who enjoyed doing evil deeds because they did not believe the truth"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:13

##### we should always give thanks

"we should continually give thanks"

##### we should

Here "we" refers to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy.

##### brothers loved by the Lord

"for the Lord loves you, brothers"

##### as the firstfruits to be saved through the sanctification by the Spirit and belief in the truth

"to be among the first people who believe what is true, whom God has saved and set apart for himself by his Spirit"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:15

##### So then, brothers, stand firm

Paul exhorts the believers to hold fast to their faith in Jesus.

##### hold tightly to the traditions

"believe the truths"

##### you were taught

"we have taught you"

##### whether by word or by our letter

"whether by what we taught you in person or by what we wrote to you in a letter"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:16

##### Lord Jesus Christ himself

Here "himself" gives additional emphasis to the phrase "Lord Jesus Christ."

##### may our Lord ... who loved us and gave us

The words "our" and "us" refer to all believers.

##### gave us eternal comfort and good hope through grace

"caused us to have unceasing encouragement and good hope through grace"

##### good hope through grace

"certainty that we will receive good things from him because of his kindness"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:17

##### comfort and strengthen your hearts in

"comfort you and strengthen you for"

##### every good work and word

"every good thing you do and say"

Chapter 3

1Now, brothers, pray for us, that the word of the Lord may rush and be glorified, as it also is with you,2and that we may be delivered from unrighteous and evil people, for not all have faith.3But the Lord is faithful, who will strengthen you and guard you from the evil one.4We have confidence in the Lord about you, that you both do and will continue to do the things that we command.5May the Lord direct your hearts to the love of God and to the endurance of Christ.

6Now we command you, brothers, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that you avoid every brother who is idle and does not live according to the traditions you received from us.7For you yourselves know it is proper for you to imitate us, because we were not idle when we were with you. 8We did not eat anyone's bread without paying for it, but we worked night and day in labor and toil, so we might not be a burden to any of you.9We did this not because we have no authority, but we did this in order to be an example to you, so that you may imitate us.10For when we were with you, we commanded you, "The one who is unwilling to labor must not eat."11For we hear that some among you are idle, not busy at labor, but busybodies.12Now such ones we command and exhort in the Lord Jesus Christ, that they should labor with quietness and eat their own bread.13But you, brothers, do not become tired of doing well.14And if anyone does not obey our word in this letter, take note of him and have no association with him, so that he may be ashamed.15Yet do not consider him as an enemy, but warn him as a brother.

16Now may the Lord of peace himself give you peace at all times in all ways. The Lord be with you all.17I, Paul, write this with my own hand, which is the mark on every letter I write.18The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you all. Amen.

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:1

##### brothers

"brothers and sisters"

##### that the word of the Lord may rush and be glorified, as it also is with you

"that more and more people will soon hear our message about our Lord Jesus and honor it, as happened with you"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:2

##### that we may be delivered

"that God may rescue us"

##### for not all have faith

"for many people do not believe in Jesus"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:3

##### the evil one

"Satan"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:4

##### We have confidence

"We have faith"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:5

##### direct your hearts to

"cause you to understand"

##### the love of God and to the endurance of Christ

"how much God loves you and how much Christ has endured for you"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:6

##### in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

"as if our Lord Jesus Christ himself were speaking"

##### our Lord

Here "our" refers to all believers.

##### is idle

"does not do what is right"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:7

##### to imitate us

"to act the way that my fellow workers and I act"

##### we were not idle

"we lived disciplined lives"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:8

##### anyone's bread

"anyone's food"

##### we worked night and day

"we worked all the time"

##### in labor and toil

"in very difficult circumstances"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:9

##### We did this not because we have no authority, but we did this

"Even though we have authority, we did this"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:10

##### The one who is unwilling to labor must not eat

"Only people who are willing to work should eat"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:11

##### you are idle

"live a lazy life"

##### but busybodies

Busybodies are people who interfere in the affairs of others without being asked to help.

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:12

##### with quietness

"in a quiet, peaceful, and mild manner." Paul exhorts the meddlers to stop getting involved in other people's affairs.

##### eat their own bread

"eat their own food"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:13

##### But

Paul uses this word to contrast the lazy believers with the hardworking believers.

##### you, brothers

The word "you" refers to all the Thessalonian believers.

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:14

##### if anyone does not obey our word

"if anyone does not obey our instructions"

##### take note of him

"publicly identify that person"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:16

##### may the Lord of peace himself give you

"I pray that the Lord of peace himself gives you"

##### the Lord of peace himself

Here "himself" emphasizes that the Lord will personally give peace to believers.

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:17

##### I, Paul, write this with my own hand

Paul makes it clear that this letter is from him and not a forgery.

## 1 Timothy

Chapter 1

1Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus according to the commandment of God our Savior and Christ Jesus our hope,

2to Timothy, a true son in the faith: Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord.

3As I urged you to do when I was leaving for Macedonia, remain in Ephesus so that you can command certain people not to teach a different doctrine.4Neither should they pay attention to stories and endless genealogies. These promote arguments rather than the plan of God, which is by faith.5Now the goal of the commandment is love from a pure heart, from a good conscience, and from a sincere faith.6Some people have gone astray from these things and have turned to worthless talk.7They want to be teachers of the law, but they do not understand what they are saying or what they so confidently affirm.8But we know that the law is good if one uses it lawfully.9We know this: that law is not set in place for a righteous man, but for lawless and rebellious people, for ungodly people and sinners, and for those who are unholy and profane, for those who kill their fathers and mothers, for murderers,10for sexually immoral people, for those who practice homosexuality, for those who kidnap people for slaves, for liars, for false witnesses, and for whatever else is opposed to truthful teaching.11This instruction is according to the glorious gospel of the blessed God with which I have been entrusted.

12I thank Christ Jesus our Lord. He strengthened me, for he considered me faithful, and he appointed me to service.13I was a blasphemer, a persecutor, and a violent man. But I received mercy because I acted ignorantly in unbelief.14And the grace of our Lord overflowed with the faith and the love that is in Christ Jesus.15This message is reliable and worthy of all acceptance, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners, of whom I am chief.16But for this reason I was given mercy, so that in me, the chief, Christ Jesus might demonstrate all patience. He did this as an example for those who would believe in him for eternal life.17Now to the king of the ages, the immortal, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory forever and ever. Amen.

18I am placing this command before you, Timothy, my child, in accordance with the prophecies previously made about you, that you might fight the good fight,19holding faith and a good conscience. By rejecting this, some have shipwrecked their faith.20Such are Hymenaeus and Alexander, whom I delivered over to Satan so that they may be taught not to blaspheme.

#### 1 Timothy 1:1

##### Paul, an apostle

"I, Paul, wrote this letter. I am an apostle." Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter. In this book, unless otherwise noted, the word "our" refers to Paul and Timothy (the one to whom this letter is written), as well as to all believers.

##### according to the commandment of

"by the authority of"

##### God our Savior

"God who saves us"

##### Christ Jesus our hope

"Christ Jesus, who is the one in whom we have confidence" or "Christ Jesus, whom we trust"

#### 1 Timothy 1:2

##### true son in the faith

"who is truly like a son to me". Paul speaks of his close relationship to Timothy as though they were father and son. This shows Paul's sincere love and approval of Timothy. It is also likely that Timothy was converted to Christ by Paul, and so this is why Paul considers him like his own child

##### Grace, mercy, and peace

"May grace, mercy, and peace be yours," or "May you experience kindness, mercy, and peace"

##### God the Father and

"God, who is our Father, and.". This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### Christ Jesus our Lord

"Christ Jesus, who is our Lord".

#### 1 Timothy 1:3

##### As I urged you

"As I pleaded with you" or "As I asked you very strongly". The word "you" in this letter is singular and refers to Timothy.

##### remain in Ephesus

"wait for me there in the city of Ephesus"

##### a different doctrine

"a different doctrine from what we teach"

#### 1 Timothy 1:4

##### Neither should they pay attention

"And I also want you to command them not to pay attention"

##### to stories

These may have been stories about their ancestors.

##### endless genealogies

With the word "endless", Paul uses this to emphasize that the genealogies are very long. "Genealogies" refer to the written or verbal record of a person's parents and ancestors

##### These promote arguments

"These make people angrily disagree."

##### rather than the plan of God, which is by faith

"rather than helping people to understand God's plan to save us, which we learn by faith" or "rather than helping us to do God's work, which we do by faith."

#### 1 Timothy 1:5

##### the commandment

Here this does not mean the Old Testament or the Ten Commandments but rather the instructions that Paul gives in 1 Timothy 1:3 and 1 Timothy 1:4.

##### is love

"is to love God" or "is to love people."

##### from a pure heart

"from a mind that is honest"

##### good conscience

"a conscience that chooses right instead wrong"

##### sincere faith

"genuine faith" or "a faith without hypocrisy"

#### 1 Timothy 1:6

##### have gone astray from these things

"no longer try to do these things"

##### turned to worthless talk

"begun to have useless discussions"

#### 1 Timothy 1:7

##### teachers of the law

Here "law" refers to the law of Moses.

##### but they do not understand

"even though they do not understand"

##### what they so confidently affirm

"what they so confidently state is true"

#### 1 Timothy 1:8

##### we know that the law is good

"we understand that the law is useful" or "we understand that the law is beneficial"

##### if one uses it lawfully

"if a person uses it the way God intended"

#### 1 Timothy 1:9

##### We know this

"Because we realize this"

##### that law is not set in place for a righteous man

"that God did not set the law in place for the righteous man"

##### a righteous man

"a righteous person" or "a good person"

#### 1 Timothy 1:10

##### sexually immoral people

This refers to anyone who sleeps with someone to whom they are not married.

##### homosexuality

"sexual activity with other members of the same sex."

##### those who kidnap people for slaves

"those who kidnap people to sell as slaves" or "those who take people to sell as slaves"

##### whatever else is opposed to truthful teaching

"whatever other things people do that we teach is wrong"

#### 1 Timothy 1:11

##### the glorious gospel of the blessed God

"the gospel about the glory that belongs to the blessed God" or "the gospel of the glorious and blessed God"

##### with which I have been entrusted

"which God has given me and made me responsible for"

#### 1 Timothy 1:12

##### he considered me faithful

"he considered me trustworthy"

##### he appointed me to service

"he assigned me to serve him" or "he appointed me as his servant"

#### 1 Timothy 1:13

##### I was a blasphemer

"I was a person who spoke evil against Christ." Paul is referring to his character before he was a Christian.

##### a persecutor

"a person who persecuted those who believed in Christ"

##### a violent man

"a person who was cruel to other people" or "a person who believed I had the right to hurt others"

##### But I received mercy because I acted ignorantly in unbelief

"But because I did not believe in Jesus, and I did not know what I was doing, I received mercy from Jesus"

##### I received mercy

"Jesus showed me mercy"

#### 1 Timothy 1:14

##### the grace of our Lord overflowed

"God showed me much grace"

##### overflowed with the faith and the love that is in Christ Jesus

"overflowed, which caused me to trust in Christ Jesus and love him"

##### that is in Christ Jesus

"that Christ Jesus enables me to give to God because I am united to him"

#### 1 Timothy 1:15

##### This message is reliable

"This statement is true"

##### worthy of all acceptance

"we should receive it without any doubt"

##### sinners, of whom I am chief

"sinners, of whom I am the chief sinner" or "sinners, of whom I am the worst." Paul is saying that he has sinned more than any other sinner, not that he has been the leader of a group of sinners.

#### 1 Timothy 1:16

##### I was given mercy

"God showed me mercy" or "I obtained mercy from God"

##### the chief

"the chief sinner" or "the worst sinner."

#### 1 Timothy 1:17

##### the king of the ages

"the eternal king"

##### Now to the king of the ages, the immortal, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory forever and ever

"Now may people forever honor and glorify the king of the ages, who is immortal, invisible, and the only God"

#### 1 Timothy 1:18

##### I am placing this command before you

"I am entrusting you with this command"

##### my child

"who is truly like my child"

##### in accordance with the prophecies previously made about you

"in agreement with what other believers prophesied about you"

##### fight the good fight

"continue to work hard for the Lord"

#### 1 Timothy 1:19

##### a good conscience

"a conscience that chooses right instead wrong."

##### some have shipwrecked their faith

Paul means that they have ruined their faith and no longer believe in Jesus.

#### 1 Timothy 1:20

##### Hymenaeus ... Alexander

These are names of men.

##### whom I delivered over to Satan

Paul has cast the men out of the community, so Satan now has power over them and can harm them.

##### they may be taught

"God may teach them"

Chapter 2

1Therefore, first of all, I urge that humble requests, prayers, petitions, and thanksgivings be made for all people,2for kings and all who are in authority, in order that we may live a peaceful and quiet life in all godliness and dignity.3This is good and acceptable before God our Savior.4He desires all people to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth.5For there is one God, and there is one mediator for God and man, the man Christ Jesus.6He gave himself as a ransom for all, as the testimony at the right time.7For this purpose I was appointed a herald and an apostle—I am telling the truth, I am not lying—and a teacher of the Gentiles in faith and truth.

8Therefore, I want men in every place to pray and to lift up holy hands without anger or arguing.9In the same way, the women are to dress with proper clothing, with modesty and self-control, not with braided hair or gold or pearls or expensive clothing,10but with what is proper for women who proclaim godliness through good works.11A woman should learn in silence and with all submission.12I do not permit a woman to teach or to exercise authority over a man, but to live in quietness.13For Adam was formed first, then Eve.14Adam was not deceived, but the woman was deceived and became a transgressor.15However, she will be saved through bearing children, if they continue in faith and love and sanctification with self-control.

#### 1 Timothy 2:1

##### first of all

"before anything else"

##### I urge that humble requests, prayers, petitions, and thanksgivings be made

"I plead with all believers to make requests, prayers, intercessions, and thanksgiving to God"

#### 1 Timothy 2:2

##### a peaceful and quiet life

Paul wants all believers to be able to live calm lives without trouble from the authorities.

##### in all godliness and dignity

"that honors God and that other people will respect"

#### 1 Timothy 2:4

##### He desires all people to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth

"God desires to save all people and for them to come to the knowledge of the truth"

##### to come to the knowledge of the truth

"to know and accept what is true"

#### 1 Timothy 2:5

##### one mediator for God and man

A mediator is a person who helps negotiate a peaceful settlement between two parties who disagree with each other. Here Jesus helps sinners enter into a saving relationship with God.

#### 1 Timothy 2:6

##### gave himself

"died willingly"

##### as a ransom

"as a payment to obtain freedom"

##### as the testimony at the right time

"as the proof at the right time that God wants to save all people"

#### 1 Timothy 2:7

##### For this purpose

"For this reason"

##### I was appointed a herald and an apostle

"Christ made me an official messenger and an apostle"

##### I am telling the truth, I am not lying

With these two comments Paul emphasizes that he is telling the truth when he says that he was appointed to be a herald, an apostle, and a teacher. Some translators may prefer to put these comments at the end of the verse.

##### in faith and truth

"about the message of faith and truth" or "about the true faith"

#### 1 Timothy 2:8

##### I want men in every place to pray and to lift up holy hands

"I want holy men in every place to lift up their hands and pray"

##### men in every place

"the males in all places" or "the males everywhere." Here the word "men" refers specifically to males.

##### lift up holy hands

It was a normal posture for people to raise their hands while praying.

#### 1 Timothy 2:9

##### with modesty and self-control

Paul is emphasizing that women should wear clothes that are appropriate and do not attract improper attention from men.

##### not with braided hair

"not having elaborate hairstyles that attract attention"

##### pearls

These are beautiful and valuable white balls that people use as jewelry.

#### 1 Timothy 2:10

##### General Information:

Possible meanings of this verse are 1) the words "through good works" tell how the women Paul is talking about "proclaim godliness" or 2) those words tell how women are to "dress," or "but with good works, as is proper for women who proclaim godliness" (1 Timothy 2:9).

##### who proclaim godliness through good works

"who want to show that they honor God by doing good deeds"

#### 1 Timothy 2:11

##### in silence

"in quietness"

##### and with all submission

"and submit to what is taught"

#### 1 Timothy 2:12

##### I do not permit a woman

"I do not allow a woman". Some scholars believe men and women are perfectly equal in all things. Other scholars believe God created men and women to serve in distinctly different roles in marriage and the church. Translators should be careful not to let how they understand this issue affect how they translate this passage.

#### 1 Timothy 2:13

##### Adam was formed first

"God created Adam first"

##### then Eve

"and then God created Eve"

#### 1 Timothy 2:14

##### Adam was not deceived

"And Adam was not the one whom the serpent deceived"

##### but the woman was deceived and became a transgressor

"but it was the woman who disobeyed God when the serpent deceived her"

#### 1 Timothy 2:15

##### she will be saved through bearing children

Possible meaning is that God will keep women physically safe as they give birth to children.

##### if they continue

"if they remain" or "if they continue living." Here "they" refers to women.

##### in faith and love and sanctification

"in trusting Jesus and loving others and living a holy life"

##### with self-control

"with good judgment" or "with modesty"

Chapter 3

1This saying is trustworthy: If someone desires to be an overseer, he desires a good work.2Therefore the overseer must have a good reputation. He must be a husband of one wife. He must be moderate, sensible, orderly, and hospitable. He must be able to teach.3He must not be addicted to wine, not a brawler but instead gentle, peaceful. He must not be a lover of money.4He should manage his own household well, and he should make sure his children obey and respect him in every way.5For if a man does not know how to manage his own household, how will he care for a church of God?6He should not be a new convert, so that he does not swell with pride and fall into condemnation as the devil.7He must also have a good reputation with those outside, so that he does not fall into disgrace and the trap of the devil.8In the same way, deacons should be dignified, not double-talkers. They should not drink too much wine or be greedy.9They should keep the mystery of the faith with a clean conscience.10They should also be approved first, and then they should serve because they are blameless.11In the same way, their wives should be dignified, not slanderers, but sober and faithful in all things.12Deacons must be husbands of one wife. They must manage well their children and household.13For those who have served well acquire for themselves a good standing and great confidence in the faith that is in Christ Jesus.

14As I write these things to you, I hope to come to you soon.15But if I delay, I am writing so that you may know how to conduct yourself in the household of God, which is the church of the living God, the pillar and support of the truth.16We all agree that the mystery of godliness is great:"He was revealed in the flesh,was vindicated by the Spirit,was seen by angels,was proclaimed among nations,was believed on in the world,and was taken up in glory."

#### 1 Timothy 3:1

##### a good work

"an honorable task"

#### 1 Timothy 3:2

##### husband of one wife

An overseer must have only one wife. It is unclear if this excludes men who have been previously widowed or divorced, or never married. The church has used different titles for church leaders. Some titles include elder, pastor, and bishop. The word “overseer” reflects the meaning of the original language in verses 1-2. Paul writes about "deacons" in verses 8 and 12 as another kind of church leader.

##### He must be moderate, sensible, orderly, and hospitable

"He must not do anything to excess, must be reasonable and behave well, and must be friendly to strangers"

#### 1 Timothy 3:3

##### He must not be addicted to wine, not a brawler but instead gentle, peaceful

"He must neither drink too much alcohol nor like to fight and argue, but instead he must be gentle and peaceful"

##### a lover of money

"greedy for money"

#### 1 Timothy 3:4

##### He should manage

"He should take care of"

##### he should make sure his children obey and respect him in every way

Possible meanings are 1) the overseer's children should obey and show respect to their father or 2) the overseer's children should show respect to everyone or 3) the overseer should show respect to those in his household as he leads them.

#### 1 Timothy 3:5

##### For if a man does not know how to manage

"For when a man cannot manage"

##### how will he care for a church of God?

"he cannot take care of a church of God." or "he will not be able to lead a church of God."

##### a church of God

"the believers over whom he is in charge"

#### 1 Timothy 3:6

##### He should not be a new convert

"He should not be a new believer"

##### fall into condemnation as the devil

"have God condemn him as he condemned the devil"

#### 1 Timothy 3:7

##### those outside

"those who are not Christians"

##### he does not fall into disgrace and the trap of the devil

"nothing causes him shame before the unbelievers and so that the devil does not cause him to sin"

#### 1 Timothy 3:8

##### In the same way, deacons

"Deacons, like overseers". Paul gives some special instructions on how the deacons of the church and their wives should act and be.

##### should be dignified, not double-talkers

"should act properly and mean what they say"

#### 1 Timothy 3:9

##### They should keep the mystery of the faith with a clean conscience

"They must continue to believe, with a clean conscience, the true message God has revealed to us"

##### the mystery of the faith

"the truth of the faith that God revealed"

##### faith with a clean conscience

"faith, knowing they have tried their hardest to do what is right"

#### 1 Timothy 3:10

##### They should also be approved first

"Other believers should approve of them first"

##### be approved

This means other believers should evaluate those who want to be a deacon and determine if they are fit to serve in the church.

#### 1 Timothy 3:11

##### In the same way, their wives

Possible meaning is the wives of deacons.

##### be dignified

"act properly" or "be worthy of respect"

##### should be dignified, not slanderers, but sober and faithful

"should be dignified; they should not speak evil about other people, and they should not do anything to excess; rather, they should be faithful"

##### sober

"moderate." See how you translated "moderate" in 1 Timothy 3:2.

#### 1 Timothy 3:12

##### manage well their children and household

"properly take care of and lead their children and others who live in their homes"

#### 1 Timothy 3:13

##### For those

"For those deacons"

##### acquire for themselves

"receive for themselves"

##### a good standing

"a good reputation among other believers"

##### great confidence in the faith that is in Christ Jesus

Possible meanings are 1) they will trust in Jesus with even more confidence or 2) they will speak confidently to other people about their faith in Jesus.

#### 1 Timothy 3:14

##### I hope to come to you soon

"I expect to come to you soon"

#### 1 Timothy 3:15

##### But if I delay

"But in case I cannot go there soon" or "But if something prevents me for being there soon"

##### so that you may know how to conduct yourself in the household of God

"so that you all may know how to conduct yourselves as members of God's family"

##### household of God, which is the church of the living God

"household of God. Those who belong to the family of God are the community of believers in the living God"

##### which is the church of the living God, the pillar and support of the truth

"which is the church of the living God. And, by keeping and teaching God's truth, these members of the church support the truth just as a pillar and base support a building"

#### 1 Timothy 3:16

##### We all agree

"No one can deny"

##### that the mystery of godliness is great

"that the truth that God has revealed is great"

##### He was revealed ... up in glory

This is most likely a song or poem that Paul is quoting. If your language has a way of indicating that this is poetry you could use it here. Some modern translations read, "God was revealed" or "God appeared." If Paul is quoting a song or poem, the word "he" refers to Jesus Christ. If he is not quoting, the word "he" could refer to either God or Jesus Christ.

##### in the flesh

"as a true human being"

##### was vindicated by the Spirit

"the Holy Spirit confirmed that he was who he said he was"

##### was seen by angels

"the angels saw him"

##### was proclaimed among nations

"people in many nations told others about him"

##### was believed on in the world

"people in many parts of the world believed in him"

##### was taken up in glory

"God the Father took him up to heaven in glory". This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father. This means he received power from God the Father and he is worthy of honor.

Chapter 4

1Now the Spirit clearly says that in later times some people will leave the faith and pay attention to deceitful spirits and the teachings of demons2by the hypocrisy of liars, their own consciences having been seared.3They will forbid people to marry and require them to abstain from foods that God created to be received with thanksgiving by those who believe and know the truth.4For every creation of God is good, and nothing received with thanksgiving is to be rejected.5For it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer.

6If you place these things before the brothers, you will be a good servant of Jesus Christ. For you are being nourished by the words of faith and by the good teaching that you have followed.7But reject profane stories loved by old women. Instead, train yourself in godliness.8For bodily training is a little useful, but godliness is useful for all things. It holds promise for this life now and the life to come.9This message is trustworthy and worthy of full acceptance.10For it is for this that we labor and struggle. For we hope in the living God, who is the Savior of all people, but especially of believers.11Instruct the people and teach these things.12Let no one despise your youth, but be an example for the believers in speech, conduct, love, faithfulness, and purity.13Until I come, attend to the reading, to the exhortation, and to the teaching.14Do not neglect the gift that is in you, which was given to you through prophecy, with the laying on of the hands of the elders.15Care for these things. Be in them, so that your progress may be evident to all people.16Give careful attention to yourself and to the teaching. Continue in these things. For by doing so, you will save yourself and those who listen to you.

#### 1 Timothy 4:1

##### in later times

These words could refer to 1) a time after Paul dies or 2) a later time in Paul's own life.

##### leave the faith

"stop trusting in Jesus"

##### and pay attention

"and give attention"

##### deceitful spirits and the teachings of demons

"spirits who trick people and the things that demons teach"

#### 1 Timothy 4:2

##### by the hypocrisy of liars

"They will learn these things by the hypocrisy of liars"

##### their own consciences having been seared

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is speaking of people who can no longer tell that they are doing wrong as if their minds were skin that someone had burned with a hot iron. or 2) Paul is speaking of these people as if Satan had put a mark on them with a hot iron to indicate that they belong to him.

#### 1 Timothy 4:3

##### They will

"These people will"

##### forbid people to marry

"forbid believers to marry"

##### require them to abstain from foods

"they will not allow people to eat certain foods"

#### 1 Timothy 4:4

##### For every creation of God is good

"everything that God has created is good"

##### nothing received with thanksgiving is to be rejected

"we should not refuse anything for which we give thanks to God"

#### 1 Timothy 4:5

##### it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer

"it is dedicated for God's use by praying in agreement with his word"

##### it is sanctified

"we have set it apart"

#### 1 Timothy 4:6

##### If you place these things before the brothers

"If you help the believers remember these things"

##### these things

This refers to the teaching that started in 1 Timothy 3:16.

##### you are being nourished by the words of faith and by the good teaching that you have followed

"the words of faith and the good teaching that you have followed are causing you to trust more strongly in Christ"

##### words of faith

"words that cause people to believe"

#### 1 Timothy 4:7

##### profane stories loved by old women

"ungodly stories and old wives' tales." "Profane" here refers to stories that purposely dishonor God.

##### loved by old women

"silly" or "absurd." Paul is not purposely insulting women in his reference to "old women." Instead, he and his audience knew that there are more women than men whose minds have become feeble due to old age.

##### train yourself in godliness

"train yourself to act in ways that please God"

#### 1 Timothy 4:8

##### bodily training

"physical exercise"

##### holds promise for this life

"is beneficial to this life"

#### 1 Timothy 4:9

##### worthy of full acceptance

"worthy of your complete belief"

#### 1 Timothy 4:10

##### For it is for this

"This is the reason"

##### labor and struggle

The word "labor" here refers to working very hard.

##### For we hope in the living God ... believers

"For we confidently expect that the living God... believers, will do what he promised to do" or "For we fully trust in the living God ... believers"

##### the living God

"the God who is alive," or "God, who acts," or "God, who gives life to all living beings."

##### but especially of believers

"but he is especially the Savior of those people who believe"

#### 1 Timothy 4:11

##### Instruct the people and teach these things

"Instruct and teach these things I just mentioned"

#### 1 Timothy 4:12

##### Let no one despise your youth

"Do not let anyone consider you less important because you are young"

##### in speech, conduct, love, faithfulness, and purity

"by speaking and doing what is right, by loving others, and by being faithful and pure"

#### 1 Timothy 4:13

##### attend to the reading, to the exhortation, and to the teaching

"continue reading the scripture to the people, exhorting the people, and teaching the people"

#### 1 Timothy 4:14

##### Do not neglect the gift that is in you

"Do not neglect your spiritual gift"

##### Do not neglect

"Be sure to use"

##### which was given to you through prophecy

"which you received when leaders of the church spoke God's word"

##### laying on of the hands of the elders

This was a ceremony in which the church leaders put their hands on Timothy and prayed that God would enable him to do the work he had commanded him to do.

#### 1 Timothy 4:15

##### Care for these things. Be in them

"Do all these things and live according to them"

##### so that your progress may be evident to all people

"so other people will know that you are serving God better and better"

#### 1 Timothy 4:16

##### Give careful attention to yourself and to the teaching

"Conduct yourself carefully and give attention to the teaching"

##### Continue in these things

"Continue to do these things"

##### you will save yourself and those who listen to you

Possible meanings are 1) Timothy will save himself and those who hear him from God's judgment or 2) Timothy will save himself and those who hear him from the influence of false teachers.

Chapter 5

1Do not rebuke an older man. Instead, exhort him as if he were a father. Exhort younger men as brothers,2older women as mothers, and younger women as sisters, in all purity.3Honor widows, the real widows.4But if a widow has children or grandchildren, let them first learn to show honor in their own household. Let them repay their parents, because this is pleasing to God.5But she who is a real widow, who is left all alone, has set her hope in God and continues in offering earnest appeals and prayers night and day,6but the woman who lives for pleasure is dead even while she lives.7Instruct them in these things as well, so that they may be blameless.8But if someone does not provide for his own relatives, especially for those of his own household, he has denied the faith and is worse than an unbeliever.9Let a woman be enrolled as a widow who is not younger than sixty years old, a wife of one husband.10She must have a reputation for doing good deeds, whether it is that she has cared for children, or has been hospitable to strangers, or has washed the feet of God's holy people, or has relieved the afflicted, or has been devoted to every good work.11But as for younger widows, refuse to enroll them in the list. For when they give in to bodily desires against Christ, they want to marry.12In this way they incur condemnation because they set aside their first commitment.13At the same time, they also learn to be lazy and they go around from house to house. They not only become lazy, but they also talk nonsense and are busybodies, saying things they should not say.14I therefore want younger widows to marry, to bear children, to manage the household, and to give no opportunity for the enemy to slander us.15For some have already turned aside after Satan.16If any believing woman has widows, let her help them, so that the church will not be burdened, so that it might help the real widows.

17Let the elders who rule well be considered worthy of double honor, especially those who labor with the word and in teaching.18For the scripture says, "You must not put a muzzle on an ox while it threshes the grain" and "The laborer is worthy of his wages."19Do not receive an accusation against an elder unless there are two or three witnesses.20Correct sinners before all so that the rest may be afraid.21I solemnly command you, before God and Christ Jesus and the chosen angels, to keep these commands without partiality, and to do nothing out of favoritism.22Place hands hastily on no one. Do not share in the sins of another person. You should keep yourself pure.23You should no longer drink water. Instead, you should take a little wine for the stomach and your frequent sicknesses.24The sins of some people are openly known, and they go before them into judgment. But some sins follow later.25In the same way, some good works are openly known, but even the others cannot be hidden.

#### 1 Timothy 5:1

##### Do not rebuke an older man

"Do not speak harshly to an older man"

##### Instead, exhort him

"Instead, encourage him"

##### as if he were a father ... as brothers

Paul tells Timothy that he should treat fellow believers with sincere love and respect.

#### 1 Timothy 5:2

##### older women ... younger women

"exhort older women ... exhort younger women" or "encourage older women ... encourage younger women"

##### in all purity

"with pure thoughts and actions"

#### 1 Timothy 5:3

##### Honor widows

"Respect and provide for widows"

##### the real widows

"widows with no one to provide for them"

#### 1 Timothy 5:4

##### let them first learn

"let them make it a priority to learn"

##### in their own household

"to their own family" or "to those living in their homes"

##### Let them repay their parents

"Let them do good to their parents in return for the good things their parents have given them"

#### 1 Timothy 5:5

##### But she who is a real widow, who is left all alone

"But one who is truly a widow, who has no family"

##### has set her hope in God

"confidently expects that God will do what he promised to do"

##### continues in offering earnest appeals and prayers

"continues to make requests and prayers"

#### 1 Timothy 5:6

##### is dead

"is like a dead person; she does not respond to God"

#### 1 Timothy 5:7

##### Instruct them in these things

"Teach them these things, too"

##### so that they may be blameless

"so that no one can find fault with them"

#### 1 Timothy 5:8

##### does not provide for his own relatives, especially for those of his own household

"does not help with his relatives' needs, especially for those family members living in his home"

##### he has denied the faith

"he has acted contrary to the truth we believe"

##### is worse than an unbeliever

"is worse than those who do not believe in Jesus."

#### 1 Timothy 5:9

##### be enrolled as a widow

There seems to have been a list, written or not, of widows. The church members met these women's needs for shelter, clothing, and food, and these women were expected to devote their lives to serving the Christian community.

##### a wife of one husband

Possible meanings are 1) she was always faithful to her husband or 2) she had not divorced her husband and then married another man.

#### 1 Timothy 5:10

##### She must have a reputation for doing good deeds

"People must be able to tell others about her good deeds"

##### has been hospitable to strangers

"has welcomed strangers into her home"

##### has washed the feet of God's holy people

"has done common work to help other believers"

##### has relieved the afflicted

"has helped those who are suffering"

##### has been devoted to every good work

"has given herself to doing all kinds of good deeds"

#### 1 Timothy 5:11

##### But as for younger widows, refuse to enroll them in the list

"But do not include younger widows in the list"

##### For when they give in to bodily desires against Christ, they want to marry

"For when they prefer to fulfill their sensual desires and get married, they go against their promise to serve Christ as widows"

#### 1 Timothy 5:12

##### set aside their first commitment

"do not do what they promised before to do"

#### 1 Timothy 5:13

##### learn to be lazy

"get into the habit of doing nothing"

##### talk nonsense and are busybodies, saying things they should not say

These people should not be looking into other people's private lives and telling about them to others who are no better off after hearing.

#### 1 Timothy 5:14

##### to manage the household

"to take care of everyone in her house"

##### the enemy

These words could refer to Satan or unbelievers who are hostile to Christians.

#### 1 Timothy 5:15

##### turned aside after Satan

"decided to obey Satan instead of Christ"

#### 1 Timothy 5:16

##### any believing woman

"any woman who believes in Christ"

##### has widows

"has widows among her relatives"

##### so that the church will not be burdened

"so that the Christian community will not have to help widows whose families could provide for them"

##### real widows

"those women who have no one to provide for them"

#### 1 Timothy 5:17

##### Let the elders who rule well be considered worthy

"All believers should think of the elders who are good leaders as worthy"

##### double honor

"respect and payment" or "more respect than others receive"

##### those who labor with the word and in teaching

"those who work hard preaching and those who teach God's word"

#### 1 Timothy 5:18

##### For the scripture says

"For we read in the scriptures that"

##### is worthy of

"deserves"

#### 1 Timothy 5:19

##### Do not receive an accusation

"Do not accept as true any accusation that someone speaks"

##### two or three

"two or more"

#### 1 Timothy 5:20

##### before all

"where everyone can see"

##### so that the rest may be afraid

"so that others will be afraid to sin"

#### 1 Timothy 5:21

##### the chosen angels

This means the angels whom God and Jesus have chosen to serve them in a special way.

##### to keep these commands without partiality, and to do nothing out of favoritism

"to keep these rules without being partial or showing favor to anyone"

#### 1 Timothy 5:22

##### Do not share in the sins of another person

"do not join in another person's sin"

#### 1 Timothy 5:23

##### You should no longer drink water

Paul is telling Timothy to use wine as medicine. The water in that area often caused sickness.

##### for the stomach and your frequent sicknesses

"to help your stomach and to stop your frequent illnesses"

#### 1 Timothy 5:24

##### The sins of some people are openly known

"The sins of some people are very obvious"

##### they go before them into judgment

"their sins go before those people into judgment."

##### But some sins follow later

"But some sins follow people later."

#### 1 Timothy 5:25

##### some good works are openly known

"some good works are obvious"

##### good works

The works are considered "good" because they fit with God's character, purposes, and will.

##### but even the others cannot be hidden

"but people will later find out about even the good deeds that are not obvious"

Chapter 6

1Let all who are under the yoke as slaves regard their own masters as worthy of all honor. They should do this so that the name of God and the teaching might not be blasphemed.2The slaves who have believing masters should not show them disrespect because they are brothers. Instead, they should serve them all the more. For those who receive the benefit are believers and beloved. Teach and declare these things.

3If anyone teaches false doctrine and does not agree with the truthful words of our Lord Jesus Christ and with godly teaching,4he is proud and understands nothing. He has an unhealthy interest in controversies and arguments about words that result in envy, strife, insults, evil suspicions,5and constant conflict between people who have morally corrupt minds. They have lost the truth and they think that godliness is a way to get more money. [1](#footnote-target-1)6Now godliness with contentment is great gain,7for we brought nothing into the world, and we can take nothing out of it.8Instead, let us be satisfied with food and clothing.9Now those who desire to become wealthy fall into temptation, into a trap. They fall into many foolish and harmful desires, and into whatever else sinks people into ruin and destruction.10For the love of money is a root of all kinds of evil. Some people who desire it have been misled away from the faith and have pierced themselves with much grief.

11But you, man of God, flee from these things. Pursue righteousness, godliness, faithfulness, love, endurance, and gentleness.12Fight the good fight of faith. Take hold of the everlasting life to which you were called, and about which you gave the good confession before many witnesses.13I give these orders to you before God, who gives life to all things, and before Christ Jesus, who testified before Pontius Pilate and made the good confession,14to keep the command without spot or blame until the appearance of our Lord Jesus Christ.15God will reveal Christ's appearing at the right time—God, the blessed and only Sovereign, the King who reigns and the Lord who rules.16Only he has immortality and dwells in inapproachable light. No man sees him or is able to view him. To him be honor and eternal dominion. Amen.

17Instruct the rich in this world not to be proud and not to hope in riches, which are uncertain. Instead, they should hope in God. He offers to us all the true riches to enjoy.18Tell them to do good, to be rich in good works, and to be generous and willing to share.19In that way they will store up for themselves a good foundation for what is to come, so that they will take hold of real life.

20Timothy, protect what was given to you. Avoid the profane and empty talk and the conflicting ideas of what is falsely called knowledge.21Some men proclaim these things and so they have gone astray from the faith. May grace be with you.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some old copies add the exhortation, Stay away from such things. But the best ancient copies do not.

#### 1 Timothy 6:1

##### Let all who are under the yoke as slaves

"Let all who are believers working as slaves". Paul does not write in this chapter about whether slavery is good or bad. Paul teaches about honoring, respecting, and diligently serving masters. Paul teaches all believers to be godly and content in every situation.

##### the name of God and the teaching might not be blasphemed

"the unbelievers might always speak respectfully about the character of God and the teaching"

##### the teaching

"the gospel"

#### 1 Timothy 6:2

##### The slaves who have believing masters should not show them disrespect because they are brothers

Possible meanings are 1) it is because the believing masters are fellow believers that their slaves should not show them disrespect or 2) slaves should not think that because their masters are believers they can therefore show them disrespect.

##### those who receive the benefit

"the masters whom the slaves help with their good work"

##### and beloved

"and the slaves should love them" or "whom God loves"

#### 1 Timothy 6:3

##### truthful words

"trustworthy words"

#### 1 Timothy 6:4

##### understands nothing

"understands nothing about God's truth"

##### He has an unhealthy interest in controversies and arguments

"All he wants to do is argue"

##### controversies and arguments about words that result in envy

"controversies and arguments about the meanings of words, and these controversies and arguments result in envy"

#### 1 Timothy 6:5

##### morally corrupt minds

"wicked minds"

##### They have lost the truth

"They have forgotten the truth"

#### 1 Timothy 6:6

##### Now

"Of course"

##### godliness with contentment is great gain

"it provides great benefits for people to do what is godly and to be content with what they have"

#### 1 Timothy 6:7

##### we brought nothing into the world

"we brought nothing into the world when we were born"

##### we can take nothing out of it

"we can take nothing out of the world when we die"

#### 1 Timothy 6:9

##### to become wealthy fall into temptation, into a trap

"to become wealthy will encounter more temptation than they can resist, and they will be like an animal in a trap"

##### They fall into many foolish and harmful desires, and into whatever else sinks

"They desire many foolish and harmful things and then do things that sink"

##### into whatever else sinks people into ruin and destruction

"into other kinds of evil that ruin and destroy people"

#### 1 Timothy 6:10

##### For the love of money is a root of all kinds of evil

"This happens because loving money is a cause of all kinds of evil"

##### who desire it

"who desire money"

##### have been misled away from the faith

"have let their desires lead them away from the truth"

##### have pierced themselves with much grief

"have caused themselves to be very sorrowful"

#### 1 Timothy 6:11

##### man of God

"person who belongs to God"

##### flee from these things

"completely avoid these things"

##### Pursue righteousness

"Seek to gain" or "Do your best to act in"

#### 1 Timothy 6:12

##### Fight the good fight of faith

"Try your hardest to obey Christ's teachings with as much energy as an athlete uses in a contest"

##### Take hold of the everlasting life

"Take eternal life as your reward as a victorious athlete takes his prize"

##### to which you were called

"to which God has called you"

##### you gave the good confession

"you confessed the truth"

#### 1 Timothy 6:13

##### I give these orders to you

"This is what I command you"

##### before God, who gives life to all things

"with God, who causes all things to live, as my witness"

##### and before Christ Jesus, who testified before Pontius Pilate

"in the presence of Christ Jesus, who spoke ... Pilate" or "with Christ Jesus, who spoke ... Pilate, as my witness"

#### 1 Timothy 6:14

##### without spot or blame

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus will not find fault with Timothy or blame him for doing wrong or 2) other people will not find fault with Timothy or blame him for doing wrong.

##### until the appearance of our Lord Jesus Christ

"until our Lord Jesus Christ comes again"

#### 1 Timothy 6:15

##### God will reveal Christ's appearing

"God will reveal Jesus"

##### the blessed and only Sovereign

"the One worthy of praise who rules over the world"

#### 1 Timothy 6:16

##### Only he has immortality

"Only he has the power to live forever"

##### dwells in inapproachable light

"dwells in a light so bright that no one can approach him"

#### 1 Timothy 6:17

##### Instruct the rich in this world

"Solemnly charge those who are rich in this world"

##### not to hope in riches, which are uncertain

"not to confidently expect that they will always have what they need, because it is uncertain how long they may have their many possession"

##### they should hope in God

"they should confidently expect that God will do what he has promised to do"

##### all the true riches

"all the things that will make us truly happy."

#### 1 Timothy 6:18

##### be rich in good works

"serve and help others in many ways"

#### 1 Timothy 6:19

##### they will store up for themselves a good foundation for what is to come

"it will be as though they were storing up for themselves many things that God will give them"

#### 1 Timothy 6:20

##### protect what was given to you

"faithfully proclaim the true message that Jesus has given to you"

##### Avoid the profane and empty talk

"Do not pay attention to the ungodly and useless talk"

##### of what is falsely called knowledge

"of what some people falsely call knowledge”

#### 1 Timothy 6:21

##### they have gone astray from the faith

"they have stopped believing the truth"

##### May grace be with you

"May God give grace to all of you"

## 2 Timothy

Chapter 1

1Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus through the will of God, according to the promise of the life that is in Christ Jesus,

2to Timothy, beloved child: Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord.

3I thank God, whom I serve from my forefathers, with a clean conscience, as I constantly remember you in my prayers night and day.4As I remember your tears, I long to see you, that I may be filled with joy.5I have been reminded of your genuine faith, which lived first in your grandmother Lois and your mother Eunice, and I am convinced that it lives in you also.6This is the reason I am reminding you to rekindle the gift of God which is in you through the laying on of my hands.7For God did not give us a spirit of fear, but of power and love and discipline.8So do not be ashamed of the testimony about our Lord, nor of me, Paul, his prisoner. Instead, share in suffering for the gospel according to the power of God,9who saved us and called us with a holy calling. He did this, not according to our works, but according to his own plan and grace, which he gave us in Christ Jesus before times ever began.10But now God's salvation has been revealed by the appearing of our Savior Christ Jesus, who put an end to death and brought life and immortality to light through the gospel.11Because of this, I was appointed a herald, an apostle, and a teacher. [1](#footnote-target-1)12For this cause I also suffer these things. But I am not ashamed, for I know him whom I have believed. I am convinced that he is able to keep that which I have entrusted to him until that day.13Keep the example of the truthful words that you heard from me, with the faith and love that are in Christ Jesus.14The good thing that God committed to you, guard it through the Holy Spirit, who lives in us.

15You know this, that all who live in Asia turned away from me. In this group are Phygelus and Hermogenes.16May the Lord grant mercy to the household of Onesiphorus, for he often refreshed me and was not ashamed of my chain.17Instead, when he was in Rome, he sought me diligently, and he found me.18May the Lord grant to him to find mercy from him on that day. All the ways he served me in Ephesus you know very well.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies add to the Gentiles .

#### 2 Timothy 1:1

##### through the will of God

"because of God's will"

##### according to

"for the purpose of" or "in keeping with"

##### of the life that is in Christ Jesus

"of the life that we receive as a result of belonging to Christ Jesus"

#### 2 Timothy 1:2

##### beloved child

"who is like my beloved child"

##### Grace, mercy, and peace from

"May grace, mercy, and peace be yours from"

##### God the Father and

"God, who is our Father, and.". This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### Christ Jesus our Lord

"Christ Jesus, who is our Lord"

#### 2 Timothy 1:3

##### whom I serve from my forefathers

"whom I serve as my ancestors did"

##### with a clean conscience

"knowing I have tried my hardest to do what is right"

##### as I constantly remember you

"when I remember you continually"

##### night and day

"always" or "constantly"

#### 2 Timothy 1:4

##### I long to see you

"I want very much to see you"

##### I may be filled with joy

"I may be full of joy"

##### I remember your tears

"I remember how you cried for me"

#### 2 Timothy 1:5

##### I have been reminded of your

"I also recall your"

##### your genuine faith

"your faith that is real"

##### faith, which lived first in your grandmother Lois and your mother Eunice, and I am convinced that it lives in you also

"faith. Lois, your grandmother, and Eunice, your mother, first had genuine faith, and I am confident that you have genuine faith as well"

#### 2 Timothy 1:6

##### This is the reason I am

"Because of your sincere faith in Jesus, I am"

##### to rekindle the gift

"to start using again the gift"

##### the gift of God which is in you through the laying on of my hands

"the gift of God that you received when I laid my hands on you."

#### 2 Timothy 1:7

##### God did not give us a spirit of fear, but of power and love and discipline

"God's Holy Spirit does not cause us to be afraid. He causes us to have power and love and discipline" or "God does not cause us to be afraid but to have power and love and discipline"

##### discipline

The power to control ourselves or the power to correct other people who are doing wrong.

#### 2 Timothy 1:8

##### of the testimony

"of telling others"

##### his prisoner

"a prisoner because I testify about the Lord"

##### share in suffering for the gospel

"suffer with me for the gospel"

##### gospel according to the power of God

"gospel, allowing God to make you strong"

#### 2 Timothy 1:9

##### with a holy calling

"with a calling that set us apart as his people"

##### He did this

"He saved and called us"

##### not according to our works

"not because we did anything to deserve it"

##### but according to his own plan and grace

"but because he planned to show us kindness"

##### in Christ Jesus

"through our relationship to Christ Jesus"

##### before times ever began

"before time began"

#### 2 Timothy 1:10

##### God's salvation has been revealed by the appearing of our Savior Christ Jesus

"God has shown how he will save us by sending our Savior Christ Jesus"

##### who put an end to death

"who made it possible for people not to remain dead forever"

##### brought life and immortality to light through the gospel

"taught what life that never ends is by preaching the gospel"

#### 2 Timothy 1:11

##### I was appointed a herald

"God chose me to be a herald"

##### a herald

a person who proclaims important or official messages

#### 2 Timothy 1:12

##### For this cause

"Because I am an apostle"

##### I also suffer these things

Paul is referring to being a prisoner.

##### to keep that which I have entrusted to him

Paul is trusting Jesus to help him remain faithful, or Paul is trusting that Jesus will ensure that people continue spreading the gospel message.

##### I am convinced

"I am certain"

##### that day

This refers to the day when God judges all people.

#### 2 Timothy 1:13

##### Keep the example of the truthful words that you heard from me

"Keep teaching the correct ideas I have taught you"

##### truthful words

"trustworthy words"

##### with the faith and love that are in Christ Jesus

"as you trust in Jesus Christ and love him"

#### 2 Timothy 1:14

##### The good thing

This refers to the work of proclaiming the gospel correctly.

##### guard it

Timothy needs to be alert because people will oppose his work, try to make him stop, and distort what he says.

##### through the Holy Spirit

"with the power of the Holy Spirit"

#### 2 Timothy 1:15

##### turned away from me

"have stopped helping me"

##### Phygelus and Hermogenes

These are names of men.

#### 2 Timothy 1:16

##### Onesiphorus

This is the name of a man.

##### to the household

"to the family"

##### was not ashamed of my chain

"was not ashamed that I was in prison"

#### 2 Timothy 1:18

##### May the Lord grant to him to find mercy from him

"May Onesiphorus receive mercy from the Lord"

Chapter 2

1You therefore, my child, be strengthened in the grace that is in Christ Jesus.2The things you heard from me among many witnesses, entrust them to faithful people who will be able to teach others also.3Suffer hardship with me as a good soldier of Christ Jesus.4No soldier serves while entangled in the affairs of this life, so that he may please his superior officer.5Also, if someone competes as an athlete, he is not crowned unless he competes by the rules.6It is necessary that the hard-working farmer receive his share of the crops first.7Think about what I am saying, for the Lord will give you understanding in everything.8Remember Jesus Christ, a descendant of David, who was raised from the dead. This is according to my gospel message,9for which I am suffering to the point of being bound with chains as a criminal. But the word of God is not bound.10Therefore I endure all things for those who are chosen, so that they also may obtain the salvation that is in Christ Jesus, with eternal glory.11This is a trustworthy saying:"If we have died with him, we will also live with him.12If we endure, we will also reign with him.If we deny him, he also will deny us.13If we are unfaithful, he remains faithful,for he cannot deny himself."

14Keep reminding them of these things. Command them before God not to quarrel about words; it is of no value and only ruins those who listen. [1](#footnote-target-1)15Do your best to present yourself to God as one approved, a laborer who has no reason to be ashamed, who accurately teaches the word of truth.16Avoid profane and empty talk, which leads to more and more godlessness.17Their talk will spread like cancer. Among them are Hymenaeus and Philetus,18who have gone astray from the truth. They say that the resurrection has already happened, and they destroy the faith of some.19However, the firm foundation of God stands. It has this inscription: "The Lord knows those who are his" and "Everyone who names the name of the Lord must depart from unrighteousness."20In a wealthy home there are not only containers of gold and silver. There are also containers of wood and clay. Some of these are for honorable use, and some for dishonorable.21If someone cleans himself from dishonorable use, he is an honorable container. He is set apart, useful to the Master, and prepared for every good work.22Flee youthful lusts. Pursue righteousness, faith, love, and peace with those who call on the Lord out of a clean heart.23But refuse foolish and ignorant questions. You know that they give birth to quarrels.24The Lord's servant must not quarrel. Instead he must be gentle toward all, able to teach, and patient,25correcting his opponents with gentleness. Perhaps God may give them repentance for the knowledge of the truth.26They may become sober again and leave the devil's trap, after they have been captured by him for his will.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, Warn them before the Lord .

#### 2 Timothy 2:1

##### my child

"who is like my child"

##### be strengthened in the grace that is in Christ Jesus

"let God use the grace he gave you through your relationship to Christ Jesus to make you strong"

#### 2 Timothy 2:2

##### among many witnesses

"with many witnesses there to agree that what I said is true"

##### entrust them to faithful people

"commit them"

#### 2 Timothy 2:3

##### Suffer hardship with me

"Endure suffering as I do"

##### as a good soldier of Christ Jesus

Paul compares suffering for Christ Jesus to the suffering that a good soldier endures.

#### 2 Timothy 2:4

##### No soldier serves while entangled in the affairs of this life

"When soldiers are serving, they do not get distracted by the ordinary things that people do."

##### his superior officer

"his leader" or "the one who commands him"

#### 2 Timothy 2:5

##### he is not crowned unless he competes by the rules

"they will crown him as winner only if he competes by the rules"

##### he is not crowned

"he does not win the prize." Athletes in Paul's time were crowned with wreaths made from the leaves of plants when they won competitions.

##### competes by the rules

"competes according to the rules"

#### 2 Timothy 2:6

##### It is necessary that the hard-working farmer receive his share of the crops first

The reader should understand that Christ's servants need to work hard.

#### 2 Timothy 2:7

##### in everything

"about everything"

#### 2 Timothy 2:8

##### who was raised from the dead

"whom God caused to live again"

##### according to my gospel message

"according to the gospel message that I preach"

#### 2 Timothy 2:9

##### to the point of being bound with chains as a criminal

"to the point of wearing chains as a criminal in prison"

##### the word of God is not bound

"no one can stop the word of God"

#### 2 Timothy 2:10

##### for those who are chosen

"for the people whom God has chosen"

##### may obtain the salvation that is in Christ Jesus

"will receive salvation from Christ Jesus"

##### with eternal glory

"and that they will be forever with him in the glorious place where he is"

#### 2 Timothy 2:11

##### This is a trustworthy saying

"These are words you can trust"

##### If we have died with him, we will also live with him

This is most likely the beginning of a song or poem that Paul is quoting. If your language has a way of indicating that this is poetry, you could use it here. If not, you could translate this as regular prose rather than poetry.

##### died with him

Paul uses this expression to mean that people share in Christ's death when they trust in Jesus, deny their own wants, and obey him.

#### 2 Timothy 2:13

##### if we are unfaithful ... he cannot deny himself

This is most likely the end of a song or poem that Paul is quoting.

##### if we are unfaithful

"even if we fail God" or "even if we do not do what we believe God wants us to do"

##### he cannot deny himself

"he must always act according to his character"

#### 2 Timothy 2:14

##### before God

"in God's presence" or "with God as your witness"

##### not to quarrel about words

"not to argue about foolish things that people say"

##### it is of no value

"this does not benefit anyone"

#### 2 Timothy 2:15

##### to present yourself to God as one approved, a laborer who has no reason to be ashamed

"to present yourself to God as a person who has proven to be worthy and has no cause for shame"

##### a laborer

"like a workman"

##### accurately teaches the word of truth

"explains the true message correctly."

#### 2 Timothy 2:16

##### Avoid profane and empty talk

"Do not pay attention to ungodly and useless talk"

##### which leads to more and more godlessness

"which causes people to become more and more ungodly"

#### 2 Timothy 2:17

##### Their talk will spread like cancer

"What they say will spread like an infectious disease" or "Their talk will spread quickly and cause destruction like cancer"

##### Hymenaeus and Philetus

These are names of men.

#### 2 Timothy 2:18

##### who have gone astray from the truth

"who have started saying things that are not true"

##### the resurrection has already happened

"God has already raised dead believers to eternal life"

##### they destroy the faith of some

"they cause some people to stop believing"

#### 2 Timothy 2:19

##### the firm foundation of God stands

"God's truth is like a firm foundation" or "God has established his people like a building on a firm foundation" or "God's faithfulness is like a firm foundation."

##### this inscription

Possible meanings of "inscription" are 1) words written into stone with a chisel or 2) words impressed in wax by a king's ring.

##### who names the name of the Lord

"who calls on the Lord" or "who says he is a believer in Christ"

##### depart from unrighteousness

"stop being evil"

#### 2 Timothy 2:20

##### containers of gold and silver ... containers of wood and clay

Here "containers" is a general word for bowls, plates, and pots. If your language does not have a general word, use the word for "bowls" or "pots."

##### honorable use ... dishonorable

"special occasions ... ordinary times" or "the kinds of activities people do in public ... the kinds of activities people do in private"

#### 2 Timothy 2:21

##### cleans himself from dishonorable use

"separates himself from dishonorable people" or "makes himself pure"

##### He is set apart, useful to the Master, and prepared for every good work

"The Master sets him apart, and he is ready for the Master to use him for every good work"

#### 2 Timothy 2:22

##### Flee youthful lusts

"Completely avoid youthful lusts"

##### Pursue righteousness

"Seek after righteousness"

##### with those

Possible meanings are 1) Paul wants Timothy to join with other believers in pursuing righteousness, faith, love, and peace, or 2) Paul wants Timothy to be at peace and not argue with other believers.

##### those who call on the Lord

"those who worship the Lord"

##### out of a clean heart

"with a sincere mind" or "with sincerity"

#### 2 Timothy 2:23

##### refuse foolish and ignorant questions

"refuse to answer foolish and ignorant questions." or "refuse to answer the questions that foolish people who do not want to know the truth ask"

##### they give birth to quarrels

"they cause arguments"

#### 2 Timothy 2:25

##### correcting his opponents with gentleness

"gently correcting those who oppose him"

##### his opponents

"people who say that what he teaches is not true"

##### Perhaps God may give them repentance

"God may give them the opportunity to repent"

##### for the knowledge of the truth

"so that they will know the truth"

#### 2 Timothy 2:26

##### They may become sober again

"They may think correctly again"

##### leave the devil's trap

"stop doing what the devil wants"

##### after they have been captured by him for his will

"after he has deceived them into obeying his will"

Chapter 3

1But know this: In the last days there will be difficult times.2For people will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, boastful, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, ungrateful, and unholy.3They will be without natural affection, unable to reconcile, slanderers, without self-control, violent, not lovers of good.4They will be betrayers, reckless, prideful, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of God.5They will have a shape of godliness, but they will deny its power. Turn away from these people.6For some of them are men who enter into households and captivate foolish women. These are women who are loaded up with sins and are led away by various desires.7These women are always learning, but they are never able to come to the knowledge of the truth.8In the same way that Jannes and Jambres stood against Moses, these false teachers also stand against the truth. They are men corrupt in mind, and with regard to the faith they are rejected.9But they will not advance very far. For their foolishness will be obvious to all, just like that of those men.10But as for you, you have followed my teaching, conduct, purpose, faith, longsuffering, love, patience,11persecutions, sufferings, and what happened to me at Antioch, at Iconium, and at Lystra. I endured persecutions. Out of them all, the Lord rescued me.12All those who want to live in a godly manner in Christ Jesus will be persecuted.13Evil people and impostors will go from bad to worse, leading others astray and being led astray.14But as for you, remain in the things that you have learned and have firmly believed. You know from whom you have learned.15You know that from childhood you have known the sacred writings. These are able to make you wise for salvation through faith in Christ Jesus.16All scripture has been inspired by God. It is profitable for doctrine, for conviction, for correction, and for training in righteousness.17This is so that the man of God may be competent, equipped for every good work.

#### 2 Timothy 3:1

##### In the last days

"during this period of time before Jesus returns"

##### difficult times

These will be days, months, or even years when Christians will endure suffering and danger.

#### 2 Timothy 3:2

##### lovers of themselves

"self-centered"

#### 2 Timothy 3:3

##### without natural affection

"unloving even to their own families"

##### unable to reconcile

"unwilling to live peacefully with others"

##### not lovers of good

"haters of good"

#### 2 Timothy 3:5

##### They will have a shape of godliness, but they will deny its power

"They will appear to honor God, but they way they act will show that they do not really believe in God's power"

##### have a shape of godliness

"appear to honor God"

##### Turn away from these people

"Avoid these people"

#### 2 Timothy 3:6

##### enter into households and captivate

"enter into houses and greatly influence"

##### foolish women

"women who are spiritually weak."

##### who are loaded up with sins

"who sin often" or "who feel terrible guilt because they continue to sin.". The idea is that these men can easily influence these women because the women are unable to stop sinning.

##### are led away by various desires

"they desire to sin in various ways rather than obey Christ"

#### 2 Timothy 3:8

##### Jannes and Jambres

These are names of men.

##### stood against

"opposed" (Exodus 7:11)

##### stand against the truth

"oppose the gospel of Jesus"

##### They are men corrupt in mind

"Their minds are corrupt" or "They cannot think rightly"

##### and with regard to the faith they are rejected

"and they have shown that their faith is not sincere" or "and, according to the true teachings of the Christian faith, God has rejected them"

#### 2 Timothy 3:9

##### they will not advance very far

"they will not have much success"

##### obvious to all

"easily seen by all"

#### 2 Timothy 3:10

##### you have followed my teaching

"you have paid close attention to my teaching"

##### my teaching

"what I have taught you to do"

##### longsuffering

"perseverance"

#### 2 Timothy 3:11

##### Out of them all, the Lord rescued me

Paul speaks of God having stopped him from suffering these hardships and dangers as if God had carried him out of a physical location.

#### 2 Timothy 3:12

##### to live in a godly manner in Christ Jesus

"to live godly lives as followers of Jesus"

##### will be persecuted

"will certainly have to endure persecution"

#### 2 Timothy 3:13

##### impostors

An imposter is a person who wants other people to think he is someone other, usually more important, than who he is.

##### will go from bad to worse

"will become even more evil"

##### leading others astray and being led astray

"deceiving and being deceived" or "teaching lies and believing lies"

#### 2 Timothy 3:14

##### remain in the things that you have learned

"do not forget what you learned" or "continue doing what you have learned"

#### 2 Timothy 3:15

##### the sacred writings. These are able to make you wise for salvation through faith in Christ Jesus

"what is in the sacred writings. When you read the word of God, you can become wise so as to receive salvation from Christ Jesus by faith"

#### 2 Timothy 3:16

##### All scripture has been inspired by God

"All scripture is God-breathed" or "God has spoken all scripture by his Spirit"

##### It is profitable

"It is useful" or "It is beneficial"

##### for conviction

"for pointing out errors"

##### for correction

"for fixing errors"

##### for training in righteousness

"for training people to be righteous"

#### 2 Timothy 3:17

##### the man of God

"all believers"

##### may be competent, equipped

"may be completely prepared"

Chapter 4

1I give this solemn command before God and Christ Jesus, who will judge the living and the dead, and because of his appearing and his kingdom:2Preach the word; be ready when it is convenient and when it is not. Reprove, rebuke, exhort, with all patience and teaching.3For the time will come when people will not endure sound teaching. Instead, they will heap up for themselves teachers according to their own desires, who say what their itching ears want to hear.4They will turn their hearing away from the truth, and they will turn aside to myths.5But you, be sober-minded in all things. Suffer hardship; do the work of an evangelist; fulfill your ministry.6For I am already being poured out. The time of my departure has come.7I have fought the good fight; I have finished the race; I have kept the faith.8The crown of righteousness has been reserved for me, which the Lord, the righteous judge, will give to me on that day, and not to me only, but also to all those who have loved his appearing.

9Do your best to come to me quickly.10For Demas has left me. He loves this present world and has gone to Thessalonica. Crescens went to Galatia, and Titus went to Dalmatia.11Only Luke is with me. Get Mark and bring him with you because he is useful to me in the service.12Tychicus I sent to Ephesus.13The cloak that I left at Troas with Carpus, bring it when you come, and the books, especially the parchments.14Alexander the coppersmith displayed many evil deeds against me. The Lord will repay him according to his deeds.15You also should guard yourself against him, because he greatly opposed our words.16At my first defense, no one stood with me. Instead, everyone left me. May it not be counted against them.17But the Lord stood by me and strengthened me so that, through me, the proclamation of the message might be fully accomplished, and that all the Gentiles might hear it. And I was rescued out of the lion's mouth.18The Lord will rescue me from every evil deed and will save me for his heavenly kingdom. To him be the glory forever and ever. Amen.

19Greet Priscilla, Aquila, and the house of Onesiphorus.20Erastus remained at Corinth, but Trophimus I left sick at Miletus.21Do your best to come before winter. Eubulus greets you, also Pudens, Linus, Claudia, and all the brothers.

22May the Lord be with your spirit. May grace be with you.

#### 2 Timothy 4:1

##### this solemn command before God and Christ Jesus

"this serious command in the presence of God and Christ Jesus" or "this solemn command, having as my witnesses God and Christ Jesus"

##### the dead, and because of his appearing and his kingdom

"the dead when he returns to rule as king"

#### 2 Timothy 4:2

##### the word

"the message about Christ"

##### Reprove

tell someone he is guilty of doing wrong

##### exhort, with all patience and teaching

"exhort, and teach the people, and always be patient with them"

#### 2 Timothy 4:3

##### For the time will come when

"Because at some time in the future"

##### people

The context indicates that these will be people who are a part of the community of believers.

##### will not endure sound teaching

"will no longer want to listen to true teaching"

##### they will heap up for themselves teachers according to their own desires

"they will listen to many teachers who assure them that there is nothing wrong with their sinful desires"

##### who say what their itching ears want to hear

"who say only what they want so much to hear"

#### 2 Timothy 4:4

##### They will turn their hearing away from the truth

"They will no longer pay attention to the truth"

##### they will turn aside to myths

"they will pay attention to teachings that are not true"

#### 2 Timothy 4:5

##### be sober-minded

"think clearly"

#### 2 Timothy 4:6

##### I am already being poured out

Paul speaks of his readiness to die as if he were a cup of wine being poured out as a sacrifice to God.

##### The time of my departure has come

"Soon I will die and leave this world"

#### 2 Timothy 4:7

##### I have fought the good fight

"I have done my best"

##### I have kept the faith

"I have been faithful in doing my ministry" or "I have kept the teachings about what we believe from any error"

#### 2 Timothy 4:8

##### The crown of righteousness has been reserved for me

"God has reserved the crown of righteousness for me"

##### crown of righteousness

Just as the judge of a race gives a crown to the winner, when Paul finishes his life, God will declare that Paul is righteous.

##### on that day

"on the day when the Lord comes again" or "on the day when God judges people"

##### but also to all those who have loved his appearing

"but also he will give it to those who are eagerly waiting for him to return"

#### 2 Timothy 4:10

##### Demas ... Crescens ... Titus

These are names of men.

##### He loves this present world

Possible meanings are 1) he loves the temporary comforts of this world or 2) he is afraid he will die if he remains with Paul.

##### Crescens went ... and Titus went

These two men had left Paul, but Paul is not saying that they also "love this present world" like Demas.

##### Dalmatia

This is the name of a land region.

#### 2 Timothy 4:11

##### he is useful to me in the service

"he can help me in the ministry"

#### 2 Timothy 4:13

##### Carpus

This is the name of a man.

##### the books

This refers to scrolls. A scroll was a type of book made of one long sheet of papyrus or leather.

##### especially the parchments

"especially those made from animal skins"

#### 2 Timothy 4:14

##### Alexander the coppersmith displayed

"Alexander, who works with metal, displayed"

##### displayed many evil deeds against me

"did many evil things to me"

##### The Lord will repay him according to his deeds

"The Lord will punish him for what he has done"

#### 2 Timothy 4:15

##### opposed our words

"opposed the message that we teach"

#### 2 Timothy 4:16

##### At my first defense

"When I first appeared in court and explained my actions"

##### no one stood with me

"no one stayed with me and helped me"

##### May it not be counted against them

"May God not count it against them" or "I pray that God does not punish those believers for leaving me"

#### 2 Timothy 4:17

##### the Lord stood by me

"the Lord helped me"

##### so that, through me, the proclamation of the message might be fully accomplished ... the Gentiles might hear

"so that I was able to speak all of the Lord's message ... the Gentiles heard"

##### I was rescued out of the lion's mouth

"I was rescued from great danger"

#### 2 Timothy 4:19

##### house of Onesiphorus

"family of Onesiphorus"

##### Priscilla

This is the name of a woman.

##### Aquila

This is the name of a man.

##### Onesiphorus

This is the name of a man.

#### 2 Timothy 4:20

##### Erastus ... Trophimus

These are names of men.

##### Miletus

This is the name of a city to the south of Ephesus.

#### 2 Timothy 4:21

##### Eubulus ... Pudens, Linus

These are all names of men.

##### Do your best to come

"Try hard to come"

##### greets you, also Pudens, Linus, Claudia, and all the brothers

"greets you. Pudens, Linus, Claudia, and all the brothers also greet you"

##### Claudia

This is a female name.

#### 2 Timothy 4:22

##### May the Lord be with your spirit

"I pray that the Lord makes your spirit strong." (Timothy)

##### May grace be with you

"I pray that the Lord shows his grace to all of you there." Here "you" is plural and refers to all the believers with Timothy.

## Titus

Chapter 1

1Paul, a servant of God and an apostle of Jesus Christ for the faith of God's chosen people and the knowledge of the truth that agrees with godliness,2with the hope of everlasting life that God, who does not lie, promised before all the ages of time.3At the right time he revealed his word through the preaching with which I have been entrusted according to the command of God our Savior.

4To Titus, a true son in our common faith: Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

5For this purpose I left you in Crete, that you might set in order things not yet complete and ordain elders in every city as I directed you.6An elder must be blameless, the husband of one wife, with faithful children not accused of being reckless or disobedient.7It is necessary for the overseer, as a manager of the household of God, to be blameless. He must not be arrogant, not be easily angered, not addicted to wine, not a brawler, and not a greedy man.8Instead, he should be hospitable, loving goodness, sensible, upright, holy, and self-controlled.9He should hold tightly to the trustworthy message that was taught, so that he may be able to encourage others with truthful teaching and correct those who oppose him.

10For there are many rebellious people, empty talkers and deceivers, especially those of the circumcision.11It is necessary to stop them. They are upsetting whole families by teaching for disgraceful profit what they should not teach.12One of their own prophets has said, "Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy gluttons."13This testimony is true. Therefore, correct them severely, so that they may be truthful in the faith,14not paying any attention to Jewish myths or to the commands of people who turn away from the truth.15To those who are pure, all things are pure. But to those who are corrupt and unbelieving, nothing is pure, but both their minds and their consciences have been corrupted.16They profess to know God, but they deny him by their actions. They are detestable, disobedient, and worthless for any good work.

#### Titus 1:1

##### for the faith of

"to strengthen the faith of"

##### that agrees with godliness

"that is suitable for honoring God"

#### Titus 1:2

##### with the hope of everlasting life

"with the confidence of receiving everlasting life"

##### before all the ages of time

"before time began"

#### Titus 1:3

##### At the right time he revealed his word

"At the proper time he caused people to understand his message"

##### with which I have been entrusted

"that he trusted me to deliver"

##### God our Savior

"God, who saves us"

#### Titus 1:4

##### a true son

"you who are like a son to me"

##### our common faith

"the teachings that we both believe"

##### Grace and peace

"May you experience kindness and peace within"

##### Christ Jesus our Savior

"Christ Jesus who is our Savior"

#### Titus 1:5

##### For this purpose I left you in Crete, that you might set

"This is the reason I left you in Crete: I wanted you to set"

##### I left you in Crete

"I told you to stay in Crete"

##### set in order things not yet complete

"finish arranging things that needed to be done"

##### ordain elders

"appoint elders"

##### elders

In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the assemblies of believers.

#### Titus 1:6

##### An elder must be blameless, the husband

"An elder must not have a bad reputation and must be the husband"

##### the husband of one wife

"a man who has only one woman" or "a man who is faithful to his wife". This means that he has only one wife, that is, he does not have any other wives or concubines. It may also imply that he does not commit adultery and that he has not divorced a previous wife.

##### faithful children

Possible meanings are 1) children who believe in Jesus or 2) children who are trustworthy.

#### Titus 1:7

##### overseer

This is another name for the same position of spiritual leadership that Paul referred to as "elder" in 1:6.

##### a manager of the household of God

Paul speaks of the church as if it were God's household and the overseer as if he were a servant in charge of managing the household.

##### not addicted to wine

"not an alcoholic" or "not one who drinks much wine"

##### not a brawler

"not one who likes to fight"

#### Titus 1:8

##### Instead

Paul is changing his argument from what an elder should not be, to what an elder is to be.

#### Titus 1:9

##### hold tightly to

"be devoted to" or "know well". Paul speaks of devotion to the Christian faith as if it were grasping the faith with one's hands.

##### truthful teaching

"trustworthy words"

#### Titus 1:10

##### rebellious people

These are rebellious people who oppose Paul's gospel message.

##### empty talkers and deceivers

"people who say useless things and deceive others"

##### those of the circumcision

This refers to the Christian Jews who taught that men must be circumcised in order to follow Christ.

#### Titus 1:11

##### It is necessary to stop them

"They must be stopped from influencing others by their words"

##### are upsetting whole families

"are ruining whole families"

##### for disgraceful profit

This refers to profit that people make by doing things that are not honorable.

##### what they should not teach

These are things that are not proper to teach regarding Christ and the Law because they are not true.

#### Titus 1:12

##### One of their own prophets

"A prophet from Crete itself" or "A Cretan that they themselves consider to be a prophet"

##### Cretans are always liars

"Cretans lie all the time"

#### Titus 1:13

##### Therefore, correct them severely

"You must use strong language that the Cretans will understand when you correct them"

#### Titus 1:14

##### Jewish myths

This refers to the false teaching of the Jews.

##### turn away from the truth

"reject the truth"

#### Titus 1:15

##### To those who are pure, all things are pure

"If people are pure on the inside, everything they do will be pure"

##### To those who are pure

"To those who are acceptable to God"

##### to those who are corrupt and unbelieving, nothing is pure

"if people are morally defiled and do not believe, they cannot do anything pure"

#### Titus 1:16

##### they deny him by their actions

"how they live proves that they do not know him"

##### They are detestable

"They are disgusting"

Chapter 2

1But you, speak what fits with truthful instruction.2Teach older men to be temperate, dignified, sensible, and sound in faith, in love, and in perseverance.3In the same way, teach older women to be reverent in behavior, not slanderers or being slaves to much wine, but to be teachers of what is good,4and so train the younger women to love their husbands and to love their children,5to be sensible, pure, good housekeepers, and to be obedient to their own husbands, so that God's word may not be spoken of as evil.6In the same way, encourage the younger men to use good sense.7In all ways present yourself as an example of good works. In your teaching, show integrity, dignity,8and a truthful message that is above criticism, so that anyone who opposes you may be ashamed because they have nothing bad to say about us.9Slaves are to be submissive to their masters in everything, to please them and not argue with them,10to not steal from them, but instead to demonstrate all good faith, so that in every way they may bring credit to the teaching about God our Savior.11For the grace of God has appeared for the salvation of all people.12It trains us to reject godlessness and worldly desires, and to live self-controlled, upright, and godly lives in this age,13while we look forward to receiving our blessed hope, the appearance of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ.14Jesus gave himself for us in order to redeem us from all lawlessness and to make pure for himself a special people who are eager to do good works.

15Speak of these things, encourage people to do them, and give correction with all authority. Let no one disregard you.

#### Titus 2:1

##### But you, speak what fits

"But you, Titus, in contrast with the false teachers, be sure to say those things that fit"

#### Titus 2:2

##### to be temperate

"to be sober-minded”

##### temperate, dignified, sensible

"temperate and dignified, to control their desires"

##### and sound in faith, in love, and in perseverance

"and they must firmly believe the true teachings about God, truly love others, and continually serve God even when things are difficult"

#### Titus 2:3

##### slanderers

This word refers to people who say bad things about other people whether they are true or not.

##### or being slaves to much wine

"and not drinking too much wine"

#### Titus 2:5

##### so that God's word may not be spoken of as evil

"so that no one insults God's word"

#### Titus 2:6

##### In the same way, encourage

"Also be sure to encourage"

#### Titus 2:7

##### present yourself as an example of good works

"show yourself to be an example of one who does right and proper things"

#### Titus 2:8

##### a truthful message

"trustworthy words"

#### Titus 2:9

##### their masters

"their own masters"

##### in everything

"in every situation"

##### please them

"satisfy their masters"

#### Titus 2:10

##### demonstrate all good faith

"show that they are worthy of their masters' trust"

##### in every way

"in everything they do"

##### they may bring credit to the teaching about God our Savior

"they may cause people to understand that the teaching about God our Savior is good"

##### God our Savior

"our God who saves us"

#### Titus 2:11

##### the grace of God has appeared

Paul speaks of the grace of God as if it were a person who goes to other people.

#### Titus 2:12

##### trains us

Paul speaks of the grace of God (Titus 2:11) as if it were a person who goes to other people and trains them to live holy lives.

##### trains us to reject godlessness

"teaches us not to dishonor God"

##### worldly desires

"strong desires for the things of this world" or "strong desires for sinful pleasures"

##### in this age

"as we live in this world"

#### Titus 2:13

##### we look forward to receiving

"we eagerly wait to receive"

##### our blessed hope, the appearance of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ

"the good thing for which we confidently wait, that is, the glorious appearance of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ"

#### Titus 2:14

##### gave himself for us

"gave himself to die for us"

##### to redeem us from all lawlessness

Paul speaks of Jesus as if he were setting slaves free from their evil master.

##### a special people

A group of people that he treasures.

##### are eager

"have a strong desire"

#### Titus 2:15

##### give correction with all authority

"correct with all authority those people who do not do these things"

##### Let no one

"Do not allow anyone to"

##### disregard you

"refuse to listen to your words"

Chapter 3

1Remind them to submit to rulers and authorities, to obey them, to be ready for every good work,2to insult no one, to not be eager to fight, and to be gentle, showing all humility toward everyone.3For once we ourselves were thoughtless and disobedient. We were led astray and enslaved by various desires and pleasures. We lived in evil and envy. We were detestable and hated one another.4But when the kindness of God our Savior and his love for mankind appeared,5it was not by works of righteousness that we did, but by his mercy that he saved us, through the washing of new birth and renewal by the Holy Spirit,6whom God richly poured on us through our Savior Jesus Christ,7so that having been justified by his grace, we might become heirs having the hope of eternal life.8This message is trustworthy. I want you to insist on these things, so that those who have believed in God may be careful to engage themselves in good works. These things are good and useful for everyone.9But avoid foolish debates and genealogies and strife and conflict about the law. Those things are unprofitable and worthless.10Reject anyone who is causing divisions among you, after one or two warnings,11knowing that such a person has turned from the right way and is sinning and condemns himself.

12When I send Artemas or Tychicus to you, hurry and come to me at Nicopolis, where I have decided to spend the winter.13Do everything you can to send on their way Zenas the lawyer and Apollos, so that they lack nothing.14Our people must learn to engage themselves in good works that provide for urgent needs, and so not be unfruitful.

15All those who are with me greet you. Greet those who love us in faith. Grace be with all of you.

#### Titus 3:1

##### submit to rulers and authorities, to obey them

"do as the political rulers and government authorities say by obeying them"

##### rulers and authorities

These words have similar meanings and are used together to include everyone who holds authority in the government.

##### be ready for every good work

"be ready to do good whenever there is opportunity"

#### Titus 3:2

##### to insult no one

"to speak evil of no one"

#### Titus 3:3

##### For once we ourselves

"This is because we ourselves were once"

##### once

"formerly" or "previously"

##### we ourselves

"even we" or "we also"

##### were thoughtless

"were foolish" or "were unwise"

##### We were led astray and enslaved by various desires and pleasures

"Various desires and pleasures had lied to us and so led us astray" or "We had allowed ourselves to believe the lie that various desires and pleasures could make us happy, and then we were unable to control our feelings or stop doing things we thought would give us pleasure"

##### We lived in evil and envy

"We were always doing evil things and not wanting others to have good things"

##### We were detestable

"We caused others to hate us"

#### Titus 3:4

##### when the kindness of God our Savior and his love for mankind appeared

Paul speaks of God's kindness and love as if they were people that came into our sight.

#### Titus 3:5

##### by his mercy

"because he had mercy on us"

##### washing of new birth

Paul is probably speaking of God's forgiveness for sinners as if God were physically washing them and he is also speaking of sinners who become responsive to God as if they had been born again.

#### Titus 3:6

##### whom God richly poured on us

"whom God gave to us generously". It is common for New Testament writers to speak of the Holy Spirit as a liquid that God can pour out in large amounts.

##### through our Savior Jesus Christ

"when Jesus Christ saved us"

#### Titus 3:7

##### having been justified

"since God has declared us to be without sin"

##### we might become heirs having the hope of eternal life

"we might become like God's heirs, confidently waiting to inherit eternal life" or "we might have the confident expectation that God will cause us to live forever". The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were heirs, inheriting property and wealth from a family member.

#### Titus 3:8

##### may be careful to engage themselves in good works

"may seek to do good works"

#### Titus 3:9

##### But avoid foolish debates

"So avoid arguments concerning unimportant matters"

##### genealogies

This is the study of family kinship relationships.

##### strife

arguments

##### the law

"the law of Moses"

#### Titus 3:10

##### Reject anyone

"Have everyone stay away from anyone"

##### after one or two warnings

"after you have warned that person once or twice"

#### Titus 3:11

##### such a person

"a person like that"

##### has turned from the right way

Paul speaks of someone who has rejected the truth as if he had left the correct path on which he had been walking.

##### condemns himself

"brings judgment on himself"

#### Titus 3:12

##### When I send

"After I send"

##### Artemas ... Tychicus

These are men's names.

##### spend the winter

"stay until winter has ended"

#### Titus 3:13

##### Zenas ... Apollos

These are men's names.

#### Titus 3:14

##### Our people

Paul is referring to the believers in Crete.

##### that provide for urgent needs

"that help people who need important things immediately"

##### needs, and so not be unfruitful

"needs; in this way they will be fruitful" or "needs, and so they will do good works". Paul speaks of people doing good works as if they were trees bearing good fruit.

#### Titus 3:15

##### All those

"All the people"

##### those who love us in faith

"the believers who love us" or "the believers who love us because we share the same belief"

##### Grace be with all of you

"May God's grace be with you"

## Philemon

Chapter 1

1Paul, a prisoner of Christ Jesus, and the brother Timothy, to Philemon, our dear friend and fellow worker,2and to Apphia our sister, and to Archippus our fellow soldier, and to the church that meets in your home:

3May grace be to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

4I always thank my God when I mention you in my prayers,5because I hear about the faith that you have toward the Lord Jesus and the love you have for all his holy people.6I pray that the sharing of your faith may be effective, so you will have a full understanding of every good thing we have in Christ.7For I have had much joy and comfort because of your love, because the hearts of God's holy people have been refreshed by you, brother.

8Therefore, although I have all the boldness in Christ to command you to do what you should do,9yet because of love, I appeal to you instead—I, Paul, an old man, and now a prisoner for Christ Jesus.10I am appealing to you concerning my child Onesimus, whom I have fathered in my chains.11For he once was useless to you, but now he is useful both to you and to me.12I have sent him back to you, he who is my very heart.13I wish I could have kept him with me so he could serve me for you while I am in chains for the sake of the gospel.14But I did not want to do anything without your consent. I did not want your good deed to be from necessity but from good will.15Perhaps for this he was separated from you for a time, so that you might have him back forever.16No longer would he be a slave, but better than a slave, a beloved brother. He is beloved especially to me, and much more so to you, in both the flesh and in the Lord.17So if you have me as a partner, receive him as me.18If he has wronged you or owes you anything, charge that to me.19I, Paul, write this with my own hand. I myself will pay it back—not to mention that you owe me your own self!20Yes, brother, let me benefit from you in the Lord; refresh my heart in Christ.

21Confident about your obedience, I am writing to you. I know that you will do even more than I ask.22At the same time, prepare a guest room for me, for I hope that through your prayers I will be returned to you.

23Epaphras, my fellow prisoner in Christ Jesus, greets you.24So do Mark, Aristarchus, Demas, and Luke, my fellow workers.

25The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit. Amen.

#### Philemon 1:1

##### Paul, a prisoner of Christ Jesus, and the brother Timothy, to Philemon

"I, Paul, a prisoner of Christ Jesus, and Timothy, our brother, are writing this letter to Philemon". Your language may have a particular way of introducing the authors of a letter. Three times Paul identifies himself as the author of this letter. Evidently Timothy was with him and probably wrote the words down as Paul said them. People opposing Paul's preaching had punished him by putting him into prison.

##### brother

Here this means a fellow Christian.

##### our dear friend

The word "our" here refers to Paul and those with him but not to the reader.

##### and fellow worker

"who, like us, works to spread the gospel"

#### Philemon 1:2

##### Apphia our sister

"Apphia our fellow believer" or "Apphia our spiritual sister"

##### Archippus our fellow soldier

"Archippus, who also fights the spiritual battle with us"

#### Philemon 1:3

##### May grace be to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ

"May God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ give you grace and peace."

##### God our Father

The word "our" here refers to Paul, those with him, and the reader.

#### Philemon 1:6

##### the sharing of your faith may be effective

"the way you tell others what you believe may cause them to believe also"

##### be effective, so you will have a full understanding of every good thing we have

"have a good result, and you will completely understand all the good things we have"

##### in Christ

"because of Christ"

#### Philemon 1:7

##### the hearts of God's holy people have been refreshed by you

"you have encouraged believers"

##### you, brother

"you, dear friend"

#### Philemon 1:8

##### all the boldness in Christ

"courage because Christ has given me authority"

#### Philemon 1:9

##### yet because of love

"because I love you"

#### Philemon 1:10

##### my child Onesimus

"my spiritual son Onesimus"

##### Onesimus

The name "Onesimus" means "profitable" or "useful". He was apparently Philemon's slave and had stolen something and run away.

##### whom I have fathered in my chains

"who became my spiritual son when I taught him about Christ and he received new life while I was in my chains" or "who became like a son to me while I was in my chains"

##### in my chains

"while I was in prison"

#### Philemon 1:12

##### I have sent him back to you

Paul was probably sending Onesimus with another believer who carried this letter.

##### who is my very heart

"whom I love dearly"

#### Philemon 1:13

##### so he could serve me for you

"so that, since you cannot be here, he might help me" or "so that he could help me in your place"

##### while I am in chains

"while I am in prison"

##### for the sake of the gospel

"because I preach the gospel". Paul was in prison because he preached the gospel publicly.

#### Philemon 1:14

##### But I did not want to do anything without your consent

"But I wanted to make sure that you approved of everything I did"

##### I did not want your good deed to be from necessity but from good will

"I did not want you to do this good deed because I commanded you to do it, but because you wanted to do it" or "but because you freely chose to do the right thing"

#### Philemon 1:15

##### Perhaps for this he was separated from you for a time, so that

"Perhaps the reason God took Onesimus away from you during this time was so that"

#### Philemon 1:16

##### better than a slave

"more valuable than a slave"

##### a beloved brother

"a precious brother in Christ"

##### much more so to you

"he means even more to you"

##### in both the flesh

"both as a man." Paul is referring to Onesimus' being a trustworthy servant.

##### in the Lord

"as a brother in the Lord"

#### Philemon 1:17

##### if you have me as a partner

"if you think of me as a fellow worker for Christ"

#### Philemon 1:18

##### charge that to me

"say that I am the one who owes you"

#### Philemon 1:19

##### I, Paul, write this with my own hand

"I, Paul, write this myself." Paul wrote this part with his own hand so that Philemon would know that the words were really from Paul.

##### not to mention

"I do not need to remind you" or "You already know".

##### you owe me your own self

"you owe me your own life." or "you owe me much because I saved your life"

#### Philemon 1:20

##### refresh my heart in Christ

"encourage me in Christ" or "refresh my heart in Christ by accepting Onesimus kindly"

#### Philemon 1:21

##### Confident about your obedience

"Because I am sure that you will do what I ask"

#### Philemon 1:22

##### At the same time

"Also"

##### prepare a guest room for me

"make a room in your house ready for me."

##### for I hope that through your prayers I will be returned to you

"for I confidently expect that God will answer your prayers and send me back to you"

##### your ... you

These words are plural and refer to Philemon, Apphia, Archippus, and the other Christians that meet in their home.

#### Philemon 1:23

##### Epaphras

This man is a fellow believer and prisoner with Paul.

##### my fellow prisoner in Christ Jesus

"who is in prison with me because he serves Christ Jesus"

#### Philemon 1:24

##### So do Mark, Aristarchus, Demas, and Luke, my fellow workers

"Mark, Aristarchus, Demas, and Luke, my fellow workers, also greet you"

##### my fellow workers

"the men who work with me"

#### Philemon 1:25

##### The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit

"May our Lord Jesus Christ be kind to all of you"

## Hebrews

Chapter 1

1Long ago God spoke to our ancestors through the prophets at many times and in many ways.2But in these last days, he has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. It is through him that God also made the universe.3He is the brightness of God's glory, the exact representation of his being. He even holds everything together by the word of his power. After he had made cleansing for sins, he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high.4He has become just as superior to the angels as the name he has inherited is more excellent than their name.5For to which of the angels did God ever say,"You are my Son,today I have become your Father"?

Or to which of the angels did God ever say,  
  
"I will be a Father to him,and he will be a Son to me"?

6But again, when God brings the firstborn into the world, he says, "All God's angels must worship him."

7About the angels he says,"He is the one who makes his angels spirits,and his servants flames of fire."

8But to the Son he says,"Your throne, God, is forever and ever.The scepter of justice is the scepter of your kingdom.9You have loved righteousness and hated lawlessness.Therefore God, your God, has anointed youwith the oil of joy more than your companions."10"In the beginning, Lord, you laid the earth's foundation.The heavens are the work of your hands.11They will perish, but you will continue.They will all wear out like a piece of clothing.12You will roll them up like a cloak,and they will be changed like a piece of clothing.But you are the same,and your years do not end."

13But to which of the angels has God said at any time,"Sit at my right handuntil I make your enemies a footstool for your feet"?

14Are not all angels spirits who serve, and who are sent to care for those who will inherit salvation?

#### Hebrews 1:2

##### in these last days

"in these final days." (Deuteronomy 4:30). This phrase refers to the time when Jesus began his ministry, extending until God establishes his complete rule in his creation.

##### through a Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### to be the heir of all things

"to possess all things"

##### It is through him that God also made the universe

"It is through the Son that God also made all things"

#### Hebrews 1:3

##### the brightness of God's glory, the exact representation of his being

"glory and is just like God" or "glory, and what is true about God is true about the Son"

##### the word of his power

"his powerful command"

##### After he had made cleansing for sins

"After he had finished making us clean from sins" or "he had made it possible for God to forgive our sins"

##### he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high

"he sat down at the place of honor and authority beside God Most High"

#### Hebrews 1:4

##### He has become

"The Son has become"

##### as the name he has inherited is more excellent than their name

"as the honor and authority he has received is superior to their honor and authority"

#### Hebrews 1:5

##### For to which of the angels did God ever say, "You are my Son ... a Son to me"?

"For God never said to any of the angels, 'You are my Son ... a Son to me.'" (Psalm 2:7).

#### Hebrews 1:6

##### the firstborn

"his honored Son, his only Son" (Psalm 97:7). The author refers to Jesus as the "firstborn" to emphasize the Son's importance and authority over everyone else. It does not imply that there was a time before Jesus existed or that God the Father has other sons like Jesus. These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### he says

"God says"

#### Hebrews 1:7

##### He is the one who makes his angels spirits, and his servants flames of fire

Possible meanings are: 1) "God has made his angels to be spirits who serve him with power like flames of fire" (Psalm 104:4) or 2) God makes the wind and flames of fire his messengers and servants. In the original language the word for "angel" is the same as "messenger," and the word for "spirits" is the same as "wind." The point is that the angels serve the Son because he is superior.

#### Hebrews 1:8

##### But to the Son he says

"But God says this to the Son"

##### Your throne, God, is forever and ever

"You are God, and your reign will last forever and ever" (Psalm 45:6).

##### The scepter of justice is the scepter of your kingdom

"And you will rule over your kingdom with justice" or "And you will rule over the people of your kingdom justly"

#### Hebrews 1:9

##### has anointed you with the oil of joy more than your companions

"has honored you and made you more joyful than anyone else". Here "oil of joy" refers to the joy that the Son felt when God honored him.

#### Hebrews 1:10

##### In the beginning

"Before anything existed"

##### you laid the earth's foundation

"you created the earth". The author speaks of God creating the earth as if he built a building on a foundation. (Psalm 102:25)

##### The heavens are the work of your hands

"You made the heavens"

#### Hebrews 1:11

##### They will perish

"The heavens and earth will no longer exist"

##### wear out like a piece of clothing

The author speaks of the heavens and earth as if they were a piece of clothing that will get old and eventually become useless.

#### Hebrews 1:12

##### roll them up like a cloak, they will be changed like a piece of clothing

The author speaks of the heavens and earth as if they were a robe or another kind of outer garment, that could also be exchanged for other clothing.

##### your years do not end

"your life will never end"

#### Hebrews 1:13

##### But to which of the angels has God said at any time ... feet"?

"But God has never said to an angel at any time ... feet.'"

##### Sit at my right hand

"Sit in the place of honor beside me" (Psalm 110:1).

##### until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet

This image represents defeat and dishonor for his enemies.

#### Hebrews 1:14

##### Are not all angels spirits ... inherit salvation?

"All angels are spirits who ... inherit salvation."

##### for those who will inherit salvation

"for those whom God will save"

Chapter 2

1Therefore, we must give far more attention to what we have heard, so that we do not drift away from it.2For if the message that was spoken through the angels proved to be so reliable, and every transgression and disobedience receives just repayment,3how then can we escape if we ignore so great a salvation? This is salvation that was first announced by the Lord and confirmed to us by those who heard it.4At the same time God testified to it by signs, wonders, and various miracles, and by distributing the gifts of the Holy Spirit according to his will.

5For it was not to the angels that God subjected the world to come, about which we are speaking.6But someone has somewhere testified, saying,"What is man, that you are mindful of him?Or a son of man, that you care for him?7You made man a little lower than the angels;you crowned him with glory and honor. [1](#footnote-target-1)8You put everything in subjection under his feet."

For it was to him that God has subjected all things. He did not leave anything not subjected to him. But now we do not yet see everything subjected to him.9But we see him who was made lower than the angels for a little while, Jesus, crowned with glory and honor because of his suffering and death, so that by God's grace he might taste death for everyone.10For it was proper for God, because everything exists for him and through him, to bring many sons to glory. It was proper for him to make the founder of their salvation complete through his sufferings.11For both the one who sanctifies and those who are sanctified have one source. So he is not ashamed to call them brothers.12He says,"I will proclaim your name to my brothers,I will sing about you from inside the assembly."

13And again,"I will trust in him."

And again,"See, here am I and the children whom God has given me."

14Therefore, since the children share in flesh and blood, he shared in those things in the same way, so that through death he might destroy the one who has the power of death, that is, the devil.15This was so that he would free all those who through fear of death lived all their lives subject to slavery.16For surely it is not the angels he helps, but Abraham's descendants.17So it was necessary for him to become like his brothers in all ways, so that he could be a merciful and faithful high priest in relation to the things of God, and so that he could make atonement for the sins of the people.18Because Jesus himself has suffered and was tempted, he is able to help those who are tempted.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies add and you have put him over the works of your hands .

#### Hebrews 2:1

##### we must

Here "we" refers to the author and includes his audience.

##### so that we do not drift away from it

"so that we do not stop believing it" or "so that we do not stop obeying it"

#### Hebrews 2:2

##### For if the message that was spoken through the angels

"Because the message that God spoke through the angels". The Jews believed that God spoke his law to Moses through angels.

##### every transgression and disobedience receives just repayment

"every person who sins and disobeys will receive just repayment"

##### repayment

"punishment"

#### Hebrews 2:3

##### how then can we escape if we ignore so great a salvation?

"then God will certainly punish us if we do not pay attention to his message about how God will save us!"

##### ignore

"pay no attention to" or "consider unimportant"

##### This is salvation that was first announced by the Lord and confirmed to us by those who heard it

"The Lord himself first announced the message about how God will save us and then those who heard the message confirmed it to us"

#### Hebrews 2:4

##### according to his will

"in just the way he wanted to do it"

#### Hebrews 2:5

##### For it was not to the angels that God subjected

"For God did not make the angels rulers over"

##### the world to come

"the people who will live in the new world". The writer reminds these Hebrew believers that the earth will one day be under the rule of the Lord Jesus.

#### Hebrews 2:6

##### What is man, that you are mindful of him?

"Humans are insignificant, and yet you are mindful of them!" (Psalm 8:4).

##### Or a son of man, that you care for him?

"Human beings are of little importance, and yet you care for them!" (Psalm 144:3).

#### Hebrews 2:7

##### a little lower than the angels

"less important than the angels" (Psalm 8:5)

##### made man ... crowned him

"made humans ... crowned them"

##### you crowned him with glory and honor

"you have given them great glory and honor"

#### Hebrews 2:8

##### his feet ... to him

"their feet ... to them"

##### You put everything in subjection under his feet

"You have given them control over everything" (Psalm 8:6)

##### He did not leave anything not subjected to him

"God made everything subject to him"

##### we do not yet see everything subjected to him

"we know that humans are not in control of everything yet"

#### Hebrews 2:9

##### we see him

"we know there is one"

##### who was made

"whom God made"

##### lower than the angels ... crowned with glory and honor

See how you translated these words in Hebrews 2:7. The writer reminds these Hebrew believers that Christ became lower than the angels when he came to earth to suffer death for forgiveness of sins, and that he became a merciful high priest to believers.

##### he might taste death

"he might die"

#### Hebrews 2:10

##### bring many sons to glory

"save many believers". The gift of glory is spoken of, as if it were a place to which people could be brought.

##### the founder of their salvation

"the one who makes their salvation possible" or "the one who leads people to salvation"

##### complete

Becoming mature and completely trained is spoken of as if a person were made complete, perhaps complete in all his body parts.

#### Hebrews 2:11

##### the one who sanctifies

"the one who makes others holy" or "the one who makes others pure from sin"

##### those who are sanctified

"those whom he makes holy" or "those whom he makes pure from sin"

##### have one source

"have one source, God himself"

##### he is not ashamed

"Jesus is not ashamed"

##### is not ashamed to call them brothers

"is pleased to call them fellow believers"

#### Hebrews 2:12

##### I will proclaim your name to my brothers

"I will proclaim to my brothers the great things you have done" (Psalm 22:22)

##### from inside the assembly

"when believers come together to worship God"

#### Hebrews 2:13

##### And again,

"And a prophet wrote in another scripture passage what Christ said about God:" (Isaiah 8:17)

##### the children

"those who are like my children" (Isaiah 8:18)

#### Hebrews 2:14

##### the children

"those who are like his children"

##### share in flesh and blood

"are all human beings"

##### he shared in those things in the same way

"Jesus in the same way shared in flesh and blood"

##### through death

"by dying"

##### has the power of death

"has the power to cause people to die"

#### Hebrews 2:15

##### This was so that he would free all those who through fear of death lived all their lives subject to slavery

"This was so he might free all people. For we lived like slaves because we were afraid of dying"

#### Hebrews 2:17

##### it was necessary for him

"it was necessary for Jesus"

##### like his brothers

"like human beings"

##### he could make atonement for the sins of the people

"he could make it possible for God to forgive people's sins"

#### Hebrews 2:18

##### was tempted

"Satan tempted him"

##### who are tempted

"whom Satan is tempting"

Chapter 3

1Therefore, holy brothers, you share in a heavenly calling. Think about Jesus, the apostle and high priest of our confession.2He was faithful to God, who appointed him, just as Moses was also faithful in all the house of God.3For Jesus has been considered worthy of greater glory than Moses, because the one who builds a house has more honor than the house itself.4For every house is built by someone, but the one who built everything is God.5For Moses was faithful as a servant in God's entire house, bearing witness about the things that were to be spoken of in the future.6But Christ is faithful as a Son who is in charge of the house of God. We are his house if we hold firmly to our courage and the hope of which we boast.7Therefore, it is just as the Holy Spirit says:"Today, if you hear his voice8do not harden your heartsas in the rebellion,in the time of testing in the wilderness.9This was when your ancestors rebelled by testing me, after they had seen my deeds for forty years. 10Therefore I was angry with that generation.I said, 'They have always gone astray in their hearts.They have not known my ways.'11It is just as I swore in my wrath:'They will never enter my rest.'"

12Be careful, brothers, that none of you has an evil heart of unbelief, a heart that turns away from the living God.13But encourage one another daily, as long as it is called "today," so that no one among you will be hardened by the deceitfulness of sin.14For we have become partners of Christ if we firmly hold to our confidence in him from the beginning to the end.15About this it has been said,  
  
"Today, if you hear his voice,do not harden your hearts,as in the rebellion."

16Who was it who heard God and rebelled? Was it not all those who came out of Egypt through Moses?17With whom was he angry for forty years? Was it not with those who sinned, whose dead bodies fell in the wilderness?18To whom did he swear that they would not enter his rest, if it was not to those who disobeyed him?19We see that they were not able to enter his rest because of unbelief.

#### Hebrews 3:1

##### holy brothers

"holy brothers and sisters"

##### you share in a heavenly calling

"God has called us together"

##### the apostle and high priest

"the one whom God sent and is the high priest". The word "apostle" means someone who has been sent. In this passage, it does not refer to any of the twelve apostles.

##### of our confession

"whom we confess" or "in whom we believe"

#### Hebrews 3:2

##### in all the house of God

"to all of God's people"

#### Hebrews 3:3

##### Jesus has been considered

"God has considered Jesus"

#### Hebrews 3:4

##### the one who built everything

God's acts of creating the world are spoken of as if they were the actions of building a house.

##### every house is built by someone

"every house has someone who built it"

#### Hebrews 3:5

##### in God's entire house

See how you translated this in Hebrews 3:2.

##### house, bearing witness about the things

"house. Moses's life and work pointed to the things"

##### were to be spoken of in the future

"God would speak about in the future"

#### Hebrews 3:6

##### Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### who is in charge of the house of God

"who rules over God's people"

##### if we hold firmly to our courage and the hope of which we boast

"if we continue to be courageous and joyfully expect God to do what he has promised"

#### Hebrews 3:7

##### if you hear his voice

"when you hear God speak" (Psalm 95:7)

#### Hebrews 3:8

##### do not harden your hearts

"do not be stubborn" or "do not refuse to listen"

##### as in the rebellion, in the time of testing in the wilderness

"as when your ancestors rebelled against God and tested him in the wilderness"

#### Hebrews 3:9

##### your ancestors

Here "your" is plural and refers to the people of Israel.

##### by testing me

Here "me" refers to God. (Psalm 95:9)

#### Hebrews 3:10

##### I was angry

"I was greatly unhappy" (Psalm 95:10)

##### They have always gone astray in their hearts

"They have always rejected me" or "They have always refused to obey me"

##### They have not known my ways

"They have not understood how I want them to conduct their lives"

#### Hebrews 3:11

##### They will never enter my rest

"They will never enter the place of rest" or "I will never allow them to experience my blessings of rest"

#### Hebrews 3:12

##### that none of you has an evil heart of unbelief, a heart that turns away from the living God

"that none of you refuses to believe the truth and stops obeying the living God"

##### the living God

"the true God who is really alive"

#### Hebrews 3:13

##### as long as it is called "today,"

"while there is still opportunity,"

##### no one among you will be hardened by the deceitfulness of sin

"no one among you will be deceived by sin and become stubborn" or "you do not sin, deceiving yourselves so that you become stubborn"

#### Hebrews 3:14

##### For we have become

Here "we" refers to both the writer and the readers.

##### if we firmly hold to our confidence in him

"if we continue to confidently trust in him"

##### from the beginning

"from when we first began to believe in him"

##### to the end

"until we die"

#### Hebrews 3:15

##### it has been said

"the writer wrote"

##### if you hear his voice

"if you hear God speak" (Psalm 95:7)

##### as in the rebellion

"as when your ancestors rebelled against God"

#### Hebrews 3:16

##### Who was it who heard God and rebelled? Was it not all those who came out of Egypt through Moses?

"All those who came out of Egypt with Moses heard God, yet they still rebelled."

#### Hebrews 3:17

##### With whom was he angry for forty years? Was it not with those who sinned, whose dead bodies fell in the wilderness?

"For forty years, God was angry with those who sinned, and he let them die in the wilderness."

#### Hebrews 3:18

##### To whom did he swear that they would not enter his rest, if it was not to those who disobeyed him?

"And it was to those who disobeyed that he swore they would not enter his rest."

##### they would not enter his rest

"they would not enter the place of rest" or "they would not experience his blessings of rest". The word "they" refers to the disobedient Israelites.

#### Hebrews 3:19

##### because of unbelief

"because they did not believe him"

Chapter 4

1Therefore, since the promise of entering his rest is still allowed to stand, let us fear, so that none of you may seem to have fallen short of it.2For we were told the good news just as they were. But that message did not benefit those who did not unite in faith with those who obeyed. [1](#footnote-target-1)3For we who have believed enter that rest, just as he said,  
  
"As I swore in my wrath,They will never enter my rest."

Even so, his works were finished from the foundation of the world.4For he has somewhere spoken about the seventh day:"And God rested on the seventh day from all his works."5And again in this same passage he said,"They will never enter my rest."

6Therefore, it remains for some to enter that rest, and those who previously had the good news proclaimed to them did not go in because of their disobedience.7So God again appointed a certain day, calling it "Today," when he spoke through David much later in words already quoted:  
  
"Today if you hear his voice,do not harden your hearts."

8For if Joshua had given them rest, God would not have spoken about another day.9So there remains a Sabbath rest reserved for God's people.10For he who enters into God's rest has himself also rested from his deeds, just as God did from his.11Therefore let us be eager to enter that rest, so that no one will fall into the kind of disobedience that they did.12For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. It pierces even to the dividing of soul and spirit, of joints and marrow, and is able to discern the thoughts and intentions of the heart.13No thing that has been created is hidden before God, but everything is bare and open to the eyes of the one to whom we must give an account.

14Therefore, since we have a great high priest who has passed through the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us firmly hold to our confession.15For we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. Rather, we have someone who has in all ways been tempted as we are, except that he is without sin.16Let us then go with confidence to the throne of grace, so that we may receive mercy and find grace to help in time of need.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient copies read, But that message did not benefit those who heard it without joining faith to it .

#### Hebrews 4:1

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true" or "Since God will certainly punish those who do not obey"

##### let us fear

"we must be very careful"

##### entering his rest

"to experience God's blessings of rest"

##### none of you may seem to have fallen short of it

"none of you fail to enter into God's rest, which he promised to us" or "God allows you all to enter into his rest as he promised us"

#### Hebrews 4:2

##### For we were told the good news just as they were

"For we heard the good news just as they did" Here "they" refers to the Hebrews' ancestors who were alive during the time of Moses.

##### But that message did not benefit those who did not unite in faith with those who obeyed

"But that message benefited only those who believed and obeyed it". (See Deuteronomy 1:32)

##### unite

join

#### Hebrews 4:3

##### we who have believed enter that rest

"we who have believed will enter the place of rest" or "we who have believed will experience God's blessings of rest" (Psalm 95:11)

##### just as he said

"just as God said"

##### As I swore in my wrath

"As I swore when I was very angry"

##### They will never enter my rest

"They will never enter the place of rest" or "They will never experience my blessings of rest"

##### his works were finished

"he finished his works of creation"

##### from the foundation of the world

"at the beginning of the world" or "from the time he created the world". The author speaks of the world as if it were a building set on a foundation.

#### Hebrews 4:4

##### the seventh day

The word "seventh" is the ordinal number for "seven." The quotation, "God rested on ... works," is from Genesis 2:2 and Exodus 31:17.

#### Hebrews 4:6

##### it remains for some to enter that rest

"God still allows some people to enter his place of rest" or "God still allows some people to experience his blessings of rest"

#### Hebrews 4:7

##### if you hear his voice

"if you hear God speaking". God's commands to Israel are spoken of as if he had given them in an audible voice. See how you translated this in Hebrews 3:7.

##### do not harden your hearts

"do not be stubborn" or "do not refuse to listen"

#### Hebrews 4:8

##### if Joshua had given them rest

"if Joshua had been able to cause the people to rest" or "if the Israelites during the time of Joshua had experienced God's blessings of rest". (see Joshua 11:23)

#### Hebrews 4:10

##### he who enters into God's rest

"the person who enters into God's place of rest" or "the person who experiences God's blessings of rest"

#### Hebrews 4:11

##### let us be eager to enter that rest

"we should also do everything we can to rest with God where he is"

##### will fall into the kind of disobedience that they did

"will disobey in the same way as they did"

##### that they did

Here "they" refers to the Hebrews' ancestors during the time of Moses.

#### Hebrews 4:12

##### the word of God is living and active ... It pierces ... is able

"the words of God are living ... They pierce ... are able". This speaks about God's word as if it were alive. It means when God speaks, it is powerful and effective.

##### sharper than any two-edged sword

A two-edged sword can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts. The sword has a blade that is sharp on both edges.

##### It pierces even to the dividing of soul and spirit, of joints and marrow

The sword is so sharp that it can cut through and divide parts of the human that are very difficult or even impossible to divide. This means that there is nothing inside us that we can hide from God. The "soul" is what causes a person to be alive. The "spirit" is the part of a person that causes him to be able to know and believe in God. The "joint" is what holds two bones together. The "marrow" is the center part of the bone.

##### is able to discern

"exposes"

##### the thoughts and intentions of the heart

"what a person is thinking and intends to do"

#### Hebrews 4:13

##### No thing that has been created is hidden before God

"Nothing that God has created can hide from him"

##### everything is bare and open

"everything is completely exposed"

##### to the eyes of the one to whom we must give an account

"to God, who will judge how we have lived". God is spoken of as if he had eyes.

#### Hebrews 4:14

##### who has passed through the heavens

"who has entered where God is"

##### let us firmly hold to our confession

"let us continue to believe confidently in him, as we say that we do"

#### Hebrews 4:15

##### we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy ... Rather, we have

"we have a high priest who can feel sympathy ... Rather, we have"

##### who has in all ways been tempted as we are

"who has endured temptation in every way that we have" or "whom the devil has tempted in every way that he tempts us"

##### he is without sin

"he did not sin"

#### Hebrews 4:16

##### to the throne of grace

"to where our gracious God is sitting on his throne"

##### we may receive mercy and find grace to help in time of need

"God may be merciful and gracious and help us in time of need"

Chapter 5

1For every high priest, chosen from among people, is appointed to act on the behalf of people in the things concerning God, so that he may offer both gifts and sacrifices for sins.2He can deal gently with those who are ignorant and who have been deceived, because he himself is subject to weakness.3Because of this, he also is required to offer sacrifices for his own sins, just as he does for the people's sins.4No one takes this honor for himself. Rather, he is called by God, just as Aaron was.5In the same way, neither did Christ glorify himself by making himself high priest. Instead, the one speaking to him said,  
  
"You are my Son;today I have become your Father."

6It is just as he also says in another place,  
  
"You are a priest foreverafter the manner of Melchizedek."

7During the days of his flesh, Christ offered up both prayers and requests with loud cries and tears to God, the one able to save him from death, and he was heard because of his godly life.8Even though he was a Son, he learned obedience from what he suffered.9He was made perfect and became, for everyone who obeys him, the cause of eternal salvation.10He was designated by God as high priest after the manner of Melchizedek.

11We have much to say about Jesus, but it is hard to explain since you have become dull in hearing.12For though by this time you should be teachers, you still have need for someone to teach you the elementary principles of God's messages. You need milk, not solid food!13For anyone who only takes milk is inexperienced with the message of righteousness, because he is still a little child.14But solid food is for the mature. These are those who, because of their maturity, have their understanding trained for distinguishing good from evil.

#### Hebrews 5:1

##### chosen from among people

"whom God chooses from among the people"

##### is appointed

"God appoints"

##### to act on the behalf of people

"to represent the people"

##### so that he may offer

The word "he" refers to a high priest. The writer describes the sinfulness of the Old Testament priests, and then he shows that Christ has a better kind of priesthood, one not based on Aaron's priesthood but on the priesthood of Melchizedek.

#### Hebrews 5:2

##### He can deal gently

"The high priest can deal gently"

##### those ... who have been deceived

"those ... whom others have deceived" or "those ... who believe false things and so behave badly"

##### is subject to weakness

"is spiritually weak" or "is weak to the desire to sin"

#### Hebrews 5:3

##### he also is required

"God also requires him"

#### Hebrews 5:4

##### takes this honor

The "honor" or praise and respect that people gave to the high priest stand for his task.

##### he is called by God, just as Aaron was

"God calls him, just as he called Aaron"

#### Hebrews 5:5

##### the one speaking to him said

"God said to him"

##### You are my Son; today I have become your Father

These two phrases mean essentially the same thing. See how you translated them in Hebrews 1:5. These are important titles that describe the relationship God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### Hebrews 5:6

##### he also says

"he also says to Christ"

##### in another place

"in another place in the scriptures"

##### after the manner of Melchizedek

"in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest" (Psalm 110:4)

#### Hebrews 5:7

##### During the days of his flesh

"While Jesus lived on earth"

##### the one able to save him from death

"God was able to save Christ after Christ's death by making him alive again".

##### he was heard

"God heard him"

#### Hebrews 5:9

##### He was made perfect

"God made him perfect". Here this means being made mature, able to honor God in all aspects of life.

##### became, for everyone who obeys him, the cause of eternal salvation

"now he saves all who obey him and causes them to live forever"

#### Hebrews 5:10

##### He was designated by God

"God designated him" or "God appointed him"

##### as high priest after the manner of Melchizedek

"to be the sort of high priest that Melchizedek was"

#### Hebrews 5:11

##### We have much to say

"I have much to say"

##### you have become dull in hearing

"you have trouble understanding it"

#### Hebrews 5:12

##### elementary principles of God's messages

"basic truths of God's messages" or "beginning lessons of God's word"

##### You need milk

"You have become like babies and can drink only milk"

##### milk, not solid food

"milk instead of solid food that adults can eat"

#### Hebrews 5:13

##### takes milk because he is still a little child

"drinks milk because he is still a spiritual infant"

#### Hebrews 5:14

##### who because of their maturity have their understanding trained for distinguishing good from evil

"who are mature and can distinguish between good and evil"

Chapter 6

1So then, let us leave the beginning of the message of Christ and move forward to maturity. Let us not lay again the foundation of repentance from dead works and of faith in God,2nor the foundation of teaching about baptisms, laying on of hands, the resurrection of the dead, and eternal judgment.3We will also do this if God permits.4For it is impossible for those who were once enlightened, who tasted the heavenly gift, who were sharers of the Holy Spirit,5and who tasted God's good word and the powers of the age to come,6but who then fell away—it is impossible to restore them again to repentance. This is because they crucify the Son of God for themselves again, and publicly shame him.7For the land that drinks in the rain that often comes on it, and that gives birth to the plants useful to those for whom the land was worked—this is the land that receives a blessing from God.8But if it bears thorns and thistles, it is worthless and is near to a curse. Its end is in burning.

9But we are convinced about better things concerning you, beloved ones—things that concern salvation—even though we speak like this.10For God is not unjust. He will not forget your work and the love you showed for his name, because you served his holy people, and you are still serving them.11We greatly desire that each of you may show the same diligence to the end, in order to make your hope certain.12This is so that you will not become lazy, but imitators of those who by faith and patience inherit the promises.

13For when God made his promise to Abraham, he swore by himself, since he could not swear by anyone greater.14He said, "I will certainly bless you and give you many descendants."15In this way, Abraham obtained what was promised after he had patiently waited.16For people swear by someone greater than themselves. At the end of each of their disputes, an oath serves as confirmation.17When God decided to show more clearly to the heirs of the promise the unchangeable quality of his purpose, he guaranteed it with an oath.18He did this so that by two unchangeable things—with which it is impossible for God to lie—we, who have fled for refuge, will have a strong encouragement to hold firmly to the hope set before us.19We have this as a secure and reliable anchor for the soul, a hope that enters into the inner place behind the curtain,20where Jesus, who went before us, has entered into that place on our behalf. He has become a high priest forever after the order of Melchizedek.

#### Hebrews 6:1

##### let us leave the beginning of the message of Christ and move forward to maturity

"let us stop only discussing what we first learned and start understanding more mature teachings as well"

##### Let us not lay again the foundation

"Let us not repeat the basic teachings"

##### dead works

Sinful deeds are spoken of as if they belonged to the world of the dead.

#### Hebrews 6:2

##### nor the foundation of teaching

"nor the basic teachings"

##### laying on of hands

This practice was done to set someone apart for special service or position.

#### Hebrews 6:4

##### those who were once enlightened

"those who once understood the message about Christ"

##### who tasted the heavenly gift

"who experienced God's saving power"

##### who were sharers of the Holy Spirit

"who received the Holy Spirit"

#### Hebrews 6:5

##### who tasted God's good word

"who learned about God's good message"

##### the powers of the age to come

"how God will work powerfully in the future"

#### Hebrews 6:6

##### it is impossible to restore them again to repentance

"it is impossible to bring them back to repent again"

##### they crucify the Son of God for themselves again

"it is like they crucify for themselves the very Son of God again"

#### Hebrews 6:7

##### the land that drinks in the rain

"the land that absorbs the rain"

##### that gives birth to the plants

"that produces plants"

##### the land that receives a blessing from God

Rain and crops are seen as proof that God has helped the farmland. The farmland is spoken of as if it were a person who could receive God's blessing.

#### Hebrews 6:8

##### is near to a curse

"is in danger of God cursing it"

##### Its end is in burning

The farmer will burn everything in the field.

#### Hebrews 6:9

##### we are convinced

"I am convinced" or "I am certain"

##### about better things concerning you

"that you are doing better things than what I have mentioned"

##### things that concern salvation

"things that concern God saving you"

#### Hebrews 6:10

##### For God is not unjust. He will not forget

"For God is just. He will certainly remember"

##### for his name

"for God's name"

#### Hebrews 6:11

##### We greatly desire

"I greatly desire"

##### diligence

careful, hard work

##### to the end

"to the end of your lives"

##### in order to make your hope certain

"in order to have complete certainty that you will receive what God has promised you"

#### Hebrews 6:12

##### imitators

An "imitator" is someone who copies the behavior of someone else.

##### inherit the promises

"receive what God promised them"

#### Hebrews 6:15

##### what was promised

"what God promised Abraham". In the covenant that God made with Abraham, God promised to make Abraham's descendants into a great nation. He also promised to protect Abraham's descendants and to give them land of their own.

#### Hebrews 6:17

##### to the heirs of the promise

"to those who would receive what God promised"

##### the unchangeable quality of his purpose

"that God would always do what He said He would do"

#### Hebrews 6:18

##### we, who have fled for refuge

"we, who have trusted God"

##### will have a strong encouragement to hold firmly to the hope set before us

"will continue to trust in God just has He has placed before us to do"

#### Hebrews 6:19

##### as a secure and reliable anchor for the soul

"that causes us to live completely secure in God's presence"

##### hope that enters into the inner place behind the curtain

Confidence is spoken of as if it were a person who could go into the most holy place of the temple. It was thought to be the place where God was most intensely present among his people. In this passage, this place stands for heaven and God's throne room.

#### Hebrews 6:20

##### after the order of Melchizedek

"in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

Chapter 7

1It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him.2It was to him that Abraham gave a tenth of everything. First, the translation of his name means "king of righteousness"; then he is also "king of Salem," that is, "king of peace."3He is without father, without mother, without ancestors, with neither beginning of days nor end of life. And resembling the Son of God, he remains a priest forever.

4See how great this man was to whom the patriarch Abraham gave a tenth of the things that he had taken in battle.5The descendants of Levi who receive the priestly office have a command according to the law to collect tithes from the people, that is, from their brothers, even though they, too, are descended from Abraham.6But Melchizedek, whose descent was not traced from them, received tithes from Abraham, and blessed him, the one who had the promises.7There is no denying that the lesser person is blessed by the greater person.8In this case, mortal men receive tithes, but in that case, it is testified that he lives on.9And, in a manner of speaking, Levi, who received tithes, also paid tithes through Abraham,10because Levi was in the body of his ancestor when Melchizedek met Abraham.

11Now if perfection were possible through the Levitical priesthood (for under it the people received the law), what further need would there have been for another priest to arise after the manner of Melchizedek, and not be considered to be after the manner of Aaron?12For when the priesthood is changed, the law must also be changed.13For the one about whom these things are said belongs to another tribe, from which no one has ever served at the altar.14Now clearly it is from Judah that our Lord was born, a tribe that Moses never mentioned concerning priests.15What we say is even clearer when another priest arises in the likeness of Melchizedek.16This one became a priest, not based on a law of physical requirement, but by the power of an everlasting life.17For scripture witnesses about him:  
  
"You are a priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek."

18For not only has the former command been set aside because it is weak and useless—19for the law made nothing perfect—but also a better hope is introduced, through which we come near to God.20And it was not without an oath! Others became priests without any oath,21but he became a priest with an oath by the one who said to him,  
  
"The Lord has sworn and he will not change his mind:'You are a priest forever.'"

22By this also Jesus has given the guarantee of a better covenant.23The former priests were many in number, since death prevented them from continuing in office.24But because Jesus continues to live forever, he has a permanent priesthood.25Therefore he is also able to save completely those who approach God through him, because he always lives to intercede for them.26For it was indeed fitting that we should have such a high priest, who is holy, innocent, pure, separated from sinners, and exalted above the heavens.27He does not need, unlike the high priests, to offer up daily sacrifices, first for his own sins, and then for the sins of the people. He did this once for all when he offered himself.28For the law appoints as high priests men who have weaknesses. But the word of the oath, which came after the law, appointed a Son, who has been made perfect forever.

#### Hebrews 7:1

##### Salem

This is the name of a city.

##### Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings

This refers to when Abraham and his men went and defeated the armies of four kings in order to rescue his nephew, Lot, and his family.

#### Hebrews 7:2

##### It was to him

"It was to Melchizedek"

##### king of righteousness ... king of peace

"righteous king ... peaceful king"

#### Hebrews 7:3

##### He is without father, without mother, without ancestors, with neither beginning of days nor end of life

It is possible to think from this passage that Melchizedek was neither born nor did he die. However, it is likely that the writer means the Scriptures provides no information about Melchizedek's ancestry, birth, or death.

#### Hebrews 7:4

##### this man was

"Melchizedek was"

#### Hebrews 7:5

##### The descendants of Levi who receive the priestly office

"the descendants of Levi who become priests"

##### from the people

"from the people of Israel"

##### from their brothers

"from their relatives"

#### Hebrews 7:6

##### whose descent was not traced from them

"who was not a descendant of Levi"

##### the one who had the promises

"the one to whom God had spoken his promises"

#### Hebrews 7:7

##### the lesser person is blessed by the greater person

"the more important person blesses the less important person"

#### Hebrews 7:8

##### In this case ... in that case

These phrases are used to compare the Levite priests with Melchizedek. Your language may have a way to emphasize that the author is making a comparison.

##### is testified that he lives on

"scripture shows that he lives on"

#### Hebrews 7:9

##### Levi, who received tithes, also paid tithes through Abraham

Since Levi had not been born yet, the author speaks of him as still being in Abraham's body. In this way, the author argues that Levi paid tithes to Melchizedek through Abraham.

#### Hebrews 7:11

##### Now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

##### what further need would there have been for another priest to arise after the manner of Melchizedek, and not be considered to be after the manner of Aaron?

"no one would have needed another priest, one who was like Melchizedek and not like Aaron, to arise."

##### to arise

"to come" or "to appear"

##### after the manner of Melchizedek

"in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

##### not be considered to be after the manner of Aaron

"not be after the manner of Aaron" or "who is not a priest like Aaron"

#### Hebrews 7:12

##### For when the priesthood is changed, the law must also be changed

"For when God changed the priesthood, he also had to change the law"

#### Hebrews 7:13

##### For the one

This refers to Jesus.

##### about whom these things are said

"about whom I am speaking"

#### Hebrews 7:14

##### it is from Judah that our Lord was born

The words "our Lord" refer to Jesus.

##### from Judah

"from the tribe of Judah"

#### Hebrews 7:15

##### when another priest arises

"when another priest comes"

##### in the likeness of Melchizedek

"in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

#### Hebrews 7:16

##### This one became a priest

The words "This one" refer to the one who became priest in the likeness of Melchizedek.

##### not based on a law of physical requirement

"a law of human descent" or "a law that required priests to be descendants of priests".

#### Hebrews 7:17

##### For scripture witnesses about him

"For God witnesses about him through the scriptures" or "For this is what was written about him in the scripture"

##### according to the order of Melchizedek

"according to the priesthood of Melchizedek" (Psalm 110:4)

#### Hebrews 7:18

##### has the former command been set aside

"has God made the commandment invalid"

#### Hebrews 7:19

##### the law made nothing perfect

"no one could become perfect by obeying the law"

##### a better hope is introduced

"God has introduced a better hope" or "God has given us reason for a more confident hope"

##### through which we come near to God

"and because of this hope we approach God" or "and because of this hope we worship God"

#### Hebrews 7:20

##### And it was not without an oath!

"And God did not choose this new priest without swearing an oath!" or "And God showed how important it was by swearing an oath!"

#### Hebrews 7:22

##### Jesus has given the guarantee of a better covenant

"Jesus has told us that we can be sure that there will be a better covenant"

#### Hebrews 7:24

##### he has a permanent priesthood

"he is a priest permanently"

#### Hebrews 7:25

##### Therefore he

"Because Christ is our high priest who lives forever, he"

##### those who approach God through him

"those who come to God because of what Jesus has done"

#### Hebrews 7:26

##### exalted above the heavens

"whom God has given more honor and power than anyone else"

#### Hebrews 7:28

##### the law appoints as high priests men who have weaknesses

"according to the law, men appoint as high priests men who are spiritually weak" or "for according to the law, men who are weak against sin are appointed as high priests"

##### the word of the oath, which came after the law, appointed a Son

"God appointed a Son by his oath, which he made after he gave the law, a Son" or "after he had given the law, God swore an oath and appointed his Son". These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### who has been made perfect

"who has completely obeyed God and become mature"

Chapter 8

1Now the point of what we are saying is this: We have a high priest who has sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in the heavens.2He is a servant in the holy place, the true tabernacle that the Lord, not a man, set up.3For every high priest is appointed to offer both gifts and sacrifices. Therefore it is necessary to have something to offer.4Now if Christ were on earth, he would not be a priest at all, since there are those who offer the gifts according to the law.5They serve a copy and shadow of the heavenly things. It is just as Moses was warned by God when he was about to construct the tabernacle: God said, "See that you make everything according to the pattern that was shown to you on the mountain."6But now Christ has received a much better ministry, just as he is also the mediator of a better covenant, which is based on better promises.7For if that first covenant had been faultless, no occasion for a second would have been sought.8For when God found fault with the people, he said,  
  
"See, the days are coming—says the Lord—when I will make a new covenantwith the house of Israeland with the house of Judah.9It will not be like the covenantthat I made with their ancestorson the day that I took them by their handto lead them out of the land of Egypt.For they did not carefully obey my covenant,and I disregarded them—says the Lord.10This is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israelafter those days, says the Lord.I will put my laws into their minds,and I will also write them on their hearts.I will be their God,and they will be my people.11They will not teach each one his fellow citizenand each one his brother, saying, 'Know the Lord.'For they will all know me,from the least of them to the greatest.12For I will be merciful toward their evil deeds,and their sins I will not remember any longer."

13By calling this covenant "new," he declared the first covenant to be obsolete, and what has become obsolete and old will soon disappear.

#### Hebrews 8:1

##### we are saying

"I am saying" or "I am writing"

##### We have a high priest

The author is including the readers here, so the word "we" is inclusive.

##### sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty

"sat down at the place of honor and authority beside the throne of the Majesty"

#### Hebrews 8:2

##### the true tabernacle that the Lord, not a man, set up

People built the earthly tabernacle out of animal skins fastened to a wooden framework, setting it up in the manner of a tent. Here "true tabernacle" means the heavenly tabernacle that God created.

#### Hebrews 8:3

##### For every high priest is appointed

"For God appoints every priest"

#### Hebrews 8:4

##### according to the law

"as God requires in the law"

#### Hebrews 8:5

##### They serve a copy and shadow of the heavenly things

"They serve what is a vague image of the heavenly things" or "They serve what is only similar to the heavenly things". The words "copy" and "shadow" emphasize that the priesthood and the earthly temple were images of Christ, the true high priest, and the heavenly temple.

##### It is just as Moses was warned by God when he was about to construct the tabernacle

"It is just as God warned Moses when Moses was about to command the people to construct the tabernacle"

##### See that

"Make sure that"

##### to the pattern

"to the design"

##### that was shown to you

"that I showed you"

##### on the mountain

"on Mount Sinai"

#### Hebrews 8:6

##### Christ has received

"God has given Christ"

##### mediator of a better covenant

Christ, as mediator, made it possible for a better covenant between God and humans to exist.

##### covenant, which is based on better promises

"covenant. It was this covenant that God made based on better promises" or "covenant. God promised better things when he made this covenant"

#### Hebrews 8:7

##### first ... second

"old covenant ... new covenant"

##### had been faultless

"had been perfect"

##### no occasion for a second would have been sought

"no one would have sought a way to establish a second covenant" or "there would have been no reason to establish a second covenant"

#### Hebrews 8:8

##### with the people

"with the people of Israel"

##### See

"Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

##### the house of Israel and with the house of Judah

"the people of Israel and with the people of Judah" (Jeremiah 31:31)

#### Hebrews 8:9

##### I took them by their hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt

"I led them out of Egypt like a father leads his young child"

#### Hebrews 8:10

##### the house of Israel

"the people of Israel"

##### after those days

"after that time"

##### I will put my laws into their minds and I will also write them on their hearts

"I will enable them to understand my laws and I will also enable them to obey my law"

##### I will be their God, and they will be my people

"I will be the God they worship, and they will be the people for whom I care" (Jeremiah 31:33)

#### Hebrews 8:11

##### They will not teach each one his fellow citizen and each one his brother, saying, 'Know the Lord.'

"They will not need to teach their neighbors or brothers to know me" (Jeremiah 31:34)

##### citizen ... brother

Both of these refer to a fellow Israelite.

##### Know the Lord ... will all know me

"Know" here stands for acknowledge.

#### Hebrews 8:12

##### toward their evil deeds

"to those who did evil deeds"

##### their sins I will not remember any longer

Here "remember" stands for "think about"

#### Hebrews 8:13

##### he declared the first covenant to be obsolete

"he declared that the first covenant was no longer useful"

Chapter 9

1Now even the first covenant had regulations for worship and an earthly sanctuary.2For a tabernacle was prepared. The first room, in which were the lampstand, the table, and the bread of the presence, was called the holy place.3Behind the second curtain was another room in the tabernacle, called the most holy place.4It had a golden altar for incense. It also had the ark of the covenant, which was completely overlaid with gold. Inside it was a golden jar that held the manna, Aaron's rod that budded, and the tablets of the covenant.5Above the ark of the covenant, glorious cherubim overshadowed the atonement lid, which we cannot now talk about in detail.6After these things were prepared, the priests always entered the outer room of the tabernacle to perform their services.7But only the high priest entered the second room, once each year, and not without blood that he offered for himself and for the people's unintentional sins.8The Holy Spirit showed that as long as the first tabernacle was still standing, the way into the most holy place had not yet appeared.9This was an illustration for the present time. Both the gifts and sacrifices that are now being offered are not able to perfect the worshiper's conscience.10They are only concerned with food and drink and various ceremonial washings, regulations for the body until the time of the new order.

11Christ came as a high priest of the good things that have come. He went through the greater and more perfect tabernacle that was not made by human hands, one not belonging to this created world. [1](#footnote-target-1)12It was not by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood that he entered into the most holy place once for all and secured our eternal redemption.13For if the blood of goats and bulls and the sprinkling of a heifer's ashes on those who have been defiled sanctifies them for the cleansing of their flesh,14how much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself unblemished to God, cleanse our conscience from dead works to serve the living God?15For this reason, he is the mediator of a new covenant. This is so that, since a death has taken place to redeem those under the first covenant from their transgressions, those who are called will receive the promise of an eternal inheritance.16For where there is a will, the death of the person who made it must be proven.17For a will is only valid when there has been a death, because it has no force while the one who made it is still alive.18So not even the first covenant was established without blood.19For when Moses had given every command in the law to all the people, he took the blood of the calves and the goats, with water, red wool, and hyssop, and sprinkled both the scroll itself and all the people.20Then he said, "This is the blood of the covenant that God has commanded for you."21In the same manner, he sprinkled the blood on the tabernacle and all the containers used in the ministry.22According to the law, almost everything is cleansed with blood. Without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness.

23Therefore it was necessary that the copies of the things in heaven should be cleansed with these animal sacrifices. However, the heavenly things themselves had to be cleansed with much better sacrifices.24For Christ did not enter into the most holy place made with hands, which is only a copy of the true one. Rather, he entered into heaven itself, to appear now in God's presence for us.25He did not go there in order to offer himself many times, as does the high priest, who enters the most holy place year by year with the blood of another.26If that had been the case, then he would have had to suffer many times since the foundation of the world. But now he has appeared at the end of the ages to do away with sin by the sacrifice of himself.27Just as man is appointed to die once, and after that comes judgment,28so also, Christ was offered once to take away the sins of many, and will appear a second time, not to deal with sin, but for the salvation of those who are waiting for him.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, Christ came as a high priest of the good things that are to come .

#### Hebrews 9:1

##### had regulations

"had detailed instructions"

#### Hebrews 9:2

##### a tabernacle was prepared

"the Israelites prepared a tabernacle"

##### tabernacle

"tent"

##### The first room

"The first room in the tabernacle" or "The first section of the tabernacle"

##### the lampstand, the table, and the bread of the presence

The author assumes that his readers already know about these things.

##### bread of the presence

"bread the priests presented to God"

#### Hebrews 9:3

##### Behind the second curtain

The first curtain was the outer wall of the tabernacle, so the "second curtain" was the curtain between the "holy place" and the "most holy place."

#### Hebrews 9:4

##### Inside it

"Inside the ark of the covenant"

##### Aaron's rod that budded

This was the rod Aaron had when God proved to the people of Israel that he had chosen Aaron as his priest by making Aaron's rod bud.

##### that budded

"from which leaves and flowers had grown"

##### tablets of the covenant

This refers to the stone tablets on which the ten commandments were written.

#### Hebrews 9:5

##### glorious cherubim overshadowed the atonement lid

"glorious cherubim covered the atonement lid with their wings". Here the two cherubim are spoken of as providing shade for the ark of the covenant.

##### which we cannot

"which I cannot"

#### Hebrews 9:6

##### After these things were prepared

"After the priests prepared these things"

#### Hebrews 9:7

##### not without blood that he offered

"always with blood, which he offered."

##### blood

This is the blood of the bull and goat that the high priest had to sacrifice on the Day of Atonement.

#### Hebrews 9:8

##### the most holy place

Possible meanings are 1) the inner room of the tabernacle on earth or 2) God's presence in heaven.

##### the first tabernacle was still standing

"the outer room of the tabernacle was still standing" or "the earthly tabernacle and the sacrificial system still existed."

#### Hebrews 9:9

##### This was an illustration

"This was a picture" or "This was a symbol"

##### for the present time

"for now"

##### that are now being offered

"that the priests now offer"

##### are not able to perfect the worshiper's conscience

"are not able to make the worshiper free from guilt". A person's conscience is his knowledge of right and wrong. It is also his awareness of whether or not he has done wrong. If he knows he has done wrong, we say that he feels guilty.

#### Hebrews 9:10

##### until the time of the new order

"until God creates the new covenant"

#### Hebrews 9:11

##### good things

This does not refer to material things. It means the good things that God promised in his new covenant.

##### the greater and more perfect tabernacle

This refers to the heavenly tent or tabernacle, which is more important and more perfect than the earthly tabernacle.

##### that was not made by human hands

"that humans did not make"

#### Hebrews 9:12

##### most holy place

This means the most holy place in the heavenly tabernacle, because God himself lives there.

#### Hebrews 9:13

##### sprinkling of a heifer's ashes on those who have been defiled

The priest would drop small amounts of the ashes on the people who were defiled.

##### for the cleansing of their flesh

"for the cleansing of their bodies"

#### Hebrews 9:14

##### how much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself unblemished to God, cleanse our conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

"then certainly Christ's blood will cleanse our conscience even more from dead works to serve the living God! Because, through the eternal Spirit, he offered himself without even the smallest fault to God."

##### the blood of Christ

The "blood" of Christ stands for his death.

##### cleanse our conscience

Believers no longer have to feel guilty for the sins they have committed because Jesus sacrificed himself and has forgiven them.

##### dead works

Sinful deeds are spoken of as if they belonged to the world of the dead.

#### Hebrews 9:15

##### he is the mediator of a new covenant

See how you translated a similar phrase in Hebrews 8:6-7.

##### to redeem those under the first covenant from their transgressions

"to take away the transgressions of those who were under the first covenant." or "to take away the guilt of those who were under the first covenant." or "to take away the punishment that those who were under the first covenant deserved because they had transgressed"

##### those who are called

"those whom God has called" or "those whom God has chosen to be his children"

#### Hebrews 9:16

##### will

a legal document in which a person states who should receive his possessions when he himself dies

##### the death of the person who made it must be proven

"someone must prove that the person who made the will has died"

#### Hebrews 9:18

##### So not even the first covenant was established without blood

"So God established even the first covenant with blood" (Hebrews 8:7)

##### blood

"the death of animals sacrificed to God"

#### Hebrews 9:19

##### took the blood ... with water ... and sprinkled ... the scroll ... and all the people

The priest dipped the hyssop (a woody shrub with flowers in summer) in the blood and the water and then shook the hyssop so drops of blood and water would fall on the scroll and on the people. Sprinkling was done by the priests by which they applied the benefits of the covenant to people and to objects. Here the scroll and the people's acceptability to God are renewed.

#### Hebrews 9:20

##### the blood of the covenant

"the blood that brings into effect the covenant"

#### Hebrews 9:21

##### he sprinkled

"Moses sprinkled"

##### all the containers used in the ministry

"all the utensils the priests used in their work"

#### Hebrews 9:22

##### almost everything is cleansed with blood

"the priests use blood to cleanse almost everything"

##### Without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness

"Forgiveness of the sins of the people only comes when something dies as a sacrifice" or "God only forgives when something dies as a sacrifice"

#### Hebrews 9:23

##### the copies of the things in heaven should be cleansed with these animal sacrifices

"the priests should use these animal sacrifices to cleanse what are copies of things that are in heaven"

##### the heavenly things themselves had to be cleansed with much better sacrifices

"as for the heavenly things themselves, God had to cleanse them with much better sacrifices"

#### Hebrews 9:24

##### the most holy place made with hands, which

"the most holy place, which humans made, and which"

##### of the true one

"of the true most holy place"

#### Hebrews 9:25

##### He did not go there

"He did not enter heaven"

##### year by year

"every year"

##### with the blood of another

This means with the blood of an animal victim, not with his own blood.

#### Hebrews 9:26

##### If that had been the case

"If he had needed to offer himself often"

##### since the foundation of the world

"since God created the world"

##### to do away with sin by the sacrifice of himself

"to cause God to forgive sins by sacrificing himself" or "to sacrifice himself so that God can forgive sin"

#### Hebrews 9:28

##### Christ was offered once

"Christ offered himself once"

##### to take away the sins

"so that God would forgive the the guilt that people have before God because of the sins they committed"

Chapter 10

1For the law is only a shadow of the good things to come, not the real forms of those things themselves. Those who approach God can never be made perfect by the same sacrifices that the priests continually bring year after year.2Otherwise, would the sacrifices not have ceased to be offered? For the worshipers would have been cleansed one time and would no longer have any consciousness of sin.3But with those sacrifices there is a reminder of sins year after year.4For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins.5When Christ came into the world, he said,  
  
"Sacrifices and offerings you did not desire,but a body you have prepared for me;6with burnt offerings and sin offeringsyou did not take pleasure.7Then I said, 'See, here I am—as it is written about me in the scroll—to do your will, God.'"

8First he said, "It was neither sacrifices, nor offerings, nor whole burnt offerings, nor sin offerings that you desired. Nor did you take pleasure in them." These are sacrifices that are offered according to the law.9Then he said, "See, here I am to do your will." He takes away the first practice in order to establish the second practice.10By that will, we have been sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.11Day after day every priest stands and ministers, offering the same sacrifices again and again—sacrifices that can never take away sins.12But when Christ offered for all time one sacrifice for sins, he sat down at the right hand of God.13He is waiting until his enemies are made a footstool for his feet.14For by one offering he has perfected forever those who are being sanctified.15The Holy Spirit also testifies to us. First he says,  
  
16"This is the covenant that I will make with themafter those days, says the Lord.I will put my laws in their hearts,and I will write them on their minds."

17Then he adds, "Their sins and lawlessnessI will remember no longer."

18Now where there is forgiveness for these, there is no longer any sacrifice for sin.

19Therefore, brothers, we have confidence to enter into the most holy place by the blood of Jesus.20That is the new and living way that he has established for us through the curtain, that is, by means of his flesh.21Because we have a great priest over the house of God,22let us approach with true hearts in the full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled clean from an evil conscience and having our bodies washed with pure water.23Let us also hold firmly to the hope we confess, for he who promised is faithful.24Let us think carefully about how to motivate one another to love and good deeds.25Let us not abandon meeting together, as some have done. Instead, encourage one another, and all the more as you see the day coming closer.

26For if we deliberately go on sinning after we have received the knowledge of the truth, a sacrifice for sins no longer remains.27Instead, there is only a certain fearful expectation of judgment, and a fury of fire that will consume God's enemies.28Anyone who has rejected the law of Moses dies without mercy at the testimony of two or three witnesses.29How much worse punishment do you think one deserves who has trampled underfoot the Son of God, who has regarded the blood of the covenant as unholy—the blood by which he was sanctified—and has insulted the Spirit of grace?30For we know the one who said, "Vengeance belongs to me; I will pay back." And again, "The Lord will judge his people."31It is a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the living God!

32But remember the former days, after you were enlightened, how you endured a great struggle in suffering.33Sometimes you were publicly exposed to insult and persecution, and other times you shared with those who were so treated.34For you had compassion on those who were prisoners, and you accepted with joy the seizure of your possessions. You knew that you yourselves had a better and everlasting possession. [1](#footnote-target-1)35So do not throw away your confidence, which has a great reward.36For you need perseverance so that when you have done the will of God, you will receive what he has promised.  
  
37"For in a very little while,the one who is coming will indeed come and not delay.38My righteous one will live by faith.If he shrinks back, my soul will not be pleased with him."

39But we are not any of those who turn back to destruction, but we are among those who have faith and preserve their souls.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, For you had compassion on me in my chains .

#### Hebrews 10:1

##### the law is only a shadow of the good things to come

The author means the law is not the good things that God had promised. It only hints at the good things that God is going to do.

##### not the real forms of those things themselves

"not the real things themselves"

#### Hebrews 10:2

##### would the sacrifices not have ceased to be offered?

"they would have ceased offering those sacrifices."

##### ceased to be

"stopped being"

##### the worshipers would have been cleansed one time and would

"the sacrifices would have taken away the worshipers' sin once, and they would" or "God would have made the worshipers no longer guilty of sin once, and they would"

##### would no longer have any consciousness of sin

"would no longer think that they are guilty of sin" or "would know that they are no longer guilty of sin"

#### Hebrews 10:4

##### For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins

"For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to cause God to forgive sins"

#### Hebrews 10:5

##### you did not desire

Here "you" is singular and refers to God. (Psalm 40:6)

##### a body you have prepared

"you have made a body ready"

#### Hebrews 10:7

##### Then I said

This refers to Christ.

#### Hebrews 10:8

##### sacrifices ... offerings

See how you translated these words in Hebrews 10:5.

##### whole burnt offerings ... sin offerings

See how you translated similar words in Hebrews 10:6.

##### that are offered

"that priests offer"

#### Hebrews 10:9

##### He takes away the first practice in order to establish the second practice

"He stops people atoning for sins the first way in order to atone for sins the second way"

##### first practice ... the second practice

"old practice ... the new practice"

#### Hebrews 10:10

##### we have been sanctified

"God has sanctified us" or "God has dedicated us to himself"

##### through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ

"because Jesus Christ offered his body as a sacrifice"

#### Hebrews 10:11

##### can never take away sins

"can never cause God to forgive sins"

#### Hebrews 10:12

##### he sat down at the right hand of God

"he sat down at the place of honor and authority beside God"

#### Hebrews 10:13

##### until his enemies are made a footstool for his feet

"until God humiliates Christ's enemies and they become like a footstool for his feet"

#### Hebrews 10:14

##### those who are being sanctified

"those whom God is sanctifying" or "those whom God has dedicated to himself"

#### Hebrews 10:16

##### with them

"with my people" (Jeremiah 31:31 & 33)

##### after those days

"when the time of the first covenant with my people has finished"

##### I will put my laws in their hearts

"I will enable them to know my laws"

##### I will write them on their minds

"I will cause them to remember my laws"

#### Hebrews 10:17

##### Their sins and lawlessness I will remember no longer."

"I will no longer remember their sins and lawlessness.'" or "Then next he said, 'Their sins and lawlessness I will remember no longer.'"

##### Their sins and lawlessness

"The things they did that were forbidden and how they broke the law"

#### Hebrews 10:18

##### where there is forgiveness for these

"when God has forgiven these things"

##### there is no longer any sacrifice for sin

"people no longer need to make offerings for sin"

#### Hebrews 10:19

##### brothers

"brothers and sisters"

##### the most holy place

This means the presence of God, not the most holy place in the old tabernacle.

##### by the blood of Jesus

Here "blood of Jesus" refers to the death of Jesus.

#### Hebrews 10:20

##### living way

Possible meanings are 1) this new way to God that Jesus has provided results in believers living forever or 2) Jesus is alive, and he is the way believers enter into the presence of God.

##### through the curtain

The curtain in the earthly temple represents the separation between people and God's true presence.

##### by means of his flesh

"by means of his death"

#### Hebrews 10:21

##### we have a great priest over the house of God

This must be translated in such a way as to make it clear that Jesus is this "great priest".

##### over the house

"in charge of all the people of God"

#### Hebrews 10:22

##### with true hearts

"with sincerity"

##### in the full assurance of faith

"and trusting completely in Jesus"

##### having our hearts sprinkled clean

"as if had he made our consciences clean with his blood"

##### sprinkled

See how you translated this in Hebrews 9:19.

##### having our bodies washed with pure water

"as if he had washed our bodies in pure water"

##### our bodies washed with pure water

Possible meanings are 1) "bodies" represents peoples' entire beings, and "washed with pure water" represents Christ making a person spiritually pure or 2) this is literal and it refers to Christian baptism.

#### Hebrews 10:23

##### Let us also hold firmly to the hope we confess

"Let us be determined to continue confessing the things that we confidently expect from God"

#### Hebrews 10:25

##### Let us not abandon meeting together

"Let us not stop coming together to worship"

##### as you see the day coming closer

"as you know that Christ will return soon"

#### Hebrews 10:26

##### we deliberately go on sinning

"we know we are sinning but we do it again and again"

##### after we have received the knowledge of the truth

"after we have learned the truth about God"

##### a sacrifice for sins no longer remains

"no one can offer a sacrifice for which God will forgive our sins"

##### a sacrifice for sins

Here "sacrifice for sins" stands for "an effective way to sacrifice animals to take away sins"

#### Hebrews 10:27

##### of judgment

Of God's judgment, that is, that God will judge.

##### a fury of fire that will consume God's enemies

God's fury is spoken of as if it were fire that would burn up his enemies.

#### Hebrews 10:28

##### of two or three witnesses

"of at least two or three witnesses"

#### Hebrews 10:29

##### How much worse punishment do you think one deserves ... grace?

"This was severe punishment. But the punishment will be even greater for anyone ... grace!"

##### who has trampled underfoot the Son of God

"who has rejected the Son of God"

##### who has regarded the blood of the covenant as unholy

"by treating the blood of the covenant as unholy". Here "blood" stands for Christ's death, by which God established the new covenant.

##### the blood by which he was sanctified

"the blood by which God sanctified him"

##### the Spirit of grace

"the Spirit of God, who provides grace"

#### Hebrews 10:30

##### Vengeance belongs to me

Vengeance is spoken of as if it were an object that belongs to God, who has the right to do as he wishes with what he owns. God has the right to take vengeance on his enemies.

##### I will pay back

God taking vengeance is spoken of as if he were paying back the harmful things that someone has done to others.

#### Hebrews 10:31

##### to fall into the hands

"to receive the full punishment"

#### Hebrews 10:32

##### the former days

"the time in the past"

##### after you were enlightened

"after you learned the truth about Christ"

##### how you endured a great struggle in suffering

"how much suffering you had to endure"

#### Hebrews 10:33

##### Sometimes you were publicly exposed to insult and persecution

"People ridiculed you by insulting you and persecuting you in public"

##### you shared with those

"you joined those"

#### Hebrews 10:34

##### a better and everlasting possession

God's eternal blessings are spoken of as a "possession".

#### Hebrews 10:35

##### do not throw away your confidence, which has a great reward

"do not stop confidently trusting in God, who will reward you greatly"

#### Hebrews 10:37

##### For in a very little while

"As God said in the scriptures, 'For in a very little while" (Isaiah 26:20)

##### in a very little while

"very soon"

#### Hebrews 10:38

##### My righteous one ... If he shrinks ... with him

"My faithful people ... If any one of them shrinks ... with that person" or "My faithful people ... If they shrink ... with them"

##### My righteous ... my soul will

Here "My" and "my whole being" refer to God. (Habakkuk 2:4)

##### shrinks back

stops doing the good thing he is doing

#### Hebrews 10:39

##### who turn back to destruction

"who stop trusting God, whom God will destroy"

##### who have faith and preserve their souls

"who have faith, which will result in our living with God forever"

Chapter 11

1Now faith is being sure of the things hoped for and certain of things that are not seen.2For because of this the ancestors were approved for their faith.3By faith we understand that the universe was created by God's command, so that what is visible was not made out of things that were visible.

4It was by faith that Abel offered God a better sacrifice than Cain, through which he was attested to be righteous, and God spoke well of him because of his offerings, and by faith Abel still speaks, even though he is dead.

5It was by faith that Enoch was taken up so that he did not see death. "He was not found, because God took him away." For before he was taken up, it was testified that he had pleased God.6Now without faith it is impossible to please him. For it is necessary that anyone coming to God must believe that he exists and that he is a rewarder of those who seek him.

7It was by faith that Noah, having been given a divine message about things not yet seen, with godly reverence built an ark to save his household. By doing this, he condemned the world and became an heir of the righteousness that is according to faith.

8It was by faith that Abraham, when he was called, obeyed and went out to the place that he was to receive as an inheritance. He went out, not knowing where he was going.9It was by faith that he lived in the land of promise as a foreigner. He lived in tents with Isaac and Jacob, fellow heirs of the same promise.10For he was looking forward to the city with foundations, whose architect and builder is God.11It was by faith, even though Sarah herself was barren, that she received ability to conceive. This happened even though she was too old, since she considered as faithful the one who had given the promise.12Therefore, from this one man—and he was almost dead—were born descendants as many as the stars in the sky and as countless as sand by the seashore.

13It was in faith that all these died without receiving the promises. Rather, they saw and greeted them from far off, and they acknowledged that they were foreigners and exiles on earth.14For those who say such things make it clear that they are seeking a homeland.15If they had been thinking of the country from which they had gone out, they would have had opportunity to return.16But as it is, they desire a better country, that is, a heavenly one. Therefore God is not ashamed to be called their God, since he has prepared a city for them.

17It was by faith that Abraham, when he was tested, offered Isaac. It was his only son whom he offered, he who had received the promises.18It was Abraham to whom it had been said, "It is through Isaac that your descendants will be named."19Abraham reasoned that God was able to raise up Isaac from the dead, and figuratively speaking, it was from them that he received him back.20It was also by faith about things to come that Isaac blessed Jacob and Esau.21It was by faith that Jacob, when he was dying, blessed each of Joseph's sons. Jacob worshiped, leaning on the top of his staff.22It was by faith that Joseph, when his end was near, spoke of the departure of the children of Israel from Egypt and instructed them about his bones.

23It was by faith that Moses, when he was born, was hidden for three months by his parents because they saw he was a beautiful child. They were not afraid of the king's command.24It was by faith that Moses, after he had grown up, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter.25He chose to be mistreated along with the people of God rather than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a while.26He regarded disgrace for the sake of Christ as of greater value than the treasures of Egypt, for he was looking ahead to his reward.27It was by faith that Moses left Egypt. He did not fear the king's anger, for he endured as if he were seeing the one who is invisible.28It was by faith that he kept the Passover and the sprinkling of the blood, so that the destroyer of the firstborn should not touch the Israelites' firstborn sons.

29It was by faith that they passed through the Sea of Reeds as if over dry land. When the Egyptians tried to do this, they were swallowed up.30It was by faith that Jericho's walls fell down, after they had been circled around for seven days.31It was by faith that Rahab the prostitute did not die with those who were disobedient, because she had received the spies in peace.

32What more can I say? For the time will fail me if I give a full account of Gideon, Barak, Samson, Jephthah, David, Samuel, and about the prophets.33It was through faith that they conquered kingdoms, committed righteousness, and received promises. They stopped the mouths of lions,34quenched the power of fire, escaped the edge of the sword, were made strong when they were weak, became mighty in battle, and defeated foreign armies.35Women received back their dead by resurrection. Others were tortured, not accepting release, so that they might experience a better resurrection.36Others experienced mocking and whippings, and even chains and imprisonment.37They were stoned. They were sawn in two. They were killed with the sword. They went about in sheepskins and goatskins. They were destitute, oppressed, mistreated. [1](#footnote-target-1)38The world was not worthy of them. They were always wandering about in the deserts and mountains, and in caves and holes in the ground.

39Although all these people were approved by God because of their faith, they did not receive the promise.40God planned something better for us, so that without us, they would not be made perfect.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, They were stoned. They were sawn in two. They were put to the test. They were killed with the sword .

#### Hebrews 11:1

##### faith is being sure of the things hoped for

"when we have faith, we are sure that we will receive from God the things we confidently wait for"

##### that are not seen

"that we still have not seen" or "that still have not happened"

#### Hebrews 11:2

##### For because of this

"Because they were certain about events that had not happened"

##### the ancestors were approved for their faith

"God approved of our ancestors because they had faith"

#### Hebrews 11:3

##### the universe was created by God's command

"God created the universe by commanding it to exist"

##### what is visible was not made out of things that were visible

"God did not create what we see out of things that were visible"

#### Hebrews 11:4

##### he was attested to be righteous

"God declared that Abel was righteous"

##### Abel still speaks

"we still learn from what Abel did"

#### Hebrews 11:5

##### It was by faith that Enoch was taken up so that he did not see death

"It was by faith that Enoch did not die because God took him"

##### see death

"die"

##### before he was taken up

"before God took him"

##### it was testified that he had pleased God

"God said that Enoch had pleased him" or "people said that Enoch pleased God."

#### Hebrews 11:6

##### without faith it is impossible to please him

"a person can please God only if he has faith"

##### that anyone coming to God

"that anyone who wants to belong to God"

##### he is a rewarder of those

"he rewards those"

##### those who seek him

Those who learn about God and make an effort to obey him are spoken of as if they were seeking to find him.

#### Hebrews 11:7

##### having been given a divine message

"because God told him"

##### about things not yet seen

"about events that had not happened yet"

##### the world

"the people living in the world at that time"

##### became an heir of the righteousness

"received from God the righteousness"

##### that is according to faith

"that God gives to those who have faith in him"

#### Hebrews 11:8

##### when he was called

"when God called him"

##### went out to the place

"left his home to go to the place"

##### that he was to receive as an inheritance

"that God would give him"

##### He went out

"He left his home"

#### Hebrews 11:9

##### he lived in the land of promise as a foreigner

"he lived as a foreigner in the land God had promised to him"

##### fellow heirs

"heirs together." This speaks about Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob as if they were heirs that would receive an inheritance from their father.

#### Hebrews 11:10

##### the city with foundations

"the eternal city"

##### whose architect and builder is God

"which is designed and built by God" or "which God would design and build"

#### Hebrews 11:11

##### It was by faith

"It was because Sarah believed God ... she"

##### Sarah herself was barren

Sarah was not able to have children.

##### she received ability to conceive

"she became able to bear a child"

##### since she considered as faithful the one who had given the promise

"because she believed God, who had given the promise, to be faithful."

#### Hebrews 11:12

##### descendants as many as the stars in the sky and as countless as sand by the seashore

This means that Abraham had so many descendants that no one can count them all.

#### Hebrews 11:13

##### without receiving the promises

"without receiving what God had promised them"

##### they saw and greeted them from far off

"they believed and were glad about what God would do in the future"

##### they were foreigners and exiles on earth

This emphasizes that this earth was not their true home. They were waiting for their true home that God would make for them.

#### Hebrews 11:14

##### a homeland

"a country for them to belong to"

#### Hebrews 11:16

##### heavenly one

"heavenly country" or "country in heaven"

##### God is not ashamed to be called their God

"God is happy to have them call him their God"

#### Hebrews 11:17

##### when he was tested

"when God tested him"

#### Hebrews 11:18

##### to whom it had been said

"to whom God said"

##### that your descendants will be named

"that I will designate your descendants"

#### Hebrews 11:19

##### God was able to raise up Isaac from the dead

"God was able to cause Isaac to live again"

##### figuratively speaking

"in a manner of speaking." This means that what the author says next is not to be understood literally. God did not bring Isaac back from death literally.

##### it was from them

"it was from the dead"

##### he received him back

"Abraham received Isaac back"

#### Hebrews 11:21

##### Jacob worshiped

"Jacob worshiped God"

#### Hebrews 11:22

##### when his end was near

"when he was about to die"

##### spoke of the departure of the children of Israel from Egypt

"spoke of when the children of Israel would leave Egypt"

##### the children of Israel

"the Israelites" or "the descendants of Israel"

##### instructed them about his bones

Joseph died while in Egypt. He wanted his people to take his bones with them when they left Egypt so they could bury his bones in the land that God promised them.

#### Hebrews 11:23

##### Moses, when he was born, was hidden for three months by his parents

"Moses's parents hid him for three months after he was born"

#### Hebrews 11:24

##### had grown up

"had become an adult"

##### refused to be called

"refused to allow people to call him"

#### Hebrews 11:26

##### disgrace for the sake of Christ

"being disrespected for the sake of Christ"

##### he was looking ahead to his reward

"he was thinking about the reward he would receive"

#### Hebrews 11:27

##### he endured as if he were seeing the one who is invisible

Moses is spoken of as if he saw God, who is invisible.

##### the one who is invisible

"the one no one can see"

#### Hebrews 11:28

##### he kept the Passover and the sprinkling of the blood

"he commanded the people to obey God's commands concerning the Passover and to sprinkle blood on their doors"

##### the sprinkling of the blood

This refers to God's command to the Israelites to kill a lamb and spread its blood on the doorposts of every house where they lived. This would prevent the destroyer from killing their firstborn sons. This was one of the Passover commands.

##### should not touch

"would not kill"

#### Hebrews 11:29

##### they passed through the Sea of Reeds

"the Israelites passed through the Sea of Reeds"

##### they were swallowed up

"the Egyptians drowned in the water"

#### Hebrews 11:30

##### they had been circled around for seven days

"the Israelites had marched around the walls for seven days"

#### Hebrews 11:31

##### had received the spies in peace

"had peacefully received the spies"

#### Hebrews 11:32

##### What more can I say?

"And there are many more examples"

##### the time will fail me

"I will not have enough time"

##### Barak

This is the name of a man.

#### Hebrews 11:33

##### It was through faith that they

"It was through faith that men like these"

##### they conquered kingdoms

"they defeated the people of foreign kingdoms"

##### committed righteousness

"did righteous deeds" or "did what was right"

##### They stopped the mouths of lions

"They kept lions from eating them"

#### Hebrews 11:34

##### quenched the power of fire, escaped the edge of the sword

"they kept fire from burning them, they kept their enemies from killing them"

##### were made strong when they were weak

"they received strength from God when they were weak"

##### became mighty in battle, and defeated

"and they became mighty in battle and defeated"

#### Hebrews 11:35

##### Women received back their dead by resurrection

"Women received back alive those who had died"

##### Others were tortured, not accepting release

"Others accepted torture rather than release from prison"

##### Others were tortured

"Others allowed those who imprisoned them to torture them" or "Others endured terrible pain"

##### a better resurrection

Possible meanings are 1) these people will experience a better life in heaven than what they experienced in this world or 2) these people will have a better resurrection than those who did not have faith. Those with faith will live forever with God. Those without faith will live forever separated from God.

#### Hebrews 11:36

##### Others experienced mocking and whippings, and even chains and imprisonment

"People afflicted others by mocking and whipping them and even putting them in chains and imprisoning them"

#### Hebrews 11:37

##### They were stoned. They were sawn in two. They were killed with the sword

"People threw stones at others. People sawed others in two. People killed others with the sword"

##### went about

"went from place to place"

##### in sheepskins and goatskins

"wearing only the skins of sheep and goats"

##### They were destitute

"They had nothing" or "They were very poor"

#### Hebrews 11:38

##### The world was not worthy

"The people of this world were not worthy"

##### They were always wandering about

This was because they had no place to live.

##### in caves and holes in the ground

"some lived in caves or in holes in the ground"

#### Hebrews 11:39

##### Although all these people were approved by God because of their faith, they did not receive the promise

"God honored all these because of their faith, but they did not themselves receive what God had promised"

#### Hebrews 11:40

##### so that without us, they would not be made perfect

"in order that God would perfect us and them together"

Chapter 12

1Therefore, since we are surrounded by such a large cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight and easily entangling sin. Let us run with perseverance the race that is placed before us.2Let us pay attention to Jesus, the founder and perfecter of the faith. For the joy that was placed before him, he endured the cross, despised its shame, and sat down at the right hand of the throne of God.3So think about him, the one who has endured such opposition from sinners against himself, so that you do not become weary and lose heart.

4You have not yet resisted or struggled against sin to the point of blood;5and you have forgotten the encouragement that instructs you as sons:  
  
"My son, do not think lightly of the Lord's discipline,nor grow weary when you are corrected by him.6For the Lord disciplines the one he loves,and he punishes every son he receives."

7Endure suffering as discipline. God deals with you as with sons. For what son is there whom his father does not discipline?8But if you are without discipline, which all people share in, then you are illegitimate and not his sons.9Furthermore, we had human fathers who disciplined us and we respected them. How much more should we submit to the Father of spirits and live!10Our fathers disciplined us for a short time as they thought best. But God disciplines us for our benefit, so that we can share in his holiness.11No discipline at the time seems to give joy, but to give sorrow. But later it produces the peaceful fruit of righteousness for those who have been trained by it.12So strengthen your hands that hang down and your weak knees.13Make straight paths for your feet, so that what is lame will not be sprained but rather be healed.

14Pursue peace with everyone, and holiness, for without it no one will see the Lord.15Be careful so that no one lacks God's grace, and that no root of bitterness grows up to cause trouble, so that many do not become defiled by it,16and that there is no one who is sexually immoral or profane, such as Esau, who for one meal sold his own birthright.17For you know that afterwards, when he desired to inherit the blessing, he was rejected, because he found no opportunity for repentance, even though he sought it with tears.

18For you have not come to a mountain that can be touched, a mountain of burning fire, darkness, gloom, and storm.19You have not come to a trumpet blast, nor to a voice that speaks words whose hearers begged that not another word be spoken to them.20For they could not endure what was commanded: "If even an animal touches the mountain, it must be stoned." [1](#footnote-target-1)21So fearful was this sight that Moses said, "I am terrified and am trembling."22Rather, you have come to Mount Zion and to the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to tens of thousands of angels in joyful assembly.23You have come to the congregation of the firstborn, who have been registered in heaven. You have come to God, the Judge of all, and to the spirits of the righteous ones who have been made perfect.24And you have come to Jesus, the mediator of a new covenant, and to the sprinkled blood that speaks better than Abel's blood.25See that you do not refuse the one who is speaking. For if they did not escape when they refused the one who warned them on earth, much less will we escape if we turn away from the one who is warning from heaven.26At one time, his voice shook the earth. But now he has promised and said, "One more time I will shake not only the earth, but also the heavens."27These words, "One more time," mean the removal of those things that can be shaken, that is, of the things that have been created, so that the things that cannot be shaken will remain.28Therefore, receiving a kingdom that cannot be shaken, let us be thankful and in this manner worship God with reverence and awe.29For our God is a consuming fire.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, If even an animal touches the mountain, it must be stoned or shot with an arrow .

#### Hebrews 12:1

##### we are surrounded by such a large cloud of witnesses

"there are so many examples of faithful people about whom we learn in the scriptures"

##### witnesses

Here "witnesses" refers to the Old Testament believers in chapter 11 who lived before the race of faith that believers now run.

##### let us lay aside every weight and easily entangling sin

Here "weight" and "easily entangling sin" are spoken of as if a person could take them off himself and put them down.

##### every weight

Attitudes or habits that keep believers from trusting and obeying God are spoken of as if they were loads that would make it difficult for a person to run while carrying.

##### easily entangling sin

"sin that makes obeying God difficult"

##### Let us run with perseverance the race that is placed before us

"Let us continue obeying what God has commanded us, just like a runner keeps going until the race is over"

#### Hebrews 12:2

##### the founder and perfecter of the faith

"creator and finisher of our faith" or "the one who enables us to have faith from beginning to end"

##### For the joy that was placed before him

The joy that Jesus would experience is spoken of as if God the Father had placed it before him as a goal to reach.

##### despised its shame

This means he was not concerned about the shame of dying on a cross.

##### sat down at the right hand of the throne of God

"sat down at the place of honor and authority beside the throne of God"

#### Hebrews 12:3

##### become weary and lose heart

"become tired and discouraged"

#### Hebrews 12:4

##### You have not yet resisted or struggled against sin

"You have not yet had to endure attacks of sinners"

##### of blood

"of death"

#### Hebrews 12:5

##### the encouragement that instructs you

"what God has instructed you in the scriptures to encourage you"

##### as sons ... My son

The word translated "sons" and "son" is specifically the word for a male child. In that culture the family line continued through the sons, not normally through the daughters.

##### My son ... corrected by him

The author is quoting from Proverbs 3:11 in the Old Testament, which was the words of Solomon to his male children.

##### do not think lightly of the Lord's discipline, nor grow weary

"take it very seriously when the Lord disciplines you, and do not grow weary"

##### nor grow weary

"and do not become discouraged"

##### you are corrected by him

"he corrects you"

#### Hebrews 12:6

##### every son he receives

The word translated "son" is specifically the word for a male child. In that culture the family line continued through the sons, not normally through the daughters. The author quotes from Proverbs 3:12.

#### Hebrews 12:7

##### Endure suffering as discipline

"Understand that during suffering God teaches us discipline"

##### God deals with you as with sons

The readers are God's sons, and so God deals with them the way a father properly deals with sons.

##### sons ... son

"children ... child"

##### what son is there whom his father does not discipline?

"every father disciplines his children!"

#### Hebrews 12:8

##### But if you are without discipline, which all people share in

"So if you have not experienced God disciplining you like he disciplines all his children"

##### then you are illegitimate and not his sons

Those whom God does not discipline are spoken of as if they are sons born to a man and a woman who are not married each other.

#### Hebrews 12:9

##### How much more should we submit to the Father of spirits and live!

"Therefore even more so, we should obey the Father of spirits so that we will live"

##### the Father of spirits

"our spiritual Father" or "our Father in heaven"

#### Hebrews 12:10

##### so that we can share in his holiness

"so that we may become holy, as God is holy"

#### Hebrews 12:11

##### No discipline at the time seems to give joy, but to give sorrow

"At the time, it seems that no discipline brings joy; rather, discipline always brings sorrow"

##### it produces the peaceful fruit of righteousness

"it produces righteousness, which results in peace"

##### who have been trained by it

"whom God has trained by disciplining them"

#### Hebrews 12:12

##### strengthen your hands that hang down and your weak knees.

It is in this way that the author speaks about living as Christians and helping others. (Hebrews 12:1)

#### Hebrews 12:13

##### straight paths

Living so as to honor and please God is spoken of as if it were a straight path to follow.

##### what is lame will not be sprained

"whoever is weak and wants to quit will not sprain his ankle"

##### rather be healed

"instead God will heal him"

#### Hebrews 12:14

##### Pursue peace with everyone

"Try to live peacefully with everyone"

##### and holiness, for without it no one will see the Lord

"and pursue holiness because only holy people will see the Lord"

#### Hebrews 12:15

##### no one lacks God's grace

"no one receives God's grace and then lets go of it" or "no one rejects God's grace after first trusting in him"

##### that no root of bitterness grows up to cause trouble, so that many do not become defiled by it

"that no one becomes like a bitter root, which when it grows causes trouble and harms many people"

#### Hebrews 12:17

##### he was rejected

"his father, Isaac, refused to bless him"

##### because he found no opportunity for repentance

"because it was not possible for him to repent"

##### even though he sought it with tears

Here "he" refers to Esau. The man Esau, who was told about in the writings of Moses, refers to Isaac's first son and Jacob's brother.

#### Hebrews 12:18

##### For you have not come to a mountain that can be touched

"For you have not come, as the people of Israel came, to a mountain that a person can touch"

#### Hebrews 12:19

##### You have not come to a trumpet blast

"You have not come to a place where there is the loud sound of a trumpet"

##### nor to a voice that speaks words whose hearers begged that not another word be spoken to them

"or where God was speaking in such a way that those who heard him begged him not to speak another word to them"

#### Hebrews 12:20

##### For they could not endure

"For the Israelites could not endure" (Exodus 19:12-13)

##### what was commanded

"what God commanded"

##### it must be stoned

"you must stone it"

#### Hebrews 12:22

##### Mount Zion

The writer speaks of Mount Zion, the temple mount in Jerusalem, as if it were heaven itself, the residence of God.

##### tens of thousands of angels

"an uncountable number of angels"

#### Hebrews 12:23

##### the firstborn

This speaks of believers in Christ as if they were firstborn sons and emphasizes their special place and privilege as God's people.

##### who have been registered in heaven

"whose names God has written in heaven"

##### who have been made perfect

"whom God has made perfect"

#### Hebrews 12:24

##### the sprinkled blood that speaks better than Abel's blood

"the sprinkled blood of Jesus that says better things than the blood of Abel". The man Abel was the son of the first man and woman, Adam and Eve. Cain, also their son, murdered Abel.

#### Hebrews 12:25

##### you do not refuse the one who is speaking

"you pay attention to the one who is speaking"

##### if they did not escape

"if the people of Israel did not escape judgment"

##### the one who warned them on earth

"God, who warned them at Mount Sinai"

##### if we turn away from the one who is warning

"if we disobey the one who is warning"

#### Hebrews 12:26

##### his voice shook the earth

"when God spoke, the sound of his voice caused the earth to shake" (Haggai 2:6)

#### Hebrews 12:27

##### mean the removal of those things that can be shaken, that is, of the things

"mean that God will remove the things that he can shake, that is, the things"

##### that have been created

"that God has created"

##### the things that cannot be shaken

"the things that do not shake" or "the things that cannot shake"

#### Hebrews 12:28

##### receiving a kingdom

"because God is making us members of his kingdom"

##### let us be thankful

"let us give thanks"

##### with reverence and awe

"with great respect and dread"

#### Hebrews 12:29

##### our God is a consuming fire

God is spoken of here as if he were a fire that can burn up anything.

Chapter 13

1Let brotherly love continue.2Do not forget hospitality for strangers. For through this, some have shown hospitality to angels without knowing it.3Remember prisoners as if you were bound with them. Remember those who are mistreated since you yourselves also are in the body.4Let marriage be held in honor by all, and let the marriage bed be kept pure, for God will judge sexually immoral people and adulterers.5Let your conduct be free from the love of money. Be content with the things you have, for God himself has said,   
  
"I will never leave you, nor will I abandon you."

6Let us be content so that we may have courage to say,  
  
"The Lord is my helper; I will not be afraid.What can a man do to me?"

7Consider your leaders, those who spoke God's word to you, and consider the result of their conduct. Imitate their faith.8Jesus Christ is the same yesterday, today, and forever.9Do not be carried away by various strange teachings. For it is good that the heart should be strengthened by grace, not by foods that do not help those who walk by them.10We have an altar from which those who serve in the tabernacle have no right to eat.11For the blood of the animals killed for sins is brought by the high priest into the holy place, while their bodies are burned outside the camp.12So Jesus also suffered outside the city gate, in order to sanctify the people through his own blood.13Let us therefore go to him outside the camp, bearing the disgrace he endured.14For we do not have a permanent city here. Rather, we are looking for the one that is to come.15Through him, then, let us always offer up sacrifices of praise to God, praise that is the fruit of lips that acknowledge his name.16Let us not forget doing good and sharing, for it is with such sacrifices that God is very pleased.17Obey and submit to your leaders, for they keep watch over your souls as those who will give account. Obey so that your leaders will do this with joy, and not with groaning, which would be useless to you.

18Pray for us, for we are convinced that we have a good conscience and that we desire to live rightly in all things.19I encourage you even more to do this, so that I will be returned to you sooner.

20Now may the God of peace, who brought back from the dead the great shepherd of the sheep, our Lord Jesus, by the blood of the eternal covenant,21equip you with everything good to do his will, working in us what is pleasing to him, through Jesus Christ, to whom be the glory forever and ever. Amen.

22Now I encourage you, brothers, to bear with the word of encouragement that I have briefly written to you.23Know that our brother Timothy has been set free, with whom I will see you if he comes soon.

24Greet all your leaders and all God's holy people. Those from Italy greet you.

25May grace be with you all.

#### Hebrews 13:1

##### Let brotherly love continue

"Continue to show your love for other believers as you would for a member of your family"

#### Hebrews 13:2

##### Do not forget

"Be sure to remember"

##### hospitality for strangers

"to welcome and show kindness to strangers"

#### Hebrews 13:3

##### as if you were bound with them

"as if you were in prison with them"

##### who are mistreated

"whom others are mistreating" or "who are suffering"

##### since you yourselves also are in the body

Possible meanings are 1) because you are human and can suffer likewise, or 2) as if you too were being mistreated.

#### Hebrews 13:4

##### Let marriage be held in honor by all

"Everyone should hold marriage in honor"

##### let the marriage bed be kept pure

"Let husbands and wives honor their marriage relationship to one another"

#### Hebrews 13:5

##### Let your conduct be free from the love of money

"Let your conduct not be affected by the love of money"

##### Be content

"Be satisfied"

#### Hebrews 13:6

##### I will not be afraid. What can a man do to me?

"I will not fear what any person can do to me!" (Psalm 56:4)

#### Hebrews 13:7

##### spoke God's word to you

"told you what God has said"

##### the result of their conduct

"the outcome of the way they behave"

##### Imitate their faith

"Trust and obey God in the same way they do"

#### Hebrews 13:8

##### is the same yesterday, today, and forever

"is the same in the past, the present, and in the future forever"

#### Hebrews 13:9

##### Do not be carried away by various strange teachings

"Do not let others persuade you to believe their various strange teachings"

##### various strange teachings

"many, different teachings that are not the good news we told you"

##### it is good that the heart should be strengthened by grace, not by foods that do not help those who walk by them

"we become stronger when we think of how God has been kind to us, but we do not become stronger by obeying rules about food"

##### the heart should be strengthened

"we should be strengthened inwardly"

##### foods

Here "foods" stands for rules about food.

##### those who walk by them

"those who regulate their lives by them"

#### Hebrews 13:10

##### We have an altar from which

"What we have is like an altar from which"

#### Hebrews 13:11

##### the blood of the animals killed for sins is brought by the high priest into the holy place

"the high priest brings into the holy place the blood of the animals that the priests killed for sins"

##### while their bodies are burned

"while the priests burn the animals' bodies"

##### outside the camp

"away from where the people live"

#### Hebrews 13:12

##### So

"In the same way"

##### outside the city gate

"outside the city"

#### Hebrews 13:13

##### Let us therefore go to him outside the camp

Obeying Jesus is spoken of as if a person were leaving the camp to go out where Jesus is.

##### bearing the disgrace he endured

"while allowing others to treat us with disgust just like people insulted him"

#### Hebrews 13:14

##### looking for

"waiting for"

##### the one that is to come

"the permanent city that will come"

#### Hebrews 13:15

##### sacrifices of praise

Praise is spoken of as if it were incense or sacrifices of animals.

##### praise that is the fruit of lips that acknowledge his name

"praise that is produced by the lips of those who acknowledge him"

#### Hebrews 13:16

##### Let us not forget doing good and sharing

"Let us always remember to do good and share our goods with one another"

##### with such sacrifices

Doing good and helping others is spoken of as if they were sacrifices on an altar.

#### Hebrews 13:17

##### keep watch over your souls

The believers' souls, that is, the believers' spiritual well-being, are spoken of as if they were objects or animals that guards could keep watch over.

##### not with groaning

Here "groaning" stands for sadness or grief.

#### Hebrews 13:18

##### we are convinced that we have a good conscience

"we are certain that we have no guilt"

#### Hebrews 13:19

##### that I will be returned to you sooner

"that God will return me to you sooner" or "that God will quickly remove the things that stop my coming to you"

#### Hebrews 13:20

##### brought back from the dead the great shepherd of the sheep, our Lord Jesus

"raised the great shepherd of the sheep, our Lord Jesus, to life"

##### from the dead

"from among all those who have died."

##### the great shepherd of the sheep

Christ in his role of leader and protector of those who believe in him is spoken of as if he were a shepherd of sheep.

##### by the blood of the eternal covenant

Here "blood" stands for the death of Jesus, which is the basis for the covenant that will last forever between God and all believers in Christ.

#### Hebrews 13:21

##### equip you with everything good to do his will

"give you every good thing you need in order to do his will" or "make you capable of doing every good thing according to his will"

##### working in us

The word "us" refers to the author and the readers.

##### to whom be the glory forever

"whom all people will praise forever"

#### Hebrews 13:22

##### brothers

"fellow believers"

##### to bear with the word of encouragement that I have briefly written to you

"to patiently consider what I have just briefly written to encourage you"

##### the word of encouragement

"the encouraging message"

#### Hebrews 13:23

##### has been set free

"is no longer in prison"

#### Hebrews 13:24

##### Those from Italy greet you

Possible meanings are 1) the author is not in Italy, but there is a group of believers with him who have come from Italy or 2) the author is in Italy while writing this letter.

##### Italy

This is the name of a region at that time. Rome is the capital city of Italy.

## James

Chapter 1

1James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, to the twelve tribes in the dispersion: Greetings!2Consider it all joy, my brothers, when you experience various troubles.3You know that the testing of your faith produces endurance.4Let endurance complete its work so that you may become fully developed and complete, not lacking anything.5But if any of you needs wisdom, let him ask for it from God, the one who gives generously and without rebuke to all who ask, and he will give it to him.6But let him ask in faith, doubting nothing. For anyone who doubts is like a wave in the sea that is driven by the wind and tossed around.7For that person must not think that he will receive anything from the Lord;8he is a double-minded man, unstable in all his ways.9Let the lowly brother boast of his high position,10but the rich man of his low position, because he will pass away as a wild flower in the grass.11For the sun rises with burning heat and dries up the grass. The flower falls off, and its beauty perishes. In the same way, the rich man will fade away in the middle of his journey.12Blessed is the man who endures testing. For after he has passed the test, he will receive the crown of life, which has been promised to those who love God.13Let no one say when he is tempted, "I am tempted by God," because God is not tempted by evil, nor does he himself tempt anyone.14But each person is tempted by his own desire, which drags him away and entices him.15Then after the desire conceives, it gives birth to sin, and after the sin is full grown, it gives birth to death.16Do not be deceived, my beloved brothers.17Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above. It comes down from the Father of lights. With him there is no changing or shadow because of turning.18God chose to give us birth by the word of truth, so that we would be a kind of firstfruits of all his creatures.19You know this, my beloved brothers: Let every man be quick to hear, slow to speak, and slow to anger.20For the anger of man does not accomplish the righteousness of God.21Therefore, take off all sinful filth and abundant amounts of evil. In humility receive the implanted word, which is able to save your souls.22Be doers of the word and not only hearers, deceiving yourselves.23For if anyone is a hearer of the word but not a doer, he is like a man who examines his natural face in a mirror.24He examines himself and then goes away and immediately forgets what he was like.25But the person who looks carefully into the perfect law of freedom, and continues to do so, not just being a hearer who forgets, this man will be blessed in his actions.26If anyone thinks he is religious and does not control his tongue, he deceives his heart and his religion is worthless.27Religion that is pure and unspoiled before our God and Father is to help the fatherless and widows in their affliction, and to keep oneself unstained by the world.

#### James 1:1

##### James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ

"This letter is from James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ"

##### to the twelve tribes

"to God's faithful people"

##### in the dispersion

"who are scattered around the world"

#### James 1:2

##### Consider it all joy, my brothers, when you experience various troubles

"My fellow believers, think of all your different kinds of troubles as things to celebrate"

#### James 1:3

##### the testing of your faith produces endurance

"when you suffer hardships, God is finding out how much you trust him. As a result, you will become able to endure even more hardships"

#### James 1:4

##### Let endurance complete its work

"Learn to endure any hardship"

##### fully developed

able to trust in Christ and obey him in all circumstances

##### not lacking anything

"having all that you need"

#### James 1:5

##### ask for it from God, the one who gives generously and without rebuke to all

"ask God for it. He is the one who gives generously and does not rebuke any"

##### he will give it to him

"God will give it to him"

#### James 1:6

##### in faith, doubting nothing

"with complete certainty that God will answer"

##### For anyone who doubts is like a wave in the sea that is driven by the wind and tossed around

Anyone who doubts that God will help him is said to be like the water in the ocean or in a large lake, which keeps moving in different directions.

#### James 1:8

##### is a double-minded man, unstable

"cannot decide if he will follow Jesus or not and is unstable"

#### James 1:9

##### the lowly brother

"the believer whom other people consider unimportant"

##### boast of his high position

Someone whom God has honored is spoken of as if he were standing in a high place.

#### James 1:10

##### but the rich man of his low position

"but let the man who has lots of money boast of his low position"

#### James 1:11

##### its beauty perishes

"it is no longer beautiful"

##### the rich man will fade away in the middle of his journey

As flowers do not die suddenly but instead fade away over a short time, so also the rich people may not die suddenly but instead take a little time to disappear. He also has not given any thought to his coming death, and that it takes him by surprise.

#### James 1:12

##### Blessed is the man who endures testing

"The man who endures testing is fortunate"

##### endures testing

remains faithful to God during hardships

##### passed the test

he has been approved by God

##### receive the crown of life

"receive eternal life as his reward"

##### has been promised to those who love God

"God has promised to those who love him"

#### James 1:13

##### when he is tempted

"when he desires to do something evil"

##### I am tempted by God

"God is trying to make me do something evil"

##### God is not tempted by evil nor does he himself tempt anyone

"No one can make God desire to do evil and God himself does not try to persuade anyone to do evil"

#### James 1:14

##### each person is tempted by his own desire

A person's evil desire is spoken of as if it were someone else who was tempting him to sin and who could drag him away.

##### entices

attracts, persuades someone to do evil

#### James 1:15

##### Then after the desire conceives, it gives birth to sin, and ... is full grown, it gives birth to death

This is a picture of someone who ends up dying both spiritually and physically.

#### James 1:16

##### Do not be deceived

"Do not let anyone deceive you"

#### James 1:17

##### Every good gift and every perfect gift

James uses these phrases to emphasize that anything good that a person has comes from God.

##### the Father of lights

God, the creator of all the lights in the sky (sun, moon, and stars), is said to be their "Father."

##### With him there is no changing or shadow because of turning

"God always stays the same. He does not change like shifting shadows"

#### James 1:18

##### to give us

The word "us" refers to James and his audience.

##### give us birth

God, who brought us eternal life, is spoken of as if he had given us birth.

##### the word of truth

"the message about the truth" or "the true message."

##### so that we would be a kind of firstfruits

"so that we would be like an offering of firstfruits"

#### James 1:19

##### You know this

Possible meanings are 1) "Know this" is a command to pay attention to what I am about to write or 2) "You know this" is a statement saying that I am about to remind you of something that you already know.

##### Let every man be quick to hear, slow to speak

These sayings mean people should first listen intently, and then consider carefully what they say.

##### slow to anger

"not get angry quickly"

#### James 1:21

##### take off all sinful filth and abundant amounts of evil

"stop doing all filthy sins and stop doing every kind of sinful behavior"

##### sinful filth

Here "filth," that is, dirt, stands for sin and evil.

##### In humility

"Without pride"

##### receive the implanted word

"obey the message God has spoken to you"

##### save your souls

"save yourselves from God's judgment"

#### James 1:22

##### Be doers of the word

"Be people who follow God's instructions"

##### deceiving yourselves

"fooling yourselves"

#### James 1:23

##### For if anyone is a hearer of the word but not a doer

"For if anyone listens to God's message in the scriptures but does not obey the word"

##### he is like a man who examines his natural face in a mirror

A person who hears God's word is like someone who looks at his face in the mirror.

#### James 1:24

##### then goes away and immediately forgets what he was like

"then goes away and immediately forgets to do what he saw he needed to do"

#### James 1:25

##### the person who looks carefully into the perfect law

This expression continues the image of the law as a mirror.

##### the perfect law of freedom

"the perfect law that makes those who follow it free"

##### this man will be blessed in his actions

"God will bless this man as he obeys the law"

#### James 1:26

##### thinks he is religious

"thinks he worships God correctly"

##### his tongue

"what he says"

##### his heart

"himself"

##### his religion is worthless

"he worships God uselessly"

#### James 1:27

##### pure and unspoiled before our God and Father

"completely acceptable to our God and Father"

##### the fatherless

"the orphans"

##### in their affliction

The fatherless and widows are suffering because their fathers or husbands have died.

##### to keep oneself unstained by the world

"to not allow the evil in the world to cause oneself to sin"

Chapter 2

1My brothers, do not hold to faith in our Lord Jesus Christ, the Lord of glory, with partiality toward certain people.2Suppose that someone enters your meeting wearing gold rings and splendid clothes, and there also enters a poor man in dirty clothes.3If you look at the person wearing fine clothes and say, "You sit here in a good place," but you say to the poor man, "You stand over there" or "Sit by my footstool,"4are you not judging among yourselves? Have you not become judges with evil thoughts?5Listen, my beloved brothers, did not God choose the poor of the world to be rich in faith and to be heirs of the kingdom that he promised to those who love him?6But you have dishonored the poor! Is it not the rich who oppress you? Are they not the ones who drag you to court?7Do they not insult the good name by which you have been called?8If, however, you fulfill the royal law according to the scripture, "Love your neighbor as yourself," you do well.9But if you favor certain people, you are committing sin, and you are convicted by the law as transgressors.10For whoever obeys the whole law, except that he stumbles in just a single way, has become guilty of breaking the whole law.11For the one who said, "Do not commit adultery," also said, "Do not murder." If you do not commit adultery, but if you do commit murder, you have become a transgressor of the law.12So speak and act as those who will be judged by means of the law of freedom.13For judgment comes without mercy to those who have shown no mercy. Mercy triumphs over judgment.

14What profit is it, my brothers, if someone says he has faith, but he has no works? Can that faith save him?15Suppose that a brother or sister is badly clothed and lacks food for the day.16Suppose that one of you says to them, "Go in peace, stay warm and be filled." If you do not give them the things necessary for the body, what profit is that?17In the same way faith by itself, if it does not have works, is dead.18Yet someone may say, "You have faith, and I have works." Show me your faith without works, and I will show you my faith by my works.19You believe that there is one God; you do well. But even the demons believe that, and they tremble.20Do you want to know, foolish man, that faith without works is useless? [1](#footnote-target-1)21Was not Abraham our father justified by works when he offered up Isaac his son on the altar?22You see that faith worked with his works, and that by works his faith was completed.23The scripture was fulfilled that says, "Abraham believed God, and it was counted to him as righteousness," and he was called a friend of God.24You see that it is by works that a man is justified, and not only by faith.25In the same way also, was not Rahab the prostitute justified by works when she welcomed the messengers and sent them away by another road?26For as the body apart from the spirit is dead, even so faith apart from works is dead.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, Do you want to know, foolish man, how it is that faith without works is dead?

#### James 2:1

##### My brothers

"My fellow believers" or "My brothers and sisters in Christ"

##### do not hold to faith in our Lord Jesus Christ ... with partiality toward certain people

"as you hold to faith in our Lord Jesus Christ ... do not show partiality toward certain people"

##### hold to faith in our Lord Jesus Christ

Believing in Jesus Christ is spoken of as if it were an object that one could hold onto.

##### partiality

the act of treating some people better than others

#### James 2:2

##### Suppose that someone enters your meeting

James describes a situation where the believers might give more honor to a rich person than to a poor person.

##### wearing gold rings and splendid clothes

"dressed like a wealthy person"

#### James 2:3

##### sit here in a good place

sit in this place of honor

##### stand over there

move to a place with less honor

##### Sit by my footstool

Move to a humble place

#### James 2:4

##### are you not judging among yourselves? Have you not become judges with evil thoughts?

"you are making judgments among yourselves and becoming judges with evil thoughts."

#### James 2:5

##### Listen, my beloved brothers

"Pay attention, my dear fellow believers"

##### did not God choose ... love him?

"God has chosen ... love him"

##### the poor

"poor people"

##### be rich in faith

"have strong faith in Christ"

##### heirs

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member.

#### James 2:6

##### But you have

James is speaking to his whole audience.

##### have dishonored the poor

"you have shamed poor people"

##### Is it not the rich who oppress you?

"It is rich people who treat you badly.”

##### Are they not the ones ... to court?

"The rich people are the ones who forcibly take you to court to accuse you in front of judges"

#### James 2:7

##### Do they not insult ... have been called?

"The rich people insult ... have been called."

##### the good name by which you have been called

"Christ, who called you" or "Christ, to whom you belong"

#### James 2:8

##### you fulfill

The word "you" refers to the Jewish believers.

##### fulfill the royal law

"obey God's law."

##### Love your neighbor as yourself

James is quoting from Leviticus 19:18.

##### your neighbor

"all people" or "everyone"

##### you do well

"you are doing well"

#### James 2:9

##### if you favor

"give special treatment to" or "give honor to"

##### committing sin

"sinning" That is, breaking the law.

##### you are convicted by the law as transgressors

"the law itself convicts you of transgressing it" or "you are guilty of breaking God's law"

#### James 2:10

##### For whoever obeys

"For anyone who obeys"

##### except that he stumbles ... the whole law

Disobeying one point of the law is spoken of as if it were stumbling while walking.

##### in just a single way

because of disobedience to just one requirement of the law.

#### James 2:11

##### For the one who said

This refers to God, who gave the law to Moses.

##### Do not commit

To "commit" is to do an action.

##### If you ... but if you ... you have

Here "you" means "each one of you."

#### James 2:12

##### So speak and act

"So you must speak and obey."

##### who will be judged by means of the law of freedom

"who know that God will judge them by means of the law that gives true freedom"

#### James 2:13

##### Mercy triumphs over

"Mercy defeats"

#### James 2:14

##### What profit is it, my brothers, if someone says he has faith, but he has no works?

"Fellow believers, if someone says he has faith but he has no works, that does him no good at all." or "Fellow believers, someone who has no works is no better if he says he has faith than someone who does not say he has faith."

##### he has faith, but he has no works ... that faith

"he believes in God but does not do anything as a result of his belief ... that belief"

##### Can that faith save him?

"Just saying he believes in God will not save him."

#### James 2:15

##### brother or sister

a fellow believer in Christ, whether male or female

#### James 2:16

##### stay warm

"have enough clothes to wear" or "have a place to sleep"

##### be filled

"have enough to eat"

##### for the body

to eat, to wear, and to live comfortably

##### what profit is that?

"how does that help them?" or "your speech by itself does not help them."

#### James 2:17

##### faith by itself, if it does not have works, is dead

"a person who says he believes in God but does not do anything as a result of his belief, does not really believe in God"

#### James 2:18

##### "You have faith, and I have works." Show me your faith without works, and I will show you my faith by my works

"'You believe in God, and I do good things.' Prove to me that you can believe in God without doing anything, and I will prove to you that I believe in God by what I do"

#### James 2:20

##### Do you want to know, foolish man, that faith without works is useless?

"Listen to me, foolish man, and I will show that faith without works is useless."

##### that faith without works is useless

"that saying that you believe in God without doing good things is useless"

#### James 2:21

##### Was not Abraham our father justified by works ... on the altar?

"Did not God justify Abraham our father because of what he did ... on the altar?" or "God certainly justified Abraham our father because of what he did ... on the altar."

##### father

"ancestor."

#### James 2:22

##### You see

"You understand"

##### that faith worked with his works, and that by works his faith was completed

"that because Abraham believed God, he did what God commanded him to do. And Abraham doing what God commanded showed that he truly believed"

#### James 2:23

##### The scripture was fulfilled

"This fulfilled the scripture". See Genesis 15:6.

##### it was counted to him as righteousness

"God regarded his faith as righteousness."

#### James 2:24

##### it is by works that a man is justified, and not only by faith

"God justifies a man because of what he does as a result of his belief, and not just because he believes in God"

#### James 2:25

##### In the same way also ... justified by works

James says that what was true of Abraham was also true of Rahab. Both were justified by works.

##### was not Rahab the prostitute justified by works ... another road?

"God justified Rahab the prostitute because of what she did ... another road."

##### messengers

people who bring news from another place

##### sent them away by another road

"then helped them escape and leave the city"

#### James 2:26

##### For as the body apart from the spirit is dead, even so faith apart from works is dead

"For just as the body is useless without the spirit, even so it is useless for a person to believe in God if he does not do anything as a result of his belief"

Chapter 3

1Not many of you should become teachers, my brothers, for you know that we who teach will be judged more strictly.2For we all stumble in many ways. If anyone does not stumble in words, he is a perfect man, able to control even his whole body.3Now if we put bits into horses' mouths for them to obey us, we can also direct their whole bodies.4Notice also that ships, although they are so large and are driven by strong winds, are steered by a very small rudder to wherever the pilot desires.5In this way, the tongue is a small member, yet it boasts great things. Notice also how small a fire sets on fire a large forest.6The tongue is also a fire, a world of evil set among our members. The tongue defiles the whole body, sets on fire the course of life, and is itself set on fire by hell.7For every kind of wild animal, bird, reptile, and sea creature is being tamed and has been tamed by mankind.8But no human being can tame the tongue. It is a restless evil, full of deadly poison.9With it we praise the Lord and Father, and with it we curse men, who have been made in God's likeness.10Out of the same mouth come blessing and cursing. My brothers, these things should not happen.11Does a spring pour out from its opening both sweet and bitter water?12Does a fig tree, my brothers, make olives? Or a grapevine, figs? Neither can salty water produce sweet water.

13Who is wise and understanding among you? Let that person show a good life by his works in the humility of wisdom.14But if you have bitter jealousy and ambition in your heart, do not boast and lie against the truth.15This is not the wisdom that comes down from above. Rather, it is earthly, unspiritual, demonic.16For where there are jealousy and ambition, there is confusion and every evil practice.17But the wisdom from above is first pure, then peace-loving, gentle, reasonable, full of mercy and good fruits, impartial and sincere.18The fruit of righteousness is sown in peace among those who make peace.

#### James 3:1

##### my brothers

"my fellow believers"

##### we who teach will be judged more strictly

"God will judge us who teach more severely."

##### we who teach

Here James includes himself and other teachers, but not the readers.

#### James 3:2

##### we all stumble

James speaks of himself, other teachers, and the readers, so the word "we" is inclusive.

##### does not stumble in words

"does not sin by saying wrong things"

##### he is a perfect man

"he is spiritually mature"

##### control even his whole body

"control all his behavior"

#### James 3:3

##### Now if we put bits into horses' mouths

A bit is a small piece of metal that is placed into a horse's mouth to control where it goes.

#### James 3:4

##### Notice also that ships ... are driven by strong winds, are steered by a very small rudder

A rudder or tool is a flat piece of wood or metal at the back of the ship, used to control where it goes.

##### are steered by a very small rudder to wherever the pilot desires

"have a small tool that a person can use to control where the ship goes"

#### James 3:5

##### the tongue is a small member

"the tongue is a small part of the body"

##### Notice also

"Think about"

##### how small a fire sets on fire a large forest

"how a small flame can start a fire that burns many trees"

#### James 3:6

##### The tongue is also a fire

"The tongue is like a fire"

##### a world of evil set among our members

The enormous effects of sinful speaking are spoken of as if they were a world by themselves.

##### our members

"the parts of our bodies"

##### The tongue defiles the whole body

"For God rejects a person who speaks evil words"

##### sets on fire the course of life

"it ruins a person's entire life"

##### life, and is itself set on fire by hell

"life because the devil uses it for evil"

#### James 3:7

##### For every kind of ... mankind

"People have learned to control many kinds of wild animals, birds, reptiles, and sea creatures"

##### reptile

This is an animal that crawls on the ground.

#### James 3:8

##### But no human being can tame the tongue

James speaks of the tongue as if it were a wild animal.

##### It is a restless evil, full of deadly poison

"It is like a restless and evil creature that can kill people with its venom"

#### James 3:9

##### With it we

"We use the tongue to say words that"

##### we curse men

"we ask God to harm men"

##### who have been made in God's likeness

"whom God made in his likeness"

#### James 3:10

##### Out of the same mouth come blessing and cursing

"With the same mouth, a person blesses people and curses people"

##### My brothers

"Fellow Christians"

##### these things should not happen

"these things are wrong"

#### James 3:11

##### Does a spring pour out from its opening both sweet and bitter water?

"You know that a spring does not pour out both sweet water and bitter water"

#### James 3:12

##### Does a fig tree, my brothers, make olives?

"Brothers, you know that a fig tree cannot grow olives."

##### Or a grapevine, figs?

"Or does a grapevine make figs?"

#### James 3:13

##### Who is wise and understanding among you?

"I will tell you how a wise and understanding person is to act."

##### Let that person show a good life by his works in the humility of wisdom

"That person should live a good life by doing the kind of deeds that come from being humble and wise"

#### James 3:14

##### if you have bitter jealousy and ambition in your heart

"if you are jealous and selfish"

##### do not boast and lie against the truth

"do not boast that you are wise, because that is not true"

#### James 3:15

##### This is not the wisdom that comes down from above

"This is not the kind of wisdom that God teaches us from heaven"

##### This is not the wisdom that comes down from above. Rather, it is earthly, unspiritual, demonic

"Whoever acts like this is not honoring to what God in heaven teaches us. Rather, this person is earthly, not spiritual, and from demons"

#### James 3:16

##### For where there are jealousy and ambition, there is confusion and every evil practice

"For when people are jealous and selfish, this causes them to act in disorderly and evil ways"

##### there is confusion

"there is disorder" or "there is chaos"

##### every evil practice

"every kind of sinful behavior"

#### James 3:17

##### But the wisdom from above is first pure

"But when a person is wise according to what God in heaven teaches, he acts in ways that are first holy"

##### full of mercy and good fruits

"full of mercy and good deeds"

##### and sincere

"and honest" or "and truthful"

#### James 3:18

##### The fruit of righteousness is sown in peace among those who make peace

"The result of making peace is righteousness"

##### make peace

"cause people to live peacefully"

Chapter 4

1Where do quarrels and disputes among you come from? Do they not come from your desires that fight among your members?2You desire, and you do not have. You murder and covet, and you are not able to obtain. You fight and quarrel. You do not possess because you do not ask.3You ask and do not receive because you ask wrongly, in order that you may use it for your desires.4You adulteresses! Do you not know that friendship with the world is hostility against God? So whoever desires to be a friend of the world makes himself an enemy of God.5Or do you think the scripture says in vain, "The Spirit he caused to live in us is deeply envious"?6But God gives more grace, so the scripture says, "God opposes the proud, but gives grace to the humble."

7So submit to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.8Come close to God, and he will come close to you. Cleanse your hands, you sinners, and purify your hearts, you double-minded people.9Grieve, mourn, and cry! Let your laughter turn into mourning and your joy into gloom.10Humble yourselves before the Lord, and he will exalt you.

11Do not speak evil about another, brothers. The person who speaks evil about a brother or judges his brother speaks evil about the law and judges the law. If you judge the law, you are not a doer of the law, but a judge.12Only one is the lawgiver and judge. He is the one who is able to save and to destroy. Who are you, you who judge your neighbor?

13Now listen, you who say, "Today or tomorrow we will go into this city, spend a year there, trade, and make a profit."14Who knows what will happen tomorrow, and what is your life? For you are a mist that appears for a little while and then disappears.15Instead, you should say, "If the Lord wishes, we will live and do this or that."16But now you are boasting about your arrogant plans. All such boasting is evil.17So for anyone who knows to do good but does not do it, for him it is sin.

#### James 4:1

##### Where do quarrels and disputes among you come from?

"Why do you quarrel and dispute among yourselves?"

##### Do they not come from your desires that fight among your members?

"Do they not come because of the conflict you feel within you because of your different desires" or "You quarrel and argue because of the tension caused by your different desires"

#### James 4:2

##### You murder and covet, and you are not able to obtain

"You do all kinds of evil things to get what you cannot have"

##### You fight and quarrel

"You constantly fight"

#### James 4:3

##### you ask wrongly

"you ask with wrong motives" or "you ask with bad attitudes"

#### James 4:4

##### You adulteresses!

"You are not being faithful to God!"

##### Do you not know ... God?

"You know ... God!"

##### friendship with the world

Here the world's value system is spoken of as if it were a person that others could be friends with.

##### friendship with the world is hostility against God

"friends of the world are enemies of God"

#### James 4:5

##### Or do you think the scripture says in vain ... envious"?

"There is a reason that scripture says ... envious".

##### The Spirit he caused to live in us

Some versions understand this as a reference to the Holy Spirit.

#### James 4:6

##### But God gives more grace

"But, even though our spirits may desire what we cannot have, God gives us even more grace if we will humble ourselves"

##### so the scripture

"that is why the scripture"

##### the proud

"proud people"

##### the humble

"humble people"

#### James 4:7

##### So submit

"Because God gives grace to the humble, so obey"

##### Resist the devil

"Oppose the devil"

##### he will flee

"he will run away"

##### you

Here this pronoun is plural and refers to James's audience.

#### James 4:8

##### Come close to God

Here the idea of coming close stands for becoming honest and open with God.

##### Cleanse your hands

"Behave in a way that honors God"

##### purify your hearts

"make your thoughts and intentions right"

##### you double-minded people

"you people who cannot decide if you want to obey God or not"

#### James 4:9

##### Grieve, mourn, and cry

James uses these words together to emphasize that the people should be truly sorry for not obeying God.

##### Let your laughter turn into mourning and your joy into gloom

"Stop laughing and mourn. Stop being joyful and be gloomy"

#### James 4:10

##### Humble yourselves before the Lord

"Be humble toward God."

##### he will exalt you

"he will honor you"

#### James 4:11

##### brothers

"fellow believers"

##### but a judge

"but you are acting like the person who gives the law"

#### James 4:12

##### Only one is the lawgiver and judge

"God is the only one who gives laws and judges people"

##### Who are you, you who judge your neighbor?

"You are just a human and cannot judge another human."

#### James 4:13

##### spend a year there

"stay there for a year"

#### James 4:14

##### Who knows what will happen tomorrow, and what is your life?

"No one knows what will happen tomorrow, and your life does not last very long!"

##### For you are a mist that appears for a little while and then disappears

"You live for only a short amount of time, and then you die"

#### James 4:15

##### Instead, you should say

"Instead, your attitude should be"

##### we will live and do this or that

"we will live long enough to do what we have planned to do." This "we" does not directly refer to James or his audience but is part of the example of how James's audience should consider the future.

#### James 4:17

##### for anyone who knows to do good but does not do it, for him it is sin

Anyone who fails to do the good he knows he should do is guilty of sin.

Chapter 5

1Come now, you who are rich, weep and wail because of the miseries coming on you.2Your riches have rotted, and your clothes have become moth-eaten.3Your gold and your silver have become tarnished and their rust will be a witness against you. It will consume your flesh like fire. You have stored up your treasure for the last days.4Look, the wages you kept back from the laborers who mowed your fields are crying out against you. The cries of the harvesters have reached the ears of the Lord of hosts.5You have lived in luxury on the earth and indulged yourselves. You have fattened your hearts for a day of slaughter.6You have condemned and murdered the righteous person. He does not oppose you.

7Be patient, then, brothers, until the Lord's coming. See how the farmer waits for the precious fruit from the ground and he is patient about it, until it receives the early and late rains.8You, too, be patient. Strengthen your hearts because the Lord's coming is near.9Do not complain, brothers, against one another, so that you will not be condemned. See, the judge is standing at the door.10Take an example, brothers, from the suffering and patience of the prophets, those who spoke in the name of the Lord.11See, we regard those who endured as blessed. You have heard of the endurance of Job, and you know the purpose of the Lord, how he is very compassionate and merciful.

12Above all, my brothers, do not swear, either by heaven or by the earth, or by any other oath. Rather, let your "Yes" mean "Yes" and your "No" mean "No," so you do not fall under judgment.

13Is anyone among you suffering hardship? Let him pray. Is anyone cheerful? Let him sing praise.14Is anyone among you sick? Let him call for the elders of the church, and let them pray over him. Let them anoint him with oil in the name of the Lord.15The prayer of faith will heal the sick person, and the Lord will raise him up. If he has committed sins, God will forgive him.16So confess your sins to one another and pray for each other so that you may be healed. The prayer of a righteous person is very strong in its working.17Elijah was a man just like us. He prayed earnestly that it would not rain, and it did not rain in the land for three years and six months.18Then Elijah prayed again. The heavens gave rain, and the earth produced its fruit.

19My brothers, if anyone among you strays from the truth, and someone brings him back,20that person should know that whoever turns a sinner from the error of his way will save him from death and will cover over a great number of sins.

#### James 5:1

##### you who are rich

"you who are rich and say you honor God"

##### because of the miseries coming on you

"because you will suffer terribly in the future"

#### James 5:2

##### Your riches have rotted, and your clothes have become moth-eaten.

"Your riches will rot, and your clothes will be eaten by moths"

#### James 5:3

##### Your gold and your silver have become tarnished

"Your gold and silver will become tarnished"

##### have become tarnished ... their rust

"are ruined ... their ruined condition"

##### their rust will be a witness against you. It

"and when God judges you, your ruined treasures will be like someone who accuses you in court. Their corrosion"

##### will consume your flesh like fire

Here "flesh" stands for the physical body and corrosion is spoken of as if it were a fire that will burn up their owners. The idea of fire is meant to lead people to remember that fire often stands for God's punishment that will come on all the wicked.

##### for the last days

"for when God is about to judge you"

#### James 5:4

##### the wages you kept back from the laborers who mowed your fields are crying out against you

"God can see that you kept back the wages you should have given to those who mowed your fields"

##### The cries of the harvesters have reached the ears of the Lord of hosts

"The Lord of hosts has heard the cries of the harvesters"

##### the ears of the Lord of hosts

God is spoken of as if he had ears as humans have.

#### James 5:5

##### You have fattened your hearts for a day of slaughter

"Your greed has only prepared your entire person for harsh eternal judgment"

#### James 5:6

##### You have condemned ... the righteous person

This is probably not "condemned" in the legal sense of a judge passing a sentence of death on a criminal. Instead, it probably refers to the wicked and powerful people who decide to mistreat the poor until they die.

##### the righteous person. He does not

"righteous people. They do not"

#### James 5:7

##### Be patient, then

"Because of this, wait and be calm"

##### until the Lord's coming

"until Christ's return"

##### the farmer

James makes an analogy using farmers and believers to teach what it means to be patient.

#### James 5:8

##### Strengthen your hearts

"Keep your faith strong"

##### the Lord's coming is near

"the Lord will return soon"

#### James 5:9

##### Do not complain, brothers ... you

James is writing to all the scattered Jewish believers.

##### against one another

"about each other"

##### you will not be condemned

"Christ will not condemn you"

##### See, the judge is standing at the door

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: the judge is coming soon"

#### James 5:10

##### the suffering and patience of the prophets, those who spoke in the name of the Lord

"how the prophets who spoke in the name of the Lord suffered persecution with patience"

##### spoke in the name of the Lord

"spoke by the authority of the Lord"

#### James 5:11

##### See, we regard

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: we regard"

##### those who endured

"those who continued obeying God even through hardship"

#### James 5:12

##### Above all, my brothers,

"This is important, my fellow believers"

##### do not swear

"do not make an oath" or "do not make a vow"

##### either by heaven or by the earth

The words "heaven" and "earth" refer to the spiritual or human authorities that are in heaven and earth.

##### let your "Yes" mean "Yes" and your "No" mean "No,"

"If you say "Yes" or "No," say it truthfully"

##### so you do not fall under judgment

"so God will not punish you"

#### James 5:13

##### Is anyone among you suffering hardship? Let him pray

"If anyone is enduring troubles, he should pray"

##### Is anyone cheerful? Let him sing praise

"If anyone is happy, he should sing songs of praise"

#### James 5:14

##### Is anyone among you sick? Let him call

"If anyone is sick, he should call"

##### in the name of the Lord

"by the authority of the Lord" or "with the authority that the Lord has given them"

#### James 5:15

##### The prayer of faith will heal the sick person

"The Lord will hear the prayer of faith and will heal the sick person"

##### The prayer of faith

"The prayer made by believers" or "The prayer that people pray believing God will do as they ask"

##### the Lord will raise him up

"the Lord will make him well"

#### James 5:16

##### So confess your sins to one another

Admit to each other things you did wrong so that you can be forgiven.

##### so that you may be healed

"so that God may heal you"

##### The prayer of a righteous person is very strong in its working

"When the person who obeys God prays, God will do great things"

#### James 5:17

##### prayed earnestly

"prayed passionately"

##### in the land

There may have been rain in lands other than Israel, but it did not rain in Israel.

#### James 5:18

##### The heavens gave rain

"Rain fell from the sky"

##### the earth produced its fruit

Here the earth is presented as the source of the crops.

##### fruit

This stands for all the crops of the farmers.

#### James 5:19

##### if anyone among you strays from the truth, and someone brings him back

"whenever anyone stops obeying God, and another person helps him start obeying again"

#### James 5:20

##### whoever turns a sinner from the error of his way ... will cover over a great number of sins

James means that God will use the actions of this person to persuade the sinner to repent and be saved.

##### will save him from death and will cover over a great number of sins

"will save him from spiritual death, and God will forgive the sinner for all of his sins"

##### will cover over a great number of sins

Possible meaning: the disobedient brother, when he returns to the Lord, will have his sins forgiven. Sins are spoken of as if they were objects that God could cover so that he would not see them.

## 1 Peter

Chapter 1

1Peter, an apostle of Jesus Christ, to the foreigners of the dispersion, the chosen ones, throughout Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia.2This is according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through the sanctifying work of the Spirit, for obedience and for the sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ. May grace be to you, and may your peace increase.

3May the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ be praised! In his great mercy, he has given us new birth to a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead.4This is for an inheritance that will not perish, will not become stained, and will not fade away. It is reserved in heaven for you.5You are protected by God's power through faith for the salvation that is ready to be revealed in the last time.6In this you greatly rejoice, even though now, for a little while, you may have to suffer all kinds of trials.7This is for the proving of your faith, which is more precious than gold that perishes, even though it is tested by fire. This happens so that your faith will be found to result in praise, glory, and honor at the revealing of Jesus Christ.8You have not seen him, but you love him. You do not see him now, but you believe in him and rejoice with joy that is inexpressible and filled with glory.9You are now receiving for yourselves the result of your faith, the salvation of your souls.10Concerning this salvation, the prophets who prophesied about the grace that was to come to you searched diligently and examined carefully,11inquiring into what person or time the Spirit of Christ in them was indicating when he testified beforehand about the sufferings of Christ and the glories that would follow.12It was revealed to them that they were not serving themselves, but you, when they spoke of the things that have now been told to you by those who preached the gospel to you by the Holy Spirit sent from heaven—things into which angels long to look.

13So gird up the loins of your mind. Be sober. Put your hope fully on the grace that will be brought to you when Jesus Christ is revealed.14As obedient children, do not conform yourselves to the desires that you followed when you were ignorant.15But as the one who called you is holy, you too be holy in your whole behavior.16For it is written, "Be holy, because I am holy."17So if you call "Father" the one who judges impartially and according to each person's work, conduct yourselves in fear during your time here as foreigners.18You know that it was not with perishable silver or gold that you have been redeemed from the futile behavior that you inherited from your ancestors,19but by the precious blood of Christ, like that of a lamb without blemish or spot.20Christ was foreknown before the foundation of the world, but now he has been revealed to you in these last times.21Through him you believe in God, who raised him from the dead and gave him glory, so that your faith and hope are in God.22You made your souls pure by obedience to the truth. This was for the purpose of sincere brotherly love; so love one another earnestly from a pure heart. [1](#footnote-target-1)23You have been born again, not from perishable seed, but from imperishable seed, through the living and remaining word of God.24For  
  
"All flesh is like grass,and all its glory is like the wild flower of the grass.The grass dries up, and the flower falls off,25but the word of the Lord remains forever."  
  
 This word is the gospel that was preached to you.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, You made your souls pure by obedience to the truth through the Spirit .

#### 1 Peter 1:1

##### the foreigners of the dispersion

Peter speaks of his readers as people who live away from their homes in many different countries.

##### Cappadocia ... Bithynia

"Cappadocia" and "Bithynia" were Roman provinces located in what is now the country of Turkey.

##### the chosen ones

"the ones whom God the Father has chosen"

#### 1 Peter 1:2

##### the foreknowledge of God the Father

"what God the Father decided previously" or "what God the Father knew beforehand". This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### for the sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ

Here "the blood" refers to the death of Jesus. Just as Moses sprinkled blood on the people of Israel to symbolize their covenant with God, believers are in covenant with God because of Jesus's death.

##### May grace be to you, and may your peace increase

This passage speaks of grace as if it were an object that believers could possess, and of peace as if it were something that could increase in amount. Grace is in reality the kind way God acts toward believers, and peace is how believers live in safety and joy with God.

#### 1 Peter 1:3

##### he has given us new birth to a living hope

"he has caused us to to be born again, having an enduring, confident hope"

#### 1 Peter 1:4

##### This is for an inheritance

"We confidently expect to receive an inheritance"

##### will not perish, will not become stained, and will not fade away

Peter uses three similar phrases to describe the inheritance as something that is perfect and eternal.

##### It is reserved in heaven for you

"God is reserving it in heaven for you"

#### 1 Peter 1:5

##### You are protected by God's power

"God is protecting you"

##### through faith

"because of your faith"

##### that is ready to be revealed

"that God is ready to reveal"

##### in the last time

This particular time is as the world as we know it is ending, before the age to come begins.

#### 1 Peter 1:6

##### In this you greatly rejoice

The word "this" refers to all the blessings that Peter mentions in the previous verses.

#### 1 Peter 1:7

##### This is for the proving of your faith

In the same way in which fire refines gold, hardships test how well believers trust in Christ. God wishes to test how well believers trust in Christ.

##### faith, which is more precious than gold that perishes, even though it is tested by fire

Faith is more valuable than gold, because gold does not last forever, even if it is refined in fire.

##### your faith will be found to result in praise, glory, and honor

"God will honor you very highly" or "your faith will bring praise, glory, and honor"

##### at the revealing of Jesus Christ

"when Jesus Christ appears to all people"

#### 1 Peter 1:8

##### joy that is inexpressible and filled with glory

"wonderful joy that words cannot describe"

#### 1 Peter 1:9

##### the salvation of your souls

"God saving you"

#### 1 Peter 1:10

##### searched diligently and examined carefully

"carefully searched to know all about this salvation" or "carefully examined everything about this salvation"

#### 1 Peter 1:11

##### inquiring into

"trying to learn" or "trying to make known"

##### the Spirit of Christ

This is a reference to the Holy Spirit.

#### 1 Peter 1:12

##### It was revealed to them

"God revealed to the prophets"

##### into which angels long to look

"that angels want to understand"

#### 1 Peter 1:13

##### So gird

"Because of this, gird."

##### gird up the loins of your mind

"get your minds ready"

##### Be sober

"Control your thoughts" or "Be careful about what you think"

##### Put your hope fully on the grace that will be brought to you

"Fully trust in the grace that God will bring to you"

##### the grace that will be brought to you

"the good things that God will kindly give to you"

##### when Jesus Christ is revealed

"when Jesus Christ appears to all people"

#### 1 Peter 1:14

##### do not conform yourselves to the desires

"do not desire the same things" or "do not live to gratify the desires"

#### 1 Peter 1:16

##### For it is written

"For as God said"

##### Be holy, because I am holy

Here the word "I" refers to God.

#### 1 Peter 1:17

##### conduct yourselves in fear during your time here as foreigners.

"be reverent while you are living your life on earth”

#### 1 Peter 1:18

##### you have been redeemed

"God has redeemed you"

#### 1 Peter 1:19

##### like that of a lamb without blemish or spot

"like the blood of the spotless lambs that the Jewish priests sacrificed"

##### without blemish or spot

"with no imperfections"

#### 1 Peter 1:20

##### Christ was foreknown

"God knew Christ" or "God chose Christ"

##### before the foundation of the world

"before God created the world"

##### he has been revealed to you

"God has revealed him to you"

##### he has been revealed to you

Peter does not mean that his readers have actually seen Christ, but that they have learned the truth about him.

#### 1 Peter 1:21

##### who raised him from the dead

"who caused him to live again so that he was no longer among the dead"

##### and gave him glory

"and glorified him" or "and showed that he is glorious"

##### your faith and hope are in God

"you believe in God and trust him"

#### 1 Peter 1:22

##### You made your souls pure

"You made yourselves acceptable to God"

##### brotherly love

This refers to love between fellow believers.

##### love one another earnestly from a pure heart

"love one another earnestly and completely"

#### 1 Peter 1:23

##### born again, not from perishable seed, but from imperishable seed

Possible meanings are that Peter speaks of the word of God either 1) as the seed of a plant that that will not rot or dry up but grows and produces new life in believers or 2) as the tiny cells inside a man or woman that combine to cause a baby to grow inside the woman.

##### through the living and remaining word of God

Peter speaks of God's word as if it were alive forever. In reality, it is God who lives forever, and whose instructions and promises last eternally.

#### 1 Peter 1:24

##### General Information:

In these verses Peter quotes from the prophet Isaiah (Isaiah 40:6) relating to what he has just said about them being born of imperishable seed.

##### All flesh is like grass, and all its

"All people will die like grass dies, and all their"

##### glory is like the wild flower of the grass

"goodness soon stops, just as flowers soon die"

#### 1 Peter 1:25

##### the word of the Lord

"the message that comes from the Lord"

##### the gospel that was preached

"the gospel that we preached"

Chapter 2

1Therefore, put aside all evil, all deceit, hypocrisy, envy, and all slander.2As newborn infants, long for pure spiritual milk, so that through it you may grow in salvation,3if you have tasted that the Lord is kind.4Come to him who is a living stone that has been rejected by people, but that has been chosen by God as valuable to him.5You also are like living stones that are being built up to be a spiritual house in order to be a holy priesthood that offers the spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God through Jesus Christ.6Scripture contains this:  
  
"See, I am laying in Zion a cornerstone,chosen and valuable.Whoever believes in him will not be ashamed."

7The value, then, is to you who believe. But to those who do not believe,  
  
"The stone that was rejected by the builders,this has become the head of the corner,"

8and  
  
"A stone of stumblingand a rock that makes them fall."  
  
 They stumble because they disobey the word—which is what they were appointed to do.9But you are a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for God's possession, so that you would announce the wonderful actions of the one who called you out from darkness into his marvelous light.10Once you were not a people, but now you are the people of God. You did not receive mercy, but now you have received mercy.

11Beloved, I exhort you as foreigners and exiles to abstain from fleshly desires, which fight against your soul.12Your conduct among the Gentiles should be honorable, so that when they slander you as evildoers, they may be eyewitnesses of your good deeds and give glory to God on the day when he appears.

13Be subject to every human authority for the Lord's sake. Obey both the king as supreme14and also the governors, who are sent for the punishment of evildoers and to praise those who do good.15For this is God's will, that in doing good you silence the ignorant talk of foolish people.16As free people, do not use your freedom as a covering for wickedness, but be like servants of God.17Honor all people. Love the brotherhood. Fear God. Honor the king.

18Servants, be subject to your masters with all respect. Be subject not only to the good and gentle masters, but also to the malicious ones.19For it is praiseworthy if, because he is conscious of God, a person endures sorrows while suffering unjustly.20For how much credit is there if you sin and then endure while being afflicted? But if you have done good and then you suffer while being punished, this is worthy of praise from God.21For it is to this that you were called, because Christ also suffered for you. He left an example for you to follow in his steps.  
  
22"He committed no sin,neither was any deceit found in his mouth."

23When he was insulted, he gave no insult in return. When he suffered, he did not threaten back, but he gave himself over to the one who judges justly.24He himself carried our sins in his body on the tree so that we would die to sin and live for righteousness. By his bruises you have been healed.25All of you had been straying like lost sheep, but now you have returned to the shepherd and overseer of your souls.

#### 1 Peter 2:1

##### Therefore, put aside all evil, all deceit, hypocrisy, envy, and all slander

"So then, stop being evil, deceptive, hypocritical, envious, and slanderous"

#### 1 Peter 2:2

##### As newborn infants, long for pure spiritual milk

"Just as babies long for their mother's breast milk, so you must yearn for pure spiritual milk"

##### long for

"desire intensely" or "yearn for"

##### you may grow in salvation

"you may grow up spiritually until God saves you completely"

#### 1 Peter 2:3

##### if you have tasted that the Lord is kind

"if you have experienced the Lord's kindness toward you"

#### 1 Peter 2:4

##### Come to him who is a living stone

"Come to him who is like a stone in a building, but alive, not a dead stone"

##### that has been rejected by people

"that people have rejected"

##### but that has been chosen by God

"but that God has chosen"

#### 1 Peter 2:5

##### You also are like living stones

Peter compares his readers to stones that are alive.

##### that are being built up to be a spiritual house

"that God is building into a spiritual house"

##### a holy priesthood that offers the spiritual sacrifices

Here the position of priesthood stands for the priests who fulfill the duties of the Old Testament priesthood.

#### 1 Peter 2:6

##### Scripture contains this

"This is what a prophet wrote in the scriptures long ago". See Isaiah 28:16.

##### See

The word "see" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### a cornerstone, chosen and valuable

"a most important cornerstone, which I have chosen"

##### a cornerstone

The prophet speaks of the Messiah as the most important stone in a building.

#### 1 Peter 2:7

##### The value, then, is to you who believe

"only you who believe know the value of this cornerstone"

##### The stone that was rejected by the builders

"The stone that the builders rejected". See Psalm 118:22.

#### 1 Peter 2:8

##### A stone of stumbling and a rock that makes them fall

"a stone or a rock over which people will stumble". See Isaiah 8:14.

##### stumble because they disobey the word

"stumble because they do not believe the message about Jesus"

##### which is what they were appointed to do

"for which God also appointed them"

#### 1 Peter 2:9

##### a chosen people

"a people whom God has chosen"

##### a royal priesthood

"a group of priests who serve the king".

##### a people for God's possession

"a people who belong to God"

##### who called you out

"who called you to come out"

##### from darkness into his marvelous light

"from a life of sin and ignorance of God to a life of knowing and pleasing him".

#### 1 Peter 2:10

##### General Information:

Here Peter quotes a verse from the prophet Hosea (Hosea 1:10). Some modern versions do not format this as a quote, which is also acceptable.

#### 1 Peter 2:11

##### foreigners and exiles

Peter speaks of his readers as people who are living in foreign lands away from their home. See how you translated "foreigners" in 1 Peter 1:1.

##### to abstain from fleshly desires

"to not to give in to sinful desires"

##### fight against your soul

"seek to destroy your spiritual life"

#### 1 Peter 2:12

##### Your conduct among the Gentiles should be honorable

"When you are with the Gentiles, you should always act in an honorable way"

##### they may be eyewitnesses of your good deeds

"they may be eyewitnesses of the good things that you do"

##### on the day when he appears

"on the day when he comes." or "when he comes to judge everyone"

#### 1 Peter 2:13

##### every human authority

"every person who is in authority"

##### for the Lord's sake

Possible meanings are 1) that by obeying human authorities, they are obeying the Lord who established those authorities or 2) that by obeying human authorities, they will honor Jesus who also obeyed human authorities.

##### the king as supreme

"the king as the highest human authority"

#### 1 Peter 2:14

##### who are sent for the punishment

"whom the king has sent to punish"

#### 1 Peter 2:15

##### in doing good you silence the ignorant talk of foolish people

"by doing good you stop foolish people from speaking about things that they do not know"

#### 1 Peter 2:16

##### as a covering for wickedness

"as an excuse to do wicked things"

#### 1 Peter 2:18

##### the good and gentle masters

"the very kind masters"

##### the malicious ones

"the cruel ones" or "the mean ones"

#### 1 Peter 2:19

##### it is praiseworthy

"it is pleasing to God"

##### because he is conscious of God, a person endures sorrows while suffering unjustly

This person accepts unjust suffering because he knows that he is obeying God.

#### 1 Peter 2:20

##### For how much credit is there ... while being afflicted?

"For there is no credit ... while being afflicted."

##### while being afflicted

"while someone punishes you"

#### 1 Peter 2:21

##### it is to this that you were called

"God has called you to this"

##### for you to follow in his steps

"so that you would imitate his behavior"

#### 1 Peter 2:22

##### neither was any deceit found in his mouth

"neither did he speak any lies" or "neither did anyone find deceit in his mouth"

#### 1 Peter 2:23

##### When he was insulted, he gave no insult in return

"When people insulted him, he did not insult them back"

##### he gave himself over to the one who judges justly

"he entrusted himself to the one who judges justly." This means that he trusted God to take away his shame, which had been put on him by those who treated him harshly.

#### 1 Peter 2:24

##### He himself

This refers to Jesus, with emphasis.

##### carried our sins in his body on the tree

"suffered the punishment for our sins in his body on the cross"

##### By his bruises you have been healed

"God has healed you because people bruised him"

#### 1 Peter 2:25

##### you had been straying like lost sheep

Peter compares his readers' actions before they had believed in Christ to the way lost sheep wander away from their shepherd.

##### the shepherd ... of your souls

"your shepherd..."

Chapter 3

1In the same way, you who are wives should submit to your own husbands. Do this so that even if some men are disobedient to the word, they may be won without a word, through their wives' behavior,2having been eyewitnesses of your respectful, pure behavior.3Do not let your adornment be outward—the braiding of hair and putting on of gold ornaments, or the clothing you wear.4Instead, let your adornment be the inner person of the heart with the lasting beauty of a gentle and quiet spirit, which is precious before God.5For this is how holy women long ago who hoped in God adorned themselves, by submitting to their husbands.6In this way Sarah obeyed Abraham and called him her lord. You are now her children if you do what is good and if you are not afraid of trouble.

7In the same way, you husbands should live with your wives according to understanding, as with a weaker container, a woman. You should give them honor as fellow heirs of the grace of life. Do this so that your prayers will not be hindered.

8Finally, all of you, be like-minded, compassionate, loving as brothers, tenderhearted, and humble.9Do not pay back evil for evil or insult for insult. On the contrary, continue to bless, because for this you were called, that you might inherit a blessing.10"The one who wants to love life and see good daysshould stop his tongue from evil and his lips from speaking deceit.11Let him turn away from what is bad and do what is good.Let him seek peace and pursue it.12The eyes of the Lord see the righteous, and his ears hear their prayers.But the face of the Lord is against those who do evil."

13Who is the one who will harm you if you are eager to do what is good?14But even if you suffer because of righteousness, you are blessed. Do not fear their threats. Do not be troubled.15Instead, set apart the Lord Christ in your hearts as holy. Always be ready to give an account to anyone who asks about the hope you have—16however, with meekness and respect. Have a good conscience so that, in whatever you are spoken of as evil, the people who slander your good life in Christ may be put to shame.17It is better, if it should be God's will, that you suffer for doing good than for doing evil.18Christ also suffered once for sins. He who is righteous suffered for us, who were unrighteous, so that he would bring us to God. He was put to death in the flesh, but he was made alive by the Spirit.19By the Spirit, he went and preached to the spirits who are now in prison.20They were disobedient when the patience of God was waiting in the days of Noah, in the days of the building of an ark, and God saved a few people—eight souls—by means of the water.21This is a symbol of the baptism that saves you now—not as a washing away of dirt from the body, but as the appeal of a good conscience to God—through the resurrection of Jesus Christ.22Christ is at the right hand of God. He went into heaven. Angels, authorities, and powers must submit to him.

#### 1 Peter 3:1

##### In the same way, you who are wives should submit to your own husbands

Just as believers are to "Obey every human authority" (1 Peter 2:13) and servants are to "be subject" to their masters (1 Peter 2:18), wives are to submit to their husbands. The words "Obey," "be subject," and "submit" translate the same word.

##### some men are disobedient to the word

"some men do not believe the message about Jesus"

##### they may be won

"they may become believers"

##### without a word

"without the wife saying a word about Jesus"

#### 1 Peter 3:2

##### having been eyewitnesses of your respectful, pure behavior

"having seen for themselves that you behave sincerely and respectfully" or "your pure behavior toward them and the way that you honor God"

#### 1 Peter 3:3

##### your adornment

"the things that make you beautiful"

#### 1 Peter 3:4

##### the inner person of the heart

"what you really are on the inside"

##### a gentle and quiet spirit

"a gentle and peaceful attitude."

##### which is precious before God

"which God considers to be precious"

#### 1 Peter 3:5

##### who hoped in God

"who fully trusted God"

#### 1 Peter 3:6

##### called him her lord

said that he was her lord, that is, her master

##### You are now her children

Peter says that believing women who act as Sarah acted can be thought of as if they were her actual children.

#### 1 Peter 3:7

##### In the same way

This refers back to how Sarah and other godly women obeyed their husbands in 1 Peter 3:5 and 6.

##### wives according to understanding, as with a weaker container, a woman

"wives, understanding that the woman is the weaker partner”

##### give them honor as fellow heirs of the grace of life

"honor them because they will also receive by grace the eternal life that God gives"

##### Do this

"Live with your wives in this way"

##### so that your prayers will not be hindered

"so that nothing will hinder your prayers"

#### 1 Peter 3:8

##### be like-minded, compassionate

"have the same attitude and be compassionate"

##### tenderhearted

being gentle and compassionate towards others

#### 1 Peter 3:9

##### Do not pay back evil for evil or insult for insult

"Do not do evil to someone who does evil to you or insult someone who insults you"

##### continue to bless

"continue to bless those who do evil to you or insult you"

##### for this you were called

"God called you for this"

##### that you might inherit a blessing

"that you might receive God's blessing as your permanent possession"

#### 1 Peter 3:10

##### General Information:

In these verses Peter quotes from Psalm 34:12-16.

##### to love life and see good days

"experience good things during life"

##### stop his tongue from evil and his lips from speaking deceit

"stop himself from saying evil and deceitful things"

#### 1 Peter 3:11

##### Let him turn away from what is bad

"Let him stop doing what is bad"

#### 1 Peter 3:12

##### The eyes of the Lord see the righteous

"The Lord sees the righteous" or "The Lord approves of the righteous"

##### his ears hear their prayers

"he hears their prayers" or "he grants their prayers"

##### the face of the Lord is against

"the Lord opposes"

#### 1 Peter 3:13

##### Who is the one who will harm you if you are eager to do what is good?

"No one will harm you if you do good things"

#### 1 Peter 3:14

##### suffer because of righteousness

"suffer because you do what is right"

##### you are blessed

"God will bless you"

##### Do not fear their threats. Do not be troubled

"Do not be afraid of what people might do to you"

##### their threats

Here the word "their" refers to anyone who might try to harm those to whom Peter is writing.

#### 1 Peter 3:15

##### Instead, set apart

"Instead of being troubled, set apart"

##### set apart the Lord Christ in your hearts as holy

"acknowledge within yourselves that the Lord Christ is holy" or "honor the Lord Christ as holy within yourselves"

##### about the hope you have

"about what you are confidently expecting God to do for you"

#### 1 Peter 3:16

##### however, with meekness and respect

"but do this with gentleness and respect"

#### 1 Peter 3:17

##### if it should be God's will

Peter is saying that it is sometimes God's will that his people suffer, but it is not always God's will.

#### 1 Peter 3:18

##### suffered for us

The word "us" includes the people Peter was writing to; as he explains how Christ suffered and what Christ accomplished by suffering.

##### so that he would bring us to God

Peter probably means here that Christ died in order to create a close relationship between us and God.

##### He was put to death in the flesh

"People put Christ to death physically"

##### he was made alive by the Spirit

"the Spirit made him alive"

#### 1 Peter 3:19

##### By the Spirit, he went

"By the Holy Spirit's power, he went"

##### the spirits who are now in prison

"spirits of the dead people"

#### 1 Peter 3:20

##### when the patience of God was waiting

"when God was waiting patiently"

##### in the days of Noah, in the days of the building of an ark

"during the time of Noah, when he was building an ark"

#### 1 Peter 3:21

##### through the resurrection of Jesus Christ

"because of the resurrection of Jesus Christ." This phrase completes the thought, "This is a symbol of the baptism that saves you now."

#### 1 Peter 3:22

##### Christ is at the right hand of God

"Christ is beside God in the place of honor and authority"

##### submit to him

"submit to Jesus Christ"

Chapter 4

1Therefore, because Christ suffered in the flesh, arm yourselves with the same intention. For whoever has suffered in the flesh has ceased from sin.2As a result, such a person, for the rest of his time in the flesh, no longer lives for men's desires, but for God's will.3For the time that has passed is enough for you to do the desire of the Gentiles, living in sensuality, lusts, drunkenness, drunken celebrations, having wild parties, and committing lawless acts of idolatry.4They think it is strange that you do not join with them in these floods of reckless behavior, so they speak evil about you.5They will give an account to the one who is ready to judge the living and the dead.6For this purpose the gospel was preached also to the dead, so that, although they have been judged in the flesh as humans, they may live in the spirit the way God does.

7The end of all things is coming near. Therefore be of sound mind, and be sober in your thinking for the sake of prayers.8Above all things, have fervent love for one another, for love covers a multitude of sins.9Be hospitable to one another without complaining.10As each one of you has received a gift, use it to serve one another as good stewards of God's grace in its various forms.11If anyone speaks, let it be with God's words. If anyone serves, let it be from the strength that God supplies. Do these things so that in all ways God would be glorified through Jesus Christ. May there be to Jesus Christ glory and dominion forever and ever. Amen.

12Beloved, do not regard as strange the testing in the fire that has come upon you, as if something strange were happening to you.13Instead, however much you experience the sufferings of Christ, rejoice, so that you may also rejoice and be glad when his glory is revealed.14If you are insulted for Christ's name, you are blessed, because the Spirit of glory and of God rests on you.15But let none of you suffer as a murderer, a thief, an evildoer, or a meddler.16Yet if anyone suffers as a Christian, let him not be ashamed; instead, let him glorify God with that name.17For it is time for judgment to begin with the household of God. If it begins with us, what will be the outcome for those who disobey God's gospel?

18And  
  
"If it is difficult for the righteous to be saved,what will become of the ungodly and the sinner?"

19Therefore, let those who suffer because of God's will commit their souls to the faithful Creator in well-doing.

#### 1 Peter 4:1

##### in the flesh

"in his body"

##### arm yourselves with the same intention

"prepare yourselves with the same thoughts that Christ had"

##### has ceased from sin

"has stopped sinning"

#### 1 Peter 4:2

##### for men's desires

for the things that sinful people normally desire

#### 1 Peter 4:3

##### the time that has passed is enough for you to do the desire of the Gentiles

"you have been doing for too long the things that the Gentiles like to do"

##### drunken celebrations, having wild parties

These terms refer to activities in which people gather to drink too much alcohol and behave in a shameful manner.

#### 1 Peter 4:4

##### floods of reckless behavior

These examples of wild, boundless sin are spoken of as if they were great floods of water that sweep over people.

##### reckless behavior

doing everything they can to satisfy the desires of their bodies

#### 1 Peter 4:5

##### the one who is ready to judge

"Christ, who is ready to judge" or "God, who is ready to judge”

##### the living and the dead

"every person"

#### 1 Peter 4:6

##### the gospel was preached also to the dead

"the gospel was preached by Christ also to people who had already died" or "men preached the gospel also to those who were alive but are now dead"

##### they have been judged in the flesh as humans

"God judged them in their bodies as humans" or "men judged them in their bodies as humans"

##### judged in the flesh as humans

This is a reference to death as the ultimate form of judgment.

##### live in the spirit the way God does

"live spiritually as God lives because the Holy Spirit will enable them to do so" or "live according to God's standards by the power of the Holy Spirit"

#### 1 Peter 4:7

##### The end of all things is coming

"will soon happen"

##### be of sound mind, and be sober in your thinking

Peter uses these two phrases to emphasize the need to think clearly about life since the end of the world is near.

##### be sober in your thinking

"control your thoughts"

#### 1 Peter 4:8

##### Above all things

"Most importantly of all"

##### for love covers a multitude of sins

"for a person who loves will not try to find out if another person has sinned" or "for a person who loves will forgive the sins of other people, even if those sins are many"

#### 1 Peter 4:9

##### Be hospitable

Show kindness to and welcome guests and travelers.

#### 1 Peter 4:10

##### As each one of you has received a gift

"Because each one of you has received a special spiritual ability as a gift from God"

#### 1 Peter 4:11

##### so that in all ways God would be glorified

"so that in all ways you will praise and honor God"

#### 1 Peter 4:12

##### do not regard as strange the testing

"do not be surprised by the testing"

##### the testing in the fire that has come upon you

"the difficult trial that you are experiencing" or "your troubles that are like a test by fire"

#### 1 Peter 4:14

##### If you are insulted for Christ's name,

"If people insulted you because you believe in Christ"

##### the Spirit of glory and of God

"the Spirit of glory, who is the Spirit of God," or "the glorious Spirit of God"

##### rests on you

"is with you" or "lives with you"

#### 1 Peter 4:15

##### a meddler

This refers to a person who gets involved with the affairs of others without having a right to do so.

#### 1 Peter 4:16

##### with that name

"because he bears the name Christian" or "because people have recognized him as a Christian"

#### 1 Peter 4:17

##### household of God

This phrase refers to believers, whom Peter speaks of as God's family.

##### If it begins with us, what will be the outcome for those who disobey God's gospel?

"If it begins with us, what will happen to those who do not obey God's gospel will be much worse."

##### those who disobey God's gospel

"those who do not believe God's gospel."

#### 1 Peter 4:18

##### the righteous ... what will become of the ungodly and the sinner?

"the righteous man ... the outcome will be much worse for the ungodly and the sinner."

##### If it is difficult for the righteous to be saved

"If the righteous person experiences many difficulties before God saves him"

##### what will become of the ungodly and the sinner

"what will happen to the ungodly and the sinner"

##### the ungodly and the sinner

"ungodly sinners"

#### 1 Peter 4:19

##### commit their souls

"commit themselves" or "commit their lives"

##### in well-doing

"while they live rightly"

Chapter 5

1I am exhorting the elders among you—I, who am a fellow elder and a witness of the sufferings of Christ, and am also one who will share in the glory that will be revealed:2Be shepherds of God's flock that is under your care, serving as overseers—not because you must, but because you are willing, as God would have you serve—not for shameful profit but eagerly.3Do not act as lords over those allotted to you. Instead, be examples to the flock.4Then when the Chief Shepherd is revealed, you will receive an unfading crown of glory.5In the same way, you younger men, submit to the older men. All of you, clothe yourselves with humility and serve one another.   
  
"For God is opposed to the proud, but he gives grace to the humble."

6Therefore humble yourselves under God's mighty hand so that he may exalt you in due time.7Cast all your anxiety on him because he cares for you.8Be sober, be watchful. Your adversary the devil is walking around like a roaring lion, looking for someone to devour.9Stand against him. Be strong in your faith. You know that your brotherhood in the world is enduring the same sufferings.10After you suffer for a little while, the God of all grace, who called you to his eternal glory in Christ, will perfect you, confirm you, strengthen you, and establish you.11To him be the dominion forever and ever. Amen.

12I regard Silvanus as a faithful brother, and I have written to you briefly through him. I am exhorting you and I am testifying to you that what I have written is the true grace of God. Stand in it.13The woman who is in Babylon, who is chosen together with you, greets you. Also Mark, my son, greets you.14Greet one another with a kiss of love.

May peace be to you all who are in Christ.

#### 1 Peter 5:1

##### the glory that will be revealed

"the glory of Christ that God will reveal"

#### 1 Peter 5:2

##### Be shepherds of God's flock

Peter speaks of the believers as a flock of sheep and the elders as the shepherds who care for them.

#### 1 Peter 5:3

##### Do not act as lords over those allotted to you. Instead, be examples

Elders are to lead by example and not act toward the people as a harsh master would toward his servants.

##### those allotted to you

"those whom God has placed in your care"

#### 1 Peter 5:4

##### Then when the Chief Shepherd is revealed

"When Jesus, the Chief Shepherd, appears" or "When God reveals Jesus, the Chief Shepherd"

##### an unfading crown of glory

"a glorious prize that will last forever"

#### 1 Peter 5:5

##### In the same way

This refers back to the way the elders were to submit to the Chief Shepherd as Peter described in 1 Peter 5:1 to 4.

##### All of you

This refers to all believers, not just the younger men.

##### clothe yourselves with humility

"act humbly toward each other" or "act with humility"

#### 1 Peter 5:6

##### under God's mighty hand so

"under God's great power so" or "before God, realizing that he has great power, so"

#### 1 Peter 5:7

##### Cast all your anxiety on him

"Trust him with everything that worries you"

#### 1 Peter 5:8

##### Be sober

"Control your thoughts"

##### the devil is walking around like a roaring lion, looking for someone to devour

Peter teaches his readers that Satan can harm their bodies, but if they trust in God and obey him, they will always be God's people, and God will care for them. If your language has a word for the way an animal walks when it is hunting, you may use it here.

#### 1 Peter 5:9

##### Stand against him

"Fight against him"

##### your brotherhood in the world is enduring

"your fellow believers who are in the world are enduring"

##### in the world

"in various places throughout the world"

#### 1 Peter 5:10

##### for a little while

"for a short time"

##### the God of all grace

"the God who always gives us what we need" or "the God who is always gracious".

##### who called you to his eternal glory in Christ

"who chose you to share his eternal glory in heaven because you are joined to Christ"

##### perfect you

"make you perfect" or "restore you" or "make you well again"

##### confirm you, strengthen you

God will enable the believers to trust in him and to obey him regardless of any suffering they may experience.

#### 1 Peter 5:12

##### I have written to you briefly through him

Silvanus wrote the words that Peter told him to write in the letter.

##### what I have written is the true grace of God

"I have written about the true grace of God." Here the word "grace" refers to the gospel message.

##### Stand in it

"Remain strongly committed to it"

#### 1 Peter 5:13

##### The woman who is in Babylon

Here "The woman" probably refers to the group of believers who live in "Babylon." Possible meanings for "Babylon" are 1) it is a symbol for the city of Rome, 2) it is a symbol for anywhere that Christians are suffering, or 3) it refers literally to the city of Babylon. It most likely refers to the city of Rome because the Romans were persecuting the Christians.

##### who is chosen together with you

"whom God has chosen as he has chosen you"

##### my son

"my spiritual son"

#### 1 Peter 5:14

##### a kiss of love

"a kiss to show your love for each other"

## 2 Peter

Chapter 1

1Simon Peter, a slave and apostle of Jesus Christ, to those who have received the same precious faith as we have received, faith in the righteousness of our God and Savior Jesus Christ:

2May grace and peace increase in measure in the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord.3By his divine power, all things for life and godliness have been given to us through the knowledge of him who called us through his own glory and excellence.4Through these he gave us precious and great promises, so that you might be sharers in the divine nature, having escaped the corruption in the world that is caused by evil desires.5For this reason, do your best to add goodness to your faith, and to goodness add knowledge,6to knowledge add self-control, to self-control add endurance, to endurance add godliness,7to godliness add brotherly love, and to brotherly love add love.8If these things are in you and grow in you, they will keep you from being barren or unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ.9But whoever lacks these things is so nearsighted that he is blind, having forgotten he has been cleansed from his past sins.10Therefore, brothers, do your best to make your calling and election sure, for if you do these things, you will not stumble.11In this way there will be richly provided for you an entrance into the eternal kingdom of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ.

12Therefore I will always be ready to remind you of these things, although you know them, and although you are strong in the truth you now have.13I think it is proper for me, as long as I am in this tent, to stir you up by way of reminder.14For I know that the putting off of my tent will be soon, because our Lord Jesus Christ has revealed this to me.15I will make every effort to see that after my departure you may always be able to remember these things.16For we did not follow cleverly invented myths when we made known to you the power and the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, but we were eyewitnesses of his majesty.17For he received honor and glory from God the Father when a voice was brought to him by the Majestic Glory, saying, "This is my beloved Son, with him I am well pleased."18We ourselves heard this voice brought from heaven when we were with him on the holy mountain.19For we have the prophetic word made more certain, to which you would do well to pay attention as to a lamp shining in a dark place until the day dawns and the morning star rises in your hearts.20Above all, you must understand that no prophecy of scripture comes from someone's own interpretation.21For no prophecy was ever brought by the will of man, but men spoke from God when they were carried along by the Holy Spirit.

#### 2 Peter 1:1

##### slave and apostle of Jesus Christ

Peter speaks of being Jesus Christ's servant. He also was given the position and authority of being Christ's apostle.

##### to those who have received the same precious faith

"to the believers to whom God has given the same precious faith"

##### we have received

"we apostles have received"

#### 2 Peter 1:2

##### May grace and peace increase in measure

"May God increase your grace and your peace"

##### in the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord

"through your knowing God and Jesus our Lord"

#### 2 Peter 1:3

##### for life and godliness

"for a godly life"

##### through the knowledge of him who called us

"through our knowledge of God, who called us"

##### through his own glory and excellence

"by showing us his own glory and greatness" or "to share his own glory and excellence"

#### 2 Peter 1:4

##### Through these

Here "these" refer to "his own glory and virtue."

##### you might be sharers

"you might share"

##### the divine nature

what God is like

##### having escaped the corruption in the world that is caused by evil desires

"and so that the wicked desires in this world will no longer corrupt you"

#### 2 Peter 1:5

##### For this reason

"Because of what God has done"

#### 2 Peter 1:7

##### brotherly love

Love for a friend or family member and it likely includes love for one's spiritual family.

#### 2 Peter 1:8

##### these things

This refers to faith, virtue, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love, which Peter mentioned in the previous verses.

##### they will keep you from being barren or unfruitful

"because you have them you will not be barren or unproductive" or "they will enable you to do much valuable work"

##### in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ

"through your knowing God and Jesus our Lord"

#### 2 Peter 1:9

##### whoever lacks these things

any person who does not have these things

##### is so nearsighted that he is blind

"is like a shortsighted person who cannot see their importance"

##### he has been cleansed from his past sins

"that God has cleansed him from his old sins"

#### 2 Peter 1:10

##### make your calling and election sure

"make sure that God has really chosen you to belong to him"

##### you will not stumble

"you will not practice sinful behavior" or "you will not become unfaithful to Christ"

#### 2 Peter 1:11

##### there will be richly provided for you an entrance into the eternal kingdom

"God will richly provide for you the opportunity to enter into the eternal kingdom"

#### 2 Peter 1:12

##### you are strong in the truth

"you strongly believe the truth of these things"

#### 2 Peter 1:13

##### to stir you up by way of reminder

"to remind you of these things so that you will think about them"

##### as long as I am in this tent

"as long as I am in this body"

#### 2 Peter 1:15

##### after my departure

"after my death"

#### 2 Peter 1:16

##### For we did not follow cleverly invented myths

"For we apostles did not follow cleverly made-up stories"

##### the power and the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ

"the powerful coming". Possible meanings are: the future second coming of the Lord Jesus or the first coming of the Lord Jesus.

#### 2 Peter 1:17

##### when a voice was brought to him by the Majestic Glory

"when he heard a voice come from the Majestic Glory" or "God, the Supreme Glory, saying"

#### 2 Peter 1:18

##### We ourselves heard this voice brought from heaven

"We ourselves heard this voice that came from heaven" or "We ourselves heard the voice of the one who spoke from heaven" Peter is referring to himself and to the disciples James and John, who heard the voice of God.

##### we were with him

"we were with Jesus"

#### 2 Peter 1:19

##### For we have the prophetic word made more certain

"For the things that we saw make this prophetic message more sure" or "the scriptures, which the prophets spoke, made". This refers to the Old Testament.

##### to which you would do well to pay attention

Peter instructs the believers to pay close attention to the prophetic message.

##### as to a lamp shining in a dark place until the day dawns

Peter compares the prophetic word to a lamp that gives light in the dark until light comes in the morning. The coming of morning is a reference to Christ's coming.

##### the morning star rises in your hearts

"Christ shines his light into your hearts like the morning star shines its light into the world"

#### 2 Peter 1:20

##### Above all, you must understand

"Most importantly, you must understand"

##### no prophecy of scripture comes from someone's own interpretation

Possible meanings are 1) the prophets did not make their prophecies on their own or 2) people must rely on the Holy Spirit to understand and interpret the prophecies.

#### 2 Peter 1:21

##### men spoke from God when they were carried along by the Holy Spirit

"men spoke from God as the Holy Spirit directed them"

Chapter 2

1False prophets came to the people, and false teachers will also come to you. They will secretly bring with them destructive heresies, and they will deny the master who bought them. They are bringing quick destruction upon themselves.2Many will follow their sensuality, and through them the way of truth will be slandered.3In their greed they will exploit you with deceptive words. Their condemnation has been coming for a long time, and their destruction is not asleep.4For if God did not spare the angels who sinned, but delivered them into hell to be kept in chains of darkness until the judgment, [1](#footnote-target-1)5and if he did not spare the ancient world, but preserved Noah, a herald of righteousness, along with seven others when he brought a flood on the world of the ungodly,6and if he reduced the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah to ashes and condemned them to destruction as an example of what is to happen to the ungodly,7but delivered righteous Lot, who was oppressed by the sensual behavior of lawless people—8for that righteous man, who was living among them day after day, was tormented in his righteous soul by seeing and hearing their lawless deeds—9if the Lord did these things, then he knows how to rescue godly men out of trials and how to hold unrighteous men in custody so they can be punished on the day of judgment.10This is especially true for those who walk after the corrupt desires of the flesh and who despise authority. Bold and self-willed, they do not tremble when they blaspheme the glorious ones.11Angels have greater strength and power, but they do not bring insulting judgments against them to the Lord.12But these people are like unreasoning animals, born for capture and destruction. They do not know what they insult. In destruction they also will be destroyed,13suffering harm as a reward for doing harm. They think that luxury during the day is a pleasure. They are stains and blemishes. They enjoy their deceitful actions while they are feasting with you. [2](#footnote-target-2)14They have eyes full of adultery; they are never satisfied with sin. They entice unstable souls into wrongdoing, and they have their hearts trained in greed. They are cursed children!15They have abandoned the straight way and have gone astray, following the way of Balaam son of Beor, who loved to receive payment for unrighteousness. [3](#footnote-target-3)16But he obtained a rebuke for his own transgression—a mute donkey speaking in a human voice stopped the prophet's insanity.17These men are springs without water and mists driven by a storm. The gloom of thick darkness is reserved for them.18They speak with vain arrogance. Through the lusts of the flesh, through sensuality, they entice people who are trying to escape from those who live in error.19They promise freedom to them, but they themselves are slaves of corruption. For a man is a slave to whatever overcomes him.20If they have escaped the corruptions of the world through the knowledge of the Lord and Savior Jesus Christ and are again entangled in them and overcome, the last state has become worse for them than the first.21It would have been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness than to have known it and to turn away from the holy commandment delivered to them.22This proverb is true for them: "A dog returns to its own vomit, and a washed pig returns to the mud."

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, to be kept in pits of darkness until the judgment , [2](#footnote-caller-2)Some ancient copies of the Greek text read, They enjoy their actions while they are feasting with you in love feasts . [3](#footnote-caller-3)Many modern translations read Balaam son of Beor in order to be consistent with the Old Testament spelling of the name. Some modern translations choose to follow the spelling of the Greek text, which reads, Balaam son of Bosor .

#### 2 Peter 2:1

##### False prophets came to the people, and false teachers will also come to you

Just as false prophets came deceiving Israel with their words, so will false teachers come teaching lies about Christ.

##### destructive heresies

The word "heresies" refers to opinions that are contrary to the teaching of Christ and the apostles. These heresies destroy the faith of those who believe them.

##### the master who bought them

The word "master" here refers to a person who owns slaves. Peter speaks of Jesus as the owner of people whom he has bought, the price being his death.

#### 2 Peter 2:2

##### sensuality

immoral sexual behavior

##### the way of truth will be slandered

"unbelievers will slander the way of truth". The phrase "way of truth" refers to the Christian faith as the true path to God.

#### 2 Peter 2:3

##### exploit you with deceptive words

"convince you to give them money by telling you lies"

##### Their condemnation has been coming for a long time, and their destruction is not asleep

"It was decided long ago that they would be condemned; they will surely be destroyed" or "God said long ago that he would condemn them; he is ready to destroy them". Possible meanings are 1) the false teachers will be condemned, and as a result they will be destroyed, or 2) the two phrases emphasize how soon or how certainly the false teachers will be condemned.

#### 2 Peter 2:4

##### did not spare

"did not refrain from punishing"

##### but delivered them into hell

"but sent them to hell"

##### to be kept in chains of darkness

"in darkness that imprisons them like chains" or "where God keeps them in chains of darkness”

#### 2 Peter 2:5

##### and if he did not spare the ancient world

"and if God did not refrain from punishing the people who lived in the ancient world"

##### but preserved Noah ... along with seven others

"but protected Noah ... along with seven others."

##### Noah, a herald of righteousness

"Noah, a preacher of righteousness." Possible meanings are 1) Noah taught people that they should live righteous lives, or 2) Noah warned people that the righteous God would judge them.

#### 2 Peter 2:6

##### and if he reduced the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah to ashes

"and if God burned the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah with fire until only ashes remained"

##### condemned them to destruction

Here the word "them" refers to Sodom and Gomorrah and the people who lived in them.

##### as an example of what is to happen to the ungodly

Sodom and Gomorrah serve as an example and a warning of what will happen to others who disobey God.

#### 2 Peter 2:7

##### but delivered righteous Lot

Lot was righteous, and God rescued him from the punishment he sent on Sodom and Gomorrah.

##### the sensual behavior of lawless people

"the immoral behavior of people who broke God's law"

#### 2 Peter 2:8

##### that righteous man

This refers to Lot.

##### was tormented in his righteous soul

"was greatly disturbed"

#### 2 Peter 2:9

##### if the Lord did these things

The words "these things" refer to what God did in verses 4-8.

##### rescue ... out of trials

"enable ... to resist temptation" or "enable ... to pass the test"

#### 2 Peter 2:10

##### This is especially true

The word "this" refers to God keeping unrighteous men in prison until judgment day in 2 Peter 2:9.

##### those who walk after the corrupt desires of the flesh

"those who continue to indulge their corrupt, sinful desires"

##### despise authority

"refuse to submit to God's authority."

##### self-willed

"doing whatever they want to do"

#### 2 Peter 2:11

##### greater strength and power

"more strength and power than the false teachers"

##### they do not bring insulting judgments against them

The word "they" refers to angels. Possible meanings for the word "them" are 1) the glorious ones or 2) the false teachers. The idea that angels could accuse them is spoken of as if they could attack them using accusations as weapons.

#### 2 Peter 2:12

##### these people are like unreasoning animals, born for capture and destruction

"these false teachers are like unreasoning animals whose nature is to be born for capture and destruction" or "so that people can capture them or other animals can destroy them" or "and they become prey or die"

##### They do not know what they insult

They speak evil of what they do not know or understand.

##### In destruction they also will be destroyed

"God will completely destroy them"

#### 2 Peter 2:13

##### suffering harm as a reward for doing harm

"receiving what they deserve for the harm they have done"

##### luxury during the day

Here the word "luxury" refers to immoral activity that includes gluttony, drunkenness, and sexual activity. Doing these things during the day indicates that these people are not ashamed of this behavior.

##### They are stains and blemishes

"They are like stains and blemishes on clothes, which cause disgrace"

#### 2 Peter 2:14

##### They have eyes full of adultery

"They constantly want to commit adultery"

##### they are never satisfied with sin

Although they sin in order to satisfy their lusts, the sin that they commit never satisfies.

##### They entice unstable souls

"They entice unstable people"

##### hearts trained in greed

Here the word "hearts" refers to the thoughts and emotions of the person. Because of their habitual actions, they have trained themselves to think and act out of greed.

#### 2 Peter 2:15

##### the straight way

Behavior that honors God is spoken of as if it were a path to follow.

##### have gone astray

People who commit evil behavior that displeases God are spoken of as if they were animals who go away from the people who take care of them.

##### to receive payment for unrighteousness

"to receive money for doing things that are not righteous"

#### 2 Peter 2:16

##### he obtained a rebuke

"God rebuked Balaam"

##### a mute donkey speaking in a human voice

A donkey, which is naturally unable to speak, spoke with a voice like a human.

##### stopped the prophet's insanity

God used a donkey to stop the prophet's foolish action.

#### 2 Peter 2:17

##### These men are springs without water and mists driven by a storm

Springs flowing with water promise refreshment for thirsty people, but "springs without water" will leave the thirsty disappointed. In the same way, false teachers, although they promise many things, are unable to do what they promise.

##### The gloom of thick darkness is reserved for them

"God has reserved the gloom of thick darkness for the false teachers"

#### 2 Peter 2:18

##### They speak with vain arrogance

They use impressive but meaningless words.

##### Through the lusts of the flesh, through sensuality, they entice people

"They appeal to people's fleshly lusts and desire for sensuality. This is how they entice people"

##### people who are trying to escape from those who live in error

"people who try to live rightly, instead of living sinfully as they used to and as other people do"

#### 2 Peter 2:19

##### They promise freedom to them, but they themselves are slaves of corruption

"They promise to give them the ability to live exactly as they want to live, but they themselves cannot escape their own sinful desires"

##### For a man is a slave to whatever overcomes him

"For if something has control over a person, that person becomes like a slave to that thing"

#### 2 Peter 2:20

##### If they have escaped the corruptions of the world ... and are again entangled in them and overcome

"Since they have escaped the corrupting practices of sinful human society ... and are again entangled in them and overcome"

##### through the knowledge of the Lord and Savior Jesus Christ

"by knowing the Lord and Savior Jesus Christ"

##### the last state has become worse for them than the first

"their condition is worse than it was before"

#### 2 Peter 2:21

##### the way of righteousness

Peter speaks of life as a "way" or path. This phrase refers to living a life that is according to God's will.

##### turn away from the holy commandment delivered to them

"stop obeying the holy commandment" or "the holy commandment that God delivered to them" or "the holy commandment that God made sure that they received"

#### 2 Peter 2:22

##### This proverb is true for them

"This proverb applies to them" or "This proverb describes them"

##### A dog returns to its own vomit, and a washed pig returns to the mud

Peter uses two proverbs to illustrate how the false teachers, although they have known "the way of righteousness," have turned back to the things that make them morally and spiritually impure.

Chapter 3

1Beloved, this is now the second letter that I have written to you, and in both of them they are reminders to stir up your sincere mind2so that you will recall the words spoken in the past by the holy prophets and the command of our Lord and Savior given through your apostles.3Know this first, that mockers will come in the last days. They will mock and proceed according to their own desires.4They will say, "Where is the promise of his return? From when our fathers fell asleep, all things have stayed the same, since the beginning of creation."5They deliberately forget that long ago by the word of God the heavens and the earth came to exist out of water and through water,6through which the world at that time was destroyed, being flooded with water.7By the same word the heavens and the earth are reserved for fire, being kept for the day of judgment and destruction of ungodly people.

8It should not escape your notice, beloved, that one day with the Lord is like a thousand years, and a thousand years are like one day.9The Lord is not slow concerning his promise, as some consider slowness to be. Rather, he is patient toward you. He does not desire for any of you to perish, but for everyone to come to repentance.10However, the day of the Lord will come as a thief. The heavens will pass away with a loud noise. The elements will be burned with fire, and the earth and the deeds in it will be laid bare. [1](#footnote-target-1)11Since all these things will be destroyed in this way, what kind of people should you be? You should live holy and godly lives.12You should expect and hasten the coming of the day of God. On that day, the heavens will be destroyed by fire, and the elements will be melted in great heat.13But according to his promise we are waiting for the new heavens and the new earth, where righteousness will dwell.

14Therefore, beloved, since you expect these things, do your best to be found spotless and blameless before him, in peace.15Also, consider the patience of our Lord to be salvation, just as our beloved brother Paul wrote to you, according to the wisdom that was given to him.16Paul speaks of these things in all his letters, in which there are things that are difficult to understand. Ignorant and unstable men distort these things, as they also do the other scriptures, to their own destruction.17Therefore, beloved, since you know about these things beforehand, guard yourselves so that you are not led astray by the deceit of lawless people and lose your own faithfulness.18But grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ. May the glory be to him both now and to the day of eternity. Amen!

[1](#footnote-caller-1)It is uncertain which Greek word is intended for the last word of verse 10, either laid bare or burned up are the choices. There is uncertainty about which word should be chosen. The second choice would be, The elements will be burned with fire, and the earth and the deeds in it will be burned up .

#### 2 Peter 3:1

##### to stir up your sincere mind

"to cause you to think pure thoughts"

#### 2 Peter 3:2

##### the words spoken in the past by the holy prophets

"the words that the holy prophets spoke in the past"

##### the command of our Lord and Savior given through your apostles

"the command of our Lord and Savior, which your apostles gave to you"

#### 2 Peter 3:3

##### Know this first

"Know this as the most important thing." See how you translated this in 2 Peter 1:20.

##### proceed according to their own desires

"live or behave according to their own sinful desires"

#### 2 Peter 3:4

##### Where is the promise of his return?

"The promise that Jesus would return is not true! He will not return!"

##### our fathers fell asleep

"our ancestors died"

##### all things have stayed the same, since the beginning of creation

"since God created the world" The mockers exaggerate with the word "all," and they argue that since nothing in the world has ever changed, it cannot be true that Jesus will return.

#### 2 Peter 3:5

##### by the word of God the heavens and the earth came to exist

"God spoke and the heavens and the earth came to exist"

##### came to exist out of water and through water

God caused the land to come up out of the water, gathering the bodies of water together to make the land appear.

#### 2 Peter 3:6

##### through which

Here "which" refers to God's word and water.

##### the world at that time was destroyed, being flooded with water

"God flooded the world that existed at that time with water and destroyed it"

#### 2 Peter 3:7

##### By the same word the heavens and the earth are reserved for fire

"God, by that same command, has reserved the heavens and the earth for fire"

##### fire, being kept for the day of judgment

"fire. God is reserving them for the day of judgment"

##### for the day of judgment and destruction of ungodly people

"for the day when he judges and destroys ungodly people"

#### 2 Peter 3:8

##### It should not escape your notice

"You should not fail to understand this"

##### that one day with the Lord is like a thousand years

"that from the Lord's point of view, one day is like a thousand years"

#### 2 Peter 3:9

##### The Lord is not slow concerning his promise

"The Lord is not slow to fulfill his promise to return"

##### as some consider slowness to be

Some people think that the Lord is slow to fulfill his promise because their perspective of time is different from God's.

#### 2 Peter 3:10

##### However ... laid bare

Although the Lord is being patient and wants people to repent, he will indeed return and bring judgment.

##### the day of the Lord will come as a thief

Peter speaks of the day when God will judge everyone as if it were a thief who will come unexpectedly, and the people will be surprised when it happens.

##### The heavens will pass away

"The heavens will disappear"

##### The elements will be burned with fire

"God will burn the elements with fire". Possible meanings are 1) the heavenly bodies, such as the sun, moon, and stars or 2) the things that make up heaven and earth, such as soil, air, fire, and water.

##### the earth and the deeds in it will be laid bare

"God will expose the earth and everything that people have done on it"

#### 2 Peter 3:11

##### Since all these things will be destroyed in this way

"Since God will destroy all these things in this way"

##### what kind of people should you be?

"you know what kind of people you should be."

#### 2 Peter 3:12

##### the heavens will be destroyed by fire, and the elements will be melted in great heat

"God will destroy the heavens by fire, and he will melt the elements in great heat"

#### 2 Peter 3:13

##### where righteousness will dwell

"where righteous people will dwell"

#### 2 Peter 3:14

##### do your best to be found spotless and blameless before him, in peace

"do your best to live in such a way that God will find you completely pure and faultless, and be at peace with him and each other"

#### 2 Peter 3:15

##### Also, consider the patience of our Lord to be salvation

"Also, think about the patience of our Lord as giving people an opportunity to repent and be saved". Because the Lord is patient, the day of judgment has not yet happened. This gives people an opportunity to repent and be saved, as he explained in 2 Peter 3:9.

##### according to the wisdom that was given to him

"according to the wisdom that God gave to him"

#### 2 Peter 3:16

##### Paul speaks of these things in all his letters

"Paul speaks of the patience of God leading to salvation in all his letters"

##### in which there are things that are difficult to understand

There are things in Paul's letters that are difficult to understand.

##### Ignorant and unstable men distort these things

"Unlearned and unsteady." These men have not been taught how to properly interpret scripture and are not well established in the truth of the gospel.

##### to their own destruction

"resulting in their own destruction"

#### 2 Peter 3:17

##### since you know about these things

"These things" refers to the truths about the patience of God and the teachings of these false teachers.

##### guard yourselves

"protect yourselves"

##### so that you are not led astray by the deceit of lawless people

"so that lawless people do not deceive you and cause you do something wrong"

##### and lose your own faithfulness

"and stop being faithful"

#### 2 Peter 3:18

##### grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ

"receive more of the grace of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, and know him more"

## 1 John

Chapter 1

1That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked at and our hands have touched, concerning the Word of life—2the life was made known, and we have seen and testify and proclaim to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to us.3That which we have seen and heard we declare also to you, so you also will have fellowship with us. Our fellowship is with the Father and with his Son, Jesus Christ.4Also, we are writing these things to you so that our joy will be complete. [1](#footnote-target-1)

5This is the message that we have heard from him and are proclaiming to you: God is light, and in him there is no darkness at all.6If we say that we have fellowship with him and walk in darkness, we are lying and are not practicing the truth.7But if we walk in the light as he is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin.8If we say that we have no sin, we are deceiving ourselves, and the truth is not in us.9But if we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and cleanse us from all unrighteousness.10If we say that we have not sinned, we make him out to be a liar, and his word is not in us.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important ancient Greek copies read, And we are writing these things to you so that your joy will be complete .

#### 1 John 1:1

##### which we have heard

"which we have heard him teach"

##### which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked at

"which we ourselves have seen"

##### the Word of life

"the one who gives life" or "the one who causes people to live forever"

##### life

Throughout this letter, the word "life" refers to more than physical life. Here it refers to being alive spiritually.

#### 1 John 1:2

##### the life was made known

"God made the eternal life known to us" or "God made us able to know him, who is eternal life"

##### we have seen and testify

"we have seen it and testify about it" or "we have seen him and testify about him"

##### the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to us

"the one who enables us to live forever, who was with God the Father, and who has been made known to us". This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### and which has been made known to us

"and which the Father has made known to us"

#### 1 John 1:3

##### That which we have seen and heard we declare also to you

"We say to you also what we have seen and heard"

##### have fellowship with us. Our fellowship is with the Father

"be our close friends. We are friends with God the Father"

##### Our fellowship

It is not clear if John is including or excluding his readers. You may translate this either way.

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### 1 John 1:4

##### so that our joy will be complete

"to make our joy complete"

#### 1 John 1:5

##### God is light

"God is purely righteous like pure light"

##### in him there is no darkness at all

"in him there is nothing that is evil"

#### 1 John 1:6

##### walk in darkness

"do what is evil"

#### 1 John 1:7

##### walk in the light as he is in the light

"do what is good as God is perfectly good" or "do what is right as God is perfectly right"

##### the blood of Jesus

This refers to the death of Jesus.

#### 1 John 1:8

##### have no sin

"never sin"

##### are deceiving

"lying to"

##### the truth is not in us

"we do not believe what God says is true"

#### 1 John 1:9

##### he is faithful

"God is faithful"

##### to forgive us our sins and cleanse us from all unrighteousness

"and will completely forgive us for what we have done wrong"

#### 1 John 1:10

##### we make him out to be a liar

"it is the same as calling God a liar, because he said we have all sinned"

##### his word is not in us

"we do not understand God's word and do not obey what he says"

Chapter 2

1Children, I am writing these things to you so that you will not sin. But if anyone sins, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ, the one who is righteous.2He is the atoning sacrifice for our sins, and not for ours only, but also for the whole world.3We know that we have come to know him, if we keep his commandments.4The one who says "I know God" but does not keep his commandments is a liar, and the truth is not in him.5But whoever keeps his word, in him truly the love of God has been perfected. By this we know that we are in him:6whoever says that he remains in God should himself also walk just as he walked.

7Beloved, I am not writing a new commandment to you, but an old commandment that you have had from the beginning. The old commandment is the word that you heard.8Yet I am writing a new commandment to you, which is true in Christ and in you, because the darkness is passing away, and the true light is already shining.9The one who says that he is in the light and hates his brother is in the darkness until now.10The one who loves his brother remains in the light, and there is no occasion for stumbling in him.11But the one who hates his brother is in the darkness and walks in the darkness; he does not know where he is going because the darkness has blinded his eyes.

12I am writing to you, children, because your sins are forgiven because of his name.13I am writing to you, fathers, because you know the one who is from the beginning. I am writing to you, young men, because you have overcome the evil one. I have written to you, children, because you know the Father.

14I have written to you, fathers, because you know the one who is from the beginning. I have written to you, young men, because you are strong, and the word of God remains in you, and you have overcome the evil one.15Do not love the world or the things that are in the world. If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him.16For everything that is in the world—the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, and the arrogance of life—is not from the Father but is from the world.17The world and its desire are passing away. But whoever does the will of God will remain forever.

18Children, it is the last hour. Just as you heard that the antichrist is coming, now many antichrists have come. By this we know that it is the last hour.19They went out from us, but they were not from us. For if they had been from us, they would have remained with us. But when they went out, that showed they were not from us.20But you have an anointing from the Holy One, and you all know.21I did not write to you because you do not know the truth, but because you know it and because no lie is from the truth.22Who is the liar but the one who denies that Jesus is the Christ? That person is the antichrist, since he denies the Father and the Son.23No one who denies the Son has the Father. Whoever confesses the Son also has the Father.24As for you, let what you have heard from the beginning remain in you. If what you heard from the beginning remains in you, you will also remain in the Son and in the Father.25This is the promise he gave to us—eternal life.26I have written these things to you about those who would lead you astray.27As for you, the anointing that you received from him remains in you, and you do not need anyone to teach you. But as his anointing teaches you everything and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him.

28Now, children, remain in him so that when he appears we will have boldness and not be ashamed before him at his coming.29If you know that he is righteous, you know that everyone who does what is right has been born from him.

#### 1 John 2:1

##### Children

"You who are as dear to me as my own children"

##### I am writing these things

"I am writing this letter"

##### But if anyone sins

"But when anyone sins"

##### we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ, the one who is righteous

"we have Jesus Christ, the one who is righteous, who speaks to the Father and asks him to forgive us"

#### 1 John 2:2

##### He is the atoning sacrifice for our sins

"God is no longer angry with us because Jesus sacrificed his own life for our sins"

#### 1 John 2:3

##### We know that we have come to know him

"We know that we know him" or "We know that we have a good relationship with him”

##### if we keep his commandments

"if we obey what he commands"

#### 1 John 2:4

##### The one who says

"Anyone who says" or "The person who says"

##### I know God

"I have a good relationship with God"

##### does not keep his commandments

"does not obey what God commands"

##### the truth is not in him

"he does not believe what God says is true"

#### 1 John 2:5

##### keeps his word

"does what God says to do" or "obeys what God says"

##### in him truly the love of God has been perfected

"it is that person who truly loves God perfectly" or "God's love has achieved its purpose in that person's life"

##### By this we know that we are in him

"When we obey what God says, we can be certain that we have fellowship with him" or "By this we know that we are joined to God"

#### 1 John 2:6

##### remains in God

"continues to have fellowship with God" or "stays joined to God"

##### should himself also walk just as he walked

"must live as he lived" or "should also obey God just as Jesus Christ did"

#### 1 John 2:7

##### Beloved, I am

"You people whom I love, I am"

##### I am not writing a new commandment to you, but an old commandment that you have had

"I write to you to love one other, which is not a new thing to do but an old commandment that you have heard"

##### from the beginning

"from when you first believed in Christ"

##### The old commandment is the word that you heard

"The old commandment is the message that you heard"

#### 1 John 2:8

##### Yet I am writing a new commandment to you

"But in one way the commandment I write to you is a new commandment"

##### which is true in Christ and in you

"which is true, as shown in Christ's deeds and your deeds"

##### the darkness is passing away, and the true light is already shining

"you are ceasing to do evil and you are doing more and more good"

#### 1 John 2:9

##### The one who says

"Anyone who says"

##### he is in the light

"he does what is right"

##### is in the darkness

"does what is evil"

#### 1 John 2:10

##### there is no occasion for stumbling in him

"nothing will cause him to stumble" or "nothing will cause him to sin" or "he will not fail to do what is pleasing to God"

#### 1 John 2:11

##### is in the darkness and walks in the darkness

"does what is evil"

##### he does not know where he is going

"he does not know what he should do"

##### the darkness has blinded his eyes

"sin has made it impossible for him to understand the truth"

#### 1 John 2:12

##### you, children

"you who are as dear to me as my own children"

##### your sins are forgiven

"God forgives your sins"

##### because of his name

"because of what Christ has done for you"

#### 1 John 2:13

##### I am writing to you, fathers

"I am writing to you, mature believers"

##### you know

"you have a relationship with"

##### the one who is from the beginning

"the one who has always existed."

##### young men

"young believers"

##### you have overcome

"you have conquered"

#### 1 John 2:14

##### you are strong

Here "strong" refers not to believers' physical strength, but to their faithfulness to Christ.

##### the word of God remains in you

"God's message continues to teach you" or "you know the word of God"

#### 1 John 2:15

##### Do not love the world or

"Do not behave like the people in the world who do not honor God, and do not love"

##### the things that are in the world

"the things that those who dishonor God want"

##### If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him

A person cannot love this world and all that dishonors God and love the Father at the same time.

##### the love of the Father is not in him

"he does not love the Father"

#### 1 John 2:16

##### the lust of the flesh

"the strong desire to have sinful physical pleasure"

##### the lust of the eyes

"the strong desire to have things that we see"

##### is not from the Father

"does not come from the Father"

#### 1 John 2:17

##### are passing away

"will one day not be here"

#### 1 John 2:18

##### Children

"you who are as dear to me as my own children"

##### it is the last hour

"Jesus will return soon"

##### many antichrists

"there are many people who are against Christ"

##### have come. By this we know

"have come, and because of this we know" or "have come, and because many antichrists have come, we know"

#### 1 John 2:19

##### They went out from us

"They left us"

##### but they were not from us

"but they were not really part of our group in the first place."

##### For if they had been from us, they would have remained with us

"We know this because they would not have left us if they really had been believers"

#### 1 John 2:20

##### But you have an anointing from the Holy One

"But Jesus Christ, the Holy One, has given you his Spirit"

##### you all know

"you all have knowledge" or "you all know what is true"

#### 1 John 2:21

##### the truth ... no lie is from the truth

"what is true ... no lie comes from what is true"

#### 1 John 2:22

##### Who is the liar but the one who denies that Jesus is the Christ?

"The one who denies that Jesus is the Christ is the liar"

##### denies that Jesus is the Christ

"refuses to say that Jesus is the Christ" or "says that Jesus is not the Messiah"

##### denies the Father and the Son

"refuses to say the truth about the Father and the Son" or "rejects the Father and the Son."

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### 1 John 2:23

##### has the Father

"belongs to the Father"

##### confesses the Son

"speaks the truth about the Son"

#### 1 John 2:24

##### As for you

This phrase marks John's switch from talking about other people to talking about the people he is writing to.

##### let what you have heard from the beginning remain in you

"continue to trust what we have taught you about Jesus when you first became believers"

##### If what you heard from the beginning remains in you

"If you continue to trust what we first taught you"

##### also remain in the Son and in the Father

"also continue to have fellowship with the Son and with the Father" or "also stay joined to the Son and to the Father". These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### 1 John 2:25

##### This is the promise he gave to us—eternal life.

"This is what he promised to give us—eternal life"

##### life

Here "life" refers to being alive spiritually.

#### 1 John 2:26

##### those who would lead you astray

"those who want to make you believe lies about Jesus Christ"

#### 1 John 2:27

##### the anointing that you received from him remains in you

"Jesus has anointed you with his Spirit, and his Spirit is still with you"

##### as his anointing teaches you everything

"because his Spirit teaches you everything that you need to know"

#### 1 John 2:28

##### Now, children

"Now, you who are as dear to me as my own children"

##### he appears

"we see him"

##### boldness

having no fear

##### not be ashamed before him

"not be ashamed in his presence"

##### at his coming

"when he comes again"

#### 1 John 2:29

##### has been born from him

"has been born of God"

Chapter 3

1See what kind of love the Father has given to us, that we should be called children of God, and this is what we are. For this reason, the world does not know us, because it did not know him. [1](#footnote-target-1)2Beloved, we are now children of God, and it has not yet been revealed what we will be. We know that when Christ appears, we will be like him, for we will see him just as he is.3Everyone who has this hope in him purifies himself just as he is pure.4Everyone who sins is committing acts of lawlessness, for sin is lawlessness.5You know that Christ was revealed in order to take away sins, and in him there is no sin.6No one who remains in him will keep on sinning. No one who continues to sin has seen him or known him.7Children, do not let anyone lead you astray. The one who does righteousness is righteous, just as Christ is righteous.8The one who commits sin is from the devil, for the devil has sinned from the beginning. For this reason the Son of God was revealed, so that he would destroy the devil's works.9Whoever has been born from God does not continue to sin, because God's seed remains in him. He cannot continue to sin, because he has been born of God.10In this the children of God and children of the devil are revealed: Whoever does not do what is righteous is not from God, neither is the one who does not love his brother.11For this is the message that you have heard from the beginning: We should love one another.12We should not be like Cain, who was from the evil one and murdered his brother. Why did he kill him? Because his works were evil and his brother's righteous.

13Do not be amazed, my brothers, if the world hates you.14We know that we have passed out of death into life, because we love the brothers. Anyone who does not love remains in death.15Anyone who hates his brother is a murderer. You know that no murderer has eternal life residing in him.16By this we know love, because Christ laid down his life for us. We also ought to lay down our lives for the brothers.17But whoever has the world's goods, sees his brother in need, and shuts up his heart of compassion from him, how does the love of God remain in him?18My children, let us not love in word or in tongue, but in actions and truth.19It is by this we know that we are from the truth, and we assure our hearts before him.20For if our hearts condemn us, God is greater than our hearts, and he knows all things.21Beloved, if our hearts do not condemn us, we have confidence toward God.22Whatever we ask we will receive from him, because we keep his commandments and do the things that are pleasing before him.23This is his commandment: that we should believe in the name of his Son Jesus Christ and love one another, just as he gave us this commandment.24The one who keeps God's commandments remains in him, and God remains in him. By this we know that he remains in us, by the Spirit whom he gave to us.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies leave out, and this is what we are .

#### 1 John 3:1

##### See what kind of love the Father has given to us

"Think about how our Father loves us so much"

##### we should be called children of God

"the Father called us his children"

##### children of God

Here this means people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

##### For this reason, the world does not know us, because it did not know him

"Because we are the children of God and because the world did not know God, it does not know us"

##### the world does not know us, because it did not know him

"those who do not honor God do not know that we belong to God, because they did not know God"

#### 1 John 3:2

##### Beloved, we are

"You people whom I love, we are"

##### it has not yet been revealed

"God has not yet revealed"

##### revealed

"demonstrated" or "shown"

#### 1 John 3:3

##### Everyone who has this hope in him

"Everyone who has this hope because of Christ" or "Everyone who trusts Christ to fulfill this hope"

##### purifies himself just as he is pure

"keeps himself pure because Christ is pure"

#### 1 John 3:5

##### Christ was revealed

"Christ appeared" or "the Father revealed Christ"

#### 1 John 3:6

##### remains in him

"continues to have fellowship with him"

##### No one ... has seen him or known him

"No one ... has ever truly believed in him"

#### 1 John 3:7

##### Children, do not let

"You who are as dear to me as my own children, do not let"

##### do not let anyone lead you astray

"do not let anyone deceive you"

##### The one who does righteousness is righteous, just as Christ is righteous

"He who does what is right is pleasing to God just as Christ is pleasing to God"

#### 1 John 3:8

##### is from the devil

"belongs to the devil" or "is like the devil"

##### from the beginning

"since the earliest time of creation"

##### the Son of God was revealed

"God revealed his Son"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### 1 John 3:9

##### Whoever has been born from God

"Whoever God has made his child"

##### God's seed

"the Holy Spirit"

##### he has been born of God

"God has given him new spiritual life" or "he is a child of God"

#### 1 John 3:10

##### In this the children of God and children of the devil are revealed

"This is how we know who the children of God are and who the children of the devil are"

##### Whoever does not do what is righteous is not from God, neither is the one who does not love his brother

"whoever does not do what is righteous is not from God; whoever does not love his brother is also not from God"

##### his brother

Here "brother" means fellow Christians.

#### 1 John 3:12

##### We should not be like Cain

"We should not do as Cain did"

##### brother

This refers to Cain's younger brother Abel.

##### Why did he kill him? Because

"He killed him because"

##### his works were evil and his brother's righteous

"Cain's works were evil and his brother's works were righteous" or "Cain did evil things and his brother did what was right"

#### 1 John 3:13

##### my brothers

"my fellow believers." John's readers were both male and female.

##### if the world hates you

"if those who do not honor God hate you who do honor God"

#### 1 John 3:14

##### we have passed out of death into life

"we are no longer spiritually dead but are spiritually alive"

##### life

Here "life" refers to being alive spiritually.

##### remains in death

"is still spiritually dead"

#### 1 John 3:15

##### Anyone who hates his brother is a murderer

"Whoever hates another believer is as guilty as someone who kills a person"

##### no murderer has eternal life residing in him

"a murderer does not have the power of spiritual life"

#### 1 John 3:16

##### Christ laid down his life for us

"Christ willingly died for us"

#### 1 John 3:17

##### the world's goods

material possessions like money, food, or clothing

##### sees his brother in need

"realizes a fellow believer needs help"

##### shuts up his heart of compassion from him

"does not show him compassion" or "does not willingly help him"

##### how does the love of God remain in him?

"God's love is not in him"

#### 1 John 3:18

##### let us not love in word or in tongue, but in actions and truth

"do not just say that you love people, but show that you truly love people by helping them"

##### in actions and truth

"let us love in actions and truth"

#### 1 John 3:19

##### we are from the truth

"we are living according to the way Jesus taught us"

##### we assure our hearts

"we do not feel guilty"

#### 1 John 3:20

##### if our hearts condemn us

"if we know that we have sinned and as a result feel guilty"

##### God is greater than our hearts

"God knows more than we do"

#### 1 John 3:21

##### Beloved, if

"You people whom I love, if"

#### 1 John 3:22

##### do the things that are pleasing before him

"do the things that are pleasing to him" or "do what pleases him"

#### 1 John 3:23

##### This is his commandment: that we should believe ... just as he gave us this commandment

"This is what God commands us to do: Believe ... just as he commanded us to do"

#### 1 John 3:24

##### remains in him, and God remains in him

"continues to have fellowship with him, and God continues to have fellowship with him"

##### he remains in us

"God continues to have fellowship with us"

Chapter 4

1Beloved, do not believe every spirit. Instead, test the spirits to see whether they are from God, because many false prophets have gone out into the world.2By this you will know the Spirit of God—every spirit that confesses that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is from God,3and every spirit that does not confess Jesus is not from God. This is the spirit of the antichrist, which you have heard is coming, and now is already in the world. [1](#footnote-target-1)4You are from God, children, and have overcome them, because the one who is in you is greater than the one who is in the world.5They are from the world; therefore what they say is from the world, and the world listens to them.6We are from God. Anyone who knows God listens to us. He who is not from God does not listen to us. By this we know the spirit of truth and the spirit of error.

7Beloved, let us love one another, for love is from God, and everyone who loves is born from God and knows God.8The person who does not love does not know God, for God is love.9Because of this the love of God was revealed among us, that God has sent his only Son into the world so that we would live because of him.10In this is love: not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and that he sent his Son to be the atoning sacrifice for our sins.11Beloved, if God so loved us, we also should love one another.12No one has ever seen God. If we love one another, God remains in us, and his love is perfected in us.13By this we know that we remain in him and he in us, because he has given us some of his Spirit.14Also, we have seen and testify that the Father has sent the Son to be the Savior of the world.15Whoever confesses that Jesus is the Son of God, God remains in him and he in God.16Also, we have known and believed the love that God has for us. God is love, and the one who remains in this love remains in God, and God remains in him.17Because of this, this love has been made perfect among us, so that we will have confidence on the day of judgment, because as he is, just so are we in this world.18There is no fear in love. Instead, perfect love throws out fear, because fear has to do with punishment. But the one who fears has not been made perfect in love.19We love because God first loved us.20If anyone says, "I love God" but hates his brother, he is a liar. For the one who does not love his brother, whom he has seen, cannot love God, whom he has not seen.21Also, this is the commandment we have from him: Whoever loves God must also love his own brother.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, and every spirit that does not acknowledge that Jesus has come in the flesh is not from God. This is the spirit of the antichrist, which you have heard is coming, and now is already in the world .

#### 1 John 4:1

##### Beloved, do not believe

"You people whom I love, do not believe"

##### do not believe every spirit

"do not trust every prophet who claims to have a message from a spirit"

##### test the spirits

"think carefully about what the prophet says"

#### 1 John 4:2

##### has come in the flesh

"has come as a human being"

#### 1 John 4:3

##### This is the spirit of the antichrist, ... is coming, and now is already in the world

"These are prophets opposed to Christ, whom you have heard are coming, and now are already in the world"

#### 1 John 4:4

##### God, children

"God, you who are as dear to me as my own children"

##### have overcome them

"have not believed the false teachers"

##### the one who is in you is

"God, who is in you, is"

##### the one who is in the world

"the devil who is in the people of the world"

#### 1 John 4:5

##### They are from the world

"The false teachers are of the world"

##### therefore what they say is from the world

"therefore what the false teachers say is of the world"

##### and the world listens to them

"so the people who do not obey God listen to them"

#### 1 John 4:7

##### Beloved, let us love

"You people whom I love, let us love"

##### let us love one another

"believers are to love other believers"

##### and everyone who loves is born from God and knows God

"and because those who love their fellow believers have become God's children and know him"

##### for love is from God

"because God causes us to love each other"

##### born from God

Here this means someone has a relationship to God like a child to his father.

#### 1 John 4:8

##### The person who does not love does not know God, for God is love

"Those who do not love their fellow believers do not know God, because the character of God is to love people"

#### 1 John 4:9

##### Because of this ... among us, that God has sent his only Son

"Because of this ... among us: God has sent his only Son." The phrase "Because of this" refers to the phrase "that God has sent his only Son"

##### the love of God was revealed among us

"God showed that he loves us"

##### so that we would live because of him

"to enable us to live eternally because of what Jesus did"

#### 1 John 4:10

##### In this is love: not that

"The true demonstration of love was not that" or "This is true love: not that"

##### he sent his Son to be the atoning sacrifice for our sins

"he sent his Son to be the sacrifice that satisfied his wrath against our sins"

#### 1 John 4:11

##### if God so loved us

"since God loved us in this way"

##### we also should love one another

"believers are to love other believers"

#### 1 John 4:12

##### God remains in us

"God continues to have fellowship with us"

##### his love is perfected in us

"God's love is complete in us"

#### 1 John 4:13

##### we remain in him and he in us

"we continue to have fellowship with God and he continues to have fellowship with us"

##### and he in us

"and he remains in us"

##### By this we know ... us, because he has given

"We know ... us because he gave" or "By this we know ... us: he gave"

##### because he has given us some of his Spirit

"because he has put his Holy Spirit in us"

#### 1 John 4:14

##### Also, we have seen and testify that the Father has sent the Son to be the Savior of the world

"And we apostles have seen the Son of God and tell everyone that God the Father has sent his Son to save people on this earth". These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### 1 John 4:15

##### Whoever confesses that Jesus is the Son of God

"Anyone who says the truth about Jesus, that he is the Son of God"

##### God remains in him and he in God

"God continues to have fellowship with him and he continues to have fellowship with God"

##### and he in God

"and he remains in God"

#### 1 John 4:16

##### God is love

"the character of God is love"

##### the one who remains in this love

"those who continue to love others"

##### remains in God, and God remains in him

"continues to have fellowship with God, and God continues to have fellowship with him"

#### 1 John 4:17

##### Because of this, this love has been made perfect among us, so that we will have confidence

"Because whoever lives in love is in God and God is in him, God has made his love for us complete, and so we may have complete confidence" or "We are confident that God will accept us on the day he judges everyone, so we know he has made his love for us complete"

##### this love has been made perfect among us

"God has made his love for us complete"

##### because as he is, just so are we in this world

"because the relationship that Jesus has with God is the same relationship we have with God in this world"

#### 1 John 4:18

##### Instead, perfect love throws out fear

"Instead, when our love is complete, we are no longer afraid"

##### because fear has to do with punishment

"because we would be afraid only if we thought that he would punish us"

##### But the one who fears has not been made perfect in love

"But when a person is afraid that God will punish him, his love is not complete"

#### 1 John 4:20

##### hates his brother

"hates a fellow believer"

##### the one who does not love his brother, whom he has seen, cannot love God, whom he has not seen

"the one who hates his brother, whom he has seen, cannot love God, whom he has not seen"

Chapter 5

1Whoever believes that Jesus is the Christ is born from God, and whoever loves a father also loves the child born from him.2This is how we know that we love the children of God: when we love God and obey his commandments.3For this is love for God: that we keep his commandments. And his commandments are not burdensome.4For everyone who is born from God overcomes the world. And this is the victory that has overcome the world, even our faith.5Who is the one who overcomes the world? The one who believes that Jesus is the Son of God.6This is the one who came by water and blood: Jesus Christ. He came not only by water, but also by water and blood. The Spirit is the one who testifies, because the Spirit is the truth.7For there are three that testify:8the Spirit, the water, and the blood. These three are in agreement. [1](#footnote-target-1)9If we receive the testimony of men, the testimony of God is greater. For this is the testimony of God that he has testified concerning his Son.10Anyone who believes in the Son of God has the testimony in himself. Anyone who does not believe God has made him out to be a liar, because he has not believed the testimony that God has given concerning his Son.11And the testimony is this: God gave us eternal life, and this life is in his Son.12The one who has the Son has life. The one who does not have the Son of God does not have life.

13I have written to you these things so that you will know that you have eternal life—to you who believe in the name of the Son of God.14Also, this is the confidence we have before him, that if we ask anything according to his will, he hears us.15Also, if we know that he hears us—whatever we ask of him—we know that we have whatever we have asked of him.16If anyone sees his brother commit a sin that does not result in death, he must pray, and God will give him life. I refer to those whose sin does not result in death. There is a sin that results in death; I am not saying that he should pray about that.17All unrighteousness is sin, but there is sin that does not result in death.

18We know that whoever has been born from God does not sin. But the one who was born from God keeps him safe, and the evil one cannot harm him.19We know that we are from God, and we know that the whole world lies in the power of the evil one.20But we know that the Son of God has come and has given us understanding so that we may know him who is true. Also, we are in him who is true, in his Son Jesus Christ. This one is the true God and eternal life.21Children, keep yourselves from idols.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, For there are three that testify in heaven: the Father, the Word, and the Holy Spirit. These three are one; and there are three that testify on earth: the Spirit, the water, and the blood; and these three are as one . However, the best copies do not have this reading.

#### 1 John 5:1

##### is born from God

"is a child of God"

#### 1 John 5:2

##### This is how we know that we love the children of God: ... God and obey his commandments.

"When we love God and do what he commands, then we know that we love his children"

#### 1 John 5:3

##### For this is love for God: that we keep his commandments

"Because when we do what he commands, that is true love for God"

##### his commandments are not burdensome

"what he commands is not difficult"

##### burdensome

"heavy" or "difficult"

#### 1 John 5:4

##### everyone who is born from God overcomes

"all children of God overcome"

##### overcomes the world

"has victory over the world," or "refuses to do the evil things unbelievers do"

##### the world

"everything in the world that is against God"

##### And this is the victory that has overcome the world, even our faith

"And this is what gives us the power to resist whatever would lead us to sin against God: our faith" or "And it is our faith that gives us the power to resist whatever would lead us to sin against God"

#### 1 John 5:5

##### Who is the one who overcomes the world?

"I will tell you who overcomes the world"

##### The one who believes that Jesus is the Son of God

"Anyone who believes that Jesus is the Son of God"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### 1 John 5:6

##### This is the one who came by water and blood: Jesus Christ

"God showed that Jesus Christ is his son at Jesus's baptism and his death on the cross"

##### He came not only by water, but also by water and blood

"God did not show us Jesus was his son just through his baptism, but through his baptism and his death on the cross"

#### 1 John 5:9

##### If we receive the testimony of men

"If we believe what men testify"

##### the testimony of God is greater

the testimony of God is more important and more reliable

#### 1 John 5:10

##### Anyone who believes in the Son of God ... in himself

"Whoever believes in Jesus knows for sure Jesus is the Son of God"

##### has made him out to be a liar

"has called God a liar"

##### because he has not believed the testimony that God has given concerning his Son

"because he has not believed that God has told the truth about his Son"

#### 1 John 5:11

##### And the testimony is this

"This is what God says"

##### life

The word "life" throughout this letter refers to more than physical life. Here it refers to being alive spiritually.

##### this life is in his Son

"this life is through his Son" or "we will live forever if we are joined with his Son" or "we will live forever if we are united with his Son"

#### 1 John 5:12

##### The one who has the Son has life. The one who does not have the Son of God does not have life

"He who believes in the Son of God has eternal life. He who does not believe in the Son of God does not have eternal life"

#### 1 John 5:13

##### these things

"this letter"

##### to you who believe in the name of the Son of God

"to you who trust in the Son of God". This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### 1 John 5:14

##### this is the confidence we have before him, that

"we are confident in God's presence because we know that"

##### if we ask anything according to his will

"if we ask for the things that God desires"

#### 1 John 5:15

##### we know that we have whatever we have asked of him

"we know that we will receive that for which we have asked God"

#### 1 John 5:16

##### his brother

"a fellow believer"

##### death

This refers to eternal death, that is, eternity spent away from God's presence.

#### 1 John 5:18

##### the evil one cannot harm him

The phrase "the evil one" refers to Satan, the devil.

#### 1 John 5:19

##### the whole world lies in the power of the evil one

"the whole world is controlled by the evil one"

##### the whole world lies in the power

"all the people of the world are under the power"

#### 1 John 5:20

##### has given us understanding

"has enabled us to understand the truth"

##### we are in him who is true

"we are united to him who is true by being united to his Son Jesus Christ"

##### This one is the true God

"This one" refers to Jesus Christ, or "This one" refers to the one true God.

##### and eternal life

"and the one who gives eternal life"

#### 1 John 5:21

##### Children

"My dear children in Christ" or "You who are as dear to me as my own children"

##### keep yourselves from idols

"do not worship idols"

## 2 John

Chapter 1

1From the elder to the chosen lady and her children, whom I love in truth—and not only I, but also all those who have known the truth—2because of the truth that remains in us and will be with us forever:

3Grace, mercy, and peace will be with us from God the Father and from Jesus Christ, the Son of the Father, in truth and love.

4I rejoice greatly that I have found some of your children walking in truth, just as we have received this commandment from the Father.5Now I plead with you, lady—not as though I were writing to you a new commandment, but one that we have had from the beginning—that we should love one another.6This is love: that we should walk according to his commandments. This is the commandment, just as you heard from the beginning, that you should walk in it.7For many deceivers have gone out into the world, and they do not confess that Jesus Christ came in the flesh. This is the deceiver and the antichrist.8Look to yourselves, that you do not lose the things for which we have labored, but so that you may receive a full reward.9Whoever goes on ahead and does not remain in the teaching of Christ does not have God. The one who remains in the teaching, this one has both the Father and the Son.10If anyone comes to you and does not bring this teaching, do not receive him into your house and do not greet him.11For the one who speaks a greeting to him participates in his evil deeds.

12I have many things to write to you, but I did not wish to write them with paper and ink. However, I hope to come to you and speak face to face, so that our joy will be complete.

13The children of your chosen sister greet you.

#### 2 John 1:1

##### General Information:

Tradition identifies the apostle John as the writer of this letter. Though possibly addressed to an individual woman; because he writes that they should "love one another," this is probably to a church.

##### From the elder to the chosen lady and her children

"I, John the elder, am writing this letter to the chosen lady and her children"

##### the elder

This refers to John, the apostle and disciple of Jesus.

##### to the chosen lady and her children

This probably refers to a congregation and the believers that belong to it.

#### 2 John 1:3

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### in truth and love

The word "truth" describes "love." Possibly the phrase means "in true love."

#### 2 John 1:4

##### just as we have received this commandment from the Father

"just as God the Father commanded us". This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father

#### 2 John 1:5

##### I were writing to you a new commandment, but one that we have had from the beginning

"I were commanding you to do something new, but what Christ commanded us to do when we first believed"

##### beginning—that we should love one another

"beginning. He commanded that we should love one another"

#### 2 John 1:6

##### This is the commandment, just as you heard from the beginning, that you should walk in it

"And he has commanded you, since you first believed, to love one another"

#### 2 John 1:7

##### For many deceivers have gone out into the world

"For many false teachers have left the congregation"

##### many deceivers

"many false teachers"

##### Jesus Christ came in the flesh

"Jesus Christ came as a real human"

##### This is the deceiver and the antichrist

"They are the ones who deceive others and oppose Christ himself"

#### 2 John 1:8

##### Look to yourselves

"Watch out" or "Be on guard"

##### lose the things

"lose your future rewards in heaven"

##### the things for which we have labored

"the things that we have accomplished."

##### full reward

"complete reward in heaven"

#### 2 John 1:9

##### Whoever goes on ahead

"Whoever claims to know more about God" or "Whoever disobeys the truth"

##### does not have God

"does not belong to God"

##### The one who remains in the teaching, this one has both the Father and the Son

"Someone who follows Christ's teaching belongs to both the Father and the Son". These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### 2 John 1:10

##### do not receive him into your house

"do not welcome him into your house"

#### 2 John 1:11

##### participates in his evil deeds

"shares with him in his evil deeds"

#### 2 John 1:12

##### I did not wish to write them with paper and ink

John does not wish to write these other things but would like to come say the words to them.

##### speak face to face

"speak to you in person"

#### 2 John 1:13

##### General Information

The word "your" in verse 13 refers to the group of believers that John is writing to.

##### The children of your chosen sister

This may refer to the members of another church.

## 3 John

Chapter 1

1The elder to beloved Gaius, whom I love in truth:

2Beloved, I pray that all may go well with you and that you may be healthy, just as it is well with your soul.3For I rejoiced greatly when brothers came and bore witness to your truth, just as you walk in truth.4I have no greater joy than this, to hear that my children walk in the truth.

5Beloved, you practice faithfulness whenever you labor for the brothers and for strangers6who have borne witness of your love in the presence of the church. You do well to send them off on their journey in a manner worthy of God,7because it was for the sake of the name that they went out, taking nothing from the Gentiles.8We therefore should welcome such as these so that we will be fellow workers for the truth.

9I wrote something to the congregation, but Diotrephes, who loves to be first among them, does not receive us.10So if I come, I will call attention to the deeds he is doing, falsely accusing us with wicked words. Not satisfied with that, he not only refuses to welcome the brothers himself, but he also stops those who want to welcome them and drives them out of the church.11Beloved, do not imitate what is evil but what is good. The one who does good is of God; the evildoer has not seen God.12Demetrius received a good testimony from everyone and by the truth itself. We also testify about him, and you know that our testimony is true.

13I had many things to write to you, but I do not wish to write them to you with pen and ink.14But I hope to see you soon, and we will speak face to face.15May peace be with you. The friends greet you. Greet our friends there by name.

#### 3 John 1:1

##### The elder

This refers to John.

##### Gaius

A fellow believer.

#### 3 John 1:2

##### all may go well with you and that you may be healthy

"you may do well in all things and be healthy"

##### just as it is well with your soul

"just as you are doing well spiritually"

#### 3 John 1:3

##### brothers came

"fellow believers came." These people were probably all male.

##### you walk in truth

"you are living your life according to God's truth"

#### 3 John 1:4

##### my children

"my spiritual children"

#### 3 John 1:5

##### Beloved

Here this is used as a term of endearment for a fellow believer.

##### you practice faithfulness

"you are doing what is faithful to God"

##### labor for the brothers and for strangers

"help fellow believers and those you do not know"

#### 3 John 1:6

##### You do well to send them

John is thanking Gaius for helping these believers.

#### 3 John 1:7

##### because it was for the sake of the name that they went out

"for they have gone out to tell people about Jesus"

##### taking nothing

"receiving no gifts or help"

##### the Gentiles

The Gentiles here are the non-Jews who do not believe in Christ.

#### 3 John 1:8

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to John and those with him, and possibly includes all believers.

##### so that we will be fellow workers for the truth

"so that we will cooperate with them in announcing God's truth to people"

#### 3 John 1:9

##### General Information:

The word "us" refers to John and those with him and does not include Gaius.

##### congregation

This refers to Gaius and the group of believers who met together to worship God.

##### Diotrephes

He was a member of the congregation.

##### who loves to be first among them

"who loves to be the most important one among them" or "who loves to act as though he's their leader"

#### 3 John 1:10

##### falsely accusing us with wicked words

"he says evil things about us that certainly are not true"

##### refuses to welcome the brothers

"does not welcome the fellow believers"

##### stops those who want to welcome them

"stops those who want to welcome the believers"

##### drives them out of the church

"he forces them to leave the congregation"

#### 3 John 1:11

##### do not imitate what is evil

"do not copy the evil things that people do"

##### but what is good

"but imitate the good things that people do"

##### is of God

"belongs to God"

##### has not seen God

"does not belong to God"

#### 3 John 1:12

##### Demetrius received a good testimony from everyone

"All who know Demetrius testify that he is a good man" or "Every believer who knows Demetrius speaks well of him"

##### Demetrius

He is probably a man whom John wants Gaius and the congregation to welcome when he comes to visit.

##### by the truth itself

"the truth itself speaks well of him."

##### We also testify about him

"We also speak well of Demetrius"

#### 3 John 1:13

##### I do not wish to write them to you with pen and ink

John does not wish to write these other things at all. He would prefer to tell them in person.

#### 3 John 1:14

##### I hope to see you soon

"I plan to come to you"

##### face to face

"in person"

#### 3 John 1:15

##### May peace be with you

"May God give you peace"

##### The friends greet you

"The friends here greet you”

##### Greet our friends there by name

"Greet each of our friends there for me”

## Jude

Chapter 1

1Jude, a servant of Jesus Christ and brother of James, to those who are called, beloved in God the Father, and kept for Jesus Christ:

2May mercy and peace and love be multiplied to you.

3Beloved, while I was making every effort to write to you about our common salvation, I had to write to you to exhort you to struggle earnestly for the faith that was entrusted once for all to God's holy people.4For certain men have slipped in secretly among you. These men were marked out for condemnation. They are ungodly men who have changed the grace of our God into sensuality, and who deny our only Master and Lord, Jesus Christ.

5Now I wish to remind you—although once you fully knew it—that the Lord saved a people out of the land of Egypt, but that afterward he destroyed those who did not believe.6Also, angels who did not keep to their own position of authority, but who left their proper dwelling place—God has kept them in everlasting chains, in utter darkness, for the judgment on the great day.7So also Sodom and Gomorrah and the cities around them gave themselves over to sexual immorality and perverse sexual acts. They serve as an example of those who suffer the punishment of eternal fire.8Yet in the same way, these dreamers also defile their bodies. They reject authority and they slander the glorious ones.9But even Michael the archangel, when he was arguing with the devil and disputing with him about the body of Moses, did not dare to bring a slanderous judgment against him, but he said, "May the Lord rebuke you!"10But these people insult whatever they do not understand; and what they do understand naturally, like unreasoning animals, these are the very things that destroy them.11Woe to them! For they have walked in the way of Cain and have plunged into Balaam's error for profit. They have perished in Korah's rebellion.12These people are dangerous reefs at your love feasts, feasting with you fearlessly—shepherds who only feed themselves. They are clouds without rain, carried along by winds; autumn trees without fruit—twice dead, uprooted.13They are violent waves in the sea, foaming up their shame; wandering stars, for whom the gloom of complete darkness has been reserved forever.14Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about them, saying, "Look! The Lord is coming with thousands and thousands of his holy ones.15He is coming to execute judgment on everyone. He is coming to convict all the ungodly of all the works they have done in an ungodly way, and of all the bitter words that ungodly sinners have spoken against him."16These are grumblers, complainers, following their evil desires. Their mouths speak loud boasts, flattering others for profit.

17But you, beloved, remember the words that were spoken in the past by the apostles of our Lord Jesus Christ.18They said to you, "In the last time there will be mockers who will follow their own ungodly desires."19It is these who cause divisions; they are worldly, and they do not have the Spirit.20But you, beloved, build yourselves up in your most holy faith, and pray in the Holy Spirit.21Keep yourselves in God's love, and wait for the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ that brings you eternal life.22Be merciful to those who doubt.23Save others by snatching them out of the fire; to others show mercy with fear, hating even the garment defiled by the flesh.

24Now to the one who is able to keep you from stumbling and to cause you to stand before his glorious presence without blemish and with great joy,25to the only God our Savior through Jesus Christ our Lord, be glory, majesty, dominion, and authority, before all time, now, and forever. Amen.

#### Jude 1:1

##### Jude, a servant of

"I am Jude, a servant of"

##### brother of James

James and Jude were half brothers of Jesus.

#### Jude 1:2

##### May mercy and peace and love be multiplied to you

"May God continue to be merciful to you so that you live peacefully and love one another more and more

#### Jude 1:3

##### our common salvation

"the salvation we share"

##### I had to write

"I felt a great need to write"

##### to exhort you to struggle earnestly for the faith

"to encourage you to defend the true teaching"

##### once for all

"finally and completely"

#### Jude 1:4

##### For certain men have slipped in secretly among you

"For some men have come in among the believers without drawing attention to themselves"

##### These men were marked out for condemnation

"These were men whom God chose to condemn"

##### who have changed the grace of our God into sensuality

"who teach that God's grace permits one to continue to live in sexual sin"

##### deny our only Master and Lord, Jesus Christ

they teach that he is not God or these men do not obey Jesus Christ

#### Jude 1:5

##### the Lord saved a people out of the land of Egypt

"the Lord rescued the Israelites long ago from Egypt"

#### Jude 1:6

##### their own position of authority

"the responsibilities God entrusted to them"

##### their proper dwelling place

The proper dwelling place of angels is heaven.

##### God has kept them in everlasting chains, in utter darkness

"God has put these angels in a dark prison from which they will never escape"

##### utter darkness

"in utter darkness in hell".

##### the great day

the final day when God will judge everyone

#### Jude 1:7

##### Sodom and Gomorrah and the cities around them

"the people of Sodom and Gomorrah and the people in the cities around them"

##### gave themselves over to sexual immorality and perverse sexual acts

The sexual sins of Sodom and Gomorrah were the result of the same kind of rebellion as the angels' evil ways.

##### as an example of those who suffer the punishment

The destruction of the people of Sodom and Gomorrah became an example of the fate of all who reject God.

#### Jude 1:8

##### these dreamers

These are the people who disobey God, probably because they claim to have seen visions that gave them authority to do so.

##### defile their bodies

"sin and defile themselves"

##### they slander

"they speak insults about"

##### glorious ones

This refers to spiritual beings, such as angels.

#### Jude 1:9

##### did not dare to bring a slanderous judgment against him

"did not dare to insult or condemn him"

#### Jude 1:10

##### whatever they do not understand

"anything of which they do not know the meaning." or "everything good that they do not understand"

#### Jude 1:11

##### walked in the way of Cain

"lived the same way Cain lived"

#### Jude 1:12

##### dangerous reefs

Reefs are large rocks that are very close to the surface of water in the sea. Ships can easily be destroyed if they hit these rocks.

##### autumn trees without fruit—twice dead, uprooted

"These people are like dead trees"

##### autumn trees without fruit

Trees in autumn look dead because their leaves have all fallen off.

##### twice dead, uprooted

After these "autumn trees" have lost their leaves and fruit, they die their first death. Then people uproot them, and they die their second death.

##### uprooted

completely pulled out of the ground

#### Jude 1:13

##### violent waves in the sea

As the sea's waves are blown by a strong wind, so the ungodly people are easily moved in many directions.

##### foaming up their shame

"and just as waves bring up foam and dirt, these men pollute others with their shame"

##### for whom the gloom of complete darkness has been reserved forever

"and God will put them in the gloom and complete darkness of hell forever"

#### Jude 1:14

##### the seventh from Adam

If Adam is counted as the first generation of mankind, Enoch is the seventh.

##### holy ones

"angels" or "saints" or "angels and saints"

#### Jude 1:15

##### to execute judgment on

"to make judgment on" or "to judge"

#### Jude 1:16

##### grumblers, complainers

"Grumblers" tend to speak quietly, while "complainers" speak openly.

##### Their mouths speak loud boasts

They praise themselves so that others can hear.

##### flattering others

"giving false praise to others"

#### Jude 1:18

##### mockers who will follow their own ungodly desires

"mockers who will continue to dishonor God by doing the evil things they wish to do"

#### Jude 1:19

##### It is these

"It is these mockers"

##### they are worldly

"they are only concerned with doing what is evil"

##### they do not have the Spirit

"the Holy Spirit is not within them"

#### Jude 1:20

##### But you, beloved

"Do not be like them, beloved. Instead"

##### build yourselves up

Strengthen yourselves spiritually

#### Jude 1:21

##### wait for

"eagerly look forward to"

##### the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ that brings you eternal life

"the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ who makes you live forever with him"

#### Jude 1:22

##### those who doubt

"those who do not yet believe that Jesus is God"

#### Jude 1:23

##### snatching them out of the fire

"doing for them whatever needs to be done to keep them from dying without Christ. This is like pulling them from the fire"

##### to others show mercy with fear

"be kind to others, but be afraid of sinning the way they do"

##### hating even the garment defiled by the flesh

"hating even the clothing that they have polluted by their sin"

#### Jude 1:24

##### to cause you to stand before his glorious presence

"and to allow you to enjoy and worship his glory". His glory is brilliant light that represents his greatness.

##### glorious presence without blemish and with

"glorious presence, where you will be without sin and have great joy"

#### Jude 1:25

##### to the only God our Savior through Jesus Christ our Lord

"to the only God, who saved us because of what Jesus Christ did." This emphasizes that God the Father as well as the Son is the Savior. These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### be glory, majesty, dominion, and authority, before all time, now, and forever

God has always had, now has, and always will have glory, absolute leadership, and complete control of all things.

## Revelation

Chapter 1

1This is the revelation of Jesus Christ that God gave him to show his servants what must soon take place. He made it known by sending his angel to his servant John,2who testified about the word of God and the testimony of Jesus Christ, all the things that he saw.3Blessed is the one who reads aloud this prophecy and those who listen to the words of this prophecy and who obey what is written in it, because the time is near.

4John, to the seven churches in Asia: May grace be to you and peace from the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, and from the seven spirits who are before his throne,5and from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, the firstborn from the dead, and the ruler of the kings of the earth. To the one who loves us and has freed us from our sins by his blood—6he has made us a kingdom, priests for his God and Father—to him be the glory and the power forever and ever. Amen.7Look, he is coming with the clouds;every eye will see him,including those who pierced him.All the tribes of the earth will mourn because of him.Yes, Amen.

8"I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." [1](#footnote-target-1)

9I, John—your brother and the one who shares with you in the suffering and kingdom and patient endurance that are in Jesus—was on the island called Patmos because of the word of God and the testimony about Jesus.10I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day. I heard behind me a loud voice like a trumpet.11It said, "Write what you see in a book, and send it to the seven churches—to Ephesus, to Smyrna, to Pergamum, to Thyatira, to Sardis, to Philadelphia, and to Laodicea."12I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw seven golden lampstands.13In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man, wearing a long robe that reached down to his feet and a golden sash around his chest.14His head and hair were as white as wool—as white as snow—and his eyes were like a flame of fire.15His feet were like polished bronze, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace, and his voice was like the sound of many rushing waters.16He had seven stars in his right hand, and a sword with two sharp edges was coming out of his mouth. His face was shining like the sun at its strongest.17When I saw him, I fell at his feet like a dead man. He placed his right hand on me and said, "Do not be afraid. I am the first and the last18and the one who lives. I was dead, but look, I live forever and ever! And I have the keys of death and of Hades.19Therefore write down what you have seen, what is now, and what will take place after this.20As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches, and the seven lampstands are the seven churches."

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, I am the Alpha and the Omega, the beginning and the end, says the Lord God .

#### Revelation 1:1

##### his servants

This refers to people who believe in Christ.

##### what must soon take place

"the events that must happen soon"

##### made it known

"communicated it"

##### to his servant John

"to me, John, his servant"

#### Revelation 1:2

##### who testified about ... all the things that he saw

"And John testified about ... all the things that he saw"

##### the word of God

"the message that God spoke"

#### Revelation 1:3

##### the one who reads aloud

"anyone who reads aloud"

##### obey what is written in it

"obey what John has written in it" or "obey what they read in it"

##### the time is near

"the things that must happen will soon happen"

#### Revelation 1:4

##### May grace be to you and peace

"May you receive grace and peace" or "May you experience grace and peace." This is a wish or blessing.

##### from the one who is

"from God, who is"

##### seven spirits

The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The "seven spirits" refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God.

#### Revelation 1:5

##### and from Jesus Christ

"and may grace be to you and peace also from Jesus Christ"

##### the firstborn from the dead

"the first person to be raised from death, never to die again"

##### has freed us from our sins

"has released us from our sins"

#### Revelation 1:6

##### has made us a kingdom, priests

"has set us apart and begun to rule over us and he has made us priests"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### to him be the glory and the power

This is a wish or prayer. Possible meanings are 1) "May people honor his glory and power" or 2) "May he have glory and power." John prays that Jesus Christ will be honored and will be able to rule completely over everyone and everything.

#### Revelation 1:7

##### every eye

"every person" or "everyone"

##### including those who pierced him

"even those who killed him will see him"

#### Revelation 1:8

##### "I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "the one who is ... the Almighty."

"The Lord God says, 'I am the Alpha and the Omega, the one who is ... the Almighty.'" or "'I am the Alpha and the Omega, the one who is ... the Almighty,' says the Lord God."

##### the Alpha and the Omega

These are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. If readers do not know this, you may consider using the first and last letters of your alphabet.

#### Revelation 1:9

##### your ... you

These refer to the believers in the seven churches.

##### I, John—your brother and the one who shares with you in the suffering and kingdom and patient endurance that are in Jesus—was

"I, John, am your brother who shares with you in God's kingdom and also suffers and patiently endures trials along with you because we belong to Jesus. I was"

##### because of the word of God

"because I told others the message that God spoke"

##### the testimony about Jesus

"the testimony that God has given about Jesus"

#### Revelation 1:10

##### I was in the Spirit

"I was influenced by the Spirit" or "The Spirit influenced me"

##### the Lord's day

the day of worship for believers in Christ

##### trumpet

This refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

#### Revelation 1:11

##### Smyrna ... Pergamum ... Thyatira ... Sardis ... Philadelphia ... Laodicea

These are names of cities in the region of western Asia that today is modern Turkey.

#### Revelation 1:12

##### whose voice

"who"

#### Revelation 1:13

##### son of man

This expression describes a human figure, someone who looks human.

##### a golden sash

a piece of cloth worn around the chest. It may have had golden threads in it.

#### Revelation 1:14

##### His head and hair were as white as wool—as white as snow

Wool and snow are examples of things that are very white. The repetition of "as white as" emphasizes that they were very white.

##### wool

This is the hair of a sheep or goat. It was known to be very white.

##### his eyes were like a flame of fire

"his eyes were glowing like a flame of fire"

#### Revelation 1:15

##### like polished bronze, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace

"like bronze that has been purified in a hot furnace and polished"

##### furnace

a strong container for holding a very hot fire. People would put metal in it, and the hot fire would burn away any impurities that were in the metal.

##### the sound of many rushing waters

This is very loud, like the sound of a large, fast flowing river, of a large waterfall, or of loud waves in the sea.

#### Revelation 1:16

##### a sword ... was coming out of his mouth

The sword blade was sticking out of his mouth. The sword itself was not in motion.

##### a sword with two sharp edges

This refers to a double-edged sword, which is sharpened on both sides to cut both directions.

#### Revelation 1:17

##### fell at his feet like a dead man

John lay down facing the ground. He was probably very frightened and was showing Jesus great respect.

##### He placed his right hand on me

"He touched me with his right hand"

##### I am the first and the last

This refers to the eternal nature of Jesus.

#### Revelation 1:18

##### I have the keys of death and of Hades

"I have the power over death and over Hades" or "I have the power to give life to people who have died and to let them out of Hades"

#### Revelation 1:20

##### stars

The seven starts represent the angels of the seven churches” or “The seven stars are a symbol of the angels of the seven churches.

##### the angels of the seven churches

Possible meanings are that these "angels" are 1) heavenly angels who protect the seven churches or 2) human messengers to the seven churches.

##### seven churches

This refers to seven churches that actually existed in Asia Minor at that time. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:11.

Chapter 2

1"To the angel of the church in Ephesus write:

'The words of the one who holds the seven stars in his right hand and who walks among the seven golden lampstands,2"I know your deeds, your hard labor, and your patient endurance, and that you cannot tolerate those who are evil, but you have tested those who claim to be apostles but are not, and you have found them to be false.3You are enduring patiently and bearing up for my name, and you have not grown weary.4But I have against you the fact that you have left behind your first love.5Remember therefore from where you have fallen. Repent and do the things you did at first. Unless you repent, I will come to you and I will remove your lampstand from its place.6But you have this: You hate the deeds of the Nicolaitans, which I also hate.7Let the one who has an ear, hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches. To the one who conquers I will give the right to eat from the tree of life, which is in the paradise of God."'

8"To the angel of the church in Smyrna write:

'The words of the one who is the first and the last, the one who was dead and who became alive again:9"I know your sufferings and your poverty, but you are rich. I know the slander of those who say they are Jews, but they are not. They are a synagogue of Satan.10Do not fear what you are about to suffer. Look! The devil is about to throw some of you into prison so that you will be tested, and you will suffer for ten days. Be faithful until death, and I will give you the crown of life.11Let the one who has an ear, hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches. The one who conquers will not be hurt by the second death."'

12"To the angel of the church in Pergamum write:

'The words of the one who has the sword with two sharp edges:13"I know where you live, there where Satan's throne is. Yet you hold on tightly to my name. I know that you did not deny your faith in me, even in the days of Antipas my witness, my faithful one, who was killed among you, there where Satan lives.14But I have a few things against you: You have there some who hold tightly to the teaching of Balaam, who taught Balak to throw a stumbling block before the sons of Israel so they would eat food sacrificed to idols and be sexually immoral.15In the same way, you even have some who hold tightly to the teaching of the Nicolaitans.16Repent, therefore! If you do not, I will quickly come to you, and I will wage war against them with the sword in my mouth.17Let the one who has an ear hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches. To the one who conquers, I will give some of the hidden manna, and I will give a white stone with a new name written on the stone, a name which no one knows but the one who receives it."'

18"To the angel of the church in Thyatira write:

'These are the words of the Son of God, who has eyes like a flame of fire and feet like polished bronze:19"I know your deeds: your love and faith and service and your patient endurance. I know that what you have done recently is more than you did at first.20But I have this against you: You tolerate the woman Jezebel, who calls herself a prophetess. By her teaching she deceives my servants to commit sexual immorality and to eat food sacrificed to idols.21I gave her time to repent, but she is not willing to repent of her immorality.22Look! I will throw her onto a sickbed and those who commit adultery with her into great suffering, unless they repent of her deeds.23I will strike her children dead, and all the churches will know that I am the one who searches out thoughts and hearts. I will give to each one of you according to your deeds.24But to the rest of you in Thyatira, to everyone who does not hold this teaching and does not know what some call the deep things of Satan—to you I say, 'I do not put any other burden on you.'25In any case, you must hold on tightly until I come.26The one who conquers and does my works until the end, to him I will give authority over the nations.27'He will rule them with an iron rod,like clay jars he will break them into pieces.'28Just as I have received from my Father, I will also give him the morning star.29Let the one who has an ear hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches."'

#### Revelation 2:1

##### the angel

Possible meanings are that this "angel" is 1) a heavenly angel who protects this church or 2) a human messenger to the church, either a messenger who went from John to the church or the leader of the church. See how you translated "angel" in Revelation 1:20.

#### Revelation 2:2

##### I know ... your hard labor, and your patient endurance

"I know ... that you work very hard and that you endure patiently"

##### you have found them to be false

"you have recognized that those people are false apostles"

#### Revelation 2:3

##### for my name

"because of me" or "because you believe in my name" or "because you believe in me"

##### you have not grown weary

"you have not become discouraged" or "you have not quit"

#### Revelation 2:4

##### I have against you the fact that

"I disapprove of you because" or "I am angry with you because"

##### you have left behind your first love

"you have stopped loving me as you did at the beginning"

#### Revelation 2:5

##### from where you have fallen

"how much you have changed" or "how much you used to love me"

#### Revelation 2:6

##### Nicolaitans

people who followed the teachings of a man named Nicolaus

#### Revelation 2:7

##### Let the one who has an ear, hear

"Let the one who is willing to listen, listen to" or "The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey"

##### the one who conquers

“anyone who is victorious” or “Those who win the fight against sin”

##### the paradise of God

"God's garden."

#### Revelation 2:8

##### the first and the last

This refers to the eternal nature of Jesus. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:17.

#### Revelation 2:9

##### I know your sufferings and your poverty

"I know how you have suffered and how poor you are"

##### I know the slander of those who say they are Jews

"I know how people who say they are Jews have said terrible things about you"

##### but they are not

"but they are not real Jews"

##### a synagogue of Satan

"a congregation of Satan” or “a group that belongs to Satan"

#### Revelation 2:10

##### The devil is about to throw some of you into prison

"The devil will soon cause others to put some of you in prison"

##### Be faithful until death

"Be faithful to me even if they kill you." The use of the word "until" does not mean that you should stop being faithful at death.

##### the crown

"the winner's crown." This was a wreath, originally of olive branches or laurel leaves, that was put on the head of a victorious athlete.

##### the crown of life

Possible meanings are 1) "a crown that shows that I have given you eternal life" or 2) "true life as a prize like a winner's crown"

#### Revelation 2:11

##### Let the one ... hear

"If you are willing to listen, listen to" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

##### The one who conquers

“anyone who is victorious” or “Those who win the fight against sin”

##### will not be hurt by the second death

"will not experience the second death" or "will not die a second time"

#### Revelation 2:12

##### Pergamum

This is the name of a city in a part of western Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:11.

#### Revelation 2:13

##### Satan's throne

Possible meanings are 1) Satan's power and evil influence on people, or 2) the place where Satan rules.

##### you hold on tightly to my name

"you firmly believe in me"

##### you did not deny your faith in me

"you continued to tell people that you believe in me"

##### Antipas

This is the name of a man.

#### Revelation 2:14

##### But I have a few things against you

"I disapprove of you because of a few things you have done" or "I am angry with you because of a few things you did."

##### who hold tightly to the teaching of Balaam, who

Possible meanings are 1) "who teach what Balaam taught; he" or 2) "who do what Balaam taught; he."

##### who taught Balak to throw a stumbling block before the sons of Israel

"who showed king Balak how to cause the people of Israel to sin"

##### be sexually immoral

"sin sexually" or "commit sexual sin"

#### Revelation 2:16

##### Repent, therefore

"So repent"

##### If you do not, I

"If you do not repent, I"

##### wage war against them

"fight against them"

##### with the sword in my mouth

"with the sword in my mouth, which is the word of God"

#### Revelation 2:17

##### To the one who conquers

“anyone who is victorious” or “Those who win the fight against sin”

#### Revelation 2:18

##### Thyatira

This is the name of a city in a part of western Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:11.

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### who has eyes like a flame of fire

"whose eyes glow like a flame of fire"

##### feet like polished bronze

"whose feet are very shiny like polished bronze"

#### Revelation 2:19

##### your love and faith and service and your patient endurance

"How you have loved me and others, trusted me, served me and others, and endured troubles patiently"

#### Revelation 2:20

##### But I have this against you

"But I disapprove of some of the things you are doing" or "But I am angry with you because of something you are doing."

##### the woman Jezebel, who

"the woman who is just like Jezebel and"

#### Revelation 2:21

##### I gave her time to repent

"I gave her opportunity to repent" or "I waited for her to repent"

#### Revelation 2:22

##### I will throw her onto a sickbed ... into great suffering

"I will make her lie sick in bed ... I will make suffer greatly" or "I will make her very sick ... I will make suffer greatly"

##### those who commit adultery with her into great suffering

"I will make those who commit adultery with her to suffer greatly"

##### unless they repent of her deeds

"if they do not repent from doing the evil that she does" or "if they do not repent of participating in her deeds"

#### Revelation 2:23

##### I will strike her children dead

"I will kill her children"

##### her children

'her followers" or "the people who do what she teaches"

##### thoughts and hearts

"what people think and want"

##### I will give to each one of you

"I will punish or reward each one of you"

#### Revelation 2:24

##### everyone who does not hold this teaching

"everyone who does not believe this teaching"

##### deep things

"secret things"

#### Revelation 2:26

##### The one who conquers

“anyone who is victorious” or “Those who win the fight against sin”

##### does my works

"does what I command him to do"

#### Revelation 2:27

##### He will rule ... break them into pieces

This is a prophecy from the Old Testament about a king of Israel, but Jesus applies it here to those to whom he gives authority over the nations.

##### He will rule them with an iron rod

Ruling harshly is spoken of as ruling with an iron rod. Alternate translation: "He will rule them harshly as if striking them with an iron stick"

##### like clay jars he will break them into pieces

"He will defeat his enemies completely as if breaking clay jars into pieces"

#### Revelation 2:28

##### Just as I have received from my Father

Some languages may need to tell what was received. Possible meanings are 1) "Just as I have received authority from my Father" or 2) "Just as I have received the morning star from my Father."

##### my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

##### I will also give him

Here "him" refers to the one who conquers.

##### morning star

This is a bright star that sometimes appears early in the morning just before dawn. It was a symbol of victory.

Chapter 3

1"To the angel of the church in Sardis write:

'The words of the one who holds the seven spirits of God and the seven stars: "I know your deeds. You have a name that you are alive, but you are dead.2Wake up and strengthen what remains but is about to die, because I have not found your deeds complete in the sight of my God.3Remember, therefore, what you have received and heard. Obey it, and repent. But if you do not wake up, I will come as a thief, and you will not know what hour I will come against you.4But you have a few names in Sardis who have not stained their clothes, and they will walk with me, dressed in white, for they are worthy.5The one who conquers will be clothed in white garments, and I will never wipe his name out of the Book of Life, and I will confess his name before my Father, and before his angels.6Let the one who has an ear hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches."'

7"To the angel of the church in Philadelphia write:'The words of the one who is holy and true—he holds the key of David,he opens and no one shuts,he shuts and no one can open.

8"'I know your deeds. Look, I have put before you an open door that no one can shut. I know that you have little strength, yet you have obeyed my word and have not denied my name.9Look! I will cause those who belong to the synagogue of Satan, those calling themselves Jews but are not, but rather liars—I will make them come and bow down before your feet, and they will know that I love you.10Since you have kept my command to endure patiently, I will also keep you from the hour of testing that is coming on the whole world, to test those who live on the earth.11I am coming soon. Hold to what you have so no one can take away your crown.12The one who conquers I will make a pillar in the temple of my God. Never again will he go out of it, and I will write on him the name of my God, the name of the city of my God (the new Jerusalem, that comes down out of heaven from my God), and my new name.13Let the one who has an ear, hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches."'

14"To the angel of the church in Laodicea write:

'The words of the Amen, the reliable and true witness, the ruler over God's creation.15"I know your deeds and that you are neither cold nor hot. I wish that you were either cold or hot!16So, because you are lukewarm—neither hot nor cold—I am about to vomit you out of my mouth.17For you say, 'I am rich, I have had many material possessions, and I need nothing.' But you do not know that you are most miserable, pitiable, poor, blind, and naked.18Listen to my advice: Buy from me gold refined by fire so that you may become rich, and brilliant white garments so you may clothe yourself and not show the shame of your nakedness, and salve to anoint your eyes so you will see.19I rebuke and discipline everyone whom I love. Therefore, be earnest and repent.20Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into his home and will eat with him, and he with me.21The one who conquers I will give him the right to sit down with me on my throne, just as I also conquered and sat down with my Father on his throne.22Let the one who has an ear, hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches."'"

#### Revelation 3:1

##### Sardis

This is the name of a city in the western part of Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:11.

##### the seven spirits

The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The "seven spirits" refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God.

##### the seven stars

These stars are symbols that represent the seven angels of the seven churches.

##### You have a name that you are alive

"You have a reputation for being alive" or "People think that you are alive"

##### alive ... dead

Obeying and honoring God is spoken of as being alive; disobeying and dishonoring him is spoken of as being dead.

#### Revelation 3:2

##### Wake up and strengthen what remains but is about to die

"Wake up and complete the work that remains; otherwise what you have done will become worthless" or "Wake up. If you do not finish what you have started to do, your previous work will have been useless"

#### Revelation 3:3

##### what you have received and heard

"God's word that you heard and the truth that you believed"

##### if you do not wake up

"If you are not alert" or "If you are not careful"

##### I will come as a thief

Jesus will come at a time when people do not expect him, just as a thief comes when not expected.

#### Revelation 3:4

##### a few names

"a few people"

##### have not stained their clothes

"have not made their lives sinful"

##### will walk with me

"will live with me"

##### dressed in white

"and they will be dressed in white, which shows that they are pure"

#### Revelation 3:5

##### The one who conquers

“anyone who is victorious” or “Those who win the fight against sin”

##### will be clothed in white garments

"will wear white garments" or "I will give white clothes"

##### I will confess his name

"I will announce that he belongs to me"

##### before my Father

"in the presence of my Father"

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Revelation 3:6

##### Let the one ... hear

"If you are willing to listen, listen to" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

#### Revelation 3:7

##### Philadelphia

This is the name of a city in the western part of Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:11.

##### key of David

Jesus speaks of his authority to decide who may go into his kingdom as if it were King David's key.

##### he opens and no one shuts

"he opens the door to the kingdom and no one can close it"

##### he shuts and no one can open

"he closes the door and no one can open it"

#### Revelation 3:8

##### I have put before you an open door

"I have opened a door for you"

##### you have obeyed my word

Possible meanings are 1) "you have followed by teachings" or 2) "you have obeyed my commands"

#### Revelation 3:9

##### those calling themselves Jews but are not, but rather liars

"those calling themselves Jews when they are not Jews: instead, they are liars." These words further describe "those who belong to the synagogue of Satan."

##### bow down

"bow down in submission"

##### before your feet

"before you" or "to you"

##### they will know

"they will learn" or "they will admit"

#### Revelation 3:10

##### will also keep you from the hour of testing

"will also prevent the hour of testing from happening to you" or "will protect you so you do not enter the hour of testing"

##### is coming

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming.

#### Revelation 3:11

##### I am coming soon

"I am coming to judge soon"

##### Hold to what you have

"Continue to believe firmly"

##### crown

A crown was a wreath, originally of olive branches or laurel leaves, that was put on the head of a victorious athlete. Here "crown" stands for a reward.

#### Revelation 3:12

##### The one who conquers I will make a pillar in the temple of my God

“anyone who is victorious” or “Those who win the fight against sin”

#### Revelation 3:13

##### Let the one ... hear

"If you are willing to listen, listen to" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

#### Revelation 3:14

##### Laodicea

This is the name of a city in the western part of Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:11.

##### The words of the Amen

Here "the Amen" is a name for Jesus Christ. He guarantees God's promises by saying amen to them.

##### the ruler over God's creation

Possible meanings are 1) "the one who rules over everything that God created" or 2) "the one through whom God created everything."

#### Revelation 3:15

##### you are neither cold nor hot

"you are like water that is neither cold nor hot"

#### Revelation 3:16

##### I am about to vomit you out of my mouth

"I will reject you as I would spit out lukewarm water"

#### Revelation 3:18

##### Buy from me gold refined by fire so that you may become rich, and brilliant white garments so you may clothe yourself and not show the shame of your nakedness, and salve to anoint your eyes so you will see

"Come to me and receive spiritual wealth, which is more valuable than gold that is refined by fire. Receive from me righteousness, which is like brilliant white garments, so that you will not be ashamed. And receive from me wisdom, which is like salve for the eyes, so that you may understand spiritual things"

#### Revelation 3:19

##### be earnest and repent

"be serious and repent"

#### Revelation 3:20

##### I am standing at the door and am knocking

"I am like one standing at the door and knocking"

##### hears my voice

"hears me speak" or "hears me call"

##### I will come into his home

"I will go in to his home"

##### and will eat with him

This represents being together as friends.

#### Revelation 3:21

##### The one who conquers

“anyone who is victorious” or “Those who win the fight against sin”

##### to sit down with me on my throne

"to rule with me" or "to sit down on my throne and rule with me"

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Revelation 3:22

##### Let the one ... hear

"If you are willing to listen, listen to" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

Chapter 4

1After these things I looked, and I saw an open door in heaven. The first voice that I had heard was speaking to me like a trumpet, saying, "Come up here, and I will show you what must happen after these things."2At once I was in the Spirit, and I saw there a throne placed in heaven, with someone sitting on it.3The one who was sitting on it looked like jasper and carnelian. There was a rainbow around the throne. The rainbow was like an emerald in appearance.4Around the throne were twenty-four thrones, and seated on the thrones were twenty-four elders, dressed with white garments, with golden crowns on their heads.5From the throne came flashes of lightning, rumblings, and crashes of thunder. Seven flaming lamps were burning in front of the throne, lamps that were the seven spirits of God.6Before the throne was a sea of glass, like crystal. In the middle of the throne and around the throne were four living creatures, full of eyes, front and back.7The first living creature was like a lion, the second living creature was like a calf, the third living creature had a face like a man, and the fourth living creature was like a flying eagle.8The four living creatures each had six wings, full of eyes on top and underneath. Night and day they do not stop saying,  
  
"Holy, holy, holy is the Lord God Almighty,who was, and who is, and who is to come."

9Whenever the living creatures give glory, honor, and thanks to the one who sits on the throne, the one who lives forever and ever,10the twenty-four elders fall down before the one seated on the throne and worship him who lives forever and ever. They lay their crowns before the throne, saying,  
  
11"Worthy are you, our Lord and our God,to receive glory and honor and power,for you created all things,and by your will they existed and were created."

#### Revelation 4:1

##### After these things

"Just after I had seen these things." Here "these things" refers to what John saw in Revelation 2:1-3:22

##### an open door in heaven

This expression stands for the ability that God gave John to see into heaven, at least by means of a vision.

##### speaking to me like a trumpet

"speaking to me loudly like the sound of a trumpet"

##### trumpet

This refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

#### Revelation 4:2

##### I was in the Spirit

"I was influenced by the Spirit" or "The Spirit influenced me"

#### Revelation 4:3

##### jasper and carnelian

These are valuable stones. Jasper may have been clear like glass or crystal, and carnelian may have been red.

##### emerald

a green, valuable stone

#### Revelation 4:4

##### golden crowns

These were likenesses of wreaths of olive branches or laurel leaves, hammered out in gold. Such crowns, made of leaves, were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads.

#### Revelation 4:5

##### flashes of lightning

Use your language's way of describing what lightning looks like each time it appears.

##### rumblings, and crashes of thunder

These are the loud noises that thunder makes. Use your language's way of describing the sound of thunder.

##### seven spirits of God

The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The "seven spirits" refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God.

#### Revelation 4:6

##### a sea of glass

"glass that was spread out like a sea"

##### like crystal

"clear as crystal"

##### In the middle of the throne and around the throne

"Immediately around the throne" or "Close to the throne and around it"

##### four living creatures

"four living beings" or "four living things"

#### Revelation 4:7

##### The first living creature was like a lion, the second living creature was like a calf, the third living creature had a face like a man, and the fourth living creature was like a flying eagle

How the head of each living creature appeared to John is expressed as a comparison with something more familiar.

##### living creature

"living being" or "living thing."

#### Revelation 4:8

##### full of eyes on top and underneath

The top and bottom of each wing was covered with eyes.

##### who is to come

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming.

#### Revelation 4:9

##### the one who sits on the throne, the one who lives forever and ever

This is one person. The one who sits on the throne lives forever and ever.

#### Revelation 4:10

##### fall down

They purposely lie down facing the ground to show that they are worshiping.

##### They lay their crowns before the throne

"they lay their crowns before the throne to show that they are submitting to him"

##### lay

Possible meanings are 1) to place or 2) to throw down forcibly, as of something worthless. The reader should understand that the elders are acting respectfully.

#### Revelation 4:11

##### our Lord and our God

"our Lord and God." This is one person, the one sitting on the throne.

##### to receive glory and honor and power

"to be praised for your glory, honor, and power" or "for everyone to praise you because you are glorious, honorable, and powerful"

Chapter 5

1Then I saw in the right hand of the one who was seated on the throne a scroll written on the front and on the back, sealed with seven seals.2I saw a mighty angel proclaiming with a loud voice, "Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?"3No one in heaven or on the earth or under the earth was able to open the scroll or to read it.4I wept bitterly because no one was found worthy to open the scroll or to read it.5But one of the elders said to me, "Do not weep. Look! The Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has conquered. He is able to open the scroll and its seven seals."6I saw a Lamb standing in the middle of the throne area and among the four living creatures and among the elders. He looked as though he had been killed. He had seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven spirits of God sent out into all the earth.7He went and took hold of the scroll out of the right hand of the one who was seated on the throne.8When he had taken the scroll, the four living creatures and the twenty-four elders fell down before the Lamb. Each of them had a harp and a golden bowl full of incense, which are the prayers of God's holy people.9They sang a new song:  
  
"You are worthy to take the scrolland to open its seals.For you were slaughtered, and with your blood you purchased people for Godfrom every tribe, language, people, and nation.10You made them a kingdom and priests to serve our God,and they will reign on the earth."

11Then I looked and heard the sound of many angels who encircled the throne and the living creatures and the elders. Their total number was ten thousands of ten thousands and thousands of thousands.12They said in a loud voice,  
  
"Worthy is the Lamb, who has been slaughtered, to receive power, wealth, wisdom, strength, honor, glory, and praise."

13I heard every created thing that was in heaven and on the earth and under the earth and on the sea—everything in them—saying,  
  
"To the one who sits on the throne and to the Lamb be praise, honor, glory, and dominion forever and ever."

14The four living creatures said, "Amen!" and the elders fell down and worshiped. [1](#footnote-target-1)

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, the twenty-four elders fell down and worshiped the one who lives forever and ever .

#### Revelation 5:1

##### Then I saw

"After I saw those things, I saw"

##### the one who was seated on the throne

This is the same "one" as in Revelation 4:2-3.

##### a scroll written on the front and on the back

"a scroll with writing on the front and the back"

##### sealed with seven seals

"and it had seven seals keeping it closed"

#### Revelation 5:2

##### Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?

This can be translated as a command: "The one who is worthy to do this should come to break the seals and open the scroll!"

#### Revelation 5:3

##### in heaven or on the earth or under the earth

"anywhere in heaven or on the earth or under the earth"

#### Revelation 5:5

##### Look

"Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

##### The Lion of the tribe of Judah

"The one who is called the Lion of the tribe of Judah" or "The king who is called the Lion of the tribe of Judah"

##### The Lion

The king is spoken of as if he were a lion because a lion is very strong.

##### the Root of David

"the Descendant of David"

#### Revelation 5:6

##### a Lamb

A "lamb" is a young sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ.

##### seven spirits of God

The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The "seven spirits" refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God.

##### sent out into all the earth

"which God sent out over all the earth"

#### Revelation 5:8

##### fell down

"lay down on the ground." Their faces were toward the ground to show that they were worshiping the Lamb. They did this on purpose; they did not fall accidentally.

##### Each of them

Possible meanings are 1) "each of the elders and living creatures" or 2) "each of the elders."

##### a golden bowl full of incense, which are the prayers of God's holy people

The incense here is a symbol for the believers' prayers to God.

#### Revelation 5:9

##### For you were slaughtered

"For they slaughtered you" or "For people killed you"

##### slaughtered

If your language has a word for killing an animal for a sacrifice, consider using it here.

##### with your blood

Since blood represents a person's life, losing the blood represents dying. This probably means "by your death" or "by dying."

##### you purchased people for God

"you bought people so that they could belong to God" or "you paid the price so that people could belong to God"

##### from every tribe, language, people, and nation

This means that people from every ethnic group are included.

#### Revelation 5:11

##### ten thousands of ten thousands and thousands of thousands

"millions" or "too many thousands to count"

#### Revelation 5:12

##### Worthy is the Lamb, who has been slaughtered

"The Lamb, who has been slaughtered, is worthy"

##### to receive power, wealth, wisdom, strength, honor, glory, and praise

"for everyone to honor, glorify, and praise him because he is powerful, wealthy, wise, and strong"

#### Revelation 5:13

##### in heaven and on the earth and under the earth

This means everywhere: the place where God and the angels live, the place where people and animals live, and the place where those who have died are.

##### To the one who sits on the throne and to the Lamb be

"May he who sits on the throne and the Lamb have"

Chapter 6

1I looked when the Lamb opened one of the seven seals, and I heard one of the four living creatures say in a voice that sounded like thunder, "Come!"2I looked and there was a white horse. Its rider held a bow, and he was given a crown. He came out as a conqueror in order to conquer.

3When the Lamb opened the second seal, I heard the second living creature say, "Come!"4Then another horse came out—fiery red. To its rider was given permission to take peace away from the earth, so that its people would slaughter one another. This rider was given a huge sword.

5When the Lamb opened the third seal, I heard the third living creature say, "Come!" I saw a black horse, and its rider held a pair of scales in his hand.6I heard what seemed to be a voice among the four living creatures say, "A choenix of wheat for one denarius, and three choenices of barley for a denarius. But do not harm the oil and the wine."

7When the Lamb opened the fourth seal, I heard the voice of the fourth living creature say, "Come!"8Then I saw a pale horse. The rider on it was named Death, and Hades was following him. They were given authority over one-fourth of the earth, to kill with the sword, with famine and disease, and with the wild animals of the earth.

9When the Lamb opened the fifth seal, I saw under the altar the souls of those who had been killed because of the word of God and the testimony which they held.10They cried out with a loud voice, "How long, Ruler over all, holy and true, until you judge those who live on the earth, and until you avenge our blood?"11Then each of them was given a white robe, and they were told that they should wait a short time longer until the full number of their fellow servants and their brothers who were to be killed, just as they had been killed, was made complete.

12When the Lamb opened the sixth seal, I watched and there was a great earthquake. The sun became as black as sackcloth, and the full moon became like blood.13The stars in the heavens fell to the earth, just as a fig tree drops its unripe figs when shaken by a stormy wind.14The sky vanished like a scroll that was being rolled up. Every mountain and island was moved out of its place.15Then the kings of the earth and the important people, and the commanders, and the rich, and the powerful, and everyone else, slave and free, hid in caves and among the rocks of the mountains.16They said to the mountains and to the rocks, "Fall on us! Hide us from the face of the one who is seated on the throne and from the Lamb's wrath.17For the great day of their wrath has come. Who is able to stand?"

#### Revelation 6:1

##### Come!

This is a command to one person, apparently the rider of the white horse who is spoken of in verse 2.

#### Revelation 6:2

##### he was given a crown

This can be translated with an active verb. Alternate translation: "he received a crown" or "God gave him a crown"

#### Revelation 6:3

##### the second seal

"the next seal" or "seal number two"

##### the second living creature

"the next living creature" or "living creature number two"

#### Revelation 6:4

##### came out—fiery red

"came out. It was red like fire" or "came out. It was bright red"

##### To its rider was given permission

"God gave permission to its rider" or "Its rider received person"

##### This rider was given a huge sword

"This rider received a huge sword" or "God gave this rider a huge sword"

#### Revelation 6:5

##### the third seal

"the next seal" or "seal number three"

##### the third living creature

"the next living creature" or "living creature number three"

##### a pair of scales

a tool used for weighing things

#### Revelation 6:6

##### A choenix of wheat for one denarius

"A choenix of wheat now costs one denarius" or "Buy a choenix of wheat with one denarius"

##### one denarius

"one silver coin" or "the pay for one day of work"

##### But do not harm the oil and the wine

If the oil and wine were harmed, there would be less of them for people to buy, and their prices would go up.

#### Revelation 6:7

##### the fourth seal

"the next seal" or "seal number four"

##### the fourth living creature

"the next living creature" or "living creature number four"

#### Revelation 6:8

##### pale horse

"grey horse." This is the color of a dead body, so its color is a symbol of death.

##### one-fourth of the earth

"one-fourth of the people on the earth"

##### the sword

A sword is a weapon, and here it represents war.

##### with the wild animals of the earth

This means that Death and Hades would cause the wild animals to attack and kill people.

#### Revelation 6:9

##### the fifth seal

"the next seal" or "seal number five"

##### under the altar

This may have been "at the base of the altar."

##### those who had been killed

"those whom others had killed"

##### because of the word of God and the testimony which they held

"because they testified about the word of God"

#### Revelation 6:10

##### avenge our blood

"punish those who killed us"

#### Revelation 6:11

##### Then each of them was given a white robe

"Then each of them received a white robe"

##### they were told

"God told them" or "an angel told them"

##### until the full number of their fellow servants and their brothers who were to be killed, just as they had been killed, was made complete

"until enemies have killed all of Christ's servants whom God had determined would die, just as those under the altar had died"

##### brothers

"fellow Christians" or "fellow believers"

#### Revelation 6:12

##### the sixth seal

"the next seal" or "seal number six"

##### as black as sackcloth

"as black as mourning clothes"

##### like blood

"red like blood"

#### Revelation 6:13

##### just as a fig tree drops its unripe figs when shaken by a stormy wind

"just as figs do when a stormy wind shakes a fig tree and causes it to drop its unripe figs"

#### Revelation 6:14

##### The sky vanished like a scroll that was being rolled up

The sky was normally thought of as being as strong as a sheet of metal, but now it had become as weak as a sheet of paper and was easily torn and rolled up.

#### Revelation 6:15

##### the commanders

soldiers who command warriors during battle

##### caves

large holes in the sides of hills

#### Revelation 6:16

##### the face of the one

"the presence of the one" or "the one"

#### Revelation 6:17

##### the great day of their wrath has come

"this is the terrible time when they will punish people"

##### their wrath

"Their" refers to the one on the throne and the Lamb.

##### Who is able to stand?

"No one can survive."

Chapter 7

1After this I saw four angels standing at the four corners of the earth, tightly holding back the four winds of the earth so that no wind should blow on the earth, on the sea, or against any tree.2I saw another angel coming up from the east, who had the seal of the living God. He cried out with a loud voice to the four angels who were given permission to harm the earth and the sea:3"Do not harm the earth, the sea, or the trees until we have put a seal on the foreheads of the servants of our God."4I heard the number of those who were sealed: 144,000, who were sealed from every tribe of the people of Israel:5twelve thousand from the tribe of Judah were sealed,twelve thousand from the tribe of Reuben,twelve thousand from the tribe of Gad,6twelve thousand from the tribe of Asher,twelve thousand from the tribe of Naphtali,twelve thousand from the tribe of Manasseh,7twelve thousand from the tribe of Simeon,twelve thousand from the tribe of Levi,twelve thousand from the tribe of Issachar,8twelve thousand from the tribe of Zebulun,twelve thousand from the tribe of Joseph, andtwelve thousand from the tribe of Benjamin were sealed.

9After these things I looked, and there was a huge multitude that no one could count—from every nation, tribe, people, and language—standing before the throne and in front of the Lamb. They were wearing white robes and holding palm branches in their hands,10and they were crying out with a loud voice:  
  
"Salvation belongs to our God, who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb!"

11All the angels were standing around the throne and around the elders and the four living creatures, and they fell on their faces before the throne. They worshiped God,12saying,  
  
"Amen! Praise, glory, wisdom, thanksgiving, honor, power, and strength be to our God forever and ever!Amen!"

13Then one of the elders asked me, "Who are these, clothed with white robes, and where did they come from?"14I said to him, "Sir, you know," and he said to me, "These are the ones who have come out of the great tribulation. They have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.15For this reason,   
  
 they are before the throne of God,and they worship him day and night in his temple.The one who is seated on the throne will spread his tent over them.16They will not be hungry again, nor will they be thirsty again.The sun will not beat down on them,nor any burning heat.17For the Lamb at the center of the throne will shepherd them,and he will guide them to springs of living water,and God will wipe away every tear from their eyes."

#### Revelation 7:1

##### the four corners of the earth

The earth is spoken of as if it were flat and square like a sheet of paper. The phrase "the four corners" refers to the north, south, east, and west.

#### Revelation 7:2

##### the seal of the living God

"the marker of the living God" or "the stamp of the living God"

#### Revelation 7:3

##### put a seal on the foreheads

"put a mark on the foreheads"

##### foreheads

The forehead is the top of the face, above the eyes.

#### Revelation 7:4

##### those who were sealed

"those whom God's angel marked"

##### 144,000

"one hundred forty-four thousand people"

#### Revelation 7:5

##### twelve thousand from ... Judah were sealed

"God's angel marked twelve thousand from ... Judah"

#### Revelation 7:9

##### a huge multitude

"a huge crowd" or "a great number of people"

##### white robes

Here the color "white" represents purity.

#### Revelation 7:10

##### Salvation belongs to our God, who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb!

"Our God, who sits on the throne, and the Lamb have saved us!"

#### Revelation 7:11

##### the four living creatures

These are the four creatures mentioned in Revelation 4:6-8.

#### Revelation 7:12

##### Praise, glory, wisdom, thanksgiving, honor, power, and strength be to our God

"Our God is worthy of all praise, glory, wisdom, thanks, honor, power and strength" or "We must give praise, glory, thanks, and honor to our God"

##### forever and ever

These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the praise will never end.

#### Revelation 7:13

##### these, clothed with white robes

The white robes showed that these people were righteous.

#### Revelation 7:14

##### have come out of the great tribulation

"have survived the great tribulation" or "have lived through the great tribulation"

##### the great tribulation

"the time of terrible suffering"

##### They have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb

"They have been made righteous by washing their robes white in his blood"

##### the blood of the Lamb

The word "blood" is used to refer to the death of Lamb.

#### Revelation 7:15

##### they ... them

These words refer to those people who have come through the great tribulation.

##### day and night

These two parts of the day are used together to mean "all the time" or "without stopping"

##### will spread his tent over them

"will shelter them" or "will protect them"

#### Revelation 7:16

##### They ... them

These words refer to those people who have come through the great tribulation.

##### The sun will not beat down

"The sun will not burn them" or "The sun will not make them weak"

#### Revelation 7:17

##### them ... them ... their

These words refer to those people who have come through the great tribulation.

##### the Lamb at the center of the throne will

"the Lamb, who is standing in the middle of the area around the throne, will be"

##### For the Lamb ... will shepherd them

"For the Lamb ... will be like a shepherd to them" or "For the Lamb ... will care for them as a person cares for his animals"

##### he will guide them to springs of living water

"he will guide them like a shepherd guiding his sheep to fresh water" or "he will guide them to life like a shepherd guiding his sheep to living water"

##### God will wipe away every tear from their eyes

"God will wipe away their sadness, like wiping away tears" or "God will cause them to not be sad anymore"

Chapter 8

1When the Lamb opened the seventh seal, there was a silence in heaven for about half an hour.2Then I saw the seven angels who stand before God, and seven trumpets were given to them.

3Another angel came, holding a golden incense bowl, standing at the incense altar. Much incense was given to him so that he would offer it with the prayers of all God's holy people on the golden incense altar before the throne.4The smoke of the incense—with the prayers of God's holy people—rose up before God from the angel's hand.5The angel took the incense bowl and filled it with fire from the altar. Then he threw it down to the earth, and there were crashes of thunder, rumblings, flashes of lightning, and an earthquake.

6The seven angels who had the seven trumpets prepared to sound them.

7The first angel sounded his trumpet, and there was hail and fire mixed with blood. It was thrown down onto the earth so that a third of it was burned up, a third of the trees were burned up, and all the green grass was burned up. [1](#footnote-target-1)

8The second angel sounded his trumpet, and something like a great mountain burning with fire was thrown into the sea. A third of the sea became blood,9a third of the living creatures in the sea died, and a third of the ships were destroyed.

10The third angel sounded his trumpet, and a huge star fell from the sky, blazing like a torch, on a third of the rivers and springs of water.11The name of the star is Wormwood. A third of the waters became wormwood, and many people died from the waters that became bitter.

12The fourth angel sounded his trumpet, and a third of the sun was struck, as well as a third of the moon and a third of the stars. So a third of them turned dark; a third of the day and a third of the night had no light.

13I looked, and I heard an eagle [2](#footnote-target-2) that was flying overhead calling out with a loud voice, "Woe, woe, woe, to those who live on the earth, because of the remaining trumpet blasts that are about to be sounded by the three angels."

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies leave out, so that a third of it was burned up . [2](#footnote-caller-2)Some copies have the word angel instead of eagle .

#### Revelation 8:1

##### the seventh seal

"the next seal" or "the final seal" or "seal number seven"

#### Revelation 8:2

##### seven trumpets were given to them

Possible meanings are 1) "God gave them seven trumpets" or 2) "the Lamb gave them seven trumpets"

#### Revelation 8:3

##### he would offer it

"he would offer the incense to God by burning it"

#### Revelation 8:4

##### the angel's hand

"the bowl in the angel's hand"

#### Revelation 8:5

##### filled it with fire

"filled it with burning coals" or "filled it with coals of fire"

#### Revelation 8:7

##### It was thrown down onto the earth

"The angel threw the hail and fire mixed with blood down onto the earth"

##### a third of it was burned up, a third of the trees were burned up, and all the green grass was burned up

"it burned up a third of the earth, a third of the trees, and all the green grass"

#### Revelation 8:8

##### The second angel

"The next angel" or "Angel number two"

##### something like a great mountain burning with fire was thrown

"the angel threw something like a great mountain burning with fire"

##### became blood

Possible meanings are it 1) "became red like blood" or it 2) really became blood.

#### Revelation 8:9

##### the living creatures in the sea

"the things living in the sea" or "the fish and other animals that lived in the sea"

#### Revelation 8:10

##### a huge star fell from the sky, blazing like a torch

"a huge star that was blazing like a torch fell from the sky." The fire of the huge star looked similar to the fire of a torch.

##### torch

a stick with one end lit on fire to provide light

#### Revelation 8:11

##### The name of the star is Wormwood

"The name of the star is Bitterness" or "The name of the star is Bitter Medicine"

##### became wormwood

"became bitter like wormwood" or "became bitter"

##### died from the waters that became bitter

"died when they drank the bitter water"

#### Revelation 8:12

##### a third of the sun was struck

"a third of the sun changed" or "God changed a third of the sun"

##### a third of them turned dark

Possible meanings are 1) "one third of the time they were dark" or 2) "one third of the sun, one third of the moon, and one third of the stars became dark"

#### Revelation 8:13

##### because of the remaining trumpet blasts that are about to be sounded by the three angels

"because the three angels who have not yet sounded their trumpets are about to sound them"

Chapter 9

1Then the fifth angel sounded his trumpet. I saw a star from heaven that had fallen to the earth. The star was given the key to the shaft of the bottomless pit.2He opened the shaft of the bottomless pit, and smoke went up out of the shaft like smoke from a huge furnace. The sun and the air were turned dark by the smoke from the shaft.3Out of the smoke locusts came on the earth, and they were given power like that of scorpions on the earth.4They were told not to damage the grass on the earth or any green plant or tree, but only the people who did not have the seal of God on their foreheads.5They were not given permission to kill those people, but only to torture them for five months. Their agony would be like the sting of a scorpion when it strikes a person.6In those days people will seek death but will not find it. They will greatly desire to die, but death will flee from them.7The locusts looked like horses prepared for war. On their heads were something like crowns of gold, and their faces were like human faces.8They had hair like women's hair, and their teeth were like lions' teeth.9They had breastplates like iron breastplates, and the sound of their wings was like the sound made by many chariots and horses running into battle.10They had tails with stingers like scorpions; in their tails they had power to harm people for five months.11They had as king over them the angel of the bottomless pit. His name in Hebrew was Abaddon, and in Greek he had the name Apollyon.

12The first woe is past. Look! After this there are still two disasters to come.

13The sixth angel sounded his trumpet, and I heard a voice coming from the horns of the golden altar that is present before God,14saying to the sixth angel who had the trumpet, "Release the four angels who had been bound at the great Euphrates River."15The four angels who had been prepared for that hour, that day, that month, and that year were released to kill a third of mankind.16The number of the soldiers on horseback was 200,000,000. I heard their number.17This is how I saw the horses in my vision and those who rode on them: Their breastplates were fiery red, dark blue, and yellow as sulfur. The heads of the horses resembled the heads of lions, and out of their mouths came fire, smoke, and sulfur.18A third of the people were killed by these three plagues: the fire, smoke, and sulfur that came out of their mouths.19For the power of the horses was in their mouths and in their tails—for their tails were like snakes, having heads with which they inflicted wounds on people.20The rest of mankind, those who were not killed by these plagues, did not repent of the works of their hands, nor did they stop worshiping demons and idols of gold, silver, bronze, stone, and wood—things that cannot see, hear, or walk.21Neither did they repent of their murders, their sorcery, their sexual immorality, or their acts of theft.

#### Revelation 9:1

##### I saw a star from heaven that had fallen

John saw the star after it had fallen. He did not watch if fall.

##### the key to the shaft of the bottomless pit

"the key that unlocks the shaft of the bottomless pit"

##### the shaft of the bottomless pit

Possible meanings are 1) "shaft" is another way of referring to the pit and describes it as long and narrow, or 2) "shaft" refers to the opening of the pit.

##### the bottomless pit

This is an extremely deep, narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom.

#### Revelation 9:2

##### like smoke from a huge furnace

"like the great amount of smoke that comes from a huge furnace"

##### turned dark

"became dark"

#### Revelation 9:3

##### locusts

insects that fly together in large groups. People fear them because they can eat up all the leaves in gardens and on trees.

##### power like that of scorpions

"the ability to sting people as scorpions do"

#### Revelation 9:4

##### They were told not to damage the grass on the earth or any green plant or tree

Ordinary locusts were a terrible threat to people because when they swarm, they can eat up all the grass and all the leaves on plants and trees. These locusts were told not to do this.

##### but only the people

"but only to harm the people"

##### the seal of God

"the mark of God" or "stamp of God"

##### foreheads

The forehead is the top of the face, above the eyes.

#### Revelation 9:5

##### those people

the people whom the locusts were stinging

##### but only to torture them

"but only given permission to make them suffer terrible pain"

##### to torture them for five months

The locusts would be allowed to do this for five months.

##### the sting of a scorpion

A scorpion is a small insect with a poisonous stinger at the end of its long tail. The sting can cause severe pain or even death.

#### Revelation 9:6

##### people will seek death but will not find it

"people will try to find a way to die but will not find it" or "people will try to kill themselves but will not find a way to die"

#### Revelation 9:7

##### crowns of gold

These were likenesses of wreaths of olive branches or laurel leaves, hammered out in gold. Examples actually made of leaves were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads.

#### Revelation 9:10

##### They had tails

The word "They" refers to the locusts.

##### with stingers like scorpions

"with stingers like scorpion stingers" or "with stingers that could cause terrible pain as scorpion stingers can"

##### in their tails they had power to harm people for five months

Possible meanings are 1) they had power for five months to harm people or 2) they could sting people and the people would be in pain for five months.

#### Revelation 9:11

##### Abaddon ... Apollyon

Both names mean "Destroyer."

#### Revelation 9:13

##### I heard a voice coming

"I heard someone speaking"

##### horns of the golden altar

These are horn-shaped extensions at each of the four corners of the top of the altar.

#### Revelation 9:14

##### the four angels who had been bound

"the four angels whom God had commanded someone to bind" or "the four angels whom God bound"

#### Revelation 9:15

##### The four angels who had been prepared for ... that year were released

"The angel released the four angels who had been prepared for ... that year"

##### for that hour, that day, that month, and that year

"for that exact time"

#### Revelation 9:16

##### 200,000,000

Some ways to express this are: "two hundred million" or "two hundred thousand thousand" or "twenty thousand times ten thousand." If your language does not have a specific number for this, you could also see how you translated a similar large number in Revelation 5:11

#### Revelation 9:17

##### out of their mouths came fire, smoke, and sulfur

"fire, smoke, and sulfur came out of their mouths"

#### Revelation 9:20

##### those who were not killed by these plagues

"those whom the plagues had not killed"

##### the works of their hands

"the deeds they had done"

##### things that cannot see, hear, or walk

"even though idols cannot see, hear, or walk"

Chapter 10

1Then I saw another mighty angel coming down from heaven. He was clothed in a cloud, and there was a rainbow above his head. His face was like the sun and his feet were like pillars of fire.2He held a little scroll, which was opened in his hand. He put his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land.3Then he shouted in a loud voice like a roaring lion. When he shouted, the seven thunders spoke out with their sounds.4When the seven thunders spoke out, I was about to write, but I heard a voice from heaven saying, "Seal up what the seven thunders said. Do not write it down."5Then the angel I saw standing on the sea and the earth raised his right hand to heaven.6He swore by the one who lives forever and ever, who created heaven and all that is in it, the earth and all that is on it, and the sea and all that is in it, and the angel said, "There will be no more delay.7But on the day when the seventh angel is about to sound his trumpet, then the mystery of God will be accomplished, just as he proclaimed the good news to his servants the prophets."8The voice I heard from heaven spoke to me again: "Go, take the open scroll that is in the hand of the angel standing on the sea and on the land."9Then I went to the angel and told him to give me the little scroll. He said to me, "Take the scroll and eat it. It will make your stomach bitter, but in your mouth it will be as sweet as honey."10I took the little scroll from the angel's hand and ate it. It was as sweet as honey in my mouth, but after I ate it, my stomach became bitter.11Then someone said to me, "You must prophesy again about many peoples, nations, languages, and kings."

#### Revelation 10:1

##### He was clothed in a cloud

John speaks of the angel as if he were wearing a cloud as his clothing.

##### His face was like the sun

"His face was bright like the sun"

##### his feet were like pillars of fire

"his legs were like pillars of fire"

#### Revelation 10:2

##### He put his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land

"He stood with his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land"

#### Revelation 10:3

##### Then he shouted

"Then the angel shouted"

##### the seven thunders spoke out

"the seven thunders made a loud noise" or "the thunder sounded very loudly seven times"

#### Revelation 10:4

##### but I heard a voice from heaven

"but I heard someone speaking from heaven"

##### Seal up

"Keep secret"

#### Revelation 10:6

##### He swore by the one who lives forever and ever

"He asked that what he was going to say would be confirmed by the one who lives forever and ever"

##### There will be no more delay

"There will be no more waiting" or "God will not delay"

#### Revelation 10:7

##### the mystery of God will be accomplished

"God will accomplish his mystery" or "God will complete his secret plan"

#### Revelation 10:8

##### The voice I heard from heaven

"The one I heard speak from heaven" or "The one who had spoken to me from heaven"

#### Revelation 10:9

##### make ... bitter

"make ... sour" or "make ... acid." This refers to a bad taste from the stomach after eating something that is not good.

Chapter 11

1A reed was given to me to use like a measuring rod. I was told, "Get up and measure the temple of God and the altar, and those who worship in it.2But do not measure the courtyard outside the temple, for it has been given over to the Gentiles. They will trample the holy city for forty-two months.3I will give my two witnesses authority to prophesy for 1,260 days, clothed in sackcloth."4These witnesses are the two olive trees and the two lampstands that have stood before the Lord of the earth.5If anyone chooses to harm them, fire comes out of their mouth and devours their enemies. Anyone who wishes to harm them must be killed in this way.6These witnesses have authority to close up the sky so that no rain will fall during the days that they prophesy. They have power to turn the waters to blood and to strike the earth with every kind of plague whenever they wish.7When they will have finished their testimony, the beast that comes up from the bottomless pit will wage war against them. He will conquer them and kill them.8Their bodies will lie in the street of the great city (which is symbolically called Sodom and Egypt) where their Lord was crucified.9For three and a half days some from every people, tribe, language, and nation will look at their bodies. They will not permit them to be placed in a tomb.10Those who live on the earth will rejoice over them and celebrate. They will even send gifts to one another because these two prophets tormented those who lived on the earth.11But after three and a half days a breath of life from God will enter them, and they will stand on their feet. Great fear will fall on those who see them.12Then they will hear a loud voice from heaven say to them, "Come up here!" Then they will go up into heaven in a cloud, while their enemies look on.13At that hour there will be a major earthquake, and a tenth part of the city will collapse. Seven thousand people will be killed in the earthquake, and the survivors will be terrified and give glory to the God of heaven.

14The second woe is past. Look! The third woe is coming quickly.

15Then the seventh angel sounded his trumpet, and loud voices spoke in heaven and said,  
  
"The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ,and he will reign forever and ever."

16Then the twenty-four elders, who sit on their thrones in the presence of God, fell upon their faces and worshiped God.17They said,  
  
"We give thanks to you, Lord God Almighty, the one who is and who was,because you have taken your great power and have begun to reign. [1](#footnote-target-1)18The nations were enraged,but your wrath has come.The time has come for the dead to be judgedand for you to reward your servants the prophetsand God's holy people, and those who feared your name,both the unimportant and the mighty.The time has come for you to destroy those who are destroying the earth."

19Then God's temple in heaven was opened and the ark of his covenant was seen within his temple. There were flashes of lightning, rumblings, crashes of thunder, an earthquake, and a great hailstorm.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best copies of the ancient Greek text have the phrase who was, and who is, but some later copies of the Greek add the phrase: and who is to come .

#### Revelation 11:1

##### given to me ... I was told

The words "me" and "I" refer to John.

##### those who worship in it

"count those who worship in the temple"

#### Revelation 11:2

##### trample

to treat something as worthless by walking on it

#### Revelation 11:3

##### days, clothed in sackcloth

"days, wearing rough mourning clothes" or "days. They will wear scratchy clothes to show that they are very sad"

#### Revelation 11:4

##### the two olive trees and the two lampstands that have stood before the Lord of the earth

"the two olive trees and the two lampstands, told about in scripture, that represent these witnesses"

#### Revelation 11:5

##### fire comes out of their mouth and devours their enemies

"fire will come out of their mouth and devour their enemies"

#### Revelation 11:6

##### to close up the sky so that no rain will fall

"to keep rain from falling from the sky"

##### the days that they prophesy

"the time that they prophesy." The word "days" here can refer to weeks, months, or years.

##### to turn

"to change"

##### to strike the earth with every kind of plague

"to cause all kinds of trouble to occur on earth"

#### Revelation 11:8

##### Their bodies

This refers to the bodies of the two witnesses.

##### in the street of the great city

"in one of the streets of the great city" or "in the main street of the great city"

##### their Lord

They served the Lord, and, like him, would die in that city.

#### Revelation 11:10

##### will rejoice over them and celebrate

"will rejoice that the two witnesses have died"

##### even send gifts to one another

This action shows how happy the people were.

##### because these two prophets tormented those who lived on the earth

This is the reason that the people will be so happy that the witnesses have died.

#### Revelation 11:11

##### a breath of life from God will enter them

"God will cause the two witnesses to breathe again and live"

##### Great fear will fall on those who see them

"Those who see them will be extremely afraid"

#### Revelation 11:12

##### Then they will hear

Possible meanings are 1) the two witnesses will hear or 2) the people will hear what is said to the two witnesses.

##### a loud voice from heaven

"someone speak loudly to them from heaven and"

##### say to them

"say to the two witnesses"

#### Revelation 11:13

##### the survivors

"those who do not die" or "those who are still living"

##### give glory to the God of heaven

"say that the God of heaven is glorious"

#### Revelation 11:15

##### the seventh angel

"the final angel" or "angel number seven"

##### loud voices spoke in heaven and said

"speakers in heaven spoke loudly and said"

##### The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ

"The authority to rule the world now belongs to our Lord and his Christ" or "Our Lord and his Christ are now the rulers of the world"

##### the world

"everyone in the world"

#### Revelation 11:16

##### fell upon their faces

"bowed down"

#### Revelation 11:17

##### you, Lord God Almighty, the one who is and who was

"you, Lord God, the ruler over all. You are the one who is, and you are the one who was"

##### the one who is

"the one who exists" or "the one who lives"

##### who was

"who has always existed" or "who has always lived"

##### you have taken your great power

"you have defeated with your power everyone who has rebelled against you"

#### Revelation 11:18

##### were enraged

"were extremely angry"

##### your wrath has come

"You are ready to show your anger"

##### The time has come

"The time is right" or "Now is the time"

##### for the dead to be judged

"for God to judge those who have died"

##### the prophets, those who are believers, and those who feared your name

"the prophets, those who are believers, and those who fear you" or "the prophets and the others who are believers and fear your name"

#### Revelation 11:19

##### Then God's temple in heaven was opened

"Then someone opened God's temple in heaven"

##### the ark of his covenant was seen within his temple

"I saw the ark of his covenant in his temple"

Chapter 12

1A great sign was seen in heaven: a woman clothed with the sun, with the moon under her feet and a crown of twelve stars on her head.2She was pregnant, and she was crying out in birth pains, in the anguish of childbirth.3Then another sign was seen in heaven: Look! There was a huge red dragon that had seven heads and ten horns, and there were seven crowns on his heads.4His tail swept away a third of the stars in heaven and hurled them down to the earth. The dragon stood before the woman who was about to give birth, so that when she gave birth, he would devour her child.5She gave birth to a son, a male child, who would rule all the nations with an iron rod. Her child was snatched away to God and to his throne,6and the woman fled into the wilderness, where God had prepared a place for her, so she could be taken care of for 1,260 days.

7Now there was war in heaven. Michael and his angels fought against the dragon, and the dragon and his angels fought back.8But the dragon was not strong enough to win. So there was no longer any place in heaven for him and his angels.9The great dragon—that old serpent called the Devil or Satan, who deceives the whole world—was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him.10Then I heard a loud voice in heaven:  
  
"Now have come the salvation and the powerand the kingdom of our God,and the authority of his Christ.For the accuser of our brothers has been thrown down,the one who accused them before our God day and night.11They conquered him by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony,for they did not love their lives even to death.12Therefore rejoice, you heavensand all who reside in them!But woe to the earth and to the sea,because the devil has gone down to you!He is filled with terrible angerand knows that he has only a little time!

13When the dragon realized he had been thrown down to the earth, he pursued the woman who had given birth to the male child.14But the woman was given the two wings of a great eagle so that she would flee to the place prepared for her in the wilderness. This was the place where she would be taken care of, for a time, times, and half a time—out of the serpent's presence.15The serpent poured water out of his mouth like a river so that he might make a flood to sweep her away.16But the earth helped the woman. The earth opened its mouth and swallowed the river that the dragon was pouring out of his mouth.17Then the dragon was enraged at the woman and went off to wage war with the rest of her descendants, those who obey God's commandments and hold to the testimony about Jesus.18Then the dragon stood on the sand of the seashore.

#### Revelation 12:1

##### a woman clothed with the sun, with the moon under her feet

"a woman who was wearing the sun and had the moon under her feet"

##### a crown of twelve stars

This was apparently a likeness of a wreath made of laurel leaves or olive branches, but with twelve stars included in it.

#### Revelation 12:3

##### dragon

This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos.

#### Revelation 12:4

##### His tail swept away a third of the stars

"With his tail he swept away a third of the stars"

#### Revelation 12:5

##### rule all the nations with an iron rod

Ruling harshly is spoken of as ruling with an iron rod.

##### Her child was snatched away to God

"God quickly took her child to himself"

#### Revelation 12:7

##### Now

John uses this word to mark a shift in his account to introduce something else happening in his vision.

#### Revelation 12:8

##### So there was no longer any place in heaven for him and his angels

"So the dragon and his angels could no longer stay in heaven"

#### Revelation 12:9

##### dragon—that old serpent called the Devil or Satan, who deceives the whole world—was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him

"dragon was thrown down to earth, and his angels were thrown down with him. He is the old serpent who deceives the world and is called the Devil or Satan"

#### Revelation 12:10

##### I

The word "I" refers to John.

##### I heard a loud voice in heaven

"I heard someone saying loudly from heaven"

##### Now have come the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God, and the authority of his Christ

"Now God has saved his people by his power, God rules as king, and his Christ has all authority"

##### the accuser of our brothers has been thrown down

This is the dragon that was thrown down in Revelation 12:9.

##### our brothers

"our fellow believers"

##### day and night

These two parts of the day are used together to mean "all the time" or "without stopping"

#### Revelation 12:11

##### They conquered him

"They conquered the accuser"

##### by the blood of the Lamb

"because the lamb had shed his blood and died for them"

##### by the word of their testimony

"by what they said when they testified to others about Jesus"

##### even to death

"but kept testifying even though they knew that doing so might cause their death"

#### Revelation 12:13

##### the dragon realized he had been thrown down to the earth

"the dragon realized that God had thrown him out of heaven and sent him to earth"

##### he pursued the woman

"he chased after the woman"

##### dragon

The dragon is also identified in verse 9 as "the devil or Satan."

#### Revelation 12:15

##### serpent

This is the same being as the dragon mentioned earlier in Revelation 12:9.

##### poured water out of his mouth like a river so that

"poured a very large amount of water out of his mouth so that"

##### river so that he might make a flood to sweep

"river; he was trying to make a flood that would wash her away"

#### Revelation 12:16

##### The earth opened its mouth and swallowed the river that the dragon was pouring out of his mouth

"A hole in the ground opened up and the water went down into the hole"

#### Revelation 12:17

##### hold to the testimony about Jesus

"continue to testify about Jesus"

Chapter 13

1Then I saw a beast coming up out of the sea. It had ten horns and seven heads. On its horns were ten crowns, and on each of its heads was a blasphemous name.2This beast I saw was like a leopard. Its feet were like a bear's feet, and its mouth was like a lion's mouth. The dragon gave it his power, his throne, and his great authority to rule.3One of the beast's heads seemed to have a fatal wound, but that fatal wound had been healed. The whole earth marveled as they followed the beast.4They also worshiped the dragon, for he had given his authority to the beast. They worshiped the beast, too, and kept saying, "Who is like the beast?" and "Who can fight against it?"5The beast was given a mouth that could speak proud words and blasphemies. It was permitted to exercise authority for forty-two months.6So the beast opened its mouth to speak blasphemies against God, blaspheming his name and his tabernacle, those who live in heaven.7The beast was permitted to wage war with God's holy people and to conquer them. Also, authority was given to it over every tribe, people, language, and nation.8All who live on the earth will worship it, everyone whose name was not written in the Book of Life, which belongs to the Lamb who had been slaughtered from the foundation of the world.9If anyone has an ear, let him hear.  
  
10If anyone is to be taken into captivity,into captivity he will go.If anyone is to be killed with the sword,with the sword he will be killed.  
  
 Here is a call for the patient endurance and faith of God's holy people.

11Then I saw another beast coming up out of the earth. He had two horns like a lamb, and it spoke like a dragon.12He exercised all the authority of the first beast in his presence, and he made the earth and those who live on it worship the first beast—the one whose lethal wound had been healed.13He performed mighty miracles. He even made fire come down on the earth from heaven in front of people.14By the signs he was given power on behalf of the beast, he deceived those who live on the earth, telling them to set up an image for the beast—who was wounded by the sword, but he still lived.15He was permitted to give breath to the beast's image so that the image would even speak and cause all who refused to worship the beast to be killed.16He also forced everyone, unimportant and mighty, rich and poor, free and slave, to receive a mark on the right hand or on the forehead.17It was impossible for anyone to buy or sell unless he had the mark of the beast, that is, the number representing its name.18This calls for wisdom. If anyone has insight, let him calculate the number of the beast. For it is the number of a human being. His number is 666.

#### Revelation 13:2

##### The dragon gave it his power

The dragon made the beast as powerful as he was. He did not lose his power, however, by giving it to the beast.

##### his power ... his throne, and his great authority to rule

These are three ways of referring to his authority, and together they emphasize that the authority was great.

##### his throne

"his royal authority" or "his authority to rule as king"

#### Revelation 13:3

##### but that fatal wound had been healed

"but that deadly wound had healed"

##### The whole earth

"All the people on the earth"

##### followed the beast

"obeyed the beast"

#### Revelation 13:4

##### he had given his authority to the beast

"he had caused the beast to have as much authority as he had"

##### Who is like the beast?

"No one is as powerful as the beast!"

##### Who can fight against it?

"No one could ever fight against the beast and win!"

#### Revelation 13:5

##### The beast was given ... It was permitted

"God gave the beast ... God permitted the beast"

##### The beast was given a mouth that could speak

"The beast was allowed to speak"

#### Revelation 13:6

##### to speak blasphemies against God

"to say disrespectful things about God"

##### blaspheming his name and his tabernacle, those who live in heaven

"blaspheming his name and those who live in heaven, who are like a tabernacle for him"

#### Revelation 13:7

##### authority was given to it

"God gave authority to the beast"

##### every tribe, people, language, and nation

This means that people from every ethnic group are included.

#### Revelation 13:8

##### everyone whose name was not written ... in the Book of Life

"those whose names the Lamb did not write ... in The Book of Life" or "those whose names were not ... in the Book of Life"

##### from the foundation of the world

"from the time that God created the world"

##### the Lamb

A "lamb" is a young sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ.

##### who had been slaughtered

"whom the people slaughtered"

#### Revelation 13:9

##### If anyone ... let him hear

"If you are willing to listen, listen" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

#### Revelation 13:10

##### If anyone is to be taken into captivity

"If it is God's will for the enemy to capture a certain person"

##### into captivity he will go

"he will be captured" or "the enemy will capture him"

##### If anyone is to be killed with the sword

"If it is God's will for the enemy to kill a certain person with a sword"

##### he will be killed

"the enemy will kill him"

##### Here is a call for the patient endurance and faith of God's holy people

"God's holy people must endure patiently and be faithful"

#### Revelation 13:12

##### the earth and those who live on it

"everyone on the earth"

##### the one whose lethal wound had been healed

"the one who had a deadly wound that healed"

#### Revelation 13:13

##### He performed

"The beast from the earth performed"

#### Revelation 13:15

##### He was permitted

"God permitted the beast from the earth"

##### to give breath to the beast's image

"to give life to the beast's image"

##### the beast's image

This is the image of the first beast that had been mentioned.

##### cause all who refused to worship the beast to be killed

"put to death anyone who refused to worship the first beast"

#### Revelation 13:16

##### He also forced everyone

"The beast from the earth also forced everyone"

#### Revelation 13:17

##### It was impossible for anyone to buy or sell unless he had the mark of the beast

"He commanded that people could buy or sell things only if they had the mark of the beast"

##### the mark of the beast

This was an identifying mark that indicated that the person who received it worshiped the beast.

#### Revelation 13:18

##### This calls for wisdom

"Wisdom is needed" or "You need to be wise about this"

##### If anyone has insight

"If anyone is able to understand things"

##### let him calculate the number of the beast

"he should discern what the number of the beast means" or "he should figure out what the number of the beast means"

##### is the number of a human being

Possible meanings are 1) the number represents one person or 2) the number represents all of humanity.

Chapter 14

1I looked and saw the Lamb standing on Mount Zion. With him were 144,000 who had his name and his Father's name written on their foreheads.2I heard a voice from heaven sounding like a roar of many waters and loud thunder. The sound I heard was also like harpists playing their harps.3They sang a new song before the throne and before the four living creatures and the elders. No one could learn the song except for the 144,000 who had been bought from the earth.4These are the ones that have not defiled themselves with women, for they have kept themselves sexually pure. It is these who follow the Lamb wherever he goes. These were redeemed from among mankind as firstfruits for God and for the Lamb.5No lie was found in their mouth; they are blameless.

6I saw another angel flying in midair, who had the eternal gospel to proclaim to those who live on the earth—to every nation, tribe, language, and people.7He called out with a loud voice, "Fear God and give him glory. For the hour of his judgment has come. Worship him, the one who made the heaven, the earth, the sea, and the springs of water."

8Another angel—a second angel—followed, saying, "Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great, who persuaded all the nations to drink the wine of her immoral passion."

9Another angel—a third angel—followed them, saying with a loud voice, "If anyone worships the beast and his image and receives a mark on his forehead or on his hand,10he will also drink some of the wine of God's wrath, the wine that has been poured undiluted into the cup of his anger. The person who drinks it will be tormented with fire and sulfur before God's holy angels and before the Lamb.11The smoke from their torment goes up forever and ever, and they have no rest day or night—these worshipers of the beast and his image, and everyone who receives the mark of his name.12Here is a call for the patient endurance of God's holy people, those who keep the commandments of God and their faith in Jesus."

13I heard a voice from heaven say, "Write this: Blessed are the dead who die in the Lord."

"Yes," says the Spirit, "so that they may rest from their labors, for their deeds will follow them."

14I looked, and there was a white cloud. Seated on the cloud was one like a son of man. He had a golden crown on his head and a sharp sickle in his hand.15Then another angel came out of the temple and called with a loud voice to the one sitting on the cloud: "Take your sickle and start to reap. For the time to reap has come, since the harvest of the earth is ripe."16Then the one who was sitting on the cloud swung his sickle over the earth, and the earth was reaped.

17Another angel came out from the temple in heaven; he also had a sharp sickle.18Still another angel came out from the incense altar, who had authority over the fire. He called out with a loud voice to the one who had the sharp sickle, "Take your sharp sickle and gather in the clusters of grapes from the vines of the earth, for their grapes are now ripe."19The angel swung his sickle to the earth and harvested the grapevine of the earth. He threw it into the great winepress of God's wrath.20The winepress was trodden outside the city, and blood poured out from it up to the height of a horse's bridle, for 1,600 stadia.

#### Revelation 14:1

##### Lamb

A "lamb" is a young sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ.

##### who had his name and his Father's name written on their foreheads

"on whose foreheads the Lamb and his Father had written their names"

##### his Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Revelation 14:3

##### They sang a new song

"That sound was a new song that they sang"

##### elders

This refers to the twenty-four elders around the throne.

##### No one could learn the song except for the 144,000

"The only ones who could learn the song were the 144,000"

#### Revelation 14:4

##### they have kept themselves sexually pure

Possible meanings are 1) "they have not had sexual relations with a woman who was not their wife" or 2) "they are virgins."

##### follow the Lamb wherever he goes

"they do whatever the Lamb does" or "they obey the Lamb"

##### redeemed from among mankind as firstfruits

"purchased out of the midst of the rest of mankind as a special celebration of salvation"

#### Revelation 14:5

##### No lie was found in their mouth

"They never lied when they spoke"

#### Revelation 14:6

##### every nation, tribe, language, and people

This means that people from every ethnic group are included.

#### Revelation 14:7

##### the hour of his judgment has come

"now is the time that God has chosen for judgment" or "it is now the time for God to judge people"

#### Revelation 14:8

##### Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great

"Babylon the great has been destroyed"

##### Babylon the great

"Babylon the large city" or "the important city of Babylon." This was probably a symbol for the city of Rome, which was large, wealthy, and sinful

##### who persuaded

Babylon is spoken of as if it were a person, instead of a city filled with people.

##### to drink the wine of her immoral passion

"to be sexually immoral like her" or "to get drunk like her in sexual sin"

#### Revelation 14:10

##### will also drink some of the wine of God's wrath

"will also drink some of the wine that represents God's wrath"

##### that has been poured undiluted

This means that the wine has no water mixed into it. It is strong, and a person who drinks much of it will get very drunk. As a symbol, it means that God will be extremely angry, not just a little angry.

##### cup of his anger

This symbolic cup holds the wine that represents God's anger.

#### Revelation 14:11

##### The smoke from their torment

"The smoke from the fire that torments them"

##### they have no rest

"they have no relief" or "the torment does not stop"

#### Revelation 14:12

##### Here is a call for the patient endurance of God's holy people

"God's holy people must endure patiently and be faithful."

#### Revelation 14:13

##### who die in the Lord

"who die because they are united to the Lord"

##### labors

difficulties and sufferings

##### their deeds will follow them

These deeds are spoken of as if they were alive and able to follow those who did them. Possible meanings are 1) "others will know the good deeds these people have done" or 2) "God will reward them for their deeds"

#### Revelation 14:14

##### one like a son of man

This expression describes a human figure, someone who looks human.

##### golden crown

This was the likeness of a wreath of olive branches or laurel leaves, hammered out in gold. Examples actually made of leaves were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads.

##### sickle

a tool with a curved blade used for cutting grass, grain, and vines

#### Revelation 14:15

##### came out of the temple

"came out of the heavenly temple"

#### Revelation 14:18

##### who had authority over the fire

Here "authority over" refers to responsibility to tend the fire.

#### Revelation 14:19

##### harvested the grapevine of the earth ... threw it

"harvested the earth as if he were a person harvesting grapes ... threw the harvest" or "took away the people of the earth as if he were a person harvesting grapes ... threw them"

##### the great winepress of God's wrath

"the large winepress where God will show his wrath." A winepress is a large container in which people put grapes and then crush them to get the juice out. John is saying that the angel will take the people of the earth and put them where God will punish or destroy them because he is angry with them.

#### Revelation 14:20

##### up to the height of a horse's bridle

"as high as the bridle on a horse's head"

##### bridle

a device made of leather straps that goes around a horse's head and is used for directing the horse

##### 1,600 stadia

In modern measures this would be about "300 kilometers" or "200 miles."

Chapter 15

1Then I saw another sign in heaven, great and marvelous: There were seven angels with seven plagues, which are the final plagues, for with them the wrath of God will be completed.

2I saw what appeared to be a sea of glass mixed with fire. Standing beside the sea were those who had been victorious over the beast and his image and over the number representing his name. They were holding harps given to them by God.3They were singing the song of Moses, the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb:  
  
"Great and marvelous are your deeds,Lord God, the Almighty.Just and true are your ways,King of the nations.4Who will not fear you, Lord,and glorify your name?For you alone are holy.All nations will comeand worship before youbecause your righteous deeds have been revealed."

5After these things I looked, and the temple of the tabernacle of witness was open in heaven.6Out of the temple came the seven angels holding the seven plagues. They were clothed with pure, bright linen and had golden sashes around their chests.7One of the four living creatures gave to the seven angels seven golden bowls full of the wrath of God, who lives forever and ever.8The temple was filled with smoke from the glory of God and from his power. No one could enter it until the seven plagues of the seven angels were completed.

#### Revelation 15:1

##### great and marvelous

"something that greatly amazed me"

##### seven angels with seven plagues

"seven angels who had authority to send seven plagues on the earth"

##### which are the final plagues

"and after them, there will not be any more plagues"

##### for with them the wrath of God will be completed

Possible meanings are 1) these plagues will show all of God's anger or 2) after these plagues, God will no longer be angry.

#### Revelation 15:2

##### sea of glass

Possible meanings are 1) a sea is spoken of as if it were glass. Alternate translation: "a sea that was as smooth as glass" or 2) glass if spoken of as if it were a sea.

##### who had been victorious over the beast and his image

"who had been victorious over the beast and his image by not worshiping them"

#### Revelation 15:3

##### They were singing

"Those who had been victorious over the beast were singing"

#### Revelation 15:4

##### Who will not fear you, Lord, and glorify your name?

"Lord, everyone will fear you and glorify your you!"

##### your righteous deeds have been revealed

"you have made everyone know about your righteous deeds"

#### Revelation 15:5

##### After these things

"After the people finished singing"

##### the temple of the tabernacle of witness

Possible meanings of "tabernacle of witness" are 1) "the tabernacle" is the place where the priests had set the "witness," also called "the ark of the testimony," or 2) the "tabernacle of witness" is another name for "the ark of the testimony."

#### Revelation 15:6

##### the seven angels holding the seven plagues

These angels were seen as holding seven plagues because in Revelation 15:7 they are given seven bowls full of the wrath of God.

##### linen

a fine, expensive cloth made from flax

##### sashes

A sash is a decorative piece of cloth worn on the upper body.

#### Revelation 15:7

##### seven golden bowls full of the wrath of God

"seven gold bowls full of the wine that represents the wrath of God"

#### Revelation 15:8

##### until the seven plagues of the seven angels were completed

"until the seven angels finished sending the seven plagues to the earth"

Chapter 16

1I heard a loud voice call out of the temple and say to the seven angels, "Go and pour out on the earth the seven bowls of God's wrath."

2The first angel went and poured out his bowl on the earth; ugly and painful sores came on the people who had the mark of the beast, those who worshiped his image.

3The second angel poured out his bowl into the sea. It became blood, like the blood of a dead person, and every living thing in the sea died.

4The third angel poured out his bowl into the rivers and the springs of water, and they became blood.5I heard the angel of the waters say,  
  
"You are righteous—the one who is and who was, the Holy One—because you have judged these things.6Because they poured out the blood of God's holy people and prophets,you have given them blood to drink;it is what they deserve."

7I heard the altar reply,  
  
"Yes, Lord God Almighty,your judgments are true and righteous."

8The fourth angel poured out his bowl on the sun, and it was given permission to scorch the people with fire.9They were scorched by the terrible heat, and they blasphemed the name of God, who has the authority over these plagues. They did not repent or give him glory.

10Then the fifth angel poured out his bowl on the throne of the beast, and darkness covered its kingdom. They chewed on their tongues because of the pain.11They blasphemed the God of heaven because of their pain and sores, and they still refused to repent of their deeds.

12The sixth angel poured out his bowl into the great river, the Euphrates. Its water was dried up in order to prepare the way for the kings that would come from the east.13I saw three unclean spirits that looked like frogs coming out of the mouths of the dragon, of the beast, and of the false prophet.14For they are spirits of demons performing miraculous signs. They were going out to the kings of the whole world in order to gather them together for the battle on the great day of God Almighty.15("Look! I am coming as a thief! Blessed is the one who keeps watching, keeping his garments on so that he does not walk around naked and so that they do not see his shameful condition.")

16They brought them together at the place that is called Armageddon in Hebrew.

17Then the seventh angel poured out his bowl into the air. Then a loud voice came out of the temple and from the throne, saying, "It is done!"18There were flashes of lightning, rumblings, crashes of thunder, and a terrible earthquake—an earthquake greater than any that has ever happened since human beings have been on the earth, so great was this earthquake.19The great city was split into three parts, and the nations' cities collapsed. Then God called to mind Babylon the great, and he gave that city the cup filled with the wine made from his furious wrath.20Every island disappeared, and the mountains were no longer found.21Great hailstones, weighing about a talent, came down from the sky upon the people. They blasphemed God for the plague of hail because that plague was so terrible.

#### Revelation 16:1

##### I heard

The word "I" refers to John.

##### bowls of God's wrath

"bowls full of the wine that represents God's wrath"

#### Revelation 16:2

##### poured out his bowl

"poured out the wine from his bowl" or "poured out God's wrath from his bowl"

##### mark of the beast

This was an identifying mark that indicated that the person who received it worshiped the beast.

#### Revelation 16:3

##### the sea

This refers to all the salt water lakes and oceans.

#### Revelation 16:4

##### poured out his bowl

"poured out the wine from his bowl" or "poured out God's wrath from his bowl"

##### rivers and the springs of water

This refers to all bodies of fresh water.

#### Revelation 16:5

##### the angel of the waters

These words could be a reference to 1) the third angel who was in charge of pouring out God's wrath on the rivers and springs of water or 2) another angel who was in charge of all the waters.

##### You are righteous

"You" refers to God.

##### the one who is and who was

"God who is and who was."

#### Revelation 16:6

##### they poured out the blood of God's holy people and prophets

"they murdered God's holy people and the prophets"

##### you have given them blood to drink

God will make the evil people drink the waters that he turned to blood.

#### Revelation 16:7

##### I heard the altar reply

The word "altar" here refers perhaps to someone at the altar. "I heard someone at the altar reply"

#### Revelation 16:8

##### on the sun, and it was given permission to scorch the people

"on the sun and caused it to severely burn the people"

#### Revelation 16:9

##### They were scorched by the terrible heat

"The extreme heat burned them badly"

##### God, who has the authority over these plagues

"God because he has the authority over these plagues"

#### Revelation 16:10

##### the throne of the beast

This is where the beast reigns from. It may refer to the capital city of his kingdom.

##### darkness covered its kingdom

"it became dark in all his kingdom" or "all of his kingdom became dark"

##### They chewed

The people in the beast's kingdom chewed.

#### Revelation 16:12

##### the Euphrates. Its water was dried up

"the Euphrates. Its water dried up" or "the Euphrates, and caused its water to dry up"

#### Revelation 16:13

##### looked like frogs

A frog is a small animal that lives near water. Jews considered them unclean animals.

#### Revelation 16:15

##### I am coming as a thief

Jesus will come at a time when people do not expect him, just as a thief comes when not expected. See how you translated a similar phrase in Revelation 3:3.

##### keeping his garments on

Some versions translate this as, "keeping his garments with him."

##### does not walk around naked

"does not live foolishly"

##### they do not see his shameful condition

Here the word "they" refers to other people.

#### Revelation 16:16

##### They brought them together

"The spirits of the demons brought the kings and their armies together"

##### the place that is called

"the place that people call"

##### Armageddon

This is the name of a place.

#### Revelation 16:17

##### Then a loud voice came out of the temple and from the throne

This means someone sitting on the throne or someone standing near the throne spoke loudly. It is unclear who is speaking.

#### Revelation 16:18

##### flashes of lightning

Use your language's way of describing what lightning looks like each time it appears.

##### rumblings, crashes of thunder

These are the loud noises that thunder makes. Use your language's way of describing the sound of thunder.

#### Revelation 16:19

##### The great city was split

"The earthquake split the great city"

##### Then God called to mind

"Then God remembered" or "Then God thought of" or "Then God started to pay attention to." This does not mean that God remembered something he had forgotten.

##### he gave that city the cup filled with the wine made from his furious wrath

"he made the people of that city drink the wine that represents his wrath"

#### Revelation 16:20

##### the mountains were no longer found

"there were no longer any mountains"

#### Revelation 16:21

##### a talent

"33 kilograms"

Chapter 17

1One of the seven angels who had been holding the seven bowls came and said to me, "Come, I will show you the condemnation of the great prostitute who is seated on many waters,2with whom the kings of the earth committed sexual immorality, and with the wine of her sexual immorality the inhabitants of the earth became drunk."3Then the angel carried me away in the Spirit to a wilderness, and I saw a woman sitting on a scarlet beast that was full of blasphemous names. The beast had seven heads and ten horns.4The woman was dressed in purple and scarlet and was adorned with gold, precious stones, and pearls. She was holding in her hand a golden cup full of detestable things and the impurities of her sexual immorality.5On her forehead was written a name, a mystery: "Babylon the great, the mother of prostitutes and of the detestable things of the earth."

6I saw that the woman was drunk with the blood of God's holy people and with the blood of the martyrs for Jesus. When I saw her, I was greatly astonished.7But the angel said to me, "Why are you astonished? I will explain to you the mystery of the woman and of the beast that is carrying her, the beast that has the seven heads and the ten horns.8The beast you saw existed, does not exist now, and is about to come up from the bottomless pit. Then he will go on to destruction. Those who live on the earth, those whose names have not been written in the Book of Life since the foundation of the world—they will be astounded when they see the beast, because he once was, and now is not, and yet will come.9This calls for a mind that has wisdom. The seven heads are seven hills on which the woman is seated.10They are also seven kings. Five kings have fallen, one exists, and the other has not yet come, and when he comes, he must remain for a little while.11The beast that once was, and now is not, yet he is an eighth king. He belongs to the seven and is going to his destruction.12The ten horns that you saw are ten kings who have not yet received a kingdom, but they will receive authority as kings for one hour together with the beast.13These are of one mind, and they give over their power and authority to the beast.14They will wage war against the Lamb. But the Lamb will conquer them because he is Lord of lords and King of kings—and those with him are the called, chosen, and faithful ones."15The angel said to me, "The waters you saw, where the prostitute is seated, are peoples, multitudes, nations, and languages.16The ten horns that you saw—they and the beast will hate the prostitute. They will make her desolate and naked, they will devour her flesh, and they will burn her completely with fire.17For God has put it into their hearts to carry out his purpose by agreeing to give their power to rule to the beast until God's words are fulfilled.18The woman you saw is the great city that has power to rule over the kings of the earth."

#### Revelation 17:1

##### the condemnation of the great prostitute

"how God will condemn the great prostitute"

##### the great prostitute

"the prostitute that everyone knows about." She represents a certain sinful city.

##### on many waters

"on many rivers"

#### Revelation 17:2

##### with the wine of her sexual immorality the inhabitants of the earth became drunk

"the people of the earth became drunk by drinking her wine, that is, they were sexually immoral"

#### Revelation 17:3

##### carried me away in the Spirit to a wilderness

The setting changes from John being in heaven to being in a wilderness.

#### Revelation 17:4

##### pearls

beautiful and valuable white beads. They are formed inside the shell of a certain kind of small animal that lives in the ocean.

#### Revelation 17:5

##### On her forehead was written a name

"Someone had written on her forehead a name"

##### Babylon the great

"I am Babylon, the powerful one"

#### Revelation 17:6

##### was drunk with the blood ... and with the blood

"was drunk because she had drunk the blood ... and had drunk the blood"

##### the martyrs for Jesus

"the believers who have died because they told others about Jesus"

#### Revelation 17:7

##### Why are you astonished?

"You should not be astonished!"

#### Revelation 17:8

##### Then he will go on to destruction

"Then he will be destroyed" or "Then God will destroy him"

##### those whose names have not been written

"those whose names God did not write"

##### since the foundation of the world

"since the creation of the world" or "since God created the world"

#### Revelation 17:9

##### This calls for a mind that has wisdom

"A wise mind is needed in order to understand this" or "You need to think wisely in order to understand this"

#### Revelation 17:10

##### Five kings have fallen

"Five kings have died"

##### one exists

"one is king now" or "one king is alive now"

##### the other has not yet come, and when he comes

"the other has not yet become king; when he becomes king"

##### he must remain for a little while

"he can be king only for a little while"

#### Revelation 17:11

##### He belongs to the seven

Possible meanings are 1) the beast rules twice: first as one of the seven kings, and then as the eighth king or 2) the beast belongs to that group of seven kings because he is like them.

##### and is going to his destruction

"and will certainly be destroyed" or "and God will surely destroy him"

#### Revelation 17:12

##### for one hour

"for a very short time" or "for a very small part of a day"

#### Revelation 17:13

##### These are of one mind

"These all think the same thing" or "These all agree to do the same thing"

#### Revelation 17:14

##### the called, chosen, and faithful ones

"the ones whom God has called and chosen, who are faithful to him"

#### Revelation 17:15

##### The waters you saw, where the prostitute is seated, are peoples, multitudes, nations, and languages

Here "are" stands for "represent."

##### multitudes

large groups of people

#### Revelation 17:16

##### make her desolate and naked

"steal everything that she has and leave her with nothing"

##### they will devour her flesh

"They will destroy her completely"

#### Revelation 17:17

##### For God has put it into their hearts to carry out his purpose by agreeing to give ... until God's words are fulfilled

"For God has put it into their hearts to agree to give ... until God's words are fulfilled, and by doing this, they would carry out God's purpose"

##### power to rule

"authority" or "kingly authority"

##### until God's words are fulfilled

"until God fulfills what he said will happen"

#### Revelation 17:18

##### is

Here "is" stands for "represents."

##### the great city that has power to rule

"the great city whose leader has power to rule"

Chapter 18

1After these things I saw another angel coming down out of heaven. He had great authority, and the earth was illumined by his glory.2He cried out with a mighty voice, saying,  
  
"Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great!She has become a dwelling place for demons,a prison for every unclean spirit,a prison for every unclean bird,a prison for every unclean and detestable animal.3For all the nations have drunk the wine of her immoral passion.The kings of the earth have committed immorality with her.The merchants of the earth have become rich from the power of her sensual way of living."  
  
4Then I heard another voice from heaven say,  
  
"Come out from her, my people,so that you will not share in her sins,and so that you will not receive any of her plagues.5Her sins have piled up as high as heaven,and God has remembered her evil actions.6Pay her back as she has paid others back,and repay her double for her deeds;in the cup she mixed, mix double the amount for her.7As she glorified herself and lived in luxury,give her just as much torture and grief.For she says in her heart,'I am seated as a queen;I am not a widow,and I will never see mourning.'8Therefore in one day her plagues will come:death, mourning, and famine.She will be consumed by fire,for the Lord God is mighty, and he is her judge."  
  
9The kings of the earth who committed sexual immorality and went out of control with her will weep and wail over her when they see the smoke of her burning.10They will stand off at a distance, afraid of her torment, saying,"Woe, woe to the great city,Babylon, the powerful city!For in a single hour your punishment has come."

11The merchants of the earth weep and mourn for her since no one buys their merchandise anymore—12merchandise of gold, silver, precious stone, pearls, fine linen, purple, silk, scarlet, all kinds of scented wood, every vessel of ivory, every vessel made of most precious wood, bronze, iron, marble,13cinnamon, spice, incense, myrrh, frankincense, wine, oil, fine flour, wheat, cattle and sheep, horses and chariots, and bodies and souls of people.14The fruit that you desired with all your might is gone from you. All your luxury and splendor have vanished, never to be found again.15The merchants of these goods who became rich by her will stand away from her at a distance because of the fear of her torment, weeping and mourning loudly.16They will say,  
  
"Woe, woe to the great citythat was dressed in fine linen, in purple, and in scarlet,and was adorned with gold, precious jewels, and pearls!17In a single hour all that wealth has been laid waste."  
  
 Every ship's captain, every seafaring man, sailors, and all who make their living from the sea stood off at a distance.18They cried out as they saw the smoke of her burning. They said, "What city is like the great city?"19They threw dust on their heads, and cried out, weeping and mourning,  
  
"Woe, woe to the great citywhere all who had their shipsat sea became rich from her wealth.For in a single hour she has been laid waste."20"Rejoice over her, heaven,you holy people and apostles and prophets,for God has brought your judgment on her!"

21A mighty angel took up a stone like a great millstone and threw it into the sea, saying,  
  
"In this way, Babylon, the great city,will be thrown down with violenceand will not be seen anymore.22The sound made by harpists, musicians,flute players, and trumpeterswill not be heard anymore in you.No craftsman of any kindwill be found in you.No sound of a millwill be heard anymore in you.23The light of a lampwill not shine in you anymore.The voices of the bridegroom and the bridewill not be heard in you anymore,for your merchants were the princes of the earth,and the nations were deceived by your sorcery.24In her the blood of prophets and of God's holy people was found,and the blood of all who have been killed on the earth."

#### Revelation 18:2

##### Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great

The angel speaks of Babylon having been destroyed as if it had fallen.

##### She has become

The pronoun "she" refers to the city of Babylon, which is spoken of as if it were a prostitute.

##### a prison

"a hideout"

#### Revelation 18:3

##### all the nations

"the people of all the nations"

##### have drunk the wine of her immoral passion

"have become sexually immoral like her" or "have become drunk like her in sexual sin"

##### her immoral passion

Babylon is spoken of as if it were a prostitute who has caused other people to sin along with her. This may well have a double meaning: literal sexual immorality and also the worship of false gods.

##### merchants

A merchant is a person who sells things.

##### from the power of her sensual way of living

"because she spent so much money on sexual immorality"

#### Revelation 18:4

##### another voice

"someone else"

#### Revelation 18:6

##### Pay her back as she has paid others back

"Punish her as she has punished others"

##### repay her double

"punish her twice as much"

##### in the cup she mixed, mix double the amount for her

"prepare for her the wine of suffering that is twice as strong as what she made for others" or "make her suffer twice as much as she made others suffer"

#### Revelation 18:7

##### she glorified herself

"the people of Babylon glorified themselves"

##### For she says in her heart

"For she says to herself"

##### I am seated as a queen

She claims to be a ruler, having her own authority.

##### I am not a widow

She implies that she will not be dependent on other people.

##### I will never see mourning

"I will never mourn"

#### Revelation 18:8

##### She will be consumed by fire

"Fire will completely burn her up"

#### Revelation 18:9

##### committed sexual immorality and went out of control with her

"sinned sexually and did whatever they wanted just as the people of Babylon did"

#### Revelation 18:10

##### afraid of her torment

"afraid that they will be tormented as Babylon is" or "afraid that God will torment them as he torments Babylon"

##### Woe, woe

This is repeated for emphasis.

##### your punishment has come

Existing in the present is spoken of as having come.

#### Revelation 18:11

##### mourn for her

"mourn for the people of Babylon"

#### Revelation 18:12

##### precious stone, pearls

"many kinds of expensive stones."

##### fine linen

expensive cloth made from flax.

##### purple, silk, scarlet

Purple is a very dark red cloth that is very expensive. Silk is a soft, strong cloth made from the fine string that silkworms make when they make their cocoons. Scarlet is an expensive red cloth.

##### every vessel of ivory

"all kinds of containers made of ivory"

##### ivory

"tusks" or "valuable animal teeth"

##### marble

a precious stone used for building

#### Revelation 18:13

##### cinnamon

a spice that smells nice and comes from the bark of a certain kind of tree

##### spice

a substance used to add flavor to food or a good smell to oil

#### Revelation 18:14

##### The fruit

"The result"

##### desired with all your might

"wanted very much"

#### Revelation 18:15

##### because of the fear of her torment

"because they will be afraid of God tormenting them they way he torments her" or "because they will be afraid of suffering the way she is suffering"

#### Revelation 18:16

##### the great city that was dressed in fine linen

"the great city, which was like a woman dressed in fine linen" or "the great city, whose women were dressed in fine linen"

##### was adorned with gold

"adorned herself with gold" or "adorned themselves with gold" or "wore gold"

##### precious jewels

"valuable gems" or "treasured gems"

#### Revelation 18:17

##### who make their living from the sea

"who travel on the sea to make their living" or "who sail on the sea to different places in order to trade things"

#### Revelation 18:18

##### What city is like the great city?

"No other city is like the great city, Babylon!"

#### Revelation 18:20

##### God has brought your judgment on her

"God has judged her for you" or "God has judged her because of the bad things she did to you"

#### Revelation 18:21

##### millstone

a large round stone used to crush grain

##### Babylon, the great city, will be thrown down with violence and will not be seen anymore

"God will violently throw down Babylon, the great city, and it will no longer exist"

#### Revelation 18:22

##### The sound made by harpists, musicians, flute players, and trumpeters will not be heard anymore in you

"Harpists, musicians, flute players, and trumpeters will no longer make a sound in your city"

##### in you

"in Babylon"

##### No craftsman ... will be found in you

"No craftsman ... will be in your city"

##### No sound of a mill will be heard anymore in you

"No one will use a mill in your city anymore"

#### Revelation 18:23

##### The voices of the bridegroom and the bride will not be heard in you anymore

"No one will ever again hear in Babylon the happy voices of a bridegroom and a bride"

##### will not be heard in you anymore

"will not be in your city anymore"

##### your merchants were the princes of the earth

"your merchants were like princes of the earth" or "your merchants were the most important men in the world"

##### the nations were deceived by your sorcery

"you deceived the people of the nations with your magic spells"

#### Revelation 18:24

##### In her the blood of prophets and of God's holy people was found, and the blood of all who have been killed on the earth

"Babylon is guilty of killing the prophets and believers and all the other people in the world who were killed"

Chapter 19

1After these things I heard what sounded like a loud voice of a large number of people in heaven calling out,  
  
"Hallelujah!Salvation, glory, and power belong to our God.2His judgments are true and just,for he has judged the great prostitutewho corrupted the earth with her sexual immorality.He has avenged the blood of his servantsfrom her hand."

3They spoke a second time:  
  
"Hallelujah!The smoke rises from her forever and ever."

4The twenty-four elders and the four living creatures fell down and worshiped God, who was seated on the throne. They were saying,  
  
"Amen. Hallelujah!"

5Then a voice came out from the throne, saying,  
  
"Praise our God,all you his servants,you who fear him,both the unimportant and the powerful."

6Then I heard what sounded like the voice of a great number of people, like the roar of many waters, and like mighty crashes of thunder, saying,  
  
"Hallelujah!For the Lord reigns, our God, the Almighty.7Let us rejoice and be gladand give him the glory!For the wedding celebration of the Lamb has come,and his bride has made herself ready.8She was permitted to be dressedin bright and clean fine linen"  
  
(for fine linen is the righteous acts of God's holy people).

9The angel said to me, "Write this: Blessed are those who are invited to the wedding feast of the Lamb." He also said to me, "These are true words of God."10I fell down at his feet to worship him, but he said to me, "Do not do this! I am a fellow servant with you and your brothers who hold the testimony about Jesus. Worship God, for the testimony about Jesus is the spirit of prophecy."

11Then I saw heaven open, and I looked and there was a white horse. The one riding it is called faithful and true. It is with justice that he judges and wages war.12His eyes are like a fiery flame, and on his head are many crowns. He has a name written on him that no one knows but himself.13He is clothed with a robe that was dipped in blood, and his name is called the Word of God.14The armies of heaven were following him on white horses, dressed in fine linen, white and clean.15Out of his mouth goes a sharp sword with which he strikes down the nations, and he will rule them with an iron rod. He tramples in the winepress of the fury of the wrath of God Almighty.16He has a name written on his robe and on his thigh: "King of kings and Lord of lords."

17I saw an angel standing in the sun. He called out in a loud voice to all the birds flying overhead, "Come, gather together for the great feast of God.18Come eat the flesh of kings, the flesh of commanders, the flesh of mighty men, the flesh of horses and their riders, and the flesh of all men, both free and slave, the unimportant and the powerful."

19I saw the beast and the kings of the earth with their armies. They were assembling in order to wage war with the one who rode the horse and with his army.20The beast was captured and with him the false prophet who performed the signs in his presence. With these signs he deceived those who had received the mark of the beast and who worshiped his image. The two of them were thrown alive into the fiery lake of burning sulfur.21The rest of them were killed by the sword that came out of the mouth of the one who rode on the horse. All the birds ate their dead flesh.

#### Revelation 19:1

##### I heard

Here "I" refers to John.

##### Hallelujah

This word means "Praise Yahweh." Some modern versions translate it as "Praise the Lord."

#### Revelation 19:2

##### the great prostitute

"that wicked city that was like a prostitute

##### who corrupted the earth

"who corrupted the people of the earth"

##### He has avenged the blood of his servants from her hand

"He has punished her for murdering his servants"

#### Revelation 19:3

##### They spoke

Here "They" refers to the crowd of people in heaven.

##### smoke rises from her

"smoke rises from that city"

#### Revelation 19:4

##### the four living creatures

"the four living beings" or "the four living things."

##### who was seated on the throne

"who sat on the throne"

#### Revelation 19:5

##### a voice came out from the throne

"someone spoke from the throne"

##### Praise our God

Here "our" refers to the speaker and all God's servants.

##### you who fear him

"all you who honor him"

##### both the unimportant and the powerful

The speaker uses these words together to mean all of God's people.

#### Revelation 19:6

##### Then I heard what sounded like the voice of a great number of people, like the roar of many waters, and like mighty crashes of thunder

John speaks of what he is hearing as if it were like the sound made by a very large crowd of people, a large body of rushing water, and very loud thunder.

##### For the Lord

"Because the Lord"

#### Revelation 19:7

##### Let us rejoice

Here "us" refers to all of God's servants.

##### give him the glory

"give God the glory" or "honor God"

##### wedding celebration of the Lamb ... his bride has made herself ready

Here John speaks of the joining of Jesus and his people together forever as if it were a wedding celebration.

##### Lamb

This is a young sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ.

##### has come

Existing in the present is spoken of as having come.

#### Revelation 19:8

##### She was permitted to be dressed in bright and clean fine linen

"God allowed her to wear a dress of bright and clean fine linen"

#### Revelation 19:9

##### those who are invited

"the people whom God invites"

##### the wedding feast of the Lamb

Here the angel speaks of the joining of Jesus and his people forever as if it were a wedding feast.

#### Revelation 19:10

##### I fell down at his feet

This means that John purposely lay on the ground and stretched himself out in reverence or submission. This action was an important part of worship, to show respect and willingness to serve.

##### your brothers

The word "brothers" here refers to all believers, male and female.

##### who hold the testimony about Jesus

"who speak the truth about Jesus"

##### for the testimony about Jesus is the spirit of prophecy

"for it is the Spirit of God who gives people the power to speak the truth about Jesus"

#### Revelation 19:11

##### Then I saw heaven open

This imagery is used to signify the beginning of a new vision. See how you translated this idea in Revelation 4:1, Revelation 11:19 and Revelation 15:5.

##### The one riding it

The rider is Jesus.

##### It is with justice that he judges and wages war

"He judges all people and wages war according to what is right"

#### Revelation 19:12

##### His eyes are like a fiery flame

John speaks of the rider's eyes as if they shone like a flame of fire.

##### He has a name written on him

"Someone has written a name on him"

##### on him that no one knows but himself

"on him, and only he knows the meaning of that name"

#### Revelation 19:13

##### He is clothed with a robe that was dipped in blood

"He wears a robe that has blood on it"

##### his name is called the Word of God

"his name is called the Message of God" or "his name is also the Word of God"

#### Revelation 19:15

##### Out of his mouth goes a sharp sword

The sword blade was sticking out of his mouth. The sword itself was not in motion.

##### strikes down the nations

"destroys the nations" or "brings the nations under his control"

##### rule them with an iron rod

John speaks of the rider's power as if he were ruling with an iron rod.

##### He tramples in the winepress of the fury of the wrath of God Almighty

"He crushes his enemies according to the judgment of God Almighty, just as a person crushes grapes in a winepress"

#### Revelation 19:16

##### He has a name written on his robe and on his thigh:

"Someone has written a name on his robe and thigh:"

#### Revelation 19:17

##### I saw an angel standing in the sun

"Then I saw an angel standing in the light of the sun"

#### Revelation 19:18

##### both free and slave, the unimportant and the powerful

The angel uses these two sets of opposite-meaning words together to mean all people.

#### Revelation 19:20

##### The beast was captured and with him the false prophet

"The rider on the white horse captured the beast and the false prophet"

##### the mark of the beast

This was an identifying mark that indicated that the person who received it worshiped the beast.

##### The two of them were thrown alive

"God threw the beast and the false prophet alive"

##### the fiery lake of burning sulfur

"the lake of fire that burns with sulfur" or "place full of fire that burns with sulfur"

#### Revelation 19:21

##### The rest of them were killed by the sword that came out of the mouth of the one who rode on the horse

"The rider of the horse killed the remainder of the beast's armies with the sword that extended from his mouth"

Chapter 20

1Then I saw an angel coming down from heaven. He had the key to the bottomless pit, and he had a great chain in his hand.2He took hold of the dragon, the old serpent, which is the devil, or Satan, and bound him for a thousand years.3He threw him into the bottomless pit. He shut it and sealed it over him. This was so that he would not deceive the nations anymore until the thousand years were over. After that, he must be set free for a short amount of time.

4Then I saw thrones. Seated on them were those who had been given authority to judge. I also saw the souls of those who had been beheaded for the testimony about Jesus and for the word of God. They had not worshiped the beast or his image, and they had refused to receive the mark on their forehead or hand. They came to life, and they reigned with Christ for a thousand years.5The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended. This is the first resurrection.6Blessed and holy is anyone who takes part in the first resurrection! Over these the second death has no power. They will be priests of God and of Christ and will reign with him for a thousand years.

7When the thousand years come to an end, Satan will be released from his prison.8He will go out to deceive the nations at the four corners of the earth—Gog and Magog—to bring them together for the battle. They will be as many as the sand of the sea.9They went up over the broad plain of the earth and surrounded the camp of God's holy people—the beloved city. But fire came down from heaven and devoured them.10The devil, who deceived them, was thrown into the lake of burning sulfur, where the beast and the false prophet had been thrown. They will be tormented day and night forever and ever.

11Then I saw a great white throne and the one who is seated on it. The earth and the heavens fled away from his presence, but there was no place for them to go.12I saw the dead—the mighty and the unimportant—standing before the throne, and the books were opened. Then another book was opened—the Book of Life. The dead were judged by what was recorded in the books, according to their deeds.13The sea gave up the dead who were in it. Death and Hades gave up the dead who were in them, and the dead were judged according to their deeds.14Death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. This is the second death—the lake of fire.15If anyone's name was not found written in the Book of Life, he was thrown into the lake of fire.

#### Revelation 20:1

##### Then I saw

Here "I" refers to John.

##### bottomless pit

This is an extremely deep, narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom.

#### Revelation 20:3

##### sealed it over him

"sealed it to prevent anyone from opening it"

##### deceive the nations

"deceive the people-groups"

##### he must be set free

"God will command the angel to free him"

#### Revelation 20:4

##### who had been given authority to judge

"whom God had given authority to judge"

##### who had been beheaded

"whose heads others had cut off"

##### for the testimony about Jesus and for the word of God

"because they had spoken the truth about Jesus and about the word of God"

##### They came to life

"They came back to life" or "They became alive again"

#### Revelation 20:5

##### The rest of the dead

"All of the other dead people"

##### the thousand years were ended

"the end of the 1,000 years"

#### Revelation 20:6

##### Over these the second death has no power

"These people will not experience the second death"

##### the second death

"the final death in the lake of fire"

#### Revelation 20:7

##### Satan will be released from his prison

"God will release Satan from his prison"

#### Revelation 20:9

##### They went

"Satan's army went"

##### the beloved city

This refers to Jerusalem.

##### fire came down from heaven and devoured them

"God sent fire from heaven to burn them up"

#### Revelation 20:10

##### The devil, who deceived them, was thrown into

"God threw the devil, who had deceived them, into" or "God's angel threw the devil, who had deceived them, into"

##### lake of burning sulfur

"the lake of fire that burns with sulfur" or "place full of fire that burns with sulfur."

##### where the beast and the false prophet had been thrown

"where he had also thrown the beast and the false prophet"

##### They will be tormented

"God will torment them"

#### Revelation 20:11

##### The earth and the heavens fled away from his presence, but there was no place for them to go

John describes heaven and earth as if they were people who were trying to escape God's judgment. This means that God completely destroyed the old heaven and earth.

#### Revelation 20:12

##### the books were opened

"someone opened the books"

##### The dead were judged

"God judged the people who had died and now lived again"

##### by what was recorded

"by what he had recorded"

#### Revelation 20:13

##### The sea gave up the dead ... Death and Hades gave up the dead

Here John speaks of the sea, death, and Hades as if they were living persons.

##### the dead were judged

"God judged the dead people"

##### Hades

Here "Hades" is a metonym that represents the place where unbelievers go when they die, to wait for God's judgment.

#### Revelation 20:14

##### Death and Hades were thrown

"God threw Death and Hades" or "God's angel threw Death and Hades"

##### the second death

"the final death in the lake of fire"

#### Revelation 20:15

##### If anyone's name was not found written

"If God's angel did not find a person's name"

Chapter 21

1Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away, and the sea was no more.2I saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, that came down out of heaven from God, prepared like a bride adorned for her husband.3I heard a great voice from the throne saying, "Look! The dwelling place of God is with human beings, and he will live with them. They will be his people, and God himself will be with them and he will be their God.4He will wipe away every tear from their eyes, and there will be no more death, or grieving, or crying, or pain. The former things have passed away.5The one who was seated on the throne said, "Look! I make all things new." He said, "Write this down because these words are trustworthy and true."6He said to me, "These things are done! I am the Alpha and the Omega, the beginning and the end. To the one who thirsts I will give drink without cost from the spring of the water of life.7The one who conquers will inherit these things, and I will be his God, and he will be my son.8But as for the cowards, the faithless, the detestable, the murderers, the sexually immoral, sorcerers, idolaters, and all liars, their place will be in the fiery lake of burning sulfur. That is the second death."

9One of the seven angels came to me, the one who had the seven bowls full of the seven last plagues, and he said, "Come here. I will show you the bride, the wife of the Lamb."10Then he carried me away in the Spirit to a great and high mountain and showed me the holy city Jerusalem coming down out of heaven from God.11Jerusalem had the glory of God, and its brightness was like a very precious jewel, like a stone of crystal-clear jasper.12It had a great, high wall with twelve gates, with twelve angels at the gates. On the gates were written the names of the twelve tribes of the sons of Israel.13On the east were three gates, on the north three gates, on the south three gates, and on the west three gates.14The wall of the city had twelve foundations, and on them were the twelve names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.15The one who spoke with me had a measuring rod made of gold to measure the city, its gates, and its wall.16The city was laid out in a square; its length was the same as its width. He measured the city with the measuring rod, twelve thousand stadia in length (its length, width, and height were the same).17He also measured its wall, 144 cubits thick by human measurement (which is also the angel's measure).18The wall was built of jasper and the city of pure gold, like clear glass.19The foundations of the wall were adorned with every kind of precious stone. The first was jasper, the second was sapphire, the third was agate, the fourth was emerald,20the fifth was onyx, the sixth was carnelian, the seventh was chrysolite, the eighth was beryl, the ninth was topaz, the tenth was chrysoprase, the eleventh was jacinth, and the twelfth was amethyst.21The twelve gates were twelve pearls; each of the gates was made from a single pearl. The streets of the city were pure gold, like transparent glass.22I saw no temple in the city, for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are its temple.23The city had no need of the sun or the moon in order to shine on it because the glory of God shone on it, and its lamp is the Lamb.24The nations will walk by the light of that city. The kings of the earth will bring their glory into it.25Its gates will not be shut during the day, and there will be no night there.26They will bring the glory and the honor of the nations into it,27but nothing unclean will ever enter into it, nor anyone who does what is detestable or deceitful, but only those whose names are written in the Lamb's Book of Life.

#### Revelation 21:1

##### I saw

Here "I" refers to John.

#### Revelation 21:2

##### like a bride adorned for her husband

This compares the new Jerusalem to a bride who has made herself beautiful for her bridegroom.

#### Revelation 21:3

##### a great voice from the throne saying

"someone speak loudly from the throne saying"

##### Look!

The word "Look" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

#### Revelation 21:4

##### He will wipe away every tear from their eyes

"God will wipe away their sadness, like wiping away tears" or "God will cause them to not be sad anymore"

#### Revelation 21:5

##### these words are trustworthy and true

"this message is trustworthy and true"

#### Revelation 21:6

##### the Alpha and the Omega

These are first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. Possible meanings are 1) "the one who began all things and who ends all things" or 2) "the one who has always lived and who always will live." Alternate translation: "the A and the Z" or "the first and the last"

##### To the one who thirsts ... water of life

God speaks of a person's desire for eternal life as if it were thirst and of that person receiving eternal life as if he were drinking life-giving water.

#### Revelation 21:8

##### the cowards

"those who are too afraid to do what is right"

##### the detestable

"those who do terrible things"

##### the second death

"the final death in the lake of fire"

#### Revelation 21:9

##### the bride, the wife of the Lamb

The angel speaks of Jerusalem as if it were a woman who is about to marry her groom, the Lamb. Jerusalem is metonymy for those who believers who will inhabit it.

##### the Lamb

This is a young sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ.

#### Revelation 21:10

##### carried me away in the Spirit

The setting changes as John is taken to a high mountain where he can see the city of Jerusalem.

#### Revelation 21:11

##### Jerusalem

This refers to the "Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven" that he described in the previous verse and not to the physical Jerusalem.

##### crystal-clear

"extremely clear"

##### jasper

This is a valuable stone. Jasper may have been clear like glass or crystal.

#### Revelation 21:12

##### were written

"someone had written"

#### Revelation 21:16

##### twelve thousand stadia

You may convert this to modern measures. Alternate translation: "2,200 kilometers"

#### Revelation 21:17

##### 144 cubits

You may convert this to modern measures. Alternate translation: "66 meters"

#### Revelation 21:18

##### The wall was built of jasper and the city of pure gold

"Someone had built the wall with jasper and the city with pure gold"

##### pure gold, like clear glass

The gold was so clear that it is spoken of as if it were glass.

#### Revelation 21:19

##### The foundations of the wall were adorned

"Someone adorned the foundations of the wall"

#### Revelation 21:20

##### onyx ... chrysolite ... beryl ... topaz ... chrysoprase ... jacinth ... amethyst

These are all valuable gems.

#### Revelation 21:21

##### each of the gates was made from a single pearl

"someone had made each of the gates from a single pearl"

#### Revelation 21:22

##### Lord God ... and the Lamb are its temple

The temple represented God's presence. This means the new Jerusalem does not need a temple because God and the Lamb will live there.

#### Revelation 21:23

##### its lamp is the Lamb

Here the glory of Jesus, the Lamb, is spoken of as if it were a lamp that gives light to the city.

#### Revelation 21:24

##### The nations will walk

"The people from all the different nations will live"

#### Revelation 21:26

##### They will bring

"The kings of the earth will bring"

#### Revelation 21:27

##### nothing unclean will ever enter into it, nor anyone

"only what is clean will ever enter, and never anyone"

##### but only those whose names are written in the Lamb's Book of Life

"but only those whose names the Lamb wrote in his Book of Life"

Chapter 22

1Then the angel showed me the river of the water of life, clear as crystal. It was flowing from the throne of God and of the Lamb2through the middle of the city's street. On each side of the river was the tree of life, bearing twelve kinds of fruits, and it bears its fruit every month. The leaves of the tree are for the healing of the nations.3There will no longer be any curse. The throne of God and of the Lamb will be in the city, and his servants will serve him.4They will see his face, and his name will be on their foreheads.5There will be no more night; they will have no need for the light of a lamp or sunlight because the Lord God will shine on them. They will reign forever and ever.

6The angel said to me, "These words are trustworthy and true. The Lord, the God of the spirits of the prophets, sent his angel to show his servants what must happen soon."7"Look! I am coming soon! Blessed is the one who obeys the words of the prophecy of this book."

8I, John, am the one who heard and saw these things. When I heard and saw them, I fell down to worship at the feet of the angel who had been showing me these things.9He said to me, "Do not do that! I am a fellow servant with you, with your brothers the prophets, and with those who obey the words of this book. Worship God!"

10Then he said to me, "Do not seal up the words of the prophecy of this book, for the time is near.11The one who is unrighteous, let him continue to do unrighteousness. The one who is morally filthy, let him continue to be morally filthy. The one who is righteous, let him continue to do what is righteous. The one who is holy, let him continue to be holy."

12"Look! I am coming soon. My reward is with me, to pay back each one according to his deeds.13I am the Alpha and the Omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end.14Blessed are those who wash their robes so that they will have the right to eat from the tree of life and to enter the city through the gates. [1](#footnote-target-1)15Outside are the dogs, the sorcerers, the sexually immoral, the murderers, the idolaters, and everyone who loves and practices falsehood.

16I, Jesus, have sent my angel to testify to you about these things for the churches. I am the root and the descendant of David, the bright morning star."

17The Spirit and the Bride say, "Come!" Let the one who hears say, "Come!" Whoever is thirsty, let him come, and whoever desires it, let him freely have the water of life.

18I testify to everyone who hears the words of the prophecy of this book: If anyone adds to them, God will add to him the plagues that are written about in this book.19If anyone takes away from the words of this book of prophecy, God will take away his share in the tree of life and in the holy city that are written about in this book. [2](#footnote-target-2)

20The one who testifies to these things says, "Yes! I am coming soon." Amen! Come, Lord Jesus!

21The grace of the Lord Jesus be with all. Amen. [3](#footnote-target-3)

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Instead of, Blessed are those who wash their robes, some ancient copies of the Greek text read, Blessed are those who do his commandments . [2](#footnote-caller-2)Some older copies read God will take away his share in the Book of Life and in the holy city that are written about in this book . [3](#footnote-caller-3)Some ancient copies of the Greek text or ancient translations of the Greek text add the phrase: be with you holy people or be with all you holy people or be with all of his holy people .

#### Revelation 22:1

##### showed me

Here "me" refers to John.

##### the river of the water of life

"the river flowing with life-giving water"

##### the water of life

Eternal life is spoken of as if it were provided by life-giving water.

#### Revelation 22:2

##### the nations

"the people of all nations"

#### Revelation 22:3

##### There will no longer be any curse

Possible meanings are 1) "There will never be anyone there that God will curse" or 2) "There will not be anyone there who is under God's curse"

##### his servants will serve him

Possible meanings of "his" and "him" are 1) both words refer to God the Father, or 2) both words refer to both God and the Lamb, who rule together as one.

#### Revelation 22:4

##### They will see his face

"They will be in God's presence"

#### Revelation 22:6

##### These words are trustworthy and true

"This message is trustworthy and true"

##### the God of the spirits of the prophets

"God who gives his Spirit to the prophets"

#### Revelation 22:7

##### Look!

Here Jesus begins to speak. The word "Look" adds emphasis to what follows.

##### I am coming soon!

"I am coming to judge soon!"

##### the words of the prophecy of this book

"the prophetic message of this book"

#### Revelation 22:10

##### Do not seal up ... this book

"Do not keep secret ... this book"

##### the words of the prophecy of this book

"the prophetic message of this book"

#### Revelation 22:13

##### the Alpha and the Omega

These are first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. Possible meanings are 1) "the one who began all things and who ends all things" or 2) "the one who has always lived and who always will live." Alternate translation: "the A and the Z" or "the first and the last"

##### the first and the last

This refers to the eternal nature of Jesus.

##### the beginning and the end

Possible meanings are 1) "the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end" or 2) "the one who existed before all things and who will exist after all things."

#### Revelation 22:14

##### those who wash their robes so that

"those who have become righteous, as if they have washed their robes, so that"

#### Revelation 22:15

##### Outside

This means they are outside the city and not allowed to enter.

##### are the dogs

In that culture the dog was an unclean, despised animal. Here the word "dogs" is derogatory and refers to people who are wicked.

#### Revelation 22:16

##### to testify to you

Here the word "you" is plural.

##### the root and the descendant of David

The words "root" and "descendant" mean basically the same thing. Jesus speaks of being a "descendant" as if he were a "root" that grew out of David. Together the words emphasize that Jesus belongs to the family of David.

##### the bright morning star

Jesus speaks of himself as if he were the bright star that sometimes appears early in the morning and indicates that a new day is about to begin.

#### Revelation 22:17

##### the Bride

Believers are spoken of as if they were a bride about to be married to her groom, Jesus.

##### Come!

"Please come!"

##### Whoever is thirsty ... the water of life

A person's desire for eternal life is spoken of as if it were thirst and of that person receiving eternal life as if he were drinking life-giving water.

##### the water of life

Eternal life is spoken of as if it were provided by life-giving water.

#### Revelation 22:18

##### I testify

Here "I" refers to John.

##### the words of the prophecy of this book

"the prophetic message of this book"

##### If anyone adds to them ... God will add

This is a strong warning to not change anything about this prophecy.

##### that are written about in this book

"which I have written about in this book"

#### Revelation 22:19

##### If anyone takes away ... God will take away

This is a strong warning to not change anything about this prophecy.

#### Revelation 22:20

##### The one who testifies to these things says

"Jesus, who testifies to these things, says"

#### Revelation 22:21

##### with all

"with every one of you"